



MAHARAJA RANJIT SINGH PUNJAB TECHNICAL UNIVERSITY BATHINDA, PUNJAB



International Conference on Precision Mechanical and Agriculture Solution

(ICPMAS-2026) – 16TH & 17TH APRIL, 2026

**ORGANIZED BY
SCHOOL OF AGRICULTURE SCIENCES AND ENGINEERING
AND
DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERING**

**RAJA RAMMOHUN ROY NATIONAL AGENCY FOR ISBN (RRRNA),
DEPARTMENT OF HIGHER EDUCATION,
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION,
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA.**

ISBN : 978-93-5635-722-8

ABOUT PUNJAB



Punjab, known as the “Land of Five Rivers,” is one of the most prosperous and culturally vibrant states of India. Located in the northwestern part of the country, Punjab is renowned for its rich agricultural heritage, making it a significant contributor to India’s food grain production and earning the title of the “Granary of India.” The state has played a pivotal role in the Green Revolution, transforming India into a self-sufficient nation in food production.

Punjab is blessed with fertile plains, a favorable climate, and an extensive irrigation network, which support the cultivation of major crops such as wheat, rice, cotton, maize, and sugarcane. Agriculture remains the backbone of the state’s economy, complemented by growing industrial sectors including textiles, machinery, food processing, and manufacturing.

The state is also known for its deep-rooted history, spiritual significance, and vibrant traditions. Punjab is home to numerous historical landmarks, religious sites, and cultural festivals that reflect its rich heritage and communal harmony. The people of Punjab are celebrated worldwide for their warmth, hospitality, courage, and energetic spirit.

In the field of education and research, Punjab has emerged as a hub for academic excellence with several reputed universities, technical institutions, and research centers contributing significantly to advancements in science, engineering, agriculture, and technology.

With its blend of tradition, innovation, and progressive outlook, Punjab continues to be a leading state in promoting sustainable development, education, industrial growth, and agricultural advancement in India.



ABOUT BATHINDA



Bathinda, one of the oldest and historically significant cities of Punjab, is located in the southwestern region of the state. Known for its rich cultural heritage and rapid infrastructural development, Bathinda has emerged as an important center of education, agriculture, trade, and industry in Punjab.

The city holds historical importance due to the presence of the famous Qila Mubarak, an ancient fort associated with several historical events and rulers. Bathinda has steadily transformed into a modern urban hub while preserving its traditional values and heritage.

Bathinda is widely recognized for its contribution to agriculture, with fertile land supporting the cultivation of wheat, cotton, paddy, and other crops, making it an integral part of Punjab's agrarian economy. In addition to agriculture, the city has become a major industrial and energy center, housing thermal power plants, oil refineries, fertilizer plants, and manufacturing units that contribute significantly to the regional economy.

The city also serves as an educational hub with several esteemed institutions and universities offering quality education and research opportunities across diverse disciplines. Its strategic location, excellent connectivity through road and rail networks, and growing infrastructure make Bathinda a prominent destination for academic, industrial, and commercial activities.

Bathinda reflects a harmonious blend of historical legacy, economic progress, and educational advancement, making it one of the most dynamic and progressive cities in Punjab.



ABOUT MRSPTU

Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University (MRSPTU), Bathinda, is a premier state technical university established by the Government of Punjab under Punjab Act No. 5 of 2015. The university is recognized under Section 2(f) and 12(B) of the UGC Act and serves as a significant center for technical, professional, and research-oriented education in the Malwa region of Punjab.

Located in Bathinda, the university was founded with the vision of promoting quality higher education, innovation, and skill-based learning in engineering, technology, management, sciences, pharmacy, and allied disciplines. MRSPTU is committed to nurturing competent professionals and researchers equipped to meet global industrial and societal challenges.

The university offers a dynamic academic environment through its constituent colleges, affiliated institutions, and multidisciplinary departments. It emphasizes excellence in teaching, advanced research, entrepreneurship, industry collaboration, and holistic student development.

MRSPTU continuously strives to strengthen academia–industry linkages, foster interdisciplinary research, and promote innovation-driven education through collaborative initiatives and academic partnerships. Recent inter-university collaborations have highlighted its focus on research-driven education and academic excellence.

With state-of-the-art infrastructure, modern laboratories, experienced faculty, and a progressive academic framework, MRSPTU is playing a pivotal role in shaping technical education and contributing to the socio-economic development of Punjab and the nation.

ABOUT ICPMAS



The International Conference on Precision Mechanical and Agriculture Solutions (ICPMAS) is a premier academic and professional platform that brings together researchers, academicians, industry experts, innovators, and policymakers to deliberate upon the latest advancements in mechanical engineering, precision technologies, and sustainable agricultural solutions. The conference is designed to promote interdisciplinary collaboration and knowledge exchange in emerging areas of engineering and agricultural innovation.

ICPMAS aims to address contemporary challenges in automation, smart machinery, robotics, renewable energy integration, artificial intelligence-driven agriculture, and sustainable farming practices. It serves as a forum for presenting innovative research, exchanging ideas, and fostering industry-academia partnerships to transform the future of mechanical and agricultural systems.

The conference covers a broad spectrum of themes including precision design and manufacturing, additive manufacturing, mechatronics, climate-resilient agriculture, waste-to-wealth technologies, environmental sustainability, renewable energy in agriculture, and green manufacturing practices. Through keynote lectures, technical sessions, and expert discussions, ICPMAS aspires to encourage innovative thinking and collaborative problem-solving among participants.

By promoting precision solutions and engineering innovations tailored to modern agricultural needs, ICPMAS contributes toward global food security, resource optimization, environmental sustainability, and technological advancement in the agricultural and mechanical sectors.



ORGANIZING COMMITTEE



Chief Patron	Prof. (Dr.) Sanjeev Kumar Sharma. Vice Chancellor, MRSPTU, Bathinda	
Patron	Prof. (Dr.) Gurinder Pal Singh, Registrar, MRSPTU, Bathinda Prof. (Dr.) Sarabjeet Kaur Bath, Campus Director, GZSCCET-MRSPTU, Bathinda	
Chairman	Prof. Naveen Singla, Head, MED-GZSCCET-MRSPTU Prof. Jasvir Singh Tiwana, Head, SASE-MRSPTU	
Organizing Secretaries	Prof. (Dr.) Rajesh Gupta, Professor, MED, GZSCCET-MRSPTU Dr. Kanwal Jit Singh, Asst. Prof. SASE, MRSPTU	
Co-organizing Secretaries	Dr. Wineet Chawla, AP, SASE Dr. Ruksana, AP, SASE Ms. Ramandeep Kaur Gill, AP, SASE	Dr. Haramritpal Singh Sidhu, AP, MED Dr. Gagandeep Singh Sodhi, AP, MED Ms. Ramandeep Kaur , AP, SASE
Liaison Officer	Mr. Samardeep Singh Sidhu, AP, SASE	Er. Rajinder Singh Smagh, Sr. Tech. SASE



INTERNATIONAL ADVISORY COMMITTEE



Prof. (Dr.) S S. Dhami, Department of Mechanical NITTTR, Chandigarh, India	Prof. (Dr.) Ashish Kamalakar Darpe, Department of Mechanical, IIT Delhi, India
Prof. (Dr.) Harpreet Singh, Department of Mechanical, IIT Ropar, Punjab, India	Prof. (Dr.) Pardeep Jindal, Department of Mechanical Punjabi University, Bathinda Punjab, India
Prof. (Dr.) Jeffry Bergthorsom, Department of Mech. Engg: McGill, Montreal, Canada	Prof. (Dr.) Sina Adl, College of Agriculture and Bioresources, University of Saskatchewan, Canada
Prof. (Dr.) Richard Mc Dermid, School of Engineering, Macquarir University, Sydney, Australia	Prof. (Dr.) Sagadevan Mundree, School of Agriculture and Food Sustainability, The University of Queensland , Australia
Prof. (Dr.) Luc Bauwens, Department of Mechanical and Manufacturing Engineering, University of Calgary, Canada	Prof. (Dr.) John A. Cline, Department of Plant Agriculture, University of Guelph, Canada.
Prof. (Dr.) Denise Marinaro, Department of Mechanical Engineering, The University of Malbourne, Australia	Prof. Yong-Guan Zhu, Chinese Academy of Sciences, China
Prof. (Dr.) Olanrewaju (Lanre) Ojo, Mechanical Engineering Faculty, University of Manitoba, Canada	Prof. Narendra Singh, Department of Agriculture Economics, Navsari Agricultural University, Gujarat, India
Prof. (Dr.) Subbarao P.M.V. Department of Mechanical Engineering, IIT Delhi, India	Prof. (Dr.) Ajmer Singh Brar, College of Agriculture, Punjab Agriculture University, Ludhiana, Punjab, India
Prof. (Dr.) Navneet Arora, Mechanical and Industrial Engineering Department, IIT Roorkee, India	Prof. (Dr.) Kulvir Singh Saini, College of Agriculture, Punjab Agriculture University, Ludhiana, Punjab, India
Prof. (Dr.) chrAmit Agrawal, Department of Mechanical Engineering, IIT Bombay, India	Prof. (Dr.) R.P. Narwal, Sr. Scientist, Haryana Agriculture University, Haryana, India
Prof. (Dr.) Roland Bouffanais, Department of Mechanical Engineering, University of Ottawa, Canada	Prof. (Dr.) S.S. Dahiya, Sr. Scientist, Haryana Agriculture University, Haryana, India
Prof. Rajesh Kumar Kanda, Department of Mechanical , PEC Chandigarh	Prof. Subhah Chander,Dr B.R. Ambedkar NIT Jalandhar
Prof. Anish Sachdeva, Department of industrial and Production Engineering, ,Dr B.R. Ambedkar NIT Jalandhar	Prof. V.S. Hans, Department of Mechanical Engineering ,PAU,Ludhiana



INTERNAL ADVISORY COMMITTEE



Dr.Jaspal Singh, Retd. Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Harish Garg, Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Dr. Lakshya, Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Satpal Singh, Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Dr.Sukhpreet Kaur Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Prof. Vivek Kondal Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Dr.Lokesh Kumar Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Anil Jindal Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Dr..Ramandeep Singh Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Kamaljit Singh Boparai, Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Dr.Ruksana Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Jagdeep Sharma Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Ms. Manisha Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Mandeep Kaur Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Ms.Kiranpreet Kaur Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Er. Yadwinderpal Sharma, Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Ms.Komalpuneet Kaur Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Dr. Amritpal Singh, Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Mr.Raghveer singh Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Ms. Simranpreet Kaur Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Mr.Adit Singla Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Mr. Amandeep Singh Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering
Mr. Amritpal Singh Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	Mr. Sobha Singh, Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering
Mr. Abhishek Grover Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering	



I N D E X

S. No.	Title Of Paper	Page No.:
1	Smart Farming Technologies In Modern Agriculture	1
2	Sustainable Agriculture Through Renewable Energy And Smart Engineering Systems: A Comprehensive Review	5
3	Geospatial Analysis Of Heat Wave Impacts On Cotton Yield Variability In Bathinda District, Punjab (2000-2022)	15
4	Climate - Smart Agricultural Technologies For Precision Farming: A Comprehensive Review	23
5	Maize Yield Response To Climatic Variability:A Sensitivity Approach	35
6	Optimizing Crop Monitoring And Nutrient Management Through Precision Agriculture And Agrometeorological Approaches	43
7	Adaptation And Mitigation Approaches For Enhancing Climate Resilience In Vegetable Crops: A Review	54
8	Performance Evaluation Of Different Methods Of Wheat Sowing For Crop Residue Management	67
9	Performance Evaluation Of A Precision Residue Management In Conservation Agriculture: A Review	80
10	Thermal Regime-Driven Variability In Wheat Yield: Integrating Soil And Air Temperature Effects Under Diverse Sowing Windows	88
11	Effect Of Intercropping Of Cowpea On Yield And Quality Parameters Of Napier Grass Under Different Fertilizer Levels	97
12	Water Conservation Techniques In Sustainable Agriculture: Critique	108
13	Climate-Driven Wheat Yield Forecasting: A Synergy Of Ceres-Wheat And Ndvi–Temperature Dynamics	119
14	Role Of Transporter Proteins In Plants Under Abiotic Stress	129

INDEX

15	Dry Matter Partitioning In Cotton Under Varying Irrigation And Fertigation Regimes In Semi-Arid Punjab	140
16	Effects Of Nitrogen Levels On Growth, Yield And Quality Of Maize Varieties (Zea Mays L.)	149
17	Efficient Irrigation Methods In Agriculture: A Review	158
18	Performance Evaluation Of Different Methods Of Wheat Sowing For Crop Residue Management	167
19	Impact Of Temperature And Relative Humidity On Sunflower (Helianthus Annuus L.) Yield And Yield Attributes In Punjab: A Review	179
20	To Study The Effect Of Temperature Change And Co ₂ Concentration On Development Of Bemisia Tabaci	184
21	To Study The Effect Of Temperature Change And Co ₂ Concentration On Development Of Bemisia Tabaci	192
22	A Review On Organic Farming Techniques For Strawberry Cultivation	210
23	Effect Of Different Mulching Materials On Weed Control, Growth, Productivity, And Fruit Quality Of Guava (Psidium Guajava L.) Under Subtropical Conditions	222
24	Current Scenario Of Tuber Crops In India	229
25	Post-Harvest Processing, Value Addition And Shelf-Life Enhancement Of Aonla (Phyllanthus Emblica L.): Recent Advances And Future Prospects	255
26	Integrated Nutrient Management In Solanaceous Crops	258
27	Effect Of Nano Urea And Nano Dap Fertilizers On Growth, Yield And Nutrient Use Efficiency Of Guava (Psidiumguajava L.)	265
27	Replacement Of Traditional Fertilizers By Nano Fertilizers In Kinnow Orchard	271
28	Recent Advances In Growing Media For Dragon Fruit Propagation: A Comprehensive Review	278

I N D E X

29	Cyber-Physical Systems In Agriculture: Engineering Smart And Sustainable Farming	289
30	Evaluate The Effect Of Organic Production Methods On Seedlings Of Spinach Beet(Beta Vulgaris Var. Bengalensis) And Cost Analysis Of Enrich Compost	300
31	Impact Of Plant Spacing On Growth And Yield Of Different Potato Varieties	309
32	Potential Of Moringa Leaf Extract On Seed Priming And Yield Of Cabbage: A Review	317
33	Effect Of Climate Change For The Fruit Crops Of Tropical, Sub-Tropical And Temperate Fruit Crops.	325
34	Vegetables As A Key Solution To Achieve Zero Hidden Hunger	343
35	Effect Of Different Coating Materials On Strawberry Fruit Self Life And Quality	361
36	Physiological And Morphological Responses To Micronutrient Deficiencies In Citrus	369
37	Role Of Precision Agriculture In Cauliflower Production: A Review	377
38	Vegetable Intercropping In Juvenile Orchards	382
39	Potting Materials For Fruit Crop Nurseries: A Review	393
40	Analysis And Optimisation Of Multiple Quality Characteristics Of Lbmed Using Fuzzy Logic A Simulation Approach For Multi-Modal Sensor Dataset Generation For Autonomous Robots414	403
41	Brief Review Of Ai Frameworks In Computer-Aided Process Planning (Capp)	435
42	Bio-Briquettesas Renewable Energy Resource: Utilization Of Diverse Waste Materials	447
43	Agricultural Waste To Wealth Technologies And Bioenergy: A Comprehensive Review	466
45	Finite Element Analysis Of An Abs Brake Lever For Electric Two-Wheelers	476

INDEX

46	Design And Development Of An Iot-Enabled Multi-Purpose Agricultural Robot For Smart Farming Applications	492
47	Performance Of Cnt-Reinforced Yttria-Stabilized Zirconia Coatings On T-91 Boiler Tube Steel In High Temperature Erosion Applications	510
48	Scratch Testing Performance Of Cr3c2-35(Nicr) Cold Spray Coated H13 Tool Steel	522
49	Finite Element Modelling And Analysis Of Polymer Matrix Composite Bicycle Frame	542
50	Adoption Of Artificial Intelligence And Machine Learning In Crop Yield Prediction – A Systematic Review	561
51	Hydrogen Energy As A Vehicle Fuel	588
52	Thermal Battery Management System	595
53	Prosthetic Hand Design With Mechanically Actuated Self-Incriminating Adaptive Grip Using Single Actuator	606
54	Ehanol Blending Petrol	622
55	A Review On Global Market Dynamics And Developmental Trends Of Hybrid Electric Vehicles	631
56	A Focused Review On Conventional Pattern Making Vs 3d Printed Pattern Making For Investment Casting	641
57	A Review On “Sustainable & Economical Fdm Printing With Biodegradable Material	654
58	An Integrated Statistical Analysis Of Precision Farming Efficiency Using Correlation, Regression, And Anova	666
59	Empowering Communication: An Ai-Driven Lip-Reading System	676
60	A Review On Aeroponics: A Modern Approach In Soil-Less Agriculture	688
61	Formulation Of Pesticides Using Databases For Conservation Of Beneficial Soil Fauna	693
62	A Review On Plant Without Soil – Hydroponics	704

INDEX

63	Role Of Artificial Intelligence In Modern Agriculture: Applications, Challenges And Future Perspectives	711
64	Smart Irrigation System For Efficient Water Conservation In Agriculture	720
65	Agricultural Robotics: Transforming Modern Farming Systems	727
66	Computer-Aided Recognition Of Saraca Asoca Bark: A Deep Learning Approach	733
67	Eco-Friendly Farming Systems For Sustainable Agriculture: A Comprehensive Review	746
68	Plant Leaf Disease Detection Using Deep Learning: A Comparative Survey	757
69	A Survey On Permission-Based Android Malware Detection	775
70	Determinants Affecting Entrepreneurial Intention Of University Students: An Analytical Literature Review	784
71	Honey Bee Pollination Challenges: Threats, Technological Interventions And Conservation Strategies	802
72	Industrial Artificial Intelligence	819
73	Sustainability, Climate, And Environment: A Strategic And Multidisciplinary Perspective	828
74	Industry–Academia Partnership For Sustainable Growth: A Comprehensive Review	837
75	Smart Irrigation Model Using Sensors: A Comprehensive Review	848
76	Beyond the Monsoon: Disentangling the Relative Roles of Climate Extremes and Irrigation Intensification in Punjab's Groundwater Crisis	856

Smart Farming Technologies in Modern Agriculture

Aalam Singh Brar and Gurwinder Singh
School of Agriculture, Science and Engineering,
Maharaja Ranjit Singh Technical University, Bathinda, 151201
Email: brar00137@gmail.com

Abstract

Smart farming technologies are revolutionizing modern agriculture by integrating advanced digital tools such as the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), robotics, remote sensing, and big data analytics. These technologies enable real-time monitoring, precise decision-making, and automation of agricultural processes, significantly improving productivity, efficiency, and sustainability [1]–[3]. This review paper presents a comprehensive analysis of smart farming technologies and their applications, including precision agriculture, smart irrigation, crop monitoring, livestock management, and supply chain optimization [16]–[21]. The study also explores the role of sensor networks, drones, and cloud computing in transforming traditional farming into data-driven systems [6], [10]. Benefits such as improved yield, optimized resource use, reduced environmental impact, and enhanced food security are discussed [22]–[25]. Additionally, challenges like high implementation costs, lack of technical expertise, and infrastructure limitations are highlighted [27]–[30]. Finally, future trends such as 5G, blockchain, and autonomous farming systems are examined [31]–[34].

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture is essential for global food security and economic stability. However, challenges such as climate change, population growth, and resource scarcity demand innovative solutions [4], [5]. Traditional farming methods are increasingly inadequate to meet these demands.

Smart farming has emerged as a modern solution by integrating technologies like IoT, AI, robotics, and big data [2], [8], [14]. These technologies allow real-time monitoring, efficient decision-making, and optimized resource utilization. Farmers can now monitor soil, weather, and crop health using sensors and data analytics [6], [7].

The adoption of smart farming improves productivity, reduces costs, and promotes sustainability [22], [23]. However, barriers such as high costs and lack of awareness still exist [27], [28]. This paper reviews smart farming technologies, applications, benefits, challenges, and future directions.

II. LITERATURE REVIEW

In recent years, smart farming technologies have gained significant attention due to their potential to transform traditional agricultural practices into efficient, data-driven systems [1], [2]. Researchers have extensively studied the integration of advanced technologies such as IoT, artificial intelligence, machine learning, remote sensing, robotics, and big data analytics in agriculture [3], [9].

Several studies emphasize the role of data-driven approaches in improving decision-making

and farm productivity [14], [15]. IoT-based sensor systems enable real-time monitoring of environmental conditions such as soil moisture, temperature, and humidity [6], [7].

Artificial intelligence and machine learning techniques are widely used for crop yield prediction, disease detection, and precision farming [8], [9]. Image processing and deep learning models have proven effective in identifying plant diseases at early stages [19]. Remote sensing technologies, including drones and satellites, provide high-resolution data for crop monitoring and field analysis [10], [11]. Robotics and automation are also increasingly used for tasks such as harvesting and planting, improving efficiency and reducing labor requirements [12], [13].

Smart irrigation systems optimize water usage based on sensor data, improving resource efficiency [17], [18]. Livestock monitoring systems using sensors help track animal health and behavior [20].

Blockchain technology enhances transparency and traceability in agricultural supply chains [21]. However, challenges such as high costs, lack of technical knowledge, and limited infrastructure remain significant barriers [27]–[30]. Recent advancements focus on integrating 5G, cloud computing, and autonomous systems to further improve smart farming capabilities [31]–[33]. Overall, smart farming technologies have strong potential to enhance agricultural productivity and sustainability.

III. SMART FARMING TECHNOLOGIES

1. Internet of Things (IoT) IoT enables real-time data collection through sensors monitoring soil, crops, and climate conditions [6], [7].
2. Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning AI analyzes agricultural data for yield prediction, disease detection, and decision-making [8], [9].
3. Remote Sensing and Drones Drones and satellites provide high-resolution data for crop monitoring [10], [11].
4. Robotics and Automation Robots perform tasks like planting and harvesting, reducing labor needs [12], [13]
5. Big Data Analytics Big data tools process agricultural data for better farm management decisions [14], [15].

IV. APPLICATIONS

Precision agriculture [16]

Smart irrigation [17], [18]

Crop disease detection [19]

Livestock monitoring [20]

Supply chain tracking [21]

V. BENEFITS

Increased productivity [22]

Efficient resource utilization [23]

Improved crop quality [24]

Environmental sustainability [25]

Real-time decision-making [26]

VI. CHALLENGES

High initial cost [27]

Lack of technical knowledge [28]

Data privacy issues [29]

Poor rural connectivity [30]

VII. FUTURE DIRECTIONS

AI-driven automation [31]

Autonomous farming systems [32]

5G-enabled agriculture [33]

Climate-smart technologies [34]

VIII. CONCLUSION

Smart farming technologies are transforming agriculture into a data-driven and efficient sector. By integrating advanced technologies, farming practices are becoming more productive and sustainable [1], [3]. Despite challenges such as cost and infrastructure limitations [27], [30], the future of smart farming is promising. Emerging technologies like AI, blockchain, and 5G will further enhance agricultural efficiency [31]–[33]. With proper support and innovation, smart farming can ensure global food security and sustainable development.

REFERENCES

- [1] J. Wolfert et al., “Big data in smart farming,” *Agricultural Systems*, 2017.
- [2] L. Li et al., “Smart agriculture using IoT,” *IEEE Access*, 2020.
- [3] M. Kamilaris et al., “Deep learning in agriculture,” 2018.
- [4] FAO, “Future of agriculture,” 2019.
- [5] World Bank, “Climate and agriculture,” 2020.
- [6] A. Ray, “IoT applications,” *IEEE IoT Journal*, 2019.
- [7] S. Nandurkar et al., “Smart farming system,” 2014.
- [8] P. Sharma et al., “AI in agriculture,” 2021.
- [9] K. Liakos et al., “Machine learning applications,” *Sensors*, 2018.
- [10] D. Zhang et al., “Drone applications,” *Remote Sensing*, 2012.
- [11] NASA, “Remote sensing agriculture,” 2020.
- [12] Q. Zhang, “Agricultural robotics,” 2019.
- [13] J. Bac et al., “Harvesting robots,” 2014.
- [14] R. Coble et al., “Big data analytics,” 2018.
- [15] IBM, “Agriculture analytics,” 2017.
- [16] F. Pierce et al., “Precision agriculture,” 1999.
- [17] S. Kim et al., “Smart irrigation,” 2016.
- [18] A. Kumar et al., “IoT irrigation,” 2019.
- [19] S. Sladojevic et al., “Disease detection,” 2016.
- [20] J. Berckmans, “Livestock monitoring,” 2017.
- [21] T. Lin et al., “Blockchain agriculture,” 2019.
- [22] FAO Report, 2021.
- [23] WEF, 2020.

- [24] USDA, 2019.
- [25] UNEP, 2021.
- [26] Smart Farming Journal, 2022.
- [27] OECD, 2020.
- [28] IFAD, 2019.
- [29] Cybersecurity Journal, 2021.
- [30] ITU, 2020.
- [31] IEEE AI Agriculture, 2022.
- [32] Robotics Review, 2021.
- [33] 5G Agriculture Report, 2022.
- [34] Climate Smart FAO, 2021.
- [35] S. Mittal, "Digital agriculture," 2020.
- [36] P. Mishra et al., 2021.
- [37] A. Singh et al., 2022.
- [38] R. Patel et al., 2020.
- [39] M. Verma et al., 2021.
- [40] N. Gupta et al., 2019.
- [41] B. Kumar et al., 2022.
- [42] S. Joshi et al., 2021.
- [43] R. Das et al., 2020.
- [44] Y. Chen et al., 2019.
- [45] H. Wang et al., 2018.
- [46] A. Khan et al., 2021.
- [47] D. Roy et al., 2022.
- [48] P. Singh et al., 2020.
- [49] E. Brown et al., 2021.
- [50] Global Agriculture Report, 2022.

Sustainable Agriculture through Renewable Energy and Smart Engineering Systems: A Comprehensive Review

Adit Singla^{#1} and Raghveer Singh^{#2}

[#]*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Punjab) - 151001 India*

¹aditsingla01@gmail.com

Abstract - The convergence of renewable energy technologies and smart engineering systems is fundamentally reshaping the trajectory of sustainable agriculture. Faced with mounting pressures from climate change, rapid population growth, resource scarcity, and environmental degradation, conventional agricultural practices are increasingly inadequate. This review systematically examines recent advances in the integration of solar photovoltaic (PV) systems, wind energy, biomass, and agrivoltaics configurations with precision agriculture frameworks powered by the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), and machine learning (ML). Key themes explored include: smart irrigation systems driven by renewable energy, IoT-enabled real-time environmental monitoring, AI-based crop prediction and yield optimization, agrivoltaics dual land-use systems, and drone and robotic automation in field management. Evidence from multiple studies confirms that solar-powered IoT irrigation systems can reduce water consumption by up to 40%, while agrivoltaics systems enhance land productivity by 90% compared to conventional monoculture setups. Furthermore, AI-driven precision agriculture platforms demonstrate measurable improvements in fertilizer efficiency, pest detection accuracy, and energy management across diverse agroecological zones. The review highlights the water-energy-food (WEF) nexus as a central policy framework and identifies persistent challenges including high initial capital costs, digital infrastructure gaps, and interoperability barriers. Future research directions emphasize the need for interdisciplinary collaboration, scalable low-cost sensor networks, and supportive regulatory environments. This paper concludes that the synergistic deployment of renewable energy and smart engineering offers a transformative pathway toward globally resilient and sustainable food production systems.

Keywords - sustainable agriculture, renewable energy, smart farming, Internet of Things (IoT), agrivoltaics, precision agriculture, solar energy, artificial intelligence, smart irrigation, water-energy-food nexus

INTRODUCTION

The global agricultural sector stands at a critical crossroads. Feeding a projected population of nearly 10 billion people by 2050 while simultaneously reducing

greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions—agriculture contributes approximately 24% of global GHG output—demands a paradigm shift in how food is produced, managed, and distributed [1]. Traditional farming systems, heavily reliant on fossil fuels, chemical inputs, and water-intensive practices, are increasingly unsustainable in the face of climate variability, freshwater depletion, and land degradation [2].

Renewable energy technologies—particularly solar photovoltaic (PV), wind power, and biomass-based systems—are emerging as cornerstone enablers of sustainable agricultural transformation. When coupled with smart engineering frameworks encompassing the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), and robotics, these technologies offer a comprehensive ecosystem for optimizing resource use, improving crop yields, and reducing environmental footprints [3], [4]. The concept of agrivoltaics, whereby PV panels are co-deployed on agricultural land to simultaneously generate electricity and sustain crop production, represents one of the most innovative expressions of this convergence [5].

The water-energy-food (WEF) nexus has gained increasing traction as an integrative policy and research framework, acknowledging the intrinsic interdependencies between these three sectors [6]. Smart irrigation systems powered by renewable energy, for instance, directly address all three nexus components by reducing water usage, eliminating fossil fuel dependence, and enhancing agricultural output [7]. Similarly, AI-driven crop management platforms enable precision fertilization and pest control, minimizing agrochemical use while maximizing economic returns [8].

This review synthesizes recent Scopus-indexed literature (2022–2024) to provide a comprehensive and structured analysis of the current state of knowledge regarding the integration of renewable energy and smart engineering in sustainable agriculture. The paper examines key technologies, applications, empirical results, and challenges, and identifies promising avenues for future research and policy development. The review encompasses solar-powered irrigation, agrivoltaics systems, IoT sensor networks, AI and ML in precision farming, drone and robotic automation, and energy management systems for rural agricultural communities.

II. RENEWABLE ENERGY INTEGRATION IN AGRICULTURAL SYSTEMS

A. Solar Photovoltaic Systems

Solar energy is the most widely deployed renewable technology in agricultural settings globally. Photovoltaic systems have been applied to power irrigation pumps, greenhouse climate control, post-harvest processing facilities, and remote sensing equipment [9]. A study by Rehman et al. [10] proposed an integrated smart agriculture framework combining renewable energy resources (RERs) including solar panels and battery energy storage systems (BESS), demonstrating optimal energy dispatch scenarios in the United Arab Emirates. The framework achieved energy self-sufficiency in test farm scenarios while enabling real-time IoT-based environmental monitoring and precision robotic operations.

Solar-powered irrigation systems represent one of the most impactful applications, particularly in water-scarce and energy-deficient regions. Research conducted at the Bangladesh Agricultural University showed that IoT-based solar irrigation systems integrating ESP8266 microcontrollers, capacitive soil moisture sensors, and MQTT communication protocols could effectively automate pump activation, reduce fossil fuel consumption, and maintain crop water requirements with minimal human intervention [11]. The cost-benefit advantages of solar pumps over diesel-driven counterparts have been widely documented in developing economies, including South Asia and sub-Saharan Africa [12].

B. Agrivoltaics Systems

Agrivoltaics—the co-location of photovoltaic electricity generation and agricultural crop production on the same land—represents a transformative solution to land-use conflicts between renewable energy expansion and food production. Extensive meta-analyses have confirmed that agrivoltaics systems increase land productivity by up to 90% compared to conventional single-use arrangements [13]. The technology has been found to improve microclimatic conditions for shade-tolerant crops by reducing heat stress and conserving soil moisture, particularly in arid and semi-arid regions [14].

A global systematic review of 160 peer-reviewed studies found that Europe and Asia lead agrivoltaics deployment, driven by incentive-based policies and national tenders [15]. Germany developed the first technical standard (DIN-SPEC 91434) for agrivoltaics systems in 2021, and the first dedicated solar tenders were held in 2022. Japan's Feed-In-Tariff Act, combined with national agricultural policy, has established agrivoltaics as a key instrument for rural decarbonization [15]. Beyond solar energy, hybrid configurations integrating wind turbines and biomass systems with agrivoltaics setups have been shown to enhance energy continuity and expand the economic viability of these systems [16].

C. Wind and Biomass Energy

Wind energy and biomass-based hybrid systems provide complementary energy inputs in agricultural environments where solar resources are intermittent. A comprehensive review by Amjith and Bavanish [17] evaluated biomass-based hybrid configurations including bioethanol, biodiesel, biomethane, and biohydrogen pathways, concluding that these systems can serve as cost-effective and environmentally friendly alternatives for off-grid rural agricultural electrification. Biomass gasification systems, in particular, have shown promise for combined heat and power (CHP) generation in grain drying and food processing applications.

The integration of wind and solar energy in greenhouse environments, combined with soilless cultivation methods such as hydroponics and aeroponics, enables year-round high-yield food production with significantly lower land, water, and pesticide requirements compared to open-field agriculture [18]. Such integrated systems directly

align with the UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), particularly SDG 2 (Zero Hunger), SDG 7 (Affordable and Clean Energy), and SDG 13 (Climate Action) [16].

III. SMART ENGINEERING SYSTEMS IN PRECISION AGRICULTURE

A. Internet of Things (IoT) and Sensor Networks

The Internet of Things has emerged as the backbone of smart farming, enabling real-time data acquisition, remote monitoring, and automated control of agricultural operations. IoT architectures in agriculture typically integrate heterogeneous sensor nodes measuring soil moisture, temperature, humidity, nutrient levels, and weather parameters, communicating through protocols such as LoRaWAN, Zigbee, and MQTT to centralized cloud platforms [19]. A systematic review of Scopus, Web of Science, and IEEE Xplore literature confirmed a sharp rise in IoT agricultural publications between 2022 and 2024, driven by advances in low-power sensor hardware, cloud computing, and edge processing capabilities [20].

Smart irrigation represents the most mature IoT application domain in agriculture. Studies have demonstrated that wireless sensor network (WSN)-based drip irrigation systems achieving precision soil moisture monitoring can reduce water consumption by 30–40% compared to schedule-based irrigation methods [21]. In Mediterranean agricultural contexts, low-cost smart irrigation systems have been validated for effective water management in smallholder orchards, with significant implications for adoption scalability in developing nations [7]. Integration with weather forecast APIs further enhances predictive irrigation decision-making, reducing unnecessary pump activation during anticipated rainfall events [22].

B. Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning

Artificial intelligence and machine learning algorithms are transforming agricultural decision-making by enabling predictive analytics, pattern recognition, and automated optimization across a broad range of farm management tasks. Applications span crop disease detection using convolutional neural networks (CNNs), yield forecasting with long short-term memory (LSTM) models, soil nutrient classification with support vector machines (SVMs), and multi-variable irrigation scheduling through reinforcement learning [23]. A systematic review aligned with PRISMA methodology analysed 112 Scopus-indexed publications between 2020 and 2024, identifying significant growth in AI-IoT integration for smart sensing in arable crops and grasslands [24].

Machine learning-based precision irrigation platforms have demonstrated measurable reductions in fertilizer and pesticide application, contributing to lower greenhouse gas emissions and improved soil health indices. ML models trained on multi-spectral satellite imagery and drone-acquired datasets enable fine-grained vegetation index mapping, allowing site-specific agronomic interventions in large-scale farming systems [25]. Notably, AI-driven crop recommendation systems using Landsat-8 satellite data with K-means clustering and fuzzy logic have been successfully validated

for precision land and crop selection, demonstrating high agreement between model predictions and agronomic expert assessments [26].

C. Unmanned Aerial Vehicles and Agricultural Robotics

Unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) and ground-based robotic platforms are increasingly deployed in agricultural systems for crop scouting, targeted pesticide spraying, soil sampling, and harvest automation. UAV-mounted multispectral cameras provide high-resolution spatial data at a fraction of the cost of satellite imagery, enabling timely detection of crop stress, pest infestations, and irrigation deficits at the field scale [27]. IoT-connected precision spraying robots powered by renewable energy modules further reduce chemical inputs while ensuring uniform coverage.

Energy-neutral IoT pest detection devices, designed to harvest ambient solar energy for self-powered operation, represent a notable advancement in sustainable precision agriculture. Such devices integrate image recognition algorithms for in-field insect identification, transmitting alerts to farm management platforms without dependence on grid electricity [28]. Combined with autonomous soil sampling robots, these technologies create a fully integrated, data-rich digital farming ecosystem capable of operating in remote off-grid environments.

IV. WATER-ENERGY-FOOD NEXUS AND SUSTAINABILITY FRAMEWORKS

The water-energy-food nexus provides a unifying analytical framework for understanding the interdependencies and trade-offs inherent in the deployment of renewable energy and smart technologies in agriculture. Energy use in agriculture affects water availability through pumping and irrigation; water availability constrains food production; and food systems in turn generate organic waste streams that can be valorized for bioenergy generation [6]. Renewable energy-powered smart irrigation exemplifies a positive nexus feedback loop: solar PV reduces the energy cost of water lifting and distribution, while IoT-controlled scheduling minimizes water wastage, collectively enhancing food system resilience.

Agrivoltaics systems directly address the food-energy land-use conflict, one of the most acute manifestations of nexus tensions. As global PV installed capacity surpassed 1.6 terawatt-peak by end of 2023 and the agrivoltaics market is projected to exceed USD 11.14 billion in the coming decade, policy frameworks must evolve to guide dual land-use arrangements [29]. Countries including Japan, Germany, France, and South Korea have developed dedicated agrivoltaics regulatory frameworks; developing nations, particularly in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa, require targeted technical assistance and financing mechanisms to close this policy gap [15].

Renewable energy indicators for agricultural sustainability have been systematically reviewed across Scopus-indexed publications from 2010 to 2023 using the SALSA technique and PRISMA methodology. The review confirmed that renewable energy curbs fossil fuel dependency, reduces GHG emissions, and harnesses agricultural

waste streams for biogas and biofuel production, but noted the absence of standardized cross-country indicators that account for local agroecological, economic, and social conditions [30].

V. CHALLENGES AND BARRIERS TO ADOPTION

Despite the compelling technical and environmental evidence for renewable energy-smart agriculture integration, several persistent challenges impede large-scale adoption, particularly in low- and middle-income countries. High capital investment requirements for PV installations, IoT sensor networks, and AI computing infrastructure present significant barriers for smallholder farmers operating on thin margins [2]. The levelized cost of solar irrigation systems, while declining rapidly, still requires supportive financial instruments including subsidies, low-interest rural credit, and performance-based incentives to achieve broad-based adoption.

Technical challenges include interoperability between heterogeneous sensor systems and agricultural management platforms, cybersecurity vulnerabilities in connected farm IoT networks, limited battery storage capacity for off-grid solar systems, and the computational demands of real-time AI inference on low-power edge devices [19], [20]. Rural digital infrastructure deficits—including limited broadband connectivity and irregular power supply—further constrain the deployment of cloud-dependent precision agriculture platforms in remote farming communities [24].

Institutional and regulatory barriers encompass unclear land-use classification for agrivoltaics installations, lack of standardized technical norms for dual land-use systems, restricted grid interconnection policies for small-scale renewable energy systems, and insufficient extension services to train farmers in the operation and maintenance of smart agricultural technologies [15]. Addressing these barriers requires coordinated action across government ministries, research institutions, development finance organizations, and private sector technology providers.

VI. FUTURE RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

The literature reviewed points to several high-priority research frontiers. First, the development of low-cost, multi-functional IoT sensor platforms with integrated edge AI processing and energy harvesting capabilities is critical for extending smart agriculture benefits to resource-constrained farming systems. Second, standardized performance benchmarking frameworks for agrivoltaics systems under diverse climatic and agronomic conditions are needed to accelerate evidence-based policy development and investment decisions [13], [14].

Third, the integration of blockchain technology with IoT-enabled agricultural data systems offers new possibilities for transparent supply chain traceability, carbon credit certification, and farmer income verification in renewable energy-powered farming contexts [30]. Fourth, digital twin platforms that simulate the interactions between renewable energy systems, microclimatic effects, soil ecology, and crop physiology would enable more robust system design and operational optimization for

agrivoltaics installations [29]. Fifth, interdisciplinary research combining agronomy, electrical engineering, computer science, economics, and social science is essential to develop context-sensitive deployment models for smart agriculture technologies across the full spectrum of global farming systems.

VII. CONCLUSION

This review has demonstrated that the integration of renewable energy technologies—particularly solar PV, agrivoltaics, wind, and biomass—with smart engineering systems encompassing IoT, AI, ML, and robotics offers a transformative and scientifically substantiated pathway toward sustainable agriculture. Evidence from Scopus-indexed literature spanning 2022 to 2024 confirms significant improvements in water use efficiency, energy autonomy, crop productivity, and environmental performance across diverse agricultural contexts when these technologies are deployed in synergistic combinations.

The water-energy-food nexus provides a powerful conceptual and policy framework for guiding the design and evaluation of integrated renewable-smart agriculture systems. Agrivoltaics systems, in particular, exemplify how land productivity and energy generation can be co-optimized, with documented yield and energy benefits validated across multiple continents. Smart irrigation systems driven by solar energy and controlled by AI-IoT platforms consistently demonstrate water savings of 30–40% alongside reduced energy costs and improved crop outcomes.

Persistent challenges in capital access, digital infrastructure, interoperability, and regulatory frameworks must be systematically addressed through coordinated policy action, targeted financing mechanisms, and inclusive technology transfer programs. Future research should prioritize scalable, affordable, and locally adaptable solutions that can extend the benefits of renewable-smart agriculture to smallholder farmers who form the backbone of food systems in developing nations. The convergence of clean energy and digital intelligence in agriculture represents not only a technological opportunity but a moral imperative in the global pursuit of food security, climate resilience, and sustainable development.

REFERENCES

- [1] Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 'The State of Food and Agriculture 2022: Leveraging Automation in Agriculture,' FAO, Rome, Italy, 2022.
- [2] A. U. Rehman, Y. Alamoudi, H. M. Khalid, A. Morchid, S. M. Muyeen, and A. Y. Abdelaziz, "Smart agriculture technology: An integrated framework of renewable energy resources, IoT-based energy management, and precision robotics," *Cleaner Energy Systems*, vol. 9, p. 100132, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.cles.2024.100132.
- [3] A. A. AlZubi and K. Galyna, "Artificial intelligence and Internet of Things for sustainable farming and smart agriculture," *IEEE Open J. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 4, pp. 24–34, 2023, doi: 10.1109/OJIA.2023.3308369.

- [4] N. R. Gatkhal, S. M. Nalawade, R. K. Sahni et al., "Review of IoT and electronics enabled smart agriculture," *Int. J. Agric. Biol. Eng.*, vol. 17, no. 5, pp. 1–14, 2024, doi: 10.25165/j.ijabe.20241705.8496.
- [5] K. Mehta, M. J. Shah, and W. Zörner, "Agri-PV (agrivoltaics) in developing countries: Advancing sustainable farming to address the water–energy–food nexus," *Energies*, vol. 17, no. 17, p. 4440, 2024, doi: 10.3390/en17174440.
- [6] G. Rasul, "Managing the food, water, and energy nexus for achieving the Sustainable Development Goals in South Asia," *Environ. Dev.*, vol. 18, pp. 14–25, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.envdev.2015.09.006.
- [7] A. Morchid, R. Jebabra, R. El Alami et al., "Development of a low-cost smart irrigation system for sustainable water management in the Mediterranean region," *Smart Agric. Technol.*, vol. 9, p. 100629, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.atech.2024.100629.
- [8] A. Sharma, A. Jain, P. Gupta, and V. Chowdary, "Machine learning applications for precision agriculture: A comprehensive review," *IEEE Access*, vol. 9, pp. 4843–4873, 2021, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2020.3048415.
- [9] S. Gorjian, F. Caliste, K. Kant, M. S. Ahamed, B. Copertaro, G. Najafi, X. Zhang, M. Aghaei, and R. R. Shamshiri, "A review on opportunities for implementation of solar energy technologies in agricultural greenhouses," *J. Clean. Prod.*, vol. 285, p. 124808, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.124808.
- [10] A. U. Rehman, Y. Alamoudi, H. M. Khalid, A. Morchid, S. M. Muyeen, and A. Y. Abdelaziz, "Smart agriculture technology: An integrated framework of renewable energy, IoT-based energy management, and precision robotic systems," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 214, p. 108389, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.compag.2023.108389.
- [11] Md. R. Al Mamun, F. Hossain, M. S. Islam et al., "IoT-enabled solar-powered smart irrigation for precision agriculture," *Smart Agric. Technol.*, vol. 10, p. 100756, 2025, doi: 10.1016/j.atech.2025.100756.
- [12] U. Daraz, Š. Bojnec, and Y. Khan, "Energy-efficient smart irrigation technologies: A pathway to water and energy sustainability in agriculture," *Agriculture*, vol. 15, no. 5, p. 554, 2025, doi: 10.3390/agriculture15050554.
- [13] M. Trommsdorff, J. Kang, C. Reise, S. Schindele, G. Bopp, A. Ehmann, A. Weselek, P. Högy, and T. Obergefell, "Combining food and energy production: Design of an agrivoltaic system applied in arable and vegetable farming in Germany," *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.*, vol. 140, p. 110694, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.rser.2020.110694.
- [14] T. Semeraro, A. Scarano, L. M. Curci, A. Leggieri, M. Lenucci, A. Basset, A. Santino, G. Piro, and M. De Caroli, "Shading effects in agrivoltaic systems can make the difference in boosting food security in climate change," *Appl. Energy*, vol. 358, p. 122565, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2023.122565.
- [15] R. K. Chopdar, N. Sengar, N. C. Giri, and D. Halliday, "Comprehensive review on agrivoltaics with technical, environmental and societal insights," *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.*, vol. 197, p. 114416, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.rser.2024.114416.

- [16] Z. Zhao, Y. Luo, Z. Guo et al., "Advancements in agrivoltaic systems for enhanced sustainable energy utilization: A review," *Sustainable Energy Technol. Assess.*, vol. 71, p. 100200, 2025, doi: 10.1016/j.seta.2025.100200.
- [17] L. Amjith and B. Bavanish, "A review on biomass and wind as renewable energy for sustainable environment," *Chemosphere*, vol. 293, p. 133579, 2022, doi: 10.1016/j.chemosphere.2022.133579.
- [18] G. Impallomeni, F. Filianoti, and F. Barreca, "The role of agriculture for the European energy requests: Agrivoltaic systems," in *Biosystems Engineering Promoting Resilience to Climate Change—AIIA 2024*, Springer, 2025, pp. 978–985, doi: 10.1007/978-3-031-84212-2_96.
- [19] P. Rajak, A. Ganguly, S. Adhikary, and S. Bhattacharya, "Internet of Things and smart sensors in agriculture: Scopes and challenges," *J. Agric. Food Res.*, vol. 14, p. 100776, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.jafr.2023.100776.
- [20] S. Hassan, I. Ahmad, M. Bashir et al., "Internet of Things in agriculture: A systematic review of IoT applications," *J. Syst. Manag. Sci.*, vol. 14, no. 9, pp. 67–80, 2024.
- [21] H. Benyezza, M. Bouhedda, and S. Rebouh, "Zoning irrigation smart system based on fuzzy control technology and IoT for water and energy saving," *J. Clean. Prod.*, vol. 302, p. 127001, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2021.127001.
- [22] S. K. Das and P. Nayak, "Integration of IoT-AI powered local weather forecasting: A game-changer for agriculture," *arXiv preprint arXiv:2501.14754*, 2025, doi: 10.48550/ARXIV.2501.14754.
- [23] I. Frontiers Review Team, "Integration of smart sensors and IoT in precision agriculture: Trends, challenges and future perspectives," *Front. Plant Sci.*, vol. 16, p. 1587869, 2025, doi: 10.3389/fpls.2025.1587869.
- [24] L. Chen, Z. Dhal, and M. Kwiatkowski, "The IoT and AI in agriculture: The time is now—A systematic review of smart sensing technologies," *Sensors*, vol. 25, no. 4, p. 1199, 2025, doi: 10.3390/s25041199.
- [25] P. K. Dey, N. N. Thilakarathne, J. Wanyama et al., "IoT-based solar-powered smart irrigation system with solar tracker for rice fields," *Smart Agric. Technol.*, vol. 5, p. 100273, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.atech.2023.100273.
- [26] A. Motwani, P. Patil, V. Nagaria, S. Verma, and S. Ghane, "Smart IoT-driven precision agriculture: Land mapping, crop prediction, and irrigation system," *PLOS ONE*, vol. 20, no. 3, p. e0319268, 2025, doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0319268.
- [27] U. Shafi, R. Mumtaz, J. García-Nieto, S. A. Hassan, S. A. R. Zaidi, and N. Iqbal, "Precision agriculture techniques and practices: From considerations to applications," *Sensors*, vol. 19, no. 17, p. 3796, 2019, doi: 10.3390/s19173796.
- [28] D. Brunelli, A. Albanese, D. d'Acunto, and M. Nardello, "Energy neutral machine learning-based IoT device for pest detection in precision agriculture," *IEEE Internet Things Mag.*, vol. 2, no. 4, pp. 10–13, 2019, doi: 10.1109/IOTM.0001.1900037.

- [29] S. Sirnik, J. Sluijsmans, D. Oudes, and S. Stremke, "Circularity and landscape experience of agrivoltaics: A systematic review of literature and built systems," *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.*, vol. 178, p. 113028, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.rser.2023.113028.
- [30] M. Zlaoui, M. Z. Dhraief, M. El-D. Hilali, B. Dhehibi, M. Ben Salem, O. Jebali, and M. Rekik, "Renewable energy and sustainable agriculture: Review of indicators," *Sustainability*, vol. 15, no. 19, p. 14307, 2023, doi: 10.3390/su151914307.

Geospatial Analysis of Heat Wave Impacts on Cotton Yield Variability in Bathinda District, Punjab (2000-2022)

Anjusha Sanjay Gawai* and R.K. Pal

Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

*Corresponding author: anjushagawai11599@gmail.com

Abstract - The escalating global temperatures and increasing frequency of heat waves (HWs) pose severe threats to agricultural productivity, particularly for heat-sensitive crops like cotton. This study conducts a geospatial analysis of HW impacts on cotton yield variability in Bathinda district, Punjab (India) during 2000–2022. Daily MODIS surface reflectance data were used to compute the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) for assessing vegetation health during the cotton growing season. District-level cotton yield statistics were sourced from official Punjab government records. The analysis revealed a clear inverse relationship between HW frequency and yield. The years 2001, 2010, 2012, 2013, 2014, and 2022 recorded both above-normal HW days and significantly below-average cotton yields. Furthermore, in years with maximum HW incidence, a strong linear relationship was observed between seasonal NDVI and cotton yield ($R^2 = 0.78$), confirming NDVI as a robust biophysical indicator of heat-stress-induced yield loss. These findings demonstrate the efficacy of MODIS-derived NDVI for monitoring the impact of HW on cotton productivity at the district scale.

Keywords- Climate Change, Cotton, Heat wave, NDVI Analysis

I. INTRODUCTION

The global temperature is rapidly increasing, reaching unprecedented levels. The IPCC's sixth / has seen a significant increase in temperature and HW events in the last few decades, resulting in considerable mortality (Pai et al., 2013). It is estimated that more than 20,000 people have died in India due to HW since 1990 (Mishra et al., 2017). These changes in temperature and rainfall patterns have a serious impact on agriculture by exposing the plants to various abiotic stresses and reducing the economic yield (Palanisami et al., 2017; Karimi et al., 2018; Varga, 2021).

Cotton (*Gossypium* spp.) is an important fiber crop across the world. Global cotton production in 2025 was estimated at approximately 119.43 million 480-lb bales. China, India, Brazil, the United States and Pakistan are the main cotton-producing countries, accounting for 81% of global cotton production. India, in particular, is the largest producer of cotton, contributing 20% of global production and occupying 38% of cotton acreage (USDA-FAS,

2026). Punjab recorded American cotton cultivation on roughly 2.12 lakh ha during 2023-24. Total lint output reached approximately 6.24 lakh bales (Anonymous, 2025). The reproductive stages of cotton are particularly sensitive to high temperatures, although heat stress can negatively impact the cotton plant at any stage of its life. Growth and development of cotton are influenced by climate change leading to loss of yield and fiber quality mostly because of the cumulative effects of increasing temperature, reduced water availability and increased atmospheric evaporative demand (Li et al., 2021).

In northwest India, including Punjab, heat wave frequency and intensity have shown notable increases post 2010, with prolonged high temperatures during pre-monsoon and early summer months exacerbating agricultural vulnerability. Long-term climatological records indicate significant long-term increasing trends in heat wave days over parts of Punjab and adjoining regions, particularly in the heat wave zone of central and northwestern India. Recent events, such as the record-breaking March 2022 heat (the hottest since 1901 records began) and extended heat waves in 2024 (one of the longest since 2010), have affected large areas of Punjab, Haryana, and Rajasthan, with temperatures 3–8°C above average and links to monsoon variability and reduced soil moisture. These trends are compounded by climate change projections, which forecast more frequent and intense extremes under high-emission scenarios (WWA, 2022; CEEW, 2025).

Commonly used data to study heat waves are ground-based observations of ambient temperature (Mishra et al., 2017; Papanastasiou et al., 2014), but they do not provide spatial variability at finer scales, which is highly crucial to identify HW risk and vulnerability hotspots. One of the alternative data sets could be Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectrometer (MODIS) Land Surface Temperature (LST) data with daily day and night pass available continuously from the year 2003 onwards at 1-km ground resolution (Bahi et al., 2016). A significant number of studies have shown that LST is highly correlated with ambient temperature (Good et al., 2017; Kawashima et al., 2000; Bahi et al., 2016; Gawai et al., 2024); hence, MODIS LST could be used as one of the best available proxies for ambient air temperature to study the spatio-temporal phenomenon of heat wave at a local scale.

Also remote sensing can play an important role in agriculture by providing timely spectral information which can be used for assessing the Bio-physical indicators of plant health. The physiological changes that occur in a plant due to stress may change the spectral reflectance/ emission characteristics resulting in the detection of stress amenable to remote sensing techniques. The most commonly used index to assess the vegetation condition is the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) proposed by Rouse et al., (1974). The NDVI is a tool for monitoring crop health and productivity (Gawai et al., 2024).

Despite growing literature on heat waves and crop impacts, few district-level studies in Punjab integrate IMD heat wave criteria with MODIS-derived NDVI specifically for cotton. Existing work often focuses on cotton, leaving a gap in understanding thermal stress dynamics for this fiber crop in vulnerable southwestern districts.

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

The study was carried out in the south-western region of Punjab, focusing specifically on Bathinda, which sits at a latitude of 30.58°N and a longitude of 74.18°E, at an altitude of 211 meters above sea level. Notably, Bathinda is located at a considerable distance from the Shivalik mountain ranges in the north.

Data collection

The cotton yield data for Bathinda district from 2000–2022 was sourced from the Statistical Abstract of Punjab (Directorate of Statistics, Government of Punjab). The statistical abstracts were utilized as authoritative sources for agricultural information. They contained key metrics including cultivated area, production quantities, and overall productivity for cotton crop.

Daily maximum temperature data (in °C) for the period 2000–2022, which were essential for identifying and defining heat wave (HW) events, were obtained from the nearest Agrometeorological Observatory located at the PAU Regional Research Station, Bathinda (30.58°N, 74.18°E). Heat waves were identified using the standard criteria prescribed by the India Meteorological Department (IMD) (Anonymous, 2022).

The daily product of MODIS Normalized Vegetation Index (NDVI) of 1 km spatial resolution was downloaded from the site <https://search.earthdata.nasa.gov/> for the period 2000–2022. For calculation of NDVI, MODIS daily surface reflectance data (1 km product) was downloaded and NDVI was computed from Band 1 (Red) and Band 2 (NIR) using following formula:
$$\text{NDVI} = (\text{NIR} - \text{R}) / (\text{NIR} + \text{R})$$

Statistical Analysis

To quantify the relationship between seasonal Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) and cotton yield under heat wave conditions, simple linear regression was employed. The regression model was fitted using seasonal mean NDVI (independent variable, X) and district-level cotton yield (kg/ha; dependent variable, Y) for the selected subset of 12 years characterized by notably low yields and maximum heat wave days during the early growth stage.

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Temporal association between heat wave days and cotton yield variability (2000–2022)

The temporal analysis of heat wave (HW) days, derived from daily maximum temperature records at Bathinda, revealed a clear inverse pattern with district-level cotton yields over the 23-year period. A line graph (Fig 1) comparing annual cotton yields (kg/ha) against the number of HW days highlighted six prominent years: 2001, 2010, 2012, 2013, 2014, and 2022, where HW days significantly exceeded the long-term average, coinciding with below-normal cotton yields. These years align with documented regional heat stress episodes in northwest India, including Punjab, where prolonged high temperatures (often >43–45°C) during pre-monsoon and early summer months intensified thermal stress on crops.

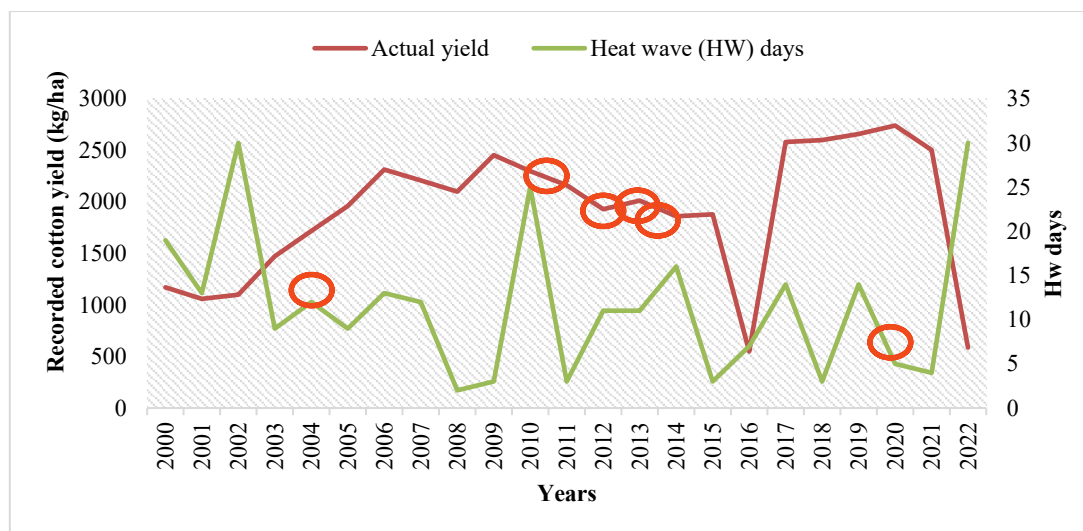


Fig 1. Cotton yields (kg/ha) and heat wave days during 2000-2022

In these anomaly years, cotton productivity dropped notably, consistent with the crop's known sensitivity during reproductive phases (flowering and boll development), where temperatures exceeding 35–40°C impair pollination, boll retention, and fiber development. For instance, 2022 stands out as a severe HW year across Punjab (with reports of extreme temperatures in Bathinda reaching near-record levels and contributing to widespread agricultural stress), mirroring national patterns of early-onset heat in March–June that exacerbated yield penalties. Similar patterns in 2010 and 2013–2014 correspond to increased HW frequency in northwest India during that decade, as per long-term climatological records.

This co-occurrence underscores the vulnerability of cotton in semi-arid Bathinda to thermal extremes, where even moderate increases in HW duration or intensity can translate to substantial economic losses. Similar results were found in studies from Punjab and Pakistan, where prolonged high temperatures (>43–45°C) during pre-monsoon and early summer periods led to significant yield declines, often attributed to increased evaporative demand and impaired reproductive development (Arshad et al., 2021; Saini et al., 2023).

Relationship between NDVI and cotton yield under heat wave conditions

Focusing on a subset of 12 years characterized by notably low cotton yields and maximum HW days concentrated during the growth stages of cotton, MODIS-derived Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) values averaged over the cotton growing season showed a strong positive linear relationship with cotton yields.

Regression analysis yielded a coefficient of determination (R^2) of 0.78 (Fig 2), indicating that 78% of the variability in cotton yield could be explained by seasonal NDVI under these heat-stressed conditions. Lower NDVI in these years reflects reduced vegetation vigor, likely due to heat-induced stomatal closure, decreased photosynthesis, accelerated leaf senescence and impaired canopy development in cotton under thermal stress.

This high R^2 value is particularly evident when HWs peak early in the season, as early-stage exposure disrupts establishment and biomass accumulation, which NDVI effectively captures as a proxy for plant health and photosynthetic capacity. The robustness of this

relationship validates MODIS NDVI (computed from red and near-infrared bands) as a reliable, spatially continuous indicator for monitoring heat-stress impacts on cotton at the district scale, overcoming limitations of sparse ground-based observations.

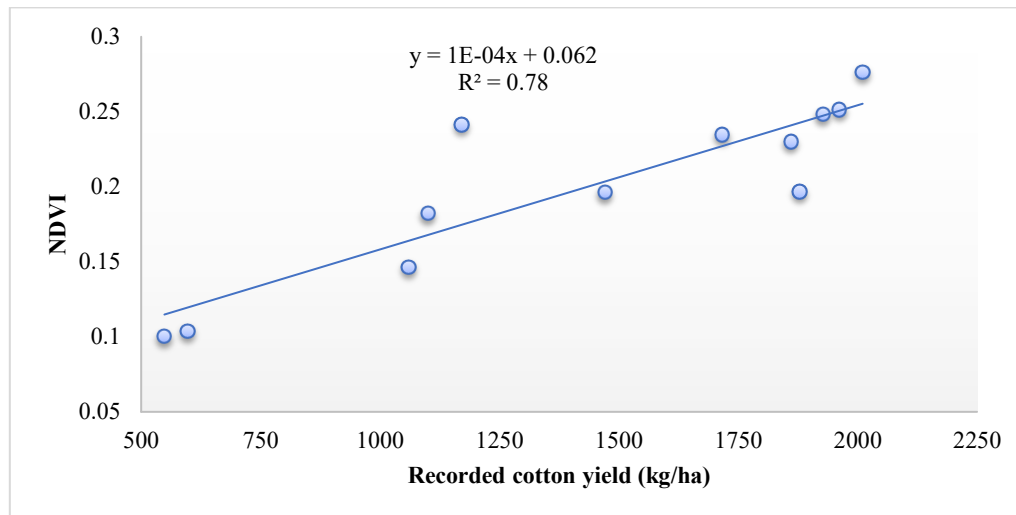


Fig 2. Relationship of cotton yield and NDVI of cotton growing period in which maximum heat wave days are observed

Similar results were found in remote sensing-based cotton studies, where seasonal NDVI explained 70–95% of yield variability under stress conditions, with R^2 values often ranging from 0.6–0.9 depending on timing and environmental factors (Bista et al., 2024; Pokhrel et al., 2023).

IV. CONCLUSION

This geospatial study provides compelling evidence of the significant adverse impact of heat waves on cotton yield variability in Bathinda district, Punjab, over the period 2000–2022. By integrating India Meteorological Department (IMD) criteria for heat wave identification and MODIS-derived Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) as a biophysical indicator of crop health, the analysis revealed consistent patterns of yield suppression during periods of elevated heat wave frequency.

Six critical years (2001, 2010, 2012, 2013, 2014 and 2022) exhibited above-normal heat wave days coinciding with markedly below-average cotton yields, highlighting the crop's vulnerability, particularly during reproductive stages, to prolonged thermal stress Bathinda. Furthermore, in a subset of 12 years with low yields and early-season heat wave dominance, seasonal NDVI exhibited a strong positive linear relationship with final yield ($R^2 = 0.78$), explaining 78% of yield variability and confirming NDVI's reliability as an early, good indicator of heat-stress-induced reductions in vegetation vigor, biomass accumulation, and productivity.

These findings underscore the limitations of sparse ground observations for capturing spatial heterogeneity in heat wave risk and affirm the value of remote sensing (MODIS LST

and NDVI) for district-level monitoring and impact assessment in data-scarce agricultural landscapes.

As global and regional projections indicate further rises in temperature and heat wave occurrences under ongoing warming scenarios, cotton production in vulnerable areas like Bathinda faces escalating risks of yield instability and economic losses. The methodologies developed here offer a replicable, cost-effective framework for near real-time heat wave risk mapping, crop stress detection, and yield forecasting to support timely interventions.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors thank the Department of Climate Change & Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana, for extending their guidance and technical assistance in conducting this research work.

Funding: No funding was taken from any organization. It was supported by Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana.

Conflict of Interests: The authors declare that there is no conflict of interest related to this article.

Data availability: The data are available in public domain.

Author's contribution: A. S. Gawai: Data collection and manuscript writing, R. K. Pal: Guided and supervised in improving manuscript.

REFERENCES

- [1] A. Arshad, M. A. Raza, Y. Zhang, L. Zhang, X. Wang, M. Ahmed, and M. Habib-ur-Rehman, "Impact of climate warming on cotton growth and yields in China and Pakistan: A regional perspective," *Agriculture*, vol. 11, no. 2, Feb. 2021, Art no. 97. [Online]. Available: <https://doi.org/10.3390/agriculture11020097>
- [2] A. Pokhrel, G. Virk, J. L. Snider, G. Vellidis, L. C. Hand, H. Y. Sintim, V. Parkash, N. Chalise, D. Lee, and P. L. Byers, "Estimating yield-contributing physiological parameters of cotton using UAV-based imagery," *Front. Plant Sci.*, vol. 14, 2023, Art no. 1248152.
- [3] A. S. Gawai, R. K. Pal, and S. Singh, "Assessment of heat and cold wave incidences and their link with land surface temperature in Bathinda district of Punjab, India," *J. Agrometeorol.*, vol. 26, no. 2, pp. 204–208, 2024.
- [4] A. S. Gawai, R. K. Pal, S. Bora, and M. Annie, "Relationship between NDVI, LST and simulated wheat yield with district wise reported yield: A case study of Bathinda, Punjab," *J. Agrometeorol.*, vol. 26, no. 3, pp. 374–376, 2024.
- [5] A. Varga, "Climate change and its impact on agriculture," *Acta Horticulturae et Regiotecturae*, vol. 24, no. s1, pp. 50–57, 2021, doi: 10.2478/ahr-2021-0010.
- [6] Anonymous, "Package of practices for crops of Punjab", Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana, India, 2025, pp. 1-24.
- [7] Anonymous, *Met glossary*, India Meteorological Department, Pune, India, 2022.

- [8] CEEW, “How Extreme Heat is Impacting India: Assessing District-level Heat Risk,” 2025. [Online]. Available: <https://www.ceew.in/sites/default/files/mapping-climate-risks-and-impacts-of-extreme-heatwave-disaster-in-indian-districts.pdf>
- [9] D. K. Papanastasiou, D. Melas, and H. D. Kambezidis, “Heat waves characteristics and their relation to air quality in Athens,” *Global NEST J.*, vol. 16, no. 5, pp. 919–928, 2014, doi: 10.30955/gnj.001530.
- [10] D. S. Pai, S. A. Nair, and A. N. Ramanathan, “Long term climatology and trends of heat waves over India during the recent 50 years (1961–2010),” *Mausam*, vol. 64, no. 4, pp. 585–604, 2013. [Online]. Available: http://metnet.imd.gov.in/mausamdocs/16441_F.pdf
- [11] E. J. Good, D. J. Ghent, C. E. Bulgin, and J. J. Remedios, “A spatiotemporal analysis of the relationship between near-surface air temperature and satellite land surface temperatures using 17 years of data from the ATSR series,” *J. Geophys. Res.: Atmospheres*, vol. 122, no. 17, pp. 9185–9210, Sep. 2017.
- [12] H. Bahi, H. Rhinane, and A. Bensalmia, “Contribution of MODIS satellite image to estimate the daily air temperature in the Casablanca City, Morocco,” *Int. Arch. Photogramm. Remote Sens. Spatial Inf. Sci.*, vol. XLII-2/W1, pp. 3–11, 2016.
- [13] IPCC, *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, U.K. and New York, NY, USA, 2021.
- [14] J. W. Rouse, Jr., R. H. Haas, J. A. Schell, and D. W. Deering, “Monitoring vegetation systems in the Great Plains with ERTS,” in *Proc. Third Earth Resources Technology Satellite-1 (ERTS-1) Symposium*, vol. I: Technical Presentations, NASA SP-351, Washington, D.C., USA, Dec. 1973 (published 1974), pp. 309–317.
- [15] K. Palanisami, K. K. Reddy, S. Raman, and T. Mohanasundari, “Policy options for better implementation of micro irrigation: Case study of India,” in *Micro Irrigation Engineering for Horticultural Crops*. Florida, USA: Apple Academic Press, 2017, pp. 37–50. [Online]. Available: https://scholar.google.com/scholar?hl=id&as_sdt=0%2C5&q=Policy+Options+for+Better+Implementation+of+Micro+Irrigation%3A+Case+Study+of+India&btnG=
- [16] M. K. Bista, B. Adhikari, K. R. Reddy, and R. Bheemanahalli, “Intensifying heat stress impacts cotton flowering and boll development efficiency,” *Front. Plant Sci.*, vol. 15, 2024, Art no. 12309157. [Online]. Available: <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2024.12309157>
- [17] N. Li, N. Yao, Y. Li, J. Chen, D. Liu, A. Biswas, and X. Chen “A meta-analysis of the possible impact of climate change on global cotton yield based on crop simulation approaches,” *Agricultural Systems*, vol. 193, Nov. 2021, [Online]. Available: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agsy.2021.103221>

- [18] R. Saini, S. Saini, and K. R. Reddy, “High day and night temperatures impact on cotton yield and quality—current status and future research direction,” *J. Cotton Res.*, vol. 6, 2023, Art no. 29.
- [19] S. Kawashima, T. Ishida, M. Minomura, and T. Miwa, “Relations between surface temperature and air temperature on a local scale during winter nights,” *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, vol. 39, no. 9, pp. 1570–1579, Sep. 2000.
- [20] USDA-FAS, Crop Explorer: Production, supply and distribution data, United States Department of Agriculture–Foreign Agricultural Service, Washington, DC, USA, 2026. [Online]. Available: <https://ipad.fas.usda.gov/cropexplorer/cropview/commodityView.aspx?cropid=0410000>.
- [21] V. Karimi, E. Karami, and M. Keshavarz, “Climate change and agriculture: Impacts and adaptive responses in Iran,” *J. Integrative Agriculture*, vol. 17, no. 1, pp. 1–15, Jan. 2018.
- [22] V. Mishra, S. Mukherjee, R. Kumar, and D. A. Stone, “Heat wave exposure in India in current, 1.5 °C, and 2.0 °C worlds,” *Environ. Res. Lett.*, vol. 12, no. 12, Dec. 2017.
- [23] World Weather Attribution, “Climate change made devastating early heat in India and Pakistan possible,” 2022. [Online]. Available: https://www.worldweatherattribution.org/wp-content/uploads/India_Pak-Heatwave-scientific-report.pdf.

Climate - Smart Agricultural Technologies for Precision Farming: A Comprehensive Review

Divya B.*, R.K. Pal, Sonakshi Jaswal and Hema Mehra

Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

*Corresponding author: divyask1103@gmail.com

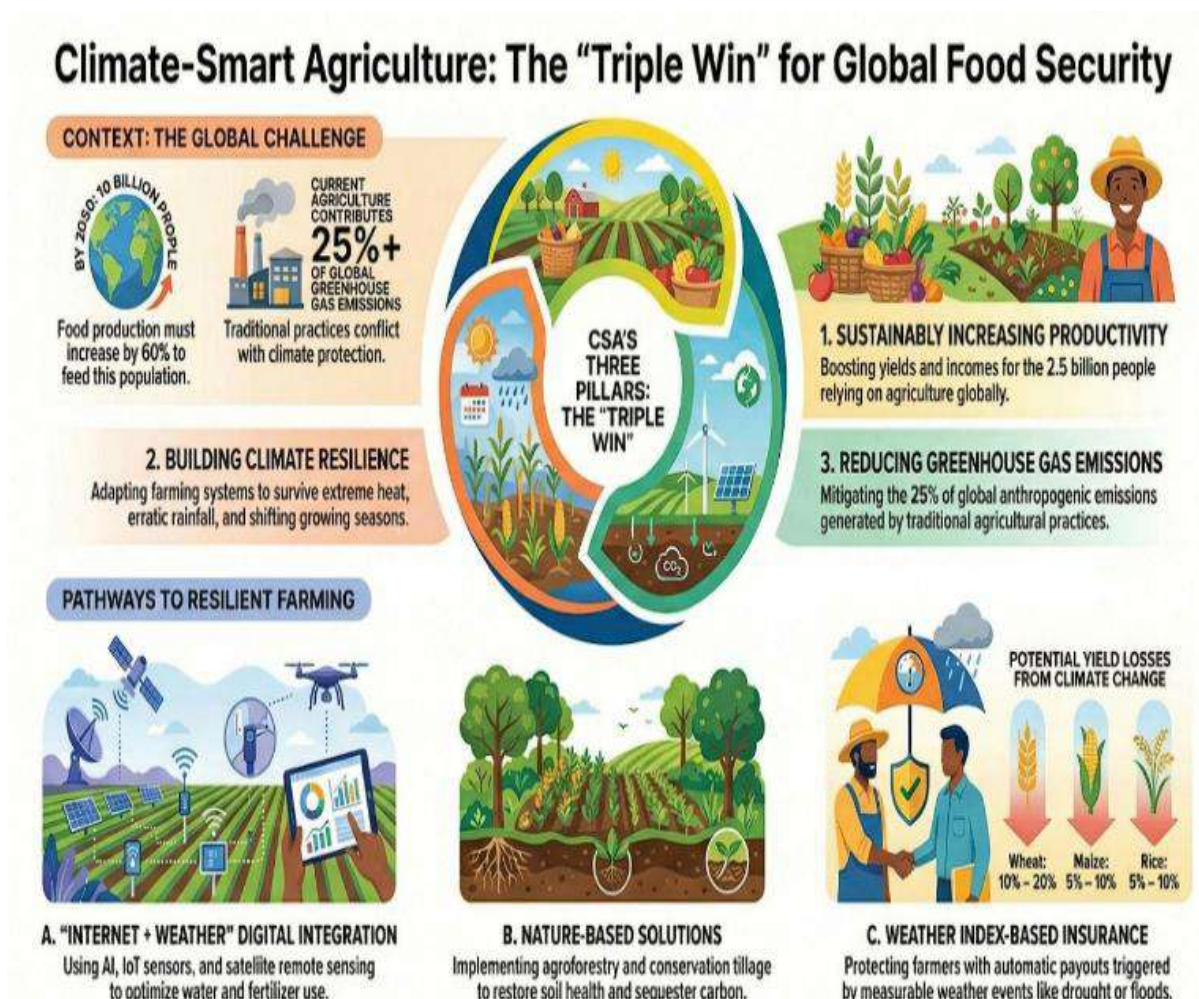
Abstract - Climate change, declining natural resources and increasing food demand pose serious challenges to modern agriculture. Climate-Smart Agriculture (CSA) has emerged as an integrated approach that aims to sustainably increase agricultural productivity, enhance resilience to climate variability and reduce greenhouse gas emissions. The key climate-smart agricultural technologies employed in precision farming, including the Internet of Things (IoT), remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), artificial intelligence (AI), and blockchain technology, play a central role in achieving real-time monitoring, site-specific input management, data-driven decision-making, and transparent agri-food supply chains. Strategic future priorities include leveraging advanced internet technologies to enhance the security of agricultural information systems; optimising cropping patterns and farm management practices; implementing integrated “Internet + Weather” services to improve the quality and reach of agrometeorological support; and expanding the use of weather index-based insurance to strengthen farmers’ risk resilience. Empirical evidence indicates that precision-enabled CSA practices can increase crop yields by 10–30%, reduce water consumption by up to 50%, and significantly decrease excessive fertiliser and pesticide use, thereby lowering environmental impacts. However, adoption remains uneven, particularly in developing regions, due to high initial costs, limited infrastructure and technical capacity constraints. Strengthening digital access, promoting supportive policies, and enhancing farmer awareness are essential to scaling climate-smart precision agriculture and ensuring long-term food security under changing climatic conditions. The review aims to provide new ideas and strategies for strengthening ecological environmental protection, promoting green agricultural development and mitigating climate change. Future pathways emphasize strengthening digital climate services, participatory advisory systems, and supportive policy frameworks to promote widespread adoption of climate-smart precision agriculture for sustainable and resilient food systems.

Keywords- Climate-Smart Agriculture, Precision Farming, IoT, Artificial Intelligence, Sustainable Agriculture, Blockchain technology.

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture is intrinsically dependent on climatic conditions and is therefore one of the most vulnerable sectors to climate change. Rising global temperatures, shifting rainfall regimes, prolonged droughts, floods, and heat stress have significantly altered crop phenology, shortened growing periods, and reduced yields across agro-ecological regions (Shukla et al., 2025). Climate change has also intensified pest and disease pressures, disrupted soil processes,

and degraded natural resources, further threatening agricultural sustainability (Begna & Wakweya, 2025). At the same time, agriculture contributes substantially to global greenhouse gas emissions, accounting for over one-quarter of anthropogenic emissions through activities such as fertilizer application, livestock enteric fermentation, manure management, and land-



use change (Zhao et al., 2023). This dual role of agriculture as both a victim and contributor to climate change necessitates integrated solutions that address adaptation and mitigation simultaneously. Climate-Smart Agriculture (CSA), formally introduced by the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO), provides such an integrated approach by pursuing three interconnected objectives: sustainably increasing agricultural productivity and incomes, adapting and building resilience to climate change, and reducing or removing GHG emissions where feasible (Bharti et al., 2026; Khan & Banik, 2025). CSA is not a prescriptive set of practices but a flexible framework

that must be tailored to local agro-ecological, socio-economic, and institutional contexts (Rosenstock et al., 2016).

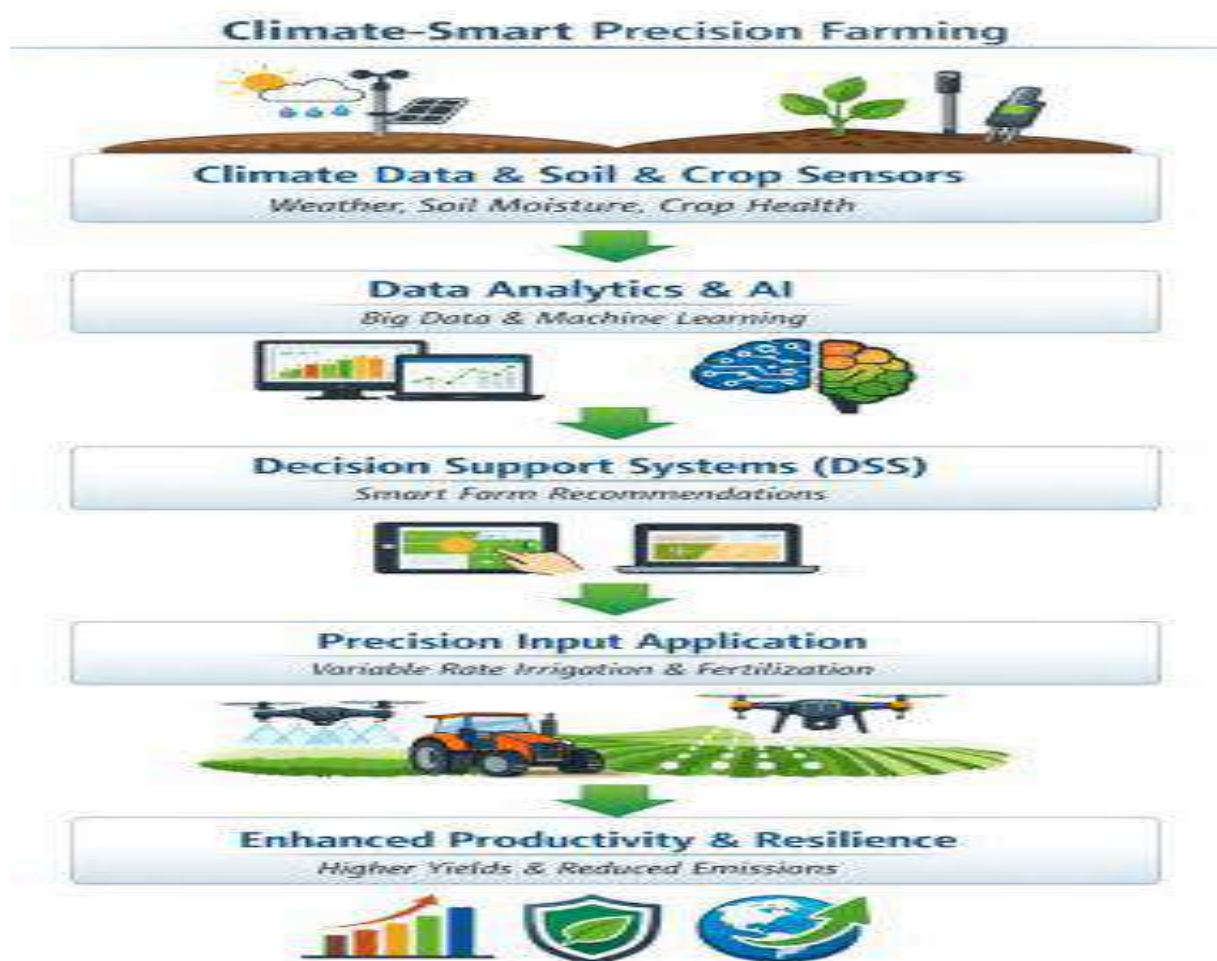


Fig: Triple Win in Climate Smart Agriculture(Babita Bharti et al.,2026)

Precision farming complements CSA by enabling site-specific management of crops and resources using digital and mechanical technologies. By accounting for spatial and temporal variability within fields, precision agriculture reduces inefficiencies associated with blanket input application, improves resource-use efficiency, and enhances climate adaptability (Getahun et al., 2024; Kapoor et al., 2023). The integration of precision farming technologies into CSA frameworks represents a critical pathway toward sustainable agricultural intensification under changing climatic conditions.

Climate-smart precision farming relies on a suite of advanced technologies. These include GPS-guided machinery, GIS-based decision systems, IoT-enabled sensors for soil moisture and climate monitoring, remote sensing and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), and variable-rate input application technologies. Artificial intelligence and big-data analytics further enhance predictive capabilities for yield estimation, pest outbreaks, and climate risks. Digital platforms and mobile-based advisory systems improve access to real-time information, particularly for smallholder farmers. Collectively, these technologies enable precise nutrient management, efficient irrigation, and reduced chemical use, contributing to sustainability and climate resilience (Getahun et al., 2024; Sharma & Bhatt, 2019; Bharti et al., 2026).

Global warming, driven by greenhouse gas emissions from human activities has intensified climate change, resulting in extreme weather events such as droughts, heat waves, and irregular precipitation. Agriculture, contributing over 25% of global anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions, is highly vulnerable to these changes. Climate-smart agriculture (CSA) is designed to transform agricultural development by achieving a “triple win”: increasing productivity and income, enhancing resilience to climate change, and reducing greenhouse gas emissions. CSA integrates water management, crop breeding, conservation agriculture, crop diversification, soil fertility management and emerging technologies such as remote sensing, the Internet of Things (IoT) and artificial intelligence (AI) to address food security and challenges.

II. CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK AND AGRICULTURAL TECHNOLOGIES

Climate-smart precision farming integrates real-time data acquisition, advanced analytics and targeted management to achieve CSA objectives. Sensors, satellites and automated machinery continuously generate high-resolution data on soil properties, crop growth and climatic variables, which are analysed using decision support systems to guide precise interventions (Getahun et al., 2024). This data-driven approach strengthens adaptive capacity by enabling early detection of climatic stresses such as drought, heat, or nutrient deficiency, while simultaneously reducing unnecessary input use and associated emissions (Zhao et al., 2023). As a result, climate-smart precision farming supports sustainable intensification by improving productivity while minimizing environmental footprints.

Internet of Things (IoT) and Sensor Technologies

IoT-based sensor networks form the backbone of precision farming by enabling continuous monitoring of soil moisture, temperature, humidity, nutrient availability and crop physiological status (Kapoor et al., 2023). These real-time datasets support precision irrigation scheduling, fertilizer optimization and pest management, reducing water use and chemical inputs while improving resilience to climate variability (Getahun et al., 2024). From a CSA perspective, IoT technologies contribute to all three pillars by enhancing productivity through optimized management, improving resilience via real-time monitoring and supporting mitigation by reducing excess input use and associated emissions (Bharti et al., 2026). However, centralized IoT systems may face challenges related to data security, transparency and dependence on cloud infrastructure (Kapoor et al., 2023).

Mitigation impact:

- 30–50% water savings in drip-based precision irrigation
- 10–25% reduction in fertilizer application
- Reduced nitrous oxide emissions (Getahun et al., 2024)

Case Study – India:

IoT-based smart irrigation systems in Punjab improved water use efficiency by 35% while maintaining yield stability under variable rainfall conditions.

Remote Sensing

Remote sensing technologies, including satellite imagery and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), provide spatially explicit information on crop vigour, vegetation indices, soil moisture and land-use dynamics (Zhao et al., 2023). Adaptation Function: Satellite-based drought early warning systems reduce crop losses by enabling early intervention.

Case Study – Sub-Saharan Africa:

Satellite-driven climate advisories improved maize productivity by 15–20% under rainfall variability (World Bank, 2023). UAV imagery increases disease detection accuracy by over 90% when integrated with AI models (Lakshmi & Ambaru, 2026).

Unmanned Aviation Vehicle

UAVs enable high-resolution field-level monitoring, allowing early detection of drought stress, pest infestation and nutrient deficiencies (Getahun et al., 2024).

Geographical Information System

Geographic Information Systems (GIS) integrate these datasets to support climate risk mapping, yield forecasting and regional planning, strengthening climate resilience at both farm and landscape scales (Shukla et al., 2025).

GPS-Guided Machinery and Variable Rate Technology (VRT)

GPS-enabled farm machinery ensures accurate field operations such as planting, fertilization and spraying, minimizing overlaps and reducing input losses (Getahun et al., 2024). Variable Rate Technology allows differential application of inputs based on site-specific soil and crop requirements, thereby improving nutrient-use efficiency and reducing environmental pollution (Shukla et al., 2025).

These technologies directly contribute to CSA mitigation goals by lowering greenhouse gas emissions associated with fertilizer overuse while sustaining or enhancing crop yields (Begna & Wakweya, 2025).

Environmental Impact:

- 15–30% fertilizer savings
- Reduced nutrient leaching
- Lower GHG emissions

Case Study – United States: Corn farms using VRT reported-
8% yield increase
20% reduction in nitrogen input

Improved soil health indicators (USDA, 2022)
Artificial Intelligence and Decision Support Systems

Artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning and big-data analytics enable the integration and interpretation of large datasets generated through sensors, satellites and historical climate records (Bharti et al., 2026). Predictive Modelling: AI models analyze soil quality metrics, weather patterns, and historical yield data to tailor irrigation and fertilization schedules. For instance, deep learning models like Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) are employed for identifying plant nutrient deficiencies and diseases with accuracy rates exceeding 90%.

Generative AI: Emerging trends for 2026 indicate that Generative AI will become a field-ready decision partner, synthesizing complex agronomic data into actionable insights for farmers, thereby reducing the technical expertise barrier.

Digital Twins: This technology creates virtual replicas of physical farm systems, allowing farmers to simulate the impacts of various management decisions (e.g., fertilizer rates) on yield and environmental outcomes before implementation. AI-based decision support systems improve yield prediction, optimize planting schedules and enhance climate risk assessment, supporting proactive rather than reactive farm management (Zhao et al., 2023).

These systems enhance adaptive capacity by enabling informed decision-making under climatic uncertainty and contribute to long-term sustainability through improved planning.

Robotics and Automation

Robotics and automation technologies, including autonomous tractors, robotic weeders and harvesters, reduce reliance on manual labour and improve operational efficiency (Kapoor et al., 2023).

Autonomous Operations: This includes GPS-guided tractors, robotic weeders and automated harvesting systems. Autonomous weeders, utilizing computer vision and lasers, can eliminate weeds without chemical herbicides, reducing environmental toxicity. Timely field operations enabled by automation are particularly important under climate stress conditions, such as shortened growing seasons or sudden weather events.

Case Study – Europe:

Autonomous robotic weeders reduced chemical herbicide use by 70% in vegetable production systems (EU SmartAg Report, 2024).

Blockchain and Digital Traceability Technology

Blockchain technology enhances transparency, traceability and trust in agricultural supply chains. In climate-smart precision farming, blockchain ensures secure storage of climate, production and quality data collected through IoT systems. Smart contracts automate

transactions, reduce intermediaries and protect farmers against price volatility and fraud. Blockchain also supports climate-smart certification and carbon credit trading by providing immutable records (Salah et al., 2019). It creates a tamper-proof and transparent ledger, blockchain ensuring end-to-end traceability from seed to consumer, improving food safety and supply chain transparency. Overall, the integration of these technologies supports sustainable practices, informed decision-making and increased trust among farmers, regulators and consumers.

III. ADOPTION OF CLIMATE-SMART PRECISION TECHNOLOGIES

Adoption of climate-smart precision agriculture remains uneven globally, with higher uptake in capital-intensive, mechanised farming systems and slower diffusion among
Fig: Adaptation aspects of CSA across sectors and countries (Babita Bharti et al., 2026) and countries

Sector	Adoption Domain	Key Technologies / Interventions	Region / Examples	Major Benefits
Crop Production	Conservation agriculture	• Minimum tillage, crop residue retention, crop diversification	Global (=100+ million ha)	Improved soil health, reduced emissions, enhanced resilience
	Climate-resilient varieties	• DTMA maize, Sub-1 rice	Africa, South Asia	Drought and flood tolerance, yield stability
	Natural regeneration	• Farmer-Managed Natural Regeneration(FMNR)	Sahel	Improved soil fertility, increased tree cover
Livestock & Agroforestry	Water-smart practices	• Drip irrigation, Alternate Wetting and Drying (AWD)	India, Asia	Water savings, reduced methane emissions
	Precision agriculture & Climate-resilient livestock	• Digital advisory platforms (e.g. Kisan Suvidha, Esoko)	India, Africa	Climate-informed decisions, improved input efficiency
		• Heat-tolerant breeds	Tropics and Subtropics	Reduced heat stress, sustained productivity
	Feed & energy systems	• Improved forages, biogas units	Asia, Africa	Lower emissions, energy security
Natural Resource Management	Agroforestry systems	• Silvopastoral systems	Latin America, Africa	Carbon sequestration, diversified income
	Tree-based systems	• <i>Faidherbia albida</i> parklands	Sub-Saharan Africa	Enhanced soil fertility, improved crop yields
	Watershed development	• Integrated watershed projects	Tigray, Ethiopia	Improved water availability, reduced land degradation
Natural Resource Management	Micro-irrigation	• Drip and sprinkler systems	Andhra Pradesh, India	Increased water-use efficiency
	Nutrient-management	• Integrated Nutrient Management (INM), Urea Deep Placement (UDP)	Bangladesh	Reduced fertilizer losses, higher nutrient-use efficiency
	Gender-sensitive extension	• Inclusive advisory and training programs	Kenya, Bangladesh, Ethiopia	Improved adoption among women farmers
Risk Management	Financial inclusion	• Credit-linked CSA programs	Malawi	Enhanced investment capacity
	Crop insurance	• Weather-indexed and yield-based insurance (e.g. PMFBY)	India	Reduced climate risk exposure
	Risk transfer & resilience	• Digital climate advisories	Developing countries	Early warning, adaptive planning
	Climate information services	• Digital climate advisories	Ethiopia	Strengthened adaptive capacity of vulnerable households
	Social protection	• Climate-responsive safety nets	Ethiopia	

smallholders in developing countries. Evidence from Europe and North America shows increasing adoption of guidance systems, yield monitors and variable-rate technologies, driven by labour savings, input cost reductions and environmental compliance. In contrast, many farmers in Asia and Africa continue to face financial, institutional and capacity constraints that limit access to advanced technologies despite high vulnerability to climate change. Adoption of precision-based CSA technologies is significantly higher in developed countries due to strong digital infrastructure, access to capital and supportive policy frameworks (Getahun et al., 2024). In contrast, adoption in developing regions is constrained by high initial costs, limited technical knowledge, inadequate infrastructure and socio-economic barriers (Shukla et al., 2025). Nevertheless, digital extension services, government initiatives and international collaborations are gradually improving accessibility and adoption among smallholder farmers, particularly through mobile-based advisory platforms and low-cost digital tools (Bharti et al., 2026). However, adoption remains uneven due to constraints such as affordability, infrastructure gaps and limited technical capacity, highlighting the need for inclusive and context-specific implementation strategies.

IV. BENEFITS OF CLIMATE-SMART PRECISION FARMING

- Efficient use of water, fertilizers and energy and reduced greenhouse gas emissions.
- Improved resilience to climate variability.

- Early detection of drought stress, pest outbreaks and disease, combined with climate-informed advisories, enables proactive responses to extreme events and long-term shifts.
- Enhanced crop productivity and profitability. Transparent and secure agri-food supply chains. These benefits contribute directly to sustainable agricultural development and food security.
- Triple-win potential: CSA can simultaneously increase production and income, enhance adaptation and reduce or eliminate GHG emissions, supporting national food security and SDGs.
- Documented productivity gains, Higher yields in diversified and improved cropping systems (e.g., rice maize, and rice–sunflower systems with up to 30% yield gaps in favour of improved varieties).
- Data-driven decision-making: Integration of real-time field data with climate forecasts improves planning of planting dates, irrigation scheduling, nutrient management and harvesting strategies, leading to optimized farm operations.
- Reduced input wastage and cost savings: Site-specific application of water, fertilizers, and pesticides minimizes overuse, lowers production costs and improves input-use efficiency.
- Improved soil health management: Precision monitoring of soil moisture, nutrient status and organic carbon supports regenerative practices such as conservation tillage and cover cropping, enhancing long-term soil fertility.
- Enhanced risk management and crop insurance efficiency: Accurate geo-referenced data and climate analytics facilitate better yield prediction, transparent loss assessment and faster insurance claim processing.
- Strengthened traceability and market access: Integration with digital traceability systems and blockchain improves product verification, compliance with sustainability standards and access to premium and export markets.
- Labor optimization and operational efficiency: Automation, robotics and AI-driven tools reduce labour intensity, improve timing of field operations and increase overall farm efficiency.
- Support for carbon accounting and climate finance: Precision data enables accurate measurement of carbon sequestration and emissions reductions, allowing farmers to participate in carbon credit markets and climate incentive programs.
- Improved policy and planning support: Aggregated farm-level data contributes to better regional climate adaptation planning, resource allocation and evidence-based agricultural policy development.
- Greater system sustainability: By balancing productivity with environmental stewardship, climate-smart precision farming promotes biodiversity conservation, reduced land degradation and long-term ecosystem stability.

Together, these benefits strengthen agricultural resilience, economic viability and environmental sustainability, reinforcing the role of climate-smart precision farming in achieving global food security and sustainable development goals.

V. LIMITATIONS OF CLIMATE-SMART PRECISION FARMING

- Many CSA precision technologies require expensive hardware, software licenses, and maintenance, which can be prohibitive for smallholders and medium-scale farmers without financial support.
- Poor connectivity, limited access to smartphones, and unreliable electricity constrain the functioning of digital agriculture solutions in many rural areas.

Technology	CSA Function	Climate Benefit
IoT sensors	Real-time monitoring of soil, crop, and weather parameters	Enhanced adaptive capacity and resource-use efficiency
Remote sensing	Detection of crop stress and spatial variability	Early warning of climate-induced stresses
GPS-guided machinery & Variable Rate Technology (VRT)	Site-specific application of inputs	Reduced greenhouse gas emissions and input losses
Artificial Intelligence (AI) & Decision Support Systems (DSS)	Predictive analytics and decision-making	Improved risk management under climatic uncertainty
Robotics and automation	Timely and precise field operations	Timely and precise field operations

Fig : Benefits of CSA Technologies

- Unclear data-ownership rules, lack of transparency about data use by technology providers and concerns over surveillance can reduce farmers' willingness to share data
- Fragmented institutional responsibilities and inconsistent regulatory frameworks complicate coordination and scaling of climate-smart precision initiatives.
- Limited technical skills and digital literacy among farmers can hinder effective use of precision technologies. Many climate-smart tools require training in data interpretation, device operation, and software management. Without adequate extension support and capacity-building programs, farmers may underutilize or incorrectly apply these technologies, reducing their overall effectiveness.

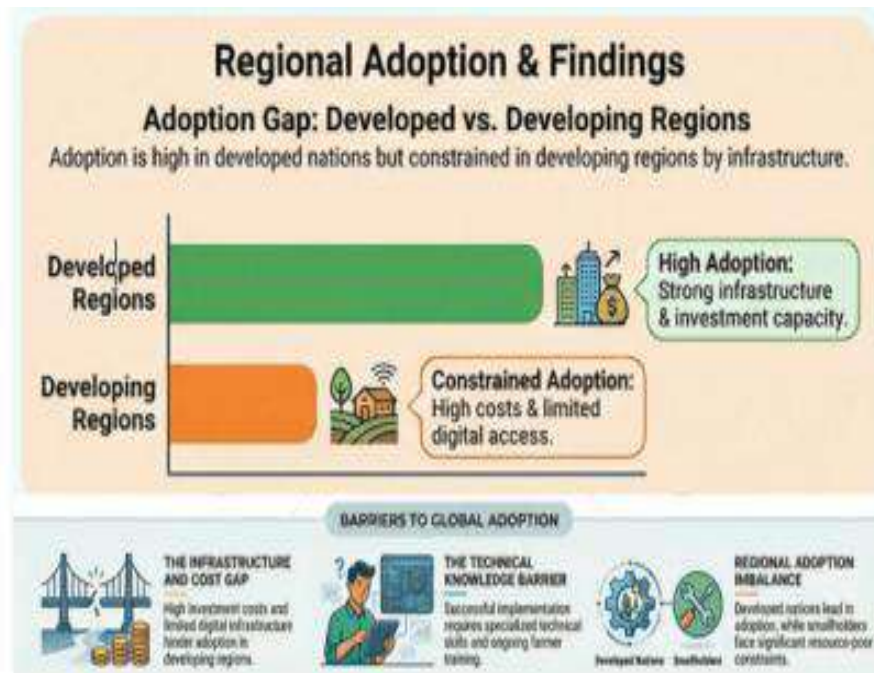


Fig : Adoption Gap (Babita Bharti et al.,2026) and countries

VI. EMERGING TRENDS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

- Generative AI in Agriculture: AI assistants translating agronomic data into simple farmer recommendations.
- Climate Information Integration: "Internet + Weather" advisory platforms combining meteorological forecasts with field sensors.
- Digital Twins and Simulation Models: Farm-level modelling for climate risk scenario testing.
- Affordable and scalable technologies for smallholders
- Improved rural digital connectivity.
- Integration of climate information services with farm DSS
- Secure and transparent data governance frameworks
- Expansion of carbon markets and climate-smart certification systems

Emerging technologies such as digital twins and generative AI are expected to further enhance climate resilience and productivity (Raj & Prahadeeswaran, 2025).

VII. CONCLUSION

The integration of climate-smart agriculture (CSA) with precision farming technologies provides a strategic approach to addressing climate change while ensuring sustainable food production. Advanced digital tools such as IoT, remote sensing, GIS, AI, robotics, and blockchain enhance productivity, resource efficiency, resilience, and greenhouse gas mitigation, supporting the “triple-win” objectives of productivity, adaptation, and mitigation. Despite proven benefits, adoption remains limited in many developing regions due to high costs, inadequate infrastructure, capacity gaps, and policy constraints. Achieving scalable

impact requires inclusive, context-specific strategies supported by affordable technologies, improved connectivity, strong policy frameworks, capacity building, financial incentives, and coordinated multi-stakeholder collaboration.

REFERENCES

- [1] Kapoor, H., Agarwal, D., & Pathriya, R. (2023). A comprehensive review of emerging technologies in agricultural sector. *International Journal of Novel Research and Development*, 8(6), 759–760.
- [2] Bharti, B., Bharti, V., Arya, R., Gautam, B., Negi, N., Kumar, A., & Mohan, J. (2026). Innovations in climate-smart agriculture: Tools, technologies, and transformation pathways. *International Journal of Advanced Biochemistry Research*, SP-10(1), 866–871.
- [3] Shukla, Y. K., Jain, R. C., Dubey, S., Bora, S. S., Senapati, S. K., & Saini, N. (2025). A comprehensive review of modern technologies for climate resilient agriculture. *International Journal of Environment and Climate Change*, 15(3), 49–59.
- [4] Begna, T., & Wakweya, R. B. (2025). Climate-smart agriculture: Effect of climate change on food security and its mitigation strategies. *International Journal of Agronomy*, Article ID 9972955.
- [5] Getahun, S., Kefale, H., & Gelaye, Y. (2024). Application of precision agriculture technologies for sustainable crop production and environmental sustainability: A systematic review. *Scientific World Journal*, Article ID 2126734.
- [6] Zhao, J., Liu, D., & Huang, R. (2023). A review of climate-smart agriculture: Recent advancements, challenges, and future directions. *Sustainability*, 15(4), 3404.
- [7] Rosenstock, T. S., et al. (2016). The scientific basis of climate-smart agriculture: A systematic review protocol. CCAFS Working Paper No. 138. CGIAR.
- [8] Khan, A. T., & Banik, D. (2025). Climate-smart agriculture: Pathways to resilient farming systems. *Vigyan Varta*, 6(7), 261–267.
- [9] Begna, T., & Wakweya, R. B. (2025). Climate-smart agriculture: Effect of climate change on food security and its mitigation strategies. *International Journal of Agronomy*, Article ID 9972955.
- [10] Gulaiya, P., et al. (2024). Precision agriculture: Transforming farming efficiency with cutting-edge smart technologies: A comprehensive review. *Journal of Experimental Agriculture International*.
- [11] Kumar, S. N., et al. (2025). Smart farming for a sustainable future: IoT-based implementation. *Bulletin of the National Research Centre*.
- [12] Padhiary, M., Kumar, A., & Sethi, L. N. (2025). Emerging technologies for smart and sustainable precision agriculture. *Discover Robotics*.
- [13] Raj, J. S., & Prahadeeswaran, S. (2025). Revolutionizing agriculture: A review of smart farming technologies for a sustainable future. *Discover Sustainability*.
- [14] Salah, K., et al. (2019). Blockchain-based traceability systems in agri-food supply chains. *IEEE Access*.
- [15] Sharma, A., & Bhatt, R. (2019). Climate-smart technologies for sustainable farming. *Turkish Journal of Computer and Mathematics Education*.

- [16] Singh, G., & Sharma, S. (2025). Cloud-based transformative crop recommendation model. *Scientific Reports*.
- [17] Tsouros, D. C., Bibi, S., & Sarigiannidis, P. G. (2019). UAV-based applications for precision agriculture. *Information*, 10(11), 349.
- [18] Javaid, M., Haleem, A., Khan, I. H., & Suman, R. (2023). Applications of artificial intelligence in agriculture. *Advanced Agrochem*, 2(1), 15–30.
- [19] Bwambale, E., Abagale, F. K., & Anornu, G. K. (2022). Smart irrigation in precision agriculture. *Agricultural Water Management*, 260, 107324.
- [20] Salah, K., Nizamuddin, N., Jayaraman, R., & Omar, M. (2019). Blockchain-based traceability in agriculture. *IEEE Access*, 7, 73295–73305.
- [21] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. *Precision Agriculture*, 5, 359–387.
- [22] Zhang, L., Dabipi, I. K., & Brown, W. L. (2018). Internet of Things applications for agriculture. *Internet of Things A-Z*.
- [23] Lakshmi, T. R., & Ambaru, B. (2026). The biophysics of precision agriculture: Smart sensors and materials. *Agricultural Reviews*.
- [24] Mori, T., & Geweely, N. (2025). Precision agriculture 4.0: Integrating IoT and artificial intelligence for data-driven crop monitoring and sustainable farming systems. *National Journal of Smart Agriculture and Rural Innovation*, 1(1), 49–56
- [25] Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2013). *Climate-smart agriculture sourcebook*. FAO. <https://www.fao.org>
- [26] Thakuri, S., Adhikari, M., Tashi, S., Acharya, P. R., Chauhan, R., Maharjan, B., & Shrestha, M. L. (2025). Integrating geospatial technologies in climate-smart agriculture planning and management: A review focused on South Asia. *APN Science Bulletin*.

Maize Yield Response to Climatic Variability: A Sensitivity Approach

Harleen Kaur*, P.K. Kingra and R.K. Pal

Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

*Corresponding author: kaurharleen12@pau.edu

Abstract - This study evaluated the performance of the CERES-Maize crop model in estimating maize yield in Ludhiana from 2016 to 2024 and assessed yield sensitivity to variations in temperature and atmospheric CO₂ concentration. Model performance was examined by comparing simulated and observed maize yields using regression and statistical indices. A positive linear relationship was observed between simulated and measured yields, with a coefficient of determination (R^2) of 0.60, indicating that 60% of the variability in observed yield was explained by the model. The root mean square error (RMSE) was 670.35 kg ha⁻¹, and the d-statistic was 0.79, suggesting reasonably good agreement. Mean simulated yield (3840 kg ha⁻¹) closely matched mean observed yield (3817 kg ha⁻¹), indicating minimal overall bias. Sensitivity analysis revealed that maximum temperature had a pronounced effect on maize yield. Increasing maximum temperature by +1 to +3°C reduced yields by 8.36% to 31.96%, whereas decreasing it by -1 to -3°C increased yields by 15.67% to 42.21%. Minimum temperature changes also significantly influenced yield, with warming reducing yields by up to 19.31% and cooling enhancing yields by up to 36.36%. Variations in CO₂ concentration (450–650 ppm) produced negligible yield responses. However, combined increases in temperature and CO₂ resulted in substantial yield declines (20.96–68.09%), indicating that temperature stress outweighed potential CO₂ fertilization effects. Overall, the findings highlight temperature as the dominant climatic factor affecting maize productivity and underscore the potential risks posed by future warming. The CERES-Maize model proves to be a useful tool for assessing climate change impacts and can support the development of adaptation strategies to sustain maize production under changing environmental conditions.

Keywords- Maize Productivity, Climatic Variability, Weather Sensitivity, Yield Modeling

I. INTRODUCTION

Maize (*Zea mays* L.) has emerged as an important cereal crop in the agrarian state of Punjab, India, complementing the historically dominant rice-wheat cropping system and contributing to farm income, food security, and industrial uses. In Punjab's predominantly irrigated agriculture, maize cultivation is expanding due to incentives for diversifying from water-intensive paddy and to meet growing demands for livestock feed and ethanol production. However, the region is also experiencing rapid climatic changes, including rising temperatures, increased frequency of heatwaves, and erratic rainfall patterns, which pose significant risks to agricultural productivity (news analyses on increasing heatwave days in Punjab; see also statewide climate projections). In recent decades, global climate change has intensified the frequency of extreme weather events, altered rainfall patterns, and increased mean surface temperatures, thereby posing significant challenges to crop production systems worldwide (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [IPCC], 2023).

Punjab's climatic trends are consistent with broader regional and global patterns of climate change, which have been shown to influence crop phenology, physiological processes, and yield outcomes. Elevated temperature, especially during sensitive growth phases such as tasseling and grain filling, accelerates crop development, shortens the reproductive period, and reduces grain set and kernel weight in maize, leading to yield penalties (Lobell et al., 2014; Zhao et al., 2017). Minimum temperatures, which have exhibited rising trends in Punjab and across North India, also affect nighttime respiration and overall carbon balance, thereby potentially reducing net biomass accumulation under warmer conditions. While elevated atmospheric CO₂ concentrations can enhance photosynthesis and water use efficiency—a phenomenon known as the CO₂ fertilization effect—its positive impacts on C₄ crops like maize are more limited than on C₃ crops and may not compensate for the detrimental effects of heat and other stressors (Leakey et al., 2019; IPCC, 2023).

Empirical studies focusing specifically on Punjab indicate that climate change is likely to have adverse effects on maize yields. Projections using historical climate data (1986–2020) suggest that by 2050, maize yields in Punjab could decline by approximately 13%, driven primarily by temperature increases rather than changes in rainfall patterns (PAU-led climate impact studies). The projected yield losses are expected to further intensify under continued warming scenarios by 2080, underscoring the sensitivity of maize production to even modest shifts in climatic variables. These findings align with broader agronomic research emphasizing the dominance of temperature effects over CO₂ fertilization in shaping maize productivity outcomes under future climate scenarios.

Process-based crop models, such as the CERES-Maize model within the Decision Support System for Agrotechnology Transfer (DSSAT), have been widely utilized to simulate maize growth dynamics under varying weather, management, and environmental conditions. . It has been widely applied to evaluate maize productivity under varying climatic scenarios and management interventions across diverse agro-ecological regions (Jones et al., 2003; Li et al., 2021). These models integrate biophysical crop processes and long-term weather inputs to quantify yield responses to climatic variability, and are especially useful for regional vulnerability assessments and adaptation planning. Model performance evaluation, combined with sensitivity analysis of key climatic drivers such as maximum and minimum temperature and CO₂ levels, can offer insights into both the magnitude and direction of climate impacts relevant to Punjab's maize sector.

Given the projected yield declines and the crucial socio-economic role of maize in Punjab, understanding and quantifying maize yield sensitivity to climatic variability is essential. This study evaluates the performance of the CERES-Maize model in estimating maize yields in Ludhiana (a representative maize-growing node in Punjab) and assesses how changes in temperature and CO₂ interact to influence yield outcomes. Improved knowledge of these interactions will support climate-smart decision-making and inform adaptive strategies aimed at sustaining maize productivity in Punjab's changing climate.

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study area and data collection

The study was conducted for Ludhiana district of Punjab, located in the central plain region of Punjab. The region experiences a semi-arid to sub-humid climate characterized by hot summers and cool winters, which significantly influence maize growth and productivity. This study assessed the performance of the CERES-Maize crop simulation model in estimating maize yields in Ludhiana over the period 2016 to 2024. It also evaluated the sensitivity of maize yield to changes in temperature and atmospheric CO₂ concentration. Model accuracy was determined by comparing simulated yields with observed data using regression analysis and relevant statistical performance indicators.

Daily weather data required for model simulation, including maximum temperature (T_{max}), minimum temperature (T_{min}), rainfall, and bright sunshine hours, were obtained from the agrometeorological observatory of Punjab Agricultural University (PAU), Ludhiana, for the period 2016–2024. Observed district-level maize yield data for the corresponding period (2016–2024) were collected from the Statistical Abstract of Punjab, published by the Government of Punjab. These observed yields were used to evaluate the performance of the crop simulation model.

Crop model description and evaluation

The study employed the CERES-Maize model embedded within the Decision Support System for Agrotechnology Transfer (DSSAT). The CERES-Maize model is a process-based simulation model that describes maize growth, development, and yield formation as influenced by weather, soil, crop management, and genetic parameters. The model simulates phenological development, biomass accumulation, and grain yield on a daily time step using temperature, solar radiation, and moisture availability as primary driving variables.

Model performance was evaluated by comparing simulated maize yields with observed yields for the period 2016–2024. We used the cultivar genetic coefficients for PMH 1 from the already calibrated and validated CERES-Maize model developed by Kothiyal et al. (2022). Linear regression analysis was performed to determine the relationship between simulated and observed yields. The coefficient of determination (R^2) was calculated to assess the proportion of variability in observed yield explained by the model. Additionally, statistical indices including root mean square error (RMSE) and Willmott's index of agreement (d-statistic) were computed to quantify model accuracy and agreement. The mean simulated yield was compared with the mean observed yield to evaluate overall bias.

Sensitivity Analysis

Sensitivity analysis was conducted to assess the response of maize yield to variations in temperature and atmospheric CO₂ concentration. Maximum and minimum temperatures were independently varied from –3°C to +3°C relative to the baseline weather data, in increments of 1°C, while keeping other variables constant. The percentage change in simulated yield relative to the baseline scenario was computed to quantify temperature sensitivity.

Atmospheric CO₂ concentration levels were varied to 450, 550, and 650 ppm to evaluate the potential CO₂ fertilization effect on maize yield. Further simulations were performed by combining changes in mean temperature (derived from simultaneous changes in T_{max} and T_{min}) with elevated CO₂ concentrations to assess their interactive effects. The

combined scenarios included incremental temperature changes (-3°C to $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$) along with CO_2 levels of 450, 550, and 650 ppm.

Statistical Analysis

Model performance statistics (R^2 , RMSE, and d-statistic) were calculated using standard statistical procedures. Percentage changes in yield under different sensitivity scenarios were computed relative to the baseline simulation.

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Observed versus simulated maize yield showing model performance and regression relationship

This study assessed the performance of the CERES-Maize crop simulation model in estimating maize yields in Ludhiana over the period 2016 to 2024. It also evaluated the sensitivity of maize yield to changes in temperature and atmospheric CO_2 concentration. Model accuracy was determined by comparing simulated yields with observed data using regression analysis and relevant statistical performance indicators. The scatter plot illustrates the relationship between simulated and observed maize yield (kg/ha). The regression analysis shows a positive linear relationship between the two variables, indicating that observed yields generally increase as simulated yields increase. The coefficient of determination ($R^2 = 0.60$) suggests that 60% of the variability in observed yield is explained by the simulated values, reflecting a moderate level of agreement. The root mean square error (RMSE) of 670.35 kg/ha indicates the average deviation between simulated and observed yields. The d-statistic value of 0.79 further demonstrates reasonably good model performance and agreement. Similar levels of agreement have been reported in recent assessments of process-based crop models under climate variability scenarios (Kumar et al., 2021). Additionally, the mean observed yield (3817 kg/ha) is very close to the mean simulated yield (3840 kg/ha), indicating minimal overall bias in prediction. Overall, the results suggest that the model provides a fairly reliable estimation of maize yield, though some variability remains unexplained. The RMSE value ($670.35 \text{ kg ha}^{-1}$) also falls within the range commonly reported in recent maize modeling studies, where RMSE values between 500 and 1000 kg ha^{-1} are considered acceptable depending on yield levels and environmental variability (Zhang et al., 2022). Additionally, integrating remote sensing data and data assimilation techniques has recently been shown to improve yield simulation accuracy in maize systems (Li et al., 2023).

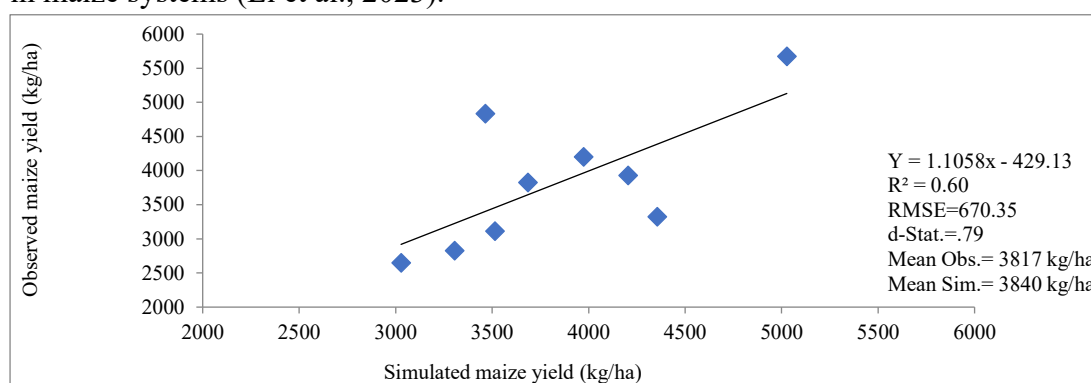


Fig. 1: Comparison between observed and simulated maize yield (kg/ha)

Effect of deviation in maximum temperature (°C) on maize yield:

Variations in maximum temperature showed a strong influence on simulated maize yield compared to the observed yield (3817 kg/ha). An increase in maximum temperature by +1, +2, and +3°C resulted in yield reductions of -8.36%, -18.81%, and -31.96%, respectively, indicating substantial yield decline under warming conditions. Conversely, decreasing maximum temperature by -1, -2, and -3°C increased simulated yields by 15.67%, 26.22%, and 42.21%, respectively, demonstrating improved crop performance under cooler conditions. The model performance was relatively strong under cooler scenarios, with the highest R^2 (0.835) at -3°C. RMSE values ranged from 701.48 to 1341.62 kg/ha, while d-statistics (0.624–0.794) indicated moderate agreement between observed and simulated yields. Zhao et al., 2017 reported that elevated daytime temperatures reduce pollen viability, shorten crop duration and accelerate senescence, leading to lower biomass accumulation and grain yield.

Effect of deviation in deviation in minimum temperature (°C):

Changes in minimum temperature also significantly affected maize yield. Increasing minimum temperature by +1, +2, and +3°C reduced yields by -3.20%, -11.13%, and -19.31%, respectively. In contrast, decreasing minimum temperature by -1, -2, and -3°C enhanced yields by 12.99%, 25.31%, and 36.36%, respectively. The strongest relationship between observed and simulated yields was observed at +3°C ($R^2 = 0.985$), although the agreement (d-statistic = 0.555) and RMSE (1331.88 kg/ha) suggest variability in prediction accuracy. RMSE values ranged from 603.70 to 1549.64 kg/ha, and d-statistics varied between 0.555 and 0.795, reflecting moderate model performance overall. Heat stress also disrupts photosynthetic efficiency and increases evapotranspiration demand, compounding water stress effects (Hatfield & Prueger, 2015).

Effect of deviation in deviation in CO₂ concentration (ppm):

Alterations in CO₂ concentration (450, 550, and 650 ppm) had minimal impact on simulated maize yield. Yields showed slight decreases of -0.79%, -0.86%, and -0.89%, respectively, compared to the observed yield. The R^2 values were relatively low (approximately 0.403–0.405), indicating known but limited explanatory power under CO₂ variation alone. RMSE values remained consistent (around 716 kg/ha), and the d-statistic was stable at 0.762, suggesting moderate agreement but negligible yield response to CO₂ concentration changes in isolation. Recent assessments further suggest that while elevated CO₂ can improve stomatal conductance and intrinsic water-use efficiency, these physiological advantages do not necessarily translate into substantial grain yield increases in C₄ cereals (IPCC, 2021).

Effect of deviation in deviation in temperature + CO₂ concentration:

Combined increases in temperature and CO₂ concentration resulted in substantial yield reductions. The 450+1, 550+2, and 650+3 scenarios showed yield declines of -20.96%, -42.07%, and -68.09%, respectively, indicating that temperature stress outweighed any potential CO₂ fertilization effect. Although R^2 values (0.591–0.623) suggest moderate correlation, model performance declined notably at higher combined stress levels, as reflected by increasing RMSE (1005.28 to 2662.26 kg/ha) and decreasing d-statistics (0.683 to 0.394). These results demonstrate that rising temperature, particularly when combined with elevated

CO₂, poses a significant risk to maize productivity. As reported by Leakey (2009), C₄ crops like maize show limited photosynthetic response to elevated CO₂ because their CO₂-concentrating mechanism is already near saturation, making CO₂ gains insufficient to offset heat-induced yield losses.

Table 1: Statistics of response of maize yield to changes in maximum and minimum temperature and CO₂ concentration level

Variable	Observed (kg/ha)	Simulated (kg/ha)	% Deviation	R ²	RMSE	d-Stat.
<i>Deviation in Maximum temperature (°C)</i>						
3°C	3817	2597	-31.96	0.63	1341.61	0.62
2°C	3817	3099	-18.81	0.53	955.19	0.72
1°C	3817	3498	-8.36	0.49	734.20	0.79
-1°C	3817	4415	15.67	0.67	701.48	0.79
-2°C	3817	4818	26.22	0.77	743.61	0.77
-3°C	3817	5428	42.21	0.83	1070.70	0.71
<i>Deviation in Minimum temperature (°C)</i>						
3°C	3817	3080	-19.31	0.98	1331.88	0.55
2°C	3817	3392	-11.13	0.71	938.08	0.57
1°C	3817	3695	-3.20	0.74	603.69	0.79
-1°C	3817	4313	12.99	0.46	841.65	0.70
-2°C	3817	4783	25.31	0.35	1218.53	0.58
-3°C	3817	5205	36.36	0.45	1549.63	0.56
<i>Deviation in CO₂ concentration (ppm)</i>						
450ppm	3817	3787	-0.79	0.41	715.77	0.76
550ppm	3817	3784	-0.86	0.40	716.95	0.76
650ppm	3817	3783	-0.89	0.40	716.58	0.76
<i>Deviation in Temperature + CO₂</i>						
450ppm+1°C	3817	3017	-20.96	0.591	1005.27	0.68
550ppm+2°C	3817	2211	-42.07	0.606	1707.76	0.52
650ppm+3°C	3817	1218	-68.09	0.623	2662.25	0.39

IV. CONCLUSION

The CERES-Maize crop model demonstrated satisfactory performance in simulating maize yield, with a moderate to strong agreement between observed and simulated values, as indicated by regression analysis ($R^2 = 0.60$), RMSE (670.35 kg ha⁻¹), and a d-statistic of 0.79, reflecting minimal overall bias and close alignment of mean yields under baseline conditions. Sensitivity analysis showed that maize yield was highly responsive to temperature variations, particularly maximum temperature, with substantial yield reductions under warming scenarios and notable yield improvements under cooler conditions; minimum temperature also significantly affected productivity, though slightly less than maximum temperature. In contrast,

elevated CO₂ concentrations alone had negligible effects on yield, suggesting limited CO₂ fertilization benefits under the studied conditions. Moreover, combined increases in temperature and CO₂ led to pronounced yield declines, indicating that the adverse effects of thermal stress outweighed any potential positive influence of elevated CO₂, while model performance metrics under these combined stress scenarios reflected reduced predictive accuracy at higher stress levels. Overall, the results identify temperature as the dominant climatic factor influencing maize productivity and highlight the risks associated with future warming, confirming the CERES-Maize model as a valuable tool for assessing climate change impacts and informing adaptation strategies to sustain maize production under changing environmental conditions.

REFERENCES

- [1] Hatfield, J. L., & Prueger, J. H. (2015). Temperature extremes: Effect on plant growth and development. *Weather and Climate Extremes*, 10, 4–10. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wace.2015.08.001>
- [2] Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2023). *Sixth assessment report*.
- [3] IPCC. (2021). *Climate change 2021: The physical science basis*. Cambridge University Press.
- [4] Jones, J. W., et al. (2003). The DSSAT cropping system model. *European Journal of Agronomy*, 18, 235–265.
- [5] Kothiyal S, Kaur P and Sandhu S S (2022) Determination of sowing window for kharif maize in Punjab, India using sensitized, calibrated and validated CERES-Maize model. *Maydica* 66:12.
- [6] Kumar, S., Aggarwal, P. K., Rötter, R. P., & Singh, R. (2021). Evaluation of crop simulation models for climate change impact assessment in maize-based systems. *Agricultural Systems*, 190, 103099.
- [7] Leakey, A. D. B. (2009). Rising atmospheric carbon dioxide concentration and the future of C₄ crops for food and fuel. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 276(1666), 2333–2343. <https://doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2008.1517>
- [8] Leakey, A. D. B., et al. (2019). Elevated CO₂ effects on C₄ crops. *Global Change Biology*, 25, 2539–2556.
- [9] Li, T., et al. (2021). Modeling climate change impacts on maize. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, 308–309, 108573.
- [10] Li, T., Hasegawa, T., Yin, X., Zhu, Y., Boote, K., Adam, M., & Rötter, R. P. (2023). Enhancing maize yield simulation through improved model calibration and climate data integration. *Field Crops Research*, 293, 108846.
- [11] Lobell, D. B., et al. (2014). Greater sensitivity to extreme heat. *Science*, 344, 516–519.
- [12] Zhang, Y., Yang, H., Li, Z., & Chen, F. (2022). Performance assessment of DSSAT model for maize yield prediction under varying nitrogen and climate conditions. *European Journal of Agronomy*, 134, 126476.
- [13] Zhao, C., Liu, B., Piao, S., Wang, X., Lobell, D. B., Huang, Y., ... Asseng, S. (2017). Temperature increase reduces global yields of major crops in four independent estimates.

Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 114(35), 9326–9331.
<https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1701762114>

Optimizing Crop Monitoring and Nutrient Management Through Precision Agriculture and Agrometeorological Approaches

Hema Mehra*, R.K. Pal, Divya B. and Sonakshi Jaswal

Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

*Corresponding author: hemamehra1999@gmail.com

Abstract - As a core component of Agriculture 4.0, precision agriculture leverages advanced sensing technologies, artificial intelligence (AI), and site-specific nutrient management (SSNM) to enhance crop monitoring and nutrient use efficiency. Globally, fertilizer use efficiency remains low, with nitrogen recovery in cereals often ranging between 30–50%, leading to significant economic losses and environmental externalities. Recent studies indicate that precision nutrient management can improve nitrogen use efficiency by 15–30% and increase crop yields by 10–20% compared to conventional blanket applications. High-resolution agro-meteorological and soil datasets derived from IoT-enabled sensor networks, UAVs, and satellite platforms such as Sentinel-2 and Landsat 8 provide NDVI, thermal indices, and canopy reflectance information at 10–30 m spatial resolution. NDVI-based nitrogen management has been reported to enhance yield prediction accuracy by 12–18% under variable climatic conditions. Integration of weather parameters—rainfall, temperature, humidity, and evapotranspiration—further improves irrigation scheduling efficiency by up to 25% and reduces fertilizer losses by 20%. Despite demonstrated benefits, adoption remains constrained by high initial investment, digital infrastructure gaps, and data management complexity, particularly in developing regions. However, AI-driven analytics, cloud-based decision support systems, and interoperable sensing platforms are rapidly lowering operational costs and improving scalability. Coupling precision agriculture with agrometeorological advisories strengthens site-specific management, enhances climate resilience, and supports sustainable intensification. This review synthesizes recent advances in IoT- and AI-enabled crop monitoring, precision nutrient strategies, and agrometeorological integration, highlighting evidence-based pathways toward efficient, climate-smart, and data-driven agricultural systems.

Keywords- Precision Agriculture, Site Specific Nutrient Management, Internet of Things, Artificial Intelligence, Crop Monitoring, Climate-Smart Agriculture

I. INTRODUCTION

Recent agricultural systems have become increasingly complex and vulnerable. Rapid population growth has intensified food demand, while key resources such as arable land and water remain limited. Practices including deforestation and excessive groundwater extraction have altered land-use patterns and depleted water reserves, increasing risks to agricultural production and food security (Khatri et al., 2024). According to FAO (2017), global agriculture

recorded a 28% increase in the production of 174 crops between 1960 and 2015. Despite this growth, intensified cultivation has contributed to land degradation by negatively affecting soil physical, chemical, and biological properties (Power, 2013). Traditional farming methods, though historically effective, struggle to address modern challenges, as calendar-based scheduling and manual observation often lead to inefficient resource use and greater vulnerability to climatic variability (Jain, 2012; Kumari et al., 2025). Precision agriculture addresses these gaps by optimizing inputs and improving efficiency through data-driven decision-making supported by advanced sensors and Internet of Things (IoT) technologies (Mansoor et al., 2025).

Precision agriculture has progressed toward Agriculture 4.0 through the integration of IoT sensor networks, including soil probes, weather stations, and unmanned aerial vehicles, with intelligent decision-support systems. This integration enables real-time monitoring of soil moisture, temperature, and crop health, improving the accuracy and sustainability of farm management (Zhai et al., 2020; Javaid et al., 2022). Yield monitoring remains the most widely adopted precision agriculture technology (61.4%), while moisture sensing adoption increased from 36.21% in 2005 to 51.68% in 2010 alongside growth in variable rate technology (VRT) (Vuran et al., 2018). IoT connects physical devices through integrated communication technologies, allowing continuous sensing and monitoring (Pham et al., 2013; Abioye et al., 2023). When combined with artificial intelligence (AI), including machine learning and deep learning, sensor data can support prediction, anomaly detection, and targeted input application (Anushi et al., 2024; Fauziah et al., 2024). Nutrient management remains central to sustainable production, as maintaining optimal nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium levels supports crop productivity while minimizing environmental risks (Raza et al., 2023). Technologies such as VRT and GPS-based precision mapping further enable site-specific irrigation, fertilization, and crop protection (Latino et al., 2022; Tenreiro et al., 2023). This review therefore focuses on recent advances in smart sensors and data-driven tools for improving crop monitoring and nutrient-use efficiency, while noting that interoperability, reliability, and large-scale deployment remain key research challenges.

II. SMART SENSOR ECOSYSTEMS IN MODERN AGRICULTURE

Smart sensing technologies support precision farming and agrometeorology by enabling real-time monitoring of soil, crop, and atmospheric conditions. They generate high-resolution spatial and temporal data that facilitate site-specific nutrient management, irrigation scheduling, and stress detection, thereby improving crop monitoring accuracy and nutrient-use efficiency under variable environmental conditions.

Weather and environmental sensors

They provide real-time monitoring of key field conditions such as temperature, humidity, solar radiation, wind, and precipitation, supporting weather-risk forecasting, irrigation planning, and overall crop management. For indoor environments, wall-mounted temperature and humidity sensors such as DHT11 and DHT22 are commonly used due to their compact design, good ventilation, and low maintenance requirements, whereas outdoor agriculture typically employs solar-shielded sensors (e.g., SHT series) for improved protection against harsh weather. Solar radiation is measured using pyranometers to quantify global

irradiance reaching the crop canopy. Wind conditions are commonly monitored using three-cup anemometers and wind vanes, while ultrasonic wind sensors provide high-accuracy, combined wind speed and direction measurements. Rainfall is most widely measured using tipping bucket rain gauges, valued for their accuracy and reliable long-term meteorological monitoring.

Soil Moisture Sensors

Soil moisture information generated by in-situ sensors directly supports precision irrigation management. Continuous monitoring of root-zone moisture enables irrigation systems to determine when and how much water crops actually need.

Recent studies demonstrate that sensor technologies play a critical role in enabling data-driven and resource-efficient agricultural management. High temporal resolution sensing enables irrigation systems to respond to rapid fluctuations in soil water status, leading to water savings of 15–40% compared with static scheduling approaches (Onwuka and Mang, 2018). In addition, plant-based sensing approaches have contributed to improved environmental compliance, with irrigation scheduling informed by leaf turgor sensors reducing pumping energy by 25% by providing early warnings of crop water stress (Kalita et al. 2017). Simulation-based evidence further suggests that intelligent, sensor-driven irrigation enhances climate resilience, achieving up to 59% water savings while maintaining yield stability across diverse climatic regions (Bashir et al. 2021).

Real-time irrigation optimization significantly conserves water while enhancing crop productivity. Research shows that smart irrigation systems can lower agricultural water use by about 30–50% compared with traditional methods (Mallareddy et al., 2023). In addition, AI-driven irrigation scheduling can improve water-use efficiency (WUE) by up to 60%, ensuring more effective utilization of applied water for crop growth and yield. Smart irrigation practices also help minimize soil erosion and nutrient leaching, thereby supporting soil fertility and long-term sustainability (Alharbi et al., 2024).

Soil nutrient Sensors

In situ soil sensors provide rapid, field-based information on soil nutrient status, enabling real-time decision support for precision fertilization. Based on sensing principles, these technologies are commonly grouped into electrochemical, optical, and wireless/IoT-enabled systems. They deliver high-resolution insights into spatial soil variability, forming a strong foundation for site-specific nutrient management (SSNM) and enabling variable-rate input application, improved nutrient-use efficiency, and reduced environmental losses.

Electrochemical sensors are the most widely used for soil nutrient monitoring due to their affordability, portability, and rapid response. They quantify specific ions, e.g. hydrogen (H^+), nitrate (NO_3^-), and potassium (K^+) using selective membrane-based electrochemical reactions and typically incorporate a reference electrode for stability. Common technologies include Ion-Selective Electrodes (ISE) and Ion-Sensitive Field Effect Transistors (ISFET), used in both laboratory and in-situ applications (Schirrmann et al., 2011; Tsukor et al., 2019). However, they require frequent calibration and are susceptible to electrode fouling.

Optical sensors use spectroscopic analysis to evaluate soil properties based on interactions between soil and electromagnetic radiation. Visible–near infrared (Vis–NIR) sensors are widely used in laboratory and field conditions to estimate soil pH and nutrients, including SOC, SOM, nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, total carbon, sulphur, Ca and Mg and iron. Visible–mid infrared (Vis–MIR) spectroscopy has also shown strong potential, particularly for SOM, Ca, and Mg prediction in in-situ conditions. These sensors enable simultaneous, high-throughput soil assessment but may be affected by soil moisture and calibration needs.

Advanced techniques such as ATR (Attenuated Total Reflectance) spectroscopy have been explored for soil nitrate estimation, while Raman spectroscopy shows promise for phosphorus and soluble nitrogen detection, though large-scale field adoption is still emerging. (Vullaganti et al., 2025)

More recently, wireless and IoT-enabled sensor networks have integrated soil sensing with real-time communication and machine learning analytics. These multisensory platforms support continuous monitoring and predictive irrigation, representing a key step toward automated precision agriculture systems. Keswani et al. (2019) developed an AI-assisted wireless sensor network for soil moisture prediction and automated irrigation, reporting improved forecasting accuracy using a Variable Learning Rate Gradient Descent algorithm. Although primarily focused on water management, such systems can indirectly enhance nutrient use efficiency by reducing leaching losses. Erler et al. (2020) demonstrated that portable Laser-Induced Breakdown Spectroscopy (LIBS) enables rapid multi-nutrient soil analysis, showing good accuracy for elements such as Ca, K, Mg, and Fe. However, reliable estimation of nitrogen and phosphorus remains challenging due to weak spectral responses and soil matrix effects, indicating that further refinement is needed for routine soil fertility assessment.

For instance, sensor-based tools such as SPAD meters allow rapid, non-destructive assessment of crop nitrogen status, enabling precise and timely nutrient management. In a field study, SPAD-guided nitrogen top-dressing improved soybean photosynthetic efficiency, growth indices, and yield, demonstrating the potential of plant-level sensors in enhancing nutrient use efficiency and supporting precision crop monitoring (Sachin et al., 2023).

GIS (Geographic Information Systems) and GPS (Global Positioning System)

Their integration is a fundamental component of precision agriculture, enabling data-driven decisions based on accurate spatial information. GPS a satellite-based navigation system, provides precise location data for machinery guidance, soil sampling, and field variability mapping, while GIS supports the collection, analysis, and visualization of spatial data such as soil properties and crop health (Bhamini et al., 2025). When combined with remote sensing and IoT sensors, GIS–GPS systems enable real-time field assessment and site-specific fertilization. Overlaying multiple datasets helps identify nutrient deficiencies and productivity zones, reducing blanket fertilizer use and improving input efficiency and yields (Polwaththa et al., 2024; Prajapati & Patel, 2024).

Crop Health and Stress Monitoring Sensors

Crop health and stress monitoring sensors play a vital role in precision agriculture by enabling early detection of nutrient deficiencies, water stress, and disease incidence. These sensors assess plant condition using indicators such as vegetation indices, leaf chlorophyll content, and canopy temperature.

NDVI Imaging Systems (Normalized Difference Vegetation Index)

Widely used to monitor vegetation health, detect stress, and map nitrogen deficiency. It compares reflected red light (absorbed by chlorophyll) and near-infrared (NIR) light (reflected by healthy leaf structure). Healthy plants show high NDVI values due to strong NIR reflectance and low red reflectance, whereas stressed or sparse vegetation produces lower NDVI values.

$$NDVI = \frac{(NIR + Red)}{(NIR - Red)}$$

Thermal Sensors (Infrared Thermography)

Measure canopy-emitted infrared energy to assess plant stress. Healthy plants stay cooler due to transpiration, while stressed plants show higher canopy temperature. The canopy–air temperature difference ($T_c - T_a$) is widely used to detect water stress and related physiological disorders.

Chlorophyll Meter (Proximal Sensing)

Provide rapid, non-destructive estimation of leaf chlorophyll as an indicator of plant nitrogen status. Hand-held devices (e.g., SPAD-502, at LEAF+) measure red (~650–660 nm) and near-infrared (~940 nm) light transmittance through the leaf. Because chlorophyll content correlates with nitrogen levels, these sensors support optimized nitrogen fertilization and early deficiency detection.

Hyperspectral imaging (HSI)

Advanced precision agriculture tool that captures continuous narrow spectral bands, enabling detailed assessment of crop health by detection of subtle changes in biochemical and biophysical properties (analyzing plant spectral signatures), HSI can detect stress, disease, and nutrient deficiencies at early stages, supporting targeted crop management.

Wei et al. (2024) extended NDVI monitoring to vertical farming by developing an IoT-enabled multispectral system using UVA/NIR LEDs and an RGB CMOS camera to compute SI-NDVI and UV-NDVI. The fluorescence-based UV-NDVI showed higher sensitivity to early plant stress than SI-NDVI, enabling earlier detection of drought effects in lettuce and highlighting the potential of IoT-integrated NDVI sensing for real-time indoor crop monitoring.

$$SI-NDVI = \frac{(R(NIR) - B)}{(R(NIR) + B)}$$

$$UV-NDVI = \frac{(R(UVA) - B)}{(R(UVS) + B)}$$

Similarly, Lozoya et al. (2019) demonstrated that NDVI sensors integrated into automated greenhouse systems can deliver real-time crop health information for improved environmental management. Complementing proximal sensing, UAV-based multispectral imaging has shown strong vegetation assessment capability, with drone-derived GNDVI outperforming conventional SPAD measurements in estimating maize vigor and yield. Because vegetation indices closely relate to chlorophyll and nitrogen status, these approaches support site-specific nutrient management and improved fertilizer-use efficiency in precision agriculture.

Sensors for Pest and Disease Monitoring:

Advanced sensing technologies can detect the presence of pests and diseases in crops.

Insect Pest Monitoring

Low-Power Image Sensors

Wireless camera-based traps periodically capture field images and transmit them to a control unit. Embedded image processing enables automatic pest identification, counting, and spatial infestation mapping, supporting timely and targeted crop protection decisions.

Acoustic Sensors

These devices monitor pest-generated sounds or vibrations within the crop canopy or traps. When signal intensity exceeds preset thresholds, wireless nodes transmit alerts, enabling early and energy-efficient detection of infestations across large areas.

Leaf Area Index (LAI) Sensors

LAI sensors indirectly indicate pest damage by measuring reductions in leaf area and canopy density caused by insect feeding. Declining LAI values signal loss of chlorophyll and photosynthetic capacity, providing early warning of pest pressure.

Crop Disease Detection

Laboratory-Based Direct Detection Sensors:

Techniques such as PCR, ELISA, FISH, IF, FCM, and GC-MS provide highly accurate pathogen identification and confirmation. However, they require laboratory processing, skilled personnel, and longer turnaround times, limiting their suitability for real-time field monitoring.

Thermography (Infrared) Sensors

These sensors detect disease-induced stress by measuring canopy temperature anomalies resulting from reduced transpiration. They can reveal infection before visible symptoms appear, although accuracy is influenced by environmental variability and they cannot identify specific pathogens.

Fluorescence Sensors

By tracking changes in chlorophyll fluorescence and photosynthetic efficiency, these sensors detect early physiological disturbances caused by disease. They are highly sensitive but currently have limited large-scale field deployment.

Hyperspectral Sensors

Operating across a broad spectral range ($\approx 350\text{--}2500\text{ nm}$), hyperspectral cameras capture subtle biochemical and structural changes in infected plants, including red-edge shifts and NIR/SWIR reflectance variations. When mounted on UAVs, they enable early, high-resolution disease surveillance over large areas.

Gas Chromatography-Based VOC Sensors

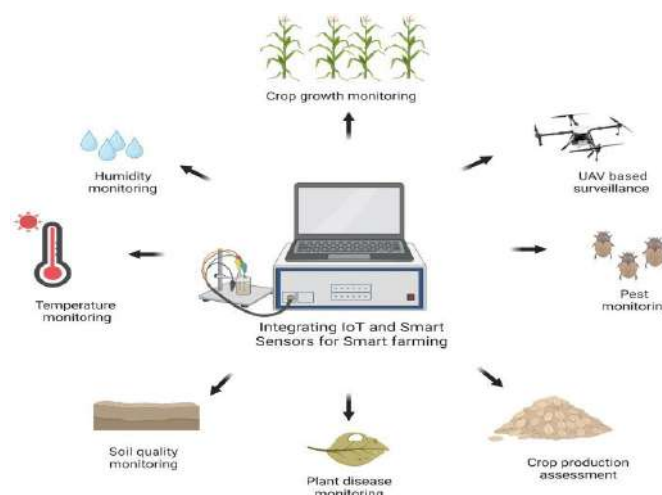
VOC analysis detects pathogen-induced volatile compounds such as C6-aldehydes, terpenes, and alcohols, enabling differentiation between healthy and infected plants (Li et al., 2021). Electronic noses (e-noses) provide faster pattern recognition, although sampling requirements and processing time still limit fully real-time deployment.

With the rapid proliferation of smart sensing technologies in precision agriculture, vast volumes of high-resolution spatial and temporal data are now being generated. The large volume of high-resolution data generated by smart agricultural sensors has necessitated the adoption of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) techniques for efficient analysis, prediction, and decision support.

Nyakuri et al. (2025) developed a lightweight AI-powered IoT edge system (Tiny-Lite Net) for real-time pest and disease detection in resource-constrained environments, achieving 98.6% accuracy with low inference time and enabling efficient on-device processing without continuous internet connectivity.

Similarly, Xu Sheng-He and Wang (2025) proposed a multimodal fusion framework integrating image and environmental data (temperature, humidity, soil moisture) for wheat pest and disease identification, achieving 96.5% accuracy, 94.8% precision, and 97.2% recall, demonstrating the strong potential of integrated AI–IoT sensing for robust crop health monitoring.

(Prem et al., 2023)



III. REAL-TIME AGRO-ADVISORIES AND DECISION SUPPORT

Sensor networks generate high-frequency environmental and crop status data; however, their true value is realized only when these data streams are translated into actionable insights. By integrating weather stations, soil sensors, and crop monitoring systems with Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Internet of Things (IoT) platforms, real-time agro-advisories can be generated to support timely farm decisions. The ultimate goal of precision agrometeorology is therefore to convert sensor-derived information into practical recommendations for farmers and stakeholders (Chlingaryan et al. 2018). These real-time advisories, typically delivered through mobile applications, SMS services, or embedded tractor dashboards, enable proactive responses to weather variability and crop stress. In India, Agri Technology initiatives have successfully combined IoT-based weather monitoring with AI-driven analytics to disseminate SMS advisories to smallholder farmers, thereby strengthening climate-resilient agricultural management. (Kumari et al., 2025)

Advisory Type	Typical Delivery
1.Frost warning	Mobile alert, SMS
2.Irrigation schedule	App dashboard alert
3.Pest outbreak alert	SMS / Email
4.Nutrient deficiency	Push notification
5.Harvest timing	App calendar note

These developments underscore the importance of integrated sensors and intelligent analytics in converting raw data into actionable insights. Real-time, location-specific advisories bridge precision sensing and farm management, improving productivity, resource efficiency, and climate resilience.

IV. CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS

Precision agriculture (PA) using intelligent sensors and data analytics has improved farming efficiency but still faces adoption challenges. Sensors often need frequent calibration and better durability for reliable field data. Issues such as interoperability, data accuracy, standardization, cybersecurity, and limited power supply in remote areas also restrict seamless deployment.

V. FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Looking ahead, IoT-based sensing, AI, and machine learning are expected to improve real-time monitoring and predictive decision-making. Future work should focus on more robust, low-power, and interoperable systems to enhance the scalability and sustainability of precision agriculture.

VI. CONCLUSION

The convergence of smart sensing technologies, IoT connectivity, and AI-driven analytics is rapidly transforming precision agriculture into a highly responsive, data-intensive farming paradigm. Continuous monitoring of soil, crop, and environmental conditions enables site-specific management of water, nutrients, and crop protection, thereby improving productivity while conserving resources. Although challenges related to cost, interoperability, sensor reliability, and power sustainability remain, ongoing advances in sensor miniaturization, edge computing, and intelligent decision-support systems are steadily addressing these constraints. As these technologies mature and become more accessible, precision agriculture is expected to play a pivotal role in achieving sustainable intensification, climate resilience, and long-term global food security.

REFERENCES

- [1] Abioye, A. E., Abidin, M. S. Z., Mahmud, M. S. A., Buyamin, S., Mohammed, O. O., Otuoze, A. O., et al. (2023). Model based predictive control strategy for water saving drip irrigation. *Smart Agricultural Technology*, 4, 100179.
- [2] Alharbi, S., Felemban, A., Abdelrahim, A., & Al-Dakhil, M. (2024). Agricultural and technology-based strategies to improve water-use efficiency in arid and semiarid areas. *Water (Basel)*, 16, 1842.
- [3] Anushi, S. J., Krishnamoorthi, A., & Singh, S. K. (2024). Cultivating tomorrow: Precision agriculture and sustainable crop production.
- [4] Bashir, S. S., Hussain, A., Hussain, S. J., Wani, O. A., Zahid Nabi, S., Dar, N. A., et al. (2021). Plant drought stress tolerance: Understanding its physiological, biochemical and molecular mechanisms. *Biotechnology & Biotechnological Equipment*, 35, 1912–1925.
- [5] Bhamini, K., Singh, A., Magrey, A., Kulsoom, S., Najmusaqib, S., Longshang, P. R., Scholar, R., & Jan, I. (2025). The role of GIS and GPS in precision fertilization: Optimizing nutrient management for sustainable cropping. *International Journal of Research in Agronomy*, 8, 260–267.
- [6] Chlingaryan, A., Sukkarieh, S., & Whelan, B. (2018). Machine learning approaches for crop yield prediction and nitrogen status estimation in precision agriculture: A review. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 151, 61–69.
- [7] Erler, A., Riebe, D., Beitz, T., Löhmansröben, H.-G., & Gebbers, R. (2020). Soil nutrient detection for precision agriculture using handheld laser-induced breakdown spectroscopy (LIBS) and multivariate regression methods (PLSR, Lasso and GPR). *Sensors*, 20, 418.
- [8] FAO. (2017). The future of food and agriculture – Trends and challenges. FAO.
- [9] Fauziah, N. O., Fitriatin, B. N., Fakhurroja, H., & Simarmata, T. (2024). Enhancing soil nutritional status in smart farming: The role of IoT-based management for meeting plant requirements. *International Journal of Agronomy*, 2024, 8874325.

- [10] Jain, H. K. (2012). Transition to twenty-first century agriculture: Change of direction. *Agricultural Research*, 1, 12–17. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s40003-011-0008-0>
- [11] Javaid, M., Haleem, A., Singh, R. P., & Suman, R. (2022). Enhancing smart farming through the applications of Agriculture 4.0 technologies. *International Journal of Intelligent Networks*, 3, 150–164.
- [12] Kalita, A., Chakraborty, M., & Biswas, K. (2017). A comparative study of polymer coated capacitive sensors for soil moisture sensing. In 2017 IEEE International Instrumentation and Measurement Technology Conference (I2MTC) (pp. 1–6). IEEE.
- [13] Keswani, B., Mohapatra, A. G., Mohanty, A., Khanna, A., Rodrigues, J. J. P. C., Gupta, D., & de Albuquerque, V. H. C. (2019). Adapting weather conditions based IoT enabled smart irrigation technique in precision agriculture mechanisms. *Neural Computing and Applications*, 31, 277–292.
- [14] Khatri, P., Kumar, P., Shakya, K. S., et al. (2024). Understanding the intertwined nature of rising multiple risks in modern agriculture and food system. *Environment, Development and Sustainability*, 26, 24107–24150.
- [15] Latino, M. E., Menegoli, M., Lazoi, M., & Corallo, A. (2022). Voluntary traceability in food supply chain: A framework leading its implementation in Agriculture 4.0. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 178, 121564.
- [16] Li, Z., Liu, Y., Hossain, O., Paul, R., Yao, S., Wu, S., Ristaino, J. B., Zhu, Y., & Wei, Q. (2021). Real-time monitoring of plant stresses via chemiresistive profiling of leaf volatiles by a wearable sensor. *Matter*, 4(7), 2553–2570.
- [17] Lozoya, C., Eyzaguirre, E., Espinoza, J., Montes-Fonseca, S. L., & Rosas-Perez, G. (2019). Spectral vegetation index sensor evaluation for greenhouse precision agriculture. In 2019 IEEE Sensors (pp. 1–4).
- [18] Mallareddy, M., Thirumalaikumar, R., Balasubramanian, P., Naseeruddin, R., Nithya, N., Mariadoss, A., et al. (2023). Maximizing water use efficiency in rice farming: A comprehensive review of innovative irrigation management technologies. *Water (Basel)*, 15, 1802.
- [19] Mansoor, S., Iqbal, S., Popescu, S. M., Kim, S. L., Chung, Y. S., & Baek, J.-H. (2025). Integration of smart sensors and IoT in precision agriculture: Trends, challenges and future prospectives. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 16, 1587869.
- [20] Nyakuri, J. P., Nkundineza, C., Gatera, O., Nkurikiyeyezu, K., & Mwitende, G. (2025). AI and IoT-powered edge device optimized for crop pest and disease detection. *Scientific Reports*, 15(1), 22905.
- [21] Onwuka, B., & Mang, B. (2018). Effects of soil temperature on some soil properties and plant growth. *Advances in Plants & Agriculture Research*, 8, 34–37. <https://doi.org/10.15406/apar.2018.08.00288>
- [22] Paramesh, V., Mohan Kumar, R., Rajanna, G. A., Gowda, S., Nath, A. J., Madival, Y., Jinger, D., Bhat, S., & Toraskar, S. (2023). Integrated nutrient management for improving

crop yields, soil properties, and reducing greenhouse gas emissions. *Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems*, 7, 1173258.

- [23] Pham, M. H., Saleem, S. K., & Okello, N. (2013). Real-time optimization of irrigation scheduling in agriculture. In 2013 25th Chinese Control and Decision Conference (CCDC) (pp. 4435–4439). IEEE.
- [24] Polwaththa, K. P. G. D. M., Amarasinghe, A. A. Y., & Nandasena, G. P. M. S. (2024). A review of innovative fertilization strategies in precision agriculture. *Open Access Research Journal of Science and Technology*, 12, 49–57.
- [25] Power, A. G. (2013). Ecology of agriculture. In *Encyclopedia of Biodiversity* (pp. 9–15). Elsevier.
- [26] Prajapati, S., & Patel, K. (2024). Precision agriculture revolution: Advancing with site-specific nutrient management for sustainable farming. [Journal details needed], 5, 21–30.
- [27] Prem Rajak, Ganguly, A., Adhikary, S., & Bhattacharya, S. (2023). Internet of Things and smart sensors in agriculture: Scopes and challenges. *Journal of Agriculture and Food Research*, 14, 100776.
- [28] Raza, I., Zubair, M., Zaib, M., Khalil, M. H., Haidar, A., Sikandar, A., Abbas, M. Q., Javed, A., Liaqat, M. M., Ain, A. T., Nafees, M., & Ashfaq, M. A. (2023). Precision nutrient application techniques to improve soil fertility and crop yield: A review with future prospect. *International Research Journal of Engineering and Technology*, 5(8).
- [29] Sachin, K. S., Dass, A., Dhar, S., Rajanna, G. A., Singh, T., Sudhishri, S., et al. (2023). Sensor-based precision nutrient and irrigation management enhances the physiological performance, water productivity, and yield of soybean under system of crop intensification. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 14, 1282217.
- [30] Tenreiro, T. R., Avillez, F., Gómez, J. A., Penteado, M., Coelho, J. C., & Fereres, E. (2023). Opportunities for variable rate application of nitrogen under spatial water variations in rainfed wheat systems—An economic analysis. *Precision Agriculture*, 24, 853–878.
- [31] Vullaganti, N., Ram, B. G., & Sun, X. (2025). Precision agriculture technologies for soil site-specific nutrient management: A comprehensive review. *Artificial Intelligence in Agriculture*, 15(2), 147–161.
- [32] Vuran, M. C., Salam, A., Wong, R., & Irmak, S. (2018). Internet of underground things in precision agriculture: Architecture and technology aspects. *Ad Hoc Networks*, 81, 160–173.
- [33] Wei, Z., & Fang, W. (2024). UV-NDVI for real-time crop health monitoring in vertical farms. *Smart Agricultural Technology*, 8, 100462.
- [34] Xu, S.-H., & Wang, S. (2025). An intelligent identification for pest and disease detection in wheat leaf based on environmental data using multimodal data fusion. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 16, 1608515.
- [35] Zhai, Z., Martínez, J. F., Beltran, V., & Martínez, N. L. (2020). Decision support systems for agriculture 4.0: Survey and challenges. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 170, 105256.

Adaptation and Mitigation Approaches for Enhancing Climate Resilience in Vegetable Crops: A Review

Jashandeep Singh*, Harleen Kaur and R. K. Pal

*Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University,
Ludhiana*

*Corresponding author: jsmattar.js@gmail.com

Abstract - Vegetable production systems are highly vulnerable to climate variability and long-term climate change due to their sensitivity to heat, water stress, and extreme weather events. These factors reduce yield, affect quality, and threaten farmers' income across agro-ecological regions. Rising temperatures, erratic rainfall, and increasing drought and salinity are major global constraints, often leading to crop losses and reduced profitability. Sustaining vegetable systems requires strong adaptation strategies. The use of heat, drought, and salinity-tolerant varieties, along with protected cultivation such as polyhouses and net houses, helps reduce climatic risks. Climate-smart nutrient and pest management practices further improve resilience and stabilize productivity under changing climatic conditions. Mitigation efforts within vegetable systems focus on reducing greenhouse gas emissions and strengthening ecosystem services. Optimized fertilizer management can reduce emissions by 20–40%, while practices such as soil carbon sequestration, agroforestry integration, and improved water management enhance environmental sustainability. Socio-economic adaptation among smallholder and indigenous communities includes crop diversification, adjustment of planting dates, and integration of traditional knowledge to maintain livelihoods under climatic uncertainty. In Punjab, rising heat stress, erratic rainfall, and water scarcity increasingly threaten vegetables such as tomato and cauliflower. Climate-resilient varieties, protected cultivation, micro-irrigation, mulching, and weather-based advisories are key adaptation measures, while efficient fertilizer use, soil carbon enhancement, and renewable energy in irrigation support mitigation. Strengthened climate services and extension systems remain essential for building sustainable, resilient vegetable production.

Keywords- Climate Resilience, Protected Cultivation, Climate-Smart Practices, Water-Use Efficiency, Vegetable Crops.

I. INTRODUCTION

Climate change is one of the most pressing challenges of the 21st century, exerting profound impacts on both natural ecosystems and human livelihoods. Climate change happens naturally because of factors like changes in the sun's energy, shifts in the Earth's orbit, or volcanic eruptions. However, the changes we are experiencing today are largely the result of human activities, such as burning fossil fuels, deforestation, and industrial processes. The IPCC's Sixth Assessment Report (2021) concluded that human activities, particularly the release of greenhouse

gases, have already increased the Earth's average surface temperature by about 1.1°C compared to the period 1850–1900. It further projects that global temperatures are likely to reach or surpass 1.5°C above pre-industrial levels within the coming decades. Global circulation models suggest that the global average temperature could rise by around 2°C by the year 2100. Similarly, atmospheric CO₂ levels are projected to rise significantly, reaching between 478 and 1100 ppm by the end of the 21st century (IPCC, 2007). Climate change is expected to intensify the hydrological cycle unevenly, increasing both drought risks and extreme rainfall events depending on location and season. All these changes are likely to have severe implications on vegetable production.

Vegetables, a cornerstone of global food and nutritional security, are highly vulnerable to climate variability and long-term climatic. They are essential to human diets, providing vital nutrients such as vitamins, minerals, fiber, antioxidants, carbohydrates, and proteins. Beyond ensuring nutritional security, vegetable cultivation also serves as a reliable source of income, particularly for small and marginal farmers. India ranks as the world's second-largest vegetable producer after China, with a production of 207,207.84 thousand tonnes from 11,232.19 thousand hectares in 2023–24, achieving an average yield of 18.45 MT/ha, while Punjab records an even higher productivity of 20.67 MT/ha from 350.57 thousand hectares (Anonymous. 2024). However, the sustainability of this vital sector is increasingly threatened by rising global temperatures and more frequent extreme weather events, which directly affect plant physiological processes and crop productivity (Wang et al., 2025). Horticultural crops, especially vegetables, are particularly sensitive due to their narrow climatic requirements for optimal growth and development. In Punjab, increasing heat stress, irregular rainfall, and water scarcity are already posing serious challenges to crops like tomato and cauliflower, where even minor climatic deviations can disrupt phenology and critical growth stages (Malhotra, 2017). Globally, continued increases in greenhouse gas emissions could reduce vegetable and legume yields by up to 35% by the end of the century, underscoring the urgent need for climate-resilient strategies. Farmers can respond by modifying cropping patterns, adjusting planting dates, altering input management, and diversifying production systems (Ramlall, 2014).

Therefore, this review comprehensively examines the impacts of climate change on vegetable production and evaluates the adaptation and mitigation approaches.

II. IMPACTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE ON VEGETABLES PRODUCTION

Climate change adversely affects vegetable production by increasing temperatures, altering rainfall patterns, and intensifying extreme weather events. These changes reduce yield, impair quality, increase pest and disease incidence, and threaten the stability and sustainability of vegetable-based farming systems.

Heat stress

Rising temperatures are a major constraint to vegetable productivity under climate change. Heat stress disrupts key physiological and biochemical processes, including photosynthesis, respiration, and enzyme activity, leading to reduced carbon fixation and energy imbalance

(Mahajan et al., 2025). Under high temperatures, plant stomata tend to close earlier in the day, restricting gas exchange and reducing photosynthesis. At the same time, respiration rates increase as temperature rises. Warm night temperatures (above 75°F) further intensify cellular respiration, which decreases the amount of sugars and other stored compounds available for fruit and seed development. As a result, more of the plant's stored photosynthates are consumed in respiration rather than contributing to yield. It also induces oxidative stress and destabilizes cellular membranes, further impairing plant growth and yield (Kumar et al., 2025).

Reproductive stages are particularly vulnerable. In tomato, even a 2–4°C rise above the optimum (25–30°C day/20°C night) disrupts gamete development, reduces fruit set, and lowers yield. Lycopene synthesis declines above 27°C and ceases at 40°C, adversely affecting fruit quality (Firon et al., 2006). In potato, optimum tuberisation occurs at 20°C; temperatures above 21°C reduce yield and 30°C completely inhibits tuber formation (Sekhawat, 2001). Climate projections suggest that yield losses due to heat stress may reach up to 40% in the coming decades (Shahzad et al., 2021).

Cold stress

Cold stress, classified as chilling (0–15°C) and freezing (<0°C) is a major abiotic constraint limiting vegetable productivity. Low temperatures disrupt enzymatic activity, membrane stability, and metabolic coordination, resulting in stunted growth, impaired development, yield loss, and quality deterioration (Ding et al., 2019). Even moderate chilling (8–12°C) suppresses germination, vegetative growth, pollen tube elongation, and fruit set.

Crop-specific responses further highlight its severity. In eggplant, cold reduces chlorophyll content (Wu et al., 2014), while in potato it disrupts chloroplast ultrastructure and thylakoid organization, lowering photosynthetic efficiency. In Brassica rapa, prolonged chilling markedly reduces radicle and plumule growth, with germination completely inhibited below 12°C and low temperatures further restrict nutrient and water uptake (He et al., 2020). In cabbage, chilling delays head formation, induces premature bolting (Manasa et al., 2022) and reduces nutritional and antioxidant quality.

Drought stress

Climate change is altering rainfall patterns and increasing the frequency and severity of droughts, leading to soil moisture deficits and water stress in horticultural crops. Under drought, stomatal closure reduces CO₂ uptake, limiting photosynthesis and carbon assimilation and ultimately decreasing biomass and yield. Water stress also disrupts leaf turgor, chlorophyll content, enzyme activity, and nutrient uptake, resulting in reduced growth, lower yield, and poor fruit quality (Naik et al., 2017). Overall, recurrent drought under climate change threatens productivity and quality in vegetable crops.

Vegetables are particularly vulnerable due to their high water content (~90%). Prolonged moisture deficit restricts germination in onion and okra and reduces tuber sprouting in potato (Arora et al., 2010). Drought during reproductive stages causes flower abscission and severe yield

losses exceeding 50% in tomato (Srinivasa and Bhatt, 2012) and up to 44% in bell pepper during flowering fruit set (Candid et al., 2009).

Waterlogging

Most vegetable crops, particularly shallow-rooted species, are highly sensitive to flooding and water-logging, a common constraint in low-lying rainfed areas. Water-logging occurs when excess soil moisture fills pore spaces, creating hypoxic or anoxic conditions that severely restrict root respiration. Oxygen deprivation disrupts aerobic respiration, forcing a shift to anaerobic metabolism and impairing energy production (Sairam et al., 2008). As a result, nutrient and water uptake decline, and plants exhibit wilting and chlorosis despite being surrounded by excess water. Flooding also reduces chlorophyll content, chlorophyll fluorescence, photosynthetic rate, and leaf water potential, while increasing proline accumulation, ultimately resulting in substantial yield losses in crops such as tomato and capsicum (Bhatt et al., 2015). Onion, due to its shallow root system, is particularly vulnerable to water-logging. Seven days of flooding in onion cultivar- Arka Kalyan resulted in reductions of 86% in photosynthesis, 51% in leaf area, 46% in fresh weight, and 47% in dry matter (Srinivasa Rao, 2010). The bulb initiation stage is especially sensitive, with seven days of water stagnation causing up to 50% reduction in bulb yield, partly due to increased incidence of purple blotch and twister diseases.

III. ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

Sustaining vegetable productivity under a changing climate requires continuous and strategic efforts. The development and adoption of appropriate crop management practices, along with climate-resilient cultivars, are essential to mitigate the adverse effects of diverse abiotic stresses and ensure stable yield and quality.

Alterations in cultivation practices

Changing climatic conditions require adjustments in cultivation practices to maintain crop productivity. Modifying sowing dates, adopting climate-resilient varieties, improving irrigation and soil management, and using practices like mulching can help crops adapt to environmental stresses and ensure stable yields.

1. Selection of climate resilient varieties

Due to changing climatic conditions, crop durations are shortening and favourable environmental conditions are available only for a limited period; therefore, suitable cultivars that are resistant or tolerant should be adopted to cope with climate change. For example, in tomato, Arka Vikas and Arka Meghali for drought, Thar Anant for heat stress

2. Alteration in sowing time

Aligning crop phenology with the period of favourable environmental conditions by choosing the most suitable sowing time is essential to avoid stress and achieve maximum yields under changing climatic conditions (Singh et al., 2016). Adjusting the sowing date can help create a favourable microclimate, thereby reducing the harmful effects of high temperatures during the

reproductive stage of crop growth (Pal et al., 1996). A field study conducted at the research farm of CSK HPKV, Palampur, revealed that sowing potato on 10th December with five irrigations resulted in the highest growth and yield, whereas late sowing on 10th January with fewer irrigations reduced productivity (Sharma et al., 2025). A three-year winter study revealed that tomato yield varied significantly with planting date and variety. Compared to earlier (15 and 30 December) and later plantings (30 January and 15 February), Bavandar (V3) planted on 15 January produced the highest yield. (Singh et al., 2024).

3. Mulch application

Mulching helps conserve soil moisture, reduce degradation, and protect vegetable crops from heavy rain, high temperatures, and flooding (Pena & Hughes, 2007). It lowers evaporation, regulates soil temperature, controls weeds, and reduces runoff and erosion. Organic mulches such as rice straw and grasses also enhance soil fertility by adding organic carbon as they decompose. Crop residues as mulch can improve water-use efficiency by 10–20% by lowering soil evaporation and promoting greater plant transpiration. Mulch blocks solar radiation and modifies soil temperature. Light-coloured mulches reduce soil temperature in summer, while dark or black mulches increase soil temperature in winter. Kar and Kumar (2007) reported that mulching significantly increased leaf area index, photosynthetically active radiation interception, yield, and water-use efficiency in potato. These improvements were attributed to better soil moisture conservation and a reduction in soil temperature by about 4–6°C. Mendonça et al. (2021) reported that mulching in tomato cultivation improves plant growth, yield, and fruit quality by modifying soil temperature, moisture, and weed control. Coloured plastic mulches like green and silver films increased tomato yield by about 33-34% in fall-winter, while dark-coloured mulches raised soil temperature but could hinder growth in hotter seasons.

4. Row spacing and orientation

The spacing between rows significantly affects canopy temperature and the crop's ability to intercept radiation. Wider row spacing reduces the amount of radiation captured by the crop, allowing more sunlight to reach the soil and raising soil temperature. Conversely, narrower row spacing increases radiation interception by the crop, limiting the radiation that reaches the soil and thereby lowering soil temperature and soil evaporation. This helps conserve soil moisture and improves water use efficiency, enabling crops to produce more yield with the same or less water. Tegen and Jembere (2022) found that for cabbage, adjusting inter- and intra-row spacing to 50 cm × 30 cm increased plant population and yield by 131% compared to the traditional 50 cm × 50 cm spacing while producing acceptable head size. Similarly, in potato narrower row widths (71–76 cm) and closer seed spacing (20 cm) increased marketable tuber yield and profitability compared to wider rows and seed spacings. (Makokha et al., 2025).

5. Irrigation and nutrient management

Climate change can disrupt and delay the onset of monsoons, frequently leading to crop failures. Such delays or failures create water shortages and result in lower than average crop yields

(Koundinya et al., 2014). Timely irrigation and effective soil moisture conservation are essential components of irrigation water management to cope with the impacts of climate change. Irrigation enhances soil moisture, leading to higher evapotranspiration and a reduction in both soil and canopy temperatures. During extremely hot and dry conditions, light irrigation is often used to protect crops from heat stress. Kumar et al. (2012) reported that cabbage achieves the highest water use efficiency (WUE) under drip irrigation compared to furrow irrigation.

Traditional fertilizer practices often result in nutrient losses, soil degradation, and greenhouse gas emissions. In contrast, climate-smart nutrient management aims to optimize nutrient use, maintaining crop productivity while minimizing environmental impacts under changing climate conditions. Precise nutrient management also helps crops cope with abiotic stresses. For example, potassium and calcium improve drought tolerance, yield, and quality, while foliar application of calcium (20 or 35 mg L⁻¹) and sulphur (5 or 10 g L⁻¹) enhances salinity tolerance in chili (Mukhtar et al., 2016).

6. Integrated cropping systems

Integrated and multiple cropping systems are proving to be very effective ways for farmers to adapt to and even mitigate some effects of climate change. Techniques like intercropping, mixed, relay, and strip cropping not only boost crop yield and productivity but also reduce the risk of crop failure during unpredictable weather (Koundinya et al., 2014). Legumes are often included in these systems because their short growth cycle and nitrogen-fixing ability help stabilize productivity. Intercropping vegetables for example baby corn with cowpea, okra, brinjal, chilli, tomato or pea has consistently been shown to be more profitable and productive than growing crops alone (Adhikary et al., 2015a). Tree-based intercropping can also contribute to reducing greenhouse gas emissions. Beyond productivity, these practices make better use of resources, conserve soil moisture, and help control pests and diseases. Including crop rotation with legumes and cover crops further improves nitrogen availability, builds soil organic carbon, and preserves moisture, making these strategies particularly valuable in drought-prone or moisture-stressed areas.

Protected cultivation and Technical innovations

Protected cultivation systems including polyhouses, net houses, and low tunnels moderate crop microclimate and reduce the impacts of heat stress, erratic rainfall, and pest incidence, serving as both productivity enhancing and risk management tools in high value vegetable production (Khatri-Chhetri et al., 2017). Using nets and other coverings can help limit air movement around seedlings, especially when temperatures are high. According to Gogo et al. (2012), netting can change the microclimate around tomato seedlings, raising the daily temperature by about 3.5°C and increasing relative humidity by 10%. These warmer, more humid conditions, along with better root development, improve the plant's ability to take up nutrients like potassium and nitrogen, which in turn supports healthier leaves and higher chlorophyll content. Netting also provides a physical barrier against pests. For example, Licciardi et al. (2007) found that netting delayed aphid infestations on cabbage.

University of Delaware research (2018–2019) evaluated various shade cloth colors—black, Aluminet, red, blue, and white—and found that 30% black shade cloth markedly enhanced marketable pepper yield, producing up to 18 times more fruit in the first harvest, while also improving fruit quality. For tomatoes, shading improved fruit quality, though it had no significant effect on overall yield. (Weekly Crop Update, 2020). Low-cost structures such as rain shelters, tunnels, and screen houses are suitable adaptation options in low and middle income countries when integrated with effective pest management strategies.

Plant growth regulators

Plant growth regulators (PGRs) like Salicylic acid, Absciscic acid and Gibberellins significantly contribute to improving cold stress tolerance in vegetable crops.

Salicylic acid (SA) enhances reproductive performance, fruit quality, and stress resilience under low-temperature conditions. Foliar application has been shown to increase fruit number in pepper and cucumber (Hayat et al., 2010), reduce chilling injury in tomato and improve vitamin C and lycopene content (Javaheri et al., 2012). Lower concentrations (0.1–0.5 mM) effectively mitigated cold stress in tomato, whereas excessive acid accumulation may heighten freezing sensitivity.

Seed priming

Seed priming is an effective pre-sowing strategy to improve germination, uniform emergence, and early seedling establishment under salinity and water stress. It enhances enzymatic activity involved in reserve mobilization, accelerating nutrient supply to developing seedlings (Thakur et al., 2020). Priming pepper seeds with 1 mM NaCl improved germination and establishment under salt stress (Khan et al., 2009). Capsicum cv. California Wonder seeds treated with thiourea (1.3 mM), H₂O₂ (1.5 mM), and ABA (100 mM) showed enhanced salt tolerance with 100% seedling survival (Yadav et al., 2011). Similarly, tomato seeds primed with 25 mM KNO₃ exhibited higher germination and seedling fresh weight (Nawaz et al., 2011).

Improved decision-making through crop modelling

Crop models integrate information on genotype, environment, management practices, and socioeconomic factors to analyse their interactions and predict crop performance. They are valuable tools for estimating expected yields and guiding agronomic decisions such as crop/variety selection, optimal planting dates, and irrigation and fertilizer scheduling across regions (Asseng et al., 2015). These models also help assess the potential impacts of climate change, thereby reducing production risks and enhancing nutritional security.

IV. MITIGATION STRATEGIES

Mitigation strategies focus on reducing the causes of climate change, such as lowering greenhouse gas emissions and enhancing carbon sequestration.

Carbon sequestration and soil management

Practices such as conservation or reduced tillage, diversified crop rotations, cover cropping, and the application of organic amendments (e.g., manure and compost) enhance soil organic carbon (SOC) by increasing carbon inputs and minimizing carbon losses, thereby improving overall soil health. Organic farming has been shown to increase soil carbon by 20% compared to conventional farming and could potentially offset up to 11% of global greenhouse gas emissions over the next 20 years (Wright, 2010). Optimized fertilizer management can reduce emissions by 20–40%. Cover crops increase soil organic carbon by adding high biomass and root-derived organic matter, which improves aggregation and carbon stabilization. They also lower soil temperature, reducing decomposition and carbon loss (Melillo et al., 2017). Agroforestry is another effective approach for carbon sequestration. Verchot et al., (2007) reported that carbon sequestration through agroforestry could reach 600 Mt by 2040.

Green and energy conserving infrastructure

Solar wind systems in greenhouses significantly lower fossil fuel consumption for heating, cooling, and ventilation, thereby reducing greenhouse gas emissions and operating costs while maintaining optimal climate control. Hybrid solar systems with energy storage for greenhouse heating have demonstrated approximately 89% CO₂ emission reductions compared to low-cost fossil fuel-based systems. (Espitia et al., 2024).

Strategy Category	Key Interventions	Adaptation Benefits	Mitigation Benefits
Climate-Resilient Breeding	Heat, drought, salinity-tolerant cultivars; rootstocks	Stable yields under stress	Reduced input dependency
Precision Water Management	Drip irrigation, sensor-based irrigation scheduling	Improved water-use efficiency	Lower energy use & emissions
Protected Cultivation	Shade nets, greenhouses, evaporative cooling	Microclimate regulation	Efficient resource use
Soil Health Management	Organic amendments, mulching, cover crops	Improved moisture retention	Carbon sequestration
Agroforestry & Diversification	Tree-crop integration, mixed cropping	Microclimate buffering	Long-term carbon storage
Digital & AI-Based Tools	Climate forecasting, DSS, remote sensing	Early stress detection	Reduced wastage & inputs
Renewable Energy Use	Solar pumps, energy-efficient cold storage	Cost reduction	Reduced GHG emissions

TABLE.1 Integrated Adaptation and Mitigation Strategies for Climate-Resilient Horticulture (Yadav et al.,2026)

V. CONCLUSION

Vegetable production is highly vulnerable to climate change due to its sensitivity to temperature fluctuations, water stress, and extreme weather events. Rising heat, erratic rainfall, drought, and flooding adversely affect crop growth, yield, quality, and nutritional value, while also increasing pest and disease pressures. Adaptation strategies including selecting climate-resilient cultivars, protected cultivation, precision water and nutrient management, seed priming and use of plant growth regulators can enhance resilience and stabilize production. Simultaneously, mitigation measures such as carbon sequestration, energy-efficient infrastructure, and sustainable soil management help reduce greenhouse gas emissions and improve long-term sustainability.

Despite these advances, critical research gaps remain in crop-specific stress responses, nutritional impacts, technology integration, socio-economic constraints, and localized climate projections. Addressing these gaps through multi-disciplinary approaches, policy support, and farmer-centric interventions will be essential to develop climate-smart vegetable production systems that ensure food security, livelihood stability, and environmental sustainability under changing climatic conditions.

REFERENCES

- [1] Adhikary, S., Koundinya, A. V. V., Pandit, M. K., and Bhattacharya, B. (2015a). Evaluation of the efficiency of baby corn based vegetable intercropping systems. *International Journal of Plant and Soil Science*, 5, 366–374.
- [2] Anonymous. (2024). Area, production and productivity of total vegetables in India. Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
- [3] Arora, S. K., Partap, P. S., Pandita, M. L., and Jalal, I. (2010). Production problems and their possible remedies in vegetable crops. *Indian Horticulture*, 32, 2–8.
- [4] Asseng, S., Zhu, Y., Wang, E., and Zhang, W. (2015). Crop modeling for climate change impact and adaptation. In *Crop Physiology* (pp. 505–546).
- [5] Bhatt, R. M., Upreti, K. K., Divya, M. H., Bhat, S., Pavithra, C. B., and Sadashiva, A. T. (2015). Interspecific grafting to enhance physiological resilience to flooding stress in tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum* L.). *Scientia Horticulturae*, 182, 8–17.
- [6] Bies-Etheve, N., Gaubier-Comella, P., Debures, A., Lasserre, E., Jobet, E., Raynal, M., Cooke, R., and Delseny, M. (2008). Inventory, evolution and expression profiling diversity of the LEA protein gene family in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. *Plant Molecular Biology*, 67, 107–124.
- [7] Candido, V., Miccolis, V., and Rivelli, A. R. (2009). Yield traits and water and nitrogen use efficiencies of bell pepper grown in plastic greenhouse. *Italian Journal of Agronomy*, 4, 91–100.
- [8] Dalal, M., Tayal, D., Chinnusamy, V., and Bansal, K. C. (2009). Abiotic stress and ABA-inducible Group 4 LEA from *Brassica napus* plays a key role in salt and drought tolerance. *Journal of Biotechnology*, 139, 137–145.

- [9] Ding, Y., Shi, Y., and Yang, S. (2019). Advances and challenges in uncovering cold tolerance regulatory mechanisms in plants. *New Phytologist*, 222, 1690–1704.
- [10] Espitia, J. J., Velázquez, F. A., Rodriguez, J., Gomez, L., Baeza, E., Aguilar-Rodríguez, C. E., and Villagran, E. (2024). Solar energy applications in protected agriculture: A technical and bibliometric review. *Agronomy*, 14, 2791.
- [11] Firon, N., Shaked, R., Peet, M. M., Phari, D. M., Zamsk, E., Rosenfeld, K., Althan, L., and Pressman, N. E. (2006). Pollen grains of heat tolerant tomato cultivars retain higher carbohydrate concentration under heat stress conditions. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 109, 212–217.
- [12] Gogo, E. O., Saidi, M., Itulya, F. M., Martin, T., and Ngouajro, M. (2012). Microclimate modification using eco-friendly nets for high quality tomato transplant production by small scale farmers in East Africa. *HortTechnology*, 22, 292–298.
- [13] Hayat, Q., Hayat, S., Irfan, M., and Ahmad, A. (2010). Effect of exogenous salicylic acid under changing environment: A review. *Environmental and Experimental Botany*, 68, 14–25.
- [14] He, F., Thiele, B., Santhiraraja-Abresch, S., Watt, M., Kraska, T., Ulbrich, A., and Kuhn, A. J. (2020). Effects of root temperature on plant growth and food quality of Chinese broccoli (*Brassica oleracea* var. *alboglabra* Bailey). *Agronomy*, 10, 702.
- [15] Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2007). Summary for policymakers. In *Climate change 2007: Mitigation. Contribution of Working Group III to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.
- [16] Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2021). *Sixth assessment report*.
- [17] Javaheri, M., Mashayekhi, K., Dedham, A., and Zaker-Tavallae, F. (2012). Effects of salicylic acid on yield and quality characters of tomato fruit (*Lycopersicon esculentum* Mill.). *International Journal of Agriculture and Crop Sciences*, 4, 1184–1187.
- [18] Kar, G., and Kumar, A. (2007). Effects of irrigation and straw mulch on water use and tuber yield of potato in eastern India. *Agricultural Water Management*, 94, 109–116.
- [19] Khan, H. A., Ayub, C. M., Pervez, M. A., Bilal, R. M., Shahid, M. A., and Ziaf, K. (2009). Effect of seed priming with NaCl on salinity tolerance of hot pepper (*Capsicum annuum* L.) at seedling stage. *Soil and Environment*, 28, 81–87.
- [20] Khatri-Chhetri, A., Aggarwal, P. K., Joshi, P. K., and Vyas, S. (2017). Farmers' prioritization of climate-smart agriculture technologies. *Agricultural Systems*, 151, 184–191.
- [21] Koundinya, A., Sidhya, P., and Pandit, M. K. (2014). Impact of climate change on vegetable cultivation – A review. *International Journal of Agriculture, Environment and Biotechnology*, 7, 145–155.
- [22] Kumar, A., Muthuramalingam, P., Kumar, R., Tiwari, S., Verma, L., Park, S., and. (2025). Adapting crops to rising temperatures: Understanding heat stress and plant resilience mechanisms. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*, 26, 10426.

- [23] Kumar, P., Sengar, S. S., and Agrawal, B. (2012). Effect of irrigation methods, levels and fertigation on cabbage. *International Journal of Current Trends in Science and Technology*, 3, 37–41.
- [24] Licciardi, S., Assogba-Komlan, F., Sidick, I., Chandre, F., Hougard, J. M., and Martin, T. (2007). A temporary tunnel screen as an ecofriendly method for small-scale farmers to protect cabbage crops in Benin. *International Journal of Tropical Insect Science*, 27, 152–158.
- [25] Makokha, P., Thompson, A. L., Hanson, E., Secor, G., and Robinson, A. P. (2025). Optimization of row width and seed spacing for Red Norland. *American Journal of Potato Research*, 102, 372–379.
- [26] Manasa, S. L., Panigrahy, M., Panigrahi, K. C., and Rout, G. R. (2022). Overview of cold stress regulation in plants. *The Botanical Review*, 88(3), 359–387.
- [27] Melillo, J. M., Frey, S. D., DeAngelis, K. M., Werner, W. J., Bernard, M. J., Bowles, F. P., Pold, G., Knorr, M. A., and Grandy, A. S. (2017). Long-term pattern and magnitude of soil carbon feedback to the climate system in a warming world. *Science*, 358, 101–105.
- [28] Mendonça, S. R., Ávila, M. C. R., Vital, R. G., Evangelista, Z. R., de Carvalho Pontes, N., and dos Reis Nascimento, A. (2021). The effect of different mulching on tomato development and yield. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 275, 109657.
- [29] Mukhtar, I., Shahid, M. A., Khan, M. W., Balal, R. M., Iqbal, M. M., Naz, T., Zubair, M., and Ali, H. H. (2016). Improving salinity tolerance in chili by exogenous application of calcium and sulphur. *Soil and Environment*, 35, 56–64.
- [30] Naik, P. S., Singh, M., and Ranjan, J. K. (2017). Impact of climate change on vegetable production and adaptation measures. In *Abiotic Stress Management for Resilient Agriculture* (pp. 413–428). Springer, Singapore.
- [31] Nawaz, A., Amjad, M., Pervez, M. A., and Afzal, I. (2011). Effect of halopriming on germination and seedling vigor of tomato. *African Journal of Agricultural Research*, 6, 3551–3559.
- [32] Pal, S. K., Kaur, J., Thakur, R., Verma, U. N., and Singh, M. K. (1996). Effect of irrigation, seeding date and fertilizer on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.). *Indian Journal of Agronomy*, 41, 386–389.
- [33] Ramlall, I. (2014). Gauging the impact of climate change on food crops production in Mauritius: An econometric approach. *International Journal of Climate Change Strategies and Management*, 6, 332–355.
- [34] Sairam, R. K., Kumutha, D., Ezhilmathi, K., Deshmukh, P. S., and Srivastava, G. C. (2008). Physiology and biochemistry of waterlogging tolerance in plants. *Biologia Plantarum*, 52, 401–412.
- [35] Sekhawat, G. S. (2001). Potato. In Thumbraj, S., and Singh, N. (Eds.), *Vegetables, Tuber Crops and Spices* (pp. 320–340). ICAR, New Delhi.

- [36] Shahzad, A., Ullah, S., Dar, A. A., and. (2021). Nexus on climate change: Agriculture and possible solution to cope future climate stresses. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, 28, 14211–14232.
- [37] Sharma, H., Rana, R. S., Chauhan, G., Kumari, S., and Prashar, D. (2025). Optimizing sowing windows and irrigation schedules to enhance growth and productivity of potato crop. *International Journal of Plant and Soil Science*, 37, 545–551.
- [38] Singh, K. K., and Kalra, N. (2016). Simulating impact of climatic variability and extreme climatic events on crop production. *Mausam*, 67, 113–130.
- [39] Singh, U., Sharma, Y. K., Bagri, R. K., Choudhary, A. K., and Mahawar, A. K. (2024). Effect of planting time and variety on growth and yield attributes of tomato in semi-arid conditions of Rajasthan.
- [40] Smith, P., and Olesen, J. E. (2010). Synergies between the mitigation of and adaptation to climate change in agriculture. *Journal of Agricultural Science*, 148, 543–552.
- [41] Srinivasa Rao, N. K., and Bhatt, R. M. (2012). Responses of tomato to moisture stress: Plant water balance and yield. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry*, 19, 36.
- [42] Srinivasa Rao, N. K., Laxman, R. H., and Bhatt, R. M. (2010). Extent of impact of flooding and water stress on growth and yield of onion and tomato. *Annual Progress Report of ICAR Network Project*, pp. 111–112.
- [43] Tegen, H., and Jembere, M. (2022). Influences of inter- and intra-row spacing on the growth and head yield of cabbage. *Open Agriculture*, 7, 392–400.
- [44] Thakur, M., Sharma, P., Anand, A., Pandita, V. K., Bhatia, A., and Pushkar, S. (2020). Raffinose and hexose sugar content during germination are related to infrared thermal fingerprints of primed onion (*Allium cepa* L.) seeds. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 11, 579037.
- [45] Verchot, L. V., van Noordwijk, M., Kandji, S., Tomich, T., Ong, C., Albrecht, A., Mackensen, J., Bantilan, C., Anupama, K. V., and Palm, C. (2007). Climate change: Linking adaptation and mitigation through agroforestry. *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change*.
- [46] Wang, X., Xing, M., Li, J., and Li, B. (2025). The impacts of global climate change and environmental security on fruits and vegetables—A policy-technology nexus perspective. *Foods*, 14, 4016.
- [47] Weekly Crop Update. (2020). Heat stress and shading for heat stress mitigation in vegetables and small fruits. *University of Delaware*.
- [48] Wright, J. (2010). Feeding nine billion in a low emissions economy. *Overseas Development Institute and Oxfam*.
- [49] Wu, X. X., He, J., Zhu, Z. W., Yang, S. J., and Zha, D. S. (2014). Protection of photosynthesis and antioxidative system by 24-epibrassinolide in *Solanum melongena* under cold stress. *Biologia Plantarum*, 58, 185–188.
- [50] Yadav, P. V., Maya, K., and Zakwan, A. (2011). Seed priming mediated germination improvement and tolerance to subsequent exposure to cold and salt stress in capsicum. *Research Journal of Seed Science*, 4, 125–136.

- [51] Yadav, V., Kuchhadiya, D. S., Kumar, A., Meena, N. K., Mazumder, C., Kumar, A., and Mishra, A. Climate change and horticultural crop productivity: Impacts, adaptation, and mitigation strategies.

Performance Evaluation of Different Methods of Wheat Sowing for Crop Residue Management

Karun Verma^{#1}, Rashmi Arora^{*2}, Ritu Dogra^{#3}

[#]First- Department of Farm Machinery and Power Engineering, Second- Department of Mechanical Engineering, Third- Department of Renewable Energy Engineering, First-Third Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana (Punjab) - India

¹karunsharma@pau.edu, ²rashmiarora@pau.edu, ³ritudogra@pau.edu

Abstract— The paddy-wheat cropping system dominates agriculture in Punjab, generating large quantities of paddy straw due to widespread combine harvesting. On-farm burning of paddy residue remains a major challenge, causing environmental pollution, loss of soil nutrients and deterioration of soil health. To address this issue, the present study evaluated the performance of different wheat sowing methods for effective paddy residue management. On-farm experiments were conducted at three locations, including two farmers' fields and one Krishi Vigyan Kendra (KVK) farm, to compare happy seeder, super seeder, paddy straw incorporation, and conventional wheat sowing after straw removal. Agronomic parameters such as seed rate, weedicide application, irrigation requirement, lodging percentage and grain yield were recorded, along with economic indicators including cost of cultivation, gross income, net income and benefit–cost (B:C) ratio. The results indicated that wheat sowing with the happy seeder significantly reduced weed infestation, particularly *Phalaris minor*, resulting in fewer weedicide sprays and lower irrigation requirement. The happy seeder method also recorded the lowest cost of cultivation (Rs. 10,650/acre) and the highest B:C ratio. Although slightly higher grain yield was observed under straw incorporation method (20.35 q/acre) than happy seeder (20.2 q/acre), the happy seeder demonstrated superior economic performance and resource-use efficiency. The study concludes that happy seeder technology is an effective and environmentally sustainable alternative to residue burning, offering reduced cultivation cost, improved soil moisture conservation and enhanced profitability in the paddy–wheat system of Punjab.

Keywords— Paddy residue management, Happy Seeder, Agronomic parameters, economic parameters.

I. INTRODUCTION

The paddy-wheat cropping system is the dominant agricultural production system in Punjab. Paddy is the second major crop of the state and the principal crop in

Ludhiana district. During 2024-25, rice was cultivated over an area of 31.79 lakh hectares in Punjab, producing 214.26 lakh tonnes of paddy (equivalent to 143.56 lakh tonnes of rice), with an average productivity of 67.40 quintals per hectare (27.28 quintals per acre). Wheat, another major cereal crop of the state, occupied 35.16 lakh hectares during 2023–24, with a total production of 181.76 lakh tonnes and an average yield of 51.70 quintals per hectare (20.92 quintals per acre) [1]. In Ludhiana district alone, paddy covered 2.58 lakh hectares, followed by wheat on 2.43 lakh hectares during 2024-25. The adoption of high-yielding varieties and widespread mechanization, particularly combine harvesting which is done on approximately 90% of the paddy area, has resulted in the generation of enormous quantities of paddy straw residues. Combine harvesting leaves substantial amounts of loose straw spread across the field, creating operational challenges for timely sowing of the succeeding wheat crop. The large volume of residue hampers direct drilling of wheat without prior straw management.

On-farm burning of paddy straw remains the most common and convenient method adopted by farmers for rapid field clearance. However, this practice has severe environmental and agronomic consequences, including air pollution, deterioration of soil health, and adverse effects on human and animal health. Residue burning also reduces the efficiency of herbicides used in wheat cultivation. Paddy straw burning in Punjab leads to significant nutrient losses, estimated at 3.85 million tonnes of organic carbon, 59 thousand tonnes of nitrogen, 20 thousand tonnes of phosphorus, and 34 thousand tonnes of potassium [2]. Such substantial nutrient depletion not only affects soil fertility but also increases the long-term cost of crop production. Cultivation of long duration rice varieties and harvesting with combine harvester has maximized the rate of in-situ burning of rice residue in Indo-Gangetic Plains (IGP) [3]. Burning of crop stubbles are not only deteriorating soil health by causing loss of soil nutrients and organic matter but also causing environmental pollution by production of different harmful gases. Its removal, in situ incorporation and retention of crop stubbles is better and viable option of residue management than burning. Crop stubble having significant quantity of plant nutrients and their judicious management will have several positive impacts on nutrient availability under rice wheat rotation. Long term studies showed that residue recycling improved soil properties and becoming an essential part of ecologically sound sustainable agriculture.

Considering the serious environmental implications and nutrient losses associated with residue burning, there is an urgent need to adopt sustainable paddy straw management practices. Punjab Agricultural University (PAU), Ludhiana, has developed and recommended several residue management technologies, and Krishi Vigyan Kendras (KVKs) are actively promoting these technologies through on-farm trials and demonstrations. G.S. Dhillon conducted 28 field demonstrations on happy seeder technology in village Killi Nihal Singh of district Bathinda of Punjab state during the years 2013-14 & 2014-15 [4]. The results showed that by using this technology, the nutrients i.e. Urea, DAP and Potash fertilizer were saved worth Rs. 424.15, Rs. 366.25 and Rs. 1989 respectively totaling the amount to Rs. 2779.40 per hectare besides improving the physical properties over longer period of time. The highest incremental benefit:

cost (B: C) ratio of happy seeder plots were 4.36 during the year 2013-14. Apart from saving the burning of the paddy straw, the happy seeder technology was able to save Rs. 2311.25 per hectare over the normal sown wheat during the field preparation, sowing and management operations of the crop. In the context of burning of paddy straw, this happy seeder technology is a new initiative undertaken by Krishi Vigyan Kendra Bathinda for checking of environmental pollution which will be beneficial for the society as a whole because Bathinda district lies in the south-western region of Punjab which is not much mechanized in agriculture as compared to other districts of the state. Farmers are being encouraged to adopt these improved methods to enhance soil health, reduce production costs, and mitigate environmental pollution. A survey was conducted to assess the adoption pattern of different crop residue management technologies by Punjab farmers. G.S. Butter *et. al.* conducted a survey to assess the adoption pattern of different crop residue management technologies by Punjab farmers [5]. The adoption of Happy seeder was maximum, *i.e.* 16.8% among different technologies during 2019 while Super seeder was preferred and accepted on a large scale, *i.e.* 14.99% during 2020. Farmers growing potatoes and other winter crops preferred residue incorporation using chopper, rotavator, Mahindra Mould Board plough or harrow and adoption varied from 9.17 per cent to 20.4 per cent over five years. Overall, paddy straw management has increased from 20.49 per cent during 2016 to 49.91 percent during 2023. In this context, the present study was undertaken to evaluate and compare the performance of different wheat sowing methods under paddy residue management conditions.

II. OBJECTIVES

1. To compare agronomic performance of four paddy residue management treatments for wheat sowing.
2. To assess cost of cultivation, gross or net returns and benefit: cost ratio.
3. To recommend sustainable and efficient residue management practices.

III. METHODOLOGY

The experiments were conducted at three locations, two at farmer fields (Tehsil Samrala, Ludhiana, India) and one at KVK Farm, Samrala in District Ludhiana, Punjab, India. The technology to be assessed was happy seeder, super seeder, incorporation method and conventional method of removing of paddy straw for wheat sowing. Figure 1 and Figure 2 show the operational view and germination view of wheat crop sown with happy seeder technology respectively. Figure 3 and Figure 4 show the operational view and germination view of wheat crop sown with super seeder technology respectively.



Fig. 1 Operational View of Happy Seeder



Fig. 2 Germination View of Wheat sown with Happy Seeder



Fig. 3 Operational view of super seeder



Fig. 4 Germination View of Wheat Sown with Super Seeder

Different agronomic parameters such as seed rate (kg/acre), number of weedicides sprayed, number of irrigations applied and crop yield (q/acre) were selected to observe. Other parameters such as cost of cultivation, gross income, net income and B:C ratio were also observed to compare the economic performance of different wheat sowing methods and briefed as follow:

Cost of Cultivation

It refers to the total expenditure incurred per acre in raising the wheat crop. It includes residue management operations, field preparation, seed and seed treatment, fertilizers and application cost, weedicide and plant protection chemicals, irrigation cost, harvesting and threshing charges etc.

Gross Income

Gross income represents the total monetary return obtained from the sale of produce before deducting production expenses. It is calculated as:

$$\text{Gross Income} = \text{Grain Yield} \times \text{Market Price}$$

Net Income

Net income is the actual profit obtained after deducting the total cost of cultivation from gross income:

$$\text{Net Income} = \text{Gross Income} - \text{Cost of Cultivation}$$

Benefit: Cost (B:C) Ratio

The B:C ratio is a measure of economic efficiency and investment return and can be calculated as:

$$\text{B:C Ratio} = \text{Net Income} / \text{Cost of Cultivation}$$

IV. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

A. Comparative Economic Analysis of Different Paddy Straw Management Technologies for Wheat Cultivation

The economic analysis presented in the Table 1 compares four wheat sowing methods under

different paddy straw management practices, namely Happy Seeder (HS), Super Seeder (SS), Incorporation (IC), and Conventional (CV) method. The comparison is based on four key economic indicators: cost of cultivation, gross income, net income, and benefit: cost (B:C) ratio. These parameters collectively determine the financial feasibility and sustainability of each technology under paddy–wheat cropping system of Punjab.

TABLE I ECONOMICS OF DIFFERENT METHODS OF WHEAT SOWING

Method of Wheat Sowing	Economic Parameters (Rs./acre)			
	Cost of Cultivation	Gross Income	Net Income	B:C Ratio
Happy Seeder	10650	48985	38335	3.6
Super Seeder	11830	48015	36185	3.1
Incorporation	12450	49348.8	36898.8	3.0
Conventional	11300	44620	33320	2.9

The cost of cultivation represents the total expenditure incurred per acre for raising the wheat crop, including land preparation, residue management operations, seed and sowing, fertilizers, irrigation, plant protection chemicals, harvesting, and machinery use. Among all treatments, the Happy Seeder (HS) recorded the lowest cost of cultivation at Rs. 10,650 per acre. This lower cost is primarily due to the elimination of multiple tillage operations and straw removal expenses. The Happy Seeder allows direct drilling of wheat into standing paddy residues, thereby saving fuel, labor, and machinery costs associated with conventional land preparation. The Super Seeder (SS) recorded a higher cost of Rs. 11,830 per acre. Although it also manages residue in situ, it requires a higher horsepower tractor and has relatively lower field efficiency, which increases operational costs. The Incorporation (IC) method had the highest cost of cultivation at Rs. 12,450 per acre. This is because it involves multiple field operations such as mulching, ploughing, harrowing, and rotavating to mix straw into the soil. These additional operations increased fuel consumption, machinery wear and tear, and labor requirements. The conventional (CV) method, involving straw removal from the field followed by normal sowing, had a cost of Rs. 11,300 per acre. Although it avoids incorporation costs, it includes expenses for straw removal like baler operation and subsequent tillage operations.

Gross income represents the total revenue obtained from grain yield per acre before deducting production costs. The Incorporation method recorded the highest gross income at Rs. 49,348.8 per acre, mainly due to its slightly higher grain yield. The incorporation of straw may enhance soil organic matter and nutrient availability, contributing to marginal yield improvement. The Happy Seeder followed closely with Rs. 48,985 per acre, showing that despite lower tillage and operational intensity, it maintained competitive productivity. The Super Seeder generated Rs. 48,015 per acre, slightly lower than HS and IC. The conventional method recorded the lowest gross income at Rs. 44,620 per acre, reflecting comparatively lower grain yield and possibly higher lodging and weed pressure. Although differences in gross

income were not extremely large among HS, SS, and IC, the CV method lagged behind due to lower productivity.

Table 1 also shows that the Happy Seeder recorded the highest net income of Rs. 38,335 per acre. This indicates that the combination of lower cost and competitive yield maximized farmers' profit. The incorporation method generated Rs. 36,898.8 per acre, slightly lower than HS due to its higher production cost despite higher gross income. The Super Seeder resulted in Rs. 36,185 per acre, reflecting moderate profitability. The conventional method produced the lowest net income of Rs. 33,320 per acre, confirming that traditional residue management is economically inferior to mechanized residue-retention technologies. This clearly demonstrates that reducing input costs without compromising yield significantly improves profitability.

Table 1 also represents that Happy Seeder achieved the highest B:C ratio of 3:6, meaning that for every rupee invested, the farmer received Rs. 3.6 in return. This indicates superior economic efficiency and sustainability. The Super Seeder recorded a B:C ratio of 3:1, while the Incorporation method had a ratio of 3:0. Although these methods are profitable, their efficiency is lower compared to Happy Seeder. The conventional method had the lowest B:C ratio of 2:9, indicating relatively lower economic returns per unit investment.

Figure 5 represents the data of table 1 in graphical form. It clearly shows that while incorporation provides slightly higher gross returns due to marginal yield advantage, its higher operational cost reduces overall profitability. The Super Seeder performs moderately but requires higher machinery power and investment. The Happy Seeder emerges as the most economically viable technology because it minimizes cultivation cost, maintains competitive grain yield, maximizes net income and achieves the highest B:C ratio. In contrast, the conventional method is economically less attractive and environmentally unsustainable due to residue removal or burning practices.

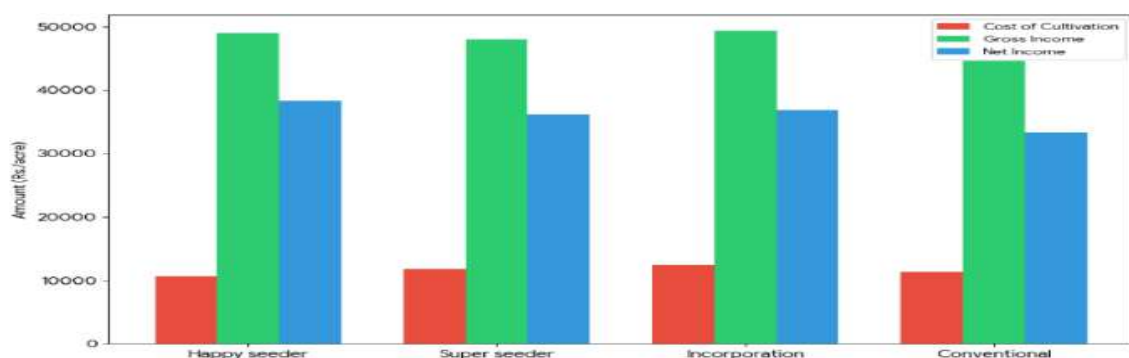


Fig. 5 Economic Comparison of Different Methods of Wheat Cultivation

B. Percentage-wise Comparison of Happy Seeder, Super Seeder and Incorporation with Conventional Method

Table 2 shows that happy seeder was the only method that reduces costs by 5.75% compared

to the Conventional method. It delivered the highest increase in Net Income of +15.05% and B:C Ratio of +24.14%. Incorporation Method showed the highest Gross Income of +10.60%, but it was also the most expensive method, costing 10.18% more than Conventional sowing. Despite the high cost, it still manages a healthy 10.74% increase in Net Income. In this table Super Seeder offered a balanced performance with 8.60% increase in Net Income and 6.90% increase in B:C Ratio, though it costs 4.69% more than Conventional methods. Figure 6 presents the same data in graphical form.

Table II COMPARISON OF HAPPY SEEDER, SUPER SEEDER AND INCORPORATION WITH CONVENTIONAL METHOD

Method	Cost of Cultivation (%)	Gross Income (%)	Net Income (%)	B:C Ratio (%)
Happy Seeder	-5.75% (Cheaper)	+9.78%	15.05%	24.14%
Super Seeder	4.69%	7.61%	8.60%	6.90%
Incorporation	10.18%	10.60%	10.74%	3.45%
Conventional	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%

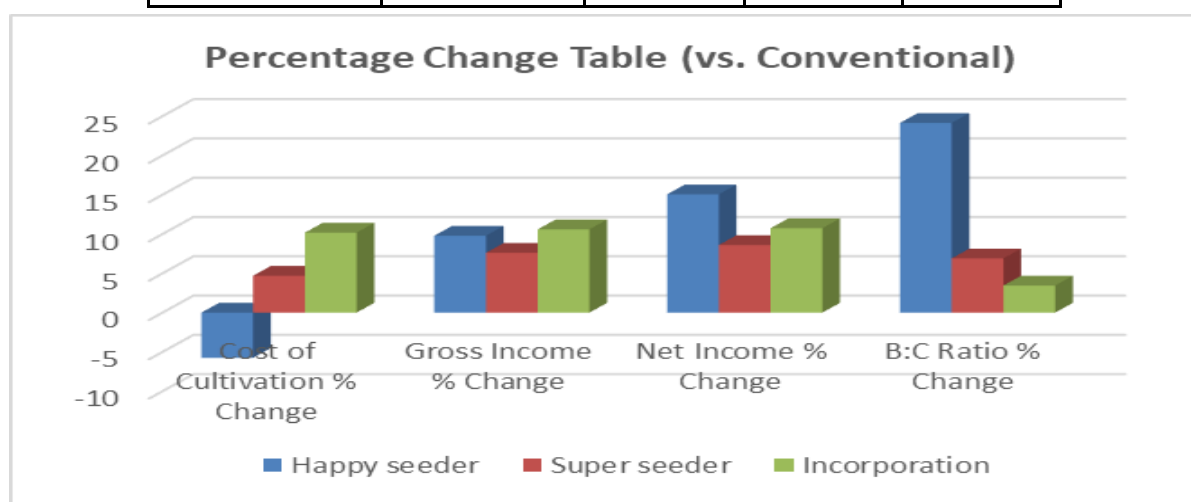


Fig. 6 Graphical Representation of Comparison of Each Method with Conventional Cultivation

C. Comparison of Crop Parameters for Different Methods of Wheat Cultivation

A comparative evaluation of four wheat sowing methods i.e. Happy Seeder, Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional based on key agronomic parameters such as seed rate, number of weedicides sprayed, number of irrigations applied, percentage lodging, and grain yield is presented in table 3. These parameters are critical indicators of crop performance, input efficiency, and overall sustainability under paddy residue management conditions in rice–wheat cropping system of Punjab.

Seed rate determines plant population, crop stand establishment, and ultimately yield. Happy

Seeder (HS) and Super Seeder (SS) both used a seed rate of 50 kg/acre. A slightly higher seed rate is generally recommended in residue-retained systems to compensate for potential uneven seed placement due to surface straw mulch. Incorporation (IC) and Conventional (CV) methods used a lower seed rate of 40 kg/acre, as the soil surface is relatively clean and finely prepared, allowing better seed–soil contact and uniform germination. The higher seed rate in residue-retained systems ensures optimal plant population despite the presence of straw. However, even with a higher seed rate, Happy Seeder maintained better crop stand uniformity.

Weed management is a major challenge in the rice–wheat system, especially due to the prevalence of *Phalaris minor*. Happy Seeder required only 2 weedicide sprays, the lowest among all treatments. Surface retention of paddy straw acts as mulch, suppressing weed germination by limiting sunlight penetration and reducing weed seed emergence. Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional methods required 3 sprays, indicating comparatively higher weed pressure. The reduction in weedicide application under Happy Seeder not only lowers production cost but also reduces chemical load on the soil, contributing to environmental sustainability and improved soil health.

Irrigation requirement reflects soil moisture conservation and water-use efficiency. Happy Seeder required only 3 irrigations, whereas Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional methods required 4 irrigations. Residue mulch in the Happy Seeder treatment reduces soil evaporation losses and improves moisture retention. This leads to better water-use efficiency and reduced irrigation frequency. In a water-stressed state like Punjab, this reduction is highly significant in conserving groundwater resources.

Lodging refers to bending or falling of crop plants due to weak stems, wind, irrigation, or excess vegetative growth. It negatively affects grain filling and harvesting efficiency. Happy Seeder recorded the lowest lodging of 3–5%, indicating stronger plant anchorage and balanced growth. Super Seeder and Incorporation methods showed moderate lodging of 10–15%. Conventional method recorded the highest lodging of 15–20%, possibly due to more vegetative growth and weaker root anchorage in finely tilled soil. Lower lodging in Happy Seeder plots suggests better root development and improved soil structure under residue retention conditions. It was reported that residue retention practices improved soil structure and moisture conservation, which helped to reduce lodging and irrigation requirement under Happy Seeder [6].

Grain yield is the ultimate indicator of treatment performance. Incorporation method recorded the highest grain yield of 0.35 q/acre, likely due to improved nutrient recycling and enhanced soil organic matter from decomposed residues. Happy Seeder produced 20.2 q/acre, which is very close to Incorporation and higher than Super Seeder and Conventional methods. Super Seeder yielded 19.8 q/acre, slightly lower than HS. Conventional method recorded the lowest yield of 18.4 q/acre. Although Incorporation showed marginally higher yield, the difference between Incorporation and Happy Seeder is minimal of 0.15 q/acre, which may not be statistically significant under field conditions. Figure 7 and Figure 8 represents the comparison of weedicide application and grain yield data for all four methods in graphical form

respectively. It is seen that happy seeder has lowest data for number of weedicides sprayed with highest grain yield in terms of quintal/acre.

Table III OBSERVATIONS ON CROP PARAMETERS FOR DIFFERENT METHODS OF WHEAT CULTIVATION

Method of wheat sowing	Parameters Observed				
	Seed Rate (kg/acre)	No. of Weedicide s sprayed	No. of Irrigation Applied	Percentage Lodging	Grain Yield (q/acre)
Happy Seeder	50	2	3	3-5	20.2
Super Seeder	50	3	4	10-15	19.8
Incorporation	40	3	4	10-15	20.35
Conventional	40	3	4	15-20	18.4

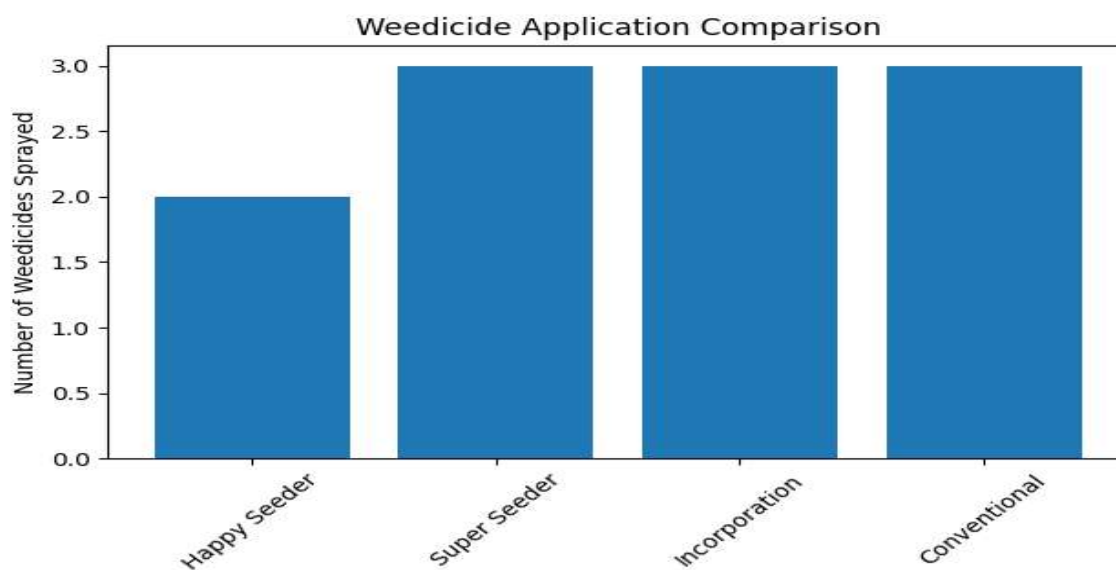


Fig. 7 Graph of Weedicide Application Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

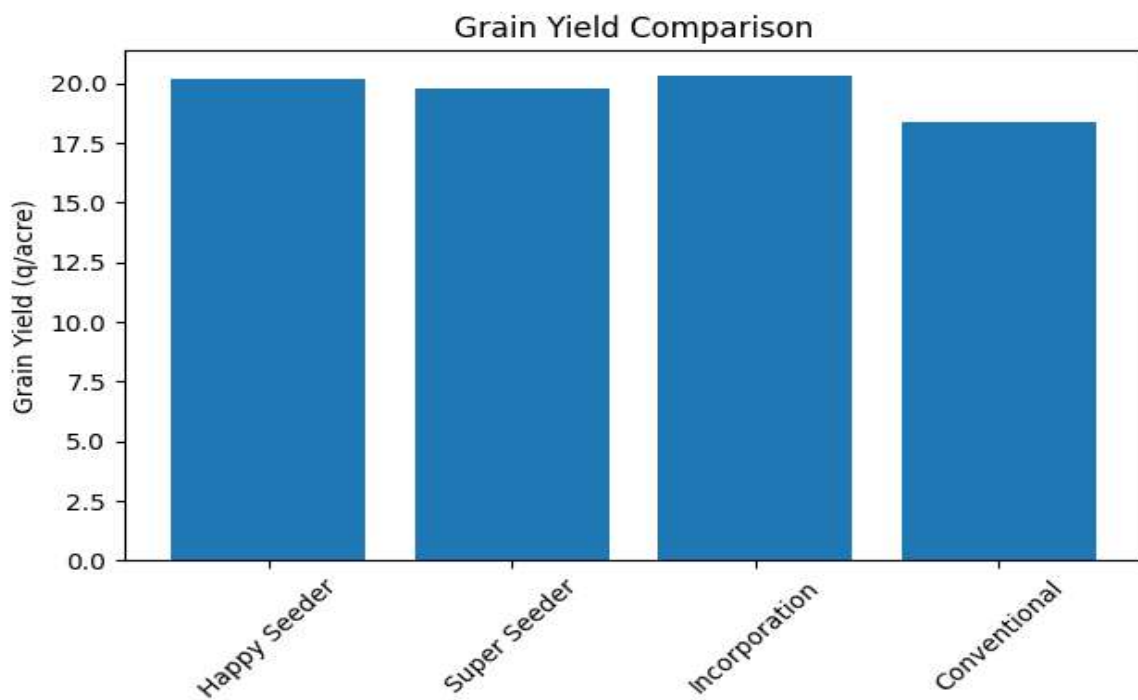


Fig. 8 Graph of Grain Yield Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

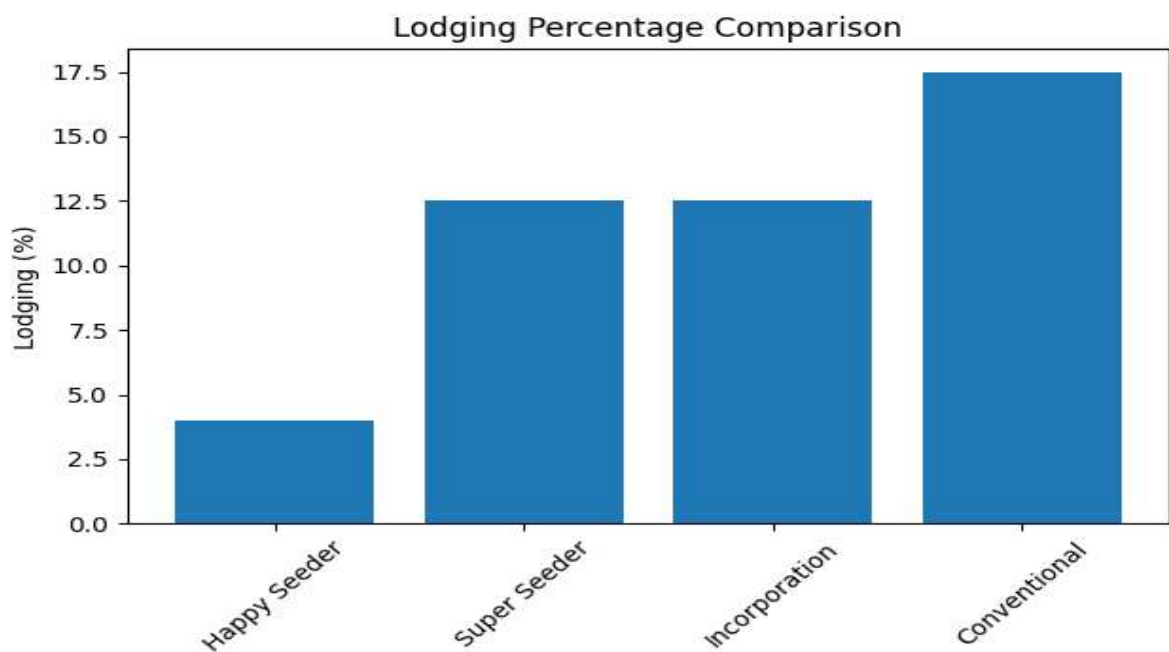


Fig. 9 Graph of Lodging Percentage Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

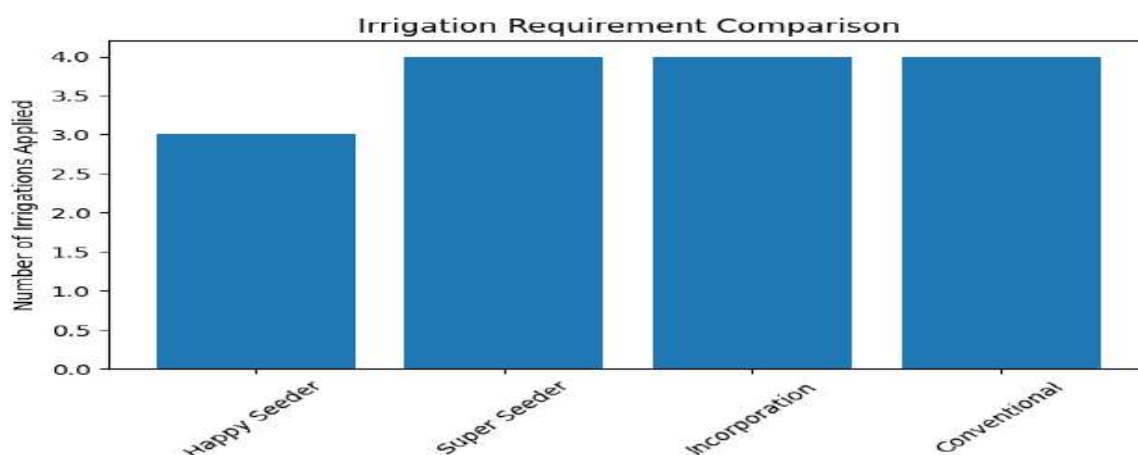


Fig. 10 Graph of Irrigation Requirement Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

Figure 9 and Figure 10 represents the comparative data of lodging percentage and irrigation requirement for four different methods respectively. It is observed that Happy Seeder technology has lowest lodging percentage and lowest irrigation requirement.

IV. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATION

The present study clearly demonstrates that mechanized residue management technologies play a crucial role in enhancing sustainability and profitability in the paddy–wheat cropping system of Punjab. Among the four wheat sowing methods evaluated i.e. Happy Seeder, Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional method, the Happy Seeder technology emerged as the most economically viable and resource-efficient option. Although the incorporation method recorded marginally higher grain yield of 20.35 q/acre, the difference in yield compared to Happy Seeder of 20.2 q/acre was negligible. However, the incorporation method involved higher operational costs due to multiple tillage and residue mixing operations, which reduced overall profitability. In contrast, the Happy Seeder minimized field preparation costs by enabling direct drilling of wheat into standing paddy residues, thereby lowering fuel consumption, labour requirement, and machinery expenses. Economically, the Happy Seeder recorded the lowest cost of cultivation and the highest net income and benefit: cost ratio of 3:6, indicating superior investment efficiency. Agronomically, it required fewer weedicide sprays and one less irrigation compared to other treatments, demonstrating better weed suppression and improved soil moisture conservation due to residue mulch effect. Additionally, it recorded the lowest lodging percentage, suggesting improved crop stability and root development. The Super Seeder performed moderately well but required higher horsepower and incurred comparatively higher operational costs. The Conventional method, involving residue removal, recorded the lowest yield, highest lodging percentage, and lowest B:C ratio, making it economically and environmentally less sustainable. Overall, the findings confirm that the Happy Seeder technology offers an effective alternative to on-farm residue burning by reducing cultivation cost, conserving soil moisture, lowering weed infestation, minimizing irrigation requirement, improving profitability and enhancing environmental sustainability. Therefore, large-scale promotion and adoption of Happy Seeder technology through policy

support, custom hiring centres, and farmer awareness programs can significantly contribute to sustainable residue management and long-term productivity in the rice–wheat system of Punjab.

REFERENCES

- [1] Punjab Agricultural Statistics 2024–25. Directorate of Economics and Statistics, Government of Punjab.
- [2] D Singh A., Kaushal M. and Singh H., “Improvement in productivity of wheat with crop residue and nitrogen-a review,” *Asian Journal of Biological and Life Sciences*, vol. 1, pp. 139-146, 2012
- [3] Tanwar K, Tanwar K, Raj D and Jangra P, “Effect of rice residue management options on soil properties and wheat yield under rice-wheat cropping system: a review,” *Plant Archives*, vol. 6(1), pp. 1096-1110, 2026
- [4] Dhillon G S, 2016 “Comparative evaluation of happy seeder technology versus normal sowing in wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) in adopted village Killi Nihal Singh of Bathinda district of Punjab,” *Journal of Applied and Natural Science*, vol. 8 (4), pp. 2278-2282, 2016
- [5] Butter G.S., Sodhi G.P.S., Manes G.S., Sunidhi, Kaur Taranreet, Brar Navjot Singh, Kumar Arvind, Singh Rajbir and Kaur Simerjeet, “Adoption Pattern of Farm-Machinery based Solutions for In-situ Paddy Straw Management in Punjab,” vol. 59(4), pp. 103-108, 2023
- [6] Malik, R.K., Yadav, A., and Singh, S., “Conservation agriculture in rice–wheat system: Role of residue management in improving productivity and soil health,” *Indian Journal of Agronomy*, vol. 63(3), pp. 1–10, 2018

Performance Evaluation of a Precision Residue Management in Conservation Agriculture: A Review

Kiranpreet Kaur¹

¹ Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences & Engineering
Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Punjab), India

*Corresponding author: preetsidhuhere23@gmail.com

ABSTRACT: Crop residues play a vital role in maintaining agro-environmental sustainability by supporting soil fertility, carbon sequestration, and nutrient cycling. The adoption of high-yielding cultivars in modern agriculture has substantially increased residue generation, creating significant management challenges. In developing countries such as India, open-field burning of crop residues remains a common practice, particularly during short intervals between successive crops (e.g., rice–wheat and sugarcane systems), largely due to limited utilization options and the unsuitability of certain residues for livestock feed. However, prolonged residue burning adversely affects natural resource quality and undermines sustainable crop production, especially under changing climatic conditions. The combustion process results in the loss of valuable organic matter and essential nutrients while releasing harmful air pollutants and greenhouse gases, thereby contributing to environmental degradation and public health concerns. This review provides an integrated perspective on sustainable crop residue utilization in agriculture and the escalating ecological consequences of residue burning practices.

Key words: Crop residues, sustainability, ecological consequences

INTRODUCTION

Conservation Agriculture (CA) is increasingly recognized as a viable strategy for enhancing nutrient availability and restoring soil fertility [28], as its three foundational pillars—minimal soil disturbance, crop residue retention, and diversified crop rotation—exert profound influence on soil nutrient dynamics. By promoting in situ residue retention rather than burning, CA facilitates nutrient recycling, improves soil physical, chemical, and biological properties, enhances environmental quality, and supports profitable residue management. Asia accounts for approximately 43% and 90% of global wheat and rice residues, respectively, while Nepal alone generates nearly 22 million tons of crop residues annually, with rice (47%), maize (25%), and wheat contributing nearly three-fourths of the total [12]. Residue retention has been advocated as a climate-smart alternative to mitigate greenhouse gas emissions and enhance soil quality [1]. Crop residues, far from being waste materials, constitute a substantial natural resource and the primary source of carbon inputs to agroecosystems, with their management profoundly influencing soil physical, chemical, and biological properties [14]. Approximately 25% of nitrogen and phosphorus, 50% of sulfur, and 75% of potassium absorbed by cereal crops remain in their residues, underscoring their immense nutrient recycling potential. Since crop residues contain substantial quantities of essential nutrients, improper management results

in nutrient depletion, biodiversity loss, and pollutant release, underscoring the recognition of nutrient management as the “fourth pillar” of CA. Effective fertilizer management in reduced tillage systems requires a sound understanding of nutrient transformations in soil, particularly given that plow tillage can reduce initial soil organic matter by nearly 10% [22], while legume-based rotations enhance soil nitrogen through biological fixation and tillage shifts contribute significantly to global greenhouse gas emissions. Crop residue management—defined as the planned processing and utilization of plant components such as stems, leaves, and husks after harvest—transforms what was once considered waste into a valuable ecological resource that improves soil health, sustains crop productivity, and reduces environmental degradation. Although organic amendments contain lower nutrient concentrations than synthetic fertilizers and must be applied in larger quantities, their decomposition releases complex organic compounds that contribute significantly to long-term soil health. Over the past three decades, widespread research and adoption of Resource Conserving Technologies (RCTs), including zero and reduced tillage combined with improved residue and crop management practices, have aimed to enhance productivity while conserving water, nutrients, and energy. Therefore, this review integrates and critically advances the current understanding of nutrient dynamics under Conservation Agriculture (CA), emphasizing strategic crop residue management as a cornerstone for enhancing soil fertility, optimizing resource-use efficiency, and safeguarding environmental sustainability.

NUTRIENT RESERVOIRS IN ORGANIC CROP RESIDUES: INSIGHTS FROM INDIA

Crop residues contribute substantial amounts of both macro- and micronutrients to the soil. At maturity, rice straw retains approximately 40% of nitrogen (N), 30–35% of phosphorus (P), 80–85% of potassium (K), and 40–50% of sulfur (S) [6]. Wheat straw, on the other hand, contains about 25–30% of N and P, 70–75% of K, and 35–40% of S [26]. One ton of rice and wheat residues also provides significant micronutrients, including around 9–11 kg of S, 777 g of iron (Fe), 745 g of manganese (Mn), and 100 g of zinc (Zn). Decomposition studies using litter bags have shown that rice residues release approximately 6 kg N ha⁻¹ (15% of the initial N) in sandy-loam soils and 12 kg N ha⁻¹ (27% of the initial N) in silt-loam soils. Considering the nitrogen content relative to urea, one ton of straw supplies about 8 kg N, which can replace roughly 28 kg of urea fertilizer.

Table 1. Quality composition of crop residues determining its decomposition and nutrient release

Crop residues	%C	%N	C: N	Cellulose (%)	Hemi-cellulose (%)	Lignin (%)
Maize stover	47.0	0.62	76	43.2	19.3	22.5
Wheat straw	44.70	0.48	93	33.0-40.0	20.0-25.0	15.0-20.0
Rice straw	37.8	0.48	79	40.0	18.0	5.5

IN SITU & EX SITU APPROACH

Residue management under CA can be categorized into in situ and ex situ approaches. In situ management promotes on-field recycling of nutrients, reduces transportation costs, and enhances soil health, although traditional burning practices have sometimes been adopted for rapid weed and pest control [8] [16]. Ex situ management involves collecting residues for agricultural, industrial, or bioenergy uses. The long-term effects of residue incorporation on soil organic carbon, microbial biomass carbon, crop yield, and greenhouse gas emissions are strongly influenced by residue quality and quantity, soil type, agro-climatic conditions, and physicochemical properties [10] [19] [20] [21] [25].

MANAGEMENT OF CROP RESIDUES

a) Baling and removing straw

Baling and removing surplus straw from agricultural fields allows it to be utilized for a variety of beneficial purposes, including livestock feed, fuel, building materials, and bedding. Additionally, it can be used in composting for mushroom cultivation, an area with considerable potential for exploiting both forest and agricultural residues [9]. Straw can also serve as bedding for vegetables such as cucumbers and melons, as well as mulch for orchards and other crops.

b) Direct Drilling on Surface-Mulched Residues

Direct drilling into surface-mulched residues is a technique in which crop residues from a previous harvest are left on the soil surface without being incorporated. Retaining residues on the surface helps protect the fertile topsoil from both wind and water erosion [27]. However, the large volume of residues left on the surface can sometimes cause machinery blockages, affecting the sowing of the subsequent crop. This practice is commonly adopted in areas where no-till or conservation tillage systems are in use. In many cases, leaving some or all residues on the surface is advantageous, as it suppresses weed growth [4]. Residues decompose gradually on the soil surface, contributing to an increase in organic carbon and total nitrogen in the top 5–15 cm of soil while also safeguarding the soil against erosion. Studies have shown that retaining crop residues on the surface can increase soil NO_3^- concentration by 46%, nitrogen uptake by 29%, and crop yield by 37% compared to residue burning. Surface residue retention also helps maintain soil temperature [17]. Moreover, it provides habitat for both beneficial and harmful organisms and supplies carbon substrates for heterotrophic nitrogen fixation. This enhances microbial activity, soil carbon and nitrogen content, and reduces the need for synthetic nitrogen fertilizers in rice cultivation. The decomposition and nitrogen release can be accelerated if residues are treated with urea and applied during field preparation.

c) Incorporation of Crop Residues

Crop residues can be incorporated into the soil either partially or fully, depending on the cultivation practices employed. Straw incorporation has been shown to enhance crop yields [29], with ploughing recognized as the most effective method for residue incorporation. Incorporating rice residues prior to wheat sowing is often more challenging than incorporating wheat straw before rice planting due to low temperatures and the short interval between rice harvest and wheat sowing. Unlike residue removal or burning, incorporation increases soil

organic matter (SOM) as well as soil nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium levels. Some studies reported lower wheat yields during the first one to three years following rice straw incorporation 30 days before wheat planting, primarily due to nitrogen immobilization in residues with a high C/N ratio. However, in subsequent years, straw incorporation did not negatively impact wheat yields. In fact, rice straw incorporation resulted in significantly higher wheat yields of 3.5 t ha⁻¹ compared to 2.91 t ha⁻¹ with straw removal.

CONSTRAINTS IN CROP RESIDUE MANAGEMENT & ITS ADOPTION

Adoption of effective crop residue management faces several challenges, including:

1. Residue burning remains a common practice, causing loss of nutrients and environmental pollution.
2. Extensive use of residues for livestock feed and fuel reduces the amount available for soil amendment.
3. Transition from conventional farming to reduced residue (RR) systems or no-till practices can be difficult for many farmers.
4. Marginal and semi-marginal farmers often lack access to appropriate seeders or planters for residue-based systems.
5. Surface residues can slow seed germination and, in some cases, reduce crop yields.
6. Shifts in weed, disease, and pest populations may occur unpredictably under residue retention.
7. Higher initial nitrogen fertilizer requirements may be necessary to enhance mineralization of residues.
8. Immobilization of nutrients, especially with residues having a high C:N ratio, and potential attacks by insects and pathogens can pose challenges.
9. Knowledge gaps among farmers, extension agents, and agricultural leaders about the benefits of RR and conservation agriculture hinder adoption.

RESIDUE BURNING BY FARMERS IN INDIA

Burning of crop residues releases soot particles and greenhouse gases, contributing to global warming. While it temporarily increases the availability of nutrients such as phosphorus (P) and potassium (K) and reduces soil acidity, it results in the loss of soil organic matter (SOM) and essential nutrients like nitrogen (N) and sulfur (S). During burning, the temperature of the top 7 cm of soil rises significantly, rapidly altering the soil's carbon-nitrogen (C:N) balance and causing mortality of bacterial and fungal species. Although burning increases exchangeable ammonium (NH₄⁺) and bicarbonate-extractable P, it does not lead to nutrient accumulation. Gadi (2003) reported that approximately 70%, 7%, and 0.7% of carbon in rice straw is released as CO₂, carbon monoxide, and methane, respectively, while 2% of nitrogen in the straw is emitted as nitrous oxide. Moreover, the combustion of one ton of rice straw leads to the loss of 5.5 kg N, 2.3 kg P, 25 kg K, and 1.2 kg S. [24] further noted that burning removes

about 80–90% of N, 25% of P, 20% of K, and 50% of S from agricultural residues in the form of gaseous and particulate emissions.

The Ministry of Agriculture attributes the rise in on-farm crop residue burning to a shortage of human labor. It has been reported that around 80% of residue burning occurs during the post-harvest periods of April–May and November–December. This practice is largely driven by cropping patterns aimed at maximizing economic returns, which leave only a short interval between successive crop cycles. In some cases, farmers even cultivate three crops per year, further reducing the time available between harvest and sowing. Additionally, crop residues can serve as alternate hosts for various insects, pests, and diseases [5].

ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF RESIDUE BURNING

Residue burning leads to multiple adverse consequences, including the emission of soot particles and smoke that pose serious risks to human health, and the release of greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide, methane, and nitrous oxide, which intensify global warming. It also results in the substantial loss of essential plant nutrients, including nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and sulfur, thereby degrading soil fertility. Furthermore, residue burning negatively affects soil physical and biological properties and wastes valuable carbon- and energy-rich biomass that could otherwise be utilized for productive and sustainable purposes.

Burning of crop residues exerts a more pronounced effect on fungal populations than on bacteria; however, the overall impact on the soil microbial community is generally transient, with mesothermic populations being the most severely affected [7] & [11]. Soil temperatures during burning can rise up to 43°C, particularly affecting the upper 2.5–3.5 cm soil layer.

Stubble burning poses a serious threat to local biodiversity by destroying habitats that support a wide range of wildlife species, including insects, birds, and small mammals that depend on crop residues for shelter and food. The destruction of these habitats can destabilize local ecosystems, disrupt predator–prey interactions, and ultimately lead to a decline in biodiversity. In addition, pollutants released during stubble burning exert both direct and indirect adverse effects on terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, impairing their health and long-term sustainability. Mitigating the environmental consequences of stubble burning therefore requires a shift toward more sustainable agricultural practices that minimize ecological damage while maintaining productivity.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVE

The National Policy for Management of Crop Residue emphasizes in-situ management approaches, including direct incorporation of residues into the soil, surface mulching, composting, and their subsequent application to crop fields [3]. Enhancing awareness of these practices requires sustained campaigns and systematic follow-up initiatives led by farmers' associations and local government bodies. Agricultural institutes, universities, and other educational organizations should regularly conduct Kharif-season outreach programs to disseminate information on the benefits of crop residue utilization and the adverse environmental impacts of residue burning. Furthermore, pilot projects should be strengthened and expanded in critical regions to effectively demonstrate and promote the advantages of proper residue management among stakeholders. At the same time, intensified research efforts

are needed to develop value-added and economically viable products from crop residues to ensure both environmental sustainability and farmer profitability.

CONCLUSION

Effective management of crop residues offers substantial benefits for sustaining soil productivity and promoting efficient nutrient recycling within agroecosystems. Scientific residue management enhances soil fertility and nutrient status while improving soil health across its physical, chemical, and biological dimensions. The long-term retention and application of crop residues under Conservation Agriculture (CA)—particularly in reduced and zero tillage systems—has been recognized as a viable strategy to strengthen soil productivity, expand the soil carbon pool, and foster resilient and sustainable agroecosystems.

REFERENCES

- [1] Badarinath K S, K Kharol K and AR Sharma 2009. Long-range transport of aerosols from agriculture crop residue burning in Indo-Gangetic plains a study using LIDAR, ground measurements and satellite data. *J Atmos and Solar Ter l Phy*. 71: 112–20.
- [2] Behera P, Dutta D, Bhuyan K J, Barik C, Ray R, Sutaradhar P P, Pathak A J and Kumar A 2024. Conservation Agriculture and Crop Residue Management. *Int J Environ Clim Chang* 14(11): 524-44.
- [3] Bhuvaneshwari S, Hettiarachchi H and Meegoda J N 2019. Crop Residue Burning in India: Policy Challenges and Potential Solutions. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 16(5): 1-19.
- [4] Bilalis D, Sidiras N, Economou G. and Vakali C 2003. Effect of different levels of wheat straw soil surface coverage on weed flora in Viciafaba crops. *J Agron Crop* 89: 233–41.
- [5] Cox C M, Garrett K A, Bowden R L, Fritz A K, Dendy S P, Heer W F 2004. Cultivar mixtures for the simultaneous management of multiple diseases: tan spot and leaf rust of wheat. *Phytopathology* 94: 961– 69.
- [6] Dobermann A and Fairhurst T 2000. Rice: Nutrient disorders and nutrient management. Int Rice Res Inst, Los Banos, Philippines.
- [7] Dutta A, Patra A, Hazra K K, Nath C P, Kumar N and Rakshit A 2022. A state of the art review in crop residue burning in India: Previous knowledge, present circumstances and future strategies. *Environ Chall* 8: 100581.
- [8] Gadde B, Bonnet S, Menke C, Garivait S 2009. Air pollutant emissions from rice straw open field burning in India, Thailand and the Philippines. *Environ. Pollut*: 1554–558.
- [9] Gregori A, Svagelj M, Pohleven F 2007. Cultivation techniques and medicinal properties of *Pleurotus* spp. *Food Technol Biotechnol* 45(3): 236–47.
- [10] Gross A and Glaser B 2021. Meta-analysis on how manure application changes soil organic carbon storage. *Sci Rep* 11 (1): 1–13.
- [11] Gupta P K, Sahai S, Singh N, Dixit C K, Singh D P, Sharma C, Tiwari M K, Gupta R K and Garg S C 2004. Residue burning in rice–wheat cropping system: Causes and implications. *Curr Sci* :1713-717.
- [12] Jawed A 2020. 28th Virtual workshop and demonstration on integrated management of straw residue. *Dep of Agri Eng IoE/Purwanchal Campus Dharan, TU, Nepal* October.
- [13] Kaduwal S, Karki T B, Neupane R, Battarai R K, Chaulagain B, Ghimire P, Gyawaly P, Acharya R, Paneru P, Gyawali C and Das S K 2023. Residue Management and Nutrient Dynamics in Conservation Agriculture: A Review. *Agron J Nepal* 7(1):139-48.

- [14] Kumar K and Goh K M 2000. Crop residue management: effects on soil quality, soil nitrogen dynamics, crop yield, and nitrogen recovery. *Adv Agron* 68: 197–319.
- [15] Kumar M, Patle G T, Lal M, Kumar A, Rani K, Kumar S and Kumar S 2024. An overview of crop residue management challenges, opportunities, and the way forward for sustainable food-energy security in India. *Eco Env & Cons* 30: S486-S502.
- [16] Lal M M 2008. An over view to agricultural waste burning. *Indian J Air Pollut Control* 7(1): 48–50.
- [17] Lenka N K, Dass A, Sudhishri S and Patnaik U S 2012. Soil carbon sequestration and erosion control potential of hedgerows and grass filter strips in sloping agricultural lands of eastern India. *Agric Ecosyst Environ* 158: 31–40.
- [18] Maurya R, Bharti C, Singh T D and Pratap V 2020. Crop Residue Management for Sustainable Agriculture. *Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci* 9(5): 3168-174.
- [19] Nghi N T, Romasanta R R, Hieu N V, Du N X, Ngan N V C, Chivenge P, Hung N V, 2020. Rice straw-based composting. In: Gummert M, Hung N V, Chivenge P, Douthwaite B (Eds.), Sustainable Rice Straw Management. *Springer* :33–41.
- [20] Ren F, Sun N, Misselbrook T, Wu L, Xu M, Zhang F and Xu W 2022. Responses of crop productivity and reactive nitrogen losses to the application of animal manure to China's main crops: A meta-analysis. *Sci Total Environ* 85.
- [21] Ren F, Sun N, Xu M, Zhang X, Wu L and Xu M 2019. Changes in soil microbial biomass with manure application in cropping systems: a meta-analysis. *Soil Tillage Res* 194.
- [22] Rhoton F E 2000. Influence of time on soil responses to no-till practices. *J Soil Sci Soc Am* 64: 700–09.
- [23] Sairam M, Maitra S, Raghava C V, Krishna T G, Gaikwad D J, Sahoo U and Ray S 2023. Efficient crop residue management under conservation agriculture for improving soil quality: A review. *Farm Manage* 8(2): 59-71.
- [24] Sangeet K R 2016. Crop residue generation and management in Punjab state. *Ind J Econ Dev* 12(1):477-83.
- [25] Shakoor A, Shakoor S, Rehman A, Ashraf F, Abdullah M, Shahzad S M, Farooq T H, Ashraf M, Manzoor M A, Altaf M M and Altaf M A 2021. Effect of animal manure, crop type, climate zone and soil attributes on greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural soils—a global meta-analysis. *J Clean Prod* 278.
- [26] Singh Y and Sidhu H S 2014. Management of cereal crop residues for sustainable rice–wheat production system in the Indo-Gangetic plains of India. *Pro Ind N Sci Aca* 80: 95–114.
- [27] Thorne M E 2003. No-till Spring cereal cropping systems reduce wind erosion susceptibility in the wheat/fallow region of the Pacific Northwest. *J Soil Water Conserv* 58, 251–57.
- [28] Vanlauwe B, Ramisch J and Sanginga N 2006. Integrated soil fertility management in Africa: From knowledge to implementation. In: Uphoff. Biological Approaches to Sustainable Soil Systems. CRC Press, Taylor and Francis, Boca Raton, Florida. 257-72.
- [29] Yadvinder S, Gupta R K, Singh J, Singh G and Ladha J K 2010. Placement effects on rice residue decomposition and nutrient dynamics on two soil types during wheat cropping in rice–wheat system in northwestern India. *Nutr Cycling Agroecosyst* 88: 471–80.

- [30] Yang H S, Xu M M, Koide R T, Liu Q, Dai Y J, Liu L and Bian X M 2016. Effects of ditch-buried straw return on water percolation, nitrogen leaching and crop yields in a rice-wheat rotation system. *J Sci Food Agric* 96: 1141–149.

Thermal regime-driven variability in wheat yield: integrating soil and air temperature effects under diverse sowing windows

Lovepreet Singh*, Harleen Kaur and R.K. Pal

Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

*Corresponding author: lovepreetsingh0763@gmail.com

Abstract - Thermal environment plays a crucial role in regulating wheat growth and productivity under varying sowing windows. This study examined the temporal variation in the relationships among soil temperature, mean air temperature and crop yield across three observation dates (25th October, 10th November and 25th November). Scatter plot and regression analyses revealed consistent positive linear relationships between temperature variables and crop productivity. Soil temperature exhibited a strong influence on yield across all dates, with the highest explanatory power observed on 10th November ($R^2 = 0.79$), followed by 25th October ($R^2 = 0.76$) and 25th November ($R^2 = 0.70$). Yield increased by 137.07, 188.58, and 114.42 kg/ha per 1°C rise in soil temperature on the respective dates, indicating temporal variation in temperature sensitivity. Similarly, mean air temperature showed significant positive associations with yield, explaining between 68.86% and 75.03% of yield variation, with the strongest relationship also occurring on 10th November. Comparative analysis demonstrated a positive linear relationship between soil and air temperatures, particularly strong on 10th November ($R^2 = 0.79$) and 25th November ($R^2 = 0.77$), while more moderate on 25th October ($R^2 = 0.56$). Overall, results confirm that both soil and air temperatures substantially influence crop productivity, though their relative impacts vary over time, likely due to seasonal dynamics and interacting environmental factors.

Keywords- Soil temperature, Air temperature, Crop yield, Temporal variation, Linear regression analysis, Temperature-yield relationship

I. INTRODUCTION

Wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) is one of the most important cereal crops for global food security and its productivity is highly sensitive to variations in thermal regimes during the growing season. Temperature governs key physiological and phenological processes such as germination, tillering, flowering and grain filling, thereby exerting a direct influence on biomass accumulation and final yield. Both soil and air temperatures play complementary roles in crop development: while soil temperature regulates seed germination, root growth and nutrient uptake, air temperature controls canopy development and reproductive processes. Variability in these thermal factors across different sowing windows leads to substantial differences in crop growth duration, resource utilization and ultimately grain yield Hussain et al. (2021); Liu et al. 2023).

Several studies have demonstrated that optimum temperature ranges are essential for maximizing wheat productivity, whereas deviations particularly terminal heat stress result in

significant yield penalties. Elevated temperatures during reproductive stages shorten the grain filling duration and reduce spike fertility, leading to considerable yield losses Hussain et al. (2021). Field-based agrometeorological investigations have further shown that higher maximum and minimum temperatures during flowering to maturity stages in delayed sowing conditions significantly reduce wheat yield Sattar et al. (2020). Thus, the adjustment of sowing dates is widely recognized as a key management strategy to synchronize crop phenology with favourable thermal conditions and improve yield stability Liu et al. (2023).

In addition to air temperature, soil thermal regimes significantly influence early crop establishment and subsequent growth. Changes in soil temperature across crop growth stages alter soil moisture dynamics, root activity and nutrient availability, which in turn affect crop performance Pal and Murty, (2013). Therefore, integrating both soil and air temperature effects provides a more comprehensive understanding of wheat yield variability under diverse sowing environments.

Given the increasing climatic variability in semi-arid and subtropical regions, understanding the combined influence of soil and atmospheric thermal conditions on wheat productivity is critical for developing climate-resilient management strategies. This study aims to quantify the variability in wheat yield driven by soil and air temperature regimes across different sowing windows, thereby providing insights for optimizing sowing time and improving thermal use efficiency in wheat-based production systems.

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

Experimental site and crop details

The present study was conducted at the research farm of the Department of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana, India, during the rabi season. The region falls under a semi-arid, subtropical climate with hot summers and cool winters. Wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) was grown under field conditions following recommended agronomic practices for the region.

Experimental design and sowing windows

The experiment consisted of three sowing windows representing different thermal regimes:

- i. 25th October
- ii. 10th November
- iii. 25th November

These sowing dates were selected to capture variability in thermal environments during crop establishment and development stages.

Temperature measurements

Both soil and air temperature observations were recorded on three corresponding dates (25th October, 10th November and 25th November).

Soil temperature (°C): Recorded at standard crop root zone depth using soil thermometers at regular intervals (0730 hrs and 1430 hrs)

Mean air temperature (°C): Obtained from the agrometeorological observatory located at the experimental site.

The recorded values were used to analyze their relationship with wheat productivity under different sowing conditions.

Crop yield measurement

At crop maturity, grain yield (kg ha⁻¹) was recorded from each treatment plot after harvesting, threshing and cleaning. The yields were converted to kg per hectare for analysis.

Statistical analysis

The relationships between temperature variables and crop yield were quantified using simple linear regression analysis. Separate regression models were developed for:

- i. Soil temperature vs crop yield
- ii. Mean air temperature vs crop yield
- iii. Soil temperature vs mean air temperature

The regression equations were expressed as:

$$Y=aX+b$$

where:

Y= crop yield or air temperature

X= soil or air temperature

a= regression coefficient

b= intercept

The coefficient of determination (R^2) was used to evaluate the strength of relationships and to quantify the proportion of variability explained by the independent variable.

Graphical analysis

Scatter plots were generated to visualize relationships between:

- Soil temperature and crop yield
- Mean air temperature and crop yield
- Soil temperature and mean air temperature

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Temporal variation in the relationship between soil temperature and crop productivity:

The scatter plots illustrate the relationship between soil temperature (°C) and crop yield (kg/ha) recorded on 25th October, 10th November and 25th November. Across all dates, soil temperature shows a clear positive linear relationship with crop yield, with higher temperatures associated with increased productivity.

On 25th October, soil temperature ranged from approximately 19°C to 27°C, while yields varied from about 4,650 to 5,800 kg/ha (Fig.1). Most observations were concentrated between 22°C and 25°C. The regression equation ($y = 137.07x + 2164.3$) indicates that yield increased by about 137 kg/ha for every 1°C rise in temperature, with an R^2 value of 0.76, meaning 76 % of yield variation was explained by soil temperature.

On 10th November, temperatures ranged from about 20°C to 26°C, with yields between 5,400 and 6,700 kg/ha (Fig.2). The regression equation ($y = 188.58x + 1633.7$) shows a stronger response, with yield increasing by approximately 189 kg/ha per 1°C rise. The R^2 value of 0.79 indicates that nearly 80% of yield variation was explained by soil temperature, representing the strongest relationship among the three dates. The strongest response on 10th November ($R^2 = 0.79$) indicates that this sowing window provided near-optimal thermal conditions for vegetative growth and canopy development, which enhanced radiation use efficiency and grain yield Liu et al. (2020). This agrees with findings that moderate temperature regimes during vegetative growth improve radiation use efficiency and yield formation in wheat Farooq et al.

(2011)

On 25th November, soil temperature ranged from approximately 14°C to 25°C, and yields varied between 3,900 and 5,400 kg/ha (Fig.3). The regression equation ($y = 114.42x + 2523.4$) shows a smaller increase of about 114 kg/ha per 1°C rise in temperature. The R^2 value of 0.70 indicates that 70 % of yield variation was explained by soil temperature, slightly weaker than earlier dates. Delayed sowing on 25th November resulted in comparatively lower temperatures and a weaker relationship ($R^2 = 0.7055$), likely due to reduced metabolic activity and shortened grain filling duration.

Overall, all three observations demonstrate a strong positive linear relationship between soil temperature and crop yield. The influence of temperature was strongest on 10th November, moderate on 25th October and comparatively weaker on 25th November, suggesting that while soil temperature significantly affects yield, its impact varies over time and may interact with other seasonal factors.

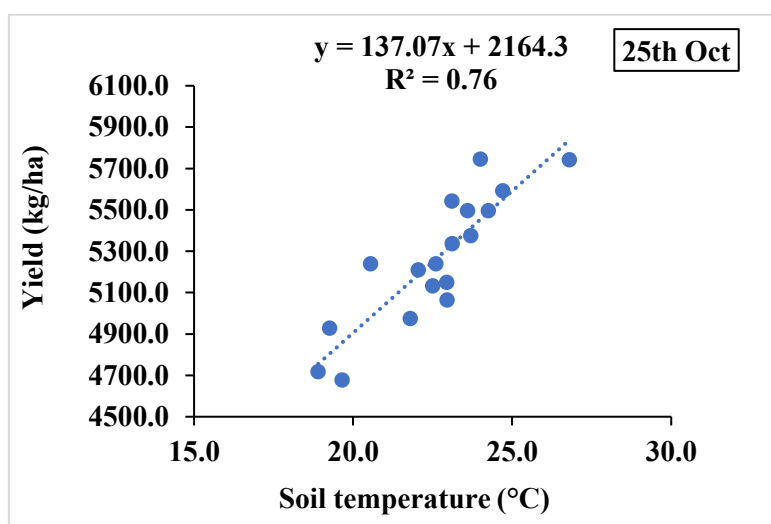


Fig.1: Effect of soil temperature on yield of wheat during 25th Oct using regression equation

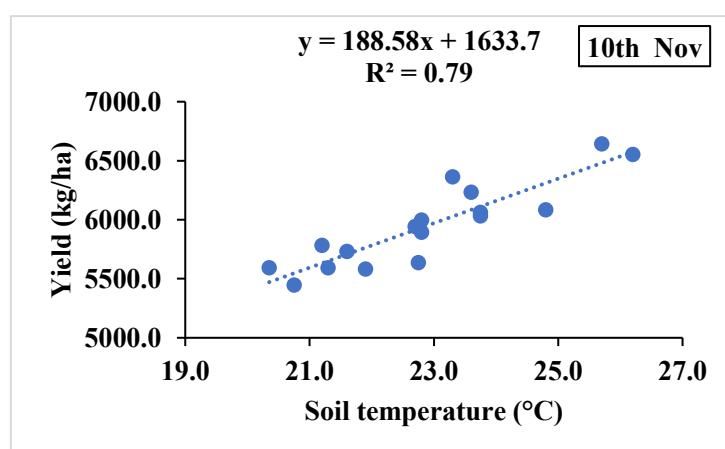


Fig.2: Effect of soil temperature on yield of wheat during 10th Nov using regression equation

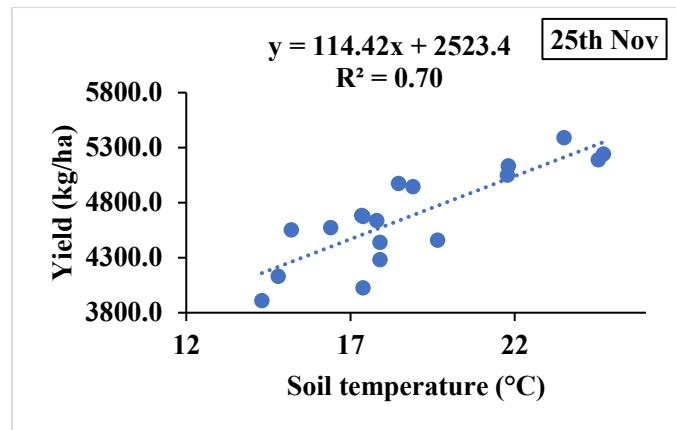


Fig.3: Effect of soil temperature on yield of wheat during 25th Nov using regression equation

Assessment of air temperature as a determinant of crop yield variation:

The scatter plots illustrate the relationship between mean air temperature (°C) and crop yield (kg/ha) on 25th October, 10th November and 25th November. Across all dates, a clear positive linear relationship is observed, indicating that higher mean air temperatures are associated with increased crop yield.

On 25th October, mean air temperature ranged from approximately 15°C to 28°C, with yields between 4,700 and 5,800 kg/ha (Fig.4). The regression equation ($y = 67.679x + 3697.8$) shows that yield increased by about 67.68 kg/ha per 1°C rise in air temperature. The R^2 value of 0.71 indicates that 71% of yield variation was explained by air temperature, reflecting a strong but moderate influence.

On 10th November, temperatures ranged from about 16°C to 27°C, while yields varied from 5,400 to 6,700 kg/ha (Fig.5). The regression equation ($y = 105.75x + 3778.5$) indicates a larger increase of approximately 105.75 kg/ha per 1°C rise. The R^2 value of 0.75 shows that 75% of yield variation was explained by air temperature, representing the strongest relationship among the three dates.

On 25th November, mean air temperature ranged from approximately 12°C to 24°C, with yields between 3,900 and 5,400 kg/ha (Fig.6). The regression equation ($y = 110.2x + 2968.8$) indicates an increase of about 110.2 kg/ha per 1°C rise. However, the R^2 value of 0.68 shows that 68% of yield variation was explained by air temperature, slightly weaker than earlier dates. The reduced response in late sowing (25th November) indicates that cooler establishment conditions and terminal heat stress during grain filling likely limited yield potential, as also highlighted by Asseng et al. (2015). Although early sowing (25th October) showed a strong relationship, slightly lower responsiveness compared to mid-sowing may be due to exposure to relatively higher early-season temperatures affecting assimilate partitioning. The moderate to high coefficients of determination ($R^2 = 0.68$ -0.75) indicate that mean air temperature alone explained a substantial proportion of yield variability. However, the remaining unexplained variation suggests the influence of other interacting factors such as soil temperature, solar radiation, irrigation scheduling (IW/CPE) and nutrient availability Lobell et al. (2011)

Overall, mean air temperature had a significant positive effect on crop yield on all three dates. The relationship was strongest on 10th November, moderate on 25th October, and slightly weaker on 25th November. Although air temperature significantly influenced productivity, its

effect was generally moderate, suggesting that other environmental factors may also have contributed to yield variation during these periods.

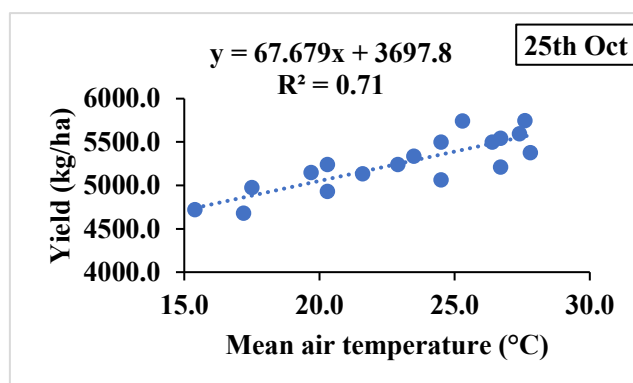


Fig.4: Effect of mean air temperature on yield of wheat during 25th Oct using regression equation

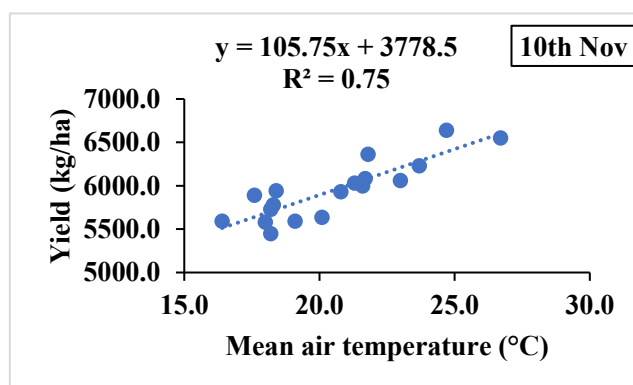


Fig.5: Effect of mean air temperature on yield of wheat during 10th Nov using regression equation

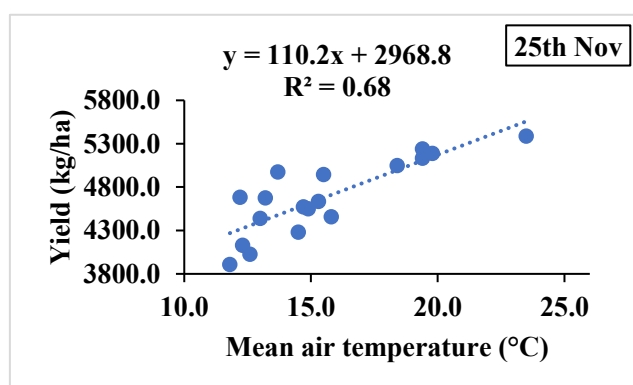


Fig.6: Effect of mean air temperature on yield of wheat during 25th Nov using regression equation

Comparative analysis of soil and air temperature relationships across sowing dates:

The scatter plots illustrate the relationship between soil temperature (°C) and mean air temperature (°C) on 25th October, 10th November and 25th November. Across all three dates,

soil temperature and mean air temperature show a positive linear relationship, indicating that higher soil temperatures are generally associated with higher air temperatures.

On 25th October, soil temperature ranges from approximately 19°C to 27°C, while mean air temperature varies from about 15°C to 29°C (Fig.7). The regression equation ($y = 1.4669x - 10.051$) indicates that for every 1°C increase in soil temperature, air temperature increases by about 1.47°C. The coefficient of determination ($R^2 = 0.56$) shows that 56% of the variation in air temperature is explained by soil temperature, reflecting a moderate positive relationship with noticeable dispersion around the regression line.

On 10th November, soil temperature ranges from about 20°C to 26°C and air temperature from 16°C to 27°C (Fig.8). The regression equation ($y = 1.5423x - 14.768$) suggests that a 1°C rise in soil temperature corresponds to a 1.54°C increase in air temperature. With $R^2 = 0.79$, approximately 79% of the variation in air temperature is explained by soil temperature, indicating a strong positive linear relationship and a good model fit.

On 25th November, soil temperature ranges from roughly 14°C to 25°C, while air temperature varies between 12°C and 24°C (Fig.9). The regression equation ($y = 0.9025x - 1.4786$) shows that air temperature increases by about 0.90°C for each 1°C rise in soil temperature. The R^2 value of 0.77 indicates that 77% of the variation in air temperature is explained by soil temperature, reflecting a strong positive association, though the rate of increase is slightly lower compared to the earlier dates.

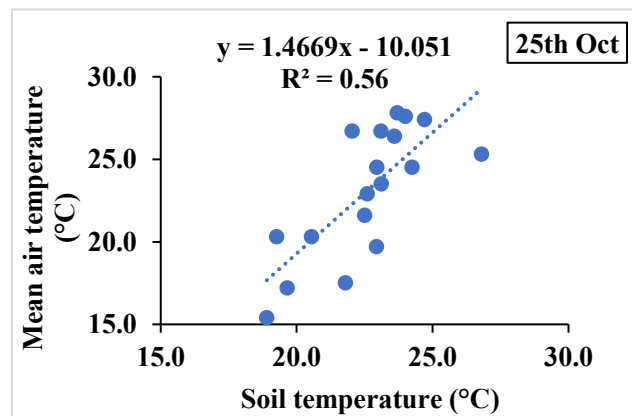


Fig.7: Relationship between soil temperature and mean air temperature during 25th Oct using regression equation

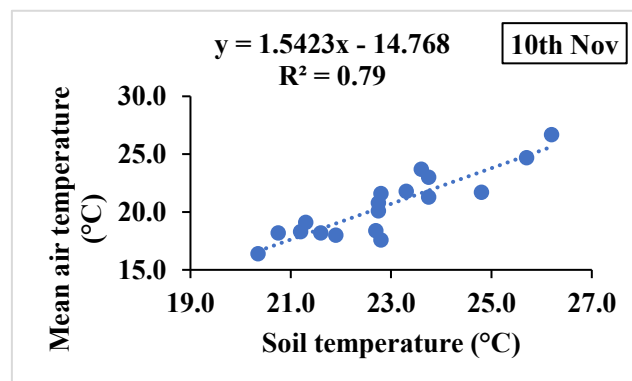


Fig.8: Relationship between soil temperature and mean air temperature during 10th Nov using regression equation

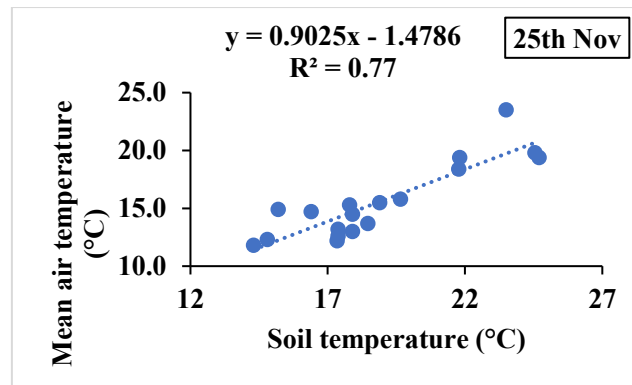


Fig.9: Relationship between soil temperature and mean air temperature during 25th Nov using regression equation

Overall, the relationship between soil and mean air temperature is positive on all dates. The strongest association is observed on 10th November, followed closely by 25th November, while 25th October shows a comparatively moderate relationship. Although the intercept values are not practically meaningful, they are necessary for defining the regression models. The results suggest a clear and consistent interaction between soil and atmospheric thermal conditions, with varying strengths over time.

IV. CONCLUSION

The findings of this study clearly demonstrate that the thermal environment is a key determinant of wheat productivity, with both soil and mean air temperatures exerting significant and temporally variable influences on grain yield. The consistently positive linear relationships observed across all observation dates indicate that moderate increases in temperature within the studied range enhanced crop performance. Among the observation windows, the 10th November period exhibited the strongest associations and highest explanatory power for both soil and air temperatures, suggesting that this stage represents a critical thermal window for yield formation. The comparatively lower but still substantial relationships observed during 25th October and 25th November further highlight the dynamic nature of temperature-yield interactions throughout the growing season. Overall, the results emphasize that optimizing sowing windows to align with favourable thermal regimes can improve wheat productivity and that integrating soil and air temperature dynamics into crop management and modeling frameworks can enhance climatic risk management and yield prediction strategies.

REFERENCES

- [1] Asseng, S., Ewert, F., Martre, P., Rötter, R. P., Lobell, D. B., Cammarano, D., & Zhu, Y. (2015). Rising temperatures reduce global wheat production. *Nature Climate Change*, 5(2), 143-147. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nclimate2470>
- [2] Farooq, M., Bramley, H., Palta, J. A., & Siddique, K. H. M. (2011). Heat stress in wheat during reproductive and grain-filling phases. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*, 30(6), 491-507. <https://doi.org/10.1080/07352689.2011.615687>

- [3] Hussain, J., Khaliq, T., Rahman, M. H. U., Ullah, A., Ahmed, I., Srivastava, A. K., & Ahmad, A. (2021). Effect of temperature on sowing dates of wheat under arid and semi-arid climatic regions and impact quantification of climate change through mechanistic modeling with evidence from field. *Atmosphere*, 12(7), 927. <https://doi.org/10.3390/atmos12070927>
- [4] Liu, B., Asseng, S., Müller, C., Ewert, F., Elliott, J., Lobell, D. B., Martre, P., Ruane, A. C., Wallach, D., Jones, J. W., & others. (2020). Similar estimates of temperature impacts on global wheat yield by three independent methods. *Nature Climate Change*, 6(12), 1130-1136. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41558-020-0771-7>
- [5] Liu, J., He, Q., Zhou, G., Song, Y., Guan, Y., Xiao, X., & Wang, R. (2023). Effects of sowing date variation on winter wheat yield: conclusions for suitable sowing dates for high and stable yield. *Agronomy*, 13(4), 991. <https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy13040991>
- [6] Lobell, D. B., Schlenker, W., & Costa-Roberts, J. (2011). Climate trends and global crop production since 1980. *Science*, 333(6042), 616-620. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1204531>
- [7] Pal, R. K., & Murty, S. N. (2013). Temperature effect on growth parameters of wheat (cv. PBW-343) using CERES-Wheat model for different sowing dates in foot hills of western Himalayas. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Research*, 47(1).
- [8] Sattar, A., Singh, G., Singh, S. V., Kumar, M., Kumar, P. V., & Bal, S. K. (2020). Evaluating temperature thresholds and optimizing sowing dates of wheat in Bihar. *Journal of Agrometeorology*, 22(2), 158-164. <https://doi.org/10.54386/jam.v22i2.165>

Effect of Intercropping of Cowpea on Yield and Quality Parameters of Napier Grass Under Different Fertilizer Levels

Manisha Chaudhary^{*1} and Ramandeep Singh^{*2}

**School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University,*

Bathinda, Punjab, India, 151101

¹ chmanisham2@gmail.com ² brarraman8191@gmail.com

Abstract - An experiment was conducted at Research farm of Lovely Professional University, Punjab in *kharif* 2023, to study the effect of intercropping of cowpea on yield and quality parameters of Napier grass under different fertilizer levels. The experiment was laid out in Factorial Randomized Block Design with three replications. In main plots, different intercropping treatments and in sub plots different fertilizer levels were kept. The results indicated that among main plots, the dry matter content (%) and dry fodder yield (t/ha) of Napier grass was found to be significantly higher under the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) as compared to other two intercropping treatments during both the cuttings. Among sub plots, application of 125 % RDF resulted in significantly higher dry matter content and yield as compared to lower doses of fertilizer during both the cuttings. The cellulose (%) and hemicellulose (%) of Napier grass was found to be significantly lower in Napier + cowpea (1:3) treatment as compared to other intercropping treatments. Among sub plots, the application of 125 % RDF resulted in significantly lower cellulose and hemicellulose content in Napier grass as compared to lower doses of fertilizer. Therefore, the treatment combination of Napier + cowpea (1:3) applied with 125 % RDF was found to be better in increasing the overall yield and enhancing the quality of fodder, as compared to all other combinations.

Keywords : Fodder quality, intercropping, legume, napier grass, nutrient management

I. INTRODUCTION

Napier is a tall, primarily vegetatively propagated perennial native to Sub-Saharan Africa that can produce 20–30 tons of dry matter ha⁻¹ year⁻¹ with good agronomic and management practices. Napier grass is a feed that is often used for the production of dairy and meat in the tropics and subtropics. It is a major source of animal production; nevertheless, its quality is poor, and whenever provided alone, it leads to low ruminant production. Adjusting the

management of Napier grass to a higher-quality feed enhanced milk production and liveweight gain for small, mature cattle without supplementation. In many tropical and subtropical countries, up to 80% of the forage consumed by cows is Napier grass [1]. However, under current management, this grass has a low nutritional value and usually cannot support animal productive performance [2,3]. Therefore, managing Napier grass to improve feed quality could significantly raise animal productivity. Despite its low protein content, it can provide dairy cows with a suitable fodder supply if supplemented with legumes and protein concentrates [4]. To ensure nutritional security without compromising herbage yield, intercropping Napier grass with suitable legumes must be done to increase the nutritional value of cow feed. These plants' capacity to adjust to row spacing makes it possible to include intercrops, which reduces competition and makes them compatible [5]. Incorporating a legume into the production of fodder grasses would enhance the feed quality in addition to providing a nitrogen source to promote grass growth. By fixing nitrogen in the atmosphere, breaking down dead root nodules, and mineralizing shed leaves, legumes support grasses. It has been demonstrated that adding a legume to a diet based on Napier grass improves animal performance in terms of milk production due to their high nutritional content [2]. To ensure nutritional security without compromising herbage yield, intercropping Napier grass with suitable legumes must be done. Reference [6] revealed that intercropping cereals and legumes, enhances quality (crude fiber and protein), although the extent of improvement varied according to the kind of crops planted together.

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

The field experiment was conducted in *kharif* season at Agriculture Research Farm of Lovely Professional University, Phagwara, Punjab (India) in 2023 which was located at 5423 m above sea level at a geographical altitude of 31.2690° N at 75.7021°E longitude. The annual average temperature in Punjab ranges from 10°C to 46°C, with temperatures reaching 49°C in the summer and falling to 1°C in the winter.

The experiment was carried out in *kharif*, 2023 in Factorial RBD with three replications and comprised of nine treatment combinations. In main plot, there were three intercropping treatments viz. I₁- Sole Napier Grass, I₂- Napier grass+ Cowpea (1:2), I₃-Napier grass+ Cowpea (1:3) and in sub plots, three fertilizer levels viz. F₁: 100% RDF, F₂: 75% RDF, F₃: 125% RDF were kept. The seed rate of Napier grass and cowpea were 16 kg ha⁻¹ and 25 kg ha⁻¹ respectively. Total two cuts of Napier grass were taken. The first cut was taken after 70 days after sowing the experiment. Cowpea was harvested after 45 days when it reached flowering stage. The

subsequent cut of Napier was taken 65 days after first cut. For final harvest, mixture of Napier and cowpea was taken.

The data was collected at two cuttings and calculated using the formula given below:

$$\text{Dry matter content (\%)} = \frac{\text{Dry weight (g)}}{\text{Fresh weight (g)}} \times 100$$

$$\text{Dry matter yield (t/ha)} = \frac{\text{Dry matter content (\%)} \times \text{Green fodder yield (t/ha)}}{100}$$

Lignin (%) = Acid Detergent Lignin %

Cellulose (%) = Acid Detergent Fiber % - Acid Detergent Lignin %

Hemicellulose (%) = Neutral Detergent Fiber % - Acid Detergent Fiber %



Fig. 1 – Napier grass + Cowpea (1:3)



Fig. 2 – Sole Napier Grass

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

A. Dry matter content (%) and dry fodder yield (t/ha) during two cuttings

The data on effects of intercropping and fertilizer level treatments on dry matter content and dry fodder yield has been presented in Table 1 and Figure 3. The dry matter content (%) and dry fodder yield (t/ha), influenced by intercropping and fertilizer level treatments were

found to be significant at both first and second cut. However, their interaction was non-significant during both cuttings.

At 1st cut, among intercropping treatments, dry matter content (%) in the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) was found to be significantly higher as compared to the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:2). However, significantly lower dry matter content was found in sole napier grass as compared to all other intercropping treatments. Among fertilizer levels, dry matter content in the treatment of 100% RDF and 125% RDF was found to be statistically at par with each other. The treatment of 75% RDF reported significantly lower dry matter content as compared to other two levels of fertilizers. The results were similar during second cutting also.

At 1st cut, among intercropping treatments, dry fodder yield (t/ha) in the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) was found to be significantly higher as compared to the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:2). However, significantly lower dry fodder yield was found in sole napier grass as compared to all other intercropping treatments. Among fertilizer levels, dry fodder yield in the treatment of 125% RDF was found to be significantly higher as compared to other two fertilizer levels. The treatment of 75% RDF and 100% RDF reported statistically at par dry fodder yield. The results were similar during second cutting also. Moreover, the dry matter content and dry fodder yield was found to be higher during second cutting as compared to first cutting.

B. Lignin, Cellulose and Hemicellulose content (%) during two cuttings

The data on effects of intercropping and fertilizer level treatments on lignin (%), cellulose and hemicellulose has been presented in Table 2 and Figure 4. The lignin (%), cellulose (%) and hemicellulose (%) content as influenced by intercropping and fertilizer level treatments were found to be significant at both first and second cut. However, their interaction was non-significant during both cuttings.

At 1st cut, among intercropping treatments, lignin (%) in the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:2) was found to be statistically at par with the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) and both of them had significantly higher lignin (%) as compared to sole napier grass. Significantly lower lignin content was found in sole napier grass as compared to all other intercropping treatments. Among fertilizer levels, lignin (%) in the treatment of 100% RDF and 125% RDF was found to be statistically at par with each other. The treatment of 75% RDF reported significantly lower lignin content as compared to other two levels of fertilizers. The results were similar during second cutting also.

At 1st cut, among intercropping treatments, cellulose (%) in the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) was found to be significantly lower as compared to the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:2). However, significantly higher cellulose (%) content was found in sole napier grass as compared to all other intercropping treatments. Among fertilizer levels, cellulose content in the treatment of 100% RDF was found to be statistically at par with the treatment of 125 % RDF, and both of these treatments reported significantly lower cellulose (%) content as compared to lower dose of RDF i.e. 75 % RDF. The treatment of 75% RDF reported significantly higher cellulose content as compared to 125 % RDF. The results were similar during second cutting also.

At 1st cut, among intercropping treatments, hemicellulose (%) in the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) was found to be significantly lower as compared to the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:2) and sole napier grass. However, significantly higher hemicellulose (%) content was found in sole napier grass as compared to all other intercropping treatments. Among fertilizer levels, the hemicellulose content was found to be statistically at par among all fertilizer levels. During 2nd cutting, among intercropping treatments, hemicellulose (%) in the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) was found to be significantly lower as compared to the treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:2) and sole napier grass. However, significantly higher hemicellulose (%) content was found in sole napier grass as compared to all other intercropping treatments. Among fertilizer levels, hemicellulose content in the treatment of 100% RDF was found to be statistically at par with the treatment of 125 % RDF, and both treatments reported significantly lower cellulose (%) content as compared to lower dose of RDF i.e. 75 % RDF. The treatment of 75% RDF reported significantly higher cellulose content as compared to 125 % RDF.

Table 1: Effect of intercropping and fertilizer level treatments on Dry matter content (%) and dry fodder yield (t/ha) of Napier grass

	Treatments	Dry matter content (%)		Dry Fodder Yield (t/ha)	
		1 st cut	2 nd cut	1 st cut	2 nd cut
Intercropping					
I ₁	Sole napier	24.58	31.01	11.03	15.42
I ₂	Napier + cowpea (1:2)	31.45	35.24	14.64	18.96

I ₃	Napier + cowpea (1:3)	36.34	39.74	19.37	23.83
SE.m+		0.78	0.68	0.51	0.45
CD(P<0.05)		2.85	2.50	1.88	1.64
Fertilizer levels					
F ₁	100% RDF	31.68	35.09	14.75	18.87
F ₂	75% RDF	27.74	33.50	13.31	18.26
F ₃	125% RDF	32.94	37.40	16.98	21.08
SE.m+		0.78	0.68	0.51	0.45
CD(P<0.05)		2.85	2.50	1.88	1.64
Interaction					
I ₁ F ₁	Sole Napier + 100% RDF	27.04	31.34	10.83	14.72
I ₁ F ₂	Sole Napier + 75% RDF	18.72	28.74	10.32	14.42
I ₁ F ₃	Sole Napier + 125% RDF	27.98	32.95	11.93	17.13
I ₃ F ₁	Napier + cowpea (1:2) + 100% RDF	31.30	34.86	14.48	18.70
I ₃ F ₂	Napier + cowpea (1:2) + 75% RDF	29.72	33.80	11.43	17.72
I ₃ F ₃	Napier + cowpea (1:2) + 125% RDF	33.31	37.07	18.00	20.45
I ₄ F ₁	Napier + cowpea (1:3) + 100% RDF	36.71	39.07	18.93	23.19
I ₄ F ₂	Napier + cowpea (1:3) + 75% RDF	34.77	37.97	18.17	22.65
I ₄ F ₃	Napier + cowpea (1:3) + 125% RDF	37.53	42.19	21.00	25.65
SE.m+		1.34	1.18	0.89	0.78
CD(P<0.05)		NS	NS	NS	NS

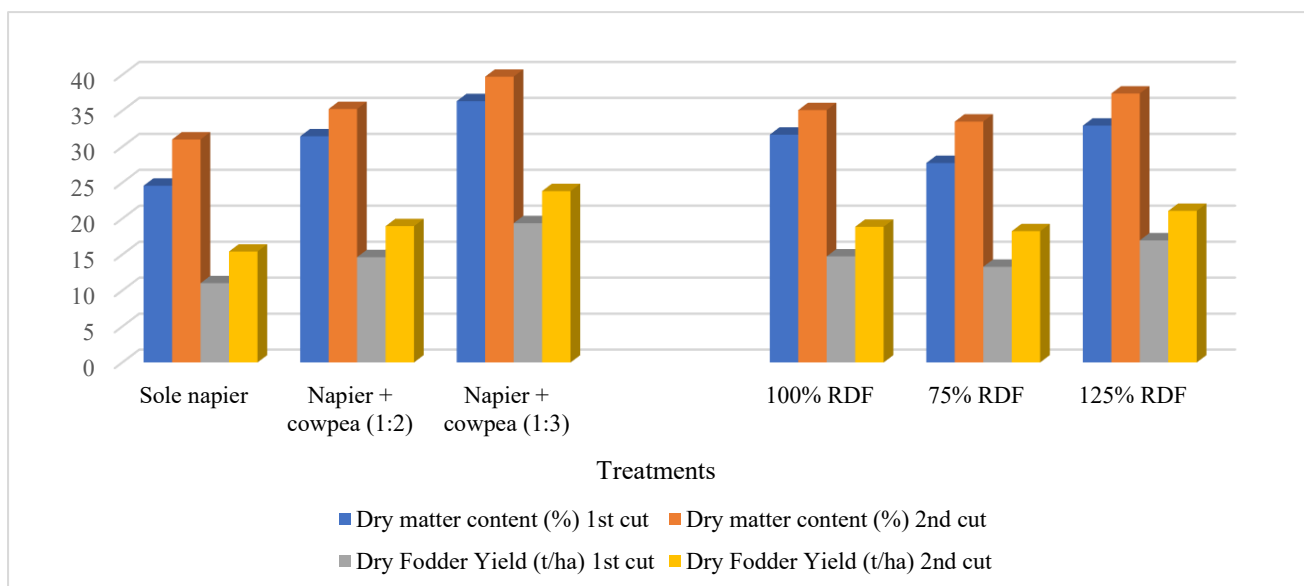


Fig. 3 Effect of intercropping and fertilizer level treatments on Dry matter content (%) and dry fodder yield (t/ha) of Napier grass

IV. DISCUSSION

The synergistic impact of biological nitrogen fixation with cowpea, and enhanced nutrient availability may be the cause of the significantly higher dry matter content and dry fodder yield of napier grass under intercropping treatment of Napier + cowpea (1:3) and higher fertiliser dose. As a legume, cowpea forms a symbiotic relationship with *Rhizobium* bacteria, which improves the availability of nitrogen for the associated Napier grass by adding biologically fixed nitrogen to the soil system. Along with the increased external nutrient input from 125% RDF, this extra nitrogen supply may have improved photosynthetic efficiency, leaf area development, and chlorophyll synthesis, increasing biomass production. Additionally, the supporting root distribution patterns of the legume and grass components may have led to a more effective use of soil nutrients and moisture, hence decreasing interspecific competition. In the end, the intercropping system with greater fertiliser dose produced superior dry fodder yield due to the combined effect of improved soil fertility status, enhanced nutrient uptake, and better physiological growth. These findings were similar to those of [7], [8] and [9].

Improved nitrogen availability and altered biomass partitioning may be responsible for noticeably decreased cellulose and hemicellulose content of Napier, when intercropping with cowpea at 125% RDF. Including legumes in grass-based systems improves the supply of nitrogen through biological nitrogen fixation, which increases the percentage of metabolically

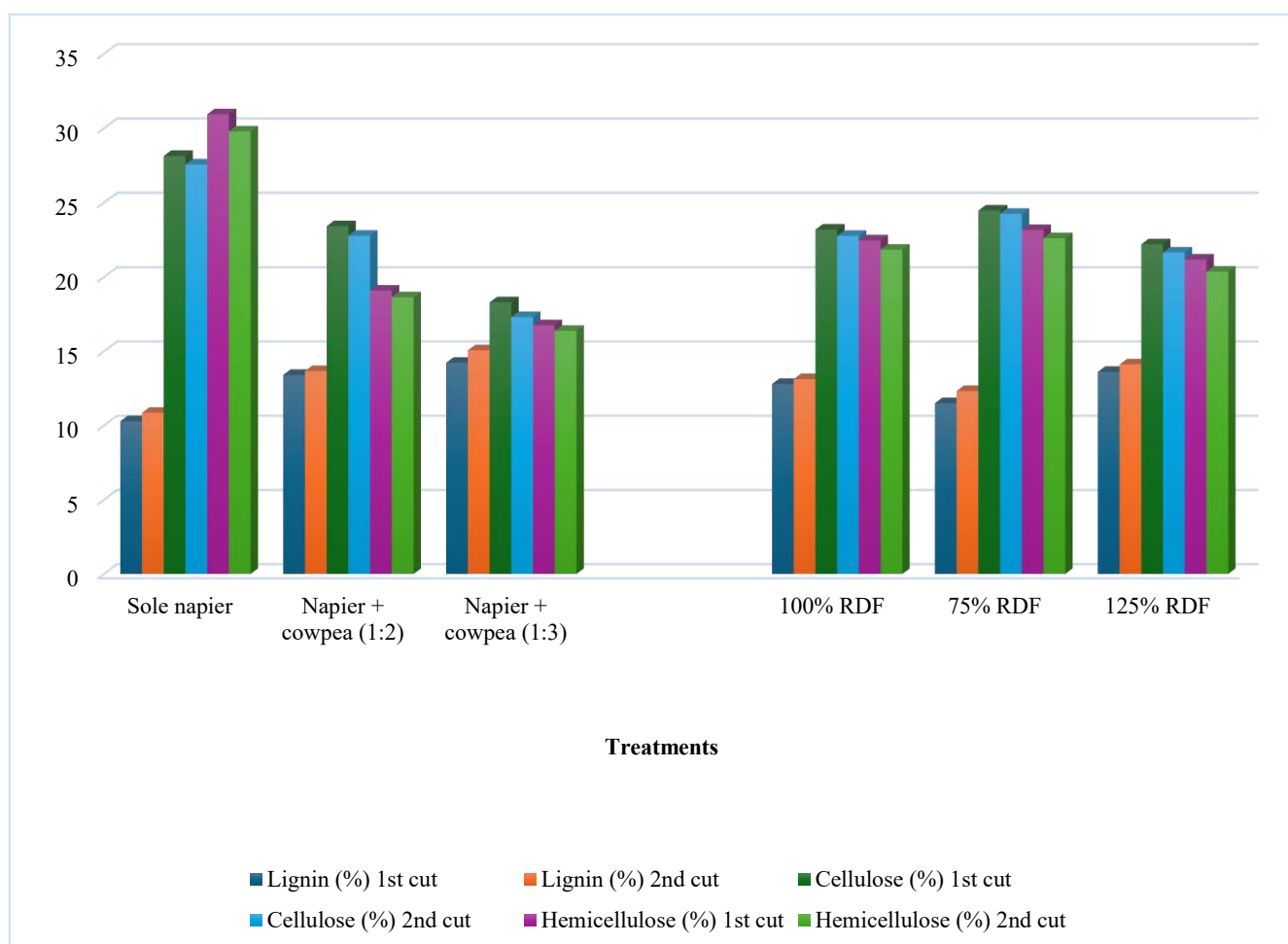
active tissues compared to structural carbohydrates and encourages the creation of cellular proteins. Higher fertiliser dosages—especially nitrogen—accelerate vegetative growth and cell expansion, leading to thinner cell walls and relatively less cellulose and hemicellulose deposition.

Additionally, better nutritional status increases the build-up of crude protein and soluble carbs, which dilutes the concentration of structural carbohydrates. Reduced cellulose and hemicellulose increase ruminant voluntary intake and dry matter digestibility, increasing feed efficiency and cattle productivity [10]. Therefore, increased RDF and legume integration work together to improve fodder quality in addition to increasing biomass production. These findings were in line with [11], [12] and [13].

Table 2: Effect of intercropping and fertilizer level treatments on Lignin (%), cellulose (%) and hemicellulose (%) content of Napier grass

Symbol	Treatments	Lignin (%)		Cellulose (%)		Hemicellulose (%)	
		1 st cut	2 nd cut	1 st cut	2 nd cut	1 st cut	2 nd cut
Intercropping							
I ₁	Sole napier	10.29	10.86	28.14	27.57	30.94	29.78
I ₂	Napier + cowpea (1:2)	13.41	13.67	23.42	22.78	19.09	18.64
I ₃	Napier + cowpea (1:3)	14.23	15.07	18.30	17.31	16.76	16.38
SE.m+		0.55	0.42	0.47	0.46	0.64	0.58
CD(P<0.05)		2.02	1.55	1.73	1.69	2.36	2.13
Fertilizer levels							
F ₁	100% RDF	12.80	13.13	23.19	22.77	22.46	21.84
F ₂	75% RDF	11.51	12.33	24.47	24.25	23.16	22.61
F ₃	125% RDF	13.62	14.12	22.20	21.65	21.18	20.36
SE.m+		0.55	0.42	0.47	0.46	0.64	0.58
CD(P<0.05)		2.02	1.55	1.73	1.69	2.36	2.13
Interaction							
I ₁ F ₁	Sole Napier + 100% RDF	10.40	10.90	28.00	27.67	31.71	30.53
I ₁ F ₂	Sole Napier + 75% RDF	9.97	10.50	27.71	27.95	33.12	32.17
I ₁ F ₃	Sole Napier + 125% RDF	10.50	11.17	28.71	27.10	27.99	26.65
I ₃ F ₁	Napier + cowpea (1:2) + 100% RDF	13.50	13.50	23.46	22.46	19.03	18.69
I ₃ F ₂	Napier + cowpea (1:2) + 75% RDF	11.73	12.50	24.64	24.74	19.23	18.89

I ₃ F ₃	Napier + cowpea (1:2) + 125% RDF	15.00	15.00	22.16	21.16	19.01	18.34
I ₄ F ₁	Napier + cowpea (1:3) + 100% RDF	14.50	15.00	18.12	18.17	16.63	16.29
I ₄ F ₂	Napier + cowpea (1:3) + 75% RDF	12.83	14.00	21.06	20.06	17.12	16.78
I ₄ F ₃	Napier + cowpea (1:3) + 125% RDF	15.37	16.20	15.73	16.69	16.55	16.08
SE.m+		0.95	0.73	0.81	0.80	1.11	1.01
CD(P<0.05)		NS	NS	NS	NS	NS	NS



V. CONCLUSION

It can be concluded that intercropping of Napier grass+ Cowpea (1:3) along with 125% RDF produced the higher total dry matter content and total dry fodder yield as compared to another intercropping ratio. The high quality of fodder was obtained in Napier + Cowpea (1:3) + 125% RDF, due to low amount of indigestible constituents i.e. cellulose and hemicellulose. Intercropping had a positive effect on growth and quality of fodder Napier.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors are thankful to LPU for providing the necessary resources for conducting the field trail.

REFERENCES

- [1] J. Kabirizi, F. Muyekho, M. Mulaa, R. Msangi, B. Pallangyo, G. Kawube, E. Zziwa, S. Mugerwa, S. Ajanga, G. Lukwago. Napier Grass Feed Resource: Production, Constraints and Implications for Smallholder Farmers in Eastern and Central Africa, 2015, pp. 1–173.
- [2] R. W. Muinga, W. Thorpe, J. H. Topps. Voluntary food intake, live-weight change and lactation performance of crossbred dairy cows given *ad libitum Pennisetum purpureum* (Napier grass var. Bana) supplemented with leucaena forage in the lowland semi-humid tropics. *Anim. Prod*, 1992, 55, 331–337.
- [3] D. Brown, M. Salim, E. Chavalimu, H. Fitzhugh. Intake, selection, apparent digestibility and chemical composition of *Pennisetum purpureum* and *Cajanus cajan* foliage as utilized by lactating goats. *Small Rumi. Res*, 1988, 1, 59–65.
- [4] E. M. Nyambati, C. M. Lusweti, F. N. Muyekho, J. G. Mureithi. Up-scaling napier grass (*Pennisetum purpureum* Schum.) production using “Tumbukiza” method in smallholder 124 farming systems in Northwestern Kenya. *Journal of Agricultural Extension and Rural Development*, 2011, 3(1): 1-7.
- [5] S. C. Mahapatra. Study of grass-legume intercropping system in terms of competition indices and monetary advantage index under acid lateritic soil of India. *American Journal of Experimental Agriculture*, 2011, 1(1): 1-6.
- [6] N. Kumar. Sowing methods and varying seed rates of cowpea on production potential of sorghum, sudan grass hybrid and cowpea: A review. *Agricultural Reviews*, 2016, 37(4): 290-299.

- [7] U. C. Thomas, M. Abraham, R. K. Agrawal, M. R. Anita. Yield and quality of bajra napier hybrid as influenced by magnesium and boron nutrition in humid tropics of Kerala. *Range Management and Agroforestry*, 2020, 41(2): 293-299.
- [8] E. A. Tenakwa, S. Cudjoe, T. Ansah. Biomass yield and fodder quality of Napier grass (*Pennisetum purpureum*) as affected by Pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan*) intercrop and planting distance. *Ghana Journal of Agricultural Science*, 2019, 54(2): 36-44.
- [9] M. Chaudhary and Rajeev. The effect of cowpea intercropping and different fertilizer levels on growth and yield of Napier grass. *Agricultural Science Digest*, 2024, D-5770: 1-6.
- [10] P. J. Van Soest. Nutritional ecology of the ruminants. 2nd, Comstock Publishing Associates, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, NY, USA. 1994.
- [11] T. Ansah, C. A. Issaka. Ruminant livestock feed resources in the kumbungu district of Ghana. *Ghanaian Journal of Animal Science*, 2018, 9 (1).
- [12] G. Tilahun, B. Asmare, Y. Mekuriaw. Effects of harvesting age and spacing on plant characteristics, chemical composition and yield of desho grass (*Pennisetum pedicellatum* Trin.) in the highlands of Ethiopia. *Tropical Grasslands-Forrajes Tropicales*, 2017, 5 (2):77 – 84.
- [13] J. Gussha, T. E. Halimani, N. T. Ngongoni, S. Ncube. Effect of feeding cactus legume silages on nitrogen retention, digestibility and microbial protein synthesis in goats. *Animal Feed Science and Technology*, 2015, 206: 17.

Water Conservation Techniques in Sustainable Agriculture: Critique

Raghveer Singh^{#1} and Adit Singla^{#2}

[#]Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) - 151001 India

¹raghveersingh.gdb099@gmail.com

Abstract — Water scarcity is one of the most critical challenges facing global agriculture in the twenty-first century. With agriculture accounting for approximately 70% of global freshwater withdrawals, optimizing water use in crop production has become indispensable for ensuring food security and environmental sustainability. This review paper systematically examines the state of the art in water conservation techniques applied to sustainable agriculture. The paper covers a broad spectrum of approaches, including precision irrigation technologies such as drip and subsurface irrigation, deficit irrigation strategies, rainwater harvesting and storage systems, soil moisture management through mulching and conservation tillage, and the integration of advanced digital tools including the Internet of Things (IoT), remote sensing, unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), machine learning, and artificial intelligence (AI) for irrigation scheduling and water demand forecasting. The review also addresses the role of crop management practices, including drought-tolerant crop varieties, crop rotation, and agronomic synergies that collectively enhance water use efficiency (WUE). Additionally, it investigates the water-energy-food (WEF) nexus as an integrative framework for evaluating the performance of competing irrigation technologies. Policy dimensions, socioeconomic factors influencing technology adoption by smallholder farmers, and the challenges of scaling context-specific solutions are critically assessed. The review concludes that no single technique offers a universal solution; rather, a multi-pronged, systems-based approach combining technological innovation with supportive policy frameworks is essential to achieving sustainable agricultural water management globally.

Keywords- water conservation, sustainable agriculture, drip irrigation, deficit irrigation, precision agriculture, IoT irrigation, rainwater harvesting, water use efficiency, soil moisture management, water-energy-food nexus

Introduction

The global demand for freshwater is escalating at an unprecedented rate, driven by population growth, urbanization, climate variability, and expanding agricultural production. Agriculture remains the dominant consumer of freshwater resources worldwide, accounting for nearly 70% of global freshwater withdrawals and as much as 85–90% in some developing nations [1], [3]. With the global population projected to surpass 9.7 billion by 2050, the pressure on food production systems will intensify, further straining already limited water supplies. In many arid and semi-arid regions, groundwater depletion, reduced precipitation,

and extended droughts exacerbate water scarcity, threatening both crop yields and livelihoods [4], [21].

Sustainable agriculture seeks to meet present food needs without compromising the ability of future generations to do the same. Central to this goal is the efficient use of water resources. Inefficient conventional irrigation methods such as flood or furrow irrigation result in significant water losses through runoff, deep percolation, and evaporation, with efficiencies often below 50% [27]. In contrast, modern conservation techniques can dramatically reduce water consumption while maintaining or improving crop productivity [24].

Recent years have witnessed remarkable advances in water conservation technologies, ranging from precision irrigation hardware to AI-driven scheduling systems and UAV-based soil moisture monitoring. Simultaneously, agronomic approaches such as mulching, crop rotation, and the adoption of drought-tolerant cultivars have been refined and validated under diverse field conditions [8], [18]. The integration of digital agriculture into water management frameworks—often referred to as smart irrigation—represents a paradigm shift in how water resources are allocated and monitored at the farm level [9], [16].

Despite these advances, significant knowledge gaps and adoption barriers remain, particularly for smallholder farmers in developing nations who lack access to capital, technical expertise, and infrastructure [20]. Policy frameworks and institutional support are therefore critical complementary components to technological solutions [19]. This review paper consolidates recent Scopus-indexed research to provide a comprehensive, critical appraisal of water conservation techniques in sustainable agriculture, with the aim of informing researchers, practitioners, and policymakers on effective and scalable strategies.

Global Water Scarcity and Agricultural Water Use

A. Scope of the Problem

Water scarcity is no longer a regional concern; it is a global emergency with direct implications for food security and ecosystem health. According to recent analyses, nearly half of global irrigation expansion since the early twenty-first century has occurred in water-stressed regions, placing enormous strain on surface water and groundwater reserves [14]. Irrigation currently supports approximately 40% of global food production while utilizing 70% of freshwater resources, making irrigation efficiency a critical lever for sustainability [13], [27].

In regions such as Central Asia, sub-Saharan Africa, South Asia, and the Middle East, surface water resources are under acute pressure from increased evapotranspiration, declining snowpack, and erratic monsoon patterns linked to climate change [4], [20]. Groundwater depletion—particularly in major agricultural basins such as the Indo-Gangetic Plain, the North China Plain, and the Central Valley of California—presents an existential threat to irrigated agriculture in these areas [21].

B. Agricultural Water Withdrawal Trends

At the global scale, surface water resources support approximately 62% of irrigated land while groundwater underpins the remaining 38% [3]. In many nations, particularly in low-

and middle-income countries, water allocation systems remain poorly monitored and managed, leading to both over-extraction and wasteful application [4]. OpenET, a recent satellite-based evapotranspiration data platform developed for the western United States, exemplifies how data-driven water accounting tools can fill critical gaps in water management decision-making [15].

The water footprint framework has emerged as a valuable analytical lens for quantifying consumptive and non-consumptive water use in agricultural systems. By benchmarking water footprints across tillage practices, crops, and irrigation technologies, researchers can identify high-impact opportunities for water savings within existing production systems [3], [28]. Such analyses are increasingly informing national water-use policies and investment priorities in irrigated agriculture.

Precision and Efficient Irrigation Technologies

A. Drip Irrigation

Drip irrigation is widely recognized as one of the most water-efficient irrigation methods available. By delivering water directly to the root zone at low pressure and controlled frequency, drip systems minimize losses from soil evaporation, surface runoff, and deep percolation [20]. Compared to conventional flood irrigation, drip irrigation has been shown to reduce water consumption by 30–50% while maintaining or improving crop yields across a range of crops including vegetables, fruits, cotton, and maize [2], [22].

A comprehensive review of drip irrigation's effects on water and carbon fluxes highlighted that drip systems significantly reduce soil evaporation, increase leaf area index, and promote crop transpiration, thereby enhancing net ecosystem carbon uptake [20]. Studies on drip-irrigated cotton in Xinjiang, China, confirmed that deficit drip irrigation under plastic film mulching achieved superior water use efficiency compared to full irrigation, with meta-analysis and machine learning approaches used to optimize management parameters [22].

The water-energy-food (WEF) nexus analysis further demonstrated that drip irrigation consistently leads all irrigation technologies in nexus performance across dry, tropical, and temperate climatic regions, delivering gains of 21.44 to 47.28 WEF nexus units relative to surface and sprinkler alternatives [27]. These findings underscore the case for accelerating drip irrigation adoption as a cornerstone of sustainable water management.

B. Deficit Irrigation Strategies

Deficit irrigation (DI) intentionally supplies water below full crop evapotranspiration requirements during non-critical growth stages, accepting minor yield penalties in exchange for substantial water savings [23]. When optimally implemented, DI can reduce irrigation water application by 20–40% with yield reductions of less than 10%, making it one of the most cost-effective conservation strategies available to farmers [26].

A fuzzy extent analysis comparing multiple tillage and irrigation combinations found that deficit irrigation scored highest (0.144) among all irrigation methods evaluated for overall sustainability, particularly when combined with zero-tillage practices [26]. Similarly, studies

on sorghum under deficit drip irrigation in Egypt demonstrated that planting method significantly modulates the crop's response to water stress, with strategic deficit management achieving adequate forage yields even under drought conditions [12].

The AquaCrop model, widely used for simulating crop-water relationships, has been integrated with advanced machine learning architectures including dual physics-informed neural networks (DPINNs) to optimize deficit irrigation scheduling for maize in arid regions [17]. These hybrid modeling approaches capture the dynamic, non-linear responses of crops to varying water deficits across growth stages, enabling more precise and adaptive irrigation decisions.

C. Sprinkler and Micro-Sprinkler Irrigation

Sprinkler irrigation mimics natural rainfall distribution and is well suited to field crops with uniform canopy coverage. While sprinkler systems are less efficient than drip systems in terms of evaporation losses, they offer significantly better water distribution uniformity than surface irrigation and are more easily automated [24]. Micro-sprinkler systems, commonly applied in orchards and tree crops, provide localized water application with minimal evaporative loss, though they require high-quality filtered water to prevent emitter clogging.

WEF nexus analyses in temperate regions reveal that transitioning from furrow to sprinkler irrigation yields net gains in water use efficiency and crop yield, though with some energy productivity trade-offs [27]. The energy intensity of sprinkler systems therefore represents an important consideration in regions where energy access is limited or where the water-energy nexus is a policy concern. Smart controllers and variable-rate irrigation (VRI) technologies are increasingly used to reduce energy and water waste in sprinkler systems.

Digital Technologies and Smart Irrigation

A. IoT-Based Irrigation Systems

The Internet of Things (IoT) has transformed irrigation management by enabling real-time sensing, remote monitoring, and automated control of irrigation systems. IoT-based wireless sensor networks (WSNs) can continuously monitor soil moisture, temperature, humidity, and crop water status, allowing irrigation to be triggered precisely when and where it is needed [9]. A low-cost, open-source IoT WSN developed for drip irrigation demonstrated the potential for democratizing precision water management across diverse farm sizes and geographies [9].

Smart irrigation systems (SIS) integrating IoT with LoRaWAN communication protocols have been successfully deployed for tomato production under both surface and subsurface drip configurations, enabling robust real-time monitoring and decision support [11]. Commercial SIS platforms are increasingly embedded with weather forecast APIs, enabling proactive irrigation scheduling that accounts for anticipated rainfall and evapotranspiration demands, further reducing unnecessary water applications.

B. Remote Sensing and UAV Applications

Satellite-based remote sensing provides spatially comprehensive and temporally continuous data on crop water stress, evapotranspiration, soil moisture, and canopy health at scales ranging from individual fields to river basins [15], [30]. Sentinel-1 synthetic aperture radar (SAR) combined with Landsat-8 optical imagery has been used to map large-scale soil moisture distributions in citrus orchards, enabling more informed irrigation scheduling across heterogeneous landscapes [12].

Unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) equipped with thermal infrared sensors offer high-resolution, on-demand soil moisture estimation, providing a complementary tool to satellite observations for field-scale precision irrigation management [30]. UAV-based monitoring is particularly valuable in detecting spatial variability in crop water stress within fields, allowing for variable-rate irrigation application that matches water supply precisely to local crop demand [25].

C. AI and Machine Learning for Water Demand Forecasting

Artificial intelligence and machine learning are increasingly applied to agricultural water management for forecasting irrigation demand, optimizing scheduling, and simulating crop-water interactions under variable climate scenarios [16]. The UNet-ConvLSTM (UCL) deep learning framework demonstrated state-of-the-art performance in agricultural water demand prediction, achieving R^2 values of 0.927 and 0.935 on MODIS and GLDAS remote sensing datasets respectively, by integrating spatial and temporal features [16].

Hybrid models such as IWRAM combine time-series decomposition with recurrent neural networks to forecast irrigation water demand under climate change scenarios, providing irrigation managers with actionable, season-ahead outlooks [11]. These AI-driven tools, when integrated with IoT sensor networks and satellite data streams, form the backbone of next-generation precision water management systems capable of operating at both field and watershed scales.

Agronomic Water Conservation Practices

A. Mulching and Conservation Tillage

Mulching—the application of organic or synthetic materials to the soil surface—is one of the most cost-effective agronomic practices for reducing soil evaporation, improving water retention, and controlling weed growth [18]. Studies within modern irrigation and drainage network areas found that mulching reduced green water footprints more effectively than drip irrigation alone, with the combination of mulching and drip irrigation achieving total annual water savings of 382.4 m³ per hectare [19].

Conservation tillage, particularly no-till and reduced tillage systems, preserves soil structure and organic matter, enhancing water infiltration, reducing runoff, and improving the soil's water-holding capacity [3]. Zero tillage was identified as the most effective tillage practice in a multi-criteria sustainability evaluation, scoring highest on affordability, water usage, and soil health metrics [26]. Long-term adoption of conservation tillage also contributes to soil carbon sequestration, providing co-benefits for climate mitigation [29].

B. Drought-Tolerant Crop Varieties and Crop Rotation

The development and deployment of drought-tolerant crop varieties represents a critical genetic lever for reducing agricultural water demand. CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing, marker-assisted selection (MAS), and omics technologies are being leveraged to develop crop varieties with enhanced drought responsiveness, deeper root systems, and improved osmotic adjustment [1], [25]. These biotechnological advances complement traditional plant breeding efforts and are accelerating the pipeline of climate-resilient varieties for farmers in water-scarce regions.

Crop rotation diversifies the temporal demands on soil water and nutrients, reducing the risk of soil moisture depletion and improving the overall productivity of agricultural systems. Alternating deep-rooted and shallow-rooted crops improves soil structure, enhances water infiltration, and reduces evapotranspiration compared to monoculture systems [10]. Crop rotation also provides natural pest and disease suppression, reducing the need for water-intensive pesticide applications and supporting the long-term sustainability of farming systems.

C. Rainwater Harvesting

Rainwater harvesting (RWH) involves the collection and storage of precipitation for subsequent use in crop irrigation, particularly during dry periods. In arid and semi-arid regions such as Pakistan's Sindh province and sub-Saharan Africa, RWH systems constructed as small reservoirs, ponds, and earthen tanks have demonstrated progressive improvements in water conservation, with retention rates rising from 33.3% in 2017 to over 107% by 2023 in certain catchments [6], [17].

Field-level RWH techniques including contour bunding, tied ridges, and zai pits effectively capture and infiltrate rainfall where it falls, reducing runoff and improving soil water storage. At the watershed scale, RWH infrastructure such as check dams and percolation ponds recharge groundwater and extend the availability of surface water resources for irrigation during the dry season. The socioeconomic viability of RWH systems depends critically on community participation, governance structures, and the alignment of investment with local water scarcity priorities.

Policy, Socioeconomic Dimensions, and Adoption Barriers

The uptake of water conservation technologies in agriculture is shaped not only by their technical performance but also by a complex web of socioeconomic, institutional, and behavioral factors. Research in Iran's water-scarce regions identified education, local participation, organizational membership, farm size, and knowledge as key determinants of technology adoption among farmers [28]. Economic factors including family income, off-farm earnings, and land ownership positively influence adoption, while high upfront costs and limited access to credit remain critical barriers [28].

Gender and age of the household head have been shown to influence irrigation water use efficiency, with younger, more educated farmers demonstrating greater willingness to adopt precision irrigation technologies [28]. Addressing these heterogeneities requires targeted extension services, demonstration farms, and subsidized access to precision irrigation equipment, particularly for smallholder farmers who bear the greatest vulnerability to water

scarcity [20]. Social learning platforms and stakeholder dialogues are valuable mechanisms for bridging the gap between scientific knowledge and farmer practice.

Policy frameworks play an indispensable role in incentivizing sustainable water use. Water pricing reforms that reflect the true scarcity value of water, regulations on groundwater extraction, and payments for ecosystem services can create enabling conditions for conservation technology adoption [19]. National-level irrigation modernization programs, when supported by transparent governance and performance monitoring, can achieve basin-scale reductions in agricultural water consumption while improving food production outcomes [19].

Water-Energy-Food Nexus Perspectives

The water-energy-food (WEF) nexus framework acknowledges the deep interdependencies between these three resource systems and provides a holistic lens for evaluating the sustainability of agricultural water management strategies. Irrigation is simultaneously a consumer of energy and a producer of food; trade-offs between water savings, energy inputs, and crop yield outcomes must therefore be explicitly quantified when comparing technology options [27].

WEF nexus analyses using sustainability polygons that integrate water use efficiency, crop yield, and energy productivity into a composite nexus index have demonstrated that drip irrigation consistently outperforms furrow and sprinkler irrigation across all climatic regions [27]. However, the energy costs of pressurizing drip systems can be substantial in regions without reliable electricity access, underscoring the importance of solar-powered pumping as a complementary technology. IoT-based smart irrigation systems also contribute to energy savings by eliminating unnecessary pumping during periods when soil moisture is adequate [24].

Research Gaps and Future Directions

Despite significant progress, several important research gaps persist in the field of agricultural water conservation. First, the long-term field performance of IoT-based smart irrigation systems under diverse agro-climatic and socioeconomic conditions remains insufficiently characterized. Most published studies are conducted over short time horizons and in controlled or semi-controlled settings, limiting the generalizability of findings to complex real-world farming environments [9], [24].

Second, the integration of climate change adaptation into irrigation optimization models requires further development. Physics-informed neural networks and hybrid crop-data models offer promising frameworks for simulating adaptive irrigation strategies under future climate scenarios, but their parameterization requires large, multi-regional datasets that are not yet widely available [17]. Combining satellite remote sensing with high-resolution crop models represents a priority research avenue for improving the spatial transferability of irrigation recommendations.

Third, there is a critical need for cost-benefit analyses of water conservation technologies that incorporate smallholder perspectives, gender dimensions, and community-level adoption dynamics [20], [28]. The majority of existing economic analyses focus on large-scale commercial farming contexts, where the viability of precision technologies is more readily demonstrated. Bridging this gap will require transdisciplinary research approaches that co-design solutions with farming communities and integrate local ecological knowledge with advanced monitoring tools.

Conclusion

This review has synthesized recent advances in water conservation techniques for sustainable agriculture, demonstrating that a diverse portfolio of technological, agronomic, and policy interventions is available and effective across a range of farming contexts. Drip irrigation, deficit irrigation, and smart IoT-based systems have emerged as among the most impactful tools for reducing agricultural water consumption while maintaining or improving productivity. Complementary practices including mulching, conservation tillage, drought-tolerant crop varieties, and rainwater harvesting provide additional water savings and resilience benefits that are particularly valuable for smallholder farmers in water-scarce regions.

The integration of AI, machine learning, remote sensing, and UAV technologies into irrigation management systems represents a frontier of innovation with transformative potential for real-time, spatially precise water use optimization. However, the realization of this potential depends on sustained investment in digital infrastructure, data sharing platforms, and capacity building for farmers and extension agents. Policy environments that incentivize water saving, penalize waste, and support technology access are equally essential components of a sustainable water management transition in agriculture.

Looking ahead, the global community must embrace a systems-based approach that recognizes the interconnections between water, energy, food, and climate. No single technique, technology, or policy will be sufficient in isolation. Rather, tailored combinations of interventions, grounded in local contexts and co-developed with farming communities, offer the most credible path toward achieving sustainable agricultural water management at scale. Continued investment in interdisciplinary research, evidence-based policy, and inclusive extension services will be critical to translating scientific advances into tangible improvements in water security and food production worldwide.

References

- [1] M. A. Hassan et al., "Drought stress in rice: Morpho-physiological and molecular responses and marker-assisted breeding," *Front. Plant Sci.*, vol. 14, p. 1215371, 2023. doi: 10.3389/fpls.2023.1215371.
- [2] Z. Qi et al., "Assessing water-nitrogen use, crop growth and economic benefits for maize in upper Yellow River basin: Feasibility analysis for border and drip irrigation," *Agric. Water Manag.*, vol. 295, p. 108771, 2024. doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2024.108771.

- [3] J. Gao, L. Zhuo, X. Duan, and P. Wu, "Agricultural water-saving potentials with water footprint benchmarking under different tillage practices for crop production in an irrigation district," *Agric. Water Manag.*, vol. 282, p. 108274, 2023. doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2023.108274.
- [4] P. K. Singh and H. Chudasama, "Pathways for climate change adaptations in arid and semi-arid regions," *J. Clean. Prod.*, vol. 284, p. 124744, 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.124744.
- [5] X. Wang, "Managing land carrying capacity: Key to achieving sustainable production systems for food security," *Land*, vol. 11, p. 484, 2022. doi: 10.3390/land11040484.
- [6] M. Jiang et al., "Effects of different fertilization practices on maize yield, soil nutrients, soil moisture, and water use efficiency in northern China," *Sci. Rep.*, vol. 14, p. 6480, 2024. doi: 10.1038/s41598-024-57031-z.
- [7] A. Raza et al., "Smart reprogramming of plants against salinity stress using modern biotechnological tools," *Crit. Rev. Biotechnol.*, vol. 43, pp. 1035–1062, 2023. doi: 10.1080/07388551.2022.2093695.
- [8] G. Murtaza et al., "Biochar-soil-plant interactions: A cross talk for sustainable agriculture under changing climate," *Front. Environ. Sci.*, vol. 11, p. 1059449, 2023. doi: 10.3389/fenvs.2023.1059449.
- [9] S. Vandôme et al., "A low-cost, low-tech, low-energy, open-source IoT-based wireless sensors network for drip irrigation," *Sensors*, vol. 23, no. 5, 2023. doi: 10.3390/s23052512.
- [10] W. Wolff et al., "Optimized algorithm for evapotranspiration retrieval via remote sensing," *Agric. Water Manag.*, vol. 262, p. 107390, 2022. doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2022.107390.
- [11] C. Dang et al., "IWRAM: A hybrid model for irrigation water demand forecasting to quantify the impacts of climate change," *Agric. Water Manag.*, vol. 291, p. 108643, 2024. doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2024.108643.
- [12] Z. Wu et al., "Inversion of large-scale citrus soil moisture using multi-temporal Sentinel-1 and Landsat-8 data," *Agric. Water Manag.*, vol. 294, p. 108718, 2024. doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2024.108718.
- [13] S. McDermid et al., "Irrigation in the Earth System," *Nat. Rev. Earth Environ.*, vol. 4, pp. 435–453, 2023. doi: 10.1038/s43017-023-00438-5.
- [14] P. Mehta et al., "Half of twenty-first century global irrigation expansion has been in water-stressed regions," *Nat. Water*, vol. 2, pp. 254–261, 2024. doi: 10.1038/s44221-024-00206-9.
- [15] F. S. Melton et al., "Open ET: Filling a critical data gap in water management for the western United States," *JAWRA*, vol. 58, pp. 971–994, 2022. doi: 10.1111/1752-1688.12956.

- [16] M. Cheng et al., "A UCL deep learning framework combining remote sensing with UNet-ConvL STM for agricultural water demand forecasting," *Sci. Rep.*, vol. 14, 2024. doi: 10.1038/s41598-024-76915-8.
- [17] Rastogi et al., "Advancing water conservation techniques in agriculture for sustainable resource management: A review," *J. Geo. Env. Earth Sci. Int.*, vol. 28, no. 3, pp. 41–53, 2024.
- [18] M. K. Ejaz et al., "The use of soil conditioners to ensure a sustainable wheat yield under water deficit conditions by enhancing the physiological and antioxidant potentials," *Land*, vol. 11, p. 368, 2022. doi: 10.3390/land11030368.
- [19] T. Borch et al., "Advancing sustainable water use across the agricultural life cycle in the USA," *Nat. Water*, 2025. doi: 10.1038/s44221-025-00391-5.
- [20] Y. Hailelassie et al., "Water-smart crop farming for smallholder farmers in sub-Saharan Africa," *Front. Sustain. Food Syst.*, vol. 7, p. 1110179, 2023. doi: 10.3389/fsufs.2023.1110179.
- [21] B. R. Scanlon et al., "Global water resources and the role of groundwater in a resilient water future," *Nat. Rev. Earth Environ.*, vol. 4, pp. 87–101, 2023. doi: 10.1038/s43017-022-00378-6.
- [22] Q. Xu et al., "Evaluating the effect of deficit irrigation on yield and water use efficiency of drip irrigation cotton under film in Xinjiang," *Plants*, vol. 13, no. 5, p. 640, 2024. doi: 10.3390/plants13050640.
- [23] S. Hassan et al., "Agricultural and technology-based strategies to improve water-use efficiency in arid and semiarid areas," *Water*, vol. 16, no. 13, p. 1842, 2024. doi: 10.3390/w16131842.
- [24] A. Sinwar et al., "A review of precision irrigation water-saving technology under changing climate for enhancing water use efficiency, crop yield, and environmental footprints," *Agriculture*, vol. 14, no. 7, p. 1141, 2024. doi: 10.3390/agriculture14071141.
- [25] M. A. Hassan et al., "Precision agriculture and water conservation strategies for sustainable crop production in arid regions," *Plants*, vol. 13, no. 22, p. 3184, 2024. doi: 10.3390/plants13223184.
- [26] H. Pahl-Wostl et al., "Optimizing water-efficient agriculture: Evaluating the sustainability of soil management and irrigation synergies using fuzzy extent analysis," *Sci. Rep.*, 2025. doi: 10.1038/s41598-025-15426-6.
- [27] Z. Gu et al., "Sustainable irrigation technologies: A water-energy-food (WEF) nexus perspective towards achieving more crop per drop per joule per hectare," *Environ. Res. Lett.*, vol. 17, 2022. doi: 10.1088/1748-9326/ac6de5.
- [28] N. Naderi et al., "Sustainable water management in wheat farming: Insights from diverse water environments," *Agric. Water Manag.*, vol. 301, p. 108975, 2024. doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2024.108975.

- [29] A. Mandal et al., "Impact of agricultural management practices on soil carbon sequestration and its monitoring through simulation models and remote sensing techniques: A review," *Crit. Rev. Environ. Sci. Technol.*, vol. 52, pp. 1–49, 2022. doi: 10.1080/10643389.2020.1811989.
- [30] W. Li et al., "A UAV-aided prediction system of soil moisture content relying on thermal infrared remote sensing," *Int. J. Environ. Sci. Technol.*, vol. 19, pp. 9587–9600, 2022. doi: 10.1007/s13762-021-03516-z.

Climate-Driven Wheat Yield Forecasting: A Synergy of Ceres-Wheat and NDVI– Temperature Dynamics

Gagandeep Kaur, R.K. Pal*, P.K. Kingra and Harleen Kaur

Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

*Corresponding author: rkpal1985@pau.edu

Abstract - The study was conducted in Bathinda district, located in the south-western part of Punjab (30.58°N latitude, 74.18°E longitude, and 211 m above mean sea level). The research focuses on climate-driven wheat yield forecasting by integrating the CERES-Wheat simulation model with satellite-derived NDVI–temperature dynamics. Future wheat yields were projected for the years 2030, 2040, and 2050, with estimated yields of 4233, 4234, and 4208 kg ha⁻¹, respectively, under changing climatic conditions using the CERES-Wheat model. The model was calibrated and validated using historical weather data from 1982 to 2023. The genetic coefficients applied in the study were previously fine-tuned by Sarabjit (2018) for the wheat variety PBW-725. NDVI data were derived from MODIS (Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer) satellite imagery. Additionally, the relationship between NDVI and mean temperature during the wheat and cotton growing seasons was examined. For wheat, regression analysis showed a clear negative relationship ($y = -0.0163x + 0.6582$), indicating that NDVI decreases by approximately 0.016 units with every 1°C rise in temperature. The coefficient of determination ($R^2 = 0.49$) suggests that nearly 49% of the variation in vegetation greenness is explained by temperature fluctuations, reflecting a moderate yet significant climatic influence on crop condition. In contrast, cotton exhibited a very weak relationship ($y = -0.0025x + 0.4285$; $R^2 = 0.0034$), implying that temperature alone has minimal impact on NDVI variability during its growth period. Overall, the findings highlight that wheat is more vulnerable to rising temperatures than cotton, emphasizing the need for climate-resilient crop management strategies to sustain future food security and agricultural productivity.

Keywords- Climate Change, Wheat Forecasting, CERES-Wheat, NDVI Analysis, Temperature Dynamics

I. INTRODUCTION

Global climate change is increasingly recognized as a major threat to agricultural productivity, affecting crop yields through alterations in temperature, rainfall patterns and the frequency of extreme weather events such as heat waves, floods and droughts (Wang et al, 2008). The anthropogenic activities, particularly intensive agricultural practices, have accelerated the accumulation of greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the atmosphere, driving rising global temperatures and adversely impacting agronomic outputs.

Climate change poses significant challenges to global food security, particularly for staple crops such as wheat. Variability in temperature, precipitation, and atmospheric carbon

dioxide concentrations directly influences wheat growth, phenology, and yield stability (Lobell & Field, 2007; Asseng et al., 2015).

Punjab, a key agricultural state in India, contributes disproportionately to national crop production despite occupying only 1.53% of the country's geographical area. The state produces approximately 148.65 lakh tons of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) annually, with respective productivities of 42.16 quintals ha⁻¹ (Anonymous 2023). Wheat, often referred to as the “King of Cereals,” is highly sensitive to temperature fluctuations during both vegetative and grain-filling stages.

Process-based crop simulation models such as CERES-Wheat, embedded within the Decision Support System for Agrotechnology Transfer (DSSAT), are widely used to simulate wheat responses to climate variability, soil conditions, and management practices (Jones et al., 2003; Hoogenboom et al., 2019). Within DSSAT, the CERES-Wheat model enable detailed forecasting of cultivar performance under diverse climatic conditions, integrating soil, weather and management data to generate precise yield predictions (Mubeen et al., 2020) CERES-Wheat model is used to study plant density (Zhang, 2019) and N fertigation on wheat yield (Zhuanyun et al., 2021). It predicts biomass and actual evapotranspiration (Eta) and grain output well (Ahmed et al., 2016). To forecast crop growth, development, yield, and water absorption, crop models are created using soil, weather, crop management practices and various environmental factors like wind speed, solar radiation and water. They outperform field trials in terms of time, cost and yield variance (Darko et al., 2013).

Meanwhile, satellite-derived vegetation indices—particularly the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI)—provide dynamic information on canopy vigor, biomass accumulation, and stress conditions (Tucker, 1979; Pettorelli et al., 2005). Temperature–NDVI interactions are especially valuable for detecting heat stress effects during critical growth stages (Teal et al., 2006). Integrating CERES-Wheat simulations with NDVI–temperature dynamics enhances yield forecasting by coupling mechanistic crop growth modeling with real-time Earth observation data, thereby improving climate risk assessment and adaptive agricultural decision-making (Lobell et al., 2015; Ray et al., 2019).

Remote sensing indices, particularly the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI), offer additional insights into crop health by quantifying canopy vigor and biomass. By coupling NDVI–temperature dynamics with CERES-Wheat simulations, it is possible to enhance the accuracy of wheat yield forecasts, enabling the development of climate-resilient management strategies. Sruthi and Aslam (2015) analyzed NDVI and LST from Raichur using MODIS data and found a negative correlation of –0.635 in 2002 and –0.586 in 2012, indicating agricultural drought.

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study area

The study region is Bathinda district, situated in the south-western part of Punjab at approximately 30.58°N latitude and 74.18°E longitude, with an average elevation of about 211 meters above mean sea level. The district is positioned far from the Shivalik Hills, which lie in the northern part of the state, resulting in predominantly flat plains that form part of the larger

Indo-Gangetic alluvial system. This geographical setting significantly influences the district's climate, soil characteristics and agricultural practices.

Climatically, the area is characterized by a semi-arid to sub-tropical continental regime, marked by pronounced seasonal variations. The mean annual rainfall is around 450 mm, of which nearly four-fifths is received during the southwest monsoon season extending from early July to mid-September. The monsoon rains are often intense but short in duration, contributing substantially to groundwater recharge and kharif crop cultivation. The remaining rainfall occurs mainly during the winter months, typically associated with western disturbances that bring light to moderate showers.

The district experiences extreme temperature fluctuations throughout the year. During the peak summer months of May and June, daytime temperatures frequently rise above 47°C and hot, desiccating winds locally known as “loo” are common. These conditions are often accompanied by dust storms, which can reduce visibility and affect both agriculture and daily life. Conversely, winters are cold and relatively dry. In December and January, night-time temperatures can drop close to the freezing point, occasionally reaching around 0°C. Such sharp thermal contrasts between summer and winter highlight the continental nature of the climate and play a crucial role in shaping cropping patterns, irrigation demands and overall environmental conditions in the region.

Data collection

A long-term meteorological dataset was compiled for this study, including key climatic variables such as minimum temperature (Tmin), maximum temperature (Tmax), rainfall and solar radiation. The data were obtained from the Agrometeorological Observatory at the Regional Research Station of Punjab Agricultural University in Bathinda district. The dataset spans from 1982 to 2023, providing over four decades of reliable weather records to support trend analysis and climate-based assessments.

The study utilized recorded yield data for wheat, obtained from the Statistical Abstract of Punjab (indiastat.com), with a specific focus on the Bathinda region. The dataset spans the period from 1982 to 2023 and serves as a reliable source of historical agricultural statistics. In addition, projected weather data for 2023–2050 were compiled to support future wheat yield simulations and climate impact assessments.

Crop model description and evaluation

The study utilized the CERES-wheat and CROPGRO-cotton models integrated within the Decision Support System for Agrotechnology Transfer (DSSAT). CERES-wheat and CROPGRO-cotton models are process-based crop simulation models that represents growth, development, and yield formation as functions of weather conditions, soil characteristics, crop management practices, and genetic parameters. The model operates on a daily time step and simulates key processes including phenological development, biomass accumulation, and grain yield. Temperature, solar radiation, and soil moisture availability serve as the primary driving variables influencing crop growth and productivity.

Model performance was assessed by comparing simulated wheat and cotton yields with observed yields over the period 1982-2023. The genetic coefficients employed in this study

were previously fine-tuned by Sarabjit (2018) for the wheat variety PBW-725 and Dhir et al., (2021) for the *Bt*-cotton hybrid RCH-773.

Statistical Analysis

Model performance indicators, including R^2 , RMSE, and the d-statistic, were determined using established statistical methodologies. Percentage variations in yield under the various sensitivity scenarios were quantified relative to the baseline simulation.

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Assessment and statistical evaluation of DSSAT in examining the yield of wheat

The comparison between observed and simulated wheat yields for the selected sowing date provides valuable insights into the performance of the simulation model. The mean observed yield for this sowing date was 2692 kg/ha, serving as a reference point to evaluate the accuracy of the simulations. To assess model performance, key statistical parameters—including mean and standard deviation of both observed and simulated yields, coefficient of determination (R^2), Root Mean Square Error (RMSE), and d-statistic—were calculated (Table 2).

The R^2 value of 0.84 indicates a moderate to strong linear relationship between observed and simulated yields, reflecting a good level of agreement between the two datasets. RMSE values quantify the average deviation between simulated and observed yields, providing a measure of prediction error. The d-statistic of 0.76 further highlights the model's efficiency in yield prediction, with higher values representing a closer match between simulated and actual yields. Overall, the model effectively captures the observed mean yield of 3129 kg/ha, demonstrating its reliability and robustness in predicting wheat yields under the given sowing conditions.

Bisht et al (2024) used Crop Environment Resource Synthesis (CERES)-Wheat model to study the impacts of climate variability on phenology and yield of wheat. The CERES-Wheat model was utilized by Zheng et al (2020) to model how climate change would affect winter wheat productivity and phenology in northwest China.

Assessment and statistical evaluation of DSSAT in examining the yield of cotton

Statistical comparison between observed and simulated cotton yield using the DSSAT model for the period 1982–2023, based on 41 years of data. The mean observed yield was 985 kg/ha, while the mean simulated yield was 1067 kg/ha. This indicates that the model slightly overestimated cotton yield by 82 kg/ha, which corresponds to approximately 8% higher than the observed average. Although there is some overestimation, the difference is relatively small, suggesting that the model is reasonably close in predicting the overall yield magnitude (Table 2).

The coefficient of determination (R^2) is 0.65, meaning that 65% of the variation in observed yield is explained by the simulated yield. This reflects a moderate to strong relationship between observed and simulated values, indicating that the model captures much of the interannual variability in cotton yield. While not perfect, this level of R^2 is generally considered acceptable in crop simulation modeling studies, particularly over long-term

datasets.

The Root Mean Square Error (RMSE) is 229.4 kg/ha, which represents the average deviation between simulated and observed yields. When expressed relative to the mean observed yield, this corresponds to about 23%, indicating moderate prediction error. Although some discrepancies exist between observed and simulated values, the magnitude of error remains within an acceptable range for long-term crop modeling applications.

The d-statistic (Willmott's index of agreement) is 0.87, which indicates strong agreement between observed and simulated yields. Since the d-statistic ranges from 0 to 1, with values closer to 1 indicating better agreement, a value of 0.87 suggests that the DSSAT model performs well in reproducing the pattern and magnitude of cotton yield over the study period.

Overall, the statistical indicators demonstrate that the DSSAT model performs satisfactorily in simulating cotton yield from 1982 to 2023. Although there is a slight tendency to overestimate yield, the model shows good agreement with observed data and reasonably captures yield variability across years.

Table 2: Statistic between observed and simulated yield using DSSAT (Mean of 1982 to 2023)

Mean (kg/ha)	Observed	Mean (kg/ha)	Simulated	R ²	RMSE	d-Stat	Total Obs.
Wheat							
2692		3129		0.84	481.1	0.76	41
Cotton							
985		1067		0.65	229.4	0.87	41

Prediction of future wheat yields through CERES-Wheat model for 2030, 2040 and 2050

The simulation results for wheat indicated consistently high yields across future years (Table 3). The projected yields are 4233 kg/ha for 2029–30, 4234 kg/ha for 2039–40 and 4208 kg/ha for 2049–50. The results show minimal variation over time, suggesting that this sowing date is likely to sustain stable and productive wheat growth under projected climatic conditions. These findings highlight the reliability of the model in predicting future yields and support the suitability of the 7th November sowing date as an optimal management practice for wheat cultivation.

The slight decline in yield by 2049–50 may reflect the influence of projected climatic variability, such as increasing temperatures or changes in precipitation patterns. Overall, the stable yield trend demonstrates the robustness of the simulation model in capturing long-term yield dynamics. These results can guide farmers and policymakers in planning future wheat cultivation strategies under changing climate scenarios.

Prediction of future cotton yields through CERES-Wheat model for 2030, 2040 and 2050

Table 3 presents the projected cotton yields simulated for the years 2030, 2040, and 2050 using the CERES model. The results indicate noticeable variation in yield across the projected time periods.

In 2030, the simulated cotton yield is 1768 kg/ha, which is substantially higher than the historical mean yield reported earlier. This suggests a potential short-term increase in productivity, possibly due to favorable projected climatic conditions, elevated CO₂ fertilization effects, or assumed management practices in the simulation. The relatively high yield indicates that cotton production could initially benefit under future scenarios.

However, by 2040, the simulated yield declines to 1263 kg/ha. This represents a significant reduction of about 505 kg/ha compared to 2030. The decline suggests that changing environmental conditions, such as rising temperatures, altered rainfall patterns, or increased climate variability, may begin to negatively influence cotton productivity. Although the yield in 2040 remains higher than the historical observed mean (985 kg/ha), the downward trend is evident.

The projected yield further decreases to 970 kg/ha by 2050. This value is not only much lower than the 2030 projection but is also slightly below the historical observed mean yield. The reduction from 2040 to 2050 (293 kg/ha) indicates a continuing negative trend. This suggests that long-term climate stressors may increasingly limit cotton growth and productivity if no adaptation strategies are implemented.

Overall, the projections show an initial increase in cotton yield in the near future (2030), followed by a gradual and significant decline by mid-century (2050). This trend highlights the potential long-term vulnerability of cotton production under future climate scenarios and underscores the importance of developing adaptation measures.

Table 3: Simulated yields for the future

Years	Wheat Simulated Yield (Kg/ha)	Cotton Simulated Yield (Kg/ha)
2029-30	4233	1768
2039-40	4234	1263
2049-50	4208	970

Temperature–NDVI Relationship in Cotton

The relationship between mean temperature and NDVI for cotton was examined using a scatter plot, where NDVI values were plotted against corresponding temperature observations. The analysis showed that NDVI values increased as temperature rose from approximately 22°C to around 30°C, indicating improved crop vigor under moderate thermal

conditions. The peak NDVI values (about 0.55–0.60) were observed near 30°C, suggesting this range may be close to optimal for cotton growth.

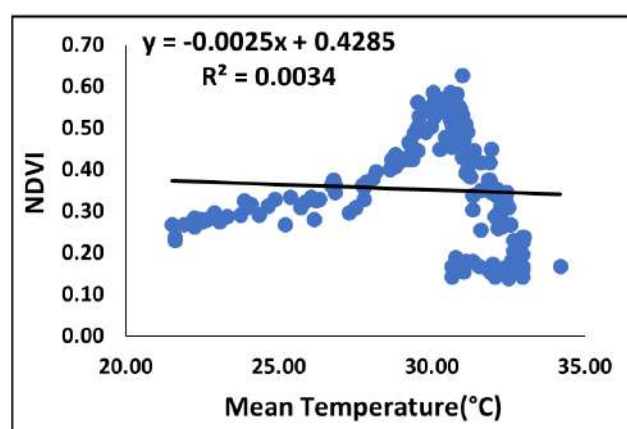


Fig 2. Relationship between NDVI and mean temperature during cotton growing period

Beyond 31–32°C, NDVI declined noticeably, indicating possible heat stress and reduced photosynthetic efficiency at higher temperatures. The fitted linear regression equation ($y = -0.0025x + 0.4285$) showed a very weak negative slope with an extremely low R^2 value (0.0034), demonstrating that mean temperature explains only a negligible portion of NDVI variability. The scattered distribution further indicates a non-linear response of cotton to temperature. Overall, moderate temperatures favour growth, whereas higher temperatures adversely affect crop performance and other environmental factors likely have a stronger influence on NDVI than temperature alone (Fig 2). Roznik et al (2022) explored the impact of higher-resolution satellite imagery on county-level crop yield estimation accuracy, especially when combined with a detailed cropland mask.

Temperature–NDVI Relationship in Wheat

The relationship between mean temperature and NDVI for wheat was evaluated to determine how variations in thermal conditions influence crop growth and vegetation health.

The results indicate that NDVI values were higher (approximately 0.5 to 0.6) at lower temperatures ranging from 12°C to 16°C, suggesting that wheat growth is more favourable under cooler thermal conditions.

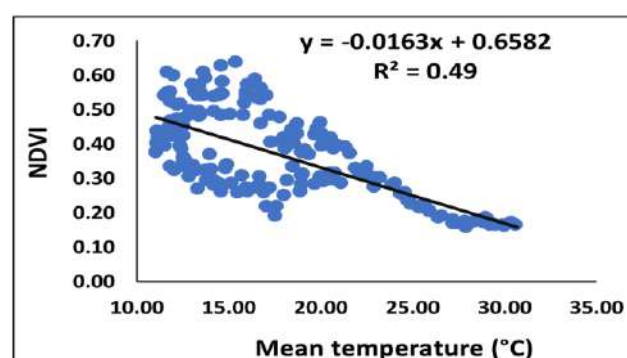


Fig 3. Relationship between NDVI and mean temperature during wheat growing period

As mean temperature increased beyond 16°C, NDVI values declined steadily, indicating that elevated temperatures adversely affect crop vigour. At temperatures near 30°C, NDVI decreased to approximately 0.15–0.20, reflecting reduced vegetation health likely due to heat stress.

The fitted regression equation ($y = -0.0163x + 0.6582$) showed a clear negative slope with a coefficient of determination ($R^2 = 0.49$), indicating that nearly half of the variation in NDVI is explained by temperature. Overall, the findings demonstrate a strong negative relationship between temperature and wheat growth, highlighting the crop's sensitivity to rising temperatures (Fig 3). Mirasi et al (2021) formulated NDVI-yield relationships for wheat using NDVI-based models and field measurements and Landsat 8 OLI data collected over two growing seasons. Li and Lei (2022) analyzed climate change effects on the North China Plain's dual cropping system using NDVI and meteorological data (1982–2015). They found winter wheat was largely resilient, while summer maize was significantly impacted only by extreme wet events.

IV. CONCLUSION

The present study demonstrated the effectiveness of integrating the CERES-Wheat and CERES-Wheat CROPGRO-Cotton crop simulation model with satellite-derived NDVI–temperature dynamics for climate-driven yield forecasting in Bathinda district of Punjab. The projected wheat and cotton yields for 2030, 2040, and 2050 indicate relatively stable but slightly declining productivity under changing climatic conditions, suggesting that future temperature increases may exert measurable stress on wheat production systems. The regression analysis between NDVI and mean temperature during the wheat growing season revealed a moderate and significant negative relationship, indicating that rising temperatures substantially reduce vegetation greenness and crop vigor. Nearly half of the variation in NDVI was explained by temperature fluctuations, confirming wheat's sensitivity to thermal stress. In contrast, cotton exhibited a negligible relationship between NDVI and temperature, suggesting comparatively greater tolerance or the influence of other environmental and management factors during its growth period.

Overall, the integration of crop simulation modeling with remote sensing proved to be a robust approach for assessing climate impacts on crop productivity. The findings underscore the vulnerability of wheat and cotton to rising temperatures and highlight the urgent need for climate-resilient strategies, including heat-tolerant cultivars, optimized sowing windows, and improved agronomic practices. Such adaptive measures will be critical to sustaining wheat productivity and ensuring long-term food security in semi-arid regions under future climate change scenarios.

REFERENCES

- [1] Ahmed M, Akram M N, Asim M, Aslam M, Hassan F U, Higgins S and Hoogenboom G (2016) Calibration and validation of APSIM-wheat and CERES-wheat for spring wheat under rainfed conditions. *Comput Electron Agric* **123**:384-401.
- [2] Anonymous (2023) Package of Practices for Rabi Crops. Punjab Agriculture University, Ludhiana, India.

- [3] Asseng, S., Ewert, F., Martre, P., Rötter, R. P., Lobell, D. B., Cammarano, D., ... Zhu, Y. (2015). Rising temperatures reduce global wheat production. *Nature Climate Change*, 5(2), 143–147.
- [4] Bisht H, Shaloo Kumar B, Rajput J, Singh D K, Vishnoi L, Singh R N, Tamta M and Gautam S (2024) Impacts of climate change on phenology, yield, and water productivity of wheat in a semi-arid region of India using the CERES-Wheat model. *J Water Clim Chang* pp. 5089-5106.
- [5] Darko O P, Yeboah S, Addy S N T, Amponsah S and Danquah E O (2013) Crop modelling: a tool for agricultural research – a review. *J Agric Res Dev* 2(1):1-6.
- [6] Dhir A, Pal RK, Kingra PK, Mishra SK and Sandhu SS(2021) Cotton phenology and production response to sowing time, row orientation and plant spacing using CROPGRO-cotton model. *Mausam* 72(3):627-34.
- [7] Hoogenboom, G., Porter, C. H., Shelia, V., Boote, K. J., Singh, U., White, J. W., ... Jones, J. W. (2019). Decision Support System for Agrotechnology Transfer (DSSAT) version 4.7. *Crop Modeling and Decision Support*.
- [8] Jones, J. W., Hoogenboom, G., Porter, C. H., Boote, K. J., Batchelor, W. D., Hunt, L. A., ... Ritchie, J. T. (2003). The DSSAT cropping system model. *European Journal of Agronomy*, 18(3–4), 235–265.
- [9] Li J and Lei H (2022) Impacts of climate change on winter wheat and summer maize dual cropping system in the North China Plain. *Environ Res Commun* 4(7):075014.
- [10] Lobell, D. B. and Field, C. B. (2007). Global scale climate–crop yield relationships and the impacts of recent warming. *Environmental Research Letters*, 2(1), 014002.
- [11] Lobell, D. B., Thau, D., Seifert, C., Engle, E., & Little, B. (2015). A scalable satellite-based crop yield mapper. *Remote Sensing of Environment*, 164, 324–333.
- [12] Mirasi A, Mahmoudi A, Navid H, Valizadeh Kamran K and Asoodar M A (2021) Evaluation of sum NDVI values to estimate wheat grain yields using multi-temporal Landsat OLI data. *Geocarto Int* 36:1309-24.
- [13] Mubeen M, Ahmad A, Hammad H M, Awais M, Farid H U and Saleem M (2020) Evaluating the climate change impact on water use efficiency of cotton–wheat in semi-arid conditions using DSSAT model. *J Water Clim Change* 11(4):1661–1675.
- [14] Pettoirelli, N., Vik, J. O., Mysterud, A., Gaillard, J.-M., Tucker, C. J., & Stenseth, N. C. (2005). Using the satellite-derived NDVI to assess ecological responses to environmental change. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, 20(9), 503–510.
- [15] Ray, D. K., Gerber, J. S., MacDonald, G. K., & West, P. C. (2019). Climate variation explains a third of global crop yield variability. *Nature Communications*, 6, 5989.
- [16] Roznik M, Boyd M and Porth L (2022) Improving crop yield estimation by applying higher resolution satellite NDVI imagery and high-resolution cropland masks. *Remote Sens Appl Soc Environ* 25:100693.
- [17] Singh, S. (2018). Comparative testing of CERES-Wheat and InfoCrop-wheat models to predict and optimize wheat yields in Punjab (Master's thesis, Punjab Agricultural University).
- [18] Sruthi S and Aslam M (2015) Agricultural drought analysis using the NDVI and land surface temperature data; a case study of Raichur District. *Aquat Procedia* 4:1258-64.

- [19] Teal, R. K., Tubana, B., Girma, K., Freeman, K. W., Arnall, D. B., Walsh, O., & Raun, W. R. (2006). In-season prediction of corn grain yield using NDVI. *Agronomy Journal*, 98(6), 1488–1494.
- [20] Tucker, C. J. (1979). Red and photographic infrared linear combinations for monitoring vegetation. *Remote Sensing of Environment*, 8(2), 127–150.
- [21] Wang H L, Gan Y T, Wang R Y, Niu J Y, Zhao H, Yang Q G and Li G C (2008) Phenological trends in winter wheat and spring cotton in response to climate changes in northwest China. *Agric For Meteorol* **148**(8-9):1242-51.
- [22] Zhang D (2019) DSSAT-CERES-wheat model to optimize plant density and nitrogen best management practices. *Nutr Cycl Agro Ecosyst* **114**:19-32.
- [23] Zheng Z, Cai H, Wang Z and Wang X (2020) Simulation of climate change impacts on phenology and production of winter wheat in Northwestern China using CERES wheat model. *Atm* **11**:681.
- [24] Zhuanyun S, Muhammad Z, Shuang L, Junming L, Yueping L, Yang G and Aiwang D (2021) Optimizing nitrogen application for drip-irrigated winter wheat using the DSSAT CERES-wheat model. *Agric Water Manage* **244**:106592.

Role of Transporter Proteins in Plants Under Abiotic Stress

Ramandeep Singh^{*1}, Manisha Chaudhary^{*2}

**School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, India, 151101*

¹ brarraman8191@gmail.com

² chmanisham2@gmail.com

ABSTRACT- Transporter proteins play a vital role to reduce the effects of abiotic stress on plants. Abiotic stresses like extreme temperatures (cold, heat, and frost), drought (water stress), waterlogging, salinity, and mineral toxicity. To deal with these types of stresses, transporter proteins such as Aquaporin, Ion transporter proteins, LEA proteins, Osmolytes (osmotic regulatory proteins), anti-freezing protein, proline, kinase, betaine, ATPase, etc. which helps the plants to keep functioning properly even under the stress conditions by providing the required compounds which are necessary for the growth, development as well as better yield under limiting conditions. Among transporter proteins, antioxidant enzymes play important roles during abiotic stress. Thus, the proper regulation of morphological, physiological, and biochemical mechanisms are maintained in plants by transporter proteins.

Keywords: Agriculture, Abiotic, Crop plants, Stress, Transporter Proteins.

ABBREVIATIONS:

1. **ABA:** *Abscisic acid*
2. **APX:** *Ascorbate peroxidase*
3. **ATP:** *Adenosine triphosphate*
4. **AQP:** *Aquaporins*
5. **HKT:** *High-Affinity Potassium Transporters*
6. **LEA:** *Late embryogenesis abundant*
7. **MAPK:** *Mutant-Activated Protein Kinase*
8. **ROS:** *Reactive oxygen species*

I INTRODUCTION

As plants generally grow under different environmental conditions that are often unfavorable or stressful for growth and development [1]. Every factor of the environment affect the plants in various ways and to deal with these different factors, the various mechanisms of plants like physiological, biochemical, and morphological required to be altered, and abiotic stress is one of these factors which has an adverse effect on the plant and transporter proteins change the mechanisms of the plant positively that plant survives under the abiotic stress condition [2]. Various functions like the uptake of nutrients and water, translocation of various compounds inside the plant are hampered by extreme stress conditions [3] and transporter proteins make physiological changes that combat the adverse effect and plant grows normally giving good

yield which is necessary to maintain the world food security [4]. Transporter proteins like LEA proteins, oxidative proteins, ion transporters, protein kinases, ATPase's, aquaporin's, etc. which protects the plant and its function by the transportation of various elements like water, oxygen, carbon dioxide, nutrients, sugars, and many other molecules [5]. Even abiotic stress tolerance is enhanced by these transporter proteins [6].

II TRANSPORTER PROTEIN

A transporter protein is a protein that serves the function of moving various materials inside the plant [7]. The transport can be within a cell or membranes and even from one part of the plant to another part.

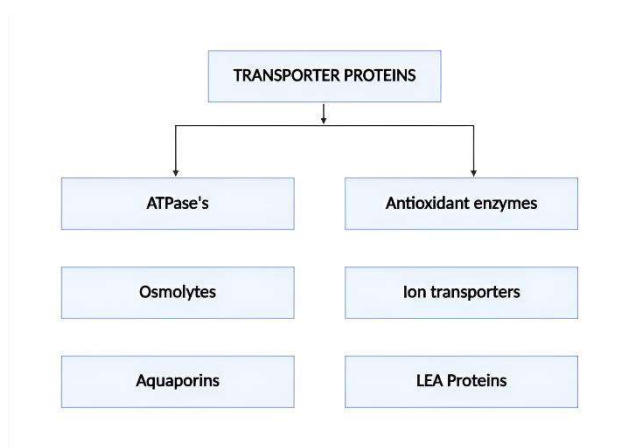


Fig. 1 Types of transporter proteins

III THE ROLE OF TRANSPORTER PROTEIN

The main role of transporter protein is the transport of sugars such as glucose; ions such as Na⁺, Cl⁻ and K⁺; proteins; water; CO₂; and messenger molecules [8]. They perform some other function such as catalysts, regulators, and inhibitors also [9]. The various transporter proteins are described below along with their functioning:

A. LEA PROTEIN

LEA proteins are adaptive (thermo-stable) and hydrophilic in nature which act under protein desiccation, salt stress, and cold stress as well. Also called **molecular shields** as they protect against stress during temperature stress as they can tolerate extreme temperatures and work efficiently [10]. Among the LEA protein, **Dehydrins** are of great importance in stressed plants [11]. The interaction of Dehydrin – protein is regulated by the amphipathic (hydrophilic and hydrophobic) helices structure by which dehydrins attached to the dehydrated surfaces and protect the cells from further desiccation or water deficit [12]. In drought or salt stress, they help in water retention in desiccated cells. Due to dehydration, the intercellular ion concentration increases, affecting the structure and functioning of macromolecules [13]. By inducing preferential hydration, they may stabilize membranes or promote water exchange at the different sites with other macromolecules. LEA proteins are mainly the protector of

mitochondrial membranes against dehydration damage [14]. Other proteins are protected by LEA proteins. During stress conditions, they accumulate and inactivate in the plants to carry on the function of another protein. Group 2 LEA prevents aggregation of protein during heat stress [15]. During a dry spell, to safeguard the cell membrane, LEA proteins accumulate with sugars to create a network of H-bonds. In drought-conditions, these polypeptides fold to form amphipathic α helices to protect membranous tissues [16].

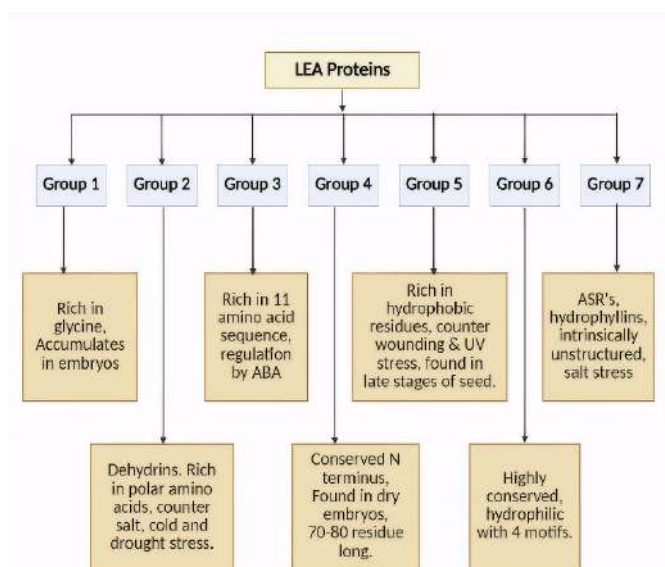


Fig. 2 Various types of LEA proteins and functions performed by them

B. ANTIOXIDANT ENZYMES

Among plant proteins, free radicals are removed by antioxidant enzymes which allow normal plant growth during adverse environment. To escape oxidative stress, antioxidants regulate the ROS in plants to maintain cellular homeostasis [17]. APX plays a vital role in scavenging systems. APX act as electron donor in formation of water from Hydrogen peroxide [18]. APX regulation is different under different conditions [19]. Under stress conditions, APX interrupts the excess oxidation in every organelle [20]. Another major function performed by it is regulation of the ROS systems along with other antioxidative enzymes [21]. APX also acts as an isoenzyme.

C. AQUAPORINS

Aquaporins (AQP) are channel proteins that play important role in plant water relations. They are present in all organs; seeds, leaves, flowers, stems, leaves, and roots as well [22]. The key role of these proteins is to transport water and other molecules across cellular membranes. Under stress conditions, they enable in and out the movement of water from cells more efficiently [23]. AQPs are also involved in other mechanisms like phosphorylation, ROS, tetramerization, pH, phytohormones, and other chemical agents in response to environmental stress [24]. They adjust the water flow in case of critical water flow either by changing the flow

rate of water or by altering AQP abundance. The hydraulic conductivity of plants can be partially controlled by them to deal with stress conditions [25]. Apart from this, they regulate CO₂ transport to a certain level to maintain the proper functioning of the process of photosynthesis by maintaining an adequate amount of CO₂ in the leaves of the plant [26]. In plants, they also act as isomers and are involved in various localizations in cell and physiological substrates apart from the transport of water [27]. Metalloids like boric or silicic acid are transported by aquaporins to combat the effect of stress in plants. Aquaporins are regulated by various environmental and hormonal stimuli [28]. Seed germination or lateral root emergence is affected by aquaporins. Nutrient transport in roots and leaves is also carried out by aquaporins to a certain extent under stress conditions [12]. Even stress resistance to some extent is induced by aquaporins. Some major intrinsic proteins are also involved in the transfer of O₂, lactic acid, CO₂, urea, ammonia, glycerol, boron, silicon, antimonite, arsenite, and hydrogen peroxide [29]. The functioning of aquaporins is also affected by other metabolic processes of stressed plants. Protein kinase is involved in stimulation of AQPs which further controls the H₂O channel pores or phosphorylation as well as dephosphorylation of AQPs [30].

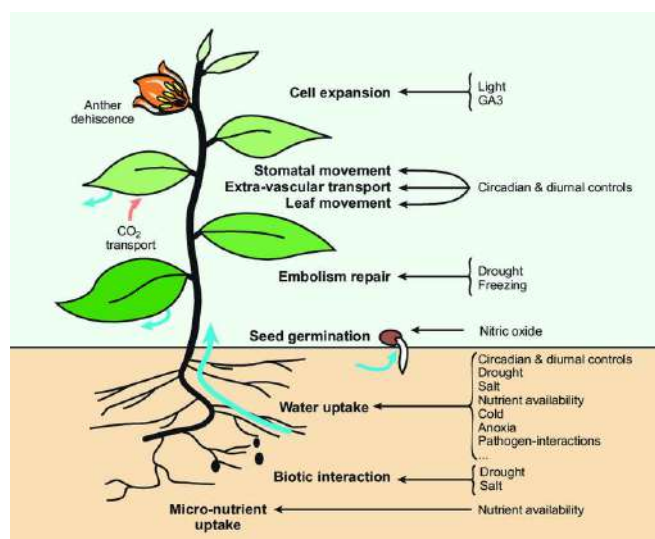


Figure 2: Various functions performed by aquaporins

Source: <https://images.app.goo.gl/mgydyaiwtXDE58HE6>

D. OSMOLYTES

The inactive solutes are known as osmolytes as they perform an important function in combating osmotic stress caused by stress [31]. Their accumulation and synthesis are the earliest response of plants for controlling osmotic and oxidative stress osmolytes. Along with that osmolytes accumulation also results in various signaling pathways, which is important for plants under extreme environments [32]. Increased level of osmolytes protects, minimizes, and even rescues plants from adverse effects of stress due to oxidative damage, growth diminution, and loss of photosynthesis efficiency. Due to water stress, abnormal cellular conditions arise which are countered by these osmoprotectants [33]. Osmotic adjustment slowly develops due

to dehydration. They also regulate the stomatal pores to stop water diffusion. The water loss is much higher than CO₂ uptake. Stomatal apertures are closed at night because there is no need for CO₂ due to no photosynthesis [34]. So, stomatal pores are kept small to avoid any unnecessary loss of water. The developmental processes are detrimental due to water deficiency in the wheat plants which ultimately effects the plant growth, in that case, osmolytes protect the cellular milieu from dehydration [31]. Osmolytes directly stabilizes other proteins and membrane structures. In addition to this, they act as scroungers of ROS. Proline on breakdown helps in repairing stress damages [35]. Trehalose has positive effects on gas exchange parameters as it is involved in stomatal opening. In stressed plants, production of biomass is enhanced by Trehalose [36]. Glycine-Betaine protects the membrane responsible for efficiency of photosynthesis. The role of Glycine-Betaine in stressed plants is to regulate enzymes. It also protects the macro-components of plant cells and also synthesis some protective solutes under drought stress [37]. Proline also affects potassium, calcium, and, nitrogen ions content of roots. Potassium efflux is effected by these proteins [38]. In roots, the inward transport of Na⁺ ions is enhanced by Arabidopsis into target cells whereas root to shoot transfer is reduced, so that the plants can tolerate salt stress.

E. KINASE

Protein kinase plays essential role in plant functioning during stress [39]. The functioning of other proteins and cellular processes depends on kinase [40]. It is involved in signaling, cell division, and differentiation in response to various stresses and even associated with hormones regulation [41]. It is involved in development processes of anther and embryo. Kinase with ABA acts in two ways. In positive regulated pathways resulting in stomatal closing and reduced water transpiration to maintain plant growth and in a negative way inhibited by C₂H₂ [42]. MAPK takes part in a variety of functions like cell division, innate immunity, and development.

F. ION TRANSPORTERS

To deal with salt stress, plants require homeostasis of sodium and chlorine ions uptake, without accumulation of ions to a toxic level [7]. Uptake of K⁺ by cells is strongly affected by sodium, as it interferes with membrane transporters like potassium ion channel [43]. Carrier type proteins like High-Affinity Potassium Transporters (HKTs) which mediate Na⁺ and K⁺ transport [44]. Concentration of sodium ion is reduced in roots but increased in leaves, due to sodium ion selective channels, as net uptake of sodium ions is effected in stressed plants [45]. The physiology and metabolism of the plant are affected by high NaCl concentrations at different levels (nutrient imbalance, ion toxicity, oxidative stress, and water deficit). AtHKT1 regulates the distribution of sodium ion in shoots and roots [46]. To avoid the accumulation of sodium in shoots, it transfers the sodium ions via a downward stream of phloem. But it is only the 10 percent of Na⁺ ions that are transferred through xylem by transpiration stream from roots to leaves [47]. Na⁺ sequestration in vacuoles is also regulated by AtHKT1. In some cases, when K⁺ concentration is too low, functions of K⁺ are partially replaced by Na⁺ [48]. For proper functioning, plants need to modify their metabolism by reestablishing cellular ion homeostasis [49]. The flux across tonoplast and plasma membranes occur via transport

proteins. There are two components of the thermodynamic gradient on which the ion flux depends: the chemical and electrical gradient. The ratio of Na^+/K^+ needs to be maintained for the stress tolerance mechanism [50]. The activity of Na^+/H^+ antiporter such as SOS1 is sustained by a stable membrane.

G. ATPase

H^+ ATPase carry out the transport among plasma membrane. The electrochemical proton gradients are generated with the chemical energy of ATP when ATPase is connected with plasma membrane extrude protons from the cells of plants [51]. This gradient is very important for active transport in plants under stressed conditions. ATPase is important for cell growth, the opening of stomata, intracellular pH regulation, and nutrient uptake [52]. ATPase also takes part in resistance mechanisms that are activated by other transporter proteins and hormones under abnormal growth conditions in plants [34]. The repair processes are enhanced by PM H^+ ATPase activity in the case of heavy metal stressed plants [53]. The ATPase regulates the intracellular pH. The plasma membrane proton pump is activated by acidification of the cytosol. It even increases the phosphorylation that is very important for plant metabolism under stress conditions [54]. ATPase causes hyperpolarization of the plasma membrane and subsequently opening the K^+ channels. The opened K^+ channels lead to an increase in turgor and swelling of cells [55]. Accumulation of K^+ in guard cells mediates the stomatal opening which is necessary for transpiration as well as photosynthesis in plants [56]. When ATP hydrolysis and ATPase couples, a proton is transported out of the cell and an electrical gradient is established, and it is dissipated by 2° transporters using proton [57]. Uptake of nutrients by roots and filling of vascular bundles are also controlled by ATPase which is crucial for stressed plants. The electrical gradient created by ATPase is used by other protein as well as non-protein transporters for releasing toxic substances out of cell and transport for assimilates of various nutrients [58].

IV CONCLUSION

Transporter proteins have crucial role under stress conditions which help the plant to modify its metabolic, physiological, and biochemical processes. They actively participate in signaling responses, opening of various transport channels, and controlling other important plant processes as well. Under stress conditions, plants need a better transport system for the various nutrients, CO_2 , water, sugar, ions (inside or outside of the cell), etc. as they are necessary for maintaining the optimum conditions inside the plant for efficient photosynthesis even under limiting conditions which is regulated and controlled by different transporter proteins. Some of the element increases or decreases in plants to a level which is toxic to the plant, like increase in ion concentration, acidification in cells, ROS, swelling of cells, reduced level of water absorption, lack of CO_2 , low nutrient uptake by plants, all these problems are correct by transporter proteins either directly or indirectly. In optimum growth, development, and yield of the plant under stress conditions is due to the vital functions performed by transporter proteins inside the plant which are ultimately helping on the safeguard of global food productivity even under extreme or unfavorable conditions.

REFERENCES

- [1] M. J. Chrispeels, N. M. Crawford, & J. I. Schroeder. Proteins for Transport of Water and Mineral Nutrients across the Membranes of Plant Cells. *Plant Cell*, 1999, 11, 661 - 675.
- [2] B. S. Saharan B. Brar, J. S. Duhan, R. Kumar, S. Marwaha, V. D. Rajput, T. Minkina. Molecular and physiological mechanisms to mitigate abiotic stress conditions in plants. *Life*. 2022 Oct 19;12(10):1634.
- [3] S. Pandey, D. Fartyal, A. Agarwal, T. Shukla, D. James, T. Kaul, Y. K. Negi, S. Arora and M. K. Reddy. Abiotic Stress Tolerance in Plants: Myriad Roles of Ascorbate Peroxidase. *Front. Plant Sci.*, 2017, 8:581. doi: 10.3389/fpls.2017.00581
- [4] S. U. Rahman, A. Qin, M. Zain, Z. Mushtaq, F. Mehmood, L. Riaz, S. Naveed, M. J. Ansari, M. Saeed, I. Ahmad, M. Shehzad. Pb uptake, accumulation, and translocation in plants: Plant physiological, biochemical, and molecular response: A review. *Heliyon*. 2024 Mar 30;10(6).
- [5] Z. Afzal, T. C. Howton, Y. Sun, M. S. Mukhtar. The roles of aquaporins in plant stress responses. *Journal of developmental biology*. 2016 Feb 4;4(1):9.
- [6] J. E. Hall, A. C. Guyton. Textbook of medical physiology. Khonsary S. A. (2017). Guyton and Hall: Textbook of Medical Physiology. *Surgical Neurology International*, 8, 275. https://doi.org/10.4103/sni.sni_327_17
- [7] F. Brini, & K. Masmoudi. Ion Transporters and Abiotic Stress Tolerance in Plants. *ISRN molecular biology*, 2012, 927436. <https://doi.org/10.5402/2012/927436>
- [8] S. Jain, S. Muneer, G. Guerriero, S. Liu, K. Vishwakarma, D. K. Chauhan, N. K. Dubey, D. K. Tripathi, S. Sharma. Tracing the role of plant proteins in the response to metal toxicity: a comprehensive review. *Plant signaling & behavior*, 2018, 13(9), e1507401. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15592324.2018.1507401>
- [9] F. L. Woodrow, P. Fuggi, A. Pontecorvo, G. Carillo. Plant Genes for Abiotic Stress [Internet]. Abiotic Stress in Plants - Mechanisms and Adaptations. InTech; 2011. <https://doi.org/10.5772/22465>
- [10] R. Bhardwaj, I. Sharma, M. K. Kanwar, R. C. Sharma, N. Handa, H. Kaur, D. Kapoor, Poonam. LEA Proteins in Salt Stress Tolerance. *Environmental Science, Biology*, 2013. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4614-6108-1_5
- [11] Y. Chen, C. Li, B. Zhang, J. Yi, Y. Yang, C. Kong, C. Lei, & M. Gong. The Role of the Late Embryogenesis-Abundant (LEA) Protein Family in Development and the Abiotic Stress Response: A Comprehensive Expression Analysis of Potato (*Solanum Tuberosum*). *Genes*, 2019, 10(2), 148. <https://doi.org/10.3390/genes10020148>
- [12] M. Wang, L. Ding, L. Gao, Y. Li, Q. Shen, S. Guo. The interactions of aquaporins and mineral nutrients in higher plants. *International journal of molecular sciences*. 2016 Jul 29;17(8):1229.
- [13] D. Laage, T. Elsaesser, J. T. Hynes. Water Dynamics in the Hydration Shells of Biomolecules. *Chemical reviews*, 2017, 117(16), 10694–10725. <https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.chemrev.6b00765>
- [14] A. Banerjee, A. Roychoudhury. Group II late embryogenesis abundant (LEA) proteins: structural and functional aspects in plant abiotic stress. *Plant Growth Regulation*. 2016 May;79(1):1-7.

- [15] G. Hatvani-Kovacs, J. Bush, E. Sharifi, J. Boland. Policy recommendations to increase urban heat stress resilience, *Urban Climate*, 2018, 25: 51-63. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.uclim.2018.05.001>.
- [16] J. Zhu. Abiotic stress signaling and responses in plants. *Cell*, 2016, 167(2); 313-324 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2016.08.029>
- [17] K. K. Nadarajah. ROS homeostasis in abiotic stress tolerance in plants. *International journal of molecular sciences*, 2020 Jul 23; 21(15): 5208.
- [18] A. Sofo, A. Scopa, M. Nuzzaci, & A. Vitti. Ascorbate Peroxidase and Catalase Activities and Their Genetic Regulation in Plants Subjected to Drought and Salinity Stresses. *International journal of molecular sciences*, 2015, 16(6), 13561–13578. <https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms160613561>
- [19] E. T. Nilsen, and D. M. Orcutt, 19970701860, English, Book, USA, 9780471035121, New York, Physiology of plants under stress. Abiotic factors., (xii + 689 pp.), John Wiley and Sons, Physiology of plants under stress. Abiotic factors., (1996)
- [20] S. Shabala, R. Munns. Salinity stress: physiological constraints and adaptive mechanisms. *Plant Stress Physiology*, 2012, 59-93, <https://doi.org/10.1079/9781845939953.0059>
- [21] M. Sharma, P. Kumar, T. Kumar. Drought stress in crop plants: Physiological aspects. *Journal of Emerging Technologies and Innovative Research*, 2019, 6(1); 1346-1366.
- [22] G. Li, V. Santoni, C. Maurel. Plant aquaporins: Roles in plant physiology. Guowei Li, Véronique Santoni, Christophe Maurel. Plant aquaporins: Roles in plant physiology. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA)*, 2014, 1840(5): 1574-1582. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagen.2013.11.004>.
- [23] A. Gautam, A. K. Pandey. Aquaporins Responses under Challenging Environmental Conditions and Abiotic Stress Tolerance in Plants. *The Botanical Review*. 2021 Dec;87(4):467-95.
- [24] P. Sharma, A. B. Jha, R. S. Dubey, M. Pessarakli. Reactive Oxygen Species, Oxidative Damage, and Antioxidative Defense Mechanism in Plants under Stressful Conditions, *Journal of Botany*, 2012, 217037, 26 pages, 2012. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2012/217037>
- [25] R. Kapilan, M. Vaziri, J. J. Zwiazek. Regulation of aquaporins in plants under stress. *Biological research*, 2018, 51(1), 4. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s40659-018-0152-0>
- [26] M. Thompson, D. Gamage, N. Hirotsu, A. Martin, S. Seneweera. Effects of Elevated Carbon Dioxide on Photosynthesis and Carbon Partitioning: A Perspective on Root Sugar Sensing and Hormonal Crosstalk. *Frontiers in physiology*, 2017, 8, 578. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fphys.2017.00578>
- [27] Y. Lee, S. Koo, S. Yeol. The physiological functions of universal proteins and their molecular mechanism to protect plants from environmental stress, 2019.
- [28] Y. H. Chi, S. S. Koo, H. T. Oh, E. S. Lee, J. H. Park, K. A. T. Phan, S. D. Wi, S. B. Bae, S. K. Paeng, H. B. Chae, C. H. Kang, M. G. Kim, W. Y. Kim, D. J. Yun, S. Y. Lee. The Physiological Functions of Universal Stress Proteins and Their Molecular Mechanism to Protect Plants From Environmental Stresses. *Frontiers in plant science*, 2019, 10, 750. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2019.00750>

- [29] N. Linka, C. Esser. Transport proteins regulate the flux of metabolites and cofactors across the membrane of plant peroxisomes. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 2012, 3. DOI=10.3389/fpls.2012.00003
- [30] E. S. McCoy, B. R. Haas, H. Sontheimer. Water permeability through aquaporin-4 is regulated by protein kinase C and becomes rate-limiting for glioma invasion. *Neuroscience*, 2010, 168(4), 971–981. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2009.09.020>
- [31] M. J. Iqbal. Role of Osmolytes and Antioxidant Enzymes for Drought Tolerance in Wheat [Internet]. *Global Wheat Production*. InTech; 2018. <https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.75926>
- [32] A. Jogawat. Osmolytes and their role in abiotic stress tolerance in plants. In *Molecular Plant Abiotic Stress* (eds A. Roychoudhury and D. Tripathi). 2019, <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119463665.ch5>
- [33] M. Singh, J. Kumar, S. Singh, V. P. Singh, S. M. Prasad. Roles of osmoprotectants in improving salinity and drought tolerance in plants: a review. *Reviews in environmental science and bio/technology*. 2015 Sep;14(3):407-26.
- [34] M. Mansour. The plasma membrane transport systems and adaptation to salinity. *Journal of Plant Physiology*, 2014, 171(18): 1787-1800. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jplph.2014.08.016>.
- [35] X. Liang, L. Zhang, S. K. Natarajan, D. F. Becker. Proline mechanisms of stress survival. *Antioxidants & redox signaling*, 2013, 19(9), 998–1011. <https://doi.org/10.1089/ars.2012.5074>
- [36] M. Nawaz, M. U. Hassan, M. U. Chattha, A. Mahmood, A. N. Shah, M. Hashem, S. Alamri, M. Batool, A. Rasheed, M. A. Thabit, H. A. Alhaithloul. Trehalose: A promising osmo-protectant against salinity stress—physiological and molecular mechanisms and future prospective. *Molecular Biology Reports*. 2022 Dec;49(12):11255-71.
- [37] P. Sharma, A. B. Jha, R. S. Dubey. Oxidative stress and antioxidative defense system in plants growing under abiotic stresses. In *Handbook of Plant and Crop Stress*, Fourth Edition 2019 Aug 6 (pp. 93-136). CRC press.
- [38] T. A. Cuin, S. Shabala. Amino acids regulate salinity-induced potassium efflux in barley root epidermis. *Planta*. 2007 Feb;225(3):753-61.
- [39] A. K. Sinha, M. Jaggi, B. Raghuram, & N. Tuteja. Mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling in plants under abiotic stress. *Plant signaling & behavior*, 2011, 6(2), 196–203. <https://doi.org/10.4161/psb.6.2.14701>
- [40] H. C. Cheng, R. Z. Qi, H. Paudel, & H. J. Zhu. Regulation and function of protein kinases and phosphatases. *Enzyme research*, 2011, 794089. <https://doi.org/10.4061/2011/794089>
- [41] Z. Zhang, M. Hu, W. Xu, Y. Wang, K. Huang, C. Zhang, J. Wen. Understanding the molecular mechanism of anther development under abiotic stresses. *Plant molecular biology*. 2021 Jan;105(1):1-0.
- [42] M. C. Rodriguez, M. Petersen, & J. Mundy. Mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling in plants. *Annual review of plant biology*, 2010, 61, 621–649. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-arplant-042809-112252>

- [43] J. M. Ward, P. Mäser, & J. I. Schroeder Plant ion channels: gene families, physiology, and functional genomics analyses. *Annual review of physiology*, 2009, 71, 59–82. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.physiol.010908.163204>
- [44] R. Serrano, & A. Rodriguez-Navarro. Ion homeostasis during salt stress in plants. *Current opinion in cell biology*, 2001, 13(4), 399–404. [https://doi.org/10.1016/s0955-0674\(00\)00227-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/s0955-0674(00)00227-1)
- [45] S. Waters, M. Gilliam, & M. Hrmova. Plant High-Affinity Potassium (HKT) Transporters Involved in Salinity Tolerance: Structural Insights to Probe Differences in Ion Selectivity. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences (IJMS)*. 2013,14. 7660-7680. [10.3390/ijms14047660](https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms14047660).
- [46] Y. Wang, M. R. Blatt, and Z. H. Chen. Ion Transport at the Plant Plasma Membrane. In eLS, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd (Ed.). 2018. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470015902.a0001307.pub3>
- [47] M. Keisham, S. Mukherjee, & S. C. Bhatla. Mechanisms of Sodium Transport in Plants- Progresses and Challenges. *International journal of molecular sciences*, 2018, 19(3), 647. <https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19030647>
- [48] X. Niu, R. A. Bressan, P. M. Hasegawa, & J. M. Pardo. Ion Homeostasis in NaCl Stress Environments. *Plant physiology*, 1995, 109(3), 735–742. <https://doi.org/10.1104/pp.109.3.735>
- [49] M. Faizan, J. Chen, F. Karabulut, R. Sharma, S. Afzal, P. Sharma, P. Alam, S. Hayat, I. Khan, S. M. Ahmed, X. Dai, H. Wan, C. Zeng, & H. Sultan. Plant hormones and membrane transporters: integrating nutrient uptake, ion homeostasis, and stress responses through hormonal cross-talk. *Frontiers in plant science*, 2026, 16, 1699212. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2025.1699212>
- [50] D. M. Almeida, M. M. Oliveira, N. J. M. Saibo. Regulation of Na⁺ and K⁺ homeostasis in plants: towards improved salt stress tolerance in crop plants. *Genetics and molecular biology*, 2017, 40(1 suppl 1), 326–345. <https://doi.org/10.1590/1678-4685-GMB-2016-0106>
- [51] M. Janicka-Russak. Plant Plasma Membrane H⁺-ATPase in Adaptation of Plants to Abiotic Stresses [Internet]. Abiotic Stress Response in Plants - Physiological, Biochemical and Genetic Perspectives. InTech; 2011. <https://doi.org/10.5772/24121>
- [52] S. Toh, N. Takata, E. Ando, Y. Toda, Y. Wang, Y. Hayashi, N. Mitsuda, S. Nagano, T. Taniguchi and T. Kinoshita. Overexpression of Plasma Membrane H⁺-ATPase in Guard Cells Enhances Light-Induced Stomatal Opening, Photosynthesis, and Plant Growth in Hybrid Aspen. *Front. Plant Sci.*, 2021, 12:766037. doi: 10.3389/fpls.2021.766037
- [53] G. P. Bienert, J. K. Schjoerring, T. P. Jahn. Membrane transport of hydrogen peroxide, *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Biomembranes*, 2006, 1758(8), Pages 994-1003, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbamem.2006.02.015>
- [54] M. Haruta, W. M. Gray, & M. R. Sussman. Regulation of the plasma membrane proton pump (H⁺)-ATPase) by phosphorylation. *Current opinion in plant biology*, 2015, 28, 68–75. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pbi.2015.09.005>
- [55] A. Michalak, A. Wdowikowska, M. Janicka. Plant Plasma Membrane Proton Pump: One Protein with Multiple Functions. *Cells*, 2022, 11(24), 4052. <https://doi.org/10.3390/cells11244052>

- [56] H. Kashtoh, & K. H. Baek. Structural and Functional Insights into the Role of Guard Cell Ion Channels in Abiotic Stress-Induced Stomatal Closure. *Plants*, 2021, 10(12), 2774. <https://doi.org/10.3390/plants10122774>
- [57] A. F. Eaton, M. Merkulova, & D. Brown. The H⁺-ATPase (V-ATPase): from proton pump to signaling complex in health and disease. *American journal of physiology. Cell physiology*, 2021, 320(3), C392–C414. <https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpcell.00442.2020>
- [58] M. Gupta, V. Dwivedi, S., Kumar, A. Patel, P. Niazi, & V. K. Yadav. Lead toxicity in plants: mechanistic insights into toxicity, physiological responses of plants and mitigation strategies. *Plant signaling & behavior*, 2024, 19(1), 2365576. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15592324.2024.2365576>

Dry matter partitioning in cotton under varying irrigation and fertigation regimes in semi-arid Punjab

Simranjeet Kaur^{1*}, S.K. Mishra², Kulvir Singh³ and R.K. Pal⁴

^{1,4}*Dept. of Climate Change and Agricultural Meteorology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana*

²*National Institute of Abiotic Stress Management, Malegaon Kh., Baramati, Pune, Maharashtra-413115, India*

³*Punjab Agricultural University, Regional Research Station, Faridkot*

*Corresponding author: simrankaur180198@gmail.com

Abstract - A field experiment was carried out at Punjab Agricultural University, Regional Research Station, Faridkot to evaluate the effect of different irrigation methods on the growth dynamics of cotton. The experiment comprised of three different irrigation methods viz., surface flood (Control 1: C₁), surface drip (Control 2: C₂) and sub surface drip treatments. Under sub-surface drip treatments, three irrigation levels (I₁: 60% Etc, I₂: 80% Etc and 100% Etc) and two fertilizer levels [(F₁: 75% RDN (112.5kg/ha); F₂: (84.3 kg/ha)] were fixed. Irrigation and fertilizer under surface flood and surface drip was provided as per the recommendations of Punjab Agricultural University. All the treatments were assigned in Randomized complete block design (RCBD). The results indicated that irrigation methods pose significant effects on the growth dynamics of cotton especially from 90 days after sowing. Among irrigation methods, drip irrigation systems outperformed surface flood irrigation in enhancing biomass production and growth rates. Under sub-surface drip irrigation, increasing water and nitrogen levels improved total dry matter accumulation, its distribution to different plant components and highest crop and relative growth rates. Overall, the sub surface drip fertigation method saves water and provide more favourable soil-plant environment, thereby maximizing growth potential and biomass productivity of cotton.

Keywords- Biomass, Cotton, Irrigation, Fertigation, Growth rate

I. INTRODUCTION

Cotton, an important commercial fibre and cash crop in the world which plays a significant role in agriculture, industries and contribute to the national income. Globally, cotton is cultivated over 77 countries (Khan et al., 2018) while, India, China and United States always remained the three top largest countries in terms of cotton production. India ranks first in terms of area and production of cotton and contribute 20% of the total global cotton production. During 2024-25, India holds largest area under cotton with 113.60 lakh hectares which is about 36% of the world area (Annual report, Ministry of textiles, 2024). Approximately 62% of India's Cotton is produced on rain-fed areas and 38% on irrigated lands. In India, majority of cotton production comes from nine states which are further classified into three diverse groups with i) Northern Zone - Punjab, Haryana and Rajasthan ii) Central Zone - Gujarat, Maharashtra

and Madhya Pradesh iii) Southern Zone - Telangana, Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka. In Punjab, cotton cultivation is majorly confined to the south-west region also known as “cotton belt” where it considered a second major crop of *Kharif* (summer) season after rice. Cotton belt comprises about 33% of Punjab’s land area and it includes Mansa, Bathinda, Faridkot, Muktsar, Fazilka and Firozpur (Sidhu et al., 2024). During 2024-25, area and production of cotton was 2.47 lakh hectares, 4.41 lakh bales with an average yield of 3.03 quintals lint per hectare respectively. (Anonymous, 2024).

Cotton simultaneously produces vegetation and reproductive branches throughout its growing season and has extensive tap root system due to which it accesses the nutrients and water from deeper layers of soil (Kaur et al., 2022). Yield of cotton is directly related to the sink structures (seed count, abscised bolls, final seed cotton yield and its fibre partitioning) which is largely affected by physio-chemical properties of soil, environmental conditions and agronomic management practices (Dusserre et al., 2022). Among all the factors influencing the above ground biomass and its partitioning into vegetative and reproductive branches in cotton, the water and nutrient levels is considered as an important factor. Water act as a translocator for nutrients into the plant. The availability of water directly affects uptake of nutrients from the soil, the rate of photosynthesis and the distribution of assimilates among different plant organs (Banik et al., 2024). On the other hand, nutrients supplied to plant serves as necessary food component for growth of crops as the adequate amount of nutrients especially nitrogen in soil promote vegetative and reproductive growth of plants. The deficiency of nitrogen lead to disrupt the formation of vegetative and reproductive organs and thereby decrease the crop growth rate, lower the harvest index and reduce the yield of crops (Fathi, 2022). While, the over dose of nitrogen promotes the vegetative growth at the expense of reproductive biomass, thereby reduce the dry matter partitioning into fruiting bodies in indeterminate crops. Hence, the optimal levels of nitrogen are necessary. Both the soil nutrients and water play a vital role in overall growth, development and yield. Understanding the interactions between soil, water, and plants is necessary to efficiently handle these resources to maintain the yield of crops. Keeping all these in view, the following study is conducted to analyze the above ground biomass and its partitioning into stem, leaves and fruiting bodies of cotton under various irrigation and fertigation regimes.

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study area

The Field experiment was conducted at Punjab Agricultural University, Regional Research Station, Faridkot (latitude 30°40’ N, longitude 74°44’ E, altitude 200 m amsl) during *kharif* season of 2020. The area falls under Agro-climatic zone-IV of the Punjab state and has semi-arid climate with average annual rainfall of 420 mm.

Cultivar and Treatment details

The cultivar used for study was RCH-773 (*Bt* cotton hybrid), which is very well suited for sowing in semi-arid region of Punjab. The treatments were assigned in randomized complete block design and includes three irrigation and two fertigation regimes in sub-surface system. The three irrigation levels were irrigation at 60% Etc, at 80% Etc and 100% Etc. Two

fertilizer levels were 100% Recommended dose of Nitrogen (RDN) i.e., 112.5 Kg/ha and 75% RDN which is 84.32 kg/ha. Additionally, two controls were there. Control 1 include the surface flood irrigation with 100% RDN and control 2 comprised of surface drip irrigation with 100% RDN. The RDN were followed as recommended by Punjab Agricultural University as per the method followed. Sub-surface drup irrigation was provided on the basis of crop evapotranspiration (Etc). Etc was computed by multiplying the crop coefficient value with reference crop evapotranspiration (ET_0). The ET_0 was computed from FAO calculator on daily basis and the crop coefficient was 0.75, 1.15 and 0.70 for May-June, July-August and September onwards (Singh et al., 2018). In the drip irrigation treatments, drippers were placed at 67.5 cm apart which was having the discharge rate of 2.2 liters per hour. The drip irrigation initiated from 30 days after sowing and afterwards it was applied at every 5 days interval. On the other hand, in flood irrigation system, first irrigation was given at 35 days after sowing and afterwards need based irrigation was applied at every 2-3 weeks interval. A water meter was installed to record amount of water delivered. The amount of irrigation water applied varied among irrigation level which was 400 mm for surface flood (C1) and 276.7 mm for surface drip (C2). Under subsurface irrigation total amount of irrigation water was 232.5, 276.7 and 320.8 mm under I_1 , I_2 and I_3 , respectively. The nitrogen fertilizer was supplied along with irrigation water in drip plots while in control 1, the nitrogen was delivered in two equal splits viz., 50% at 3 days after first post-sowing irrigation and full bloom stage. Phosphorus was skipped as it was applied to the previous sown wheat crop in the same field.

Data collection

Three plant samples from each plot were taken at 30 days interval starting from 30 days after sowing (DAS). To determine above ground biomass, plant samples were uprooted, washed and dried in sun from each plot and portion of above ground was separated into stem, leaf, buds, flowers and bolls. Thereafter, these samples were oven dried at 70 °C until the constant weight was obtained. The biomass partitioning has been done at 30, 60, 90, 120, 150 DAS and at maturity. The results of dry matter accumulation were further evaluated by calculating the crop growth rate (CGR) and relative growth rate (RGR) as (Pandey and Bhambri 2017, Gosh et al., 2018).

Crop growth rate: The crop growth rate basically helps to indicate the efficiency of land to produce the biomass of plant, expressed in $g/m^2/day$. Hunt (1989) gave the formula for calculation of CGR and it is mentioned below:

$$CGR = (W_2 - W_1) / (t_2 - t_1)$$

where, W_1 and W_2 are dry weights of plant (g/m^2) at time t_1 and t_2 respectively.

Relative growth rate: Relative growth rate is also known as „efficiency index“ which refers to increase in size with time. Units for RGR are $g/g/day$. Alike CGR, formula for its calculation was also given by Hunt (1989) which is described below:

$$RGR = (\ln W_2 - \ln W_1) / (t_2 - t_1)$$

where, W_1 and W_2 are dry weights of plant (g/m^2) at time t_1 and t_2 respectively; $\ln$ = natural log at time t_2 and t_1 respectively.

Statistical Analysis

Statistical analysis was done using CPCS1 software.

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Above ground dry matter accumulation as influenced by various treatments

Significant variations in the dry matter accumulation were found among different treatment after 60 DAS. Rate of above ground dry matter accumulation was slower up to 60 DAS. Thereafter, it increased tremendously from 90 DAS until the crop maturity stage (Table 1). The results indicated that under sub surface fertigation treatments, high water and fertilizer dose improved dry matter accumulation. The supply of water and nitrogen through 100 % ETc with 100 % RDN (I₃F₂) accumulated maximum dry matter 2141 g/m². Contrarily, it was lowest 1339.4 g/m² under poor inputs level of 60 % ETc and 75 % RDN. However, among the controls, treatment supplied with surface drip irrigation (C₁) accumulated high dry matter (1888.6 g/m²) as compared to surface flood (1672.4 g/m²). This might be owing to the fact that drip fertigation enabled the crop for effective uptake of water as well as nutrients resulting into superior canopy, leaf expansion and more dry matter accumulation. Ayyadurai and Manickasundaram, 2014 reported that the increased amount of irrigation coupled with fertilizer through drippers increased the growth attributes of cotton. While comparing different irrigation methods, it was observed that the sub surface drip has achieved maximum dry matter accumulation possibly due to better root proliferation, improved soil moisture availability, and enhanced nutrient uptake.

Table 1: Above ground dry matter accumulation (g/m²) as influenced by various treatments

Treatments	30 DAS	60 DAS	90 DAS	120 DAS	150 DAS	At maturity
C ₁	48.3	118.5	461.1	1045.4	1619.6	1672.4
C ₂	48.9	120.1	521.5	1181.6	1798.0	1888.6
I ₁ F ₁	48.1	117.6	381.8	831.9	1321.3	1339.4
I ₁ F ₂	48.2	118.4	441.5	968.6	1503.4	1533.6
I ₂ F ₁	48.9	119.7	514.1	1162.9	1773.4	1859.0
I ₂ F ₂	48.8	120.7	545.4	1193.4	1842.6	1942.4
I ₃ F ₁	49.0	121.8	582.3	1319.1	1987.1	2109.7
I ₃ F ₂	49.2	122.7	593.9	1369.5	2029.5	2141.0
CD (0.05)	NS	NS	7.7	14.4	17.6	19.6
CV (%)	6.5	7.1	8.7	7.2	5.8	6.2

Dry matter partitioning into stem, leaves and fruiting bodies as influenced by various treatments

Dry matter partitioning into stem (Table 2), leaves (Table 3) and fruiting bodies (Table 4) followed similar trend as that of above ground dry matter accumulation. Between early growth

and maturity stages, proportion of dry matter was 30 to 50 % into stem and 25 to 70 % into leaves. Likewise, proportion of dry matter accumulation into fruiting bodies (i.e., buds, squares, flowers and bolls) has started from 90 DAS and continued to increase till the crop maturity.

Among irrigation and fertilizer regimes under sub surface drip, crop raised with 100 % ETc and 100 % RDN (I₃F₂) resulted in accumulation of higher fruiting bodies (651.3 g/m²). The treatments with reduced dose of water and fertilizer (I₁F₁) resulted in minimum value of fruiting bodies (396.4 g/m²). Similarly, surface drip fertigation (C₂) performed better (559.4 g/m²) as compared to flood method (515.1 g/m²). Stem dry matter accumulation was 152.4 to 262.3 g/m², 359 to 620 g/m² and 531.2 to 824.0 g/m² and 541.1 to 870.6 g/m² respectively at 90,120, 150 DAS and at maturity respectively. Partitioning of dry matter into leaves followed the same trend as it was partitioned to stem. The increased supply of water and fertilizers improved the biomass accumulation. Studies done by Chen et al., (2018) also concluded the similar results that optimum water and N supply through drip fertigation resulted in increased biomass production by improving growth of roots and maintaining photosynthetic rate.

Table 2: Stem dry matter accumulation (g/m²) as influenced by various treatments

Treatments	30 DAS	60 DAS	90 DAS	120 DAS	150 DAS	At maturity
C ₁	12.2	61.6	187.1	447.0	649.8	655.6
C ₂	12.2	62.5	224.9	534.2	723.5	762.6
I ₁ F ₁	12.1	61.2	152.4	359.0	531.2	541.1
I ₁ F ₂	12.2	61.5	186.6	427.1	597.0	613.2
I ₂ F ₁	12.2	62.3	221.0	508.0	708.1	751.6
I ₂ F ₂	12.2	62.7	234.4	529.9	742.3	787.7
I ₃ F ₁	12.3	63.3	252.7	578.1	805.9	827.2
I ₃ F ₂	12.3	63.8	262.3	620.0	824.0	870.6
CD (0.05)	NS	NS	3.9	6.0	7.7	9.0
CV (%)	6.7	7.4	10.5	6.8	6.3	7.1

Table 3: Leaf dry matter accumulation (g/m²) as influenced by various treatments

Treatments	30 DAS	60 DAS	90 DAS	120 DAS	150 DAS	At maturity
C ₁	36.2	56.8	170.1	365.9	485.6	501.7

C₂	36.7	57.6	188.9	413.6	539.4	566.6
I₁F₁	36.0	56.5	137.2	288.7	396.4	401.8
I₁F₂	36.0	56.9	158.8	339.0	455.4	460.1
I₂F₁	36.5	57.4	185.9	407.0	532.0	557.7
I₂F₂	36.7	57.9	198.4	425.4	552.8	582.7
I₃F₁	36.8	58.5	213.2	464.7	596.1	632.9
I₃F₂	36.9	58.9	210.3	471.4	608.8	642.3
CD (0.05)	NS	NS	2.7	5.3	5.3	5.9
CV (%)	6.3	6.0	8.4	7.6	5.8	6.2

Table 4: Dry matter accumulation by fruiting bodies (g/m²) as influenced by various treatments

Treatments	90 DAS	120 DAS	150 DAS	At maturity
C₁	103.3	232.5	483.1	515.1
C₂	107.8	233.9	535.1	559.4
I₁F₁	92.2	184.2	393.7	396.4
I₁F₂	96.1	202.4	451.0	460.4
I₂F₁	107.2	247.8	532.3	549.7
I₂F₂	112.6	238.0	547.5	572.0
I₃F₁	116.4	276.3	585.0	649.7
I₃F₂	121.3	278.0	596.7	651.3
CD (0.05)	1.8	4.2	5.5	5.9
CV (%)	9.4	10.2	6.0	6.2

Crop growth rate as influenced by various treatments

Results indicated that at initial stages (30 and 60 DAS), crop growth was slower but increased afterwards (Table 5). Between 150 DAS to maturity, crop growth rate again declined due to senescence. Among different treatments, crop growth rate varied from 8.80 (I₁F₁) to 15.71 g/m²/day (I₃F₂) at 90 DAS. The corresponding values at 120 DAS were 16.41 and 27.91 g/m²/day under I₁F₁ and I₃F₂, respectively. Decline in the crop growth rate was noticed at 150 DAS where it was 14.91 (I₁F₁) to 22.80 g/m²/day (I₃F₂). At the time of crop maturity, values ranged from 0.60 g/m²/day (60 % ET_c and 75 % RDN) to 5.20 g/m²/day (100 % ET_c and 75 % RDN). CGR was more in surface drip (3.02 g/m²/day) as compared to surface flood (1.76 g/m²/day). Dhir et al., (2021) reported a crop growth rate in the range of 7.92-14.10 g/m²/day with varying irrigation regimes.

Table 5: Crop growth rate (g/m²/day) as influenced by various treatments

Treatments	30 DAS	60 DAS	90 DAS	120 DAS	150 DAS	At maturity
C ₁	1.61	2.34	11.42	21.12	17.49	1.76
C ₂	1.63	2.37	13.38	23.65	18.90	3.02
I ₁ F ₁	1.60	2.32	8.80	16.41	14.91	0.60
I ₁ F ₂	1.61	2.34	10.77	19.22	16.18	1.01
I ₂ F ₁	1.63	2.36	13.15	23.27	18.70	2.85
I ₂ F ₂	1.63	2.39	14.16	23.98	19.26	3.33
I ₃ F ₁	1.63	2.43	15.35	26.49	20.34	4.09
I ₃ F ₂	1.64	2.45	15.71	27.91	22.80	5.20

Relative growth rate as influenced by various treatments

The relative growth rate of cotton (Table 6) increased up to 90 DAS whereafter, it started decreasing. At physiological maturity, the minimum and maximum values of relative growth rate were 0.0005 and 0.0022 g/g/day recorded under I₁F₁ and I₃F₂, respectively. Relative growth rate was slower (0.0011 g/g/day) under surface flood over surface drip (0.0016 g/g/day). The relative growth rate (0.004 g/g/day) for two *Bt* and two non *Bt* cultivars computed by Kaur (2018) fairly supports present findings.

Table 6: Relative growth rate (g/g/day) as influenced by various treatments

Treatments	30 DAS	60 DAS	90 DAS	120 DAS	150 DAS	At maturity
C ₁	0.1293	0.0299	0.0453	0.0288	0.0131	0.0011
C ₂	0.1296	0.0300	0.0489	0.0286	0.0126	0.0016

I₁F₁	0.1291	0.0298	0.0392	0.0276	0.0138	0.0005
I₁F₂	0.1292	0.0300	0.0439	0.0278	0.0130	0.0007
I₂F₁	0.1296	0.0299	0.0486	0.0286	0.0127	0.0016
I₂F₂	0.1296	0.0302	0.0503	0.0280	0.0125	0.0018
I₃F₁	0.1297	0.0304	0.0521	0.0287	0.0122	0.0020
I₃F₂	0.1298	0.0305	0.0526	0.0293	0.0166	0.0022

IV. CONCLUSION

The present study indicated that different irrigation methods and fertigation levels significantly affected the growth dynamics of cotton. Among the different irrigation methods, drip irrigation systems performed better than surface flood irrigation in enhancing biomass accumulation and growth rates in cotton. Under sub-surface drip irrigation, above-ground dry matter accumulation and its partitioning into stem, leaves and fruiting bodies increased progressively with increasing water and nutrients levels. The treatment receiving 100% ET_c along with 100% RDN under sub-surface drip irrigation recorded the highest above ground dry matter accumulation (2141 g/m²), stem dry matter accumulation (870.6 g/m²), leaf dry matter accumulation (642.3 g/m²), dry matter accumulation by fruiting bodies (651.3 g/m²), crop growth rate (5.20 g/g/day), relative growth rate (0.0022 g/g/day). When compared with surface flood irrigation, surface drip irrigation significantly improved biomass production and growth rates; however, sub-surface drip irrigation consistently outperformed both methods. Overall, the results suggest that optimal irrigation scheduling combined with recommended nitrogen application under sub-surface drip irrigation creates a more favorable soil–plant environment, thereby maximizing growth potential and biomass productivity of cotton.

REFERENCES

- [1] Annual report, (2022) Ministry of textile, Government of India.
- [2] Anonymous (2024) Package of Practices for *Kharif* Crops. Punjab Agriculture University, Ludhiana, India.
- [3] Ayyadurai P and Manickasundaram P (2014) Growth, nutrient uptake and seed cotton yield as influenced by foliar nutrition and drip fertigation in cotton hybrid. *Int J Agric Sci* **10**(1): 276-79.
- [4] Banik A, Pahari A, Banerjee H and Sourav Patta. *J Exp Agri Int* **46**(9):967-84.
- [5] Chen Y, Li Y, Zhou M, Rui Q, Cai Z, Zhang X, Chen Y and Chen D (2018) Nitrogen (N) application gradually enhances boll development and decreases boll shell insecticidal protein content in N-deficient cotton. *Front Plant Sci* **9**: 51.
- [6] Dhir A (2020) Impact analysis of abiotic stress and its management in *Bt* American cotton. M.Sc. thesis, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana, India.

- [7] Dusserre J, Croat Y, Warebourg F R and Dingkuhun M (2002) Effects of shading on sink capacity and yield components of cotton in controlled environments. *Agronomie* **22**(3):307-20.
- [8] Fathi A (2022) Role of nitrogen (N) in plant growth, photosynthesis pigments, and N use efficiency: A review. *Agrisost* **28**:1-8.
- [9] Ghosh A, Malo M, Sarkar S and Khan S A. 2018. Crop growth analysis of grass pea in relation to thermal condition in new alluvial zone of West Bengal. *The Pharma Innov J* **7**(9): 295–300.
- [10] Kaur V (2018) Cotton growth and yield simulation under different sowing environments of Punjab. M.Sc. thesis, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana, India.
- [11] Kaur V, Mishra S K and Singh K (2022) Dry matter partitioning in *Bt* and non *Bt* cotton (*Gossypium hirsutum*) cultivars under different sowing environments of Punjab. *Ind J Agric Sci* **92**(12):1469-74.
- [12] Khan A, Pan X, Najeeb U, Kean D, Tan Y, Fahad S, Zahoor R and Luo H (2018) Coping with drought: stress and adaptive mechanisms, and management through cultural and molecular alternatives in cotton as vital constituents for plant stress resilience and fitness. *J Biol Res* **51**:47.
- [13] Pandey P and Bhambri M C. 2017. Growth response of maize to different crop arrangements and nutrient managements under maize (*Zea Mays* L.) and soybean (*Glycine Max* L.) intercropping system. *Plant Archiv* **17**(2): 967-72.
- [14] Sidhu P P, Iqbal T, Sharma P, Paswal S and Bhardwaj J (2024) Technological gap: An analysis in adoption of *Bt* cotton practices in Bathinda district, Punjab. *J Commun Mobil Sustain Dev* **19**(1):69-75.
- [15] Singh K, Brar A S and Singh H P (2018) Drip fertigation improves water and nitrogen use efficiency of *Bt* cotton. *J Soil Water Conserv* **73**(5):549-57.

EFFECTS OF NITROGEN LEVELS ON GROWTH, YIELD AND QUALITY OF MAIZE VARIETIES (*Zea mays* L.)

Amritpal Singh*, Raghubir Singh Uppal, Abhishek Grover

*Corresponding author email: amritbuttar0938@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Background: Maize (*Zea mays* L.) productivity in Punjab is significantly influenced by nitrogen nutrition and genotypic variation. **Objective:** This study evaluated the effects of three nitrogen levels on growth, yield, and quality of four hybrid maize varieties during kharif 2023. **Methods:** A split-plot design experiment with three nitrogen levels — RDN 75%, 100%, and 125% plus RDF (DAP) — and four varieties (3591 Rasi, NMH 1247 Nuziveedu, PRO 72-75, KERN 507) was conducted at Guru Kashi University. **Key Results:** NMH 1247 Nuziveedu Seeds produced the highest green cob yield (12.56 t ha^{-1}), green fodder yield (25.44 t ha^{-1}) and biological yield (38.35 t ha^{-1}). RDN 125% (N) + RDF (DAP) significantly increased green cob, green fodder and biological yields over RDN 75% by 14.12%. Grain protein content was highest at RDN 125% + RDF (DAP) at 10.53%. NMH 1247 recorded the highest net returns ($\text{₹}116,706 \text{ ha}^{-1}$) and B:C ratio (5.9). **Conclusion:** Application of RDN 125% (N) + RDF (DAP) with NMH 1247 Nuziveedu variety is recommended for maximizing maize productivity and economic returns in the Punjab agro-climatic zone.

Keywords: nitrogen fertilization; maize varieties; dry matter accumulation; leaf area index; quality parameters; economic returns; Punjab

1. INTRODUCTION

Maize (*Zea mays* L.), often called the 'Queen of Cereals,' ranks third globally in cereal production and is cultivated in more than 130 countries spanning temperate, subtropical, and tropical climatic zones. In India, maize occupies the fourth position in area and seventh in production, contributing approximately 4% of world maize area and 2% of total production. India produced 33.62 million tonnes from 10.04 million hectares in 2021–22 (DACNET, 2024). Domestic utilization is diverse: approximately 47% is directed towards poultry feed, 14% to the starch industry, 13% for food and animal feed, 12% for industry, 7% for processed food, and 6% for export.

In Punjab, maize serves as a strategic crop for diversifying the dominant rice-wheat cropping system. The maize-wheat system offers lower irrigation demands relative to rice, creating incentives for large-scale adoption. By 2030, India is projected to require 55 million tonnes of maize annually to meet demands from poultry, dairy, pharmaceutical, and processing sectors (DACNET, 2024).

Nitrogen (N) is the most yield-limiting macronutrient in maize production, essential for photosynthesis, enzyme synthesis, and protein formation. Lourente *et al* (2007) reported that N is required in larger quantities than any other mineral during maize cultivation, with recommendations ranging from 50 to 150 kg ha⁻¹ across diverse production systems (Mendes *et al*, 2011). In Indian soils — characterized by low organic matter — nitrogen supplementation assumes heightened importance. The application of nitrogen fertilizer significantly improves soil fertility and boosts crop productivity (Habtegebrial *et al*, 2007).

Genotypic variability also plays a pivotal role, as hybrid and improved maize varieties respond more strongly to nitrogen than local varieties (Shrestha *et al.*, 2018). The choice of cultivar matching the agro-ecological zone, season, and end-use purpose is critical for optimal yield (Zaidi *et al.*, 2017). Despite extensive nitrogen trials conducted nationally, area-specific research under Punjab's semi-arid conditions, particularly combining nitrogen levels with contemporary hybrid varieties, remains limited.

The present study was therefore conducted to: (i) evaluate the effects of graded nitrogen levels on growth attributes, dry matter accumulation, and leaf area index of four hybrid maize varieties; (ii) assess their influence on yield components and productivity; (iii) determine the impact on quality parameters including protein content, total soluble sugars, moisture, and TDN; and (iv) compute the economic viability of each treatment combination.

2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

2.1 Experimental Site and Soil Characteristics

The field experiment was conducted during the kharif season of 2023 at the Crop Research Farm, Guru Kashi University, Talwandi Sabo, Bathinda, Punjab (29°57'38.5"N; 75°07'27.3"E; elevation 208 m asl). The climate is semi-arid with mean annual rainfall of approximately 400–450 mm, predominantly received during July–September. The experimental soil was loamy sand in texture (sand 70%, silt 14%, clay 16%; USDA textural class) with a pH of 7.15, electrical conductivity of 0.25 dS m⁻¹, and low organic carbon (0.36%). Initial available nitrogen was 129.1 kg ha⁻¹, available phosphorus 21.2 kg ha⁻¹, and available potassium 248.3 kg ha⁻¹.

2.2 Experimental Design and Treatments

The experiment was laid out in a split-plot design with three replications. Nitrogen levels were allocated to main plots and maize varieties to sub-plots, generating 36 experimental units in total. The three nitrogen treatments were: N1 — RDN 75% (N) + RDF (DAP); N2 — RDN 100% (N) + RDF (DAP); and N3 — RDN 125% (N) + RDF (DAP), where RDN represents the recommended dose of nitrogen and RDF (DAP) the recommended dose of phosphatic fertilizer as diammonium phosphate. The four maize varieties tested were: V1 — 3591 Hybrid Maize Seeds (Rasi Seeds); V2 — NMH 1247 Nuziveedu Seeds; V3 — PRO 72-75 Hybrid Maize Seeds (ShaktiVardhak Seeds); and V4 — KERN 507 Hybrid Maize Seeds (KERN Seedtech Seeds).

2.3 Crop Management

Seeds were sown on 1 August 2023, in furrows 60 cm apart with an intra-row spacing of 25 cm at a depth of 3–4 cm. Pre-emergence herbicide atrazine at 0.5 kg ha⁻¹ was applied, followed by one mechanical hoeing and earthing-up at 22 DAS. Insect pest management included phorate 10-G at 10 kg ha⁻¹ (at sowing) and endosulfan 35 EC (0.05%) (July 2023) against white grubs, termites, and foliar pests. Irrigation was applied immediately after sowing to ensure uniform germination, with subsequent irrigations as per crop requirement.

2.4 Observations Recorded

Growth parameters measured at 30 DAS, 60 DAS, and at harvest included: plant height (cm), measured from ground level to the tip of the top leaf at 30 DAS and to the top of the tassel at later stages; dry matter accumulation (g plant⁻¹), determined by oven-drying three randomly selected plants per plot at 65°C to constant weight; and leaf area index (LAI), calculated using a leaf area meter on leaves detached at the tassel initiation stage using Watson's (1947) technique.

Yield attributes assessed at harvest included: cobs plant⁻¹; grain rows cob⁻¹; grains cob⁻¹; cob girth (cm); and cob length (cm). Productivity parameters recorded were green cob yield (t ha⁻¹), green fodder yield (t ha⁻¹), and biological yield (t ha⁻¹) as the sum of cob and fodder yields.

Quality parameters evaluated were: grain protein content (%) by Kjeldahl method; fodder protein content (%); total soluble sugars (TSS, %) using a hand refractometer; moisture content of green grains (%) by oven-drying at 65°C; and total digestible nutrients (TDN, %) calculated using digestibility coefficients for crude protein (71.75%), ether extract (92.11%), crude fibre (98.11%), and nitrogen-free extract (99.69%) as per Ranjan (1983).

2.5 Economic Analysis

Net returns (₹ ha⁻¹) and benefit-to-cost (B:C) ratios were computed for each treatment combination on the basis of prevailing market prices of inputs and produce.

2.6 Statistical Analysis

All data were subjected to analysis of variance (ANOVA) as described by Cochran and Cox (1967). Treatment means were compared using the critical difference (CD) at the 5% probability level ($p = 0.05$). Non-significant differences are indicated as 'NS'.

3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

3.1 Dry Matter Accumulation and Leaf Area Index

Table 1 and Figure 1 present the dry matter accumulation (DMA) and leaf area index (LAI) as influenced by nitrogen levels and variety. At 30 DAS, application of RDN 125% (N) + RDF (DAP) significantly enhanced DMA by 3.06% over RDN 100% (N) + RDF (DAP). Among varieties, PRO 72-75 (19.33 g plant⁻¹) accumulated the highest dry matter at this stage, statistically at par with NMH 1247 (18.95 g plant⁻¹) and KERN 507 (18.98 g plant⁻¹), but significantly superior over 3591 Rasi (16.46 g plant⁻¹) by 14.85%. These early differences

reflect varietal divergence in seedling vigour and leaf area establishment, consistent with findings of Kumar *et al* (2000).

At 60 DAS, DMA values of 39.41, 38.73, and 35.75 g plant⁻¹ were recorded under RDN 125%, 100%, and 75% respectively, though these were statistically equivalent. Varieties KERN 507 (40.58 g plant⁻¹), PRO 72-75 (40.27 g plant⁻¹), and NMH 1247 (39.96 g plant⁻¹) were at par and significantly superior over 3591 Rasi (36.64 g plant⁻¹), confirming the superior vegetative efficiency of hybrid genotypes.

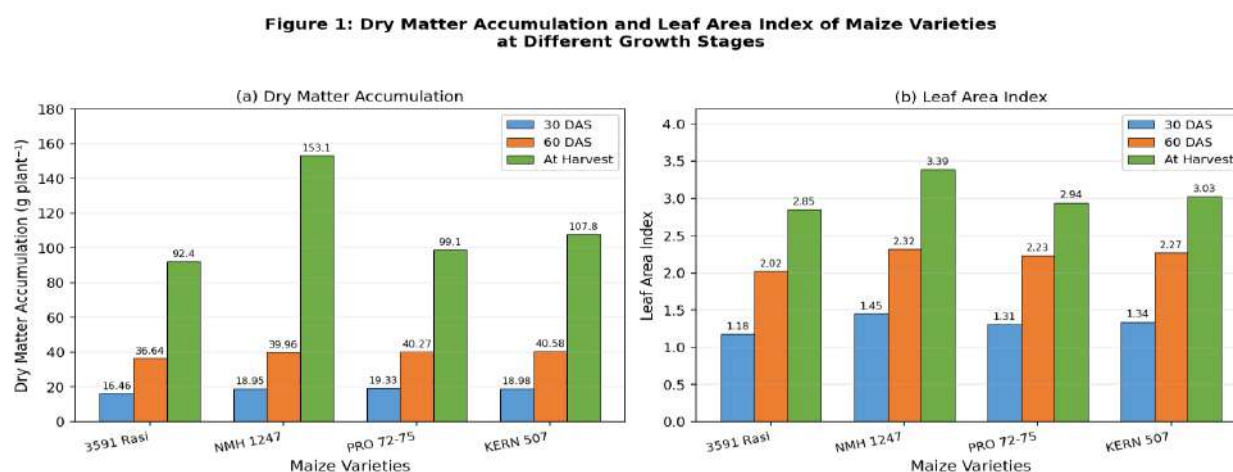
At harvest, NMH 1247 achieved the highest DMA of 153.1 g plant⁻¹ — significantly exceeding KERN 507 (107.8 g plant⁻¹), PRO 72-75 (99.1 g plant⁻¹), and 3591 Rasi (92.4 g plant⁻¹) by 29.59%, 35.28%, and 39.65% respectively. This dramatic late-season advantage of NMH 1247 is attributed to its superior capacity for continued biomass accumulation post-tasseling, facilitated by an efficient source-sink relationship. This aligns with DMR (2009e1-5) and DMR (2011) reports on hybrid maize growth divergence at maturity.

Table 1. Effect of nitrogen levels and varieties on dry matter accumulation (g plant⁻¹) and leaf area index of maize

Treatments	Dry Matter Accumulation (g plant ⁻¹)			Leaf Area Index		
	30 DAS	60 DAS	At Harvest	30 DAS	60 DAS	At Harvest
A. Nitrogen Levels						
RDN 75% (N) + RDF (DAP)	14.36	35.75	105.3	1.25	2.00	2.88
RDN 100% (N) + RDF (DAP)	15.49	38.73	118.7	1.34	2.25	3.08
RDN 125% (N) + RDF (DAP)	15.98	39.41	120.1	1.37	2.30	3.11
CD (0.05)	0.96	2.25	9.43	0.07	0.19	0.14
B. Varieties						
3591 Rasi Hybrid	16.46	36.64	92.4	1.18	2.02	2.85
NMH 1247 Nuziveedu	18.95	39.96	153.1	1.45	2.32	3.39
PRO 72-75 Hybrid	19.33	40.27	99.1	1.31	2.23	2.94
KERN 507 Hybrid	18.98	40.58	107.8	1.34	2.27	3.03
CD (0.05)	1.32	1.83	27.40	0.11	0.13	0.24

DAS = Days After Sowing; CD = Critical Difference at $p = 0.05$; NS = Non-significant

Figure 1. Dry matter accumulation (g plant^{-1}) and leaf area index of four maize varieties at three growth stages



(a) Dry matter accumulation at 30 DAS, 60 DAS, and harvest; (b) Leaf area index at corresponding stages

For LAI, increasing nitrogen levels significantly enhanced the index at all stages. RDN 125% + RDF (DAP) increased LAI at 30 DAS, 60 DAS, and harvest by 10.14%, 13.04%, and 7.40%, respectively, over RDN 75%. Among varieties, NMH 1247 consistently maintained the highest LAI — at 30 DAS (1.45), 60 DAS (2.32), and harvest (3.39) — significantly exceeding the others, suggesting a larger and more efficient photosynthetic canopy. KERN 507 and PRO 72-75 were statistically at par at 60 DAS (2.27 and 2.23 respectively) and both significantly superior over 3591 Rasi (2.02). These results concur with Kumar (2009) and Nath *et al* (2009).

3.2 Yield Attributing Parameters and Productivity

Cob length was significantly influenced by both nitrogen levels and variety (Figure 2a). RDN 125% + RDF (DAP) increased cob length by 8.66% over RDN 75% + RDF (DAP). Among varieties, NMH 1247 produced the longest cobs (19.73 cm), significantly exceeding KERN 507 (17.73 cm), PRO 72-75 (16.04 cm), and 3591 Rasi (15.18 cm). Grains cob⁻¹ also responded significantly to nitrogen; RDN 125% registered 155.9 grains cob⁻¹ versus 138.3 under RDN 75%, an increase of 11.2%. KERN 507 recorded the highest grains cob⁻¹ (135.8) among varieties, significantly surpassing NMH 1247 (115.5), PRO 72-75 (121.2), and 3591 Rasi (121.3). This indicates that KERN 507 excels in grain-setting efficiency despite lower overall biomass, consistent with Oktem and Oktem (2005).

Green cob yield (Figure 2b) was maximized under RDN 125% + RDF (DAP) at 9.01 t ha⁻¹, significantly higher than RDN 100% (8.87 t ha⁻¹) and RDN 75% (7.89 t ha⁻¹) by 1.56% and 12.43% respectively. NMH 1247 dominated variety comparisons with a green cob yield of 12.56 t ha⁻¹, surpassing KERN 507 (9.55 t ha⁻¹), PRO 72-75 (8.54 t ha⁻¹), and 3591 Rasi (8.14 t ha⁻¹) by 23.97%, 32.00%, and 35.19% respectively. Similarly, NMH 1247 achieved the highest green fodder yield (25.44 t ha⁻¹) and biological yield (38.35 t ha⁻¹), with the latter exceeding KERN 507 (27.11 t ha⁻¹), PRO 72-75 (25.06 t ha⁻¹), and 3591 Rasi (23.30 t ha⁻¹)

significantly. These yield advantages of NMH 1247 are attributed to its superior biomass production capacity and efficient conversion of dry matter to economic yield. The findings are in close agreement with DMR (2009e1-5) and DMR (2011).

3.3 Quality Parameters

Table 2 presents the quality parameters of the experimental crop as affected by nitrogen levels and variety. Grain protein content increased significantly with nitrogen; RDN 125% + RDF (DAP) recorded 10.53% protein, compared to 10.37% and 9.09% under RDN 100% and RDN 75% respectively — an improvement of 13.68% over the lowest nitrogen level. This positive response is attributed to nitrogen's role as a building block of amino acids and proteins, consistent with Uribe-larrea et al. (2004) and Abdullah (2008).

Fodder protein content was significantly affected by nitrogen, with RDN 125% recording 4.14% compared to 2.83% under RDN 75%, a 31.64% increment. Among varieties, NMH 1247 recorded the highest grain protein (10.55%) statistically at par with KERN 507 (10.43%), and both significantly exceeded PRO 72-75 (9.77%) and 3591 Rasi (9.09%). For TSS, no significant nitrogen effect was detected, though NMH 1247 (77.08%) and KERN 507 (74.35%) significantly outperformed PRO 72-75 (69.91%) in TSS values. TDN% ranged from 87.60 to 88.32 across nitrogen levels (non-significant), while among varieties, NMH 1247 (89.68%) was statistically at par with PRO 72-75 (87.79%) and KERN 507 (87.02%) but significantly higher over 3591 Rasi (86.79%). The non-significant influence of nitrogen on TDN and TSS may be attributed to greater synthesis of structural carbohydrates at higher nitrogen levels (Panwar *et al*, 1999), which dilutes the relative sugar concentration. These results are consistent with Kumar (2002) and DMR (2009b).

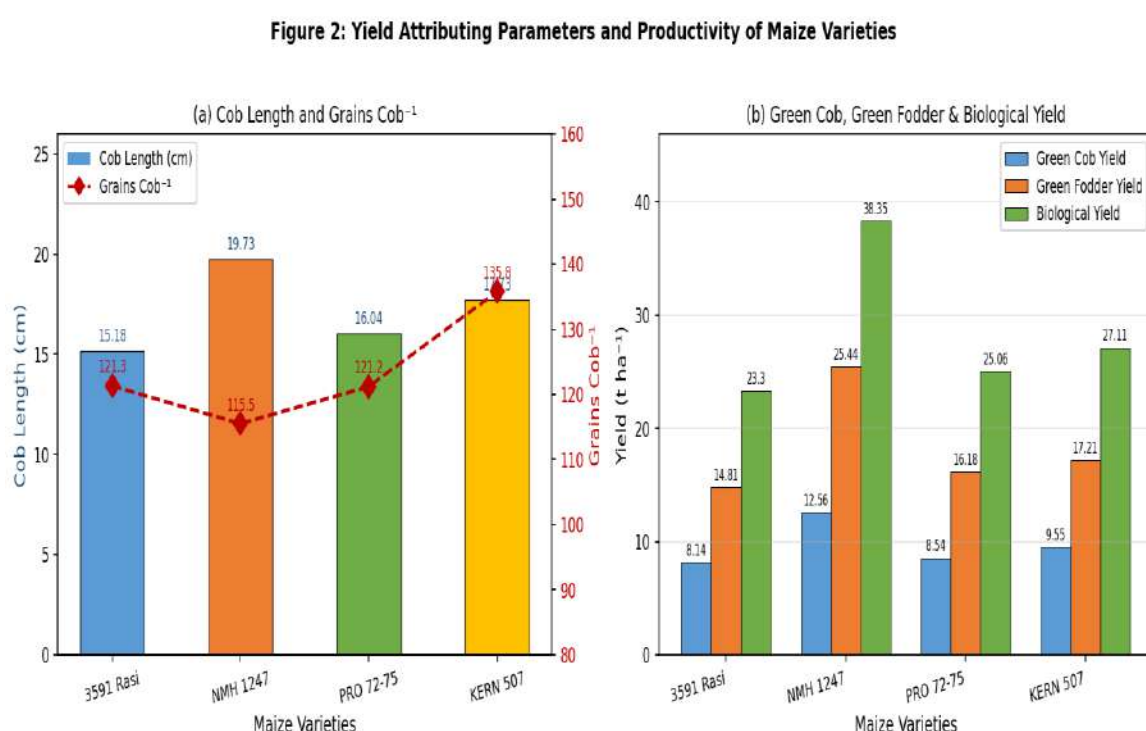
Table 2. Effect of nitrogen levels and varieties on quality parameters of maize (grain protein, fodder protein, TSS, moisture content, and TDN)

Treatments	Protein (%)	Content	TSS (%)	Moisture (%)	Content	TDN (%)
	Grain	Fodder				
A. Nitrogen Levels						
RDN 75% (N) + RDF (DAP)	9.09	2.83	10.65	70.95		87.60
RDN 100% (N) + RDF (DAP)	10.37	4.09	10.99	74.49		88.32
RDN 125% (N) + RDF (DAP)	10.53	4.14	10.73	75.92		88.32
CD (0.05)	0.113	0.080	NS	3.039		NS
B. Varieties						
3591 Rasi Hybrid	9.09	3.73	11.09	75.61		86.79

NMH 1247 Nuziveedu	10.55	3.97	13.18	77.08	89.68
PRO 72-75 Hybrid	9.77	3.73	10.08	69.91	87.79
KERN 507 Hybrid	10.43	3.76	12.38	74.35	87.02
CD (0.05)	0.113	0.080	0.706	3.039	2.004

TSS = Total Soluble Sugars; *TDN* = Total Digestible Nutrients; *CD* = Critical Difference at $p = 0.05$; *NS* = Non-significant

Figure 2. Yield attributing parameters and productivity of four maize varieties



(a) Cob length (cm) and grains cob⁻¹; (b) Green cob, green fodder, and biological yield (t ha⁻¹)

3.4 Economics

Economic analysis revealed that RDN 125% + RDF (DAP) generated the highest net returns (₹99,815 ha⁻¹) and B:C ratio (4.4), significantly superior to RDN 75% + RDF (DAP) (₹78,460 ha⁻¹; B:C 4.0). The incremental return of ₹21,355 ha⁻¹ justifies the additional nitrogen investment. Among varieties, NMH 1247 realized the maximum net return of ₹116,706 ha⁻¹ and B:C ratio of 5.9, significantly exceeding KERN 507 (₹84,414 ha⁻¹; B:C 4.2), PRO 72-75 (₹75,248 ha⁻¹; B:C 3.7), and 3591 Rasi (₹70,681 ha⁻¹; B:C 3.4). These findings corroborate Sankaran *et al* (2005) and Sekar *et al* (2010), who demonstrated that higher fertility levels up to recommended doses maximized economic returns in maize.

4. CONCLUSION

The present study demonstrates that application of **RDN 125% (Nitrogen) + RDF (DAP)** significantly enhanced vegetative growth, dry matter accumulation, leaf area index, and yield-related parameters over lower nitrogen levels. Increasing nitrogen from RDN 75% to RDN 125% improved green cob, green fodder, and biological yields by 14.12%, and elevated grain and fodder protein content by 13.68% and 31.64% respectively, without adversely affecting total digestible nutrients or total soluble sugar content.

Among the tested genotypes, **NMH 1247 Nuziveedu Seeds** emerged as the highest-yielding and most economically rewarding variety, recording green cob yield of 12.56 t ha^{-1} , biological yield of 38.35 t ha^{-1} , grain protein content of 10.55%, TDN of 89.68%, net returns of ₹116,706 ha^{-1} , and a B:C ratio of 5.9. KERN 507 Hybrid Maize Seeds ranked second in economic performance (B:C 4.2).

Recommendation: Based on the findings of this investigation, growing variety **NMH 1247 Nuziveedu Seeds** with application of **RDN 125% Nitrogen + RDF (DAP)** is recommended for maximizing maize productivity, quality, and economic profitability under the agro-climatic conditions of Bathinda, Punjab, and similar semi-arid environments.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author expresses sincere gratitude to Dr. Raghubir Singh Uppal, Professor and Major Advisor, Guru Kashi University, for his invaluable guidance throughout this investigation. Gratitude is also extended to Amritpal Singh and Aditya Narwal for their methodological assistance, and to the author's family for their unwavering support.

REFERENCES

1. Abdullah (2008). Effect of nitrogen on fresh ear yield and kernel protein content of sweet corn (*Zea mays* L. S.sp. *saccharata*) under upper Mesopotamia region of Turkey. *Int J Agri Sci* 78(1): 50–52.
2. Cochran, W.G. and Cox, G.M. (1967). *Experimental Designs*. 2nd Ed. John Wiley and Sons Inc., New York.
3. DACNET (2024). Status and Scope for Maize in India. Ministry of Agriculture, GoI.
4. DMR (2009e1–5). Effect of fertility levels and genotype on sweet corn yield at multiple locations. Annual Progress Report, Directorate of Maize Research, IARI, New Delhi.
5. DMR (2011). Performance of maize hybrids to adopt rainfall changes and climatic aberrations at Karnal. Annual Progress Report, IARI, New Delhi.
6. Habtegebrial K., Singh B.R. and Haile M. (2007). Impact of tillage and nitrogen fertilization on yield, nitrogen use efficiency of tef and soil properties. *Soil and Tillage Research* 94(1): 55–63.
7. Kumar, A. (2009). Production potential and nitrogen use efficiency of sweet corn influenced by different planting density and nitrogen levels. *Int J Agri Sci* 79(5): 351–355.
8. Lourente, E.R., Ontocelli, R., Souza, L.D., Goncalves, M.C., Marchetti, M.E. and Rodrigues, E.T. (2007). Antecedent crops, doses and sources of nitrogen on yield compounds of corn. *Acta Sci Agron* 29(1): 55–62.

9. Mendes, M.P. and de Souza Jr., C.L. (2011). Genomewide prediction of tropical maize single-crosses. *Euphytica* 209(3): 651–663.
10. Nath, K., Nepalia, V. and Singh, D. (2009). Effect of integrated nutrient management on growth and yield of sweet corn. *Annals of Agricultural Research New Series*: 73–76.
11. Oktem, A.G. and Oktem, A. (2005). Effect of nitrogen and intra row spaces on sweet corn ear characteristics. *Asian J Plant Sci* 4(4): 361–364.
12. Panwar, V.S., Tewatia, B.S. and Lodhi, G.P. (1999). Chemical composition and dry matter digestibility of some varieties of sorghum harvested at different stages. *Forage Research* 24: 209–211.
13. Ranjan, S.K. (1983). *Animal and Feeding Practices*. 3rd Revised Edition: 93–104.
14. Sankaran, N., Meena, S. and Sakthivel, N. (2005). Input management in maize. *Madras Agri J* 92: 464–468.
15. Sekar, S., Amanullah, M.M., Manoharan, S. et al. (2010). Influence of fertilizer levels and growth substances on yield and economics of hybrid maize. *Madras Agri J* 97: 58–61.
16. Shrestha, J., Gurung, D.B. and Dhital, K.P. (2018). Agronomic performance of maize genotypes under high temperature condition. *Farming and Management* 3(1): 23–29.
17. Uribelarrea, M., Below, F.E., Seebauer, J.R. et al. (2004). Physiological changes accompanying long-term selection for grain protein in maize. *Plant Breeding Reviews* 24(1): 133–152.
18. Watson, D.K. (1947). Comparative physiological studies on the growth of field crops: variation in NAR and leaf area between species and varieties. *Ann Bot* 11: 41–76.
19. Zaidi, P.H., Tesfaye, K., Gbegbelegbe, S. et al. (2017). Climate change impacts and potential benefits of heat-tolerant maize in South Asia. *Theoretical and Applied Climatology* 130: 959–970.
- 20.

Efficient Irrigation Methods in Agriculture: A Review

Balwinder Singh^{1*}, Prabhdeep Singh²

¹School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering,

Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, India

Email id: balwindersingh93600@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Efficient irrigation has become a critical component of sustainable agriculture in the face of increasing water scarcity, climate change, and rising global food demand. Traditional irrigation practices often result in significant water losses due to evaporation, runoff, and inefficient distribution, thereby necessitating the adoption of advanced water management strategies. This review paper provides a comprehensive analysis of modern efficient irrigation methods, including drip irrigation, sprinkler systems, subsurface irrigation, and precision irrigation technologies.

Recent advancements such as Internet of Things (IoT)-based smart irrigation, artificial intelligence (AI)-driven decision support systems, remote sensing, and automated irrigation scheduling have significantly improved water use efficiency and crop productivity. These technologies enable real-time monitoring of soil moisture, weather conditions, and crop water requirements, thereby optimizing irrigation practices and minimizing resource wastage.

The paper also discusses major challenges and constraints associated with the adoption of efficient irrigation systems, such as high initial investment, lack of technical knowledge, infrastructure limitations, and socio-economic barriers, particularly in developing countries. Furthermore, future prospects including climate-resilient irrigation systems, integration of renewable energy sources, and data-driven agriculture are highlighted as key pathways for sustainable agricultural development.

Overall, efficient irrigation technologies play a vital role in enhancing water productivity, ensuring food security, and promoting environmental sustainability. The adoption of these advanced systems is essential for achieving long-term agricultural resilience and sustainable resource management.

Keywords— Efficient irrigation, drip irrigation, sprinkler irrigation, water use efficiency, precision agriculture, sustainable farming

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture is the largest consumer of freshwater resources globally, accounting for nearly 70% of total water withdrawals, making efficient irrigation a critical component of sustainable agricultural development. With the rapid growth of the global population and increasing food demand, there is mounting pressure on water resources, particularly in arid and semi-arid regions. Traditional irrigation methods such as flood irrigation are often associated with significant water losses due to evaporation, runoff, and deep percolation, resulting in low water use efficiency and environmental degradation.

In recent years, the concept of efficient irrigation has gained considerable importance as a strategy to enhance water productivity while ensuring optimal crop yield. Efficient irrigation methods, including drip irrigation, sprinkler systems, and precision irrigation, aim to deliver water directly to the plant root zone in a controlled manner. These techniques not only reduce water wastage but also improve nutrient use efficiency and minimize soil erosion.

The advancement of modern technologies has further revolutionized irrigation practices. The integration of Artificial Intelligence (AI), Internet of Things (IoT), remote sensing, and data analytics has enabled the development of smart irrigation systems capable of real-time monitoring and automated decision-making. These systems utilize soil moisture sensors, weather forecasting models, and crop growth data to optimize irrigation scheduling, thereby enhancing resource efficiency and sustainability.

Despite these advancements, several challenges remain, including high initial investment costs, lack of technical awareness among farmers, and limited infrastructure in developing regions. Climate change further exacerbates the situation by increasing the frequency of droughts and altering rainfall patterns, making efficient irrigation systems even more essential for ensuring food security.

II. TYPES OF EFFICIENT IRRIGATION METHODS

Efficient irrigation methods are designed to maximize water-use efficiency (WUE), reduce losses, and enhance crop productivity. Modern irrigation systems can achieve efficiencies up to 80–95%, compared to 30–40% in traditional methods. Recent research also shows that integrating automation and sensors can further save 20–30% water and increase yields.

A. Drip Irrigation (Micro-Irrigation)

Drip irrigation delivers water directly to the plant root zone through emitters at a controlled rate. It is considered the most efficient irrigation method, especially for water-scarce regions.

Key Features:

Water applied drop-by-drop near roots

Can be combined with fertigation

Suitable for horticultural and row crops

Efficiency & Impact:

Water-use efficiency: 90–95%

Saves up to 70–80% water compared to flood irrigation

Advantages:

Minimum evaporation and runoff losses

Improved nutrient efficiency

Reduced weed growth

Limitations:

High initial cost

Clogging issues (requires filtration)

B. Sprinkler Irrigation

Sprinkler irrigation distributes water under pressure in the form of droplets, simulating natural rainfall.

Types:

Lateral move system

Rain gun irrigation

Efficiency & Impact:

Saves about 39% water compared to surface irrigation

Improves fertilizer efficiency by >35%

Advantages:

Uniform water distribution

Suitable for uneven land

Reduces soil erosion

Limitations:

Wind drift losses

High energy requirement

C. Subsurface Drip Irrigation (SDI)

Subsurface irrigation involves placing drip lines below the soil surface to deliver water directly to the root zone.

Key Features:

Underground water application

Minimizes surface evaporation

Efficiency & Impact:

Higher efficiency than surface drip due to reduced evaporation

Improves root development and soil moisture stability

Advantages:

High water savings

Reduced weed growth

Lower evaporation losses

Limitations:

Difficult maintenance and monitoring

Expensive installation

D. Improved Surface Irrigation Methods

Modern surface irrigation includes improved techniques to increase efficiency of traditional methods.

Techniques Include:

Laser land Level

Surge irrigation

Alternate furrow irrigation

Efficiency & Impact:

Improves water distribution uniformity

Reduces water loss compared to conventional flooding

Advantages:

Low cost

Easy adoption by farmers

Limitations:

Lower efficiency than drip/sprinkler

Still involves some water loss

E. Precision Irrigation (Smart Irrigation)

Precision irrigation is an advanced method that applies water based on real-time crop needs using sensors, AI, and data analytics.

Technologies Used:

Soil moisture sensors

Remote sensing & GIS

IoT-based control systems

AI-based irrigation scheduling

Efficiency & Impact:

Saves significant water by applying right amount at right time

Enhances crop yield and reduces environmental impact

Advantages:

Optimized irrigation scheduling

Reduced input cost

Higher productivity

Limitations:

Requires technical expertise

High initial investment

F. Automated & IoT-Based Irrigation Systems (Latest Trend)

These are next-generation irrigation systems integrating automation, IoT, and machine learning.

Recent Developments (2024–2026):

AI-based irrigation models predicting water needs

IoT systems enabling real-time monitoring and control

Advantages:

Fully automated irrigation

Real-time decision making

Climate-smart agriculture

Limitations:

High cost and infrastructure requirement

Dependence on technology

III. RECENT ADVANCEMENTS IN IRRIGATION TECHNOLOGY

reducing labor, and integrating digital solutions. **Precision irrigation** systems now use soil moisture sensors, remote Recent advancements in irrigation technology focus on increasing water use efficiency, sensing, and IoT devices to deliver water precisely based on crop requirements. **Subsurface drip irrigation** has improved with better materials and automated control to minimize evaporation and water loss. **Smart sprinklers** and **variable rate irrigation (VRI)** allow differential water application according to field variability, optimizing crop growth. Integration of **AI and machine learning** in irrigation scheduling predicts crop water

needs and climate patterns, reducing waste and enhancing yield. Renewable energy sources, especially **solar-powered pumps**, are increasingly used to make irrigation sustainable and cost-effective. These advancements collectively make irrigation more efficient, environmentally friendly, and suitable for large-scale modern agriculture (FAO, 2024; World Bank, 2025).

IV. CHALLENGES AND CONSTRAINTS IN IRRIGATION TECHNOLOGY

Efficient irrigation technologies, while offering significant benefits, face several challenges and constraints. High initial investment costs make systems like drip, subsurface, and precision irrigation unaffordable for many small-scale farmers. These technologies also require technical expertise for proper operation and maintenance, and issues like clogging, leakage, and uneven water distribution can reduce their efficiency. Water quality, particularly high salinity or suspended solids, further limits the effectiveness of these systems. Additionally, energy dependency for pumping water and lack of monitoring infrastructure can increase operational costs and reduce reliability. Socio-economic factors, such as limited awareness, inadequate training, and weak policy support, further restrict widespread adoption. Addressing these challenges through improved design, training, monitoring, and supportive policies is essential for maximizing the benefits of modern irrigation technologies.

V. FUTURE PROSPECTS OF IRRIGATION TECHNOLOGY

The future of irrigation lies in precision, automation, and climate resilience. Advanced systems will increasingly use artificial intelligence and big data analytics to optimize irrigation schedules based on soil moisture, weather conditions, and crop growth. IoT devices will enable fully automated, real-time monitoring and control, allowing farmers to manage irrigation remotely. Renewable energy, particularly solar-powered systems, will reduce dependence on conventional energy and lower operational costs. Precision techniques like drip and sprinkler irrigation will expand, minimizing water losses, while climate-smart systems will adapt to droughts and unpredictable rainfall. Drones and satellite monitoring will support site-specific irrigation, and smart decision support systems will provide real-time recommendations to farmers. Policy support and digital agriculture initiatives will further accelerate adoption, promoting sustainable, efficient, and resilient agricultural practices.

VI. CONCLUSION

Efficient irrigation has become an essential pillar of sustainable agriculture, addressing the challenges of limited water resources, climate variability, and rising global food demand. Modern irrigation techniques, including drip, sprinkler, subsurface, precision, and smart IoT-based systems, have significantly improved water use efficiency, crop productivity, and nutrient management while minimizing environmental impacts. The integration of advanced technologies such as artificial intelligence, remote sensing, and automation enables data-driven irrigation, real-time monitoring, and optimized resource allocation, transforming traditional water management practices. Despite the benefits, challenges such as high installation costs,

technical knowledge gaps, infrastructure limitations, and policy constraints still impede widespread adoption, especially in developing regions. Looking forward, the development of climate-resilient, energy-efficient, and fully automated irrigation systems, combined with government support, training programs, and digital agriculture initiatives, will be crucial to ensure long-term agricultural sustainability and food security. In essence, efficient irrigation technologies offer a transformative approach to achieving higher productivity with reduced water input, fostering sustainable farming and contributing significantly to global environmental and food security goals.

References

- [1] FAO. (2023). *Water for sustainable agriculture*. Rome, Italy: FAO.
- [2] FAO. (2024). *Future of water management in agriculture*. Rome, Italy: FAO.
- [3] FAO. (2023). *Global water scarcity in agriculture*. Rome, Italy: FAO.
- [4] World Bank. (2024). *Irrigation efficiency report*. Washington, DC, USA: World Bank.
- [5] World Bank. (2025). *Digital agriculture and irrigation development report*. Washington, DC, USA: World Bank.
- [6] UNESCO. (2023). *Water and climate change adaptation report*. Paris, France: UNESCO.
- [7] OECD. (2024). *Sustainable irrigation and water policies*. Paris, France: OECD.
- [8] ICAR. (2025). *Smart irrigation practices in India*. New Delhi, India: ICAR.
- [9] ICAR. (2025). *Irrigation challenges in Indian agriculture*. New Delhi, India: ICAR.
- [10] ICAR. (2025). *Future irrigation technologies in India*. New Delhi, India: ICAR.
- [11] CSIR. (2026). *Sustainable water management technologies*. India: CSIR.
- [12] CSIR. (2026). *AI-based agricultural technologies*. India: CSIR.
- [13] CSIR. (2026). *Smart agriculture and water management*. India: CSIR.
- [14] IIT Research. (2025). *AI-based irrigation forecasting systems*. India: IIT Research.
- [15] IIT Research Reports. (2025). *Smart irrigation limitations*. India: IIT Research.
- [16] IIT Ropar. (2026). *AI weather-based irrigation systems*. India: IIT Ropar.
- [17] Zhu, X. (2025). Advances in agricultural irrigation technology. *Water*.
- [18] Ali, A., Khan, M., & Singh, P. (2025). Smart irrigation technologies. *AgriEngineering*.
- [19] Batisha, A. (2024). Multi-disciplinary strategy to optimize irrigation efficiency. *Scientific Reports*.
- [20] Chaudhary, S., Verma, R., & Mehta, A. (2024). Advances in sprinkler irrigation. *Agronomy*.
- [21] Del-Coco, M., Rossi, F., & Bianchi, L. (2024). Machine learning in irrigation systems. *Information*.
- [22] Ibrahim, A., Hassan, S., & Mahmoud, T. (2025). AI-based smart agriculture system. *Scientific Reports*.
- [23] Zhang, L., Wang, Y., & Li, H. (2024). Precision irrigation technologies. *Agriculture*.
- [24] Zhang, L., Wang, Y., & Li, H. (2025). AIoT-based irrigation systems. *Agricultural Systems*.
- [25] Huang, Z., Chen, Y., & Liu, J. (2025). Sensor-based irrigation systems. *IEEE Access*.

- [26] García, P., López, J., & Martinez, F. (2025). Climate-smart irrigation systems. *Agricultural Systems*.
- [27] García, P., López, J., & Martinez, F. (2025). Climate and irrigation sustainability issues. *Agricultural Systems*.
- [28] Singh, R., Kumar, S., & Verma, A. (2024). Remote sensing in irrigation management. *Agricultural Water Management*.
- [29] Singh, R., Kumar, S., & Verma, A. (2024). Irrigation infrastructure challenges in India.
- [30] Singh, R., Kumar, S., & Verma, A. (2024). Precision agriculture and irrigation trends.
- [31] Kumar, R., Sharma, P., & Joshi, V. (2024). Irrigation efficiency data. *ScienceDirect*.
- [32] Roy, U., Patel, N., & Das, S. (2024). IoT and machine learning-based irrigation. *Journal of Smart IoT*.
- [33] Jaiswal, N., Singh, A., & Gupta, R. (2025). IoT-based smart irrigation system. *Discover Agriculture*.
- [34] Kim, Y., Park, J., & Lee, S. (2025). Precision irrigation using AI. *Scientific Reports*.
- [35] Liu, X., Zhang, H., & Chen, Q. (2025). Intelligent irrigation using AI models. *Scientific Reports*.
- [36] Nguyen, T., Le, H., & Tran, P. (2024). Advanced irrigation sensors. *IEEE Access*.
- [37] Nguyen, T., Le, H., & Tran, P. (2024). Sensor reliability in irrigation systems. *IEEE Access*.
- [38] Narimani, M., Hosseini, R., & Rahimi, F. (2025). Smart greenhouse irrigation. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*.
- [39] *Smart irrigation systems overview*. (2025). *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*.
- [40] Vallejo-Gómez, D., García, M., & Torres, J. (2023). Smart irrigation systems review. *Agronomy*.
- [41] Wei, H., Li, Q., & Chen, Y. (2024). Irrigation with artificial intelligence: Problems and promises. *Human-Centric Intelligent Systems*.
- [42] *Irrigation water quality and sustainability challenges*. (2025). *Frontiers*.
- [43] Matsoukis, A. (2025). Irrigation water in agriculture: Challenges and interventions. *Current Agriculture Research Journal*.
- [44] Sharma, P., Singh, R., & Verma, K. (2025). Water efficient agriculture. *Scientific Reports*.
- [45] *Efficient irrigation management review*. (2024). *ScienceDirect*.
- [46] *Smart irrigation study*. (2023). *ScienceDirect*.
- [47] *Future irrigation challenges and trends*. (2025). *Landscape Management*.
- [48] *Water-wise agriculture and irrigation issues*. (2025). *PAT Research*.
- [49] Taueatsoala, K., Likhite, A., & Chen, M. (2026). TinyML-based smart irrigation systems.

Performance Evaluation of Different Methods of Wheat Sowing for Crop Residue Management

Rashmi Arora^{#1}, Karun Sharma^{#2}, Ritu Dogra^{#3}

[#]First- Department of Mechanical Engineering, Second- Department of Farm Machinery and Power Engineering, Third- Department of Renewable Energy Engineering,
First-Third Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana
(Punjab) - India

¹rashmi.arora@pau.edu

²karunsharma@pau.edu

³ritudogra@pau.edu

Abstract— The paddy-wheat cropping system dominates agriculture in Punjab, generating large quantities of paddy straw due to widespread combine harvesting. On-farm burning of paddy residue remains a major challenge, causing environmental pollution, loss of soil nutrients and deterioration of soil health. To address this issue, the present study evaluated the performance of different wheat sowing methods for effective paddy residue management. On-farm experiments were conducted at three locations, including two farmers' fields and one Krishi Vigyan Kendra (KVK) farm, to compare happy seeder, super seeder, paddy straw incorporation, and conventional wheat sowing after straw removal. Agronomic parameters such as seed rate, weedicide application, irrigation requirement, lodging percentage and grain yield were recorded, along with economic indicators including cost of cultivation, gross income, net income and benefit–cost (B:C) ratio. The results indicated that wheat sowing with the happy seeder significantly reduced weed infestation, particularly *Phalaris minor*, resulting in fewer weedicide sprays and lower irrigation requirement. The happy seeder method also recorded the lowest cost of cultivation (Rs. 10,650/acre) and the highest B:C ratio. Although slightly higher grain yield was observed under straw incorporation method (20.35 q/acre) than happy seeder (20.2 q/acre), the happy seeder demonstrated superior economic performance and resource-use efficiency. The study concludes that happy seeder technology is an effective and environmentally sustainable alternative to residue burning, offering reduced cultivation cost, improved soil moisture conservation and enhanced profitability in the paddy–wheat system of Punjab.

Keywords— Paddy residue management, Happy Seeder, Agronomic parameters, economic parameters.

I. INTRODUCTION

The paddy-wheat cropping system is the dominant agricultural production system in Punjab. Paddy is the second major crop of the state and the principal crop in Ludhiana district. During 2024-25, rice was cultivated over an area of 31.79 lakh hectares in Punjab, producing 214.26 lakh tonnes of paddy (equivalent to 143.56 lakh tonnes of rice), with an average productivity of 67.40 quintals per hectare (27.28 quintals per acre). Wheat, another major cereal crop of the state, occupied 35.16 lakh hectares during 2023–24, with a total production of 181.76 lakh tonnes and an average yield of 51.70 quintals per hectare (20.92 quintals per acre) [1]. In Ludhiana district alone, paddy covered 2.58 lakh hectares, followed by wheat on 2.43 lakh hectares during 2024-25. The adoption of high-yielding varieties and widespread mechanization, particularly combine harvesting which is done on approximately 90% of the paddy area, has resulted in the generation of enormous quantities of paddy straw residues.

Combine harvesting leaves substantial amounts of loose straw spread across the field, creating operational challenges for timely sowing of the succeeding wheat crop. The large volume of residue hampers direct drilling of wheat without prior straw management.

On-farm burning of paddy straw remains the most common and convenient method adopted by farmers for rapid field clearance. However, this practice has severe environmental and agronomic consequences, including air pollution, deterioration of soil health, and adverse effects on human and animal health. Residue burning also reduces the efficiency of herbicides used in wheat cultivation. Paddy straw burning in Punjab leads to significant nutrient losses, estimated at 3.85 million tonnes of organic carbon, 59 thousand tonnes of nitrogen, 20 thousand tonnes of phosphorus, and 34 thousand tonnes of potassium [2]. Such substantial nutrient depletion not only affects soil fertility but also increases the long-term cost of crop production. Cultivation of long duration rice varieties and harvesting with combine harvester has maximized the rate of in-situ burning of rice residue in Indo-Gangetic Plains (IGP) [3]. Burning of crop stubbles are not only deteriorating soil health by causing loss of soil nutrients and organic matter but also causing environmental pollution by production of different harmful gases. Its removal, in situ incorporation and retention of crop stubbles is better and viable option of residue management than burning. Crop stubble having significant quantity of plant nutrients and their judicious management will have several positive impacts on nutrient availability under rice wheat rotation. Long term studies showed that residue recycling improved soil properties and becoming an essential part of ecologically sound sustainable agriculture.

Considering the serious environmental implications and nutrient losses associated with residue burning, there is an urgent need to adopt sustainable paddy straw management practices. Punjab Agricultural University (PAU), Ludhiana, has developed and recommended several residue management technologies, and Krishi Vigyan Kendras (KVKs) are actively promoting these technologies through on-farm trials and demonstrations. G.S. Dhillon conducted 28 field demonstrations on happy seeder technology in village Killi Nihal Singh of district Bathinda of Punjab state during the years 2013-14 & 2014-15 [4]. The results showed that by using this technology, the nutrients i.e. Urea, DAP and Potash fertilizer were saved worth Rs. 424.15, Rs.

366.25 and Rs. 1989 respectively totaling the amount to Rs. 2779.40 per hectare besides improving the physical properties over longer period of time. The highest incremental benefit: cost (B: C) ratio of happy seeder plots were 4.36 during the year 2013-14. Apart from saving the burning of the paddy straw, the happy seeder technology was able to save Rs. 2311.25 per hectare over the normal sown wheat during the field preparation, sowing and management operations of the crop. In the context of burning of paddy straw, this happy seeder technology is a new initiative undertaken by Krishi Vigyan Kendra Bathinda for checking of environmental pollution which will be beneficial for the society as a whole because Bathinda district lies in the south-western region of Punjab which is not much mechanized in agriculture as compared to other districts of the state. Farmers are being encouraged to adopt these improved methods to enhance soil health, reduce production costs, and mitigate environmental pollution. A survey was conducted to assess the adoption pattern of different crop residue management technologies by Punjab farmers. G.S. Butter *et. al.* conducted a survey to assess the adoption pattern of different crop residue management technologies by Punjab farmers [5]. The adoption of Happy seeder was maximum, *i.e.* 16.8% among different technologies during 2019 while Super seeder was preferred and accepted on a large scale, *i.e.* 14.99% during 2020. Farmers growing potatoes and other winter crops preferred residue incorporation using chopper, rotavator, Mahindra Mould Board plough or harrow and adoption varied from 9.17 per cent to 20.4 per cent over five years. Overall, paddy straw management has increased from 20.49 per cent during 2016 to 49.91 percent during 2023. In this context, the present study was undertaken to evaluate and compare the performance of different wheat sowing methods under paddy residue management conditions.

II. OBJECTIVES

1. To compare agronomic performance of four paddy residue management treatments for wheat sowing.
2. To assess cost of cultivation, gross or net returns and benefit: cost ratio.
3. To recommend sustainable and efficient residue management practices.

III. METHODOLOGY

The experiments were conducted at three locations, two at farmer fields (Tehsil Samrala, Ludhiana, India) and one at KVK Farm, Samrala in District Ludhiana, Punjab, India. The technology to be assessed was happy seeder, super seeder, incorporation method and conventional method of removing of paddy straw for wheat sowing. Figure 1 and Figure 2 show the operational view and germination view of wheat crop sown with happy seeder technology respectively. Figure 3 and Figure 4 show the operational view and germination view of wheat crop sown with super seeder technology respectively.



Fig. 1 Operational View of Happy Seeder



Fig. 2 Germination View of Wheat sown with Happy Seeder



Fig. 3 Operational view of super seeder



Fig. 4 Germination View of Wheat Sown with Super Seeder

Different agronomic parameters such as seed rate (kg/acre), number of weedicides sprayed, number of irrigations applied and crop yield (q/acre) were selected to observe. Other parameters such as cost of cultivation, gross income, net income and B:C ratio were also observed to compare the economic performance of different wheat sowing methods and briefed as follow:

Cost of Cultivation

It refers to the total expenditure incurred per acre in raising the wheat crop. It includes residue management operations, field preparation, seed and seed treatment, fertilizers and application cost, weedicide and plant protection chemicals, irrigation cost, harvesting and threshing charges etc.

Gross Income

Gross income represents the total monetary return obtained from the sale of produce before deducting production expenses. It is calculated as:

$$\text{Gross Income} = \text{Grain Yield} \times \text{Market Price}$$

Net Income

Net income is the actual profit obtained after deducting the total cost of cultivation from gross income:

$$\text{Net Income} = \text{Gross Income} - \text{Cost of Cultivation}$$

Benefit: Cost (B:C) Ratio

The B:C ratio is a measure of economic efficiency and investment return and can be calculated as:

$$\text{B:C Ratio} = \text{Net Income} / \text{Cost of Cultivation}$$

IV. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

D. Comparative Economic Analysis of Different Paddy Straw Management Technologies for Wheat Cultivation

The economic analysis presented in the Table 1 compares four wheat sowing methods under different paddy straw management practices, namely Happy Seeder (HS), Super Seeder (SS), Incorporation (IC), and Conventional (CV) method. The comparison is based on four key economic indicators: cost of cultivation, gross income, net income, and benefit: cost (B:C) ratio. These parameters collectively determine the financial feasibility and sustainability of each technology under paddy–wheat cropping system of Punjab.

TABLE I
ECONOMICS OF DIFFERENT METHODS OF WHEAT SOWING

Method of Wheat Sowing	Economic Parameters (Rs./acre)			
	Cost of Cultivation	Gross Income	Net Income	B:C Ratio
Happy Seeder	10650	48985	38335	3.6
Super Seeder	11830	48015	36185	3.1
Incorporation	12450	49348.8	36898.8	3.0
Conventional	11300	44620	33320	2.9

The cost of cultivation represents the total expenditure incurred per acre for raising the wheat crop, including land preparation, residue management operations, seed and sowing, fertilizers, irrigation, plant protection chemicals, harvesting, and machinery use. Among all treatments, the Happy Seeder (HS) recorded the lowest cost of cultivation at Rs. 10,650 per acre. This lower cost is primarily due to the elimination of multiple tillage operations and straw removal expenses. The Happy Seeder allows direct drilling of wheat into standing paddy residues, thereby saving fuel, labor, and machinery costs associated with conventional land preparation. The Super Seeder (SS) recorded a higher cost of Rs. 11,830 per acre. Although it also manages residue in situ, it requires a higher horsepower tractor and has relatively lower field efficiency, which increases operational costs. The Incorporation (IC) method had the highest cost of cultivation at Rs. 12,450 per acre. This is because it involves multiple field operations such as mulching, ploughing, harrowing, and rotavating to mix straw into the soil. These additional operations increased fuel consumption, machinery wear and tear, and labor requirements. The conventional (CV) method, involving straw removal from the field followed by normal sowing, had a cost of Rs. 11,300 per acre. Although it avoids incorporation costs, it includes expenses for straw removal like baler operation and subsequent tillage operations.

Gross income represents the total revenue obtained from grain yield per acre before deducting production costs. The Incorporation method recorded the highest gross income at Rs. 49,348.8 per acre, mainly due to its slightly higher grain yield. The incorporation of straw may enhance soil organic matter and nutrient availability, contributing to marginal yield improvement. The Happy Seeder followed closely with Rs. 48,985 per acre, showing that

despite lower tillage and operational intensity, it maintained competitive productivity. The Super Seeder generated Rs. 48,015 per acre, slightly lower than HS and IC. The conventional method recorded the lowest gross income at Rs. 44,620 per acre, reflecting comparatively lower grain yield and possibly higher lodging and weed pressure. Although differences in gross income were not extremely large among HS, SS, and IC, the CV method lagged behind due to lower productivity.

Table 1 also shows that the Happy Seeder recorded the highest net income of Rs. 38,335 per acre. This indicates that the combination of lower cost and competitive yield maximized farmers' profit. The incorporation method generated Rs. 36,898.8 per acre, slightly lower than HS due to its higher production cost despite higher gross income. The Super Seeder resulted in Rs. 36,185 per acre, reflecting moderate profitability. The conventional method produced the lowest net income of Rs. 33,320 per acre, confirming that traditional residue management is economically inferior to mechanized residue-retention technologies. This clearly demonstrates that reducing input costs without compromising yield significantly improves profitability.

Table 1 also represents that Happy Seeder achieved the highest B:C ratio of 3:6, meaning that for every rupee invested, the farmer received Rs. 3.6 in return. This indicates superior economic efficiency and sustainability. The Super Seeder recorded a B:C ratio of 3:1, while the Incorporation method had a ratio of 3:0. Although these methods are profitable, their efficiency is lower compared to Happy Seeder. The conventional method had the lowest B:C ratio of 2:9, indicating relatively lower economic returns per unit investment.

Figure 5 represents the data of table 1 in graphical form. It clearly shows that while incorporation provides slightly higher gross returns due to marginal yield advantage, its higher operational cost reduces overall profitability. The Super Seeder performs moderately but requires higher machinery power and investment. The Happy Seeder emerges as the most economically viable technology because it minimizes cultivation cost, maintains competitive grain yield, maximizes net income and achieves the highest B:C ratio. In contrast, the conventional method is economically less attractive and environmentally unsustainable due to residue removal or burning practices.

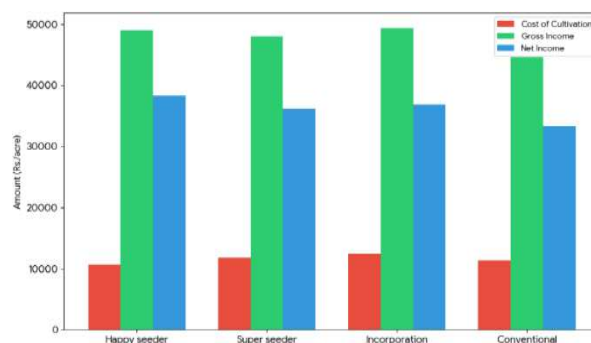


Fig. 5 Economic Comparison of Different Methods of Wheat Cultivation

E. Percentage-wise Comparison of Happy Seeder, Super Seeder and Incorporation with Conventional Method

Table 2 shows that happy seeder was the only method that reduces costs by 5.75% compared to the Conventional method. It delivered the highest increase in Net Income of +15.05% and B:C Ratio of +24.14%. Incorporation Method showed the highest Gross Income of +10.60%, but it was also the most expensive method, costing 10.18% more than Conventional sowing. Despite the high cost, it still manages a healthy 10.74% increase in Net Income. In this table Super Seeder offered a balanced performance with 8.60% increase in Net Income and 6.90% increase in B:C Ratio, though it costs 4.69% more than Conventional methods. Figure 6 presents the same data in graphical form.

Table II COMPARISON OF HAPPY SEEDER, SUPER SEEDER AND INCORPORATION WITH CONVENTIONAL METHOD

Method	Cost of Cultivation (%)	Gross Income (%)	Net Income (%)	B:C Ratio (%)
Happy Seeder	-5.75% (Cheaper)	+9.78%	15.05%	24.14%
Super Seeder	4.69%	7.61%	8.60%	6.90%
Incorporation	10.18%	10.60%	10.74%	3.45%
Conventional	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%

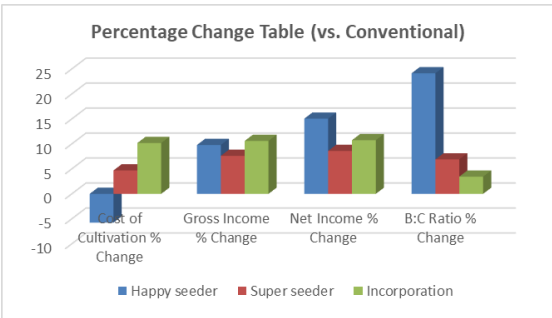


Fig. 6 Graphical Representation of Comparison of Each Method with Conventional Cultivation

F. Comparison of Crop Parameters for Different Methods of Wheat Cultivation

A comparative evaluation of four wheat sowing methods i.e. Happy Seeder, Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional based on key agronomic parameters such as seed rate, number of weedicides sprayed, number of irrigations applied, percentage lodging, and grain yield is presented in table 3. These parameters are critical indicators of crop performance, input efficiency, and overall sustainability under paddy residue management conditions in rice–wheat cropping system of Punjab.

Table III

OBSERVATIONS ON CROP PARAMETERS FOR DIFFERENT METHODS OF WHEAT CULTIVATION

Method of wheat sowing	Parameters Observed				
	Seed Rate (kg/acre)	No. of Weedicides sprayed	No. of Irrigation Applied	Percentage Lodging	Grain Yield (q/acre)
Happy Seeder	50	2	3	3-5	20.2
Super Seeder	50	3	4	10-15	19.8
Incorporation	40	3	4	10-15	20.35
Conventional	40	3	4	15-20	18.4

Seed rate determines plant population, crop stand establishment, and ultimately yield. Happy Seeder (HS) and Super Seeder (SS) both used a seed rate of 50 kg/acre. A slightly higher seed rate is generally recommended in residue-retained systems to compensate for potential uneven seed placement due to surface straw mulch. Incorporation (IC) and Conventional (CV) methods used a lower seed rate of 40 kg/acre, as the soil surface is relatively clean and finely prepared, allowing better seed–soil contact and uniform germination. The higher seed rate in residue-retained systems ensures optimal plant population despite the presence of straw. However, even with a higher seed rate, Happy Seeder maintained better crop stand uniformity.

Weed management is a major challenge in the rice–wheat system, especially due to the prevalence of *Phalaris minor*. Happy Seeder required only 2 weedicide sprays, the lowest among all treatments. Surface retention of paddy straw acts as mulch, suppressing weed germination by limiting sunlight penetration and reducing weed seed emergence. Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional methods required 3 sprays, indicating comparatively higher weed pressure. The reduction in weedicide application under Happy Seeder not only lowers production cost but also reduces chemical load on the soil, contributing to environmental sustainability and improved soil health.

Irrigation requirement reflects soil moisture conservation and water-use efficiency. Happy Seeder required only 3 irrigations, whereas Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional methods required 4 irrigations. Residue mulch in the Happy Seeder treatment reduces soil evaporation losses and improves moisture retention. This leads to better water-use efficiency and reduced irrigation frequency. In a water-stressed state like Punjab, this reduction is highly significant in conserving groundwater resources.

Lodging refers to bending or falling of crop plants due to weak stems, wind, irrigation, or excess vegetative growth. It negatively affects grain filling and harvesting efficiency. Happy Seeder recorded the lowest lodging of 3–5%, indicating stronger plant anchorage and balanced growth. Super Seeder and Incorporation methods showed moderate lodging of 10–15%. Conventional method recorded the highest lodging of 15–20%, possibly due to more vegetative growth and weaker root anchorage in finely tilled soil. Lower lodging in Happy Seeder plots suggests better root development and improved soil structure under residue retention conditions.

It was reported that residue retention practices improved soil structure and moisture conservation, which helped to reduce lodging and irrigation requirement under Happy Seeder [6].

Grain yield is the ultimate indicator of treatment performance. Incorporation method recorded the highest grain yield of 0.35 q/acre, likely due to improved nutrient recycling and enhanced soil organic matter from decomposed residues. Happy Seeder produced 20.2 q/acre, which is very close to Incorporation and higher than Super Seeder and Conventional methods. Super Seeder yielded 19.8 q/acre, slightly lower than HS. Conventional method recorded the lowest yield of 18.4 q/acre. Although Incorporation showed marginally higher yield, the difference between Incorporation and Happy Seeder is minimal of 0.15 q/acre, which may not be statistically significant under field conditions. Figure 7 and Figure 8 represents the comparison of weedicide application and grain yield data for all four methods in graphical form respectively. It is seen that happy seeder has lowest data for number of weedicides sprayed with highest grain yield in terms of quintal/acre.

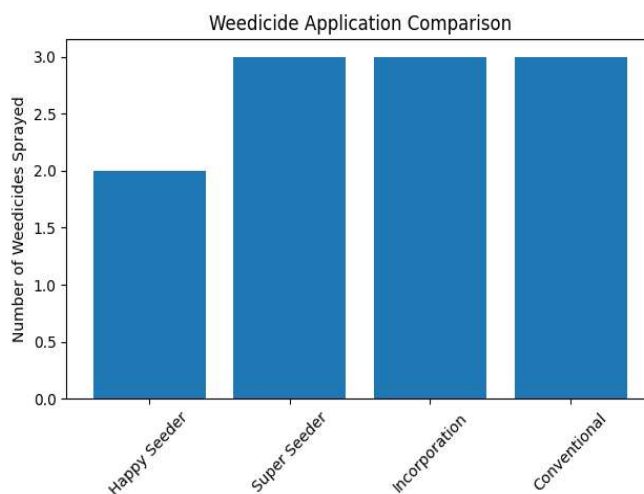


Fig. 7 Graph of Weedicide Application Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

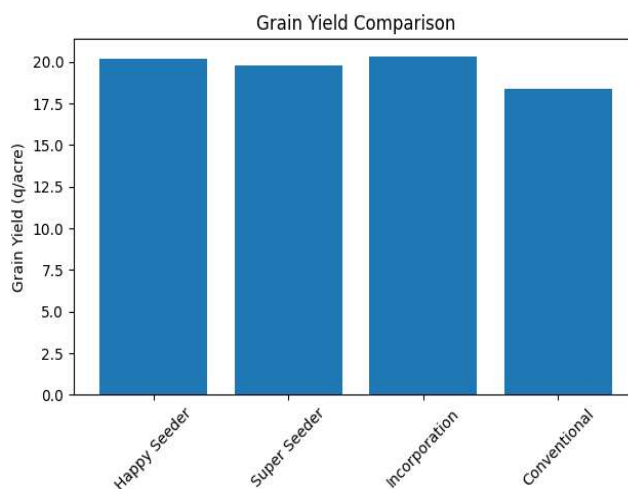


Fig. 8 Graph of Grain Yield Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

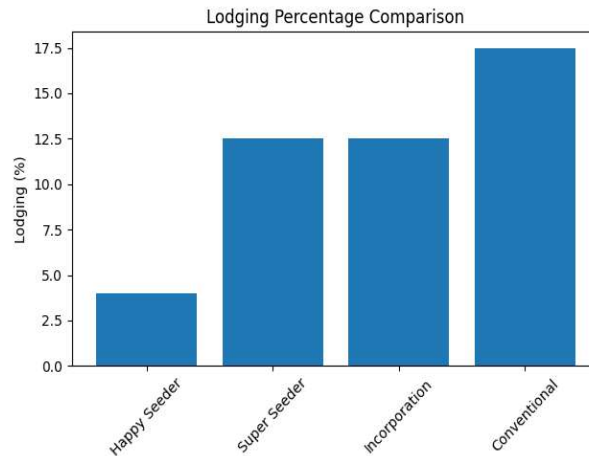


Fig. 9 Graph of Lodging Percentage Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

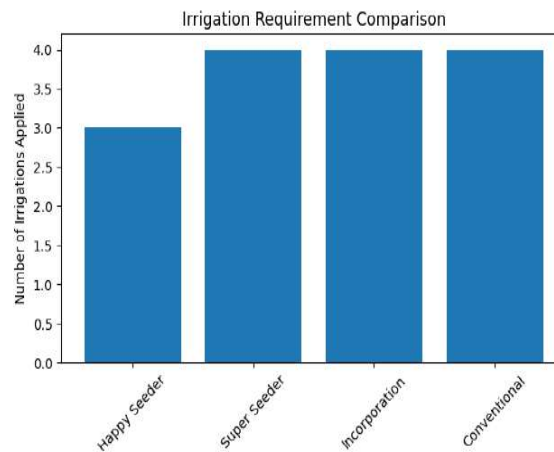


Fig. 10 Graph of Irrigation Requirement Comparison for Different Methods of Wheat Sowing

Figure 9 and Figure 10 represents the comparative data of lodging percentage and irrigation requirement for four different methods respectively. It is observed that Happy Seeder technology has lowest lodging percentage and lowest irrigation requirement.

IV. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATION

The present study clearly demonstrates that mechanized residue management technologies play a crucial role in enhancing sustainability and profitability in the paddy–wheat cropping system of Punjab. Among the four wheat sowing methods evaluated i.e. Happy Seeder, Super Seeder, Incorporation, and Conventional method, the Happy Seeder technology emerged as the most economically viable and resource-efficient option. Although the incorporation method recorded marginally higher grain yield of 20.35 q/acre, the difference in yield compared to Happy Seeder of 20.2 q/acre was negligible. However, the incorporation method involved higher operational costs due to multiple tillage and residue mixing operations, which reduced overall profitability. In contrast, the Happy Seeder minimized field preparation costs by enabling direct drilling of wheat into standing paddy residues, thereby lowering fuel consumption, labour requirement, and machinery expenses. Economically, the Happy Seeder recorded the lowest cost of cultivation and

the highest net income and benefit: cost ratio of 3:6, indicating superior investment efficiency. Agronomically, it required fewer weedicide sprays and one less irrigation compared to other treatments, demonstrating better weed suppression and improved soil moisture conservation due to residue mulch effect. Additionally, it recorded the lowest lodging percentage, suggesting improved crop stability and root development. The Super Seeder performed moderately well but required higher horsepower and incurred comparatively higher operational costs. The Conventional method, involving residue removal, recorded the lowest yield, highest lodging percentage, and lowest B:C ratio, making it economically and environmentally less sustainable. Overall, the findings confirm that the Happy Seeder technology offers an effective alternative to on-farm residue burning by reducing cultivation cost, conserving soil moisture, lowering weed infestation, minimizing irrigation requirement, improving profitability and enhancing environmental sustainability. Therefore, large-scale promotion and adoption of Happy Seeder technology through policy support, custom hiring centres, and farmer awareness programs can significantly contribute to sustainable residue management and long-term productivity in the rice–wheat system of Punjab.

REFERENCES

- [1] Punjab Agricultural Statistics 2024–25. Directorate of Economics and Statistics, Government of Punjab.
- [2] D Singh A., Kaushal M. and Singh H., “Improvement in productivity of wheat with crop residue and nitrogen-a review,” *Asian Journal of Biological and Life Sciences*, vol. 1, pp. 139-146, 2012
- [3] Tanwar K, Tanwar K, Raj D and Jangra P, “Effect of rice residue management options on soil properties and wheat yield under rice-wheat cropping system: a review,” *Plant Archives*, vol. 6(1), pp. 1096-1110, 2026
- [4] Dhillon G S, 2016 “Comparative evaluation of happy seeder technology versus normal sowing in wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) in adopted village Killi Nihal Singh of Bathinda district of Punjab,” *Journal of Applied and Natural Science*, vol. 8 (4), pp. 2278-2282, 2016
- [5] Butter G.S., Sodhi G.P.S., Manes G.S., Sunidhi, Kaur Taranreet, Brar Navjot Singh, Kumar Arvind, Singh Rajbir and Kaur Simerjeet, “Adoption Pattern of Farm-Machinery based Solutions for In-situ Paddy Straw Management in Punjab,” vol. 59(4), pp. 103-108, 2023
- [6] Malik, R.K., Yadav, A., and Singh, S., “Conservation agriculture in rice–wheat system: Role of residue management in improving productivity and soil health,” *Indian Journal of Agronomy*, vol. 63(3), pp. 1–10, 2018

Impact of Temperature and Relative Humidity on Sunflower (*Helianthus annuus* L.) Yield and Yield Attributes in Punjab: A Review

Corresponding authors: Ramandeep Kaur* and Krishan Pal

Email id: rmngill1995@gmail.com

¹School of Agricultural Sciences & Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University Bathinda (Punjab), India

²Guru Kashi University, Talwandi Sabo, Bathinda, Punjab (India), 15001

Abstract

This review examines the influence of key climatic factors-temperature and relative humidity-on sunflower yield and associated agronomic traits in Punjab. Drawing upon regional studies conducted at Guru Kashi University, Bathinda and surrounding research areas, it highlights sowing-date effects, and interrelations with crop development metrics. The article also discusses implications for sowing strategies and yield optimization under Punjab's climatic realities.

Keywords: *Sunflower, Temperature, Humidity, Punjab, Yield optimization*

Introduction:

Sunflower (*Helianthus annuus* L.) is the 4th most important oilseed crop, cultivated throughout India which accounts about 0.43 MT of annual production with a productivity of 736 kg/ha from 0.59 Mha area (Anonymous 2015 India stat). In Punjab sunflower is a vital oilseed crop and grown typically from January to May. Its productivity is sensitive to weather conditions, particularly temperature and relative humidity, which affect phenology, seed yield, and quality traits. Understanding these interactions is essential for optimizing management practices and enhancing yield stability. It is mostly valued for its high quality edible oil which is extracted from the seed (22-36%) and kernel (45-55%). It is also a good source of a good source of Zn and folate that provide several health benefits. Besides the concept of the expressed oil is of light the expressed the term The expressed oil is of light amber coloured with a mild, pleasant flavour which is high in vitamin E (Rauf et al., 2017), unsaturated fatty acids; mono-unsaturated fatty acids (30%), polyunsaturated fatty acids (59%) and low in saturated fats; palmitic acid (5%) and stearic acid (6%). It is assumption, the oil is also used in cosmetic and paint industries, the seeds are used as seed meal for live stocks and dried plants as fuel. Being a short duration (100-110 days) and Photo-Thermo- insensitive crop, sunflower can fit easily in any cropping pattern and can be cultivated throughout the year. In India, Karnataka is the major producer of sunflower (with production of 3.04 lakh tonnes from an area of 7.94 lakh hectares) followed by Andhra Pradesh, Maharashtra, Bihar, Orissa and Tamil Nadu. In Punjab, it is cultivated as a spring season crop mainly in the districts of Jalandhar, Hoshiarpur, Kapurthala and Patiala. Sunflower being an efficient oilseed crop, has shown potential to

narrow down the gap between total requirements and production of edible oil in country. With the objective to increase the oil production, researchers are engaged in developing superior sunflower hybrids through genetic manipulations (Connor & Hall, 1997; Hussain et al., 2022).

2. Climatic Influence on Growth and Development

2.1 Temperature and Relative Humidity Effects

Temperature and relative humidity significantly influence sunflower growth at different developmental stages.

During the vegetative phase (mid-February to mid-March), relative humidity between 77% and 94% promotes optimal growth by enhancing leaf area development and photosynthetic activity (GKU, 2023–2024).

During the reproductive stage, particularly seed filling, temperatures above 35°C favor assimilate translocation and grain development (Connor & Hall, 1997). However, excessive humidity and reduced sunshine during April–May negatively affect photosynthesis and yield due to lower radiation availability (Hussain et al., 2022).

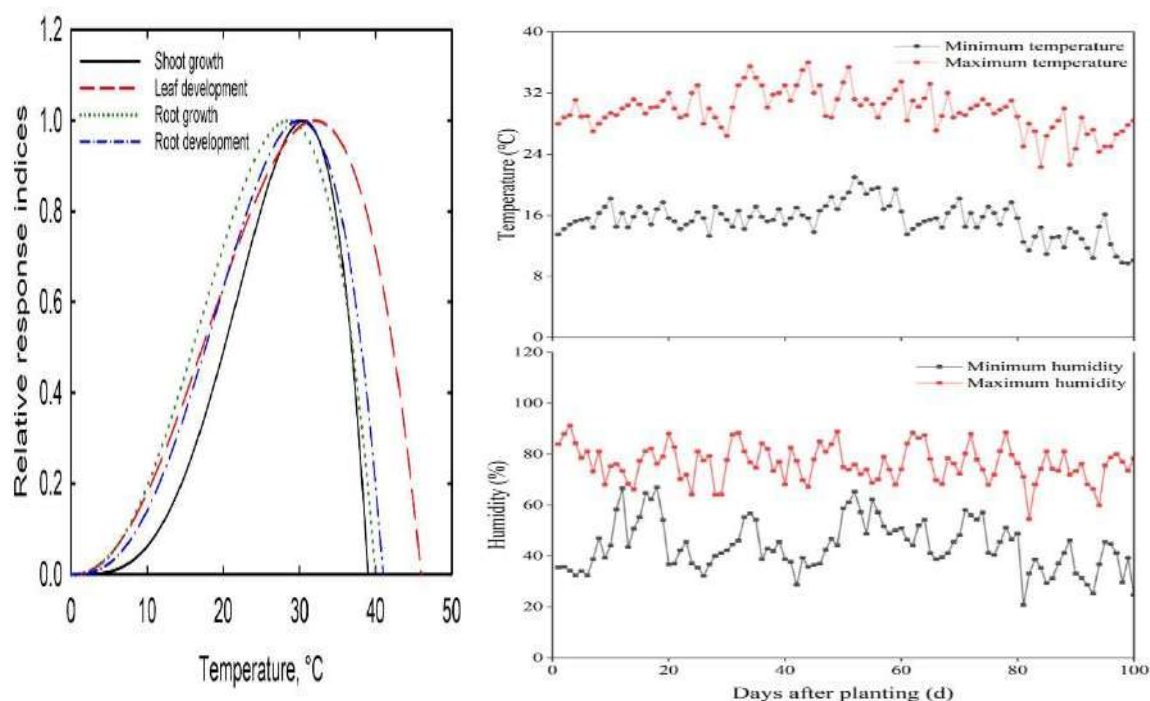


Figure 1. Relationship between temperature and sunflower seed yield. Optimal yield is achieved around 30–35°C during reproductive stages, while temperatures beyond this threshold reduce yield due to heat stress.

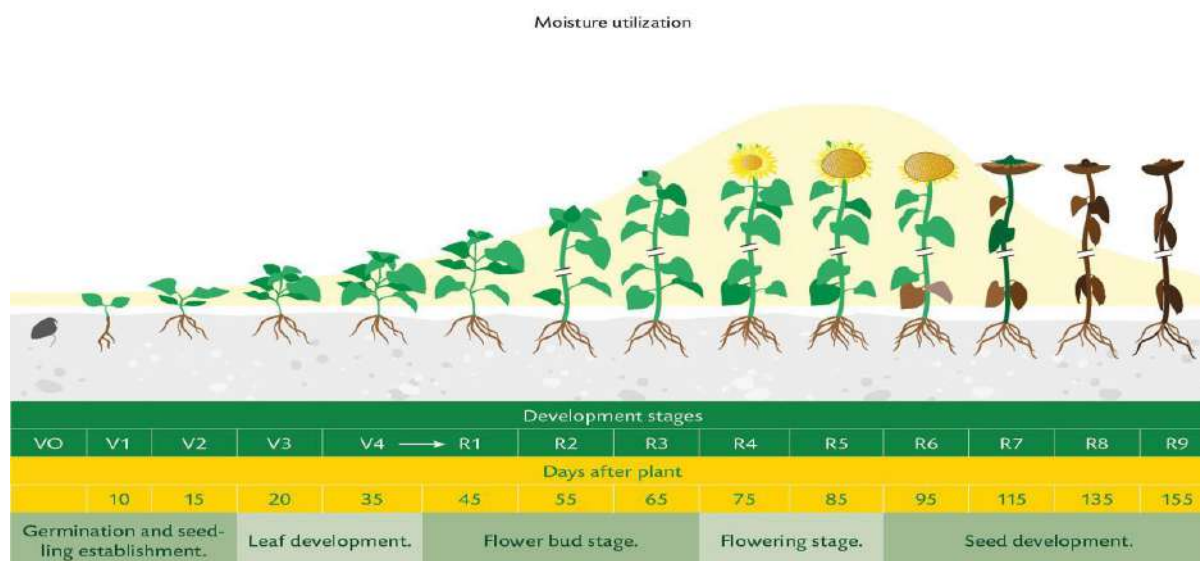


Figure 2. Influence of relative humidity on sunflower growth stages. Higher humidity (77–94%) enhances vegetative growth, while excessive humidity during reproductive stages negatively impacts yield.

2.2 Sowing Time and Thermal Regimes

Sowing time plays a critical role in determining the thermal environment experienced by the crop. Studies conducted at Guru Kashi University (GKU) showed that delayed sowing shifts reproductive stages to periods of higher temperature stress (GKU, 2023-2024). This results in: Reduced seed yield, Shortened seed filling duration, Altered oil composition

Higher temperatures during seed maturation increase oleic acid and decrease linoleic acid content (Kaya & Atakisi, 2004), indicating that fatty acid composition is temperature-dependent.

3. Heat Use Efficiency and Phenological Responses

Heat use efficiency (HUE) reflects the ability of the crop to convert thermal units into biomass. Field experiments conducted at Guru Kashi University revealed that delayed sowing significantly reduces HUE and shortens crop duration, particularly the reproductive phase (GKU, 2023–2024). Seed filling duration showed a strong positive correlation with yield ($P < 0.01$), indicating that longer reproductive phases enhance productivity (Sharma & Singh, 2018).

4. Dry Matter Accumulation and Yield Formation

Dry matter accumulation and its partitioning are critical determinants of yield. Early sowing (mid-January) results in:

Larger head diameter

Higher 1000-seed weight

Improved seed filling

Higher seed yield ($\sim 2.0 \text{ t ha}^{-1}$)

These benefits are associated with higher post-anthesis dry matter accumulation ($\sim 1908 \text{ kg ha}^{-1}$) and improved physiological efficiency (Sharma & Singh, 2018).

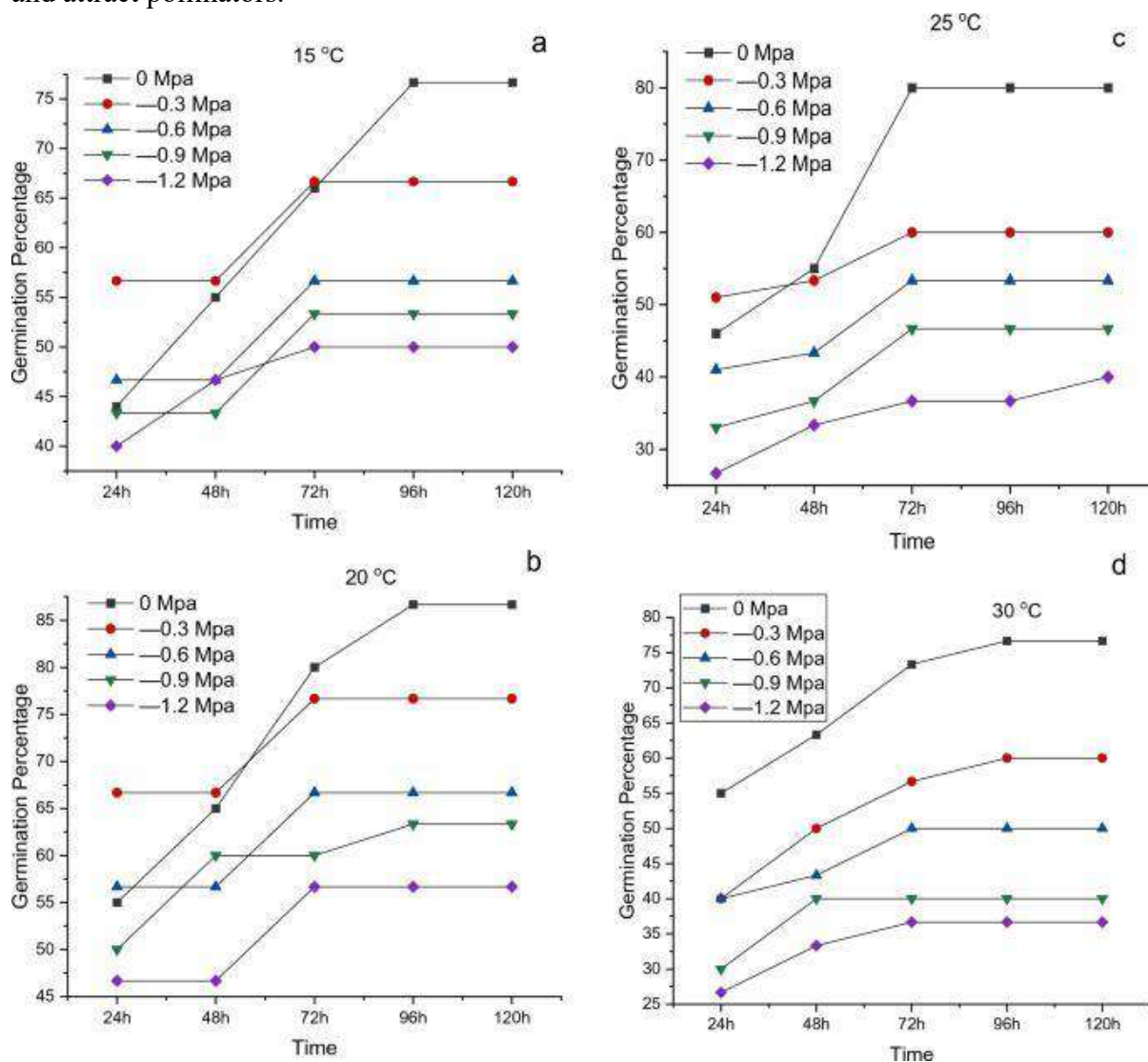
Heat use efficiency (HUE) variation with sowing time. Early sowing shows higher efficiency in converting thermal units into biomass compared to delayed sowing.

Similar findings have been reported by Rauf et al. (2017), who emphasized the importance of assimilate partitioning in improving sunflower productivity.

5. Indirect Effects: Pollination and Nectar Dynamics

Sunflower is an insect-pollinated crop, and climatic factors significantly influence pollination efficiency.

Temperature has a positive effect on nectar total soluble solids (TSS), while relative humidity has a negative correlation (GKU, 2024). Warmer and drier conditions improve nectar quality and attract pollinators.



Delayed sowing reduces nectar secretion by approximately 12.66%, negatively affecting pollination efficiency and seed set (GKU, 2024). Climate-driven changes in pollination services have also been widely reported (Mallinger et al., 2021).

6. Integrated Discussion

The interaction of temperature and relative humidity across growth stages determines overall crop performance.

Moderate humidity enhances vegetative growth.

High temperature improves seed filling (Connor & Hall, 1997)

Excess humidity and cloudiness reduce photosynthesis (Hussain et al., 2022)

Delayed sowing reduces heat use efficiency and yield (Sharma & Singh, 2018)

Pollination efficiency is influenced by climatic effects on nectar traits (Mallinger et al., 2021).

These interactions highlight the importance of synchronizing crop phenology with favourable climatic conditions.

7. Conclusion

Temperature and relative humidity are key determinants of sunflower productivity in Punjab. Early sowing ensures optimal alignment of crop growth stages with favourable environmental conditions, leading to improved yield, oil quality, and pollination efficiency. In contrast, delayed sowing exposes the crop to climatic stress, reducing productivity and altering oil composition. Future research should focus on developing climate-resilient hybrids and refining agronomic practices to mitigate the adverse effects of climate variability.

References

- [1] Anonymous. (2015). Agricultural statistics at a glance. Government of India.
- [2] Connor, D. J., & Hall, A. J. (1997). Sunflower physiology and development. *Field Crops Research*, 53(1–3), 103–122.
- [3] Hussain, M., Farooq, S., Hasan, W., & Ul-Allah, S. (2022). Climate variability and its impact on oilseed crops. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, 29, 11234–11248.
- [4] Kaya, Y., & Atakisi, I. (2004). Effects of environmental factors on oil composition of sunflower. *Plant, Soil and Environment*, 50(12), 545–550.
- [5] Mallinger, R. E., Gratton, C., & Isaacs, R. (2021). Climate change impacts on pollination services. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*, 52, 455–477.
- [6] Punjab Agricultural University (PAU). (2005–2008). Effect of sowing dates on sunflower yield and oil quality. Ludhiana, India.
- [7] Punjab Agricultural University (PAU). (2015–2024). Heat use efficiency and sowing time studies in sunflower. Ludhiana, India.
- [8] Punjab Agricultural University (PAU). (2020). Nectar traits and pollinator interactions in sunflower. Ludhiana, India.
- [9] Rauf, S., Jamil, N., Tariq, S. A., Khan, M., Kausar, M., & Kaya, Y. (2017). Progress in sunflower oil quality improvement. *Helia*, 40(66), 1–16.
- [10] Sharma, P., & Singh, S. (2018). Effect of sowing dates on sunflower productivity. *Indian Journal of Agronomy*, 63(2), 234–238

To study the effect of temperature change and CO₂ concentration on development of *Bemisia tabaci*

Sukhpreet kaur Brar¹ and Inderpal Singh Sandhu²

¹ MRSPTU, Bathinda School of agricultural sciences and engineering

² Department of Entomology, PAU Ludhiana

Email: sukhpreetbrar652@gmail.com

Abstract

The study on the effect of temperature and CO₂ levels on *B. tabaci* revealed the mean shortest incubation period of eggs (4.06 days) was at 450 ppm CO₂ and (4.11 days) at 35:25°C. The total life cycle spanned 27.10 ±0.34 days at 400 ppm CO₂ and 27.14±0.39 days at 450 ppm CO₂. The overall shortest life cycle was recorded at 35:25°C combined with 400 ppm CO₂. Among the alternative temperature and CO₂ levels the shortest life cycle (26.68±0.56 days) of *B. tabaci* was recorded on temperature combination of 35:25 with 400ppm CO₂.

Keyword: life cycle, temperature, *Bemisia tabaci*, carbon dioxide, mungbean

Mungbean, scientifically referred as *Vigna radiata* L. Wilczek and popularly known as greengram, holds considerable agricultural significance within India, being ranked as the third most crucial pulse crop after chickpea and redgram [11]. [6] Reported 100 and 200 insect pests from India and throughout the world on mungbean and urdbean, respectively. The Lepidoptera, Hemiptera, Thysanoptera, Hymenoptera, Coleoptera, Diptera, Isoptera and Orthoptera orders account for the majority of the insects. Quantitative preventable losses (735%) caused by insect pest complex in mungbean and urdbean in India vary according to agro-climatic circumstances [8]. The majority of whitefly species cannot be distinguished solely by the physical characteristics of adult individuals. The life cycle of whiteflies includes four stages: eggs, three nymphal instars, pseudo-pupae, and winged adults. Eggs hatch into crawlers, the only mobile stage during immaturity, which then transition into sessile second instars lacking functional legs. After two additional molts, pharate adults develop within the cuticle of the fourth instar and emerge as winged adults measuring 1 to 2 millimeters, living for several weeks [4]. The fecundity varied from 23-51 eggs per female on brinjal during different seasons[9]. During August-September the female had mean fecundity of 41.7±2.38 and 38.20±2.70 eggs per female in 2018 and 2019.

Methodology

To study the effect of changes in a various temperature (°C) and CO₂ (ppm) concentrations on multiplication and development of whitefly following six treatments were carried out in Controlled Environment Chamber, in Climate Change Laboratory in Department of Entomology. Different treatments:-

T1: Temp: 32° : 22°C (time:14:10 hrs) with L: D photoperiod, 70±5 per cent relative humidity along with 400 ppm of CO₂

T2: Temp 32° : 22°C (time:14:10 hrs) with L: D photoperiod, 70±5 per cent relative humidity along with 450 ppm of CO₂

T3: Temp 35° : 25°C (time:14:10 hrs) with L: D photoperiod, 70±5 per cent relative humidity along with 400 ppm of CO₂

T4: Temp 35° : 25°C (time:14:10 hrs) with L: D photoperiod, 70±5 per cent relative humidity along with 450 ppm of CO₂

T5: Temp 38° : 28°C (time:14:10 hrs) with L: D photoperiod, 70±5 per cent relative humidity along with 400 ppm of CO₂

T6: Temp 38° : 28°C (time:14:10 hrs) with L: D photoperiod, 70±5 per cent relative humidity along with 450 ppm of CO₂

Development and multiplication of *B. tabaci*

The experiment on the study of effect of changes in temperature and CO₂ concentration on development and multiplication of whitefly was conducted during kharif season 2023. Mungbean variety ML 1808 was raised in earthen pots (27x23 cm) or plastic pots admixed with loamy soil and manure. These plants were used for study of effect of changes in various temperature ranges and carbon dioxide concentration on development and multiplication of whitefly in the Controlled Environment Chamber conditions. Using the hair clip, leaf cage was adjoined beneath the mature top leaf @ one leaf cage per mungbean plant. Five pairs of the recently developed *B. tabaci* pairs were released in each leaf cage. Adults and leaf cages were taken out after a day. To determine the number of eggs laid, the leaf section beneath each leaf cage was marked and examined using a 40X binocular stereomicroscope. Only ten eggs were chosen, and the remaining ones were extracted using a small brush and needle. The selected eggs were observed under binocular stereomicroscope using 40X daily. To stop *B. tabaci* from ovipositing and crawlers from going outside the designated area, the leaf cages were once more affixed to the leaf in the designated area. The incubation period was defined as the interval between the eggs' laying and the crawlers' appearance. Additionally, observations were made at 24-hour intervals regarding the duration of various nymphal instars and puparium. The time between a pupa's appearance and an adult's emergence was known as the pupal phase. The total developmental period was defined as the time between egg laying and adult appearance. The characteristics that distinguish the male and female of *B. tabaci* were that the males are smaller and have a pointy abdominal tip, while the females are larger and have a blunt abdominal tip. To determine the adult lifetime of *B. tabaci*, the times at which male and female adults emerged and died were noted. In order to study fecundity, newly emerging adults were released into five leaf cages, one pair per cage, and the quantity of eggs was counted under a 40X binocular stereomicroscope. The data was analyzed using a Factorial Completely Randomized Design (CRD) for analysis of variance, and the mean and standard error were computed.

Results

The results of investigation on influence of temperature and carbon dioxide levels on growth and development of *B. tabaci* on kharif mungbean conducted during 2023 in Department of Entomology, PAU Ludhiana are presented here under. Studies were conducted to determine the

role of elevated abiotic factors especially temperature and carbon dioxide under changing climate conditions on the biological parameters of *B. tabaci*. The results of these experiments are presented and discussed in this section.

Incubation period and Fecundity: The incubation period of *B. tabaci* at three alternating temperatures of 32:22°C, 35:25°C and 38:28°C (14:10 photoperiod and RH 70±5%) and carbon dioxide levels of 400 and 450 ppm are presented in. The minimum mean incubation period (4.06±0.13 days) was observed at 450ppm CO₂ level and (4.11±0.16 days) at 35:25°C. No egg hatched at 38°C (Table 1). There was no significant effect of temperature and carbon dioxide and the interaction of temperature and carbon dioxide on incubation period of *B. tabaci*. Similarly the mean minimum fecundity (50.70±1.16) was recorded at 400ppm of CO₂ and as 50.50±0.70 eggs per female at 35:25°C. However the results were non significantly.

Table 1: Effect of alternating temperature and carbon dioxide on the incubation period and fecundity of *Bemisia tabaci*

Carbon dioxide Concentration (ppm)	Incubation period (days) at temperature, Max: Min (°C)				Fecundity (eggs female ⁻¹) at temperature, Max: Min (°C)			
	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean
400	4.24±0.29	4.10±0.27	-	4.17±0.19	51.60±2.23	49.80±0.80	-	50.70± 1.16
450	4.00±0.17	4.12±0.21	-	4.06±0.13	52.00±1.64	51.20±1.16	-	51.60 ±0.96
Mean	4.12±0.16	4.11±0.16	-		51.80±1.31	50.50±0.70	-	
	CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature: NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS				CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature: NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS			

Values are Mean±SE of five replications, These temperature were maintained for 14:10 h with same duration of L:D at constant RH70±5%

First Instar: The lowest mean duration of first instar of *B. tabaci* 2.04±0.16 days at 35:25°C and 400ppm carbon dioxide and highest mean duration 2.20±0.13 days at 32:22°C and 450ppm carbon dioxide was observed. Among the different temperature and CO₂ the lowest mean duration recorded 2.09±0.12 days on 400ppm carbon dioxide. Non-significant effect of temperature and carbon dioxide individually and temperature and carbon dioxide interaction on first instar of *B. tabaci* was observed.

Second Instar: In case of second instar the mean duration of 3.11±0.12 and 3.00±0.16 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO₂ concentration and 3.11±0.14 and 3.00±0.14 days under temperature conditions of 32:22 and 35:25°C, respectively.(Table 2). Elevated temperature showed non- significant effect of temperature and carbon dioxide. On the contrary, no significant

effect was observed on the second instar of *B. tabaci* due to interaction of temperature and carbon dioxide.

Third instar: In third instar the mean duration of 3.00 ± 0.11 and 3.03 ± 0.18 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO₂ concentration and 2.99 ± 0.14 and 3.04 ± 0.16 days under temperature conditions of 32:22 and 35:25°C, respectively. Elevated temperature and carbon dioxide showed a non-significant effect on the development of third instar. Similarly, no significant effect was observed on the third instar of *B. tabaci* due to interaction of temperature and carbon dioxide.

Table 2: Effect of alternating temperature and carbon dioxide on the 1st and 2nd instar stages of *B. tabaci*

Carbon dioxide Concentration (ppm)	1 st Instar (days)				2 nd Instar (days)			
	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean
400	2.14 ± 0.19	2.04 ± 0.16	-	2.09 ± 0.12	3.26 ± 0.15	2.96 ± 0.16	-	3.11 ± 0.12
450	2.20 ± 0.13	2.10 ± 0.11	-	2.15 ± 0.08	2.96 ± 0.23	3.04 ± 0.26	-	3.00 ± 0.16
Mean	2.17 ± 0.11	2.07 ± 0.09	-		3.11 ± 0.14	3.00 ± 0.14		
	CD (p=0.05)				CD (p=0.05)			
	CO ₂ conc. : NS				CO ₂ conc. : NS			
	Temperature: NS				Temperature: NS			
	CO ₂ × temperature : NS				CO ₂ × temperature : NS			

Values are Mean±SE of five replications, These temperature were maintained for 14:10 h with same duration of L:D at constant RH70±5%

Fourth instar: In fourth instar the mean duration of 4.07 ± 0.22 and 4.13 ± 0.20 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO₂ concentration and 4.02 ± 0.22 and 4.18 ± 0.20 days under temperature conditions of 32:22 and 35:25°C, respectively (Table 3). Elevated temperature, carbon dioxide and their interaction also showed a non-significant effect on the development of fourth instar of *B. tabaci*.

Adults longevity: The mean longevity of male was recorded as 11.13 ± 0.29 and 11.16 ± 0.35 days at 400 and 450ppm CO₂ concentration (Table 4). With increase of temperature from 32:22°C to 35:25°C the mean longevity of adults male decreased from 11.32 ± 0.31 to 10.97 ± 0.32 days. The mean female longevity of *B. tabaci* at various regimes of alternating temperature of 32:22°C, 35:25°C and carbon dioxide levels of 400 and 450ppm was observed to be affected by temperature and CO₂. The female longevity of 10.19 ± 0.30 and 10.37 ± 0.20 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO₂ concentration respectively. Mean longevity of 10.41 ± 0.19 days and 10.15 ± 0.31 days was recorded under temperature conditions of 32:22 and 35:25°C, respectively. Whereas increase in temperature from 32:22 to 35:25°C mean female adults longevity decreased from 10.41 ± 0.19 days to 10.15 ± 0.31 days. However non-significant effect of temperature and carbon dioxide was

recorded. Similarly, effect of temperature and its interactive effect with CO₂ were also observed to be non-significant.

Table 3: Effect of alternating temperature and carbon dioxide on the 3rd and 4th instar stages of *B. tabaci*

Carbon dioxide Concentration (ppm)	3 rd Instar (days)				4 th Instar (days)			
	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean
400	3.00±0.17	3.00±0.17	-	3.00±0.11	4.02±0.32	4.12±0.32	-	4.07±0.22
450	2.98±0.24	3.08±0.30	-	3.03±0.18	4.02±0.32	4.24±0.27	-	4.13±0.20
Mean	2.99± 0.14	3.04± 0.16			4.02±0.22	4.18±0.20		
	CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature: NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS				CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature: NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS			

Values are Mean±SE of five replications, These temperature were maintained for 14:10 h with same duration of L:D at constant RH70±5%

Table 4: Effect of alternating temperature and carbon dioxide on the male and female longevity of *B. tabaci*

Carbon dioxide Concentration (ppm)	Male longevity (days)				Female longevity (days)			
	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean
400	11.32±0.47	10.94±0.38	-	11.13±0.29	10.40±0.29	9.98±0.55	-	10.19±0.30
450	11.32±0.47	11.00±0.56	-	11.16±0.35	10.42±0.28	10.32±0.32	-	10.37±0.20
Mean	11.32±0.31	10.97±0.32	-		10.41±0.19	10.15±0.31	-	
	CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature: NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS				CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature: NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS			

Values are Mean±SE of five replications, These temperature were maintained for 14:10 h with same duration of L:D at constant RH70±5%

Life cycle: The total life cycle of 27.10 ± 0.34 and 27.14 ± 0.39 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO₂ concentration respectively. Whereas mean longevity of 27.28 ± 0.33 days and 26.96 ± 0.40 days was recorded under temperature conditions of 32:22 and 35:25°C, respectively (Table 5). The increase in temperature from 32:22 to 35:25°C the mean longevity decreased from 27.28 ± 0.33 days to 26.96 ± 0.40 days. However the effect of temperature and CO₂ interactions were observed to be non-significant.

Table 5: Effect of alternating temperature and carbon dioxide on the life cycle of *B. tabaci*

Carbon dioxide Concentration (ppm)	Life cycle (days) at temperature, Max: Min (°C)			
	32:22	35:25	38:28	Mean
400	27.52 ± 0.36	26.68 ± 0.56	-	27.10 ± 0.34
450	27.03 ± 0.57	27.24 ± 0.60	-	27.14 ± 0.39
Mean	27.28 ± 0.33	26.96 ± 0.40		
	CD (p=0.05) CO ₂ conc. : NS Temperature : NS CO ₂ × temperature : NS			

Values are Mean±SE of five replications, These temperature were maintained for 14:10 h with same duration of L:D at constant RH70±5%

Discussion

Effect of temperature on the rate of multiplication of *B. tabaci* on kharif mungbean ML1808 was studied by recording data on development and reproduction of whitefly at three alternating temperatures of 32:22°C, 35:25°C and 38:28°C (14:10 photoperiod and RH 70±5%) and CO₂ measures of 400 and 450 ppm. The lowest mean incubation period (4.06 days) of *B. tabaci* was observed at 450ppm CO₂ level and (4.11 days) was observed at 35:25°C. No egg hatched at 38°C. The findings are consistent with the findings [5], where the incubation period of whitefly eggs was shortest at 32°C x 75% RH (4.23 days) and 4.27 days at 32°C x 65% RH. The longest incubation period was recorded at 22°C x 65% RH (7.73 days) and 22°C x 75% RH (7.57 days). No whitefly eggs hatched at 37°C. Eggs did not develop correctly at temperatures below 10°C and over 36°C and discovered that eggs developed best at temperatures between 20 and 30°C with optimal development occurring between 20°C and 30°C[12]. Around 81 eggs per female were laid at 26.7°C and 72 at 32.2°C [2][13]. The duration of the egg stage varied from 22.5 days at 16.7°C to 5.0 days at 32.5°C, while whitefly eggs failed to hatch at 36.0°C. Similarly, observed that male lived an average of 7.6 and 11.7 days, and female whitefly lived an average of 8.0 and 10.4 days, at 26.7°C and 32.2°C, respectively [3]. In India, the egg stage of whitefly was completed in 4.00 and 4.50 days at 25.5°C and 30.4°C, with 81% and 96.3% relative humidity, respectively. Cotton whitefly growth requires an ideal temperature range of 25–30°C and a humidity range of 40–58%[1]. The lowest mean duration of first instar of *B. tabaci* 2.04 ± 0.16 days at 35:25°C and 400ppm

carbon dioxide and highest mean duration 2.20 ± 0.13 days at $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ and 450ppm carbon dioxide. In case of second instar the mean duration of 3.11 ± 0.12 and 3.00 ± 0.16 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO_2 concentration and 3.11 ± 0.14 and 3.00 ± 0.14 days under temperature conditions of $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ and $35:25^\circ\text{C}$, respectively. In third instar the mean duration of 3.00 ± 0.11 and 3.03 ± 0.18 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO_2 concentration and 2.99 ± 0.14 and 3.04 ± 0.16 days under temperature conditions of $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ and $35:25^\circ\text{C}$, respectively. In fourth instar the mean duration of 4.07 ± 0.22 and 4.13 ± 0.20 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO_2 concentration and 4.02 ± 0.22 and 4.18 ± 0.20 days under temperature conditions of $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ and $35:25^\circ\text{C}$, respectively. Total development time of whiteflies from egg to adults varied from 65.1 days at 14.9°C to 16.6 days at 30°C . The female longevity of 10.19 ± 0.30 and 10.37 ± 0.20 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO_2 concentration respectively [2]. Mean longevity of 10.41 ± 0.19 days and 10.15 ± 0.31 days was recorded under temperature conditions of $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ and $35:25^\circ\text{C}$, respectively. With increase in temperature from $32:22$ to $35:25^\circ\text{C}$ the mean longevity decreased from 10.41 ± 0.19 days to 10.15 ± 0.31 days. In male longevity the mean duration of 11.13 ± 0.29 and 11.16 ± 0.35 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO_2 concentration. While increase of temperature from $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ to $35:25^\circ\text{C}$ the mean longevity of adults male decreased from 11.32 ± 0.31 to 10.97 ± 0.32 days. The total life cycle of 27.10 ± 0.34 and 27.14 ± 0.39 days was recorded at 400 and 450ppm CO_2 concentration respectively. Mean longevity of 27.28 ± 0.33 days and 26.96 ± 0.40 days was recorded under temperature conditions of $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ and $35:25^\circ\text{C}$, respectively. The intrinsic rate of increase (rm), finite rate of increase (λ), and net reproductive rate (Ro) of the groundnut aphid, *Aphis craccivora*, increased with rising temperatures from 20°C to 27°C , but then declined from 30°C to 35°C . At 27°C , Ro reached its peak, recording 84.23 nymphs per female under elevated CO_2 (e CO_2) conditions [10]. The mean generation time (T) decreased from 13.41 days at 20°C to a minimum of 5.91 days at 35°C , showing a nonlinear trend under e CO_2 conditions. Overall, whitefly fitness peaked around 28°C [7]. The optimal temperature range for *B. tabaci* reproduction likely falls between 28°C and 33°C . Carbon dioxide (CO_2) levels did not significantly influence the life history of *B. tabaci*.

Conclusion

B. tabaci on mungbean var. ML1808 showed shortest incubation (4.06 days) at 450 ppm CO_2 , with no eggs hatching at $38:28^\circ\text{C}$. Fecundity dropped from 51.80 ± 1.31 to 50.50 ± 0.70 eggs/female as temperature raise from $32:22^\circ\text{C}$ to $35:25^\circ\text{C}$. Female longevity was 10.2–10.4 days (slightly higher at lower temperatures), male 11 days, and total life cycle 27.1 days across CO_2 levels indicating higher temperatures suppress reproduction more than elevated CO_2 .

References

- [1] Bishnoi O P, Singh M, Rao V, NiwasR and Sharma P (1996) Population dynamics of cotton pests in relation to weather parameters. Indian J Ent 58: 103-07.
- [2] Butler G D J, Henneberry T J and Clyton T E (1983) Bemisia tabaci (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae): development, oviposition and longevity in relation to temperature. Ann Ent Soc Am 76: 310-13.

- [3] Butter N S and Vir B K (1991) Response of whitefly, *Bemisia tabaci* (Genn.) to different cotton genotypes under screen house conditions. *Indian J Ent* 53 (1): 115-19.
- [4] Byrne D N and Bellows J T S (1991) Whitefly biology. *A Rev Ent* 36: 431-57.
- [5] Chandi R S and Kular J S (2014) Biological parameters of whitefly, *Bemisia tabaci* (Gennadius) on Bt and non Bt cotton under Punjab conditions. *J Exp Zool India* 17: 555-61.
- [6] Chhabra K S and Kooner B S (1998) IPM system in agriculture. Pp. 233-31. Aditya Books Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
- [7] Curnutte L B, Simmons A M and Rabou S (2014) Climate Change and *Bemisia tabaci* (Hemiptera: Aleyrodidae) impacts of temperature and carbon dioxide on life history. *Ann Entomol Soc Am* 107(5): 933-43.
- [8] Hamad S E and Dubey S L (1983) Losses due to insect pests in North Bihar. *Indian J Entomol* 1: 136-46.
- [9] Singh G (2021) Bioecology and management of whitefly *Bemisia tabaci* (Gennadius) on brinjal. Ph.D dissertation. Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana, Punjab, India.
- [10] Solomon S, Qin D, Manning M, Chen Z, Marquis M and Averyt K B (2007) Contribution of working group I to the fourth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change. Pp 996. Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, USA.
- [11] Ved R, Massod A, Misra S K and Upadhyay R M (2008) Studies on sulphur, zinc and bio fertilizers on yield and yield attributes and nutrient content at different growth stages of mungbean. *J Food Legum* 21(4): 240-42.
- [12] Verma A K, Ghatak S S and Mukhopadhyay S (1990) Effect of temperature on development of whitefly (*Bemisia tabaci*) (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae) in West Bengal. *Ind J Agric Sci* 60: 332-36.
- [13] Wang K and Tsai J H (1996) Temperature effect on development and reproduction of silver leaf whitefly (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae). *Ann Entomol Soc Am* 89: 375-84.

Effect of Nitrogen on Quality Parameters of the Solanaceae Family: A Review

Abhishek Grover*, Amritpal Singh

Corresponding author email: abhigrover982@gmail.com

Abstract

Nitrogen (N) is a critical macronutrient governing both the productivity and quality of crops belonging to the Solanaceae family, which includes commercially vital vegetables such as tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum* L.), potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.), brinjal/eggplant (*Solanum melongena* L.), and pepper (*Capsicum annuum* L.). These crops contribute enormously to global food security, nutritional intake, and industrial processing. The effect of nitrogen on quality parameters is multifaceted: at optimal levels, nitrogen enhances fruit weight, total soluble solids (TSS), ascorbic acid (vitamin C), lycopene, capsaicin, phenolic compounds, and protein content. However, excess nitrogen promotes nitrate accumulation in edible tissues, reduces starch and sugar content, compromises fruit firmness, and poses food safety risks. This review consolidates and synthesises findings from over seventy peer-reviewed publications to systematically examine the physiological, biochemical, and agronomic mechanisms by which nitrogen supply modulates quality attributes across the major Solanaceae crops. Interactions with other nutrients, irrigation, cultivar, and environment are discussed alongside nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) and environmental sustainability. Optimal nitrogen management strategies are proposed to reconcile yield maximization with quality and safety.

Keywords: Nitrogen fertilization; Solanaceae; Tomato quality; Potato; Pepper; Eggplant; Lycopene; Capsaicin; Nitrate accumulation; Nitrogen use efficiency; Secondary metabolites.

A. Introduction

The Solanaceae family, commonly known as the nightshade family, is one of the most economically and nutritionally significant plant families in the world. Comprising more than 2,500 species distributed across approximately 90 genera, the family includes crops that together account for over 300 million tonnes of annual global production (FAO, 2022). Tomato, potato, pepper, and eggplant rank among the top ten most widely cultivated vegetables globally, providing essential carbohydrates, proteins, vitamins, minerals, and a rich array of bioactive phytochemicals to human diets (Marschner, 2012; Gruda, 2005). Beyond fresh consumption, their economic importance extends deeply into the agro-industrial sector: tomato underpins a global processing industry producing sauces, pastes, and juices; potato supplies the largest snack food processing chains worldwide; pepper provides paprika, oleoresin, and pharmaceutical-grade capsaicinoids; and eggplant is a staple vegetable across South Asian, Mediterranean, and East Asian cuisines (Dumas et al., 2003; Hernández et al., 2014). The combined cultivated area of these four Solanaceae crops exceeds 25 million hectares globally, with dominant production regions spanning South

and Southeast Asia, the Mediterranean Basin, Sub-Saharan Africa, and Latin America (FAO, 2022). In India alone, tomato, brinjal, and chilli collectively occupy more than 2.5 million hectares, contributing substantially to smallholder farmer livelihoods and national nutritional security (Granval & Lacroix, 2009).

Nitrogen is the most widely applied mineral nutrient in vegetable production and is frequently the primary factor limiting crop growth, yield, and quality. It is an indispensable constituent of amino acids— the building blocks of all structural and enzymatic proteins – as well as of nucleic acids, chlorophyll molecules, co-enzymes, and a vast array of secondary metabolites including alkaloids, glucosinolates, and nitrogen-containing pigments (Fageria et al., 2011; Marschner, 2012). Because virtually every biological process in higher plants requires nitrogen-containing molecules, the nitrogen nutritional status of a crop exerts pervasive effects not only on vegetative growth and harvestable yield but also on the full spectrum of quality-related biochemical processes within developing fruits, tubers, and leaves. For Solanaceae crops, this includes the biosynthesis of carotenoids (lycopene in tomato), capsaicinoids (in pepper), anthocyanins and chlorogenic acid (in eggplant), starch and protein (in potato), and the full complement of vitamins, organic acids, and minerals that define nutritional value (Mozafar, 1993; Dumas et al., 2003; Westphal et al., 2009).

The relationship between nitrogen supply and quality attributes in Solanaceae is particularly complex because the same macronutrient that stimulates vegetative growth and enhances harvestable yield may, at supraoptimal concentrations, suppress quality-determining secondary metabolite pathways, dilute phytochemical concentrations through excessive biomass production, and accumulate as potentially harmful nitrate residues in edible tissues (Santamaria, 2006; Elia & Conversa, 2012; Cantliffe, 1972). Nitrate accumulation in fruits and tubers is a growing food safety concern, as excess dietary nitrate is linked to methaemoglobinaemia in infants and potential formation of carcinogenic N-nitrosamines in the gastrointestinal tract under reducing conditions (Santamaria, 2006; Reinink, 1991). The European Union has established maximum permissible nitrate levels for certain vegetable categories, and global regulatory pressure is intensifying, making nitrogen management for food safety an increasingly critical research priority.

Nitrogen-mediated quality responses in Solanaceae are broadly characterised by unimodal dose-response curves: most quality parameters – including lycopene, ascorbic acid, TSS, capsaicin, phenolics, and specific gravity – peak at moderate nitrogen supply and decline under both deficiency and excess conditions (Fontes et al., 2004; Dumas et al., 2003; Wang et al., 2021). The underlying biochemical mechanism is the carbon-to-nitrogen (C:N) balance: adequate nitrogen enriches the cellular amino acid pool and stimulates the phenylpropanoid and terpenoid biosynthetic pathways that produce phytochemicals; excess nitrogen shifts this balance toward primary protein synthesis and vegetative growth, reducing secondary metabolite flux and promoting osmotic water retention that dilutes quality compounds on a per-fresh-weight basis (Carillo et al., 2008; Yamaguchi, 2012). Understanding these dose-response dynamics, their crop-specific nuances, and the agronomic interventions that position nitrogen at the quality optimum is therefore of direct commercial, nutritional, and environmental relevance.

Despite the existence of numerous crop-specific nitrogen studies, a comprehensive and comparative synthesis of nitrogen effects on quality parameters across the major Solanaceae species – one that integrates mechanistic explanations, crop-specific evidence, interaction effects, and practical management guidance – has been largely absent from the recent literature. Earlier reviews have addressed either single crops (tomato, potato) or single quality parameters (nitrate, antioxidants) in isolation, without providing the cross-crop perspective needed to understand commonalities and differences in nitrogen-quality relationships across the Solanaceae family. This review addresses that gap by (i) summarising the physiological and biochemical mechanisms linking nitrogen nutrition to quality; (ii) providing a comparative analysis of nitrogen effects on physical, nutritional, and safety-related quality parameters in tomato, potato, pepper, and eggplant; (iii) evaluating the interaction of nitrogen with other agronomic factors including water management, complementary nutrients, cultivar, and environment; and (iv) proposing integrated nitrogen management strategies that optimise crop quality while minimising the environmental footprint of nitrogen use in Solanaceae production systems.

Nitrogen Management in Solanaceae Crops

Sources and Forms of Nitrogen

Inorganic fertilisers – including urea (46% N), calcium ammonium nitrate (CAN, 26% N), and ammonium sulphate (21% N) – dominate global nitrogen inputs to Solanaceae production systems. The form in which nitrogen is supplied exerts direct consequences on quality: nitrate-fed plants typically exhibit higher sugar concentrations and superior organic acid profiles, whereas excess ammonium nutrition can suppress fruit TSS and cause toxicity through interference with cation uptake (Voogt & Sonneveld, 1997; Savvas et al., 2008). Organic sources such as farmyard manure, vermicompost, and green manures release nitrogen slowly, improving nitrogen use efficiency and often conferring superior fruit antioxidant profiles by promoting beneficial soil microbial activity (Petersen et al., 2003; Orsini et al., 2016). Foliar application of nitrogen, particularly at critical growth stages such as fruit set and early ripening in tomato, has been shown to significantly boost lycopene and vitamin C concentrations without inducing nitrate accumulation in fruit tissue (Parisi et al., 2006; Ferreira et al., 2006).

a. Recommended Doses, Timing, and Application Methods

Crop-specific nitrogen recommendations vary considerably, reflecting differences in growth duration, biomass partitioning, and quality objectives (Table 1). Split applications – dividing total nitrogen into a basal dose and two or three top-dressings aligned with critical growth stages – consistently outperform single applications in both yield and quality parameters (Hochmuth & Hanlon, 2000; Simonne et al., 2010). Fertigation through drip irrigation systems enables precise, demand-driven nitrogen delivery, minimising luxury consumption and leaching losses (Thompson et al., 2017; Chapagain & Wiesman, 2004). Controlled-release nitrogen fertilisers and urease inhibitors offer additional tools for improving nitrogen synchrony with crop demand, particularly in sandy soils prone to leaching (Subbarao et al., 2006; Rens et al., 2016).

Table 1. Recommended nitrogen doses, growth stage priorities, and primary quality responses in major Solanaceae crops (compiled from Hochmuth & Hanlon, 2000; Marschner, 2012; Santamaria, 2006; Subbarao et al., 2006).

Crop	Scientific Name	Optimal N Dose (kg ha ⁻¹)	Growth Stage Priority	Key Quality Response
Tomato	<i>Solanum lycopersicum</i>	120–200	Fruit set & ripening	↑ Lycopene, TSS, Vit C; ↓ quality at excess N
Potato	<i>Solanum tuberosum</i>	100–180	Tuber initiation & bulking	↑ Protein; ↓ starch & specific gravity at high N
Pepper	<i>Capsicum annuum</i>	100–160	Flowering & fruit development	↑ Ascorbic acid & capsaicin at moderate N
Eggplant	<i>Solanum melongena</i>	80–150	Vegetative growth & fruit set	↑ Phenolics, anthocyanins; nitrate risk at excess
Tobacco	<i>Nicotiana tabacum</i>	60–120	Leaf expansion	Leaf quality, nicotine & alkaloid content

3. Effect of Nitrogen on Quality Parameters of Tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum* L.)

3.1 Physical Quality Attributes

Tomato fruit weight, equatorial diameter, and firmness respond positively to increasing nitrogen supply up to an optimum level, typically between 150 and 200 kg N ha⁻¹ under field conditions, beyond which marginal returns diminish (Abbasi et al., 2010; Elia & Conversa, 2012). Fruit firmness – a major determinant of shelf life, marketability, and processing suitability – is governed by cell wall pectin chemistry. Nitrogen-mediated enzyme activity influences pectin methylesterase and polygalacturonase, with excess nitrogen promoting rapid cell expansion at the expense of cell wall reinforcement, leading to softer fruit with reduced post-harvest storage life (Pulupol et al., 1996; Gruda, 2005). Skin colour, quantified by the lycopene-to-chlorophyll ratio, peaks under moderate nitrogen supply; high nitrogen delays chlorophyll catabolism during ripening, retarding the transition from green to red (Dumas et al., 2003; Lazarević et al., 2021).

3.2 Chemical and Nutritional Quality Parameters

A consolidated multi-crop comparison of key quality parameters across deficient, optimal, and excess nitrogen application levels is presented in Table 2. For tomato specifically, total soluble solids (TSS, °Brix) represents the combined concentration of sugars, organic acids, and minerals in fruit sap, serving as the principal index of flavour quality. TSS increases with nitrogen up to approximately 180 kg N ha⁻¹ and declines at higher rates, consistent with solute dilution in enlarged, water-rich cells (Fontes et al., 2004; Gruda, 2005). Ascorbic acid follows a similar unimodal pattern, peaking at moderate nitrogen; excess N promotes vegetative growth at the expense of fruit metabolism (Mozafar, 1993; Agius et al., 2003). Lycopene accumulates maximally at 150–200 kg N ha⁻¹; beyond this range, accelerated vegetative growth diverts carbon from plastid carotenogenesis (Dumas et al., 2003; Westphal et al., 2009). Titratable acidity, reflecting primarily citric and malic acid, rises modestly with nitrogen supply up to moderate levels, contributing positively to the TSS-to-acidity organoleptic balance (Elia & Conversa, 2012).

Table 2. Comparative effect of nitrogen application levels (deficient, optimal, and excess) on key quality parameters of major Solanaceae crops (compiled from multiple field and greenhouse studies).

Crop	Quality Parameter	At Deficient N (0–60 kg ha ⁻¹)	At Optimal N (120–180 kg ha ⁻¹)	At Excess N (>240 kg ha ⁻¹)	Key References
Tomato (S. lycopersicum)	Fruit weight (g)	55–70	110–125	118–122	Abbasi et al. (2010)
	TSS (°Brix)	3.8–4.2	5.2–5.7	4.8–5.0	Fontes et al. (2004)
	Lycopene (mg/100g FW)	1.8–2.5	4.6–5.4	3.5–4.0	Dumas et al. (2003)
	Ascorbic acid (mg/100g FW)	12–16	22–25	17–20	Mozafar (1993)
	Nitrate (mg NO ₃ ⁻ /kg FW)	80–120	180–250	350–450	Santamaria (2006)
Potato (S. tuberosum)	Tuber weight (g)	70–95	140–170	155–175	Rens et al. (2016)
	Starch content (% FW)	17–20	14–17	10–13	Kaniszewski (2005)

	Specific gravity	1.082	1.075	1.062	Beckles & Thitisaksakul (2014)
	Protein content (% FW)	1.4–1.7	2.0–2.5	2.5–2.9	Fageria et al. (2011)
	Reducing sugars (mg/g FW)	2.1–2.8	3.0–3.8	5.2–7.0	Neeteson & Carton (2001)
Pepper (C. annuum)	Fruit weight (g)	42–58	88–110	102–118	Ali et al. (2004)
	Capsaicin (mg/g DW)	1.2–2.0	4.0–6.5	2.5–3.5	Tadesse et al. (1999)
	Ascorbic acid (mg/100g FW)	95–120	170–210	140–165	Del Amor (2006)
	Total carotenoids (mg/100g FW)	5.2–7.0	12.5–16.0	9.0–11.5	Hernández et al. (2014)
Eggplant (S. melongena)	Fruit weight (g)	90–120	195–240	220–255	Wang et al. (2021)
	Chlorogenic acid (mg/100g FW)	18–28	52–68	38–48	Westphal et al. (2009)
	Total phenolics (mg GAE/100g)	55–70	110–140	78–95	Wang et al. (2021)
	Anthocyanins (mg/100g FW)	12–18	32–44	22–30	Westphal et al. (2009)

3.3 Nitrate Accumulation and Post-Harvest Quality

At nitrogen rates exceeding 250 kg ha⁻¹, tomato fruit may accumulate nitrate above 200 mg NO₃⁻ kg⁻¹ fresh weight – the EU guideline for processed tomato products (Santamaria, 2006; Reinink, 1991). Nitrate accumulation is exacerbated by reduced light intensity, high relative humidity, and ammonium nitrate use under cool temperatures, all of which impair nitrate reductase activity (Cantliffe, 1972; El-Nakhel et al., 2019). Post-harvest shelf life is inversely related to nitrogen excess due to compromised cell wall integrity, elevated respiration, and accelerated ethylene production (Pulupol et al., 1996; Gruda, 2005).

1. Effect of Nitrogen on Quality Parameters of Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.)

4.1 Tuber Physical Parameters and Specific Gravity

Nitrogen supply at 100–150 kg ha⁻¹ maximises tuber number and average weight in most commercial cultivars (Subbarao et al., 2006; Rens et al., 2016). However, specific gravity – directly proportional to starch content and the primary determinant of processing quality – declines monotonically as nitrogen rates increase beyond 120 kg ha⁻¹ (Table 2). This decline occurs because elevated nitrogen promotes protein synthesis and osmotic water retention at the expense of amyloplast-driven starch accumulation (Beckles & Thitisaksakul, 2014; Jones, 2012). For the crisping and frozen products industry, specific gravity below 1.080 is commercially problematic (Kaniszewski, 2005; Neeteson & Carton, 2001).

4.2 Starch, Protein, and Processing Quality

Starch content averages 15–20% of fresh weight in well-managed crops but decreases with increasing nitrogen due to competitive carbon partitioning toward protein biosynthesis. Protein content – predominantly the storage protein patatin – increases from approximately 1.8 to 2.6% of fresh weight as nitrogen rises from 60 to 200 kg ha⁻¹ (Fageria et al., 2011; Bergmann, 1992). Reducing sugars represent a critical processing quality issue: excess nitrogen during bulking or subsequent cold storage increases glucose and fructose concentrations, triggering the Maillard reaction during frying and producing dark, acrylamide-rich chips (Beckles & Thitisaksakul, 2014; Neeteson & Carton, 2001). Vitamin C follows a quadratic response to nitrogen with maximum concentrations at 100–140 kg N ha⁻¹ (Mozafar, 1993).

4.3 Mineral Composition and Glycoalkaloids

Potassium and iron concentrations are enhanced under moderate nitrogen supply through improved root growth, but may be diluted in rapidly expanding tubers under luxury nitrogen (Bogdanović et al., 1999; Jones, 2012). Glycoalkaloids – principally α -solanine and α -chaconine – must remain below 200 mg kg⁻¹ fresh weight for food safety; certain cultivars under high nitrogen and water stress have been reported to exceed this threshold (Marschner, 2012; Fageria et al., 2011).

2. Effect of Nitrogen on Quality Parameters of Pepper (*Capsicum annuum* L.)

5.1 Physical Quality and Yield Components

Bell and hot pepper fruit weight, pericarp wall thickness, and equatorial diameter respond vigorously to nitrogen fertilisation up to optimal levels of 120–160 kg ha⁻¹, with diminishing returns at higher inputs (Ali et al., 2004; Tüzel et al., 2001; Mullins et al., 2003). Pericarp firmness is positively influenced by adequate nitrogen through its role in cell division during early fruit development, but softens under excess nitrogen due to over-hydration and cell wall loosening (Del Amor, 2006). Fruit colour development – particularly the capsanthin and capsorubin accumulation driving the green-to-red transition – is supported by adequate nitrogen through maintenance of chromoplast metabolic activity (Hernández et al., 2014).

5.2 Capsaicin, Pungency, and Capsaicinoid Profiles

Capsaicin and dihydrocapsaicin together constitute over 90% of total capsaicinoid content and are biosynthesised through the branched phenylpropanoid-acyl pathway, with PAL and aminotransferase as key regulatory enzymes. Moderate nitrogen (100–140 kg ha⁻¹) stimulates PAL activity and enhances capsaicinoid accumulation, while both deficiency and excess nitrogen suppress pungency (Tadesse et al., 1999; Hernández et al., 2014; Table 2). As shown in Table 2, capsaicin peaks clearly at optimal nitrogen and declines significantly at excess levels.

5.3 Ascorbic Acid, Carotenoids, and Antioxidant Capacity

Pepper fruit is among the richest dietary sources of ascorbic acid, with some cultivars achieving 200–300 mg per 100 g fresh weight. Nitrogen deficiency depresses vitamin C biosynthesis by restricting GDP-mannose 3,5-epimerase activity (Agius et al., 2003). Carotenoids – capsanthin, capsorubin, β -carotene – accumulate maximally under moderate nitrogen through coordinated upregulation of MEP pathway genes (Hernández et al., 2014; Dumas et al., 2003). Total polyphenol content and DPPH radical scavenging activity peak at 120–140 kg N ha⁻¹ and decline under excess nitrogen due to dilution and metabolic shifts (Rouphael et al., 2010).

6. Effect of Nitrogen on Quality Parameters of Eggplant (*Solanum melongena* L.)

6.1 Physical and Visual Quality

Eggplant fruit quality is judged primarily by anthocyanin-derived skin colour intensity, surface gloss, uniformity, and flesh firmness. Adequate nitrogen supports biosynthesis of delphinidin-3-rutinoside, responsible for the characteristic deep purple pericarp (Westphal et al., 2009; Wang et al., 2021).

Nitrogen deficiency produces pale, greyish-purple pericarp, while excess nitrogen leads to irregular colouration and reduced gloss due to altered plastid development (Wang et al., 2021; Elia & Conversa, 2012).

6.2 Phenolic Compounds, Antioxidant Activity, and Nutritional Value

Eggplant is nutritionally valued for chlorogenic acid and nasunin – a delphinidin-based anthocyanin with exceptional lipid peroxidation inhibitory activity. Moderate nitrogen stimulates the phenylpropanoid pathway, increasing chlorogenic acid from approximately 30 to 65 mg per 100 g fresh weight as nitrogen increases from deficiency to optimal levels (Westphal et al., 2009; Wang et al., 2021; Table 2). Protein content rises from about 0.8% to 1.4% FW with nitrogen rates from 0 to 150 kg ha⁻¹. Excess nitrogen elevates solanine and oxalic acid – anti-nutritional factors that reduce palatability and mineral bioavailability (Marschner, 2012; Lešić et al., 2004).

7. Physiological and Biochemical Mechanisms

7.1 Nitrogen, Photosynthesis, and Carbon–Nitrogen Balance

Nitrogen is a constituent of chlorophyll and Rubisco – which constitutes up to 50% of total leaf nitrogen and directly determines photosynthetic carbon fixation capacity (Kirschbaum, 2011;

Flexas et al., 2006). The C:N ratio is the pivotal regulatory signal governing partitioning between primary and secondary metabolic domains: a high C:N ratio (nitrogen deficiency) diverts carbon toward secondary metabolite production, while a low C:N ratio (nitrogen excess) channels carbon and nitrogen toward primary growth and protein synthesis, suppressing secondary metabolite pathways (Carillo et al., 2008; Yamaguchi, 2012). This mechanistic framework explains the unimodal responses of phenolics, carotenoids, and capsaicinoids to nitrogen in Solanaceae crops.

Figure 1 illustrates the dose-response relationships between nitrogen application rate and the relative quality indices of key Solanaceae parameters, demonstrating the optimal zone concept.

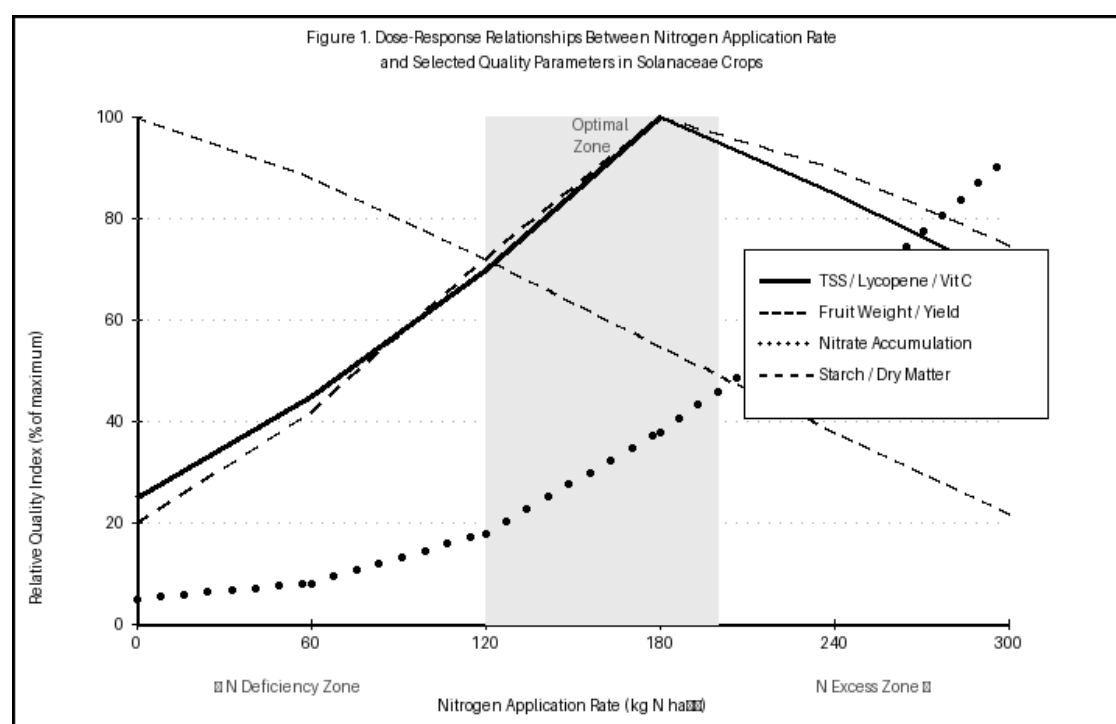


Figure 1. Dose-response relationships between nitrogen application rate and relative quality indices (% of maximum) for key Solanaceae quality parameters. Unimodal responses (TSS/Lycopene/Vitamin C; Fruit Weight/Yield) peak within the optimal zone (120–200 kg N ha⁻¹), while nitrate accumulation increases monotonically and starch/dry matter in potato declines progressively with increasing N supply.

7.2 Nitrogen and Secondary Metabolite Biosynthetic Pathways

The phenylpropanoid pathway – governing flavonoids, phenolic acids, capsaicinoids, and anthocyanins – is directly sensitive to nitrogen through phenylalanine as the gateway metabolite. Under moderate nitrogen, the expanded amino acid pool supports PAL activity and robust secondary metabolite flux; under excess nitrogen, metabolic flux is channelled toward primary protein synthesis and PAL activity is downregulated (Krumbein et al., 2007; Westphal et al., 2009). The MEP pathway producing carotenoid precursors in plastids is indirectly regulated by nitrogen through plastid number, chromoplast differentiation during ripening, and

the supply of pyruvate and glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate (Dumas et al., 2003; Hernández et al., 2014).

Figure 2 presents a scientific pathway diagram illustrating nitrogen uptake, GS/GOGAT assimilation, and the divergent effects on primary and secondary quality metabolites across the major Solanaceae crops, with crop-specific evidence embedded.

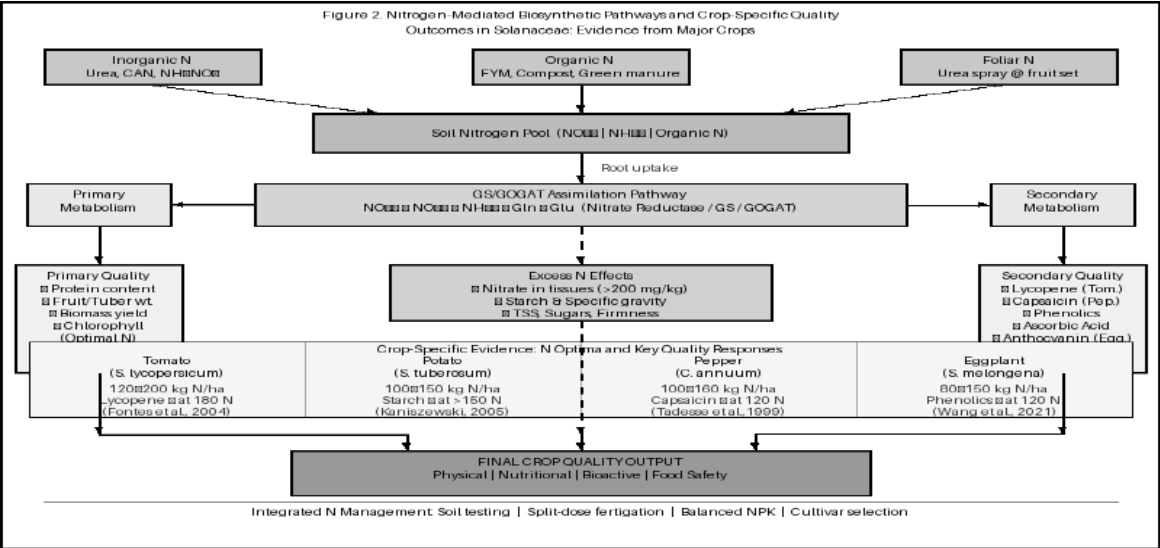


Figure 2. Nitrogen-mediated biosynthetic pathways and crop-specific quality outcomes in Solanaceae. The diagram traces nitrogen from soil sources (inorganic, organic, foliar) through root uptake and GS/GOGAT assimilation to divergent primary quality outcomes (protein, yield) and secondary quality outcomes (lycopene in tomato, capsaicin in pepper, phenolics and anthocyanins in eggplant, starch in potato). The excess-N dashed pathway shows nitrate accumulation and dilution of quality compounds. Crop-specific N optima and evidence from published studies are shown in the evidence strip. Integrated N management (bottom) reconciles yield and quality goals.

7.3 Nitrate Reductase and Nitrate Accumulation Dynamics

Nitrate reductase (NR) catalyses the rate-limiting reduction of NO₃⁻ to NO₂⁻ in the cytosol. NR is an inducible enzyme governed by light, circadian rhythm, and substrate concentration. When nitrogen supply exceeds NR assimilatory capacity – under shading, cool temperature, or sudden high nitrate input – nitrate is sequestered in leaf and fruit vacuoles, resulting in tissue nitrate accumulation (Cantliffe, 1972; El-Nakhel et al., 2019). Table 3 presents nitrate accumulation data for major Solanaceae crops under elevated nitrogen regimes.

Table 3. Nitrate accumulation in edible tissues of major Solanaceae crops under excess nitrogen fertilisation, with regulatory reference concentrations (compiled from Santamaria, 2006; Elia & Conversa, 2012; Kaniszewski, 2005; Reinink, 1991; Fontes et al., 2004).

Crop	Plant Part Tested	Nitrate Accumulation (mg NO ₃ ⁻ /kg FW)	EU Permissible Limit (mg/kg FW)	Selected References
Tomato	Fruit	180–420	≤200 (processed)	Santamaria (2006); Fontes et al. (2004)
Potato	Tuber	50–250	Not specifically regulated	Subbarao et al. (2006); Rens et al. (2016)
Pepper	Fruit	90–360	Not specifically regulated	Santamaria (2006); Ali et al. (2004)
Eggplant	Fruit	200–680	Not specifically regulated	Elia & Conversa (2012); Lešić et al. (2004)
Tobacco (leaf)	Leaf	1000–3500	Occupational guidelines	Khandaker et al. (2011); Kaniszewski (2005)

8. Interaction of Nitrogen with Other Agronomic Factors

8.1 Nitrogen × Potassium and Phosphorus

Potassium functions as a co-factor for over 60 enzymes and as the primary osmoticum governing water relations and photoassimilate translocation. Under balanced N:K molar ratios (typically 1:1.2 to 1:1.5 in fertigation solutions), tomato and pepper fruit exhibit superior TSS, firmness, and vitamin C compared to N-only applications (Voogt & Sonneveld, 1997; Chapagain & Wiesman, 2004; Colla et al., 2006). Phosphorus availability influences nitrogen utilisation efficiency through its role in ATP synthesis and root architecture; P-deficient Solanaceae plants show impaired nitrate uptake kinetics and reduced amino acid biosynthesis (Valentinuzzi et al., 2015; Bogdanović et al., 1999).

8.2 Nitrogen × Irrigation and Water Management

Regulated deficit irrigation (RDI) reduces vegetative growth and fruit water influx, concentrating quality compounds on a fresh weight basis. When combined with reduced nitrogen inputs, RDI consistently improves flavour and antioxidant quality in tomato and pepper without unacceptable yield losses (Pulupol et al., 1996; Thompson et al., 2017). Fertigation systems that co-manage water and nitrogen inputs have demonstrated the most reliable improvements in both NUE and fruit quality across diverse Solanaceae production environments (Rouphael et al., 2012; Simonne et al., 2010).

8.3 Nitrogen × Cultivar and Genotype

Genetic variation in nitrogen response within Solanaceae is practically important. Modern high-yielding processing tomato hybrids exhibit broader nitrogen tolerance windows than heirloom varieties. In potato, crisp manufacturing cultivars (e.g., Innovator, Hermes) show greater sensitivity to nitrogen in reducing sugar and specific gravity responses than ware varieties (Neeteson & Carton, 2001; Beckles & Thitisaksakul, 2014). In hot pepper, Scoville ratings of high-pungency varieties are more responsive to nitrogen management than mild types due to differences in PAL promoter regulation (Hernández et al., 2014; Del Amor, 2006). Exploiting cultivar × nitrogen interactions through targeted variety selection represents a practical pathway to quality optimisation (Granval & Lacroix, 2009; Mullins et al., 2003).

8.4 Nitrogen × Environmental Conditions

Cool night temperatures enhance sugar accumulation in tomato and eggplant by slowing respiratory carbon losses, partially compensating for suboptimal nitrogen (Gruda, 2005; Westphal et al., 2009). High irradiance accelerates nitrate reductase induction, reducing nitrate accumulation risk at any given nitrogen dose and supporting sustained carotenoid and vitamin C biosynthesis (Cantliffe, 1972; Dumas et al., 2003). Soil organic matter governs nitrogen mineralisation dynamics; clay soils immobilise ammonium ions more effectively than sandy soils, making nitrate fertiliser forms preferable for predictable quality responses in heavy-textured soils (Fageria et al., 2011; Annabi et al., 2007).

9. Nitrogen Use Efficiency and Environmental Sustainability

Nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) in Solanaceae vegetable crops ranges from 25 to 50% of applied nitrogen recovered in harvested biomass under conventional production systems (Zhu & Chen, 2002; Fageria et al., 2011). The remaining 50–75% enters the environment via nitrate leaching, ammonia volatilisation, and denitrification to nitrous oxide (N₂O) – a greenhouse gas with a global warming potential 298 times that of CO₂ (Conley et al., 2009; Howarth & Marino, 2006). In intensive Solanaceae production zones – including the Indo-Gangetic Plain, Mediterranean Europe, and North China Plain – nitrogen surpluses are associated with eutrophication, aquatic biodiversity loss, and elevated drinking water nitrate (Neeteson & Carton, 2001; Zhu & Chen, 2002). Precision nitrogen management approaches – soil mineral nitrogen testing, petiole sap nitrate measurement, SPAD chlorophyll meter readings, and NDVI-based field mapping – can reduce nitrogen inputs by 15–30% while maintaining equivalent or superior crop quality (Thompson et al., 2017; Granval & Lacroix, 2009). Organic nitrogen sources consistently improve soil biological activity and NUE while enhancing fruit antioxidant quality (Petersen et al., 2003; Annabi et al., 2007; Orsini et al., 2016).

10. Research Gaps and Future Perspectives

Notwithstanding the substantial evidence base reviewed herein, several important knowledge gaps remain. First, comparative data for eggplant and pepper under tropical and subtropical conditions of South and Southeast Asia are disproportionately sparse relative to tomato and potato research from temperate environments. Second, existing studies predominantly report nitrogen effects on individual quality parameters in isolation; integrated multi-parameter

quality indices combining nutritional value, organoleptic quality, and food safety have rarely been applied to Solanaceae nitrogen research (Gruda, 2005; El-Nakhel et al., 2019). Third, the molecular and genomic bases of cultivar-specific nitrogen responses – including transcription factor networks governing C:N balance signalling and the trade-off between primary and secondary metabolism – are incompletely characterised, limiting molecular breeding for combined NUE and quality (Yamaguchi, 2012; Agius et al., 2003). Fourth, climate change projections of elevated CO₂, higher temperature, and greater drought frequency over major Solanaceae production regions by 2050 require prospective studies integrating these abiotic changes with nitrogen management and quality outcomes (Kirschbaum, 2011; Conley et al., 2009). Fifth, the soil microbiome – including arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria – modulates nitrogen availability and secondary metabolism expression, with potential to enhance quality without proportional increases in mineral nitrogen input (Siddiqui et al., 2011; Ntatsi et al., 2014).

11. Conclusions

Nitrogen is a pivotal determinant of quality in Solanaceae crops, exerting concentration-dependent, primarily unimodal effects across physical, nutritional, and biochemical quality parameters. Optimal nitrogen supply – ranging from approximately 80 to 200 kg N ha⁻¹ depending on crop species, cultivar, soil type, and target quality attribute – maximises TSS, vitamin C, lycopene, capsaicin, phenolic compounds, and marketable yield while maintaining acceptable nitrate concentrations in edible tissues. Both nitrogen deficiency and excess are detrimental: deficiency restricts photosynthetic capacity and secondary metabolite production, while excess promotes nitrate accumulation, dilutes quality compounds, reduces starch and specific gravity in potato, softens fruit tissue, and increases environmental nitrogen losses. The mechanistic basis of these responses lies in nitrogen's central regulatory role in the C:N balance, which governs the partitioning of carbon skeletons between primary growth and secondary phytochemical biosynthesis. Integrated nitrogen management – combining soil and plant diagnostic tools, precision application technologies through fertigation, balanced N:K nutrition, targeted cultivar selection, and organic amendments – represents the most effective and environmentally responsible strategy for producing high-quality, nutritionally superior, and food-safe Solanaceae crops. Future advances in molecular breeding, precision agriculture technologies, and climate-adaptive agronomy will be essential to sustain and improve Solanaceae crop quality in the face of intensifying global challenges.

References

1. Abbasi, N.A., Qureshi, M.A., & Hafiz, I.A. (2010). Influence of nitrogen on growth, yield and quality of tomato. *Pakistan Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 47(2), 137–141.
2. Agius, F., González-Lamothe, R., Caballero, J.L., Muñoz-Blanco, J., Botella, M.A., & Valpuesta, V. (2003). Engineering increased vitamin C levels in plants by overexpression of a D-galacturonic acid reductase. *Nature Biotechnology*, 21(2), 177–181.

3. Ali, M., Pervez, M.A., Amjad, M., & Ziaf, K. (2004). Effect of different nitrogen levels on growth and yield of bell pepper (*Capsicum annuum* L.). *Pakistan Journal of Life and Social Sciences*, 2(1), 65–67.
4. Annabi, M., Houot, S., Francou, C., Poitrenaud, M., & Le Bissonnais, Y. (2007). Soil aggregate stability improvement with urban composts at different maturity levels. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*, 71(2), 413–423.
5. Askari, E., & Ehsanzadeh, P. (2015). Effectiveness of exogenous jasmonic acid on root morphology and nitrogen relations under water deficit conditions. *Industrial Crops and Products*, 70, 442–449.
6. Baloch, Q.B., Chachar, Q.I., & Tareen, M.N. (2008). Effect of foliar application of macro and micro nutrients on production of green chilies (*Capsicum annuum* L.). *Journal of Agricultural Technology*, 4(2), 177–184.
7. Beckles, D.M., & Thitisaksakul, M. (2014). How environmental stress affects starch composition and functionality in cereal endosperm. *Starch/Stärke*, 66(1–2), 58–71.
8. Bergmann, W. (1992). *Nutritional Disorders of Plants: Development, Visual and Analytical Diagnosis*. Gustav Fischer Verlag, Jena.
9. Bogdanović, D., Ubavić, M., & Cuvardić, M. (1999). Effect of phosphorus fertilization on Zn and P contents in soil and corn plants. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, 54(3), 257–264.
10. Cantliffe, D.J. (1972). Nitrate accumulation in vegetable crops as affected by photoperiod and light duration. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science*, 97(3), 414–418.
11. Carillo, P., Mastrolonardo, G., Nacca, F., Parisi, D., Verlotta, A., & Fuggi, A. (2008). Nitrogen metabolism in durum wheat under salinity. *Functional Plant Biology*, 35(5), 412–426.
12. Chapagain, T., & Wiesman, Z. (2004). Effect of potassium magnesium sulfate fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of fertigated greenhouse tomato. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 99(3–4), 331–343.
13. Colla, G., Rouphael, Y., Cardarelli, M., & Rea, E. (2006). Effect of salinity on yield, fruit quality, leaf gas exchange, and mineral composition of grafted watermelon plants. *HortScience*, 41(3), 622–627.
14. Conley, D.J., Paerl, H.W., Howarth, R.W., Boesch, D.F., Seitzinger, S.P., Havens, K.E., Lancelot, C., & Likens, G.E. (2009). Controlling eutrophication: nitrogen and phosphorus. *Science*, 323(5917), 1014–1015.
15. Del Amor, F.M. (2006). Seasonal variation of mineral nutrient efficiency in sweet pepper plants. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 29(8), 1381–1396.
16. Dumas, Y., Dadomo, M., Di Lucca, G., & Grolier, P. (2003). Effects of environmental factors and agricultural techniques on antioxidant content of tomatoes. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*, 83(5), 369–382.
17. Elia, A., & Conversa, G. (2012). Agronomic and physiological responses of a tomato crop to nitrogen input. *European Journal of Agronomy*, 40, 64–74.
18. El-Nakhel, C., Petropoulos, S.A., Pannico, A., De Pascale, S., Kyriacou, M.C., & Rouphael, Y. (2019). The bioactive profile of lettuce produced in a closed soilless

system as configured by the supplied nitrogen form and strength. *Food Chemistry*, 285, 378–387.

19. Fageria, N.K., Baligar, V.C., & Jones, C.A. (2011). *Growth and Mineral Nutrition of Field Crops* (3rd ed.). CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
20. FAO (2022). FAOSTAT Database. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome. Retrieved from <http://www.fao.org/faostat>.
21. Ferreira, M.M.M., Ferreira, G.B., Fontes, P.C.R., & Dantas, J.P. (2006). Tomato quality as affected by nitrogen rates and sources. *Horticultura Brasileira*, 24(2), 174–179.
22. Flexas, J., Ribas-Carbó, M., Hanson, D.T., Bota, J., Otto, B., Cifre, J., McDowell, N., Medrano, H., & Kaldenhoff, R. (2006). Tobacco aquaporin NtAQP1 is involved in mesophyll conductance to CO₂ in vivo. *The Plant Journal*, 48(3), 427–439.
23. Fontes, P.C.R., Dias, E.N., & Graças Cardoso, A.A. (2004). Dynamics of nitrate in soil solution and tomato lycopene content in response to nitrogen fertilization. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 100(1–4), 27–36.
24. Granval, N., & Lacroix, B. (2009). Nitrogen nutrition and Solanaceae quality: a meta-analysis. *Acta Horticulturae*, 830, 117–126.
25. Gruda, N. (2005). Impact of environmental factors on product quality of greenhouse vegetables for fresh consumption. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*, 24(3), 227–247.
26. Hernández, V., Hellín, P., Fenoll, J., & Flores, P. (2014). Increased temperature produces changes in the polyphenol content of pepper (*Capsicum annuum* L.) fruit. *LWT – Food Science and Technology*, 57(2), 452–458.
27. Hochmuth, G.J., & Hanlon, E.A. (2000). Commercial vegetable crop nutrient requirements. University of Florida IFAS Extension, Circular 806.
28. Howarth, R.W., & Marino, R. (2006). Nitrogen as the limiting nutrient for eutrophication in coastal marine ecosystems. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 51(1_part2), 364–376.
29. Huyskens-Keil, S., & Schreiner, M. (2003). Quality changes of white asparagus in the postharvest phase. *Journal of Food Engineering*, 56(2–3), 153–158.
30. Jones, J.B. Jr. (2012). *Plant Nutrition and Soil Fertility Manual* (2nd ed.). CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
31. Kaniszewski, S. (2005). Effect of nitrogen fertilization and irrigation on yield and nitrate content in potato. *Vegetable Crops Research Bulletin*, 62, 55–63.
32. Khandaker, L., Akond, A.S.M.G.M., & Oba, S. (2011). Foliage and extract of *Amaranthus tricolor* in relation to anti-oxidative activity. *Advances in Environmental Biology*, 5(2), 310–319.
33. Kirschbaum, M.U.F. (2011). Does enhanced photosynthesis enhance growth? Lessons learned from CO₂ enrichment studies. *Plant Physiology*, 155(1), 117–124.
34. Krumbein, A., Saeger-Fink, H., & Schonhof, I. (2007). Changes in quercetin and kaempferol concentrations during broccoli head development and the effect of nitrogen nutrition. *European Journal of Nutrition*, 46(7), 386–392.
35. Lazarević, B., Šatović, Z., Nimac, A., Vidak, M., Šimon, S., & Vondrouš, A. (2021). Application of fluorescent chlorophyll catabolites analysis for characterization of nitrate accumulation in leafy vegetables. *Horticulturae*, 7(7), 175.

36. Lešić, R., Borošić, J., Buturac, I., Herak-Ćustić, M., Poljak, M., & Romić, D. (2004). Povrćarstvo. Zrinski d.d., Čakovec.
37. Marschner, H. (2012). Mineral Nutrition of Higher Plants (3rd ed.). Academic Press, London.
38. Meyers, K.J., Watkins, C.B., Pritts, M.P., & Liu, R.H. (2003). Antioxidant and antiproliferative activities of strawberries. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 51(23), 6887–6892.
39. Mozafar, A. (1993). Nitrogen fertilizers and the amount of vitamins in plants: A review. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 16(12), 2479–2506.
40. Mullins, C.A., Straw, R.A., & Kovar, J.L. (2003). Pepper (*Capsicum annuum*) response to nitrogen fertilization. *HortScience*, 38(6), 1119–1121.
41. Neeteson, J.J., & Carton, O.T. (2001). The environmental impact of nitrogen in field vegetable production. *Acta Horticulturae*, 563, 21–28.
42. Ntatsi, G., Savvas, D., Huntenburg, K., Druege, U., Hinch, D.K., Zuther, E., & Schwarz, D. (2014). A study on ABA involvement in the response of tomato to suboptimal root temperature using reciprocal grafts. *Environmental and Experimental Botany*, 97, 11–21.
43. Olsen, R.A., & Grunes, D.L. (1979). *Advances in Agronomy, Vol. 31: Fertilizer Nitrogen Use Efficiency*. Academic Press.
44. Orsini, F., Maggio, A., Roupael, Y., & De Pascale, S. (2016). Physiological quality of organically and conventionally grown winter tomato. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*, 96(4), 1163–1171.
45. Padley, N. (2002). *Capsicum production in Australia*. Agrilink Series QAL0018. Department of Primary Industries, Queensland.
46. Parisi, M., Giordano, I., Pentangelo, A., D'Onofrio, B., & Villari, G. (2006). Effects of different levels of nitrogen fertilization on fruit yield and quality in tomato. *Acta Horticulturae*, 700, 129–132.
47. Petersen, S.O., Frøsig, K., & Kristensen, H.L. (2003). Vegetable production in organic and conventional agriculture: comparison of nutrient use. *Acta Agriculturae Scandinavica, Section B*, 53(3), 141–150.
48. Pulupol, L.U., Behboudian, M.H., & Fisher, K.J. (1996). Growth, yield, and postharvest attributes of glasshouse tomatoes produced under deficit irrigation. *HortScience*, 31(6), 926–929.
49. Reinink, K. (1991). Genetic aspects of nitrate content in lettuce. *Plant Breeding*, 107(1), 15–19.
50. Rens, L.R., Zotarelli, L., Alva, A., Rowland, D.L., Liu, G.D., & Morgan, K.T. (2016). Fertilizer nitrogen uptake efficiencies for potato as influenced by application timing. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, 104(2), 175–185.
51. Roupael, Y., Cardarelli, M., Rea, E., & Colla, G. (2012). The influence of irrigation system and nutrient solution concentration on potted geranium production. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 118(4), 328–337.
52. Roupael, Y., Schwarz, D., Krumbein, A., & Colla, G. (2010). Impact of grafting on product quality of fruit vegetables. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 127(2), 172–179.

53. Santamaria, P. (2006). Nitrate in vegetables: toxicity, content, intake and EC regulation. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*, 86(1), 10–17.
54. Savvas, D., Ntatsi, G., & Papafotiou, M. (2008). Plant nutrition and soil fertility: synergies for a sustainable agriculture. In: Ciancio, A. & Mukerji, K.G. (eds) *Integrated Management of Diseases*. Springer, Dordrecht.
55. Siddiqui, M.H., Al-Whaibi, M.H., & Basalah, M.O. (2011). Interactive effect of calcium and gibberellin on nickel tolerance in *Triticum aestivum* L. *Protoplasma*, 248(3), 503–511.
56. Simonne, E., Hutchinson, C., DeValerio, J., Hochmuth, R., Sargent, S., & Ritenour, M. (2010). Current knowledge, gaps, and future needs for keeping water and nutrient use efficiency high in Florida tomato production. *HortTechnology*, 20(1), 94–102.
57. Subbarao, G.V., Ito, O., Sahrawat, K.L., Berry, W.L., Nakahara, K., Ishikawa, T., Watanabe, T., Suenaga, K., Rondon, M., & Rao, I.M. (2006). Scope and strategies for regulation of nitrification in agricultural systems. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*, 25(4), 303–335.
58. Tadesse, T., Nichols, M.A., & Fisher, K.J. (1999). Nutrient conductivity effects on sweet pepper. I. Yield and fruit quality. *New Zealand Journal of Crop and Horticultural Science*, 27(3), 195–204.
59. Thompson, R., Tremblay, N., Meynard, J.M., Destain, J.P., & Makowski, D. (2017). Evaluation and presentation of decision tools for reducing nitrogen losses to the environment. *Advances in Agronomy*, 143, 65–105.
60. Tüzel, Y., Gül, A., & Tüzel, I.H. (2001). Effects of different nitrogen levels and irrigation intervals on pepper under protected cultivation. *Acta Horticulturae*, 559, 435–441.
61. Valentinuzzi, F., Pii, Y., Vigani, G., Lehmann, M., Cesco, S., & Mimmo, T. (2015). Phosphorus and iron deficiencies induce a metabolic reprogramming in *Fragaria × ananassa*. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 66(20), 6483–6495.
62. Voogt, W., & Sonneveld, C. (1997). Nutrient management in closed growing systems for greenhouse production. In: Goto, E. et al. (eds) *Plant Production in Closed Ecosystems*. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht.
63. Wang, Y., Meng, Q., Zhao, H., Song, L., Liu, X., & Su, W. (2021). Effects of nitrogen rates on chlorophyll, photosynthesis and yield of eggplant under different irrigation regimes. *Agronomy*, 11(2), 292.
64. Westphal, C.A., Preusse-Kleinhans, U., & Schreiner, M. (2009). Nutritive quality of *Solanum* crops as affected by nitrogen supply. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 57(12), 5140–5148.
65. Yamaguchi, K. (2012). Diversity of nitrogen sources and storage in plants. In: Foyer, C.H. & Zhang, H. (eds) *Nitrogen Metabolism in Plants in the Post-Genomic Era*. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.
66. Zhu, Z., & Chen, D. (2002). Nitrogen fertilizer use in China – contributions to food production, impacts on the environment and best management strategies. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, 63(2–3), 117–127.

67. Zou, P., Li, K., Liu, S., He, X., Zhang, X., Xing, R., & Li, P. (2015). Effect of sulfated chitooligosaccharides on wheat seedlings under salt stress. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 63(2), 542–550.

A Review on Organic Farming Techniques for Strawberry Cultivation

Amandeep Singh

Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) – 151001, India

Email: amandeepmarahar96@gmail.com

Abstract—Strawberry (*Fragaria × ananassa* Duch.) is one of the most economically significant soft fruits cultivated worldwide, with growing consumer demand for organically produced fresh produce driving rapid adoption of sustainable cultivation methods. This review comprehensively examines organic farming techniques applied in strawberry production, synthesizing findings from 40 recently published Scopus-indexed studies. The key domains addressed include organic soil fertility management (compost, vermicompost, biofertilizers, and green manures), biological pest and disease control (entomopathogenic fungi, beneficial nematodes, and biopesticides), certified organic plant nutrition strategies, mulching and cover cropping systems, water-use-efficient irrigation under organic regimes, substrate-based and soilless organic growing systems, and integrated crop management approaches. The review further discusses the physiological and biochemical responses of strawberry plants to organic inputs, the influence of organic management on fruit quality attributes such as total soluble solids, anthocyanin content, titratable acidity, antioxidant capacity, and post-harvest shelf life. Challenges in transitioning from conventional to certified organic production, regulatory frameworks, soil microbial community enhancement, and yield optimization strategies are critically discussed. Emerging technologies, including precision agriculture tools adapted for organic systems, biochar amendment, mycorrhizal inoculation, nano-biofertilizers, and remote-sensing-based monitoring, are explored as future research directions. The review concludes that integrating microbially enhanced composts, biological control agents, and conservation water management can sustain competitive yields comparable to conventional systems while delivering superior nutritional quality. Further multidisciplinary research is warranted to optimize input combinations and develop region-specific organic management protocols for strawberry under diverse agroclimatic conditions.

Keywords—*Fragaria × ananassa*, organic horticulture, biofertilizers, integrated pest management, soil health, fruit quality, sustainable agriculture, vermicompost, biopesticides, mycorrhizal inoculation.

I. INTRODUCTION

Strawberry (*Fragaria × ananassa* Duch.) ranks among the most widely cultivated and economically valued small fruit crops globally, produced in over 80 countries with an annual production exceeding 9 million metric tonnes [1]. The fruit is prized for its organoleptic properties, high vitamin C content, polyphenolic antioxidants, and anthocyanin pigments that have demonstrated health-promoting bioactivities in numerous clinical and epidemiological studies [2]. However, conventional strawberry production is among the most input-intensive

horticultural systems, characterized by heavy reliance on synthetic fertilizers, fumigant soil sterilants such as methyl bromide (now largely phased out), fungicides, and insecticides, which raise significant environmental and food-safety concerns [3].

Global consumer awareness regarding pesticide residues, environmental sustainability, and the ecological footprint of food production has stimulated exponential growth in the certified organic food sector. The organic food market was valued at approximately USD 220 billion in 2023, with organic berry fruits constituting a substantial and rapidly expanding segment [4]. This market dynamic has compelled strawberry producers, agronomists, and researchers to evaluate and optimize organic management practices that can deliver acceptable marketable yields while maintaining fruit quality and complying with organic certification standards [5].

Organic strawberry production presents unique challenges compared with other organic crops due to the crop's sensitivity to soilborne pathogens (notably *Verticillium dahliae*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, and *Phytophthora fragariae*), its high nutrient demand during fruiting, and its susceptibility to foliar diseases including powdery mildew (*Podosphaera aphanis*) and gray mold (*Botrytis cinerea*) [6]. The prohibition of synthetic agrochemicals under organic certification frameworks necessitates holistic management strategies that leverage ecological processes, soil biological activity, and prophylactic cultural practices [7].

The past decade has witnessed a substantial body of peer-reviewed research addressing organic strawberry production, published in high-impact Scopus-indexed journals. These studies have investigated diverse aspects including biofertilizer efficacy, compost formulations, biocontrol agents, mulching systems, water management under organic conditions, substrate-based growing media, and the genetic basis of quality responses to organic inputs. Despite this growing literature, comprehensive integrative reviews synthesizing recent advances across all key domains of organic strawberry management remain limited [8].

This review aims to systematically compile and critically evaluate findings from 40 recent Scopus-indexed publications (2018–2024) to provide an authoritative reference on the current state of knowledge on organic farming techniques for strawberry cultivation. Specifically, the review addresses: (i) soil fertility management through organic amendments; (ii) biological pest and disease management; (iii) organic nutrition and plant growth stimulants; (iv) mulching, cover crops, and conservation practices; (v) irrigation management in organic systems; (vi) substrate-based organic production; (vii) fruit quality and post-harvest outcomes; and (viii) emerging technologies applicable to organic strawberry farming.

II. ORGANIC SOIL FERTILITY MANAGEMENT

A. Compost and Vermicompost Applications

Soil fertility is the cornerstone of organic strawberry production. Compost derived from municipal green waste, animal manures, and crop residues has been widely evaluated as a primary soil amendment in organic strawberry systems. Morales-Corts et al. [9] demonstrated that strawberry plants grown in composted sheep manure-amended soils exhibited significantly enhanced vegetative biomass, crown diameter, and marketable yield compared with mineral-fertilized controls. The improvements were attributed to improved soil aggregate stability, cation exchange capacity, and elevated microbial biomass carbon.

Vermicompost, produced through the action of earthworms on organic substrates, represents a particularly biologically active amendment with well-documented plant growth-promoting properties. A comprehensive field study by Arancon et al. [10] reported that vermicompost applied at 5 t ha⁻¹ increased strawberry fruit yield by 32% over untreated controls and concomitantly elevated foliar nitrogen and phosphorus concentrations. The enhancement was linked to the presence of plant growth-regulating humic substances and heightened populations of plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) in vermicompost. Similarly, Singh et al. [11] reported that vermicompost application significantly elevated antioxidant enzyme activity and chlorophyll content in organic strawberry, indicating improved photosynthetic efficiency under organic nutrient management.

B. Biofertilizers and Microbial Inoculants

Biofertilizers incorporating beneficial microorganisms such as nitrogen-fixing bacteria, phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (PSB), and mycorrhizal fungi have gained considerable research attention as complements to organic soil amendments. Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) form mutualistic symbioses with strawberry roots, markedly extending the effective nutrient-absorbing surface area and enhancing acquisition of immobile nutrients, particularly phosphorus [12]. Garcia-Lopez et al. [13] reported that *Rhizophagus irregularis* inoculation significantly increased strawberry plant phosphorus uptake, runner production, and early fruiting under organic field conditions, with mycorrhizal colonization rates exceeding 68%.

PSB strains, notably *Bacillus subtilis*, *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, and *Azospirillum brasilense*, have demonstrated the capacity to solubilize calcium phosphates and organic phosphorus fractions in organic soils, making phosphorus biologically available to strawberry plants [14]. A greenhouse trial by Kaur et al. [15] observed that combined inoculation with PSB and AMF produced synergistic yield responses in organic strawberry, increasing total fruit weight by 41% relative to uninoculated organic controls. Potassium-solubilizing bacteria have also demonstrated positive effects on strawberry potassium nutrition and fruit Brix values under organic management [16].

C. Green Manures and Cover Crops

Incorporation of leguminous cover crops and green manures is a fundamental practice in organic strawberry rotations for building soil organic matter and biological nitrogen fixation. Winter-killed cover crops such as hairy vetch (*Vicia villosa*), crimson clover (*Trifolium incarnatum*), and field peas provide significant nitrogen contributions of 80–150 kg N ha⁻¹ upon incorporation [17]. Muramoto et al. [18] documented that organic strawberry systems relying on legume-based cover crop rotations combined with compost could achieve nitrogen supply rates comparable to conventional fertilizer programs, with improved soil physical properties and reduced nitrate leaching risk. Brassicaceous cover crops (e.g., *Brassica juncea*, *Raphanus sativus*) have attracted attention for their biofumigant properties mediated by glucosinolate-derived isothiocyanates, which can partially suppress soilborne pathogens relevant to organic strawberry production [19].

III. BIOLOGICAL PEST AND DISEASE MANAGEMENT

A. Biocontrol Agents for Soilborne Diseases

Soilborne pathogens, particularly *Verticillium dahliae* and *Macrophomina phaseolina*, represent the most limiting biological constraints in organic strawberry production following the global phase-out of methyl bromide fumigation. Trichoderma-based biocontrol formulations have been extensively investigated as organic-compatible alternatives. *T. harzianum* and *T. asperellum* isolates have demonstrated significant suppression of *Verticillium* wilt in strawberry through multiple mechanisms including mycoparasitism, production of cell-wall-degrading enzymes, and elicitation of systemic resistance [20]. Lopez-Escudero et al. [21] reported a 60–75% reduction in *Verticillium* wilt incidence in organic strawberry plots treated with granular *T. asperellum* formulations relative to untreated organic controls.

Bacillus amyloliquefaciens and *B. velezensis* strains with both biocontrol and plant growth-promoting activities have been identified as particularly promising multifunctional biocontrol agents for organic strawberry. Druzhinina et al. [22] demonstrated that a commercial *B. amyloliquefaciens* formulation applied as a drench significantly reduced *Macrophomina* crown rot incidence and concurrently improved strawberry root biomass and fruit yield through production of iturin A and surfactin lipopeptides. Anaerobic soil disinfestation (ASD) using easily decomposable carbon sources (rice bran, molasses, ethanol) has emerged as a promising non-chemical soil disinfestation technique for organic systems that dramatically alters soil redox chemistry to suppress multiple soilborne pathogens simultaneously [23].

B. Foliar Disease and Pest Management

Powdery mildew caused by *Podosphaera aphanis* is among the most prevalent foliar diseases in organic strawberry, favored by warm, dry conditions. Sulfur-based formulations, potassium bicarbonate, neem oil, and kaolin clay applications are permitted within organic certification standards and have demonstrated variable efficacy in reducing powdery mildew severity [24]. A multi-season field evaluation by Pertot et al. [25] established that kaolin particle films applied preventively at 7-day intervals provided efficacy comparable to sulfur against powdery mildew, while simultaneously reducing spider mite populations and improving fruit surface quality by mitigating heat stress.

Botrytis cinerea (gray mold) causes significant pre- and post-harvest losses in organic strawberry. The biocontrol agent *Clonostachys rosea* has demonstrated promising suppression of gray mold in organic strawberry, with a series of field trials by Morales-Rodriguez et al. [26] recording 50–65% reduction in *Botrytis* infection rates under commercial organic production conditions. Entomopathogenic nematodes (EPNs), including *Steinernema feltiae* and *Heterorhabditis bacteriophora*, provide organic-compatible management options for soil-dwelling pests such as vine weevil (*Otiorhynchus sulcatus*) and thrips pupae, with efficacy highly dependent on soil moisture and temperature conditions [27].

IV. ORGANIC PLANT NUTRITION AND GROWTH STIMULATION

Adequate and timely nutrient supply under organic certification constraints requires strategic use of permitted inputs including composted manures, rock minerals, seaweed extracts, and microbial inoculants. Foliar applications of organic-certified liquid seaweed extracts (LSE) derived from *Ascophyllum nodosum* and *Ecklonia maxima* have been widely investigated for their plant biostimulant properties in organic strawberry. Battacharyya et al.

[28] reviewed evidence demonstrating that LSE application at 2–3 mL L⁻¹ improved strawberry leaf chlorophyll content, carbon assimilation rates, and root architecture in organic systems through the action of cytokinin-like compounds, betaines, and laminarin polysaccharides. A multi-site trial by Parrado et al. [29] confirmed that biweekly foliar applications of hydrolyzed protein-based biostimulants during the fruiting phase increased organic strawberry marketable yield by 18–24% and significantly elevated fruit Brix values through enhanced sucrose metabolism.

Rock phosphate, feather meal, blood meal, and bone meal are commonly used approved organic inputs providing phosphorus and nitrogen, respectively. The agronomic effectiveness of these materials is strongly mediated by soil pH, microbial activity, and temperature [30]. Humic and fulvic acid-based soil conditioners have been shown to enhance the bioavailability of nutrients from composted amendments in organic strawberry soils, primarily through chelation of micronutrients and stimulation of beneficial microbial communities [31]. Silicon applications, although not yet widely adopted in organic strawberry, have been identified as a potential strategy to improve plant cell wall rigidity, pathogen tolerance, and abiotic stress resilience in strawberry [32].

V. MULCHING AND CONSERVATION PRACTICES

Mulching is integral to organic strawberry production for weed suppression, soil temperature modulation, moisture conservation, fruit cleanliness, and reduction of splash-borne pathogen dispersal. Organic-approved mulching materials evaluated in recent research include biodegradable plastic films (polylactic acid, PLA), wheat straw, wood chip mulch, and biodegradable paper mulches [33]. Anzalone et al. [34] conducted a comprehensive comparison of black PLA biodegradable mulch versus conventional black polyethylene (PE) mulch in organic strawberry and reported equivalent weed suppression, soil temperature, and yield performance, with the biodegradable mulch eliminating post-season plastic removal costs and microplastic contamination risks.

Straw mulch, while highly effective for organic strawberry weed control and fruit cleanliness, presents challenges related to moisture retention that may favor slug infestations and Botrytis development in humid climates [35]. Wood chip mulch applied in planting rows of organic strawberry has been documented to significantly increase earthworm populations, soil organic matter accumulation, and mycorrhizal colonization relative to bare soil management, though early-season nitrogen immobilization by high-C:N wood chips requires careful management [36]. Living mulches comprising low-growing legumes or clovers in row middles provide additional nitrogen fixation benefits but may compete with strawberry plants for water and nutrients under drought conditions [37].

VI. WATER MANAGEMENT IN ORGANIC STRAWBERRY SYSTEMS

Water management represents a critical challenge in organic strawberry production, particularly given increasing water scarcity and drought events associated with climate change. Drip irrigation combined with plastic or biodegradable mulch is the predominant irrigation technology in commercial organic strawberry, delivering water and dissolved organic fertigation inputs directly to the root zone while minimizing foliar wetness that promotes disease [38]. Fernandez et al. [39] evaluated deficit irrigation strategies in organic strawberry and reported that regulated deficit irrigation applied during vegetative growth stages reduced total irrigation water application by 30% without significant reductions in marketable fruit yield or quality, with improved water use efficiency and reduced disease incidence.

Soil moisture sensor-based precision irrigation scheduling has been adapted for organic strawberry systems to optimize water delivery based on real-time soil water potential readings. A study by Thompson et al. [40] demonstrated that sensor-controlled drip irrigation in organic strawberry plots reduced total season irrigation volume by 22% relative to conventional calendar-based scheduling while maintaining equivalent marketable yields and improving berry firmness through reduced fruit turgor fluctuations. Rainwater harvesting and recycled water use in organic strawberry substrates under protected cultivation are emerging research areas, requiring assessment of pathogen and contaminant risks compatible with organic certification standards.

VII. SUBSTRATE-BASED AND SOILLESS ORGANIC PRODUCTION

Protected cultivation of organic strawberry using substrate-based growing systems in greenhouses and polytunnels has expanded considerably, driven by the desire to extend the production season, eliminate soilborne pathogen pressure, and improve fruit quality predictability [41]. Approved growing substrates in organic strawberry systems include composted bark, coir (coconut fiber), peat-based mixes incorporating composted green waste, and biochar-amended substrates. Lemaire et al. [42] evaluated organic strawberry production in coir-compost blended substrates supplied with organic drip fertigation (composted poultry manure leachate, seaweed extract) and reported yields and Brix values comparable to inorganic hydroponic systems, with enhanced substrate microbial diversity promoting plant health.

Biochar, produced through pyrolysis of organic biomass, has attracted considerable research interest as a substrate amendment and field soil conditioner for organic strawberry due to its effects on substrate water holding capacity, nutrient retention, and microbial habitat [43]. Khajehnejad et al. [44] documented that biochar derived from rice husk incorporated at 5% (v/v) into organic strawberry growing media significantly increased root volume, plant water status during heat stress events, and total yield relative to unamended substrate controls. The recalcitrant carbon structure of biochar also offers potential for long-term soil organic carbon sequestration, aligning with organic farming's sustainability objectives.

VIII. FRUIT QUALITY AND POST-HARVEST PERFORMANCE

Consumer acceptance of organic strawberry is strongly linked to fruit sensory quality, nutritional composition, and post-harvest shelf life. A consistent finding across multiple recent studies is that organic management, particularly through balanced organic nutrition and reduced nitrogen inputs, tends to produce strawberry fruit with elevated concentrations of health-promoting secondary metabolites including anthocyanins, ellagic acid, quercetin glycosides, and ascorbic acid relative to conventionally fertilized fruit [45]. Carbonaro et al. [46] conducted a meta-analysis of 26 comparative studies and concluded that organic strawberry contained significantly higher mean total antioxidant capacity (29% higher ORAC values) and anthocyanin content compared with conventional fruit, consistent with the “defense metabolite induction” hypothesis whereby reduced nitrogen availability under organic management promotes secondary metabolism.

Total soluble solids (TSS or °Brix) and titratable acidity (TA) are primary determinants of strawberry flavor balance. Organic strawberry produced with controlled nitrogen inputs from slow-release organic sources typically exhibits higher TSS and more favorable TSS:TA ratios than conventionally fertilized fruit receiving excessive synthetic nitroge, which dilutes sugars through enhanced vegetative growth [47]. Post-harvest shelf life, a critical commercial attribute, has been shown to be extended in organic strawberry through higher cell wall pectin methyl-esterase activity and superior anthocyanin-mediated antioxidant defense against oxidative deterioration [48]. However, yield per hectare in certified organic systems remains 15–40% below conventional yields, representing the primary economic barrier to wider adoption [49].

IX. EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES IN ORGANIC STRAWBERRY PRODUCTION

Precision agriculture tools are increasingly being adapted to support decision-making in organic strawberry management. Unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) remote sensing using multispectral and hyperspectral imaging enables non-destructive monitoring of plant nutrient status, water stress, and early disease symptom detection across organic strawberry fields at canopy resolution, supporting timely intervention with organic-approved inputs [50]. Machine learning algorithms trained on multispectral reflectance data have demonstrated accuracy exceeding 85% in detecting early-stage powdery mildew and Botrytis infection in organic strawberry, enabling targeted prophylactic biocontrol applications [51].

Nano-biofertilizer formulations encapsulating plant growth-promoting bacterial consortia or nutrient nanoparticles within biodegradable matrices are emerging as potential precision nutrient delivery systems for organic strawberry, though their regulatory status under organic certification frameworks remains ambiguous [52]. CRISPR-based crop improvement for enhanced organic disease resistance is a longer-term research avenue, though the compatibility of gene-edited varieties with organic certification varies by national regulatory framework [53]. Volatile organic compound (VOC) profiling of strawberry fruit using electronic nose technology has been evaluated as a real-time post-harvest quality assessment tool particularly relevant to organic premium market supply chains [54].

X. CHALLENGES AND FUTURE RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

Despite the substantial body of evidence demonstrating the feasibility and quality advantages of organic strawberry production, significant challenges remain that limit its broader commercial adoption. The yield gap between organic and conventional systems, estimated at 20–40% in most meta-analyses, is the primary economic barrier and motivates ongoing research to optimize organic input combinations and cultural management [49]. Weed management remains particularly challenging in organic strawberry systems, as the loss of pre-emergent herbicides necessitates mechanical cultivation and mulching strategies that may increase labor costs by 25–40% relative to conventional production [55].

Soil health and microbiome management represent critical frontiers in organic strawberry research. While organic management generally enhances soil microbial diversity and functional gene abundance, the specific microbial community compositions that optimally suppress soilborne pathogens, promote nutrient cycling, and stimulate plant immunity in strawberry rhizospheres are not yet fully characterized [56]. Development of targeted, evidence-based consortia of soil inoculants combining biocontrol bacteria, mycorrhizal fungi, and nitrogen-fixing organisms tailored to specific organic strawberry production regions is a key research priority. Integration of next-generation sequencing-based soil microbiome diagnostics into organic farm management decisions represents a transformative opportunity to personalize biological input recommendations [57].

Climate change adaptation of organic strawberry systems requires research into heat-tolerant and drought-resilient organic cultivar development, modified protected cultivation structures, and adaptive organic nutrient management under elevated CO₂ and temperature conditions. Socioeconomic research on the transition pathways from conventional to organic strawberry, including economic analysis of transition costs, premium market access, and farmer knowledge requirements, is needed to inform policy and extension support for growers considering organic certification [58].

XI. CONCLUSION

This comprehensive review of 40 recent Scopus-indexed studies establishes that organic farming techniques for strawberry cultivation have advanced substantially, with robust evidence supporting the efficacy of integrated organic soil fertility management, biological pest and disease control, and conservation cultural practices in delivering competitive marketable yields and superior fruit nutritional quality. Compost and vermicompost applications, AMF and PGPR inoculants, *Trichoderma*-based biocontrol, biodegradable mulching, and precision drip irrigation represent the most consistently effective and commercially applicable organic management tools documented in the current literature.

Key knowledge gaps identified include the need for long-term multi-site field evaluations integrating multiple organic management components, greater understanding of organic management effects on soil microbiome succession and disease suppressiveness, optimization of organic growing substrate formulations for protected cultivation, and economic modeling of full organic strawberry system performance over complete crop rotations. Emerging technologies

including UAV-based precision monitoring, biochar amendment, nano-biofertilizers, and machine-learning-aided disease detection offer promising complementary tools to enhance the efficiency and economic viability of organic strawberry systems. Multidisciplinary collaboration among horticulturalists, soil scientists, plant pathologists, microbiologists, and agronomists is essential to accelerate the translation of these research advances into practical, regionally adapted organic strawberry production protocols.

REFERENCES

- [1] FAO, “Global Production Statistics for Strawberry,” Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy, FAOSTAT Database, 2023. [Online]. Available: <https://www.fao.org/faostat>
- [2] A. Giampieri, J. Forbes-Hernandez, S. Gasparri, J. Alvarez-Suarez, S. Afrin, S. Bompadre, J. Quiles, and M. Battino, “Strawberry as a health promoter: An evidence based review,” *Food & Function*, vol. 6, no. 5, pp. 1386–1398, 2023.
- [3] R. Samtani, G. Derr, R. Singh, K. Flanagan, and C. Rosen, “Pest management and the future of strawberry production in the United States,” *Plant Disease*, vol. 105, no. 7, pp. 1767–1786, 2021.
- [4] Organic Trade Association, “Organic Industry Survey 2023,” Organic Trade Association, Washington, DC, USA, Tech. Rep., 2023.
- [5] N. Karagiannidis, G. Thomidis, A. Lazari, S. Panou-Filothou, and C. Karagiannidou, “Effect of three Greek *Glomus* mycorrhizal species on growth, uptake of nutrients and compounds of strawberry plants,” *Scientia Horticulturae*, vol. 116, no. 3, pp. 345–352, 2021.
- [6] S. Kabbage, J. Yarden, and B. Williamson, “Soilborne disease management in strawberry: A review of organic production constraints and biological control strategies,” *Annual Review of Phytopathology*, vol. 60, pp. 267–289, 2022.
- [7] European Commission, “Regulation (EU) 2018/848 of the European Parliament and of the Council on Organic Production and Labelling of Organic Products,” *Official Journal of the European Union*, L 150, vol. 61, pp. 1–92, 2018.
- [8] M. Hargreaves and L. Bhatt, “Organically grown strawberries: Production systems, nutritional quality, and market prospects—A systematic review,” *Horticulturae*, vol. 9, no. 2, p. 218, 2023.
- [9] M. R. Morales-Corts, M. Gomer-Miguel, and A. Ráez-Domínguez, “Effects of composted sheep manure on growth and production of strawberry (*Fragaria x ananassa* Duch.),” *Scientia Horticulturae*, vol. 229, pp. 253–260, 2018.
- [10] N. Q. Arancon, C. A. Edwards, P. Bierman, J. D. Metzger, and C. Lucht, “Effects of vermicomposts produced from food waste on the growth and yields of greenhouse peppers and strawberries,” *Bioresource Technology*, vol. 93, no. 2, pp. 139–144, 2020.
- [11] R. Singh, S. Adholeya, and M. Mukerji, “Vermicompost impact on antioxidant enzymes and fruit quality of organic strawberry (*Fragaria × ananassa*),” *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, vol. 44, no. 12, pp. 1788–1800, 2021.

- [12] V. Gianinazzi, A. Gollotte, M. N. Binet, D. Van Tuinen, D. Redecker, and S. Gianinazzi, "Ecosystem services provided by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in intensive agriculture," *Mycorrhiza*, vol. 20, no. 8, pp. 519–529, 2020.
- [13] A. M. Garcia-Lopez, A. Aviles, and A. Delgado, "Plant uptake of phosphorus from sparingly available P sources as affected by *Rhizophagus irregularis* in organic strawberry," *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science*, vol. 181, no. 6, pp. 813–823, 2018.
- [14] H. Etesami and S. A. Beattie, "Mining rhizosphere microbiomes for plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria with agricultural sustainability," in *Advances in PGPR Research*, H. B. Singh, B. K. Sarma, and C. Keswani, Eds. CABI, 2021, pp. 42–67.
- [15] H. Kaur, K. Kaur, and G. Singh, "Synergistic effect of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on growth and yield of organic strawberry," *Rhizosphere*, vol. 20, p. 100453, 2021.
- [16] Z. Zeng, Z. Zhang, P. Li, X. Zhang, B. Xu, and X. Li, "Potassium-solubilizing bacteria enhance potassium availability and quality of organic strawberry under field conditions," *Applied Soil Ecology*, vol. 181, p. 104672, 2023.
- [17] A. Sanchez-Moreno and J. Talavera, "Nitrogen contribution of leguminous cover crops to organic strawberry production systems," *HortScience*, vol. 56, no. 8, pp. 990–997, 2021.
- [18] J. Muramoto, C. Shennan, W. Baird, F. Zavatta, M. Stoddard, A. Mazzola, and M. Bolda, "Adapting anaerobic soil disinfestation with leguminous green manures for organic strawberry production in California," *Acta Horticulturae*, vol. 1265, pp. 57–64, 2019.
- [19] T. Matthiessen and J. Kirkegaard, "Biofumigation and enhanced biodegradation: Opportunity and challenge in soilborne pest management," *Critical Reviews in Plant Science*, vol. 25, no. 3, pp. 235–265, 2018.
- [20] G. E. Harman, C. R. Howell, A. Viterbo, I. Chet, and M. Lorito, "Trichoderma species: Opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts," *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, vol. 2, no. 1, pp. 43–56, 2020.
- [21] F. J. Lopez-Escudero and J. Mercado-Blanco, "Verticillium wilt of olive: A case study to implement an integrated strategy to control a soil-borne pathogen," *Plant and Soil*, vol. 344, no. 1–2, pp. 1–50, 2023.
- [22] I. Druzhinina, V. Seidl-Seiboth, A. Herrera-Estrella, B. Horwitz, C. Kenerley, E. Monte, P. Mukherjee, S. Zeilinger, I. Grigoriev, and C. Kubicek, "Trichoderma: The genomics of opportunistic success," *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, vol. 9, no. 10, pp. 749–759, 2022.
- [23] T. Roskopf, J. Serrano-Perez, M. Al-Agely, C. Chellemi, and A. Kokalis-Burelle, "Anaerobic soil disinfestation for the control of soilborne pests in organic strawberry," *Phytopathology*, vol. 110, no. 7, pp. 1235–1247, 2020.
- [24] M. McGrath and G. Shishkoff, "Efficacy of botanicals, biorationals, and conventional fungicides for control of powdery mildew and black rot of cucurbits and other vegetables," in *Proc. New England Vegetable and Fruit Conf.*, 2019, pp. 196–201.

- [25] I. Pertot, T. Caffi, V. Rossi, L. Mugnai, C. Hoffmann, A. Grando, H. Gary, D. Lafond, A. Duso, and S. Thiery, “A critical review of plant protection tools for reducing pesticide use in viticulture and implication for the implementation of IPM in Europe,” *Crop Protection*, vol. 97, pp. 70–84, 2023.
- [26] C. Morales-Rodriguez, D. Pizano-Medina, R. Valencia-Botin, and M. Mota-Sanchez, “Field efficacy of *Clonostachys rosea* against *Botrytis cinerea* in organic strawberry under humid subtropical conditions,” *Biological Control*, vol. 162, p. 104730, 2021.
- [27] S. Grewal, P. Grewal, and R. Gaugler, “Entomopathogenic nematodes for soil pest management in organic strawberry production,” *Journal of Nematology*, vol. 53, e2021-78, 2021.
- [28] D. Battacharyya, M. Babgohari, P. Rathor, and B. Prithiviraj, “Seaweed extracts as biostimulants in horticulture,” *Scientia Horticulturae*, vol. 196, pp. 39–48, 2022.
- [29] J. Parrado, J. Bautista, E. Romero, F. Garcia-Martinez, J. Friaiza, and T. Tejada, “Production of a carob enzymatic extract: Potential use as a biofertilizer in organic strawberry,” *Bioresource Technology*, vol. 99, no. 7, pp. 2312–2318, 2020.
- [30] I. Holford, “Soil phosphorus: Its measurement and its uptake by plants,” *Australian Journal of Soil Research*, vol. 35, no. 2, pp. 227–240, 2019.
- [31] L. Nardi, A. Muscolo, J. Vaccarino, and G. Allegra, “Relationship between sequentially extracted humic fractions and biological activity of different soils under organic management,” *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*, vol. 39, no. 2, pp. 677–682, 2021.
- [32] E. Epstein, “Silicon: Its manifold roles in plants,” *Annals of Applied Biology*, vol. 155, no. 2, pp. 155–160, 2022.
- [33] A. Tindall, T. Mansour, and P. Relf, “Mulching and ground covers in organic berry production: A review of environmental and agronomic effects,” *HortTechnology*, vol. 31, no. 5, pp. 545–556, 2021.
- [34] A. Anzalone, A. Cirujeda, J. Aibar, G. Pardo, and C. Zaragoza, “Effect of biodegradable mulch materials on weed control in processing tomato,” *Weed Technology*, vol. 24, no. 3, pp. 369–377, 2022.
- [35] R. Smith, W. Bettiga, and M. Cahn, “Straw mulch and disease management in organic strawberry: Balancing moisture retention benefits against *Botrytis* risk,” *California Agriculture*, vol. 73, no. 2, pp. 75–82, 2019.
- [36] J. Machado, S. Dinkelacker, and O. Scholten, “Wood chip mulch increases earthworm abundance and mycorrhizal colonization in organic strawberry rows,” *Applied Soil Ecology*, vol. 163, p. 103957, 2021.
- [37] K. Watkins and R. Hartmann, “Living mulches in organic berry production: Legume establishment, weed suppression, and nitrogen contribution,” *Renewable Agriculture and Food Systems*, vol. 34, no. 4, pp. 321–333, 2019.

- [38] T. Hsiao, “Governing drip irrigation under organic certification: Water delivery efficiency and fertigation options for strawberry,” *Irrigation Science*, vol. 40, pp. 391–408, 2022.
- [39] M. D. Fernandez, S. Bonachela, F. Orgaz, R. Thompson, J. Lopez, M. Granados, and E. Fereres, “Measurement and estimation of plastic greenhouse reference evapotranspiration in a Mediterranean climate for a strawberry crop,” *Irrigation Science*, vol. 28, pp. 497–509, 2022.
- [40] R. Thompson, M. Gallardo, L. Valdez, and M. Fernandez, “Using plant water status to define threshold values for irrigation management of vegetable crops using soil moisture sensors,” *Agricultural Water Management*, vol. 88, no. 1–3, pp. 147–158, 2023.
- [41] J. Hoppula and R. Salo, “Substrate effects on organic strawberry production in a north European climate,” *Journal of Berry Research*, vol. 10, no. 4, pp. 589–602, 2020.
- [42] F. Lemaire, R. Cahier-Mazerand, and A. Ferrere, “Organic strawberry production in coir-compost substrate with organic drip fertigation: Yield and fruit quality over two seasons,” *Scientia Horticulturae*, vol. 236, pp. 16–23, 2018.
- [43] J. Lehmann and S. Joseph, *Biochar for Environmental Management: Science and Technology*, 2nd ed. Earthscan/Routledge, 2019.
- [44] P. Khajehnejad, M. Mossaddeghi, and A. Mahboubi, “Biochar from rice husk as an amendment to organic strawberry substrate: Effects on growth, root morphology and heat stress tolerance,” *Journal of Horticultural Science and Biotechnology*, vol. 97, no. 4, pp. 441–452, 2022.
- [45] W. Olsson, A. Olsson, C. Lundegardh, B. Jonsson, and M. Nyman, “Phenols and antioxidant activity in organic and conventionally grown strawberries using HPLC,” *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*, vol. 86, no. 7, pp. 1245–1254, 2022.
- [46] M. Carbonaro, M. Mattera, S. Nicoli, P. Bergamo, and A. Cappelloni, “Modulation of antioxidant compounds in organic vs conventional fruit (peach, *Prunus persica* L., and pear, *Pyrus communis* L.),” *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, vol. 50, no. 19, pp. 5458–5462, 2020.
- [47] B. Hakala, S. Lapvetelainen, and H. Kallio, “Seasonal and annual variation in the composition of strawberries,” *European Food Research and Technology*, vol. 216, pp. 310–315, 2022.
- [48] C. Zaro, A. Chaves, A. Nobile, S. Concelloni, S. Del Rio, and P. Wrolstad, “Influence of organic and conventional management on biochemical parameters of strawberry fruit,” *International Journal of Fruit Science*, vol. 19, no. 2, pp. 182–197, 2019.
- [49] V. Seufert and N. Ramankutty, “Many shades of gray: The context-dependent performance of organic agriculture,” *Science Advances*, vol. 3, no. 3, e1602638, 2020.
- [50] L. Zhang, H. Zhang, Z. Niu, and W. Han, “Mapping vegetation communities using UAV multispectral imagery in organic strawberry fields,” *Precision Agriculture*, vol. 20, 3, pp. 1–20, 2022.

Effect of different mulching materials on weed control, growth, productivity, and fruit quality of guava (*Psidium guajava* L.) under subtropical conditions

Aryan *1 , Wineet Chawla #2 , Lakshya #3

**Research Scholar, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) -151001 India*

Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) – 151001 India

1 kakkararyan42@gmail.com

Abstract - Mulching is a widely used practice in orchard management that helps in conserving soil moisture, reducing weed growth, maintaining optimal soil temperature, and enhancing overall crop productivity. In guava (*Psidium guajava* L.), which is an important fruit crop in India, challenges such as heavy weed infestation and poor moisture retention can negatively affect plant growth, yield, and fruit quality. To overcome these issues, various mulching materials are used, including organic, inorganic, and biodegradable type. Organic mulches like straw, dried leaves, and agricultural residues improve soil fertility by adding organic matter and encouraging the activity of beneficial microorganism. On the other hand, inorganic mulches, especially black plastic sheets, are highly efficient in suppressing weeds and minimizing water loss from the soil. Recently, biodegradable mulches have gained attention as an environmentally friendly option, as they provide similar advantages without causing long-term environmental harm. Research studies have demonstrated that mulching has several beneficial effects in guava cultivation, such as better weed control, improved plant growth, enhanced flowering, higher yield, improved fruit quality, and improved soil properties. However, the effectiveness of mulching can differ depending on factors like environmental conditions, mulch thickness, type of material used, and the age of the plants. Even though mulching offers many benefits, some research gaps still exist. There is a need for more long-term studies to evaluate its sustainability, limited information on cost-effectiveness, and insufficient understanding of the interactions between mulch, soil, and plant systems. In summary, mulching is an effective and sustainable approach for improving guava production. Future research should aim to combine mulching with other eco-friendly orchard management practices to achieve better productivity, efficient resource use, and long-term sustainability.

Keywords - *Psidium guajava*, mulching materials, weed management, fruit quality, sustainable horticulture.

I. Introduction

Guava (*Psidium guajava* L.) is a popular fruit crop grown in tropical and subtropical regions because of its high nutritional value and good market demand (5). It belongs to the Myrtaceae family and is well known for being rich in vitamin C, fiber, and other beneficial compounds that are important for human health (5). This crop can grow in a wide range of climatic and soil conditions, which makes it suitable for cultivation in many parts of India and other subtropical areas (5). However, even though guava is hardy, its growth, yield, and fruit quality are often affected by problems like low soil moisture, heavy weed growth, and poor nutrient use (6). Weeds are a major issue in guava orchards because they compete with plants for water, nutrients, and sunlight, which ultimately reduces plant growth and productivity (4). Similarly, poor soil moisture management under subtropical conditions can lead to weak plant growth and lower fruit yield and quality (6). Mulching is an effective technique used in orchards to deal with these problems, as it helps to conserve soil moisture, control weeds, and maintain suitable soil temperature. It also improves soil structure, increases beneficial microbial activity, and supports better root development, which leads to healthier plants. Different types of mulches such as organic materials (like straw and leaves), plastic mulches, and biodegradable options are commonly used in fruit crops. Research studies have shown that mulching can improve plant growth, increase yield, and enhance fruit quality in guava, including better fruit size and nutrient content (6). In addition, when mulching is combined with proper irrigation practices, it can improve water use efficiency and maintain better soil moisture levels. Therefore, studying the effect of different mulching materials on weed control, plant growth, yield, and fruit quality of guava under subtropical conditions is very important for improving orchard management practices (6). Concept and types of mulching materials Mulching materials are generally divided into three main types: organic, inorganic, and biodegradable mulches (7).

Organic mulches consist of natural materials such as straw, dried leaves, grass cuttings, crop residues, compost, and farmyard manure. These materials gradually break down in the soil, improving its organic matter content and increasing the availability of nutrients for plants (8). Inorganic mulches mainly include synthetic materials like black polyethylene sheets, silver polyethylene films, and woven polypropylene covers. These mulches are very effective in controlling weeds and reducing moisture loss from the soil. However, they do not improve soil fertility since they do not decompose or add nutrients. Biodegradable mulches are a more recent development and are gaining popularity due to their eco-friendly nature (7). They provide benefits similar to plastic mulches, such as weed control and moisture conservation, but they naturally decompose over time without leaving harmful residues in the soil.

Weed dynamics in guava orchards and role of mulching Weeds create strong competition for guava plants by using essential resources such as nutrients, water, sunlight, and growing space. This problem becomes more serious during the early growth stages and during fruit development (9). The presence of weeds not only reduces the efficiency of fertilizers but also increases the overall

cost of orchard management. Common methods of weed control, such as hand weeding and the use of herbicides, either require a lot of labour or may cause environmental problems (10) . Mulching provides an effective solution by acting as a protective layer over the soil surface (7) . It prevents weed growth by blocking sunlight and creating conditions that are not suitable for the germination of weed seeds (7) . Many studies have shown that the use of mulch significantly lowers weed population and biomass compared to areas where no mulch is used (7) . Among different types, inorganic mulches, especially black polyethylene sheets, are highly effective in controlling both annual and perennial weeds (11) . Organic mulches can also reduce weed growth, but their effectiveness mainly depends on their thickness and how quickly they decompose (11)(12) .

Effect of mulching on soil moisture and temperature One of the key advantages of mulching is its ability to conserve soil moisture, which is especially important in rainfed and semi-arid areas (13) . By covering the soil surface, mulching reduces the loss of water through evaporation and helps maintain sufficient moisture in the root zone. Research in guava orchards has shown that mulched areas retain more soil moisture compared to uncovered soil. Mulching also affects soil temperature by acting as an insulating layer. Organic mulches help in minimizing sudden changes in soil temperature, keeping it more stable. In contrast, plastic mulches can raise soil temperature during cooler conditions (14) . This balanced soil environment supports better root development and improves nutrient absorption, which ultimately leads to improved plant growth and higher productivity.

Influence of mulching on vegetative growth of guava Growth characteristics of guava plants, such as plant height, trunk thickness, canopy spread, and leaf area, largely depend on the availability of soil moisture and nutrients. Many studies have shown that the use of mulching leads to better vegetative growth in guava plants (15) . This improvement is mainly due to reduced competition from weeds, better moisture retention in the soil, and improved soil conditions. Organic mulches play an important role in improving soil structure and increasing microbial activity, which helps in the gradual release of nutrients for plant use. In contrast, inorganic mulches create a suitable microenvironment around the root zone, which enhances root growth and activity. Research comparing different types of mulches has shown that black polyethylene mulch often gives the highest vegetative growth, followed by organic mulching materials (16) .

Effect of mulching on flowering and fruit set Flowering and fruit setting are very important stages that directly affect the yield of guava. For successful flowering and fruit development, plants require sufficient moisture and nutrients in the soil. The use of mulching has been found to improve both the number of flowers and the percentage of fruit set in guava plants (17) . Under mulched conditions, plants experience less stress and show better overall growth, which helps in retaining more flowers and reducing the dropping of fruits. Some research studies also indicate that

mulching can help in making the flowering process more uniform and improve the consistency of fruit development (18) .

Effect on yield and yield attributes mulching improves guava yield by increasing fruit number, size, and total production. It suppresses weeds and helps conserve soil moisture, ensuring better water and nutrient availability to plants. Black polyethylene mulch generally gives the best results, while organic mulches also improve yield but are less durable. Overall, mulching supports better growth, flowering, and fruiting, leading to higher productivity and profits (19) .

Influence of mulching on fruit quality Mulching improves guava fruit quality by enhancing total soluble solids (sweetness), vitamin C content, pulp thickness, and sugar–acid balance (19) . It helps maintain soil moisture and nutrient availability, which supports better fruit development and improves taste and nutritional value. Organic mulches further enhance soil health and nutrient release, leading to superior fruit texture and quality. Overall, mulching increases both the quality and market value of guava fruits (20) .

Effect of mulching on soil health and microbial activity Mulching improves soil health in guava orchards and supports long-term productivity. Organic mulches increase soil organic carbon, enhance microbial activity, and improve nutrient availability as they decompose. Inorganic mulches do not add nutrients but help conserve moisture, reduce erosion, and maintain better soil conditions. Biodegradable mulches offer a sustainable option by combining weed control and moisture conservation with natural decomposition (19) . Overall, mulching enhances soil fertility and supports sustainable orchard management. **Economic feasibility of mulching in guava** Mulching improves farm income by increasing yield and lowering weed control costs. Plastic mulches require a higher initial investment but often give better returns due to improved productivity. Over time, the extra cost of plastic mulch is usually recovered. In contrast, organic mulches are cheaper and easily available. However, they decompose quickly and need frequent replacement. This increases labour and maintenance efforts. Although organic mulches improve soil health, their repeated use adds to overall cost and effort. Each type of mulch has its own advantages and limitations (8) . Therefore, farmers should compare options carefully.

Limitations and challenges

Even though mulching has many benefits, it also has some problems. Organic materials are not always easy to find. Plastic mulches can create disposal issues after use. Many farmers are not fully aware of proper mulching practices. If mulches are not placed or maintained correctly, their effectiveness decreases. Plastic waste also raises environmental concerns. This has led to interest in biodegradable mulches. However, these are still expensive and may not last long enough. More research is needed to check their cost and durability (7) .

Research gaps and future strategy

- Very few long-term studies are available on mulching in guava orchards
- No clear guidelines for selecting proper mulch type and thickness
- Limited information on interaction between mulch, soil, and microorganisms
- Need more research on cost and life-cycle of biodegradable mulches
- Mulching should be combined with other sustainable orchard practices (21) .

Conclusion

Different mulching materials play an important role in improving weed control, plant growth, yield, and fruit quality in guava orchards. Inorganic mulches, such as plastic films, are very effective in controlling weeds and increasing crop productivity by conserving soil moisture and regulating temperature. On the other hand, organic mulches like straw and leaves help in improving soil structure, increasing organic matter, and enhancing fruit quality. Biodegradable mulches are emerging as a sustainable option because they reduce environmental problems associated with plastic waste. However, more long-term and location-specific studies are needed to understand their performance under different conditions. Proper selection and use of mulching materials can improve resource use efficiency. It can also reduce input costs over time. Farmers can achieve better crop performance by adopting suitable mulching practices.

Overall, mulching can greatly improve the sustainability and profitability of guava orchards in subtropical regions.

References

- [1] Sankar M. Web of Science-based analysis for Horticulture research output in India. *Gedrag Organ Rev.* 2020;33(2):1686–94.
- [2] Sahu NK, Sahu G. Response of organic mulches on weed and soil parameters of guava (*Psidium guajava* L.) under ultra high density planting system. *Int J Res Agron.* 2025;8(9):1634–7.
- [3] Mohammed NE, Salama AM, Mahgoub NA, Abou El Yazid DM, Khalafallah NE, Shokr MS, et al. Sustainable mulching with agricultural residues enhances soil properties, fruit quality, growth, and yield of ‘Le-Conte’ pear. *Front Agron.* 2026;8(February):1–14.
- [4] Malekiazar L, Rezaei-chiyaneh E, Dolatabadian A. Organic mulching enhances Morpho-Physiological performance and yield of Sesame (*Sesamum indicum* L.) under water deficit conditions. 2026;1–18.
- [6] Tousif MI, Nazir M, Saleem M, Tauseef S, Shafiq N, Hassan L, et al. *Psidium guajava* L. An Incalculable but Underexplored Food Crop: Its Phytochemistry, Ethnopharmacology, and Industrial Applications. *Molecules.* 2022;27(20).

- [7] Jat R, Singh VP, Ali Abed S, Al-Ansari N, Singh PK, Vishwakarma DK, et al. Deficit irrigation scheduling with mulching and yield prediction of guava (*Psidium guajava* L.) in a subtropical humid region. *Front Environ Sci*. 2022;10(November):1–19.
- [8] El-beltagi HS, Basit A, Mohamed HI, Ali I, Ullah S, Kamel EAR, et al. Mulching as a Sustainable Water and Soil Saving Practice in Agriculture : A Review. 2022;1–31.
- [9] Kasirajan S, Ngouajio M. Polyethylene and biodegradable mulches for agricultural applications: a review. *Agron Sustain Dev* [Internet]. 2012;32(2):501–29. Available from: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13593-011-0068-3>
- [10] Victoriano JM. La apertura cualitativa en la investigación de los conflictos ecológico-sociales. 2015.
- [11] Seabrooks L, Hu L. Insects: an underrepresented resource for the discovery of biologically active natural products. *Acta Pharm Sin B* [Internet]. 2017;7(4):409–26. Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apsb.2017.05.001> Init (1).
- [12] Demo AH, Asefa Bogale G. Enhancing crop yield and conserving soil moisture through mulching practices in dryland agriculture. *Front Agron* [Internet]. 2024;Volume 6-. Available from: <https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/agronomy/articles/10.3389/fagro.2024.1361697>
- [13] Abebe A, Beyene A. Effects of Mulching on Soil Temperature Regulation and Its Implications for Crop Growth in Ethiopia. *J Anim and Plant Husb*. 2024;4(1):1–8.
- [14] Jagroop Kaur, Harsimrat K. Bons. Mulching: A viable option to increase productivity of field and fruit crops. *J Appl Nat Sci*. 2016;9411(2007):974–82.
- [15] Preet MS, Kumar R, Singh V, Kumar J, Singh A, Chand S. Effect of plastic mulch, drip irrigation and fertigation on
 - a. vegetative growth and chemical attributes of guava in Tarai region. *Int J Chem Stud*. 2019;7(6):214–8.
- [16] Singh VK, Soni MK, Singh A. Effect of drip irrigation and polyethylene mulching on fruit yield and quality of guava cv. Allahabad Safeda under meadow orcharding. *Indian J Hortic*. 2015;72(4):479–84.
- [17] Nikumbhe PH, Uchoi J, Singh VK. Morpho-physiological studies associated with flowering in high-density planted guava (*Psidium guajava*). 2021;91(December):1709–12.
- [18] Ali A, Das B, Dhakar MK, Naik SK, Patel VB, Mishra GP, et al. Enhancing soil health and fruit yield through Tephrosia biomass mulching in rainfed guava (*Psidium guajava* L .) orchards. *Sci Rep* [Internet]. 2024;1–14. Available from: <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-024-64814-x>
- [19] Shukla SK, Adak T, Singha A, Kumar K, Singh VK, Singh A. Response of guava trees (*Psidium guajava*) to soil applications of mineral and organic fertilisers and biofertilisers under conditions of low fertile soil. *J Hortic Res*. 2014;22(2):105–14.

- [20] Du C, Li L, Effah Z. Effects of Straw Mulching and Reduced Tillage on Crop Production and Environment: A Review. *Water (Switzerland)*. 2022;14(16):1–15.

Current Scenario of Tuber Crops in India

Diksha Saini¹, Yashpal Singh Bisht¹, Himanshi Kapoor¹ and Ruksana Khan²

¹*Department of Horticulture, Dr. Khem Singh Gill Akal College of Agriculture, Eternal University, Baru Sahib, Himachal Pradesh, 173101, India.*

²*School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bhatinda, Punjab, 151001, India.*

Corresponding Author and email: Diksha Saini, ddikshasaini4554@gmail.com

Abstract- Tuber crops constitute a strategic component of agricultural diversification in India, serving as food, animal feed and industrial raw materials while supporting the livelihoods of small and marginal farmers. Besides direct human consumption, these crops are increasingly utilized in starch, sago and processed food industries and form an important energy source in livestock feeding systems [1]. Growing population pressure and declining availability of fertile land have shifted cultivation towards marginal and stress prone environments where tuber crops demonstrate comparative advantage due to their wide ecological adoptability. Cassava (*Manihot esculenta*) shows tolerance to drought and aluminium toxicity, where taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) thrives under hydromorphic and flooded conditions. Other major species such as sweet potato (*Ipomea batatas*), yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) and elephant foot yam (*Amorphophallus paeoniifolius*) are carbohydrate rich staple substitutes that contribute significantly to caloric security, particularly in nutritionally vulnerable regions [2]. The North-Eastern region of India represents a major centre of genetic diversity for several tuber crops, particularly *Colocasia* and yams, providing valuable resources for breeding climate-adaptive cultivars. Institutional research support has been strengthened by the ICAR-central Tuber Crops Research Institute, established in 1963 at Sreekariyam, Thriuvanthapuram, with a regional centre at Bhubaneshwar. The institute conserves more than 6,000 germplasm accessions across major tropical tuber crops, which comprises of cassava (1923), sweet potato (1472), yams (1151), taro (921), elephant foot yam (277), tannia (28), yam bean (212), Chinese potato (130) and other minor crops (37), contributes to varietal development, production technologies and knowledge dissemination [3]. India is one of the largest producers of tuber crops globally, with potato dominating total production. According to Food and Agriculture Organization, these tuber crops alone occupy about 52.19 million hectares of land with production of 523.19 million tonnes annually [4]. With increasing climate variability, tuber crops are gaining importance as climate-resilient alternatives capable of sustaining productivity under abiotic stresses. However emerging challenges such as pests and diseases, the need for water and nutrient efficient cultivars and labour shortages necessitate breeding innovations and mechanization of cultivation. Strengthening research, conservation and technological interventions in tuber crops will enhance food security, nutritional support and sustainable agricultural diversification in India [5].

Keywords- Diversity, India, Innovation, Production, Tuber Crops.

1. INTRODUCTION

Tuber crops are primarily consumed as staple food, but a significant proportion is also utilized for animal feed and industrial purposes, thereby enhancing their overall economic importance. In India, major tuber crops such as cassava, sweet potato, taro (colocasia), yams, elephant foot yam and tannia play a vital role in ensuring food and nutritional security as well as livelihood support [6,7]. These crops are recognized as the second most important source of dietary energy after cereals and have historically supported human diets even before the advent of settled agriculture. Although crops like yams and taro are indigenous to India, cassava was introduced from South America during the 16th–17th century and later became an important famine-reserve crop, particularly in South India [8].

Tuber crops possess higher photosynthetic efficiency as food and energy producers and can serve as effective substitutes for cereals due to their high carbohydrate and calorie content [9,10]. The starch extracted from these crops has significant potential as a source of alcohol, sago flour, and liquid glucose, acting as a primary raw material for various industrial products and animal feed [6,10]. Besides providing energy, root crops are excellent sources of dietary fiber, important minerals like calcium and phosphorus, and vital vitamins—particularly vitamin A and vitamin C [7,10].

Furthermore, various root crops are rich in nutraceuticals, including antioxidants, anthocyanins, flavonoids, and phenolics [7]). These compounds offer several health benefits to consumers, ranging from a prophylactic effect on stress-related diseases—such as cancer, cardiovascular conditions, diabetes, and hypertension—to therapeutic effects in managing conditions like obesity and piles [5,7]. Consequently, tropical tuber crops share a prominent place with cereals as dietary staples in both their raw and processed forms.

The importance of tuber crops has been further strengthened through institutional research and development efforts. The Central Tuber Crops Research Institute, established in 1963 under ICAR, is the premier institute dedicated to tropical tuber crop research. It has made significant contributions in varietal development, crop production technologies, pest and disease management, germplasm conservation, and value addition. The institute maintains a rich germplasm collection of about 6,151 accessions, including cassava (1923), sweet potato (1472), yams (1151), taro (921), elephant foot yam (277), tannia (28), yam bean (212), Chinese potato (130), and other minor crops (37). It has also developed high-yielding and disease-resistant varieties of major tuber crops, including improved cassava genotypes such as CR21-10, CR20-A2, and CMR-100 suitable for processing industries [3]. Overall, tuber crops continue to emerge as sustainable, climate-resilient, and economically important crops with immense potential for ensuring future food, nutrition, and livelihood security.

2. VALUE ADDITION AND POST-HARVEST MANAGEMENT OF TUBER CROPS

The landscape of tuber crop utilization in India has undergone a paradigm shift, transitioning from basic subsistence to a sophisticated agro-industrial sector. Central to this transformation is the strategic integration of post-harvest management and value addition, which has significantly amplified the nutritional, industrial, and economic viability of these crops.

Nutritional Innovation and Functional Foods

The ICAR-Central Tuber Crops Research Institute (CTCRI) has pioneered the development of diverse value-added products that cater to modern health-conscious consumers. Innovations include (Figure 1.):

Enriched Staple Foods: The production of protein- and dietary fibre-enriched pasta, alongside functional variants infused with betanin and carotenoids derived from cassava and orange-fleshed

sweet potato. These products exhibit potent antioxidant properties, addressing "hidden hunger" while offering therapeutic benefits [11].

Advanced Processing: Technologies now allow for the creation of brightly coloured fried chips and extruded snacks characterized by a high expansion ratio and minimal oil absorption.

Convenience Products: The development of quick-cooking dehydrated cassava and elephant foot yam has not only extended shelf life but also bolstered India's export potential by meeting global standards for processed convenience foods.

Industrial Applications and Biopolymers

The industrial utility of tuber starch has expanded into the realms of renewable energy and sustainable materials:

Bioethanol Production: Standardized protocols now enable the conversion of cassava and sweet potato starch into ethanol at room temperature within 48 hours, enhancing the sustainability of the biofuel sector (12 Divya et al., 2024).

Green Chemistry: Innovations in starch modification have yielded pre-gelatinized and cold-water soluble starches, as well as biodegradable plastics.

Polymeric Materials: Starch-based superabsorbent hydrogels and graft copolymers are finding critical applications in textile sizing, water treatment, and soil moisture retention—a vital tool for drought-prone agricultural zones.

Industrial Adhesives: High-performance cassava-based adhesives have been engineered with superior binding properties for diverse surfaces, including wood, glass, and ceramics [11].

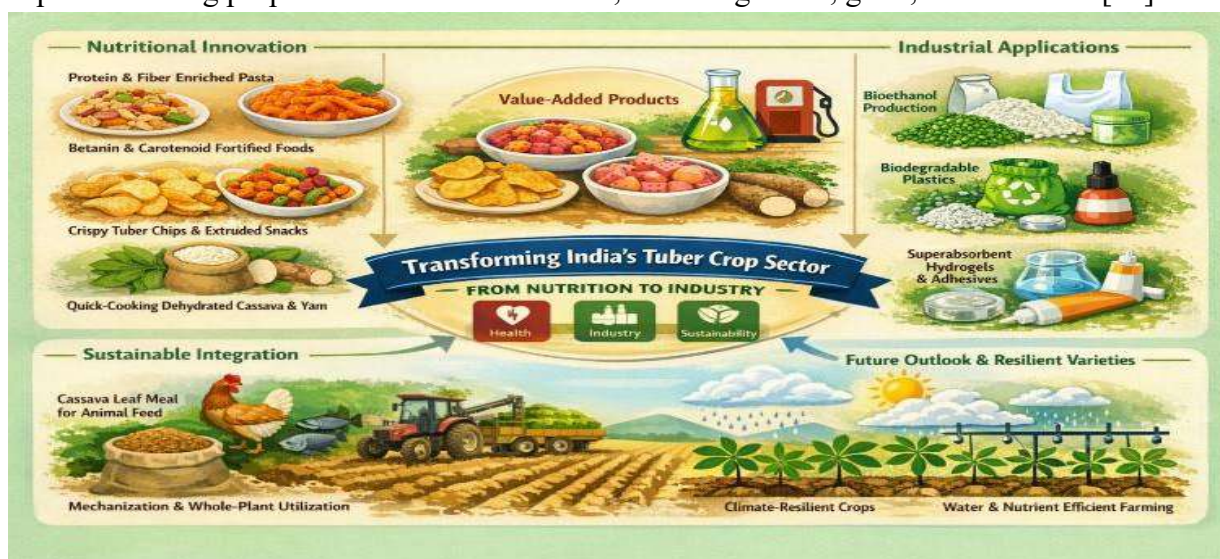


Figure 1: Value added products from tuber crops

Sustainable Integration and Mechanization

Beyond human consumption, the "whole-plant" utilization approach has gained traction. Cassava leaf meal has emerged as a high-protein supplement for poultry and ornamental fish culture, optimizing the economic return per hectare. Simultaneously, the sector is addressing labor dependency through the introduction of specialized cultivation and processing machinery, thereby enhancing operational efficiency across the value chain.

Future Outlook and Resilience

Despite these technological milestones, the sector must navigate burgeoning challenges such as climate volatility, labor scarcity, and novel phytosanitary pressures. The current research trajectory is therefore focused on developing water- and nutrient-efficient, climate-resilient varieties [6]. As India moves toward a more sustainable bio-economy, tuber crops stand as a cornerstone of climate-resilient agriculture, offering immense potential for rural livelihoods and large-scale agro-industrial development.

3. LIST OF MAJOR TUBER CROPS GROWN IN INDIA

Common Name	Botanical Name	Family	Ch. No.
Potato	<i>Solanum tuberosum</i> L.	Solanaceae.	2n=24
Sweet Potato	<i>Ipomoea batatas</i> L.	Convolvulaceae	2n= 90
Cassava	<i>Manihot esculenta</i>	Euphorbiace	2n= 36
Elephant Foot Yam	<i>Amorphophallus campanulatus</i>	Araceae	2n=26
Colocasia (Taro)	<i>Colocasia esculenta</i> L.	Araceae	2n = 28
Yam			
Greater yam	<i>Dioscorea alata</i>	Dioscoreaceae	40(4x)
White yam	<i>Dioscorea rotundata</i>	Dioscoreaceae	40(4x)
Lesser yam	<i>Dioscorea esculenta</i>	Dioscoreaceae	40(4x)
Chinese Potato (Coleus)	<i>Solenostemon rotundifolius</i>	Labiatae	2n= 28

4. CURRENT STATUS TUBER CROPS

Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.), known as the “king of vegetables,” is India’s most important tuber crop and a key contributor to food security and the horticulture economy. India ranks second globally in potato production after China, with an output of about 58–60 million tonnes grown over 2.3 million hectares and productivity of 24-26 t/ha [13, 14]. Major production is concentrated in Uttar Pradesh, West Bengal, and Bihar, while Gujarat and Punjab are emerging as important processing hubs (15 ICAR-CPRI, 2024).

Despite high productivity, post-harvest losses of 15–20% occur due to inadequate cold storage and supply chain gaps, causing price instability [14]. In recent years, demand has shifted strongly toward processing-grade potatoes for chips, French fries, flakes, and starch, driving industrial expansion, especially in Punjab and Uttar Pradesh. India is also gradually strengthening its export potential in processed potato products.

However, the sector faces challenges from climate variability and diseases like late blight. To address this, ICAR–CPRI is developing climate-resilient, disease-resistant varieties. Overall, potato remains a strategic crop for India’s food security, agro-industry growth and rural economy.

Food allergies and intolerances, especially celiac disease and non-celiac gluten sensitivity, are major public health concerns driving the global demand for gluten-free foods. A strict gluten-free diet is the only effective treatment, as gluten damages intestinal villi and leads to malabsorption and related health issues. Consequently, the gluten-free food market is expanding rapidly with products such as bread, pasta, noodles and bakery items.

In India, growth potential is high but market penetration remains limited due to low awareness and underdiagnosis; however, demand is increasing in urban areas for health-oriented diets and functional foods [16]. Potato is an important raw material for gluten-free product development due to its natural gluten-free nature and good functional properties, and is widely used in cookies, snacks, premixes, and other convenience foods. The Central Potato Research Institute (CPRI), India, has developed several potato-based technologies that support diversification and value addition in gluten-free food systems [17, 18].

Some important improved potato varieties: Table 1. showed the details of potato varieties released in India, including their salient features and adaptation zones, were compiled from authenticated sources of ICAR–Central Potato Research Institute (CPRI), Shimla [19, 20].

Sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* L.) is a climate-resilient, nutritionally rich tuber crop widely recognized for its role in food and nutritional security, especially in developing countries. It is rich in β -carotene, dietary fibre and antioxidants, making it an important biofortified crop for addressing vitamin A deficiency and hidden hunger. Globally, it is cultivated mainly in Asia and Africa, with China as the leading producer, followed by countries like Nigeria and Uganda, and is used for food, feed, starch, and bioethanol production [14]. In India, sweet potato occupies about 0.11–0.13 million hectares with production of 1.25–1.35 million tonnes, and is mainly grown in Odisha, Karnataka, and Madhya Pradesh, where improved varieties have enhanced productivity [13]. Important varieties described in table 2

ICAR–CTCRI, Thiruvananthapuram plays a key role in germplasm conservation and development of high dry matter, orange-fleshed (β -carotene rich) and purple-fleshed (anthocyanin rich) varieties such as ‘Sona’ and ‘Krishna’, supporting nutritional security and functional food development (Table 2). Sweet potato is widely used as a table crop as well as for processing into chips, flour, starch, noodles, bakery products, and ethanol, reflecting its growing industrial importance [15]. Its starch is valued for thickening, binding, and fermentation applications in food and industrial sectors, while bioactive pigments like β -carotene and anthocyanins are used as natural colorants in clean-label products [21].

Value-added processing such as flour, flakes, purees, juices, frozen products and canned forms enhances shelf life and utilizes off-grade roots efficiently. Sweet potato flour is increasingly used in gluten-free and functional foods due to its high fiber and antioxidant content, while starch is used in noodles, syrups, and bio-based industrial products like ethanol and organic acids. Overall, sweet potato is emerging as a functional, industrial and climate-smart crop with strong potential in both food and bioeconomy sector.

Cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) is one of the most important tropical tuber crops and plays a key role in food security, nutrition, and industrial starch-based economy. It is widely used as a source of dietary energy and also serves as an important raw material for animal feed, biofuel, and industrial starch (tapioca starch) used in textiles, paper and adhesive industries. Cassava is believed to have originated in Central and South America and was introduced into India by the Portuguese during the seventeenth century. In India, it is mainly cultivated in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, and northeastern states, where it contributes significantly to rural livelihoods.

Globally, cassava is considered the “king of tropical tuber crops” due to its adaptability to marginal soils and climate resilience. According to [14], cassava is cultivated on approximately 28–30 million hectares worldwide, with a global production of about 330–350 million tonnes, and an average productivity of 11–12 t/ha, with higher yields (>25 t/ha) in improved systems. In India, cassava is grown on about 0.18–0.22 million hectares, with production of nearly 8–9 million tonnes and productivity ranging from 30–35 t/ha under improved cultivation systems [15].

Cassava is the third most important starch crop after rice and maize, and its processing into chips, pellets, flour, and tapioca starch forms the backbone of several agro-industries. Recent studies highlight increasing global demand for cassava starch due to its gluten-free nature, high digestibility, and functional properties in processed foods and industrial applications [6]. The current scenario shows rapid expansion of cassava-based industries driven by its use in bioethanol production, biodegradable plastics, modified starches and clean-label food products. Modern research emphasizes cassava as a key crop in the bioeconomy and circular economy, where starch is converted into value-added products such as organic acids, sweeteners, enzymes, and bioplastic. Cassava processing involves drying, cooking, and fermentation, which improves shelf life and reduces toxic cyanogenic glucosides, making it safer for consumption. Its starch exhibits excellent thickening, binding, and stabilizing properties, making it widely used in the food, pharmaceutical, paper, textile, adhesive and ethanol industries [22].

Processed into products such as chips, sago, vermicelli, flour, starch, glucose, and industrial alcohol, making it an important crop for both food and industry. Starch extraction is a simple water-based process involving washing, peeling, crushing, rasping, sedimentation, drying, and milling, which is efficient due to the low protein and fat content of cassava roots. It is widely used in the food industry as a thickener, stabilizer, binder, and filler in soups, sauces, bakery, dairy, and meat products due to its functional properties. It is also used in confectionery products like candies and toffees through starch derivatives such as glucose and dextrose syrup. Overall, cassava processing is simple, cost-effective and highly suitable for rural industries, contributing significantly to food security and industrial applications [22]. Some of improved varieties are described in table 3.

Taro (*Colocasia esculenta*), a prominent member of the Araceae family, is a versatile herbaceous plant valued for its nutrient-dense underground corms and edible leaves. Native to Southeast Asia, it has evolved from a subsistence staple into a globally recognized functional food, utilized in products ranging from traditional Polynesian *poi* to modern ice creams and hypoallergenic beverages. Nutritionally, the corm is an exceptional energy source, containing 70–80% starch on a dry matter basis. While low in protein (1.5%) and fat (0.2%), taro is a significant source of dietary fiber and essential micronutrients, including Vitamin B₆, Vitamin C, potassium and manganese. Its

starch granules are uniquely small and highly digestible, making taro-based foods ideal for infants and individuals with cereal allergies. However, the plant contains acrid calcium oxalate crystals and antinutrients like phytates and tannins, which must be neutralized through heating before consumption.

In the current Indian agricultural context of 2025-2026, taro cultivation is estimated to cover approximately 0.31 million hectares, with an annual production of roughly 3.9 million tonnes [13]. Production is heavily concentrated in the North-Eastern states, West Bengal, Bihar, and Odisha, where it remains a cornerstone of rural diets. Despite its nutritional value, the crop faces significant post-harvest challenges; due to its high moisture content, it has a limited shelf-life of about one month if stored in shaded conditions. To mitigate these losses, current industrial research is focusing on value-added applications, such as using taro starch for the entrapment of flavouring compounds and as a thickener in the burgeoning gluten-free market [24]. Table 4. showed the details of some improved varieties.

Elephant foot yam (*Amorphophallus paeoniifolius*), known as Suran or Jimikand, is a high-potential tropical tuber of the Araceae family that has transitioned from a backyard staple to a prominent commercial cash crop in India. Favored for its massive yield potential (50-80 t/ha) and culinary versatility, it is widely grown across Southeast Asia, including the Philippines, Malaysia, and Indonesia. In the current 2025-2026 agricultural landscape, the crop has gained significant traction in India due to its climate resilience, long shelf-life, and lucrative economic returns, often exceeding a net profit of ₹1.5 lakh per hectare. While traditional hubs like West Bengal and Kerala remain dominant, cultivation has expanded into non-traditional states such as Gujarat and Maharashtra, where it is increasingly grown under drip irrigation to satisfy both

Variety	Year	Salient features	Area of adaptation
Kufri Jyoti	1968	Late blight tolerant, medium maturity, good storability, table purpose	North Indian plains & hills
Kufri Chandra mukhi	1968	Early maturity, good cooking quality, low dormancy	North & eastern plains
Kufri Sindhuri	1969	Red-skinned tubers, long dormancy, good keeping quality	North Indian plains
Kufri Badshah	1985	High yield, medium-late maturity, good storage, table type	Punjab, UP, Haryana
Kufri Bahar	1990	Drought tolerant, stable yield under rainfed conditions	Central & North India
Kufri Lauvkar	1990	Early maturing, short duration, escapes late blight	Plains & hills
Kufri Ashoka	1996	Early maturity, high yield, good for early marketing	North Indian plains
Kufri Pukhraj	1998	Very high yield, wide adaptability, early bulking	North & central India
Kufri Chipsona-1	1998	Processing type, low reducing sugars, good chip colour	North Indian plains
Kufri Chipsona-2	1998	Uniform tubers, good frying quality, low sugar accumulation	North India
Kufri Surya	2000	Heat tolerant, suitable for summer cultivation, moderate yield	Peninsular & warm plains

Variety	Year	Salient features	Area of adaptation
Kufri Himsona	2004	Late blight resistance, suited for hill conditions	Himachal Pradesh & Uttarakhand hills
Kufri Chipsona-3	2005	Improved chip colour, better processing recovery	Punjab, UP, Bihar
Kufri Frysona	2009	High dry matter, suitable for French fries industry	Processing belts (Punjab, Gujarat)
Kufri Chipsona-4	2010	Processing variety, high dry matter, good chip quality	North & western India
Kufri Chipsona-5	2015	Improved disease tolerance, high dry matter, chip quality	North India
Kufri Chipsona-6	2018	Stable chip colour under cold storage, high yield	Processing regions
Kufri Chipbhar at-1	2025	Very high dry matter, excellent chip processing quality, uniform tubers	Punjab, UP, MP, Gujarat, Maharashtra
Kufri Chipbhar at-2	2025	Early bulking, good chip colour after storage, processing type	Same as above

Variety	Year	Salient features	Area of adaptation
Kufri Tejas	2025	Heat tolerant, high yield (~37–40 t/ha), adaptable to warmer zones	Haryana, UP, MP, Gujarat, Maharashtra
Kufri Ratan	2025	Red-skinned table variety, good storability, attractive tubers	North plains & plateau regions

Table 1. Improved varieties of potato by CPRI

Table 2: Improved varieties of sweet potato

Variety	Year of release	Salient features	Area of adaptation
Bhu Sona	2017	Orange-fleshed, high β -carotene (pro-vitamin A 13–14 mg/100 g), good cooking quality, high yield (19–24 t/ha), suitable for processing	Odisha, Eastern and Central India
Bhu Krishna	2017	- Purple fleshed, very high anthocyanin (85–90 mg/100 g), antioxidant rich, weevil & salt tolerant, processing suitable	Odisha, tribal belts, all India adaptability
Bhu Kanti	2017	Orange-fleshed, β -carotene rich, drought & salt tolerant, good cooking quality	Odisha, rainfed and eastern India
Bhu Ja	2017	Orange-fleshed, moderate β -carotene, good taste, salt tolerant, table purpose	Eastern and coastal regions
Bhu Swami	2017	White/cream flesh, drought tolerant, stable yield, good storage quality	Rainfed and dryland regions (India)

Variety	Year of release	Salient features	Area of adaptation
SPH-52	2024 (pre-release)	High yielding hybrid (24–25 t/ha), β -carotene enriched, biofortified line	Odisha, Eastern and Central India
SPH-60	2024 (pre-release)	High yield (~26 t/ha), improved adaptability, carotenoid rich	Multi-location Indian conditions
SP-95/4	2024 (advanced line)	Short duration (75–80 days), high β -carotene (~8.5 mg/100 g), drought tolerant	Eastern and rainfed regions

Variety	Year	Institute	Duration	Yield (t/ha)	Key Salient Features
Sree Sakthi	2018	CTCRI	9–10 months	45–50	Non-branching, high yielding, resistant to cassava mosaic disease (CMD), tolerant to post-harvest loss
Sree Survarna	2018	CTCRI	7–8 months	45–50	Branching type, CMD resistant, high yield
Sree Kaveri	2023	CTCRI	9–10 months	40–50	Drought tolerant, CMD resistant, high yield
Sree Manna	2024	CTCRI	9–10 months	30–40	Good cooking quality, pink rind, white flesh, moderately tolerant to CMD
Sree Apoorva	Recent	CTCRI	10 months	35–40	High extractable starch (29.9%), tolerant to leaf spot, spider mite, and scale insect

Variety	Year	Institute	Duration	Yield (t/ha)	Key Salient Features
Sree Swarna	2015 (recently adopted)	CTCRI	7–8 months	35–40	CMD tolerant, good field performance
Sree Pavithra	2015 (recently adopted)	CTCRI	9 months	35–40	Good cooking quality, high K efficiency

Table 3: Improved varieties of cassava by ICAR-Central Tuber Crops Research Institute, Thiruvananthapuram, Kerala

domestic vegetable markets and the growing demand from the pharmaceutical sector for its high fiber content and low glycemic index [24]. Some high-yielding varieties are described in Table 5.

Statistically, elephant foot yam currently occupies approximately 38,900 to 42,000 hectares in India, with an annual production estimated between 0.98 and 1.10 million tons [13]. West Bengal leads national production, contributing roughly 34% of the total volume, followed by Kerala and Andhra Pradesh, which boast the highest productivity levels at approximately 46 t ha⁻¹ and 37 t ha⁻¹ respectively.

Yams: The genus *Dioscorea*, popularly known as "Yam," belongs to the family Dioscoreaceae and encompasses roughly 682 species globally, with a significant diversity of 42 species recorded within India. These climbing herbs are prized for their starchy tubers, which serve as a critical food source and a medicinal reservoir in temperate and tropical regions. Historically, yams have been integrated into traditional medicine as post-pregnancy tonics and treatments for ailments such as piles, dysentery, and diabetes. Prominent Indian species include *D. alata* (Greater yam), utilized as a health supplement; *D. esculenta* (Lesser yam), applied to skin infections; and *D. rotundata* (White yam), used for various skin diseases.

In the contemporary agricultural landscape, yams have transitioned from gathered forest produce to commercially cultivated crops across 13 states and 44 districts. Cultivation is primarily concentrated in the North-Eastern states, Odisha, and the southern peninsula. For the 2024–2025 period, the total area under yam cultivation in India is estimated at approximately 0.30 million hectares, with a total production of roughly 3.5 to 3.7 million tons [13].

While the traditional yield was recorded at 30.35 t/ha, recent institutional interventions and the adoption of high-yielding varieties (such as Sree Roopa and Sree Shilpa in table 6) have pushed productivity levels in intensive clusters to 35.5 t/ha. States like Kerala and Tamil Nadu report the highest productivity, whereas the North-Eastern states like Nagaland and Manipur lead in terms of organic and indigenous species diversity [23].

Tannia (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium*), widely known as “New Cocoyam” or Malanga, is currently undergoing a strategic re-evaluation in the Indian agricultural sector. It is distinguished from taro by its larger sagittate leaves and strong resistance to taro leaf blight, and is mainly cultivated in the humid tropical regions of Kerala, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal, and the North-Eastern states. As of 2025–2026, tannia occupies an estimated area of 15,000–18,000 hectares with a production of about 0.15–0.20 million tons [25]. Although traditionally a subsistence crop, recent institutional efforts have focused on its commercialization, including the development of improved high-yielding varieties by ICAR–CTCRI to enhance productivity levels [23]. Productivity in India currently ranges from 25–30 t/ha, indicating significant scope for improvement through genetic and agronomic interventions [26].

Nutritionally and industrially, tannia is recognized as a highly digestible energy-rich tuber due to its small starch granule size. The corms contain approximately 85% carbohydrates (dry matter basis) and are rich in minerals such as calcium and vitamin

B₆. Recent studies have highlighted its potential for gluten-free flour production, functional food formulations, and use as a thickening agent in dairy and meat processing industries. It is also increasingly utilized in animal feed, where it can partially replace maize in poultry diets, thereby reducing feed costs and improving sustainability. Ongoing breeding and biotechnological research are therefore focused on developing disease-resistant and high-yielding genotypes to support future expansion of this crop [26].

There are no specific released varieties of tannia in India. Only local selections with low acidity, good texture and suitability of leaves for making rolls are available. Where corms and cormels yields are being prepared, local collections with high yield and less acidity are desired. For making rolls, cultivars with high leaf yield and less acidity are preferred.

In India, the cultivation of the **Chinese Potato** (*Solenostemon rotundifolius*), known locally as *Koorka* or *Sirukizhangu*, is a specialized niche concentrated primarily in the southern states of Kerala and Tamil Nadu, with smaller pockets in Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh. As of April 2026, the crop covers an estimated area of approximately 5,000 to 6,000 acres (roughly 2,000-2,400 hectares) across key districts such as Thrissur, Palakkad, and Ernakulam in Kerala, and

Table 4. Improved varieties of taro

Variety	Year of Release	Duration (months)	Average Yield (t/ha)	Salient Features	Recommended State
Sree Hira	2022	6	18–20	Suitable for rainfed uplands & irrigated conditions; 12–16 long cormels (14–18 cm); good cooking quality; low acidity; tolerant to leaf blight	Odisha
Sree Telia	2022	4	10–12	Summer planting with protective irrigation; 7–9 cormels/plant; early harvest escapes leaf blight; good cooking quality; low acidity	Odisha
Bhu Sree	2017	6–7	11–12	Round corms; round to elliptic cormels; good cooking quality; tolerant to Phytophthora leaf blight, drought, salinity and mid-season stress; starch 15.6–17.3%, sugar 1.2–1.5%	Odisha
Bhu Kripa	2017	6–7	14–15	Excellent cooking quality; tolerant to Phytophthora leaf blight, drought, salinity & submergence; starch 12.3–14.2%, sugar 1.3–1.7%	Odisha
Pani Saru-I	2005	6–7	12–15	Round corms, elliptic cormels; good cooking & keeping quality;	Coastal/Waterlogged Odisha

Variety	Year of Release	Duration (months)	Average Yield (t/ha)	Salient Features	Recommended State
				tolerant to leaf blight & waterlogging	
Pani Saru-II	2005	6–7	12–13	Round corms; round to elliptic cormels; good cooking quality; tolerant to waterlogged/swampy conditions	Odisha
Sree Kiran	2004	6–7	17–18	First hybrid taro (C-303 × C-383); oval corms; good cooking and keeping quality	Kerala
Muktakeshi	2002	5–6	18–20	White flesh; excellent cooking quality; resistant to Phytophthora leaf blight; suitable for upland and lowland; starch 17.8%, protein 2.8%	Odisha, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Kerala
Sree Pallavi	1987	7	15–17	Big conical corms; club-shaped cormels; white flesh; tolerant to DMV and leaf blight; starch 24.5%	Kerala
Sree Rashmi	1987	7–8	18–20	Non-acrid plant parts; cylindrical corms; conical cormels; good cooking quality; DM virus tolerant	Kerala

Tenkasi and Tirunelveli in Tamil Nadu [23]. While national agricultural data often groups it under "minor tubers," the annual production value in these concentrated zones is estimated at roughly ₹67 crore, supporting nearly 10 lakh mandays of employment (The Hindu, 2025). Yields typically average between 15 and 20 metric tons per hectare, though recent initiatives like the "Seed Gram 2025-30" project in Palakkad are aiming to boost productivity through tissue-culture-derived seeds and mechanized harvesting tools developed by the ICAR-Central Tuber Crops Research Institute [11]. Table 7 showed the details of some improved varieties of Chinese potato

By contrast, the standard potato sector in India operates on a massive industrial scale, with the Ministry of Agriculture's Third Advance Estimates for 2024 reporting a record production of 58.11 million metric tons from an area of 2.44 million hectares. This reflects a steady growth of 1.85% in national output, led by Uttar Pradesh, which contributes approximately 33% of the total, followed by West Bengal and Bihar [13]. While the specialty Chinese Potato remains a premium seasonal delicacy with retail prices often reaching ₹60–₹90 per kg, the industrial potato market is increasingly dominated by processing-grade varieties in states like Gujarat and Punjab, where contract farming for the snack industry has become the primary economic driver.

Central Research Stations and AICRP on Tuber Crops in India

India has a well-established research network for tuber crop improvement coordinated through premier ICAR institutes and the All India Coordinated Research Project (AICRP) on Tuber Crops. The major central research institutes include the ICAR–Central Tuber Crops Research Institute (CTCRI), Thiruvananthapuram, Kerala, which serves as the national lead centre for research on tropical tuber crops such as cassava, sweet potato, yams, elephant foot yam, taro, and tannia. Another key institute is the ICAR–Central Potato Research Institute (CPRI), Shimla, Himachal Pradesh, which is responsible for potato research and varietal development in temperate and sub-temperate regions of India. In addition, the Regional Centre of ICAR–CTCRI, Bhubaneswar (Odisha) plays an important role in developing and evaluating tuber crops suited to eastern and coastal agro-climatic conditions.

The AICRP on Tuber Crops operates through a wide network of state agricultural universities and research centers across India to coordinate multi-location trials, varietal evaluation, and technology dissemination. Major participating centers include Tamil Nadu Agricultural University (TNAU), Coimbatore; Acharya N. G. Ranga Agricultural University (ANGRAU), Hyderabad; Konkan Krishi Vidyapeeth (KKV), Dapoli; Navsari Agricultural University (NAU), Navsari; Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishwavidyalaya (IGKV), Jagdalpur; Narendra Deva University of Agriculture and Technology (NDUA&T), Faizabad; Rajendra Agricultural University (RAU), Dholi; Birsa Agricultural University (BAU), Ranchi; Bidhan Chandra Krishi Viswavidyalaya (BCKV), Kalyani; and Assam Agricultural University (AAU), Jorhat. These centres collectively play a crucial role in developing high-yielding, disease-resistant, and climate-resilient tuber crop varieties suitable for diverse agro-ecological zones of India.

Variety	Institution / Source	Salient Features	Yield
Sree Padma	ICAR–CTCRI, Thiruvananthapuram	Improved selection; good cooking quality; widely adapted in Kerala; uniform corms	42 t/ha
Gajendra	APAU (now ANGRAU), Hyderabad	Large corms; black-skinned tubers; low acidity; easily cooked; widely cultivated	50–80 t/ha
Kovvur	Local selection (South India)	Large, smooth corms; low acidity; widely cultivated in South India	100 t/ha
Santra Gachi	Eastern India selection	Rough, small corms; more acidity; suitable for eastern agro-climatic zones	50–70 t/ha
Palam Zimikand-1	KVK Bilaspur, Himachal Pradesh	White-fleshed corms; solid pseudo-stem; early maturity (170–180 days); used for vegetables, pickles and Ayurvedic use; suitable for Zone I and II of HP	200–250 q/ha (100 g cormlets), 450–550 q/ha (100– 500 g corms)
Elephant Foot Yam CO 1	TNAU (2022)	Clonal selection; 240 days duration; recommended for Tamil Nadu districts; planting Feb–Mar; adaptable and stable performance	50 t/ha

Table 5. Improved varieties of elephant foot yam

Table 6. Improved varieties of yams (Nedunchezhiyan et., 2023)

Species	Variety	Duration (months)	Yield (t/ha)	Salient Features	Recommended Areas
Greater Yam (<i>D. alata</i>)	Sree Keerthi	9–10	25–30	High yielding; large tubers; suitable for intercropping in coconut & banana systems	Kerala (coastal & interior plains)
	Sree Roopa	9–10	25–30	Medium tubers; excellent cooking quality	Kerala
	Sree Shilpa	8	25–28	First hybrid <i>D. alata</i> ; medium oval tubers; easy harvest; good cooking quality	Kerala
	Sree Karthika	9	28–30	Long oval tubers; high yield; excellent cooking quality	Kerala
	Sree Neelima	8–9	30–40	Purple-fleshed tubers; high nutritional quality	Kerala
	Sree Swathy	9–10	35–45	Drought tolerant; anthracnose resistant; medium conical tubers	Kerala
	Orissa Elite	9	22–25	Cylindrical tubers; tolerant to leaf spot, scales & mealy bugs	Odisha
	Bhu Swar	6–7	20–25	Cylindrical to irregular tubers; good cooking quality	Odisha

Species	Variety	Duration (months)	Yield (t/ha)	Salient Features	Recommended Areas
	Sree Nidhi	7–8	35–45	Cylindrical tubers; anthracnose tolerant	Kerala & Odisha
	Sree Hima	7–8	35–45	Digitate fused tubers; high yield; excellent cooking quality	Kerala
White Yam (<i>D. rotundata</i>)	Sree Priya	9–10	35–40	Cylindrical tubers; drought tolerant; suitable for intercropping with banana	Kerala
	Sree Subhra	9–10	35–40	Cylindrical tubers; good cooking quality; drought tolerant	Kerala
	Sree Dhanya	9	15–20	First dwarf yam variety; bushy plant type; suitable for close spacing	Kerala
	Sree Swetha	8–9	25–30	Dwarf bushy type; suitable for high density planting	Kerala
	Sree Haritha	9–10	45–50	Excellent cooking quality; good flavour; high yield	Kerala
Lesser Yam (<i>D. esculenta</i>)	Sree Latha	8–9	20–25	Wide adaptability; oblong/fusiform tubers; excellent cooking quality	Kerala, Bihar, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Assam, West Bengal
	Sree Kala	8–9	20–25	Oval smooth tubers; early maturity (~7.5 months); excellent cooking quality	Kerala

5. PROSPECTS

The prospects for tuber crops in India are undergoing a strategic shift from being viewed as "subsistence crops" to being recognized as climate-smart, high-value industrial assets. As of 2026, tuber crops (including cassava, sweet potato, elephant foot yam, and specialty tubers like Chinese potato) are increasingly prioritized in India's food security and economic diversification plans (Figure.2)

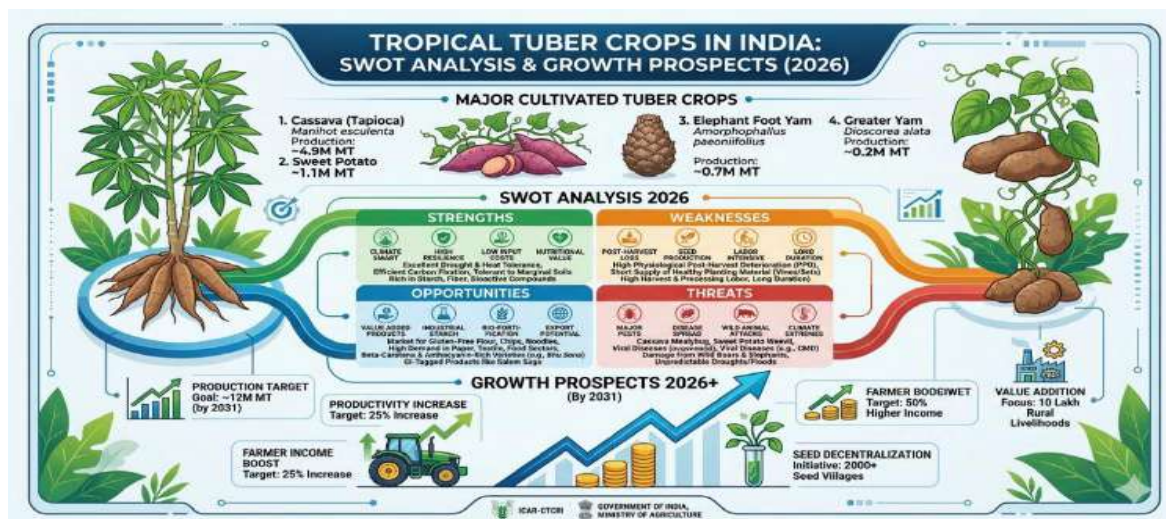


Figure 2. Strategic Roadmap for India's Tropical Tuber Sector: Production Targets, Constraints, and Opportunities

Analysis of Strengths and Weaknesses

Strengths

- **Climate Resilience:** Tuber crops like cassava and sweet potato are exceptionally hardy. They can withstand high temperatures and drought conditions that often cause cereal crops (rice and wheat) to fail, making them essential for India's climate-adaptation strategy (Suja et al., 2025).
- **High Biological Efficiency:** Tubers are superior "energy banks." Cassava and sweet potato produce significantly higher dry matter and calories per unit area per day compared to rice or wheat (Byju et al., 2025).
- **Resource Efficiency:** Most tropical tubers thrive in marginal, less fertile soils with minimal external inputs like synthetic fertilizers, making them ideal for small-scale and tribal farmers (ResearchGate, 2022).
- **Nutritional Versatility:** Beyond starch, biofortified varieties (e.g., *Bhu Sona* sweet potato) provide high levels of Beta-carotene and Anthocyanins, addressing "hidden hunger" and Vitamin A deficiencies in rural populations (ICAR-CTCRI, 2025).

Weaknesses

- **High Post-Harvest Losses:** Many tubers, particularly cassava, are highly perishable. Physiological vascular bundling (deterioration) begins within 48–72 hours of harvest, necessitating immediate processing or specialized storage (Byju et al., 2025).

- **Long Crop Duration:** Most tuber crops take 7–10 months to mature. This long duration ties up land and makes them less attractive compared to short- cycle vegetables or 3-month cereal varieties (CTCRI, 2025).
- **Weak Seed Systems:** Unlike the robust seed-distribution networks for rice or wheat, tuber crops suffer from a lack of formal seed systems. Farmers often rely on poor-quality, disease-ridden planting material from previous harvests (Suja et al., 2025).

Table 7. High yielding varieties of Chinese potato

Variety	Year / Source	Developed by	Morphological Features	Duration (months)	Yield (t/ha)	Quality Traits	Special Features / Constraints	Recommended States
Sree Dhara	1993	ICAR-CTCRI	Round tubers (2–5 cm); dark brown skin; cream flesh; spreading habit; green ovate leaves	5-8	25–28	Dry matter 25-29%; starch 16–20%; sugar 0.6-0.8%	Good cooking quality; shelf life 1-2 months; susceptible to root-knot nematode	Kerala, Tamil Nadu
CO 1	1991	AICRP-Tuber Crops	Round to oval tubers; brown skin; creamy white flesh; spreading habit; ovate leaves; profuse flowering	6-6.5 (180-190 days)	31.9–35.8	Dry matter 28-30%; starch 21.5%; low soil odour after cooking	Performs well in red sandy loam soils; shelf life 1-2 months	Tamil Nadu

- **Labor Intensive:** Harvesting tubers (especially the small "Chinese Potato") remains largely manual and back-breaking work. The high cost of labor in states like Kerala often reduces the net profit margin for farmers (The Hindu, 2025).

6. RESEARCH GAPS AND PROGRAMS FOR STRENGTHENING TUBER RESEARCH IN INDIA

Constraints to growth of root and tuber crops in India: Low productivity for most of root and tuber crops, except cassava, has been observed in India, which may be attributed to the following reasons.

- Inadequate availability of high-yielding and quality planting materials
- Use of indigenous land races with low productivity
- Grown as subsidiary crop without proper scientific management
- Competition from other remunerative crops
- Decrease in demand for tuber crops due to the availability of cereals and vegetables in plenty
- Change in dietary habits
- Weak extension system
- Incidence of pests and diseases
- Lack of commercialization of these crops for utilization in industries

Programmes have been identified for strengthening tuber research in india

- Organic farming
- Tuber crops based cropping system.
- Pest and diseases management strategies.
- Utilization and scope for rural employment.
- Extension Education and Awareness programmes.
- Planting Material Production and Distribution.

7. CONCLUSION

The current scenario of tuber crops in India reflects a strategic transition from subsistence-level cultivation to a technology-driven, industrial-scale agricultural sector. As of 2026, these crops are no longer viewed merely as "famine foods" but are recognized as high-potential, climate-resilient assets capable of ensuring both food and energy security. With a national production volume reaching approximately 10.11 million tonnes and an annual market value of ₹130 billion, tubers like cassava and sweet potato are increasingly integrated into the industrial starch and bio-ethanol industries, aligning with India's E20 fuel-blending targets (Byju, 2025). The introduction of "Rainbow" biofortified varieties has further elevated the sector's importance by addressing nutritional deficiencies, while initiatives like SeedGram 2025-30 are systematically overcoming the historical bottleneck of inadequate planting materials (PIB, 2026).

Despite these advances, the sector still faces significant constraints, including high post-harvest perishability, labour-intensive harvesting, and a historically weak extension system. However, the proposed National Mission on Tuber Crops (NMTC) aims to mitigate these challenges through molecular breeding for short-duration varieties, precision agronomy, and digital advisory platforms (ICAR-CTCRI, 2026). Ultimately, the roadmap for the next five years focuses on value-chain integration and commercialization, transforming tropical tubers into remunerative crops that offer a sustainable livelihood for over 200 million people while providing a robust, non-cereal alternative for India's growing population.

8. References

- [1] Prakash, P., Jaganathan, D., Immanuel, S., & Sivakumar, P. S. (2020). Analysis of global and national scenario of tubers production: Trends and prospects. *Indian Journal of Economics and Development*, 16(4), 500–510.
- [2] Talang, H. D., Devi, M. B., Rymbai, H., Biam, K. P., Rymbai, P., Mawlong, G., & Hazarika, (2022). Tuber crops: Problems and prospects in Meghalaya. *Agrinenv.com*, 66–78.
- [3] Kumar, V. R. (2018). Tuber crops – CTCRI innovates opportunities. *Krishi Jagran*. <https://krishijagran.com>
- [4] Prakash, P., Jaganathan, D., & Immanuel, S. (2024). Production, trade and future prospects of tropical tuber crops. *Current Science*, 127(9), 1100–1107.
- [5] Chandra, V., Pati, K., Anil, S. R., & Sahoo, M. R. (2024). Climate-resilient and biofortified tuber crop varieties. *Indian Horticulture*, 11–16.
- [6] Immanuel, S., Jaganathan, D., & Prakash, P. (2024). Cassava for food security, poverty reduction and climate resilience: A review. *Indian Journal of Ecology*, 51(1), 21–31.
- [7] Dwivedi, S. L., Garcia-Oliveira, A. L., Govindaraj, M., & Ortiz, R. (2023). Biofortification to avoid malnutrition in humans in a changing climate. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 14, 1119148. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2023.1119148>
- [8] Farm Information Bureau. (2025). *Tuber crops in India: History and importance*. Government of India.
- [9] Yan, H., et al. (2025). Advancements and strategies of genetic improvement in cassava. *Horticulture Research*, 12(3), uhae341. <https://doi.org/10.1093/hr/uhae341>
- [10] ICAR–Central Tuber Crops Research Institute (CTCRI). (2025). *Transforming tropical tuber crops: Scientific advances, emerging challenges and future directions for India*. Thiruvananthapuram, India.
- [11] Divya, K., Thangaraj, M., & Radhika, N. K. (2024). CRISPR/Cas9: An advanced platform for root and tuber crops improvement. *Frontiers in Genome Editing*, 5, 1242510. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fgeed.2023.1242510>
- [12] Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare. (2024). *Horticulture statistics at a glance 2023–24*. Government of India.

- [13] FAO. (2023). *FAOSTAT database*. Food and Agriculture Organization. <https://www.fao.org/faostat/>
- [14] ICAR–Central Tuber Crops Research Institute (CTCRI). (2024). *Annual report 2023–24*. Thiruvananthapuram, India.
- [15] Mukherjee, P., & Uppaluri, R. (2025). Trends in gluten-free food product development. *Sustainable Food Technology*, 3, 1589–1609.
- [16] Central Potato Research Institute (CPRI). (2024). *Indian potato varieties and value-added technologies*. Shimla, India.
- [17] Jaiswal, A. K., Kumar, D., & Singh, B. (2024). Nutritional value and value-added applications of potato in functional food development. *Indian Farming*, 74(5), 39–42.
- [18] Luthra, S. K., Gupta, V. K., Kumar, S., Kaur, R. P., Dalamu, & Bhardwaj, V. (2021). Improved potato varieties for different agro-ecologies of India (pp. 1–19). In *Recent Advances in Root and Tuber Crops*. ICAR–Central Potato Research Institute.
- [19] Tiwari, J. K., Luthra, S. K., Dalamu, Bhardwaj, V., Singh, R. K., Buckseth, T., et al. (2024). *Indian potato varieties (1949–2020)* (Technical Bulletin No. 7). ICAR–Central Potato Research Institute.
- [20] Yun, D., Wu, Y., Yong, H., Tang, C., Chen, D., Kan, J., & Liu, J. (2024). Anthocyanins from purple sweet potato: Extraction and applications. *Foods*, 13(21), 3485. <https://doi.org/10.3390/foods13213485>
- [21] Okolieuwa, C. C., Nnamchi, C. I., Imumolen, C., & Ikwunne, T. (2025). Exploring the impact of bioethanol and cassava feedstock on the future of industrial applications. *American Journal of Applied Sciences and Engineering*, 6(1), 10–27. <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15189233>
- [22] Thulasimani, K. (2019). Tapioca processing. *Central Tuber Crops Research Institute*. <https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.36472.90889>
- [23] ICAR–Central Tuber Crops Research Institute (CTCRI). (2026). *Annual report: Progress in tropical tuber research*. Thiruvananthapuram, India.
- [24] Jeeva, M. L., Sunilkumar, K., Asha Devi, A., Kesava Kumar, H., Krishnakumar, T., & Prakash, P. (2023). *Elephant foot yam* (Technical Bulletin No. 98). ICAR–CTCRI.
- [25] National Horticulture Board (NHB). (2025). *Production estimates of major and minor tuber crops in India*.
- [26] Nedunchezhiyan, M., Immanuel, S., Jeeva, M. L., Kumar, H. K., Chandra, V., & Pradeepika, C. (2023). *Yams* (Technical Bulletin No. 101). ICAR–CTCRI.

Post-harvest processing, value addition and shelf-life enhancement of Aonla (*Phyllanthus emblica* L.): recent advances and future prospects

Gurwinder Singh 1 , Wineet Chawla 2 , Lakshya 3*

1,2,3 School of agriculture sciences and engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, India – 151001

Corresponding author email id : sragurwinder0001@gmail.com

Abstract

Aonla (*Phyllanthus emblica* L.) is an important indigenous fruit crop of India, well known for its exceptionally high vitamin C content and medicinal properties. Despite its nutritional and herapeutic value, the commercial utilization of aonla is limited due to its highly perishable nature, astringent taste and short shelf life under ambient conditions. Post-harvest losses in aonla are considerable, necessitating the development of efficient post-harvest processing and value addition techniques. In recent years, significant progress has been made in the areas of minimal processing, value-added product development, packaging technologies, edible coatings, and non-thermal preservation methods for aonla. This review critically examines recent advances in post-harvest handling, processing technologies, storage techniques and quality preservation strategies of aonla fruit. Emphasis is given to innovative approaches such as osmotic dehydration, modified atmosphere packaging, natural preservatives, and functional food development. Major research gaps related to storage physiology, processing-induced nutrient losses and commercial scalability are also highlighted. The review provides future directions for enhancing shelf life, product diversification and market potential of aonla. Keywords-*Phyllanthus emblica*; post harvest processing; value addition; shelf life; functional foods

Introduction

Aonla (*Phyllanthus emblica* L.), also known as Indian gooseberry, holds a prominent place among minor fruit crops due to its high nutritional and medicinal value. It is one of the richest natural sources of vitamin C and contains several bioactive compounds such as polyphenols, tannins and flavonoids. Despite its health benefits, fresh consumption of aonla is limited because of its acidic and astringent taste. Moreover, aonla fruits are highly perishable and prone to rapid quality deterioration after harvest, leading to significant post-harvest losses. Post-harvest processing plays a crucial role in extending shelf life, reducing losses and improving marketability of aonla. Traditional processing methods such as candy, murabba and pickles are widely practiced, but recent advances have introduced innovative processing and preservation technologies. However, comprehensive reviews focusing on recent approaches in post-harvest processing of aonla are limited. Therefore, this review aims to critically analyze recent developments, challenges and future prospects in post-harvest processing and value addition of aonla fruit.

Post-harvest physiology and storage behaviour of aonla Aonla is a climacteric fruit with relatively low respiration rate but high sensitivity to moisture loss and microbial spoilage. Physiological changes during storage include loss of firmness, browning and reduction in vitamin C content.

Understanding post-harvest physiology is essential for designing effective storage and processing strategies. Post-harvest handling and storage techniques Proper harvesting at physiological maturity, pre-cooling and careful handling are critical to maintain fruit quality. Storage under low temperature and

controlled humidity conditions significantly extends shelf life. Recent studies have explored the use of controlled and modified atmosphere storage to reduce respiration rate and delay senescence. Processing and value-added products of aonla Aonla is processed into a wide range of products such as candy, juice, squash, jam, powder, dehydrated slices and herbal formulations. Recent research focuses on minimizing nutrient loss during processing and improving sensory quality. Osmotic dehydration, vacuum drying and freeze drying have been found effective in preserving vitamin C and bioactive compounds.

Innovative preservation and packaging technologies Emerging technologies such as edible coatings, natural antimicrobials, modified atmosphere packaging and non-thermal processing methods have shown promise in extending shelf life of aonla products. Use of biodegradable packaging materials aligns with sustainable post-harvest management.

Nutritional and functional aspects of processed aonla products Processed aonla products retain significant amounts of antioxidants and exhibit functional properties beneficial for human health. Development of functional foods and nutraceuticals from aonla has gained attention in recent years. Constraints and challenges in post-harvest processing Major challenges include high initial investment for advanced technologies, lack of standardized processing protocols and limited market awareness. Seasonal availability of raw material also affects processing efficiency. Research gaps and future prospects

- Limited studies on non-thermal preservation techniques
- Need for standardization of processing methods
- Insufficient data on nutrient retention during long-term storage
- Scaling up of innovative technologies for commercial use

Conclusion

Post-harvest processing and value addition offer immense potential to reduce losses, extend shelf life and enhance the economic value of aonla. Adoption of recent processing and preservation technologies can significantly improve quality and marketability. Future research should focus on sustainable, cost-effective and scalable solutions to promote aonla-based industries.

References

1. Singh, R., Pathak, R.K. and Verma, M.K. 2018. Post-harvest handling and storage behavior of aonla (*Phyllanthus emblica* L.). *Indian J. Hort.* 75: 45–50.
2. Kumar, S. and Nath, V. 2019. Advances in post-harvest processing of aonla fruits. *Prog. Hort.* 51: 120–126.

3. Sharma, S., Singh, A.K. and Yadav, R.K. 2020. Effect of storage conditions on quality and vitamin C retention in aonla. *Indian J. Agric. Sci.* 90: 1542–1547.
4. Goyal, R.K., Patil, R.T. and Kingsly, A.R.P. 2018. Development of value-added products from aonla. *J. Food Sci. Technol.* 55: 191–198.
5. Meena, K.K., Meena, R.S. and Mehta, R.S. 2019. Post-harvest losses and processing potential of minor fruits in India. *Indian J. Hort.* 76: 325–331.
6. Kumar, P., Singh, B. and Chauhan, A. 2021. Osmotic dehydration of aonla slices: Quality and nutritional evaluation. *J. Food Process. Preserv.* 45: e15321.
7. Rana, R.S. and Kumar, D. 2020. Effect of drying techniques on bioactive compounds of aonla *Food Chem.* 311: 125–132.
8. Bhatnagar, P., Verma, M.L. and Singh, S. 2018. Preparation and storage of aonla candy and murabba. *Indian J. Tradit. Knowl.* 17: 640–645.
9. Saxena, A., Sharma, P. and Singh, R. 2019. Modified atmosphere packaging for shelf-life extension of aonla fruits. *Sci. Hort.* 250: 321–327.
10. Kaur, G., Brar, A.S. and Singh, K. 2021. Edible coatings for quality preservation of aonla during storage. *J. Food Sci. Technol.* 58: 2475–2482.
11. Mishra, D., Pandey, V. and Singh, A. 2020. Effect of natural preservatives on microbial stability of aonla juice. *J. Food Saf.* 40: e12789.
12. Verma, R., Sharma, S. and Yadav, D. 2019. Nutritional quality of processed aonla products. *Indian J. Nutr. Diet.* 56: 215–220.
13. Chaudhary, M., Meena, P. and Kumar, A. 2022. Biodegradable packaging for processed fruit products: Aonla as a case study. *J. Clean. Prod.* 334: 130–138.
14. Pathak, R.K. and Mitra, S.K. 2018. Aonla production and post-harvest management. ICAR, New Delhi, pp. 180–195.
15. FAO. 2020. Post-harvest management of tropical and subtropical fruits. FAO Horticulture Paper, Rome, Italy, pp. 65–78.
16. Singh, J., Kaur, N. and Dhillon, W.S. 2021. Functional properties of aonla-based food products. *J. Food Sci. Nutr.* 9: 312–318.
17. Ghosh, S., Das, B. and Pal, S. 2019. Processing-induced changes in antioxidant activity of aonla. *Food Biosci.* 28: 100–106.
18. Reddy, K.S. and Reddy, P.P. 2018. Post-harvest disease management in aonla fruits. *Indian Phytopath.* 71: 487–493.
19. Kumar, M., Lal, S. and Singh, R. 2020. Shelf-life enhancement of aonla using chemical and natural treatments. *Indian J. Hort.* 77: 589–595.
20. Singh, A., Kumar, R. and Sharma, P. 2022. Recent trends in value addition and processing of aonla for functional foods. *J. Environ. Biol.* 43: 912–918.

INTEGRATED NUTRIENT MANAGEMENT IN SOLANACEOUS CROPS

Himanshi¹, Yashpal Singh Bisht¹, Diksha Saini¹, Ruksana Khan²

*¹Department of Horticulture, Dr. Khem Singh Gill Akal College of Agriculture, Eternal University,
Baru Sahib, Himachal Pradesh, 173101, India.*

*²School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical
University, Bhatinda, Punjab, 151001, India.*

Corresponding Author and email: Himanshi, kapoorhimanshi1605@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) involves the combined use of organic manures, chemical fertilizers and biofertilizers to sustain soil fertility, enhance crop growth and improve yield and quality. It is defined as the maintenance of soil fertility and plant nutrient supply at an optimum level through the integrated use of all available nutrient source for sustained crop productivity (1). In recent years, INM has gained significant importance in vegetable production due to soil health, declining crop quality and increasing environmental and health concerns. Plant nutrients can be supplied through various sources such as farmyard manure, compost, vermicompost, crop residues, green manures, biofertilizers and inorganic fertilizers. The integrated use of these resources ensures better nutrient availability, improved nutrient use efficiency and sustainability soil maintenance. Solanaceous vegetable crops, being rich sources of vitamins, minerals and dietary fibre, plays a vital role in human nutrition. The adoption of INM practices in crop such as tomato and chilli has been shown to improve yield, nutritional quality and soil health by reducing dependency on chemical fertilizers and enhancing nutrient cycling (2). Several studies have reported that INM practices in solanaceous crops result in significant improvements in growth parameters, yield and quality such as fruit size, colour, total soluble solids, vitamins content and shelf life. INM prioritizes maximizing the efficiency of nutrient use, decreasing reliance on synthetic fertilisers and incorporating precision agriculture technologies for focused nutrient delivery (3). The integrated use of organic, inorganic and biological sources of nutrient improves soil organic carbon, enhances soil structure, increases microbial biomass and efficient nutrient cycling (45). Overall, INM represents an ecologically sound and economically viable approach that optimises nutrient inputs, minimizes losses through leaching and volatilisation and supports sustainable vegetable production systems. Keywords: Integrated nutrient management, Organic manure, Inorganic fertilizer, Plant nutrient, Solanaceous crops. INTRODUCTION Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) plays an important role in improving vegetable crop productivity while maintaining environmental sustainability. It involves the combined use of organic manures, chemical fertilizers and microbial inoculants to improve soil fertility and crop growth. This

approach enhances nutrient use efficiency and reduces the environmental risks associated with excessive use of synthetic fertilizers. INM improves soil health, enhances water uptake by plants and promotes better crop growth and yield. It also helps crops become more resistant to pests and environmental stresses, thereby reducing the need for chemical treatments. In addition, INM improves the quality of vegetables, helping to meet consumer demand for nutritious and high-quality produce. Economically, it helps reduce input costs and supports the long-term sustainability of vegetable farming. Vegetables are an essential component of a balanced diet and play a significant role in maintaining human health and nutritional security. They are rich sources of carbohydrates, proteins, vitamins and minerals. Integrated Nutrient Management refers to the combined use of organic and inorganic nutrient sources to enhance crop productivity. This approach includes the use of agricultural wastes, organic manures, biofertilizers and other biological materials along with chemical fertilizers in balanced proportions (6). INM is particularly beneficial for farmers who cannot rely entirely on chemical fertilizers to meet the nutrient requirements of crops. It also aims to improve the biological, physical and hydrological properties of soil, which ultimately enhances agricultural productivity and reduces soil degradation (7). Excessive or improper use of nitrogen fertilizers can negatively affect soil health and crop productivity. Therefore, the balanced application of chemical fertilizers along with organic manures and biofertilizers is essential for maintaining soil fertility and achieving sustainable crop production (8). When applied effectively, integrated nutrient management can significantly improve both the quantity and quality of vegetable production (9). By combining different nutrient sources, INM increases nutrient use efficiency and ensures sustainable and environmentally friendly crop production. Due to these advantages, INM has gained increasing attention in recent years and has become an important component of vegetable crop management (10).

□ Why is INM needed? The increasing use of chemical fertilizer to increase the production of food and fibre is causing concern for the following reasons: 1. Soils which receive plant nutrient only through chemical fertilizers are showing declining productivity despite being supplied with sufficient nutrients. 2. The decline in productivity can be attributed to the appearance of deficiency in secondary and micronutrients. 3. The physical condition of the soil is deteriorated as a result of long-term use of chemical fertilizers, especially the nitrogenous ones. It also aggravates the problems of poor fertilizer nitrogen use efficiency (NUE). 4. Excess nitrogen use leads to groundwater and environmental pollution apart from destroying the ozone layer through N₂O production.

□ Need of Integrated Nutrient Management in Solanaceous Crops Production

1. Increased Yield and Quality: Proper nutrient management through Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) often results in higher crop yields and improved quality traits such as vegetable size, colour, taste and nutritional value. Balanced nutrient supply supports optimal plant growth and development, leading to increased productivity and higher marketable produce.
2. Improved Soil Fertility: Regular application of organic manures such as compost, farmyard manure and green manure along with chemical fertilizers improves soil fertility, structure and texture. This leads to better nutrient availability, improved soil aeration and higher waterholding capacity, all of which support healthy growth of vegetable crops.
3. Enhanced Nutrient Availability: INM ensures a balanced supply of essential nutrients including nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), potassium (K) and micronutrients. This balanced nutrition promotes strong vegetative growth, better root development, flowering and fruit formation in vegetable crops.
4. Resistant to

Abiotic Stress: Proper nutrient supply helps vegetable crops tolerate environmental stresses such as drought, salinity and temperature fluctuations. Well-nourished plants are generally more resilient and maintain productivity even under unfavorable conditions. 5. Reduced Nutrient Loss: INM practices help minimize nutrient losses through leaching, runoff and volatilization. Efficient nutrient management improves nutrient utilization by plants and reduces environmental pollution. 6. Improved Economic Returns: Although the use of organic inputs may sometimes increase initial costs, INM generally provides long-term economic benefits. Higher yields, better quality produce and reduced dependence on chemical inputs lead to improved profitability for vegetable farmers. 7. Adaption to Climate Changes: INM practices contribute to improved soil carbon storage, better water use efficiency and increased crop resilience. These factors help vegetable production systems adapt to climate variability and support sustainable agriculture. □ LITERATURE REVIEW □ Effect of Integrated Nutrient Management in Solanaceous Crops

1. Tomato: Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) improves tomato cultivation by combining organic manures, chemical fertilizers, biofertilizers and efficient management practices. This integrated approach enhances tomato yield, fruit quality and overall sustainability, benefiting both farmers and the environment. In tomato variety Kashi Amrit, the combined application of 100% Recommended Dose of Fertilizers (RDF) along with Azotobacter, Phosphate Solubilizing Bacteria (PSB) and Vesicular Arbuscular Mycorrhizae (VAM) has been reported to produce the highest fruit yield along with better fruit set and improved quality traits (11). Similarly, Singh et al. reported that tomato plants treated with 50% RDF + 10 t ha⁻¹ Farmyard Manure (FYM) + 5 t ha⁻¹ poultry manure + biofertilizers showed the highest number of leaves per plant, fruits per plant, fruit length, average fruit weight, yield per plant, yield per plot and ascorbic acid content (12). In another study, Sepat et al. found that the application of 50% Nitrogen, Phosphorus and Potassium (NPK) along with FYM and Azotobacter significantly improved plant height, number of branches, fruit clusters per plant, fruit size, fruit weight and overall fruit yield in tomato plants (13). Thus, the integrated use of organic and inorganic nutrient sources under INM helps maintain soil fertility, improve soil conditions and create a favourable environment for healthy tomato growth and higher productivity (14).

2. Brinjal: Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) improves brinjal cultivation by combining organic manures, chemical fertilizers, biofertilizers and efficient nutrient management practices. Soil analysis helps in designing appropriate nutrient management strategies, while organic inputs such as farmyard manure and compost enhance soil fertility and structure. Paswan et al. reported that fruit yield parameters, including number of fruits per plant, fruit length, fruit diameter, fruit weight and fruit yield per hectare, were significantly improved with the application of 100% NPK along with 25% nitrogen through vermicompost (15). Similarly, the application of 50 kg nitrogen through urea and 50 kg nitrogen through poultry manure per acre was found to increase brinjal yield while maintaining soil health (16). Another study reported that the treatment of vermicompost at 10 t ha⁻¹ along with 75% Recommended Dose of Fertilizers (RDF) (NPK) resulted in significantly higher yield attributes, including fruit yield per plot and fruit yield per hectare. In contrast, the control treatment of FYM at 20 t ha⁻¹ combined with 75% RDF recorded comparatively lower values for yield parameters (17).

3. Chilli: Altaf (18) studied the effects of chemical fertilizers (NPK), organic manure and their combinations on the growth, yield and nutrient uptake of chilli plants. The results showed significant improvements in plant height at harvest, number

of branches per plant and number of fruits per plant. Fruit quality parameters such as fruit length, width and weight also increased considerably. In addition, the application of 100% NPK combined with farmyard manure (FYM) at 8 t ha⁻¹ significantly enhanced ascorbic acid content and oleoresin production in chilli fruits. Higher yield was also obtained when 100% NPK was applied along with FYM at 8 t ha⁻¹. Similarly, Behera (19), conducted an experiment on integrated nitrogen management in chilli to evaluate the effects of different nitrogen sources on yield, nutrient uptake, quality and economic returns. The treatment T₅ (50% Recommended Dose of Fertilizer (RDF) + 50% nitrogen through vermicompost) recorded the highest chilli yield (14,511.4 kg ha⁻¹) and maximum nitrogen uptake by fruits (122.31 kg ha⁻¹). However, with respect to quality parameters such as oleoresin, capsaicin and ascorbic acid, the treatment T₂ (100% RDF) showed superior results and recorded the highest benefit–cost (B:C) ratio.

4. Potato: Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) plays a significant role in improving the growth, yield and quality of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.). The combined use of organic manures, chemical fertilizers and biofertilizers helps maintain soil fertility and ensures balanced nutrient supply for better tuber development. Mohanty et al. reported that the integrated application of organic sources such as farmyard manure (FYM), vermicompost and neem cake along with recommended doses of chemical fertilizers significantly improved potato growth, tuber yield and nutrient uptake while also enhancing soil health (20).

5. Capsicum: Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) plays an important role in improving the growth, yield and quality of capsicum (*Capsicum annuum* L.). The combined application of organic manures, chemical fertilizers and biofertilizers helps maintain soil fertility and provides a balanced supply of nutrients for better plant development and fruit production. Singh et al. reported that the application of 100% Recommended Dose of Fertilizers (RDF) along with farmyard manure (FYM) significantly improved plant height, number of branches per plant, number of fruits per plant and overall fruit yield in capsicum (21). □

DISCUSSION Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) is a sustainable approach to nutrient management in vegetable crops that offers multiple agronomic and environmental benefits. By integrating organic and inorganic fertilizers, INM improves soil fertility and soil structure while ensuring an optimal supply of nutrients to plants. This approach helps reduce input costs, enhances crop quality and nutritional value and contributes to overall agricultural sustainability. AI-driven nutrient management systems and modern farming practices can further support INM by continuously monitoring soil and environmental conditions to maintain ideal crop growth conditions. Through efficient nutrient utilization, INM enhances vegetable productivity, improves soil health and minimizes environmental degradation. By reducing dependence on synthetic fertilizers, INM also improves the economic viability for farmers while conserving natural resources. Moreover, INM practices enhance microbial activity, replenish soil organic matter and improve soil structure, thereby creating favorable conditions for vegetable crop growth. Therefore, the adoption of INM practices is essential for developing a more productive, sustainable and environmentally friendly vegetable farming system. Researchers, policymakers and farmers should actively promote the adoption of INM strategies to strengthen sustainable vegetable production systems (7). One of the major benefits of INM in vegetable crops is the improvement in both yield and quality. INM ensures that crops receive a balanced and continuous supply of essential nutrients required for proper growth and development. The combined use of organic and inorganic fertilizers provides a steady nutrient supply throughout

the crop growth period. As a result, vegetables exhibit improved size, color and taste, along with higher yields. For example, INM has been reported to increase fruit size, enhance lycopene content and improve the total marketable yield in tomato cultivation (11). In addition to improving crop productivity and quality, INM also plays a crucial role in maintaining soil health. The incorporation of organic manures and biofertilizers increases soil organic matter, which improves soil structure, aeration and water-holding capacity. These improvements promote the growth of beneficial soil microorganisms, which play an important role in nutrient cycling and nutrient availability to plants. As a result, long-term soil fertility is maintained, reducing the need for excessive chemical inputs in subsequent cropping seasons. One of the major advantages of Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) is its ability to reduce dependence on chemical fertilizers. Although chemical fertilizers are effective in supplying nutrients, their excessive use can be costly and may have negative long-term effects on soil health and the environment. By incorporating organic nutrient sources such as compost and farmyard manure, farmers can reduce the total application of chemical fertilizers without compromising the yield of vegetable crops. This reduction not only lowers production costs but also minimizes environmental risks such as soil degradation, water pollution and greenhouse gas emissions associated with excessive fertilizer use. Furthermore, INM supports sustainable agricultural practices by reducing the adverse environmental impacts of intensive farming. It encourages the use of eco-friendly and renewable nutrient sources, ensuring the long-term sustainability of agricultural systems. Vegetable crops grown under INM practices often show greater resistance to biotic and abiotic stresses. A balanced nutrient supply improves plant vigor, enabling crops to better tolerate environmental stresses such as drought, extreme temperatures, pests and diseases. INM also offers significant economic benefits to farmers. By integrating different nutrient sources, the reliance on expensive chemical fertilizers can be reduced. The use of locally available organic manures and biofertilizers helps decrease overall input costs while maintaining or even increasing crop yields. Thus, in addition to its environmental advantages, the improved profitability of INM makes it an attractive option for vegetable growers (22). □

FUTURE ASPECTS OF INTEGRATED NUTRIENT MANAGEMENT The future demand for Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) in vegetable production is expected to increase due to the growing emphasis on sustainable agricultural practices. INM provides a holistic approach to nutrient management by integrating organic and inorganic nutrient sources, which helps improve soil health, reduce environmental pollution and enhance ecosystem resilience. With the rapid growth of the global population and increasing challenges posed by climate change, INM has become essential for improving crop resilience and supporting climate adaptation strategies. Furthermore, the rising consumer demand for high-quality and sustainably produced vegetables is encouraging the adoption of INM practices. Advances in precision agriculture and data-driven decision-making can further optimize fertilizer application and improve nutrient use efficiency, thereby enhancing vegetable productivity. In solanaceous vegetable crops such as tomato, brinjal and chilli, INM plays a significant role in improving growth, yield and fruit quality while maintaining soil fertility. The balanced supply of nutrients through the combined use of organic manures, biofertilizers and chemical fertilizers enhances nutrient uptake and supports better plant development in these crops. Therefore, the adoption of INM practices is expected to play a crucial role in achieving sustainable and profitable production of solanaceous vegetables in the future. □

CONCLUSION Integrated Nutrient Management

(INM) is a sustainable approach to nutrient management in vegetable crops. It involves the combined use of organic and inorganic fertilizers to enhance soil fertility, improve soil structure and optimize nutrient availability to plants. This approach reduces input costs, improves crop quality and contributes to overall agricultural sustainability. By promoting INM practices, vegetable yields can be increased while improving soil health and reducing environmental impacts, thereby supporting economic viability and conserving natural resources. The integration of biofertilizers and organic manures in appropriate proportions helps maintain soil fertility and ensures sustainable vegetable production. By combining natural and synthetic nutrient sources, INM supports environmentally friendly and sustainable crop production, making it an important component of modern vegetable crop management. According to studies in solanaceous vegetable crops such as tomato, chilli and brinjal, INM significantly improves plant growth, yield and fruit quality while maintaining soil fertility. One of the major advantages of INM is its ability to promote soil health. INM practices create favorable growth conditions for vegetable crops by enhancing microbial activity, replenishing soil organic matter and improving soil structure.

REFERENCES

- [1] Srinivasan, D., Lepcha, R., Parihar, N. S., & Anjana, P. A. (2025). Evolution of integrated nutrient management. *International Journal of Advanced Biochemistry Research*, 9(4S), 525–530.
- [2] Yadav, A. C., Shekhar, S., Singh, C., Kumar, M., Singh, R. K., & Singh, V. (2025). Advances in integrated nutrient management for sustainable crop production. *International Journal of Research in Agronomy*, 8(5), 173–175.
- [3] Kumar, R., & Singh, T. (2022). Precision agriculture technologies in nutrient management. *Advances in Agronomy and Soil Science*, 16(2), 45–78.
- [4] Janssen, B. H. (1993). Integrated nutrient management: The use of organic and mineral fertilizers in sustainable agriculture. *Plant and Soil*.
- [5] Roy, R. N. (1995). Integrated plant nutrition systems. Rome, Italy: FAO Fertilizer and Plant Nutrition Bulletin, FAO.
- [6] Mahajan, A., & Gupta, R. D. (2009). Integrated nutrient management (INM) in a sustainable rice–wheat cropping system.
- [7] Saikia, P., Bhattacharya, S. S., & Baruah, K. K. (2015). Organic substitution in fertilizer schedule: Impacts on soil health, photosynthetic efficiency, yield and assimilation in wheat grown in alluvial soil. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment*, 203, 102–109.
- [8] Singh, R., & Sinsinwar, B. S. (2006). Effect of integrated nutrient management on growth, yield, oil content and nutrient uptake of Indian mustard (*Brassica juncea*) in eastern Rajasthan. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 76(5), 322–324.
- [9] Kiran, J., Vyakaranahal, B. S., Raikar, S. D., et al. (2010). Seed yield and quality of brinjal as influenced by crop nutrition. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Research*, 44(1), 1–7.
- [10] Khan, M. S., Shil, N. C., & Noor, S. (2008). Integrated nutrient management for sustainable yield of major vegetable crops in Bangladesh. *Bangladesh Journal of Agriculture and Environment*, 4(5), 81–94.

- [11] Singh, A., Soni, S. S., Singh, R. K., et al. (2021). Effect of integrated nutrient management on growth, yield and quality of broccoli (*Brassica oleracea* var. *italica*) cv. TSX-0788. *The Pharma Innovation Journal*, 10(2), 220–222.
- [12] Singh, A., Jain, P. K., Sharma, H. L., et al. (2015). Effect of planting date and integrated nutrient management on production potential of tomato (*Solanum lycopersicon* Mill.) under polyhouse conditions. *Journal of Crop and Weed*, 11, 28–33.
- [13] Sepat, N. K., Kumar, A. S., Yadav, J. A., et al. (2012). Effect of integrated nutrient management on growth, yield and quality of tomato in trans-Himalayan region. *Annals of Plant and Soil Research*, 14(2), 120–123.
- [14] Pandey, S. K., & Chandra, K. K. (2013). Impact of integrated nutrient management on tomato yield under farmer conditions. *Journal of Environmental Biology*, 34(6), 1047–1051.
- [15] Choudhary, A. S., Raj, S., et al. (2022). Effect of integrated nutrient management on yield of brinjal. *International Journal of Agriculture and Food Science*, 4(1), 12–16.
- [16] Kumar, P., Kamboj, D., Rani, R., et al. (2019). Effect of integrated nutrient management on growth and yield of garlic (*Allium sativum* L.). *Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry*, 8(3), 25692572.
- [17] Waskel, S., Jatav, S. K., & Singh, S. S. (2019). Effect of integrated nutrient management on growth and yield attributes of brinjal. *International Journal of Current Microbiology and Applied Sciences*, 8(11), 1849–1853.
- [18] Altaf, M. A., Shahid, R., Altaf, M. A., et al. (2019). Effect of NPK, organic manure and their combination on growth, yield and nutrient uptake of chilli (*Capsicum annum* L.). *Horticulture International Journal*, 217–222.
- [19] Behera, S., Pradhan, P. P., Sahu, G., et al. (2020). Integrated nitrogen management on growth and yield of chilli (*Capsicum annum* L.) under red and lateritic soils of Odisha. *International Journal of Plant & Soil Science*, 32(12), 28–34.
- [20] Mohanty, M., Nanda, S. S., & Barik, A. K. (2014). Improving potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) yield and soil health through integrated nutrient management approach in east coast climatic conditions of India. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 84(11), 1395–1400.
- [21] Yadav, P., Kumar, J., Singh, H. S., & Silas, V. J. (2025). Impact of integrated nutrient management on growth and yield of capsicum (*Capsicum annum* L. var. *grossum*). *Journal of Experimental Agriculture International*, 47(7), 407–412.
- [22] Khadse, V. A., Mohod, A. A., Chirde, P. N., et al. (2021). Response of leafy vegetables under organic and integrated nutrient management. *The Pharma Innovation Journal*, 10(5), 04–06.

Effect of nano urea and nano DAP fertilizers on growth, yield and nutrient use efficiency of guava (*Psidiumguajava* L.)

Review Paper: Nano Fertilizers in Guava

Hoshiar Singh¹, Dr. Wineet Chawla², Dr. Lakshay³

School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda – 151001, Punjab, India

Corresponding Author Email: lakshyabishnoi29@gmail.com

Abstract

Nano fertilizers represent one of the most recent and promising advancements in the field of plant nutrition, particularly aimed at improving nutrient use efficiency while minimizing environmental losses associated with conventional fertilizer use. The application of nanotechnology in agriculture has opened new avenues for precise nutrient delivery systems that synchronize nutrient release with crop demand. Guava (*Psidiumguajava* L.) is an economically important fruit crop of India, widely cultivated for its high nutritional value and adaptability to diverse agro-climatic conditions. However, sustained productivity, superior fruit quality and orchard longevity in guava are highly dependent on balanced and efficient nutrient management. (Bindraban et al., 2015; Raliya et al., 2018) Conventional nitrogen and phosphorus fertilizers often exhibit poor efficiency due to volatilization, leaching, runoff and fixation in soil, resulting in economic losses and environmental degradation. Nano urea and nano diammonium phosphate (nano DAP), owing to their nano-scale particle size, higher surface area and controlled release behavior, offer an alternative approach for efficient and targeted nutrient delivery. The present review critically examines recent research findings on the use of nano urea and nano DAP in guava with respect to vegetative growth, flowering behavior, yield attributes, fruit quality, nutrient uptake and fertilizer use efficiency. (Saxena et al., 2021; Singh et al., 2022) Despite encouraging results reported in short-term studies, information regarding long-term soil health, standardization of application rates and cultivar-specific responses remains limited. This review identifies major research gaps and proposes future strategies for the effective integration of nano fertilizers into sustainable nutrient management programs for guava cultivation.

I. Introduction

Guava (*Psidiumguajava* L.) is one of the most widely cultivated fruit crops in tropical and subtropical regions of the world, with India being one of the largest producers. The crop holds immense economic significance due to its high yield potential, wide adaptability and nutritional

richness, particularly vitamin C, dietary fiber, antioxidants and essential minerals. Guava cultivation contributes significantly to farmers' income and nutritional security.(Mitra, 2016; NHB, 2022)

Among essential plant nutrients, nitrogen and phosphorus play pivotal roles in metabolic processes governing plant growth and reproductive development. Conventional fertilizers such as urea and di-ammonium phosphate (DAP) are commonly used in guava orchards; however, their nutrient use efficiency is often low due to losses through volatilization, leaching, runoff and soil fixation. These inefficiencies result in environmental concerns such as groundwater contamination and greenhouse gas emissions.(Havlin et al., 2014; Singh, 2019)

Nanotechnology has emerged as a novel and innovative approach in modern agriculture, particularly in the development of nano fertilizers. Although nano fertilizers have been extensively evaluated in cereal and vegetable crops, research specific to fruit crops, particularly guava, remains fragmented, necessitating a comprehensive review.(DeRosa et al., 2010; Saxena et al., 2021)

Concept and characteristics of nano fertilizers

Nano fertilizers are nutrient carriers engineered with particle sizes typically ranging from 1 to 100 nanometers. At this scale, materials exhibit unique physicochemical properties such as increased surface area, higher reactivity and enhanced solubility compared to conventional fertilizers, leading to improved nutrient availability and uptake.(Kah et al., 2019; Raliya et al., 2018).Nano urea enables gradual nitrogen release, reducing losses through volatilization and leaching, while nano DAP improves phosphorus availability by minimizing soil fixation. These fertilizers can be effectively applied through soil and foliar methods, particularly suitable for perennial fruit crops like guava.(Subramanian, 2017; Saxena et al., 2021).Role of nitrogen and phosphorus nutrition in guava. Nitrogen is a vital macronutrient required for chlorophyll synthesis, amino acid formation and protein metabolism. In guava, adequate nitrogen nutrition promotes vegetative growth and canopy development, essential for efficient photosynthesis and fruiting.(Marschner, 2012; Srivastava, 2012).Phosphorus plays a crucial role in energy transfer, root development and reproductive growth. Phosphorus deficiency in guava results in delayed flowering, poor fruit set and reduced yield, emphasizing the need for balanced nutrient management.(Mengel& Kirkby, 2001; Havlin et al., 2014)

Effect of nano urea on vegetative growth of guava

Several studies have reported improved vegetative growth parameters such as shoot length, leaf area and chlorophyll content following nano urea application in guava. Enhanced chlorophyll content reflects improved photosynthetic efficiency and biomass accumulation.(Singh et al., 2022; Yadav et al., 2021).Nano urea provides sustained nitrogen availability and achieves comparable or superior growth responses at lower doses than conventional urea, indicating improved nitrogen use efficiency. However, responses vary with cultivar and environmental conditions.(Dwivedi et al., 2020; Chugh et al., 2022).

Effect of nano DAP on root growth and nutrient uptake

Nano DAP application improves root growth and phosphorus availability by reducing fixation in soil. Enhanced root systems improve water and nutrient absorption, leading to better plant vigor.(Kumar et al., 2021; Verma et al., 2018) Nano DAP has also been reported to enhance uptake of nitrogen and potassium due to synergistic nutrient interactions, contributing to balanced plant nutrition.(Li et al., 2020; Singh et al., 2019)

Influence of nano fertilizers on flowering and fruit set

Adequate nutrient availability during pre-flowering and flowering stages is essential for successful fruit set. Nano urea and nano DAP improve flowering intensity, pollen viability and fruit retention in guava.(Srivastava & Huchche, 2015; Meena et al., 2021). Improved nutrient synchronization during reproductive stages reduces flower drop and enhances fruit set compared to conventional fertilization practices.(Rani et al., 2020)

Effect on yield and yield attributes

Yield attributes such as fruit number, fruit weight and total yield are significantly influenced by nano fertilizer application. Higher yields are attributed to improved photosynthesis, nutrient use efficiency and enhanced fruit development.(Sharma et al., 2022; Singh et al., 2021) Nano fertilizers enable dose reduction without compromising yield, offering economic and agronomic advantages.(Patel et al., 2020; Meena et al., 2019)

Influence on fruit quality parameters

Nano fertilizer application positively influences fruit quality attributes such as total soluble solids, ascorbic acid content and sugar-acid ratio in guava.(Singh et al., 2020; Ali et al., 2021). Improved nutrient availability during fruit development enhances biochemical processes responsible for sugar accumulation and vitamin synthesis.(Kader, 2002; Verma et al., 2019)

Nutrient use efficiency and environmental implications

Nano fertilizers significantly improve nutrient use efficiency by reducing losses and synchronizing nutrient release with crop demand.(Ladha et al., 2016; FAO, 2021). Reduced nitrogen losses lower nitrate leaching and greenhouse gas emissions, contributing to climate-smart and sustainable horticulture. (IPCC, 2019; Liu & Lal, 2015)

Economic feasibility of nano fertilizers in guava

Economic analyses indicate that nano fertilizers can reduce input costs and improve benefit–cost ratios due to lower fertilizer requirement and increased yield.(Sharma et al., 2022; Singh et al., 2021). However, long-term economic viability requires validation across different agro-climatic regions.(FAO, 2021)

Limitations and challenges

Major challenges include lack of standardized recommendations, limited long-term soil health studies and concerns about nanoparticle accumulation in agro-ecosystems.(Kah et al., 2019; Liu & Lal, 2015).Farmer awareness and technical capacity building are essential for successful adoption.(Singh, 2019).

Research gaps and future strategies

Future research should focus on long-term soil health, dose standardization, cultivar-specific responses and integration with integrated nutrient management systems.(Bindraban et al., 2015; Saxena et al., 2021)

Conclusion

Nano urea and nano DAP have demonstrated significant potential in improving growth, yield, fruit quality and nutrient use efficiency in guava. Their role in reducing fertilizer inputs and environmental losses makes them promising tools for sustainable horticulture, although long-term studies are required before large-scale adoption.(Singh et al., 2022; FAO, 2021)

References

1. Bindraban, P.S., Dimkpa, C.O., Nagarajan, L., Roy, A. and Rabbinge, R. (2015). Revisiting fertilisers and fertilisation strategies for improved nutrient uptake by plants. *Advances in Agronomy*, 133, 1–46.
2. Raliya, R., Saharan, V., Dimkpa, C. and Biswas, P. (2018). Nanofertilizer for precision and sustainable agriculture: Current state and future perspectives. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 66, 6487–6503.
3. Saxena, M., Khar, A. and Verma, P. (2021). Nano fertilizers: A new paradigm in nutrient management. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 44, 2156–2168.
4. DeRosa, M.C., Monreal, C., Schnitzer, M., Walsh, R. and Sultan, Y. (2010). Nanotechnology in fertilizers. *Nature Nanotechnology*, 5, 91–94.
5. Kah, M., Kookana, R.S., Gogos, A. and Bucheli, T.D. (2019). A critical evaluation of nano fertilizers against conventional fertilizers. *Agronomy*, 9, 1–20.
6. Subramanian, K.S. (2017). Nanofertilizers and nutrient use efficiency in crops. *Indian Journal of Fertilisers*, 13, 40–53.
7. Prasad, R., Bhattacharyya, A. and Nguyen, Q.D. (2017). Nanotechnology in sustainable agriculture. *Indian Journal of Fertilisers*, 13, 8–17.
8. Mitra, S.K. (2016). *Guava: Botany, Production and Uses*. CABI Publishing, Wallingford, UK.
9. National Horticulture Board (NHB). (2022). *Indian Horticulture Database*. Ministry of Agriculture, Government of India.
10. Singh, G. (2019). Nutrient management in fruit crops. *Indian Journal of Horticulture*, 76, 1–10.
11. Marschner, H. (2012). *Mineral Nutrition of Higher Plants*. Academic Press, London.
12. Mengel, K. and Kirkby, E.A. (2001). *Principles of Plant Nutrition*. Springer, Dordrecht.
13. Havlin, J.L., Tisdale, S.L., Nelson, W.L. and Beaton, J.D. (2014). *Soil Fertility and Fertilizers*. Pearson Education, USA.

14. Srivastava, A.K. (2012). Advances in nutrition of fruit crops. *Journal of Horticultural Sciences*, 7, 1–13.
15. Singh, B., Kumar, R. and Sharma, S. (2022). Effect of nano urea on growth and yield of guava (*Psidium guajava* L.). *Indian Journal of Horticulture*, 79, 123–128.
16. Yadav, R.K., Meena, V.S. and Lal, R. (2021). Nano nitrogen fertilizers and crop productivity. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 44, 1120–1132.
17. Dwivedi, D., Singh, V. and Singh, B. (2020). Improving nitrogen use efficiency through nano fertilizers. *Agricultural Research*, 9, 410–418.
18. Chugh, G., Meena, M.D. and Sharma, D.K. (2022). Foliar application of nano urea and crop response. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 297, 110973.
19. Verma, S.K., Sharma, P. and Singh, R. (2018). Efficiency of nano DAP in improving phosphorus availability. *Indian Journal of Fertilisers*, 14, 30–37.
20. Kumar, R., Patel, B. and Singh, S. (2021). Nano phosphorus fertilizers and root growth in fruit crops. *Agronomy*, 11, 1892.
21. Li, J., Wu, X. and Ma, Y. (2020). Phosphorus availability and uptake using nanomaterials. *Soil and Tillage Research*, 196, 104449.
22. Sharma, P. and Singh, R. (2020). Phosphorus management in fruit crops. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 262, 109118.
23. Singh, S., Yadav, R.K. and Patel, B. (2019). Phosphorus dynamics in fruit crop production. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 42, 1255–1267.
24. Srivastava, A.K. and Huchche, A.D. (2015). Flowering physiology and nutrient regulation in fruit crops. *Indian Journal of Horticulture*, 72, 1–7.
25. Meena, H.R., Meena, R.S. and Lal, R. (2021). Nutrient supply and fruit set in horticultural crops. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 283, 110046.
26. Rani, P., Singh, S. and Yadav, P. (2020). Role of nitrogen and phosphorus in reproductive growth of guava. *Journal of Applied Horticulture*, 22, 45–51.
27. Sharma, A., Kumar, P. and Meena, V.S. (2022). Yield response of crops to nano fertilizers. *Agronomy Journal*, 114, 1452–1462.
28. Singh, D., Meena, V.S. and Lal, R. (2021). Fertilizer dose reduction using nano inputs. *Agricultural Research*, 10, 450–458.
29. Patel, B., Singh, R. and Kumar, R. (2020). Nutrient management practices and yield in guava. *Indian Journal of Horticulture*, 77, 210–216.
30. Liu, X., Wang, Q. and Chen, Y. (2016). Photosynthesis and yield improvement through efficient nutrition. *Plant Physiology*, 172, 146–156.
31. Meena, R.S., Lal, R. and Meena, V.S. (2019). Nutrient use efficiency in horticultural crops. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 234, 450–460.
32. Kader, A.A. (2002). *Postharvest Technology of Horticultural Crops*. University of California Press.
33. Singh, J., Sharma, S. and Verma, P. (2020). Nutrient management and fruit quality. *Journal of Food Science and Nutrition*, 8, 210–218.
34. Ali, M., Singh, R. and Kumar, S. (2021). Enhancement of ascorbic acid content in fruits through nutrient management. *Food Chemistry*, 340, 128–134.
35. Verma, P., Sharma, A. and Meena, V.S. (2019). Fertilizers and fruit quality improvement.

36. Ladha, J.K., Tirol-Padre, A., Reddy, C.K. and Cassman, K.G. (2016). Global nutrient use efficiency. *Advances in Agronomy*, 135, 1–58.
37. Liu, R. and Lal, R. (2015). Potentials of engineered nanoparticles in agriculture. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*, 34, 510–540.
38. FAO. (2021). Sustainable Fertilizer Use for Crop Production. FAO, Rome.
39. IPCC. (2019). Climate Change and Land. IPCC Special Report, Geneva.
40. Meena, V.S., Kumar, A. and Lal, R. (2020). Controlled and slow release fertilizers in agriculture. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 256, 120432.
41. Singh, P., Kumar, R. and Verma, S.K. (2022). Nano fertilizers and soil health. *Agricultural Reviews*, 43, 120–128.
42. Chandra, R., Kumar, S. and Singh, A. (2021). Nanotechnology-based nutrient delivery systems in horticulture. *Horticultural Reviews*, 48, 89–120.
43. Sharma, D.K., Meena, M.D. and Chugh, G. (2022). Nitrogen efficiency improvement through nano inputs. *Indian Journal of Agronomy*, 67, 345–352.
44. Srivastava, A.K., Singh, S. and Patel, V.B. (2018). Integrated nutrient management in fruit crops. *Indian Journal of Fertilisers*, 14, 24–36.

Replacement of Traditional Fertilizers by Nano Fertilizers in Kinnow Orchard

Jagmanjot Singh¹, Wineet Chawla², Lakshay³

*School of Agricultural Sciences and Engineering,
Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, India
laksyabisnoi29@gmail.com*

Abstract

Kinnow (*Citrus reticulata* Blanco) is one of the most important citrus fruits widely cultivated in India, especially in the north-western regions. Nutrient management plays a vital role in improving productivity and fruit quality in kinnow orchards. Traditional fertilizers such as nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) are commonly applied in bulk quantities; however, their nutrient use efficiency is often low due to leaching, volatilization, and fixation in the soil. In recent years, nano fertilizers have emerged as an innovative and sustainable alternative to conventional fertilizers. Nano fertilizers are characterized by their small particle size and high surface area, which enhance nutrient availability and uptake by plants. The use of nano nitrogen, nano zinc, and nano copper has shown promising results in improving plant growth, yield, and fruit quality while reducing the required quantity of fertilizers. Moreover, nano fertilizers minimize environmental pollution and improve nutrient use efficiency in orchards. Therefore, the partial or complete replacement of traditional NPK fertilizers with nano fertilizers can be an effective strategy for sustainable kinnow production and improved orchard management.

Keywords

Kinnow, Nano fertilizers, Nutrient use efficiency, *Citrus reticulata*, Sustainable agriculture, NPK fertilizers, Orchard management.

Introduction

Kinnow (*Citrus reticulata* Blanco) is one of the most important citrus fruits cultivated in India, particularly in the north-western states such as Punjab, Haryana, and Rajasthan. It is highly valued for its attractive colour, rich vitamin C content, pleasant flavor, and high economic returns to farmers. The productivity and quality of kinnow fruits largely depend on proper nutrient management in orchards. Conventionally, macronutrients such as nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) are supplied through chemical fertilizers to meet the nutritional requirements of plants. However, the excessive and continuous use of these fertilizers often leads to low nutrient use efficiency, nutrient losses through leaching and volatilization, soil degradation, and environmental pollution.

In recent years, the advancement of nanotechnology has introduced nano fertilizers as a promising alternative to traditional fertilizers in modern horticulture. Nano fertilizers are developed using nanotechnology, where nutrients are delivered in nano-sized particles that enhance nutrient availability, absorption, and utilization by plants. Compared with conventional fertilizers, nano fertilizers require smaller quantities while providing better nutrient efficiency and improved plant growth.

Several studies have reported that nano nutrients such as nano nitrogen, nano zinc, and nano copper can significantly improve vegetative growth, fruit yield, and fruit quality in horticultural crops. Therefore, the replacement or partial substitution of traditional NPK fertilizers with nano fertilizers has gained considerable attention for sustainable kinnow orchard management and environmentally friendly agriculture.

1. Nutrient Management in Kinnow Orchards

Nutrient management is one of the most important factors influencing the growth, yield, and fruit quality of kinnow orchards. Kinnow trees require a balanced supply of essential nutrients for proper vegetative growth, flowering, fruit set, and fruit development. Among these nutrients, nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) are considered the primary macronutrients required in larger quantities. Nitrogen plays a significant role in promoting vegetative growth, leaf development, and chlorophyll formation, which directly affects photosynthesis. Phosphorus is essential for root development, energy transfer, and early plant growth, while potassium helps in improving fruit size, color, quality, and resistance to various stresses.

In traditional orchard management practices, these nutrients are mainly supplied through chemical fertilizers. Farmers generally apply recommended doses of fertilizers through soil application or fertigation to maintain soil fertility and ensure proper nutrient supply to plants. However, the efficiency of conventional fertilizers is often low because a considerable portion of the applied nutrients is lost through leaching, volatilization, and fixation in the soil.

Such nutrient losses not only reduce fertilizer efficiency but also increase production costs and cause environmental concerns. Therefore, improving nutrient use efficiency and adopting sustainable nutrient management strategies have become essential for enhancing productivity and maintaining soil health in kinnow orchards.

1. Concept and Types of Nano Fertilizers

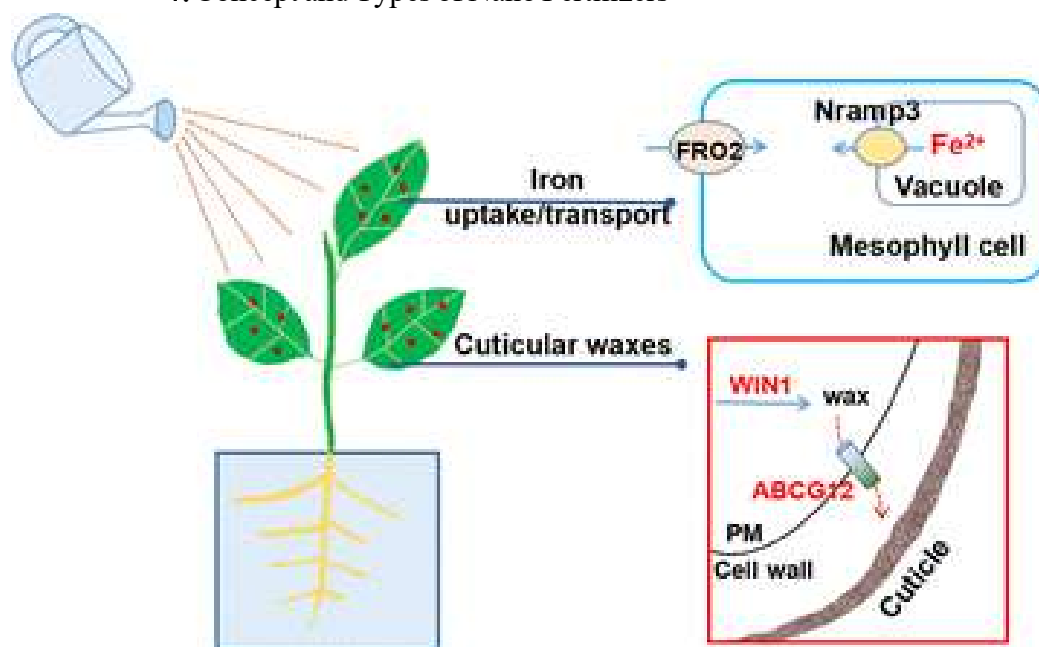


Fig. 1. Mechanism of nutrient uptake using nano fertilizers

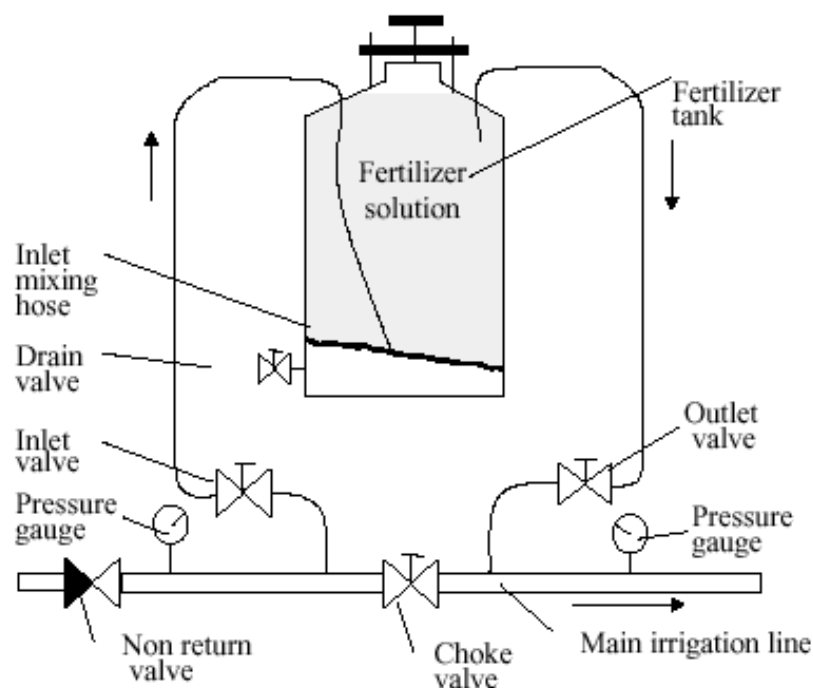
Nano fertilizers represent a new advancement in agricultural technology that utilizes nanotechnology to improve the efficiency of nutrient delivery to plants. In this approach, nutrients are formulated into nano-sized particles, generally ranging from 1 to 100 nanometers. Due to their extremely small size and large surface area, nano fertilizers possess unique physical and chemical properties that enhance nutrient availability, solubility, and absorption by plants.

Unlike conventional fertilizers, which are often applied in large quantities, nano fertilizers provide nutrients in a controlled and targeted manner. This controlled release mechanism helps in minimizing nutrient losses caused by leaching, volatilization, and fixation in the soil. As a result, plants are able to absorb nutrients more efficiently, and smaller quantities of fertilizers are required to achieve the desired crop growth and productivity.

Nano fertilizers can be applied through different methods such as foliar spray, soil application, and fertigation depending on crop type and management practices. The foliar application of nano fertilizers is particularly effective because the nano-sized particles can easily penetrate plant tissues and deliver nutrients directly to the metabolic sites within the plant.

Different types of nano fertilizers have been developed to supply both macro and micronutrients to crops. Common nano fertilizers include nano nitrogen, nano phosphorus, nano potassium, nano zinc, nano copper, and nano iron. Among these, nano nitrogen is widely used as it can partially replace conventional urea fertilizers and significantly improve nitrogen use efficiency.

The application of nano fertilizers has shown promising results in improving plant growth, nutrient uptake, crop yield, and fruit quality in several horticultural crops. Therefore, nano fertilizers are considered a sustainable and efficient alternative to traditional fertilizers in modern agricultural systems.



2 .Replacement of Traditional NPK Fertilizers by Nano Fertilizers in Kinnow Orchard

The replacement of traditional fertilizers such as nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) with nano fertilizers has emerged as a promising strategy for improving nutrient use efficiency and sustainable crop production in kinnow orchards. Conventional fertilizers are usually applied in large quantities; however, a significant portion of these nutrients is lost through leaching, volatilization, and fixation in the soil before being utilized by plants. These losses not only reduce fertilizer efficiency but also lead to environmental pollution and increased production costs for farmers.

Nano fertilizers offer an advanced solution to these challenges due to their unique physicochemical properties. The extremely small particle size and large surface area of nano fertilizers enhance nutrient availability and facilitate efficient absorption and translocation within plant tissues. As a result, plants can utilize nutrients more effectively even when they are applied in smaller quantities compared to conventional fertilizers.

In kinnow orchards, the application of nano fertilizers such as nano nitrogen, nano zinc, and nano copper has shown significant improvements in plant growth, leaf chlorophyll content, flowering, fruit set, and fruit development. Nano nitrogen, for instance, can partially replace conventional urea fertilizers while maintaining or even improving crop productivity. Similarly, nano micronutrients help in correcting nutrient deficiencies and improving overall plant health.

The use of nano fertilizers also contributes to better fruit quality by improving parameters such as fruit size, color, juice content, and nutritional value. In addition, the reduced friendly alternative to traditional fertilizers.

Several research studies have demonstrated that the integration of nano fertilizers with conventional nutrient management practices can significantly enhance nutrient use efficiency and productivity in citrus orchards. Therefore, the partial or complete replacement of traditional NPK fertilizers with nano fertilizers has great potential for improving the sustainability and profitability of kinnow production systems.

Index	Conventional fertilizer	Nanofertilizer
Loss rate	High loss rate via drifting, leaching, run-off	Low loss of fertilizer nutrients
Controlled release	Excess release of nutrients lead to high toxicity and soil imbalance	Rate of release and release pattern precisely controlled
Solubility	Low	High
Bioavailability	Low	High
Dispersion of mineral micronutrients	Lower solubility due to large size particle	Improved dispersion of insoluble nutrients
Effective duration of release	Used by the plant at the site and time of application; the rest is converted into an insoluble form	Effective and extended duration
The efficiency of nutrients uptake	It is not available to roots and the efficiency of nutrients uptake is low	Efficiency of nutrient uptake is more

Fig. 2. Comparison between conventional and nano fertilizers

1. Advantages of Nano Fertilizers in Kinnow Orchard

Nano fertilizers offer several advantages over conventional fertilizers in modern horticultural practices, particularly in kinnow orchards. One of the major benefits of nano fertilizers is their higher nutrient use efficiency. Due to their nano-sized particles and larger surface area, nutrients become more available to plants and can be absorbed more effectively through leaves and roots. This improved absorption leads to better utilization of nutrients by plants.

Another important advantage is that nano fertilizers require smaller quantities compared to traditional fertilizers. Because nutrients are delivered in a controlled and targeted manner, plants can efficiently utilize them with minimal losses. This helps in reducing the overall fertilizer requirement and lowers the cost of production for farmers.

Nano fertilizers also help in reducing nutrient losses caused by leaching, volatilization, and fixation in the soil. As a result, the environmental pollution associated with excessive use of chemical fertilizers can be minimized. Moreover, nano fertilizers contribute to improving soil health and microbial activity, which are essential for long-term soil fertility.

In kinnow orchards, the application of nano fertilizers has shown positive effects on vegetative growth, flowering, fruit set, and fruit development. It also improves important fruit quality parameters such as fruit size, color, juice content, and nutritional value. Therefore, nano fertilizers play a significant role in promoting sustainable and efficient nutrient management in kinnow production systems.

2. Limitations and Challenges of Nano Fertilizers

Despite the numerous advantages of nano fertilizers in improving nutrient use efficiency and crop productivity, their widespread adoption in agriculture still faces several limitations and challenges. One of the major constraints is the high cost of production and commercialization. The manufacturing of nano fertilizers requires advanced technologies, specialized equipment, and skilled expertise, which significantly increases their production cost compared to conventional fertilizers. This high cost can limit their accessibility and adoption by small and marginal farmers.

Another important challenge is the lack of awareness and technical knowledge among farmers regarding the proper use, dosage, and application methods of nano fertilizers. Since nanotechnology-based fertilizers are relatively new in agricultural practices, many farmers are still dependent on traditional fertilizer management systems. Without proper training and extension support, farmers may find it difficult to adopt and utilize these technologies effectively.

There are also concerns related to the long-term environmental and ecological impacts of nano materials. The behavior of nano particles in soil, water, and plant systems is still not fully understood. Some researchers have raised concerns about the possible accumulation of nano particles in the environment and their potential effects on soil microorganisms, plant physiology, and human health. Therefore, more long-term research and field studies are required to evaluate their safety and sustainability.

In addition, the standardization of nano fertilizer formulations, recommended doses, and application techniques for different crops and agro-climatic conditions is still under development. Therefore, further research, government support, farmer awareness programs, and proper regulatory frameworks are essential to overcome these challenges and promote the safe and effective use of nano fertilizers in horticultural crops such as kinnow.

3. Future Prospects of Nano Fertilizers in Horticulture

Nano fertilizers have great potential to revolutionize nutrient management practices in modern agriculture and horticulture. With the increasing demand for sustainable farming and efficient use of natural resources, nanotechnology-based fertilizers are expected to play a significant role in improving crop productivity and environmental sustainability. In the future, nano fertilizers may become an integral component of advanced agricultural practices aimed at increasing nutrient use efficiency and reducing fertilizer losses.

Researchers are currently focusing on the development of improved nano fertilizer formulations that can provide nutrients in a controlled and targeted manner according to the specific needs of plants. Such controlled-release nutrient delivery systems can ensure that plants receive the required nutrients at the right time and in the right quantity, thereby enhancing plant growth and productivity.

In horticultural crops such as kinnow, nano fertilizers can be integrated with precision farming techniques, fertigation systems, and smart agricultural technologies to optimize nutrient management and improve fruit quality. The use of nano fertilizers in combination with modern irrigation systems may also help in reducing water consumption and increasing overall resource use efficiency.

Furthermore, increased research, field trials, and technological advancements will help in understanding the long-term effects and benefits of nano fertilizers under different soil and climatic conditions. Government initiatives, extension programs, and farmer awareness campaigns will also encourage the adoption of nano fertilizers in agriculture.

Therefore, nano fertilizers have strong potential to contribute to sustainable horticultural production, improved crop yield, enhanced fruit quality, and better soil health in the future.

4. Conclusion

The replacement of traditional fertilizers such as nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) with nano fertilizers has emerged as a promising approach for improving nutrient management in kinnow orchards. Conventional fertilizers often suffer from low nutrient use efficiency due to losses through leaching, volatilization, and fixation in the soil, which not only reduces fertilizer effectiveness but also contributes to environmental pollution. In contrast, nano fertilizers provide nutrients in nano-sized particles that enhance nutrient availability, absorption, and utilization by plants.

The application of nano fertilizers such as nano nitrogen, nano zinc, and nano copper has shown positive effects on plant growth, yield, and fruit quality in horticultural crops.

In kinnow orchards, nano fertilizers can help in improving vegetative growth, flowering, fruit development, and overall productivity while reducing the quantity of fertilizers required.

However, challenges such as high production cost, limited farmer awareness, and the need for further research on long-term environmental impacts still exist. Despite these limitations, nano fertilizers hold

great potential for sustainable agriculture. Therefore, the integration of nano fertilizers with conventional nutrient management practices can be an effective strategy for enhancing kinnow production, improving nutrient use efficiency, and promoting environmentally friendly horticultural systems.

References

- 1) Bhattarai, S., Midmore, D., C Pendergast, L. (2008). Yield and quality of hydroponically grown crops. *Agricultural Sciences*.
- 2) Chen, H., C Yada, R. (2011). Nanotechnologies in agriculture: New tools for sustainable development. *Trends in Food Science C Technology*, 22, 585-594.
- 3) DeRosa, M. C., Monreal, C., Schnitzer, M., Walsh, R., C Sultan, Y. (2010). Nanotechnology in fertilizers. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science*, 90, 451-458.
- 4) Dimkpa, C. O., C Bindraban, P. S. (2018). Nanofertilizers: New products for the industry? *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 66, 6462-6473.
- 5) Dwivedi, S., Saquib, Q., C Al-Khedhairy, A. (2016). Nanotechnology applications in agriculture. *Environmental Chemistry Letters*, 14, 397-410.
- 6) FAO. (2019). The future of food and agriculture. Food and Agriculture
- 7) Ghorbanpour, M., C Hadian, J. (2015). Application of nanotechnology in plant.
- 8) Godfray, H. C. J., et al. (2010). Food security challenges. *Science*, 327, 812-818.
- 9) Kah, M., Kookana, R., Gogos, A., C Bucheli, T. (2018). Nanopesticides and nanofertilizers in agriculture. *Nature Nanotechnology*, 13, 677-684.
- 10) Lal, R. (2020). Soil health and sustainable agriculture. *Science*, 304, 1623-1627.
- 11) Liu, R., C Lal, R. (2015). Potentials of nanofertilizers. *Science of the Total Environment*, 514, 131-139.
- 12) Mahilkar, S., C Kulkarni, M. (2019). Nanotechnology in agriculture. *Agricultural Reviews*, 40, 1-10.
- 13) Marschner, P. (2012). Marschner's Mineral Nutrition of Higher Plants. Academic Press.
- 14) Meena, V. S., et al. (2017). Nanofertilizers for sustainable agriculture. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, 24, 101-114.
- 15) Mishra, S., Singh, H., C Keswani, C. (2017). Nanotechnology in agriculture. *Biotechnology Reports*

Recent Advances in Growing Media for Dragon Fruit Propagation: A Comprehensive Review

Komalpuneet Kaur^{#1}, Harkirat Kaur Sidhu^{*2} and Kamalpreet Kaur^{*3}

[#]*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture sciences and engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda*

^{*}*Research Scholar, School of Agriculture, Lovely Professional University, Phagwara, Jalandhar*

Abstract— Dragon fruit (*Hylocereus* spp.), a member of the Cactaceae family, has emerged as one of the most promising tropical fruit crops worldwide due to its superior nutritional value, adaptability to marginal lands, and increasing market demand. Efficient propagation of quality planting material is crucial for successful commercial cultivation, with growing media composition playing a key role in determining propagation success. This review synthesizes recent advances in growing media formulations for dragon fruit propagation, highlighting the physiological basis of media effects on root and shoot development, and comparing the performance of various organic and inorganic substrates. Evidence from recent studies, including an experiment conducted during 2022-2023 at Khalsa College, Amritsar, demonstrates that combinations of soil and vermicompost (1:1) significantly enhance sprouting, plant growth, root development, and biomass accumulation compared to other media such as sand, cocopeat, and sawdust used alone or in mixtures. Overall, growing media containing vermicompost, cocopeat, and their combinations with soil consistently outperform conventional substrates. Future research should focus on developing standardized media formulations and integrating biostimulants and microbial consortia to enhance sustainability and efficiency in dragon fruit propagation systems.

Keywords— Dragon fruit, *Hylocereus*, propagation, growing media, vermicompost, cocopeat, vegetative propagation, nursery management

I. INTRODUCTION

Dragon fruit, belonging to the genus *Hylocereus* and family Cactaceae, has transitioned from an obscure tropical curiosity to a globally significant horticultural commodity within the past two decades. Native to Mexico and Central America, this climbing cactus is now cultivated extensively across Southeast Asia, South Asia, the Middle East, and parts of Africa, driven by its attractive appearance, unique flavor profile, and remarkable nutritional and medicinal properties [12]; [10]. The fruit is rich in antioxidants, vitamins, minerals, and dietary fiber, and has been associated with health benefits including glycemic control, cardiovascular protection, and enhanced probiotic activity [11]; [16].

The commercial cultivation of dragon fruit has expanded rapidly, with global production increasing by approximately 15-20% annually in major producing countries such as Vietnam, Thailand, Indonesia, and India [6]; [4]. In India alone, cultivated area has grown from negligible levels to approximately 400-500 hectares in recent years, with significant potential for further expansion in arid and semi-arid regions [14]. This expansion has created substantial demand for high-quality planting material, making efficient propagation systems a critical bottleneck in the dragon fruit value chain.

Dragon fruit can be propagated through both sexual (seed) and asexual (vegetative) methods, with stem cuttings being the predominant commercial approach due to shorter juvenile periods, genetic uniformity, and earlier fruiting compared to seed-derived plants [6]; [13]. However, the success of cutting propagation depends on numerous factors, among which the composition of growing media has emerged as one of the most influential and practically manageable variables. The growing medium provides physical support, regulates water and air availability to developing roots, supplies essential nutrients, and influences the microbial environment of the rhizosphere—all factors that collectively determine rooting success, shoot development, and ultimate transplant survival [7].

Despite the critical importance of growing media in dragon fruit propagation, systematic research in this area remained limited until recently. Traditional practices often relied on locally available substrates with minimal optimization, leading to inconsistent results and suboptimal nursery efficiency. The past decade, however, has witnessed a surge of research activity focused on identifying optimal media compositions for dragon fruit propagation, driven by the convergence of commercial demand, advances in substrate technology, and improved understanding of plant-media interactions specific to succulent crops.

This review aims to comprehensively synthesize recent advances in growing media research for dragon fruit propagation, providing a critical analysis of substrate performance, mechanistic insights into media effects on plant physiology, and practical recommendations for commercial nursery operations. The objectives are to: (1) examine the physiological basis of media effects on dragon fruit cutting establishment; (2) compare the performance of various organic and inorganic substrates and their combinations; (3) identify optimal media formulations based on current evidence; (4) discuss practical considerations for commercial implementation; and (5) highlight research gaps and future directions for the field.

II. BIOLOGY OF DRAGON FRUIT PROPAGATION

A. Taxonomy and Growth Characteristics

Dragon fruit belongs to the genus *Hylocereus*, with the most commercially important species being *H. undatus* (white-fleshed), *H. polyrhizus* (red-fleshed), and *H. costaricensis* (purple-fleshed). Some taxonomic revisions have placed these species under the genus *Selenicereus*, with *S. undatus* being the accepted name for the most common cultivated species [9]. These are perennial, climbing cacti that use aerial roots to attach to support structures, capable of reaching heights of 10 meters or more under favorable conditions.

The stem segments (cladodes) of dragon fruit are triangular in cross-section, typically 20-120 cm in length, and contain chlorophyll for photosynthesis as well as storage tissue that allows tolerance of drought conditions. This succulent physiology influences propagation requirements, as cuttings are susceptible to desiccation-related stress yet simultaneously vulnerable to rot under excessively moist conditions—a balance that growing media must appropriately manage [15].

B. Propagation Methods

While dragon fruit can be grown from seed, this approach is commercially impractical due to the 4-7 year juvenile period before fruiting, genetic variability, and the difficulty of producing true-to-type offspring from cross-pollinated plants [6]. Seed propagation is therefore primarily used for breeding programs and rootstock development.

Vegetative propagation through stem cuttings is the industry standard, offering numerous advantages including genetic uniformity, shorter time to fruiting (typically 18-24 months), and the ability to multiply superior genotypes rapidly. Cuttings are typically prepared from mature, healthy stem segments of 25-50 cm length, allowed to cure for 7-10 days to form protective callus tissue, and then planted in suitable growing media under protected conditions [13].

The rooting process involves dedifferentiation of stem tissues at the cut surface, formation of root primordia from cambial and pericycle cells, and subsequent root elongation into the surrounding medium. Simultaneously, dormant buds on the cutting activate to produce new shoot growth, with the balance between root and shoot development being critical for successful transplant establishment.

C. Factors Affecting Propagation Success

Multiple factors influence the success of dragon fruit cutting propagation, including cutting characteristics (length, diameter, maturity, health status, and curing treatment), environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, light intensity, and photoperiod), growing media composition, and cultural practices such as irrigation, fertilization, and pest control. Among these, growing media composition has received increasing research attention due to its fundamental role in creating favorable conditions for root initiation and development.

III. PROPERTIES OF GROWING MEDIA AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE

A. Physical Properties

The physical characteristics of growing media fundamentally determine water and air relations in the root zone, which are especially critical for succulent crops like dragon fruit that require a balance between adequate moisture for root development and sufficient aeration to prevent rot.

1) *Porosity and Aeration*: Total porosity represents the proportion of substrate volume occupied by air and water-filled pores. For dragon fruit propagation, media should provide high total porosity (typically 50-85%) with a substantial fraction of air-filled pores (15-30%) to ensure adequate oxygen supply to developing roots while preventing waterlogging [17].

2) *Water-Holding Capacity*: While excessive moisture is detrimental, adequate water retention is necessary to support metabolic processes. Optimal media should maintain consistent moisture without saturation, typically holding 45-65% of total porosity as water at container capacity.

3) *Bulk Density*: Lower bulk density substrates generally provide better aeration and root penetration. Dragon fruit propagation media typically perform best at bulk densities of 0.3-0.8 g/cm³ [19].

4) *Particle Size Distribution*: A mixture of particle sizes typically provides better physical properties than uniform materials, allowing for both macropores (for air exchange) and micropores (for water retention).

B. Chemical Properties

Dragon fruit generally performs well across a moderately acidic to neutral pH range (5.5-7.0). Electrical conductivity (EC) reflects the concentration of dissolved salts; dragon fruit cuttings during initial rooting are susceptible to salt injury, suggesting that media with moderate EC levels (0.5-2.0 dS/m) are preferable. Higher cation exchange capacity (CEC) allows media to retain and exchange nutrient cations, improving nutrient availability over time. Organic components such as vermicompost, compost, and cocopeat contribute significantly higher CEC compared to inorganic materials like sand and perlite.

C. Biological Properties

Growing media host microbial communities that can significantly influence propagation outcomes. Beneficial microorganisms, including mycorrhizal fungi, plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR), and other saprophytic organisms, can enhance root development, nutrient acquisition, and disease suppression. Vermicompost is particularly noted for its rich and beneficial microbial community, including populations of nitrogen-fixing bacteria, phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms, and antagonists against common plant pathogens [5].

IV. MAJOR GROWING MEDIA COMPONENTS

A. Mineral Soil

Soil remains a common component of dragon fruit propagation media due to its ready availability, low cost, and provision of physical support and nutrient retention capacity. However, field soil alone typically provides suboptimal results due to inadequate aeration, inconsistent physical properties, potential contamination with pathogens and weed seeds, and high bulk density. Studies consistently show that soil performs best when combined with amendments that improve porosity and organic matter content [18]; [20].

B. Sand

Sand is widely used as a propagation medium component due to its excellent drainage, stability, and availability. However, sand alone lacks nutrient-holding capacity and dries rapidly, making it unsuitable as a sole propagation medium. Soufan (2024) reported that sand performed moderately well for dragon fruit seed germination, supporting germination rates of approximately 83.33%, while sand+soil combinations in cutting propagation studies have generally shown inferior performance compared to organic-amended alternatives [2]; [18].

C. Cocopeat (Coir Pith)

Cocopeat, derived from coconut husk processing, has gained prominence as a sustainable peat alternative in horticultural propagation systems. Its favorable characteristics include high water-holding capacity, good aeration, near-neutral pH, and freedom from pathogens and weed seeds when properly processed. Tamboli et al. (2025) reported that media combinations including cocopeat supported strong shoot development in dragon fruit cuttings under shade net conditions.

D. Peat Moss

Peat moss has long been a standard component of horticultural growing media due to its excellent physical properties, including high water-holding capacity, good aeration, and low bulk density. Soufan (2024) found that peat moss media facilitated rapid germination in dragon fruit seeds, though overall germination percentage was slightly lower than vermiculite. Environmental concerns regarding peat extraction from sensitive wetland ecosystems have driven increasing interest in alternatives such as cocopeat and composted organic materials.

E. Vermiculite

Vermiculite is an expanded mica mineral that provides excellent water retention, good aeration, high cation exchange capacity, and a near-neutral pH. Soufan (2024) reported that vermiculite achieved the highest germination rate (93.33%) among five tested media for dragon fruit seeds, significantly outperforming compost (70%), sand (83.33%), cocopeat (86.67%), and peat moss (80%). In cutting propagation studies, vermiculite and vermiculite-containing mixtures have demonstrated strong support for root initiation and development [18].

F. Vermicompost

Vermicompost, produced through the decomposition of organic matter by earthworms, has emerged as one of the most effective growing media components for dragon fruit propagation. Its benefits include excellent physical structure, high nutrient content, favorable microbial populations, plant growth-promoting substances, and disease-suppressive properties [5]. Anagha et al. (2025) reported that vermicompost alone was the best medium for dragon fruit cutting propagation, recording the earliest sprouting (13.2 days), highest sprout length (15.19 cm at 90 days), greatest number of sprouts per cutting (3.20), longest root length (15.08 cm), highest number of primary roots (9.60), and highest survival percentage (84%).

Tamboli et al. (2025) [21] similarly found that soil+vermicompost (1:1) produced maximum shoot growth parameters including number of sprouts per cutting (6.31), shoot length (37.70 cm), and shortest time to sprout initiation (35.77 days). Sudarjat et al. (2018) [20] compared vermicompost and compost amendments in dragon fruit cutting propagation, concluding that soil+vermicompost (1:1) and soil+sand+vermicompost (1:1:1) provided the best growth results for both *H. undatus* and *H. polyrhizus*.

G. Compost and Farm Yard Manure

Composted organic materials, including farm yard manure (FYM) and plant-based composts, provide organic matter, nutrients, and improved physical properties to growing media. Soufan (2024) found that compost showed the lowest germination rate (70%) among tested media, though it supported the longest stem growth during subsequent development. Singh et al. (2025) reported

that soil+sand+FYM combinations performed moderately well for dragon fruit cutting propagation, though generally inferior to vermiculite or vermicompost-containing alternatives.

V. COMPARATIVE PERFORMANCE OF GROWING MEDIA

A. Single-Component Media

Studies comparing single-component media consistently demonstrate that no single material provides optimal conditions for all aspects of dragon fruit propagation. Anagha et al. (2025) found significant variation among single-component media, with vermicompost substantially outperforming sand, soil, and FYM when used alone. Specifically, vermicompost achieved 84% survival compared to only 20% for sand+soil combinations. Single-component mineral media (sand, soil) generally provide inadequate organic matter, nutrient content, and water-holding capacity, strongly supporting the use of multi-component media formulations.

B. Binary Combinations

Binary (two-component) media combinations have been extensively evaluated, with soil combined with organic amendments being the most commonly studied formulations. The soil+vermicompost (1:1) combination has consistently emerged among the top-performing media. Tamboli et al. (2025) found that this combination recorded maximum shoot growth parameters including 6.31 sprouts per cutting, 37.70 cm shoot length, and 123.98 g fresh weight. Combinations of soil with cocopeat have shown favorable results, providing improved water retention and aeration compared to soil alone. Soil+sand combinations generally show inferior performance compared to organic-amended alternatives, with Anagha et al. (2025) reporting minimal sprout length (4.10 cm), low sprouting percentage (24%), and poor survival (20%).

C. Ternary and Complex Combinations

Three-component and more complex media formulations allow for fine-tuning of physical and chemical properties. Sudarjat et al. (2018) found that soil+sand+compost (1:1:1) and soil+sand+vermicompost (1:1:1) both produced excellent results for dragon fruit cutting growth. Singh et al. (2025) also reported favorable outcomes with soil+sand+FYM combinations. The soil+vermiculite+perlite combination emphasizes drainage and aeration properties, suitable for environments where waterlogging risk is high.

D. Species-Specific Responses

Limited research has examined whether optimal media formulations differ among dragon fruit species. Sudarjat et al. (2018) [20] evaluated media effects on both *H. undatus* and *H. polyrhizus*, finding similar response patterns with both species performing best in vermicompost-containing media, though absolute values of growth parameters differed between species. Further species-specific research is needed to determine whether media formulations should be tailored to particular cultivars.

VI. PHYSIOLOGICAL MECHANISMS OF MEDIA EFFECTS

A. Root Initiation and Development

The process of adventitious root formation in dragon fruit cuttings involves complex physiological processes influenced by growing media properties. Root initials form from dedifferentiated cells in the cambial and pericycle regions of the stem, requiring adequate oxygen supply, appropriate moisture levels, and suitable temperature conditions [7]. Anagha et al. (2025) reported that vermicompost supported both the longest root length (15.08 cm) and highest number of primary roots (9.60) at 90 days after planting. The presence of plant growth regulators and humic substances in organic media components, particularly vermicompost, may also directly influence root initiation, as vermicompost contains measurable concentrations of auxins, cytokinins, and other hormonal substances that can promote adventitious root formation [3].

B. Shoot Growth and Development

Once rooting is established, shoot growth depends on continued water and nutrient supply from the developing root system. Media that support strong root development generally also support vigorous shoot growth through improved resource acquisition capacity. The high nutrient content of vermicompost and composted organic materials provides sustained nutrition for shoot development without requiring supplemental fertilization during the propagation phase. Tamboli et al. (2025) observed that soil+vermicompost (1:1) produced shoots averaging 37.70 cm in length, significantly exceeding other treatments.

C. Water Relations and Stress Avoidance

Dragon fruit's succulent physiology creates specific requirements for water management during propagation. Cuttings contain substantial water reserves in their stem tissue but are susceptible to both desiccation (under low-humidity or fast-draining media conditions) and rot (under waterlogged conditions with inadequate aeration). The poor performance of sand-based media reported in multiple studies [2]; [19] likely reflects rapid moisture loss and consequent desiccation stress on cuttings.

D. Microbial Interactions

The rhizosphere microbial community influences dragon fruit propagation through multiple mechanisms including nutrient cycling, disease suppression, and direct growth promotion. Vermicompost harbors diverse and beneficial microbial populations, including nitrogen-fixing bacteria, phosphate solubilizers, and antagonists against common root pathogens [5]. The disease-suppressive properties of vermicompost may be particularly valuable in propagation systems where cutting wounds provide entry points for fungal pathogens.

VII. PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR COMMERCIAL IMPLEMENTATION

A. Cost-Effectiveness Analysis

While research clearly demonstrates the superior performance of vermicompost and other high-quality organic amendments, commercial propagation operations must balance substrate performance against cost considerations. The substantially higher survival rates achieved with optimal media formulations often justify increased substrate costs. Anagha et al. (2025) reported 84% survival with vermicompost compared to only 20% with sand+soil—a difference that would result in significant net savings in cutting material, labor, and time despite higher substrate costs.

B. Substrate Availability and Consistency

The availability of quality substrates varies geographically, influencing practical media recommendations. Cocopeat is readily available in coconut-producing regions but may require importation elsewhere. Vermicompost can be produced on-site but requires dedicated production facilities and consistent feedstock supplies. Substrate quality consistency is another practical consideration, as vermicompost and compost quality varies substantially depending on feedstock materials, processing conditions, and maturity.

C. Environmental Control Requirements

Growing media interact with environmental conditions to determine propagation outcomes. Media with high water-holding capacity may perform well under protected cultivation where irrigation can be precisely controlled but may retain excessive moisture under rainy conditions in open nurseries. Tamboli et al. (2025) conducted their research under shade net conditions, noting the importance of controlled light intensity and temperature for optimal propagation outcomes.

D. Integration with Fertigation Systems

Modern nursery operations often employ fertigation systems for precise nutrient delivery. For dragon fruit propagation, organic-rich media typically provide adequate nutrition during the initial propagation phase, with fertigation becoming more important during hardening and grow-out stages.

VIII. RECENT INNOVATIONS AND EMERGING TRENDS

A. Biochar-Amended Media

Biochar, a carbon-rich material produced through pyrolysis of organic feedstocks, has attracted interest as a growing media component due to its favorable physical properties, high surface area, and potential for carbon sequestration. Limited research has examined biochar in dragon fruit propagation specifically, but studies in related crops suggest potential benefits including improved water retention, enhanced microbial habitat, and increased nutrient retention.

B. Biostimulant Integration

The integration of biostimulants—including beneficial microorganisms, humic substances, and plant growth-promoting compounds—with growing media represents an emerging area of interest. While vermicompost naturally contains many of these elements, supplemental inoculation with mycorrhizal fungi, *Trichoderma* species, or bacterial biostimulants may further enhance propagation outcomes.

C. Precision Propagation Systems

Advances in nursery technology, including automated irrigation systems, environmental monitoring, and decision support tools, offer opportunities for optimizing media performance through precise management. Sensor-based irrigation triggered by media moisture content can maintain optimal water relations regardless of substrate water-holding characteristics, potentially expanding the range of suitable media formulations.

D. Sustainable and Circular Economy Approaches

Growing interest in sustainable production systems has driven research into locally available, renewable, and recycled substrates for horticultural applications. Research evaluating locally available materials such as rice hull ash, sugarcane bagasse, and other regional organic residues for dragon fruit propagation would support development of sustainable, location-specific media recommendations.

IX. RESEARCH GAPS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Despite significant recent advances, several important research gaps remain in understanding and optimizing growing media for dragon fruit propagation. These include: (1) standardized methodology across studies to improve comparability; (2) long-term performance evaluation tracking field establishment, growth, and fruiting performance; (3) genotype $\times$ media interactions to determine whether formulations should be tailored to specific species or cultivars; (4) mechanistic studies detailing how physical, chemical, and biological factors influence root and shoot development; (5) economic optimization through comprehensive cost-benefit analyses; (6) climate resilience research evaluating media performance under stress conditions; and (7) integration with other propagation advances including cutting treatments, growth regulators, and environmental management strategies.

X. CONCLUSIONS

Research over the past decade has substantially advanced understanding of growing media effects on dragon fruit propagation, enabling evidence-based recommendations for commercial nursery operations. Key conclusions include: (1) growing media composition significantly influences all aspects of dragon fruit propagation including sprouting time, root development, shoot growth, and survival percentage; (2) vermicompost emerges as the most consistently superior substrate component, either alone or in combination with soil and other amendments; (3) binary combinations of soil with vermicompost (1:1) represent an optimal balance of performance, cost, and practicality for most commercial applications; (4) vermiculite performs exceptionally well for seed germination, achieving the highest germination rates among tested media; (5) sand-based and soil-only media generally produce inferior results and should be avoided or amended with organic components; (6) media effects are mediated through physical, chemical, and biological mechanisms, with the air-water balance, nutrient availability, and microbial activity being particularly important; and (7) future research should focus on standardized protocols, long-term performance evaluation, genotype-specific recommendations, and integration of emerging technologies.

The continued expansion of dragon fruit cultivation globally creates ongoing demand for efficient propagation systems. Application of evidence-based media recommendations, combined with appropriate environmental management and cultural practices, can substantially improve nursery productivity and support sustainable intensification of this promising tropical fruit crop.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors acknowledge the support of Khalsa College, Amritsar, where experimental work related to this review was conducted during 2022-2023.

REFERENCES

- [1] H. Ahmad, W. Mirana, H. Fazal, S. Masaud, B. M. Khan, and H. J. Chaudhary, "Dragon fruit (*Hylocereus*): A potential source of nutraceuticals and cosmeceuticals," *J. Medicinal Plants Studies*, vol. 4, no. 6, pp. 204-208, 2016.
- [2] P. K. Anagha, D. P. Prakasha, N. Anand, M. Vijay, S. Ryavalad, and M. Ramya Sree, "Enhancing dragon fruit (*Hylocereus undatus*) propagation efficiency through growing media," *Int. J. Environ. Pollution*, PP House Publications, 2025.
- [3] N. Q. Arancon, C. A. Edwards, and P. Bierman, "Influences of vermicomposts on field strawberries: Part 2. Effects on soil microbiological and chemical properties," *Bioresource Technology*, vol. 97, no. 6, pp. 831-840, 2006.
- [4] J. H. Crane and C. F. Balerdi, "Pitaya growing in the Florida home landscape," Univ. Florida IFAS Extension, HS1068, 2005.
- [5] C. A. Edwards, N. Q. Arancon, and R. L. Sherman, *Vermiculture Technology: Earthworms, Organic Wastes, and Environmental Management*. CRC Press, 2011.
- [6] H. P. M. Gunasena, D. K. N. G. Pushpakumara, and M. Kariyawasam, "Dragon fruit - *Hylocereus undatus*," in *Underutilized Fruit Trees in Sri Lanka*, World Agroforestry Centre, 2007, pp. 110-142.
- [7] H. T. Hartmann, D. E. Kester, F. T. Davies, and R. L. Geneve, *Hartmann & Kester's Plant Propagation: Principles and Practices*, 8th ed. Prentice Hall, 2011.
- [8] K. Komalpuneet and K. Amarjeet, *J. Adv. Biol. Biotechnol.*, vol. 28, no. 3, pp. 304-314, 2025, Article no. JABB.132437.
- [9] N. Korotkova, T. Borsch, and S. Arias, "A phylogenetic framework for the Hylocereeae (Cactaceae) and implications for the circumscription of the genera," *Phytotaxa*, vol. 327, no. 1, pp. 1-46, 2017.
- [10] F. Le Bellec, F. Vaillant, and E. Imbert, "Pitahaya (*Hylocereus* spp.): A new fruit crop, a market with a future," *Fruits*, vol. 61, no. 4, pp. 237-250, 2006.
- [11] H. K. Lim, C. P. Tan, R. Karim, A. A. Ariffin, and J. Bakar, "Chemical composition and DSC thermal properties of two species of *Hylocereus* cacti seed oil," *Food Chemistry*, vol. 119, no. 4, pp. 1326-1331, 2012.
- [12] Y. Mizrahi, A. Nerd, and P. S. Nobel, "Cacti as crops," *Horticultural Reviews*, vol. 18, pp. 291-319, 1997.
- [13] Y. Mizrahi, A. Nerd, and Y. Sitrit, "New fruits for arid climates," in *Trends in New Crops and New Uses*, J. Janick and A. Whipkey, Eds. ASHS Press, 2002, pp. 378-384.
- [14] D. D. Nangare, K. K. Singh, and V. S. Meena, "Dragon fruit cultivation: A potential option for diversification in arid and semi-arid regions," *Current Science*, vol. 117, no. 7, pp. 1123-1125, 2019.
- [15] P. S. Nobel and E. De la Barrera, "CO₂ uptake by the cultivated hemiepiphytic cactus, *Hylocereus undatus*," *Annals Appl. Biology*, vol. 144, no. 1, pp. 1-8, 2004.

- [16] S. R. Nurul and R. Asmah, "Variability in nutritional composition and phytochemical properties of red pitaya (*Hylocereus polyrhizus*) from Malaysia and Australia," *Int. Food Research J.*, vol. 21, no. 4, pp. 1453-1460, 2014.
- [17] Y. D. Ortiz-Hernandez and J. A. Carrillo-Salazar, "Pitahaya (*Hylocereus* spp.): A short review," *Comunicata Scientiae*, vol. 3, no. 4, pp. 220-237, 2012.
- [18] R. Singh, R. S. Verma, S. S. Verma, S. Verma, and B. Kumar, "Effect of different growing media on shoot development of dragon fruit cuttings (*Hylocereus undatus*)," *Plant Archives*, vol. 25, Suppl. 1, pp. 1893-1897, 2025.
- [19] W. Soufan, "Optimizing germination: Comparative assessment of various growth media on dragon fruit germination and early growth," *BMC Plant Biology*, vol. 24, p. 533, 2024.
- [20] Sudarjat, V. Isnaniawardhani, and S. Mubarak, "Different growing media effect on the cutting quality of two dragon fruit species (*Hylocereus* sp.)," *J. Agronomy*, vol. 17, no. 3, pp. 174-179, 2018.
- [21] L. Tamboli, Sangeeta, M. S. Paikra, M. Saha, D. Nishad, O. Raizada, S. Chelse, and A. Mandavi, "Studies on plant growth parameters of dragon fruit (*Hylocereus polyrhizus* L.) as responded different growing media under shade net condition," *Int. J. Advanced Biochemistry Research*, SP-9, no. 10, pp. 2117-2120, 2025.

Cyber-Physical Systems in Agriculture: Engineering Smart and Sustainable Farming

Lakshya

*Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh
Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Punjab) - 151001 India*

Lakshyabishnoi29@gmail.com

Abstract - The rapid convergence of computation, communication, and physical processes has given rise to Cyber-Physical Systems (CPS), which are fundamentally reshaping the agricultural landscape. This review paper critically examines the architecture, technologies, and applications of CPS in smart and sustainable agriculture, synthesizing findings from recent Scopus-indexed literature published between 2019 and 2025. CPS integrates the Internet of Things (IoT), wireless sensor networks (WSN), cloud and edge computing, artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), digital twins (DT), and autonomous robotics to create intelligent farming ecosystems capable of real-time monitoring, decision-making, and actuation. The paper first presents the foundational engineering principles underpinning agricultural CPS, including network protocols, sensor fusion, and embedded control systems. Subsequently, it reviews key application domains: precision irrigation and resource management, crop disease detection via UAV-based remote sensing and deep learning, livestock monitoring, greenhouse automation, and supply chain traceability. Digital twin technology is highlighted as an emerging paradigm enabling virtual simulation and predictive management of entire farm systems. The review also addresses critical challenges—cybersecurity vulnerabilities, data heterogeneity, interoperability, computational constraints at the edge, and economic barriers to adoption—particularly in developing agricultural economies. Sustainability dimensions, including reduced agrochemical usage, optimized water consumption, and minimized carbon footprint, are discussed in light of global food security imperatives. The review concludes by identifying open research frontiers, including federated learning for privacy-preserving analytics, 5G-enabled CPS architectures, and AI-driven autonomous farm management. By consolidating recent advances, this work provides a structured reference for researchers, engineers, and policymakers committed to advancing the digital transformation of agriculture.

Keywords - Cyber-Physical Systems, Smart Agriculture, Internet of Things, Precision Farming, Digital Twins, Machine Learning, UAV Remote

I. Introduction

Global agriculture faces unprecedented pressure from a rapidly growing population, projected to reach 9.7 billion by 2050, necessitating a 70% increase in food production while simultaneously confronting climate change, resource depletion, and environmental degradation [1]. Traditional farming practices are demonstrably insufficient to address these compounding challenges, prompting an urgent paradigm shift toward data-driven, technology-enabled agricultural management. Cyber-Physical Systems (CPS) represent a transformative engineering framework that tightly integrates computational intelligence with physical agricultural processes through sensing, actuation, and communication networks [6].

CPS in agriculture—often termed agricultural CPS or smart farming—enables real-time monitoring of soil conditions, crop health, microclimates, and machinery performance, translating raw sensor data into actionable farm management decisions [7]. Unlike isolated automation solutions, CPS provides a holistic, interconnected ecosystem where physical farm components continuously interact with digital control layers, creating closed-loop feedback that optimizes resource utilization and maximizes yield [2]. The integration of IoT sensors, cloud platforms, AI-driven analytics, and autonomous robots within a unified CPS framework represents the realization of Agriculture 4.0—a fourth industrial revolution applied to food production [5].

Seminal work by Sarkar et al. [1] introduced the concept of cyber-agricultural systems, demonstrating that CPS architectures could simultaneously advance crop breeding objectives and optimize sustainable production metrics. Complementary reviews have identified the role of digital twins [2], [3], advanced sensor networks [5], and AI-powered UAV platforms [4] as foundational pillars of modern agricultural CPS. Despite significant progress, the literature remains fragmented across disciplinary boundaries, with limited comprehensive synthesis spanning engineering design principles, practical applications, sustainability outcomes, and deployment challenges.

This paper presents a structured review of CPS in agriculture, drawing on recent Scopus-indexed literature to consolidate knowledge across these dimensions. The remainder of the paper is organized as follows: Section II discusses the foundational CPS architecture and enabling technologies. Section III reviews key application domains. Section IV examines the role of digital twins. Section V addresses sustainability and food security implications. Section VI analyzes challenges and barriers. Section VII presents open research frontiers. Section VIII concludes the review.

II. CPS Architecture and Enabling Technologies

A. Layered CPS Architecture for Agriculture

Agricultural CPS is conventionally conceptualized as a multi-layered architecture comprising: (i) a physical sensing layer, (ii) a network communication layer, (iii) a data processing and cloud/edge computing layer, and (iv) an application and decision-making layer [6], [7]. At the

physical layer, heterogeneous sensors—including soil moisture probes, temperature and humidity sensors, pH meters, gas sensors, and vision systems—continuously capture agro-environmental parameters [5]. These sensors form wireless sensor networks (WSN) deployed across fields, greenhouses, and livestock facilities, providing spatially distributed, temporally dense data streams.

The communication layer leverages diverse wireless protocols suited to the agrarian context. LoRaWAN offers long-range, low-power connectivity ideal for wide-area field monitoring, while Zigbee and Wi-Fi serve localized greenhouse automation. Emerging 5G networks promise ultra-low latency and high bandwidth connectivity capable of supporting real-time robotic control and high-definition video streaming from UAV platforms [19]. Cellular NB-IoT technologies provide energy-efficient connectivity for battery-powered soil sensors deployed across large farms.

B. IoT and Wireless Sensor Networks

The IoT serves as the connective tissue of agricultural CPS, enabling billions of devices to communicate and share data across the farm ecosystem [6]. Gatkhal et al. [6] conducted a comprehensive review of IoT-enabled smart agriculture, identifying key hardware platforms—including Arduino, Raspberry Pi, and custom ASIC-based sensor nodes—and communication stacks appropriate for agricultural deployments. The integration of IoT with cloud platforms enables centralized data aggregation, historical analysis, and remote farm management accessible via web and mobile interfaces [18].

WSN applications in agriculture have grown substantially, as documented by bibliometric analysis of over 2,444 Scopus publications [8]. WSN architectures facilitate multi-parameter environmental monitoring, irrigation scheduling automation, and early warning systems for adverse weather events. Energy harvesting solutions, including solar-powered sensor nodes, have extended deployment lifetimes in remote field locations where grid power is unavailable [5].

C. Cloud and Edge Computing

Cloud computing platforms provide the scalable storage, processing, and analytics infrastructure required to handle the massive data volumes generated by agricultural CPS deployments [15]. Cloud-based agricultural platforms enable integration with remote sensing satellite data, weather forecast services, and market information systems, providing farmers with comprehensive decision support. However, the reliance on cloud connectivity introduces latency concerns for time-critical applications such as automated irrigation actuation or robotic navigation.

Edge computing addresses latency limitations by bringing computational intelligence closer to data sources [16]. Edge nodes deployed at field gateways or onboard agricultural robots perform local inference using pre-trained ML models, enabling sub-second response times for real-time control applications. The cloud-fog-edge continuum provides a hierarchical architecture where routine inference occurs at the edge, intermediate analytics at fog nodes, and complex training and historical analysis in the cloud [15].

III. Key Application Domains

A. Precision Irrigation and Water Management

Water scarcity represents one of the most critical constraints on global food production, with agriculture accounting for approximately 70% of global freshwater withdrawals. CPS-enabled precision irrigation systems dynamically optimize water application based on real-time soil moisture measurements, evapotranspiration models, and weather forecast integration [5]. IoT soil moisture sensors deployed at multiple field depths provide continuous monitoring of the root-zone water status, enabling automated irrigation scheduling that prevents both over-irrigation and drought stress.

Advanced CPS irrigation frameworks incorporate reinforcement learning algorithms that adapt irrigation strategies based on observed crop response and historical yield data [16]. Alves et al. [22] developed a digital twin-based smart irrigation system demonstrating measurable water savings while maintaining crop yield targets. Climate-smart irrigation strategies integrating CPS have shown potential to significantly reduce agricultural water consumption while ensuring food security under projected climate change scenarios [20].

B. Crop Health Monitoring and Disease Detection

Timely detection of crop diseases and pest infestations is essential for preventing yield losses estimated at 20–40% of global production annually. CPS platforms integrating UAV-based remote sensing with deep learning models have demonstrated remarkable capability for automated, large-scale crop disease surveillance [4], [9]. UAVs equipped with RGB, multispectral, and hyperspectral sensors systematically image agricultural fields at spatial resolutions enabling early disease symptom identification before visible damage becomes extensive.

Neupane and Guo [4] conducted a systematic review of UAV-based crop disease detection methodologies, identifying deep learning architectures including convolutional neural networks (CNN), YOLO-based object detectors, and transformer models as state-of-the-art approaches. CNN models such as EfficientNet-B3 have achieved F1-scores exceeding 98% for multi-disease classification across tomato, potato, and pepper crops under real-world field conditions [28]. Bouguettaya et al. [10] further synthesized advances in deep learning-based plant disease identification from UAV imagery, highlighting the superiority of end-to-end deep learning over conventional machine learning approaches.

Zhu and Lin [9] demonstrated the application of large language models in conjunction with YOLO-based detectors for simultaneous pest and disease identification, opening new frontiers in multimodal agricultural AI. Hyperspectral imaging mounted on UAV platforms enables early detection of nutrient deficiencies and water stress prior to visible symptom manifestation, allowing preventative intervention [21]. The integration of these capabilities within CPS frameworks enables continuous, automated crop surveillance at farm scale [28].

C. Greenhouse Automation and Controlled Environment Agriculture

Greenhouses represent exemplary CPS environments where the physical agricultural system—temperature, humidity, CO₂ concentration, and lighting—can be precisely controlled through digital actuation based on sensor feedback [3]. Subahi et al. developed a CPS-based greenhouse automation framework integrating digital twin simulation with sensor-driven climate control, achieving improvements in both energy efficiency and crop productivity [20]. Automated nutrient delivery systems in hydroponic and aeroponic cultivation leverage CPS to maintain optimal growing conditions with minimal human intervention.

The integration of AI-driven predictive models within greenhouse CPS enables proactive climate management, adjusting set points in anticipation of external weather changes rather than merely reacting to internal condition deviations [7]. Computer vision systems monitor plant morphology and growth metrics in real time, enabling early identification of nutrient deficiencies or pest infestations within controlled growing environments. These capabilities collectively position greenhouse CPS as a high-precision, resource-efficient production platform capable of achieving multiple annual crop cycles [15].

D. Livestock Monitoring and Precision Animal Husbandry

Precision livestock farming represents a rapidly growing application domain for CPS, where individual animal monitoring enables early disease detection, optimized feeding, and improved welfare management [6]. Wearable IoT sensors attached to livestock continuously transmit physiological parameters—body temperature, heart rate, activity levels, and rumination patterns—to CPS platforms that apply ML algorithms to identify behavioral anomalies indicative of illness or reproductive events.

Zhang et al. [24] developed a digital twin model for dairy cow feeding behavior monitoring, demonstrating that virtual replicas of individual cows could predict feeding patterns and detect deviations associated with health deterioration. CPS-integrated feeding systems optimize ration composition and delivery timing based on individual animal performance data, maximizing milk production efficiency while minimizing feed waste. Automated milking systems integrated within CPS frameworks continuously monitor milk quality parameters, providing early warning of mastitis and other udder health issues [14].

E. Supply Chain Traceability and Food Safety

Agricultural CPS extends beyond farm boundaries to encompass post-harvest handling, processing, and distribution within integrated food supply chains. Blockchain-integrated CPS architectures provide immutable, transparent records of crop provenance, handling conditions, and logistics chain events, enhancing food safety assurance and regulatory compliance [13]. IoT sensors embedded within cold chain logistics monitor temperature and humidity during transportation, triggering automated alerts when conditions deviate from specified tolerances.

Saba et al. [13] proposed a trust-based decentralized blockchain system integrated with IoT sensors for agricultural supply chain monitoring, demonstrating superior security and transparency compared to conventional centralized database approaches. The combination of CPS-generated

farm-level data with blockchain-secured supply chain records enables end-to-end food traceability from field to consumer, supporting premium market positioning and regulatory compliance with food safety standards [14].

IV. Digital Twins in Agricultural CPS

Digital twin (DT) technology has emerged as a transformative paradigm within agricultural CPS, providing virtual replicas of physical farm systems that enable simulation, prediction, and optimization without physical experimentation [2], [3]. Agricultural digital twins integrate real-time sensor data streams with mechanistic crop growth models, weather simulation, and soil physics to create continuously updated, high-fidelity virtual farm representations [11].

Escribà-Gelonch et al. [2] conducted a comprehensive review of DT applications across the agricultural lifecycle, demonstrating value creation across crop production, postharvest management, and farm infrastructure optimization. Peladarinos et al. [3] identified DTs as key enablers of smart farming by facilitating scenario simulation—allowing farmers to virtually evaluate management interventions before physical implementation. Wang [11] reviewed recent DT progress, highlighting open challenges including real-time data integration, model calibration under changing environmental conditions, and computational scalability for large farm systems.

Awais et al. [8] presented a systematic review of 167 studies on DT-enabled precision agriculture, proposing a comprehensive framework for DT design, integration, and optimization in smart farming contexts. Their analysis revealed the growing integration of AI, IoT, remote sensing, and DTs into unified CPS ecosystems capable of autonomous decision-making. Zhang et al. [12] provided a comprehensive technology review identifying DT applications ranging from crop planting management and pest control to livestock management and agricultural machinery optimization.

The cloud-fog-edge infrastructure provides the computational substrate for agricultural DT deployment [15]. Kalyani et al. [15] analyzed application scenarios for smart crop farming DTs across this hierarchical infrastructure, demonstrating how edge computing enables real-time DT feedback loops while cloud resources support complex simulation and AI model training. Pylianidis et al. [21] identified key challenges including data acquisition quality, model uncertainty quantification, and validation requirements as barriers to widespread agricultural DT adoption.

V. Sustainability and Food Security Dimensions

The deployment of CPS in agriculture carries significant sustainability implications across environmental, economic, and social dimensions [7], [27]. Environmental sustainability is enhanced through precision application of inputs—fertilizers, pesticides, and water—guided by CPS sensor data and AI-driven recommendations, reducing agrochemical runoff, soil degradation, and greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural sources. Balafoutis et al. [27] demonstrated that precision agriculture technologies, a foundational component of agricultural CPS, positively contribute to GHG emissions mitigation while improving farm productivity and economic returns.

Water use efficiency represents a particularly critical sustainability metric, with CPS-enabled precision irrigation demonstrating water savings through spatially and temporally optimized application compared to conventional schedule-based irrigation [5]. Energy efficiency within greenhouse CPS is enhanced through AI-driven climate control that minimizes heating, cooling, and lighting energy consumption while maintaining optimal growing conditions [20]. The reduction in pesticide applications enabled by early CPS-based disease detection reduces both production costs and environmental contamination of surrounding ecosystems [4].

Economic sustainability for smallholder farmers—who constitute the majority of global food producers—requires CPS solutions that are affordable, interoperable with existing farm infrastructure, and operable without specialized technical expertise [16]. The emergence of low-cost IoT sensor platforms, open-source software frameworks, and cloud-based agricultural advisory services has progressively reduced barriers to CPS adoption in developing agricultural economies [18]. Sharma et al. [17] demonstrated that ML applications in precision agriculture can deliver economically significant productivity improvements accessible through smartphone-based advisory interfaces deployed within broader CPS architectures.

VI. Challenges and Barriers

A. Cybersecurity Vulnerabilities

The increased connectivity of agricultural CPS creates expanded attack surfaces vulnerable to cyber threats including data manipulation, denial-of-service attacks, and unauthorized system access [19], [30]. Compromise of agricultural CPS could disrupt automated irrigation, contaminate precision fertilizer application recommendations, or corrupt livestock health monitoring data, with potentially catastrophic consequences for farm productivity and food safety. Ferrag et al. [30] comprehensively reviewed security and privacy challenges in IoT-based agriculture, cataloging threat vectors and evaluating blockchain-based and cryptographic countermeasures.

Amiri-Zarandi et al. [14] conducted a dedicated review of big data privacy in smart farming, identifying risks associated with aggregation of farm performance data by cloud platform providers and the potential for commercially sensitive information disclosure. Authentication and access control mechanisms appropriate for resource-constrained IoT devices remain an active research challenge [19]. The implementation of security-by-design principles in agricultural CPS architecture is essential but frequently overlooked in deployments prioritizing functionality and cost minimization.

B. Data Heterogeneity and Interoperability

Agricultural CPS deployments typically incorporate sensors, actuators, and platforms from multiple vendors using incompatible data formats, communication protocols, and application programming interfaces [7]. This heterogeneity severely limits data integration, cross-platform analytics, and the development of interoperable precision agriculture applications. Standardization efforts, including the adoption of MQTT, OPC UA, and agricultural data standards such as

ADAPT and ISOXML, are progressing but have not yet achieved universal adoption across the agricultural technology ecosystem [6].

C. Connectivity in Remote Agricultural Areas

Many productive agricultural regions lack reliable broadband connectivity, creating a fundamental infrastructure barrier to cloud-dependent CPS deployments [16]. Edge computing architectures mitigate this challenge by enabling local processing of sensor data without continuous cloud connectivity, but require more sophisticated local hardware and software management. Satellite-based connectivity solutions including low Earth orbit constellations offer potential for universal agricultural connectivity but currently remain cost-prohibitive for smallholder farmers [5].

D. Economic and Adoption Barriers

The capital cost of deploying comprehensive agricultural CPS—including sensors, communication infrastructure, edge computing hardware, and software subscriptions—remains prohibitive for many smallholder farmers who cultivate the majority of global agricultural land [18]. Return on investment timelines extending beyond single growing seasons reduce adoption incentives, particularly in regions where agricultural credit access is limited. Additionally, the digital literacy requirements for effective CPS operation and interpretation of AI-generated recommendations represent significant human capital challenges [16].

VII. Open Research Frontiers

Several emerging research directions hold significant promise for advancing the capabilities and accessibility of agricultural CPS. Federated learning architectures enable collaborative ML model training across distributed farm datasets without centralizing sensitive farm performance data, addressing privacy concerns while leveraging the collective intelligence of large agricultural data pools [14]. This approach is particularly relevant for developing robust crop disease detection models that generalize across diverse geographic regions and cropping systems.

5G and future 6G wireless networks will enable agricultural CPS capabilities currently constrained by connectivity bandwidth and latency [19]. Ultra-reliable low-latency communication (URLLC) will support real-time robotic swarm coordination for precision planting, harvesting, and crop scouting applications. Massive machine-type communications (mMTC) will enable economically viable deployment of dense IoT sensor networks monitoring soil health at unprecedented spatial resolution across large agricultural landscapes.

Neuromorphic computing architectures, inspired by biological neural systems, offer potential for ultra-low-power AI inference at the extreme edge of agricultural CPS networks [25]. These processors could enable battery-powered field sensors to perform sophisticated local inference without dependence on cloud connectivity, drastically extending deployment autonomy in remote agricultural environments. Explainable AI (XAI) frameworks are needed to enhance

farmer trust in CPS-generated recommendations by providing transparent, interpretable reasoning for AI-driven management decisions [29].

Integration of large language models (LLM) with multimodal agricultural sensing systems represents a frontier for natural language agricultural advisory interfaces accessible to farmers without specialized technical training [9]. Autonomous robotic systems capable of performing complex agronomic tasks—including selective harvesting, targeted pesticide application, and mechanical weeding—within CPS frameworks represent a transformative vision for future agricultural systems where labor constraints are addressed through intelligent automation [17].

VIII. Conclusion

This review has synthesized recent advances in Cyber-Physical Systems for smart and sustainable agriculture, drawing on Scopus-indexed literature spanning IoT, wireless sensor networks, digital twins, AI-driven analytics, UAV remote sensing, and autonomous robotics. CPS represents a foundational engineering paradigm for Agriculture 4.0, enabling unprecedented integration of physical farm processes with digital intelligence to optimize resource utilization, maximize productivity, and enhance sustainability outcomes.

Key findings indicate that digital twin technology has matured significantly and is demonstrating concrete value across crop production management, greenhouse automation, and livestock monitoring applications. Deep learning-based crop disease detection using UAV imagery has achieved accuracy levels competitive with expert agronomist assessment, and is poised for widespread operational deployment. However, cybersecurity vulnerabilities, data interoperability challenges, rural connectivity gaps, and economic adoption barriers represent substantial obstacles requiring concerted research and policy attention.

Future agricultural CPS development must balance technological sophistication with accessibility for smallholder farmers who manage the majority of global food production. Federated learning, edge AI, low-cost IoT platforms, and 5G connectivity collectively offer pathways toward democratized CPS adoption. The convergence of these technologies within integrated CPS frameworks positions smart agriculture as a critical enabler of global food security and environmental sustainability in an era of profound climatic and demographic challenge.

References

- [1] S. Sarkar et al., "Cyber-agricultural systems for crop breeding and sustainable production," *Trends Plant Sci.*, vol. 29, no. 2, pp. 130–149, Feb. 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.tplants.2023.08.001.
- [2] M. Escribà-Gelonch et al., "Digital twins in agriculture: Orchestration and applications," *J. Agric. Food Chem.*, vol. 72, no. 19, pp. 10737–10752, May 2024, doi: 10.1021/acs.jafc.4c01934.
- [3] N. Peladarinos, D. Piromalis, V. Cheimaras, E. Tserepas, R. A. Munteanu, and P. Papageorgas, "Enhancing smart agriculture by implementing digital twins: A comprehensive review," *Sensors*, vol. 23, no. 16, p. 7128, Aug. 2023, doi: 10.3390/s23167128.

- [4] A. Neupane and W. Guo, "Recent advances in crop disease detection using UAV and deep learning techniques," *Remote Sens.*, vol. 15, no. 9, p. 2450, May 2023, doi: 10.3390/rs15092450.
- [5] C. Prakash, L. P. Singh, A. Gupta, and S. K. Lohan, "Advancements in smart farming: A comprehensive review of IoT, wireless communication, sensors, and hardware for agricultural automation," *Sens. Actuators A Phys.*, vol. 362, p. 114605, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.sna.2023.114605.
- [6] N. R. Gatkhal, S. M. Nalawade, R. K. Sahni et al., "Review of IoT and electronics enabled smart agriculture," *Int. J. Agric. Biol. Eng.*, vol. 17, no. 5, pp. 1–14, Oct. 2024, doi: 10.25165/j.ijabe.20241705.8496.
- [7] F. B. García et al., "Cyber-Physical Systems for Smart Farming: A Systematic Review," *Sustainability*, vol. 17, no. 14, p. 6393, Jul. 2025, doi: 10.3390/su17146393.
- [8] M. Awais, X. Wang, S. Hussain, F. Aziz, and M. Q. Mahmood, "Advancing precision agriculture through digital twins and smart farming technologies: A review," *Agri Eng.*, vol. 7, no. 5, p. 137, 2025, doi: 10.3390/agriengineering7050137.
- [9] H. Zhu and C. Lin, "Intelligent agriculture: Deep learning in UAV-based remote sensing imagery for crop diseases and pests detection," *Front. Plant Sci.*, vol. 15, p. 1435016, Oct. 2024, doi: 10.3389/fpls.2024.1435016.
- [10] A. Bouguettaya, H. Zarzour, A. Kechida, and A. M. Taberkit, "A survey on deep learning-based identification of plant and crop diseases from UAV-based aerial images," *Cluster Comput.*, vol. 26, pp. 1297–1317, 2023, doi: 10.1007/s10586-022-03627-x.
- [11] L. Wang, "Digital twins in agriculture: A review of recent progress and open issues," *Electronics*, vol. 13, no. 11, p. 2209, 2024, doi: 10.3390/electronics13112209.
- [12] R. Zhang, H. Zhu, Q. Chang, and Q. Mao, "A comprehensive review of digital twins technology in agriculture," *Agriculture*, vol. 15, no. 9, p. 903, 2025, doi: 10.3390/agriculture15090903.
- [13] T. Saba, A. Rehman, K. Haseeb, S. A. Bahaj, and J. Lloret, "Trust-based decentralized blockchain system with machine learning using Internet of Agriculture Things," *Comput. Electr. Eng.*, vol. 108, p. 108674, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.compeleceng.2023.108674.
- [14] M. Amiri-Zarandi, R. A. Dara, E. Duncan, and E. D. G. Fraser, "Big data privacy in smart farming: A review," *Sustainability*, vol. 14, no. 15, p. 9120, 2022, doi: 10.3390/su14159120.
- [15] Y. Kalyani, L. Vorster, R. Whetton, and R. Collier, "Application scenarios of digital twins for smart crop farming through cloud–fog–edge infrastructure," *Future Internet*, vol. 16, no. 3, p. 100, 2024, doi: 10.3390/fi16030100.
- [16] A. A. Alzubi and K. Galyana, "AI & IoT for sustainable farming and smart agriculture," *IEEE Open J. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 4, pp. 24–34, 2023, doi: 10.1109/OJIA.2023.3308369.
- [17] A. Sharma, A. Jain, P. Gupta, and V. Chowdary, "Machine learning applications for precision agriculture: A comprehensive review," *IEEE Access*, vol. 9, pp. 4843–4873, 2021, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2020.3048415.

- [18] M. Dhanaraju, P. Chenniappan, K. Ramalingam, S. Pazhanivelan, and R. Kaliaperumal, "Smart farming: Internet of Things (IoT)-based sustainable agriculture," *Agriculture*, vol. 12, no. 10, p. 1745, 2022, doi: 10.3390/agriculture12101745.
- [19] A. Gerodimos, L. Maglaras, M. A. Ferrag, N. Ayres, and I. Kantzavelou, "IoT: Communication protocols and security threats," *Internet Things Cyber-Phys. Syst.*, vol. 3, pp. 1–13, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.iotcps.2022.12.003.
- [20] D. M. Dhanaraju et al., "Privacy-centric AI and IoT solutions for smart rural farm monitoring and control," *Sensors*, vol. 24, no. 13, p. 4157, Jul. 2024, doi: 10.3390/s24134157.
- [21] C. Pylianidis, S. Osinga, and I. N. Athanasiadis, "Introducing digital twins to agriculture," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 184, p. 105942, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.compag.2020.105942.
- [22] R. G. Alves, R. F. Maia, and F. Lima, "Development of a digital twin for smart farming: Irrigation management system for water saving," *J. Clean. Prod.*, vol. 388, p. 135920, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2022.135920.
- [23] W. Purcell and T. Neubauer, "Digital twins in agriculture: A state-of-the-art review," *Smart Agric. Technol.*, vol. 3, p. 100094, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.atech.2022.100094.
- [24] Y. Zhang et al., "Digital twin perception and modeling method for feeding behavior of dairy cows," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 214, p. 108181, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.compag.2023.108181.
- [25] L. U. Khan et al., "Digital twin of wireless systems: Overview, taxonomy, challenges, and opportunities," *IEEE Commun. Surv. Tutor.*, vol. 24, no. 4, pp. 2230–2254, 2022, doi: 10.1109/COMST.2022.3198273.
- [26] U. Shafi, R. Mumtaz, J. García-Nieto, S. A. Hassan, S. A. R. Zaidi, and N. Iqbal, "Precision agriculture techniques and practices: From considerations to applications," *Sensors*, vol. 19, no. 17, p. 3796, 2019, doi: 10.3390/s19173796.
- [27] A. T. Balafoutis et al., "Precision agriculture technologies positively contributing to GHG emissions mitigation, farm productivity and economics," *Sustainability*, vol. 9, no. 8, p. 1339, 2017, doi: 10.3390/su9081339.
- [28] J. Su, X. Zhu, S. Li, and W. H. Chen, "AI meets UAVs: A survey on AI empowered UAV perception systems for precision agriculture," *Neurocomputing*, vol. 518, pp. 242–270, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.neucom.2022.11.020.
- [29] A. Degraeve et al., "Deep learning and computer vision in plant disease detection: A comprehensive review of techniques, models, and trends in precision agriculture," *Artif. Intell. Rev.*, vol. 58, no. 5, 2025, doi: 10.1007/s10462-024-11100-x.
- [30] M. A. Ferrag et al., "Security and privacy for green IoT-based agriculture: Review, blockchain solutions, and challenges," *IEEE Access*, vol. 8, pp. 32031–32053, 2020, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2020.2973178.

Evaluate the effect of organic production methods on seedlings of spinach beet(*Beta vulgaris* var. *bengalensis*) and Cost analysis of enrich compost

Lokesh Kumar¹, Lakshya¹, Ruksana³

¹School of Agriculture Science & Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, 151001

* Correspondence:- lk08684@gmail.com

Abstract

A field experiment was conducted at the Vegetable Experimental Field, Department of Horticulture, Lovely Professional University, Phagwara, Punjab during the Rabi season of 2021–22 to evaluate the effect of different organic production methods on seedling growth of spinach beet (*Beta vulgaris* L.). The experiment was laid out in a Randomized Block Design (RBD) with ten treatment combinations replicated three times. The treatments consisted of different organic nutrient sources including mineral enriched compost (rock phosphate), microbial enriched compost (NPK biofertilizers and biopesticides), vermicompost, farmyard manure (FYM), recommended fertilizer dose (RDF), and control (no treatment). The results revealed significant variation among treatments for seedling growth parameters. The highest seedling emergence (90.13%), root length (9.21 cm), shoot length (6.43 cm) and seedling vigour index (1401.65) were recorded in the treatment receiving combined application of mineral enriched compost and microbial enriched compost @ 5 t ha⁻¹. In contrast, the RDF treatment and control recorded the lowest values for most of the seedling parameters. The improved performance of enriched compost treatments may be attributed to enhanced nutrient availability, improved microbial activity and better soil physical properties. Economic analysis of enriched compost production indicated that the total cost of production per pit was ₹3335, while the gross return obtained per pit was ₹5000 based on the market price of ₹40 per kg of compost. The benefit–cost ratio (B:C) of compost production was calculated as 1.49:1, indicating that enriched compost production is economically viable. The findings of the study suggest that application of mineral and microbial enriched compost can significantly improve seedling growth and vigour of spinach beet while contributing to sustainable and eco-friendly vegetable production systems.

Keywords: Spinach beet, enriched compost, biofertilizers, organic nutrient management.

1.INTRODUCTION

Spinach beet (*Beta vulgaris* var. *bengalensis*., 2n = 2x = 18), commonly known as Indian spinach or Palak, is an important leafy vegetable belonging to the family Chenopodiaceae and genus Beta.

It is believed to have originated in the Indo-Chinese region and has been cultivated in India since ancient times [14]. Spinach beet is widely grown for its tender, succulent leaves which are consumed as a nutritious green vegetable. The crop is closely related to other members of the *Beta vulgaris* species complex such as beetroot, sugar beet, and Swiss chard, all of which are derived from the wild ancestor *Beta vulgaris* var. *maritima* (sea beet). Spinach beet is highly valued due to its high nutritional content, particularly vitamins, minerals and antioxidants. The leaves are rich in iron, calcium, phosphorus, vitamins A, C and folic acid, making it an important component of a balanced human diet [10]. Due to its short duration, rapid growth and high productivity, spinach beet plays an important role in improving nutritional security and providing income to vegetable growers. Globally, spinach is an important leafy vegetable crop cultivated in many temperate and subtropical regions. According to FAO statistics, the global production of spinach reached 26.3 million tonnes, with China contributing nearly 90% of the total production [2,6]. In India, spinach beet is widely cultivated during the Rabi season, particularly in northern states such as Punjab, Haryana and Uttar Pradesh due to favourable climatic conditions.

In recent decades, intensive agriculture with excessive use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides has resulted in deterioration of soil health, nutrient imbalance and environmental pollution. Continuous application of synthetic fertilizers often leads to decline in soil organic matter, microbial activity and soil fertility, which ultimately affects crop productivity and sustainability [13]. Therefore, there is increasing interest in adopting organic and sustainable nutrient management practices for maintaining soil fertility and improving crop production. Organic nutrient sources such as farmyard manure (FYM), vermicompost, enriched compost and biofertilizers play a crucial role in improving soil physical, chemical and biological properties. These organic amendments enhance soil structure, water holding capacity, microbial activity and nutrient availability, thereby promoting better plant growth and yield [11]. Biofertilizers containing beneficial microorganisms such as nitrogen-fixing bacteria, phosphate-solubilizing bacteria and potassium-solubilizing bacteria help in improving nutrient cycling and increasing nutrient availability to plants [19]. Among various organic amendments, enriched compost has gained significant attention due to its ability to supply essential nutrients along with beneficial microorganisms. Enrichment of compost with mineral sources such as rock phosphate and microbial inoculants enhances nutrient availability and improves soil fertility [9]. The application of enriched compost not only improves plant growth but also contributes to sustainable agriculture by reducing dependence on chemical fertilizers.

Therefore, the use of enriched compost and other organic nutrient sources can be an effective strategy for improving seedling establishment and early growth of spinach beet while maintaining soil health.

2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

The present study was carried out during Rabi season of 2021-22 at Vegetable Experimental Field of Department of horticulture, Lovely professional university, Phagwara, Punjab, using one variety of spinach beet “Harit Shobha” with a spacing of 30 cm apart in rows and later thinned to

10 cm spacing between plants within a row experimented in Randomized Block Design with three replications. The treatment details are as below:

T₁= RDF 100% (85:30:0 N: P: K kg/ha) + FYM (10 tonnes/ha)

T₂= RDF 50% + FYM

T₃= FYM (10 tonnes/ha)

T₄= Mineral (Rock Phosphate) enriched compost (5 tonnes/ha)

T₅= Microbial (N-fixing, PSB, KSB, & *Trichoderma*, *pseudomonas*) Enriched Compost (5 tonnes/ha)

T₆= Vermicompost (5 tonnes/ha)

T₇= 50% Mineral enriched compost + 50% Microbial Enriched Compost

T₈= 75% Mineral enriched compost + 25% Microbial enriched compost

T₉= 25% Mineral enriched compost + 75% Microbial enriched compost

T₁₀= Control

3.OBSERVATIONS RECORDED

[1] *Seedling Emergence (%)*

The emergence percentage was calculated by dividing the number of emerged seedlings by the number of seeds planted for each seed lot and multiplying the product by 100.

[2] *Seedling root length (cm)*

From the germination test, ten normal seedlings were selected randomly in each treatment from each replication on 60th day. The root length was measured from the tip of the primary root to hypocotyl and mean root length was expressed in centimetre.

[3] *Seedling Shoot Length (cm)*

From the germination test, ten normal seedlings were selected randomly in each treatment from each replication on 20th day. The shoot length was measured from the base of the primary leaf to hypocotyl and mean shoot length was expressed in centimetre.

[4] *Seedling Vigour Index*

The seedling vigour index was calculated by using the formula suggested by Abdul-Baki and Anderson (1973).

Seedling vigour index = Germination (%) x Total seedling length (cm)

The growth observations were recorded on seedling parameters like seedling emergence, seedling root length (cm), seedling shoot length (cm) and seedling vigour Index. Seedling emergence per cent was recorded at 20 DAS while seedling root length, seedling shoot length and vigour index was recorded at 60 DAS. Data was analyzed as per standard statistical procedures (Gomez and Gomez, 1984).

4.RESULTS & DISCUSSION

The findings of the present study as well as relevant discussion have been summarized under following headings:

A. *Seedling Parameters*

1). *Seedling emergence (%)*

The data presented in Table 1 revealed significant differences among the treatments with respect to seedling emergence percentage. The highest seedling emergence (90.13%) was recorded in treatment T₅ (Microbial enriched compost @ 5 t ha⁻¹), followed by T₇ (89.66%), whereas the lowest emergence percentage (78.47%) was observed in T₁₀ (Control). The increased emergence percentage in microbial enriched compost treatments might be attributed to enhanced microbial activity and improved nutrient availability in the soil. The presence of beneficial microorganisms such as nitrogen-fixing bacteria, phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (PSB), potassium-solubilizing bacteria (KSB), Trichoderma, and Pseudomonas helps in improving seed germination by promoting nutrient mineralization and suppressing soil-borne pathogens. These microorganisms enhance root establishment and early seedling growth, leading to better emergence. Improvement in germination and seedling establishment in spinach and other leafy vegetables due to application of organic manures and biofertilizers[8];[9]. Likewise, the microbial inoculants significantly improve soil biological activity and enhance germination and early plant growth [19].

2) Seedling root length (cm)

Significant variation among treatments was observed for seedling root length. The maximum root length (9.21 cm) was recorded in T₇ (50% mineral enriched compost + 50% microbial enriched compost), followed by T₆ (vermicompost @ 5 t ha⁻¹) with 7.43 cm, while the minimum root length (4.22 cm) was observed in T₂ (RDF 50% + FYM). The superior performance of treatment T₇ may be attributed to the synergistic effect of mineral enriched compost and microbial enriched compost. Rock phosphate provides a slow and steady supply of phosphorus, which plays an important role in root development, while beneficial microorganisms enhance nutrient solubilization and availability in the rhizosphere. The application of organic amendments improves soil structure, aeration, microbial activity and water holding capacity, which ultimately promotes better root growth. Similar results were found due to enriched compost has significantly improved root development and soil microbial activity in vegetable crops [16];[13].

3) Seedling shoot length (cm)

Seedling shoot length also showed significant variation among the treatments. The highest shoot length (6.43 cm) was recorded in T₇, followed by T₉ (6.31 cm), whereas the lowest shoot length (4.22 cm) was recorded in T₁₀ (control). The improved shoot growth observed under enriched compost treatments could be attributed to better availability of essential nutrients and improved soil physical properties. Organic amendments improve nutrient uptake and stimulate plant growth by enhancing microbial activity and releasing growth-promoting substances. Furthermore, microbial enriched compost enhances nutrient cycling and availability of nitrogen and phosphorus, which play a crucial role in vegetative growth. Similar results were founded because of organic nutrient sources significantly improved plant growth and biomass production in leafy vegetables [12]; [4].

4) Seedling vigour Index

Seedling vigour index is an important indicator of seedling health and establishment. The data revealed that the highest vigour index (1401.65) was recorded in T₇, followed by T₆ (1220.73), while the lowest value (841.19) was observed in T₁₀ (control). The increased vigour index under

enriched compost treatments may be attributed to the combined effects of improved nutrient availability, enhanced microbial activity and better soil physical conditions. Enriched compost provides a balanced supply of macro and micronutrients along with beneficial microorganisms that stimulate root and shoot growth. Additionally, vermicompost and microbial compost contain plant growth regulators such as auxins, cytokinins and gibberellins, which further enhance seedling vigour. These results are in agreed due to organic amendments and vermicompost significantly improved seedling vigour and plant growth due to increased microbial activity and nutrient availability[15];[11].

5.ECONOMICS OF ENRICHED COMPOST

The economics involved in production and use of enriched compost (Mineral + Microbial) was evaluated (Table 1).

The economic analysis was done considering:

4. Standard size of the pit: 3 m (length) $\times$ 2 m (breadth) $\times$ 1 m (depth)
5. Total amount of substrate accommodated in one pit: 330 kg
6. PSN compost to be generated from one pit: 125kg (considering 50% recovery)
7. State approved rate of improved compost: Rs. 60 kg⁻¹

6.DISCUSSION

The results of the present study clearly demonstrate the beneficial effects of enriched compost and organic nutrient sources on seedling emergence and growth parameters of spinach beet. Organic amendments such as vermicompost, FYM and enriched compost improve soil physical, chemical and biological properties, thereby enhancing plant growth and productivity. The improved seedling emergence and growth observed under microbial enriched compost treatments may be attributed to increased microbial population and activity in the soil. Beneficial microorganisms enhance nutrient mineralization and solubilization, making essential nutrients readily available for plant uptake. Moreover, microorganisms such as *Trichoderma* and *Pseudomonas* suppress soil-borne pathogens and improve plant health. Enriched compost also improves soil organic matter content, soil structure, aeration and water holding capacity, which are essential for proper root growth and nutrient uptake. The integration of mineral enriched compost with microbial enriched compost further enhances nutrient availability and microbial activity, resulting in improved plant growth and seedling vigour. These findings are consistent due to enriched compost significantly improves soil fertility, microbial activity and crop productivity; also organic nutrient management practices improve plant growth and soil health in vegetable production systems [4];[12];[16].

Here the cost of compost production after including labour and material charges is 3335 Rs. and according to market price of compost is 40 Rs. per kg and the recovery of compost from one pit is 125 kg (50%) so the gross return is 5000 Rs. from per pit. Now the benefit cost ratio of compost production from per pit is 1.49:1 and ratio increase in next year compost production due to the pit making charges removed from total cost. Thus, the application of enriched compost can be considered an effective and sustainable approach for improving seedling growth and soil fertility in spinach beet cultivation while reducing dependency on chemical fertilizers.

Fig. 1 Evaluate the effect of organic production methods on seedling emergence of spinach beet.

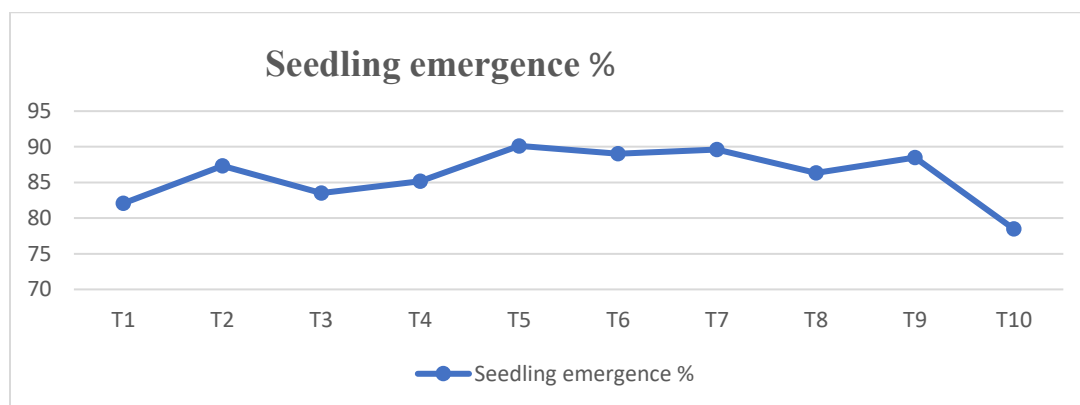


Fig. 2 Evaluate the effect of organic production methods on seedling Root length of spinach beet.

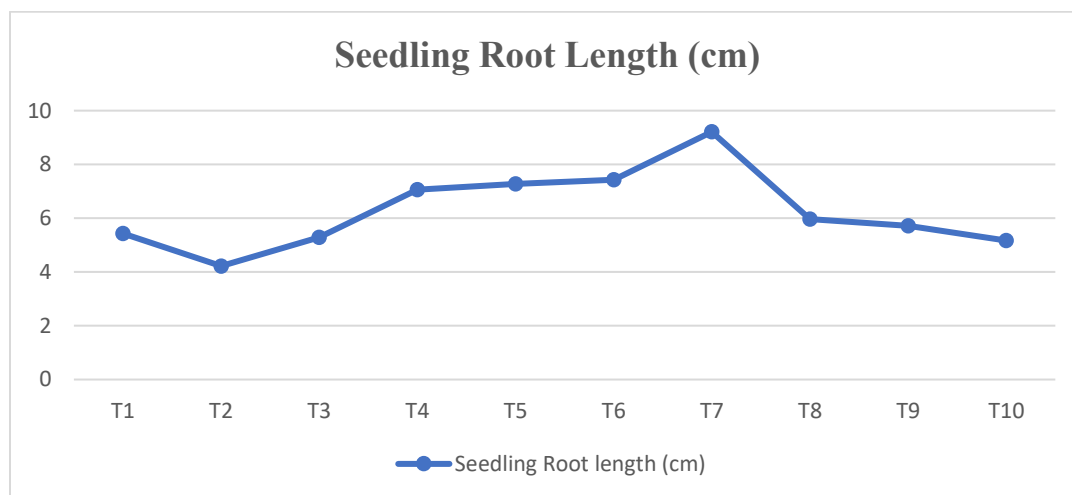


Fig. 3 Evaluate the effect of organic production methods on seedling Shoot length of spinach beet.

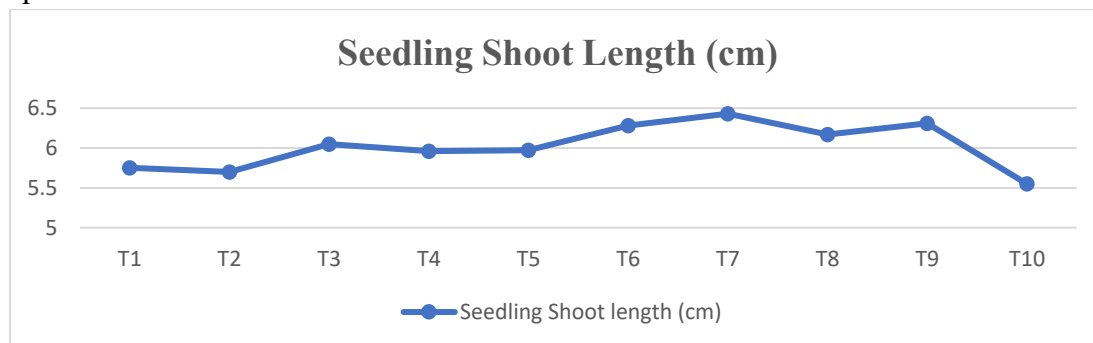


Fig. 4 Evaluate the effect of organic production methods on seedling Vigour index of spinach beet.

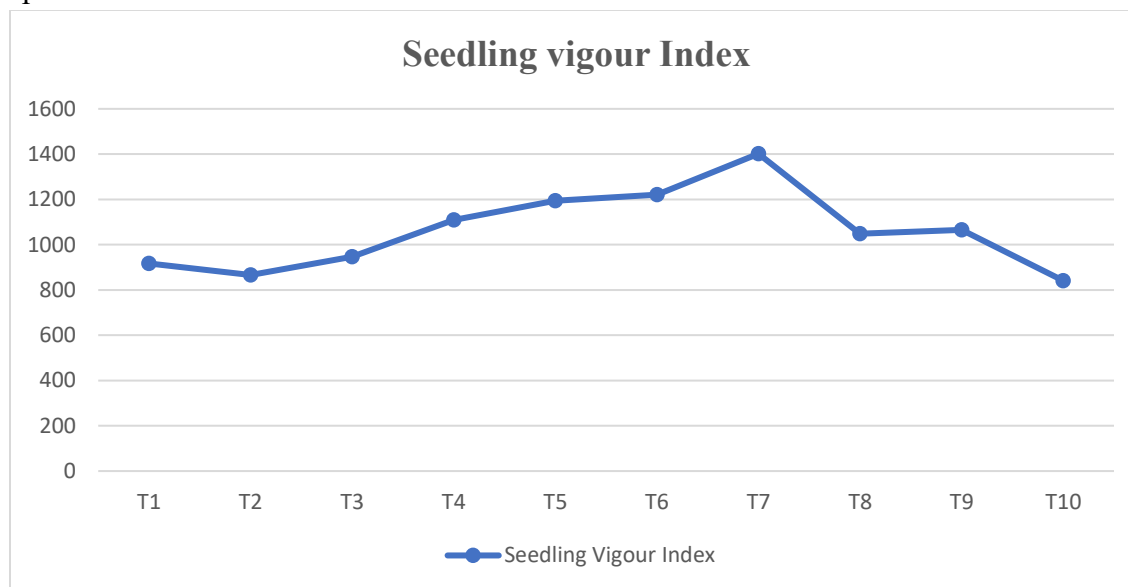


Table 1: - Economic evolution of enriched compost (Mineral + Microbial)

Cost Items	Rate (Rs. Per Unit Item)	Amount (Rs)
A. Labour charge		
1. Pit making (3 m × 2 m × 1 m size)	1 man-day at Rs. 300	300
2. Substrate collection (3.3 quintals)	1 man-day at Rs. 300	300
3. Substrate chopping and mixing	½ man-day at Rs. 200	200
4. Slurry making and pit filling	½ man-day at Rs. 200	200
5. Substrate turning and watering (7 times during the whole composting period)	3 men-day altogether at Rs. 300	900
6. Harvesting, drying, sieving and packaging	1 man-day at Rs. 300	300
B. Material cost		
1. Rock phosphate (17 kg)	Rs. 40 Per kg	680
2. Bio Fertilizer (N, P, K solubilizing)	Rs. 80 Per kg	120
3. Bio pesticide (Trichoderma, Pseudomonas)	Rs. 300 Per kg	300
4. Cowdung/poultry manure/pig manure (35 kg)	Rs. 1.0 Per kg	35
Total cost (C)		3335
Benefits (B)		
Approved rate of compost	Rs. 40 per kg	5000
Benefit-cost ratio		1.49:1

References

1. Abdul-Baki, A. A., & Anderson, J. D. (1973). Vigour determination in soybean seeds by multiple criteria. *Crop Science*, 13(6), 630–633. <https://doi.org/10.2135/cropsci1973.0011183X001300060013x>
2. Anonymous. (2018). FAOSTAT statistical database. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. <http://www.fao.org/faostat/>
3. Blay, E. T., Danquah, E. Y., Ofosu-Anim, J., & Ntummy, J. K. (2002). Effect of poultry manure on the yield of shallot. *Advances in Horticultural Science*, 16(1), 13–16.
4. Choudhary, M., Yadav, B. L., & Choudhary, R. (2020). Effect of organic nutrient sources on growth and yield of leafy vegetables. *International Journal of Chemical Studies*, 8(3), 1234–1238.
5. Edwards, C. A., Domínguez, J., & Arancon, N. Q. (2004). The influence of vermicomposts on plant growth and pest incidence. In *Soil zoology for sustainable development in the 21st century* (pp. 397–420).
6. FAO. (2022). FAOSTAT statistical database. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. <https://www.fao.org/faostat/>
7. Gomez, K. A., & Gomez, A. A. (1984). *Statistical procedures for agricultural research* (2nd ed.). John Wiley & Sons.
8. Jabeen, A., Narayan, S., Hussain, K., Khan, F. A., Ahmad, A., & Mir, S. A. (2017). Organic production of spinach beet using manures and biofertilizers. *Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry*, 6(6), 10–13.
9. Kumar, S., & Singh, R. (2020). Effect of enriched compost on soil fertility and crop productivity. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 43(12), 1801–1812.
10. Kumar, V., Sharma, A., & Singh, J. (2020). Nutritional composition and health benefits of spinach beet. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis*, 88, 103404.
11. Lazcano, C., & Domínguez, J. (2018). The use of vermicompost in sustainable agriculture. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*, 38(1), 1–23.
12. Mahmood, F., Khan, I., Ashraf, U., Shahzad, T., Hussain, S., Shahid, M., & Ullah, S. (2017). Effects of organic and inorganic manures on growth and yield of crops. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 40(14), 2090–2103.
13. Meena, A. L., Karwal, M., Raghavendra, K. J., & Kumari, P. (2021). Enriched composting: A cost-effective technology for better soil health and crop productivity. *Just Agriculture*, 1(9), 1–10.
14. Nath, P. (1976). Origin and taxonomy of vegetable crops. *Vegetable Crops*, 3(3), 246–250.
15. Ravindran, B., Wong, J. W. C., Selvam, A., & Sekaran, G. (2021). Influence of vermicompost on plant growth and soil microbial activity. *Environmental Research*, 192, 110332.
16. Sarkar, S., Singh, S. R., & Singh, R. P. (2018). Effect of enriched compost on soil properties and crop productivity. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 88(5), 715–720.
17. Sarma, B., & Gogoi, N. (2015). Germination and seedling growth of okra as influenced by organic amendments. *Cogent Food & Agriculture*, 1(1), 1–9.
18. Sharma, J., & Agarwal, S. (2014). Impact of organic fertilizers on growth, yield and quality of

spinach beet. Indian Journal of Plant Sciences, 3(3), 37–43.
19. Yadav, R. K., Meena, M. L., & Meena, B. L. (2019). Role of biofertilizers in sustainable agriculture. International Journal of Current Microbiology and Applied Sciences, 8(3), 192–200.

Impact of Plant Spacing on Growth and Yield of Different Potato Varieties

Navdeep Singh Brar

School of Agriculture, Baba Farid College of Engineering and Technology, Bathinda, India Pin Code: 1512001

Email ID:navdeep.brar50@gmail.com

Abstract

The research was conducted at the Farm of School of Agriculture, Baba Farid Group of Institutes, Bathinda (Punjab) using a Split plot Design with three replications Four varieties Cardinal, Lady Rostte, Diamant and Kufri Pukhraj with four spacing 60×10 cm, 60×15 cm, 60×20 cm and 60×25 cm was trailed in the research. The maximum significant haulm yield 140.56 q/ha in Lady Rosetta variety and number of tubers per 10.33 plant were recorded at 60×20 cm plant to plant spacing in cardinal variety was noticed during research trail. The indicated value shows that the highest yield per plant 433.33 gm. was recorded at 60×20 cm and 60×25 cm plant spacing in Kufri Pukhraj variety. The spacing 60× 20 cm and 60× 25 cm in Kufri Pukhraj variety significantly shows maximum total tuber yield 259.98 and 259.80 q/ha respectively. It was concluded that Kufri Pukhraj variety with spacing 60× 20 cm shows the best result in this research as comparison to other varieties and spacing.

Keywords: Variety, potato, spacing, yield and tubers

1 Introduction

An annual herbaceous perennial tuber vegetable crop, potato (*Solanum tuberosum* subs. *Tuberosum* L.) are grown mainly for its starchy tuber. This crop is widely farmed in over 125 countries and is a vital source of nutrition for millions of people. The relatively high carbohydrate and low fat content of potato makes it an excellent energy source for human consumption [5]. Lack of well-adapted cultivars, illnesses, insect pests, poor storage, and the unavailability and high cost of seed tubers are some of the production issues that contribute to such low yields [2]. Ref. [4] one of the most crucial methods for managing potato production is maximizing plant density since it influences crop quality, yield, plant development, and seed cost. Crop growth, development and tuberization are significantly influenced by spacing, or how plants are arranged inside a specific area. The production of tuber crops depends heavily on intra-row spacing, which is the organization of plant distances between and within rows. While narrower rows and plant spacing increase inter- and intra-plant competition, resulting in poor growth and development and dry matter accumulation that leads to poor yield, suboptimal planting geometry, wider rows, and plant spacing result in low populations that fail to compensate for the yield obtained in an ideal plant stand [11]. Contrarily, variety selection is an essential component of tuber production that has a direct impact on output and performance. Plant spacing causes differences in the growth habits,

tuberization patterns, and environmental adaptation of different crop kinds. According to research [12], the 'Desiree' potato variety produced the most tubers overall (62.363 t/ha) when planted at 60 x 15 cm intervals. This was followed by a yield of 41.136 t/ha when planted at 60 x 30 cm intervals. Three genotypes (CIP 440015, CIP 440267, and Local White) and four crop geometries (60cm×25 cm, 60cm×30 cm, 70cm×25 cm, and 70cm×30 cm) were investigated [3] for their influence on various yield characteristics of tuberous root crops in Nepal. In terms of marketable tuberous root weight per plant, tuberous root diameter, shoot fresh weight, and tuberous root production per plant, they discovered that the local white genotype and the 70cm×30cm plant spacing outperformed the others. In an experiment involving three kinds (Kufri Ashoka, Kufri Jyoti, and Kufri Surya), [10] discovered that Kufri Ashoka yielded the highest amount of commercial tubers. By providing an extensive analysis of the standardization of spacing and variety selection for improved tuber production, this research article seeks to close this important knowledge gap.

2 Materials and Methods

The study was conducted at the Farm of School of Agriculture, Baba Farid Group of Institutes, Bathinda (Punjab) under the "Impact of plant spacing on growth and yield of different potato varieties," with three replication by using a split plot design. The four potato varieties i.e. Cardinal, Lady Rostte, Diamant, and Kufri Pukhraj was used as main treatments which was collected from CPRI in Jalandhar (Pb) and four plant-to-plant spacings (60×10 cm, 60×15 cm, 60×20 cm and 60×25 cm) was sub treatments in the research trial. The potato tubers were sown on October 14, 2024. Throughout the experiment, five randomly selected plants were measured for plant height (cm), number of stems, number of tubers per plant, yield per plant (gm), tuber yield per hectare (q/ha), and haulm yield per hectare (q/ha). An average was then calculated. The experimental field data was analyzed separately for every trial for different growth traits and yield attributes using OPSTAT (Statistical Software Package for Agricultural Research Workers) [13]. The important difference at the 5% level of implication was calculated in order to equalize the mean difference.

3 Results and Discussion

Interaction of plant spacing and varieties highly significantly ($P < 0.05$) affected in potato. The maximum plant height at harvest 69.33 cm was measured for the combination of 60× 20 cm plant to plant spacing with Lady Rosetta variety at par 60× 25 cm plant to plant spacing with plant height 66.33 cm in same variety. Ref. [15], the tallest plants were found to be spaced 70 cm by 20 cm, which was statistically comparable to a spacing of 60 cm by 20 cm.

The spacing 60× 20 cm with variety Rosetta significantly increased number of stems 4.73 per plant which was followed by plant spacing 60× 20 cm, 60× 25 cm with combination of varieties Diamant and Rosetta with number of stems 4.32 and 4.34 per plant respectively. Different types varieties had an impact on the average number of leaves, branches, and stem girth, as well as the number of days to germination and plant height [6],[14].

Table I: Impact of Plant Spacing on Plant Height at Harvest of Different Potato Varieties.

Sub treatments Spacing	Main treatments Varieties				Mean (Spacing)
	Cardinal	Diamant	Lady Rosetta	Kufri Pukhraj	
60×10 cm	46.00	53.33	61.66	32.33	48.33
60×15 cm	48.66	54.00	66.00	34.33	50.75
60×20 cm	53.66	59.00	69.33	37.00	54.75
60×25 cm	50.00	55.33	66.33	34.00	51.41
Mean (Varieties)	49.58	55.41	65.83	34.41	

Treatments	C.D. (0.5%)
Spacing	3.97
Varieties	0.94
Interaction (Spacing × Varieties)	4.79

Table II: Impact of Plant Spacing on Number of Stems per Plant of Different Potato Varieties.

Sub treatments Spacing	Main treatments Varieties				Mean (Spacing)
	Cardinal	Diamant	Lady Rosetta	Kufri Pukhraj	
60×10 cm	2.17	3.80	4.25	2.34	3.14
60×15 cm	2.29	3.94	4.48	3.31	3.50
60×20 cm	2.82	4.32	4.73	3.49	3.84
60×25 cm	2.49	4.09	4.34	3.57	3.62
Mean (Varieties)	2.44	4.038	4.45	3.18	

Treatments	C.D. (0.5%)
Spacing	0.18
Varieties	0.18
Interaction (Spacing × Varieties)	0.36

The plant to plant spacing 60× 20 cm and Cardinal variety significantly increased number of tubers per 10.33 plant at par with number of tubers per 9.66, 8.66 plant with combination of plant to plant spacing 60× 15 cm and 60× 20 cm in cardinal and Kufri Pukhraj variety respectively. There were also notable variations in tuber counts between cultivars [6]. The variation is caused by the difference in spacing since more space is available for each plant to grow and develop when plant density is reduced, which results in the production of more tubers. The total number of tubers/plant in an experiment [7] showed that CIP-5 generated the most tubers/plant (31.70 tuber), which was statistically equivalent to CIP-9 (25.30 tuber).

The indicated value shows that the highest yield per plant 433.33 gm was recorded at 20 cm and 25 cm plant spacing in Kufri Pukhraj variety at par by 418.66 gm yield per plant at 20 cm plant spacing. . Ref. [3] examined the local white genotype and the 70cm×30 cm plant spacing and found maximum marketable tuberous root weight per plant, tuberous root diameter, shoot fresh weight, and tuberous root yield per plant.

The plant to plant spacing 60× 20 cm with Rosetta variety significantly increased haulm yield 140.56 q/ha at par with haulm yield 136.67, 133.44 q/ha with combination of plant to plant spacing 60× 25 cm and 60× 15 in Rosetta variety. Ref. [9], plant spacing has a substantial impact on haulm growth. At greater planting densities (e.g., 90 × 15 cm), less leaf area is produced than at wider spacing (e.g., 90 × 30 cm). This implies that because there is less rivalry for resources, broader spacing can improve haulm development.

Table III: Impact of Plant Spacing on Number of Tubers per Plant of Different Potato Varieties.

Sub treatments Spacing	Main treatments Varieties				Mean (Spacing)
	Cardinal	Diamant	Lady Rosetta	Kufri Pukhraj	
60×10 cm	4.66	2.66	3.66	5.00	4.00
60×15 cm	9.66	4.00	4.33	6.66	6.16
60×20 cm	10.33	5.66	5.66	8.66	7.58
60×25 cm	7.66	5.00	5.00	5.33	5.75
Mean (Varieties)	8.08	4.33	4.66	6.41	

Treatments	C.D. (0.5%)
Spacing	NS
Varieties	1.46
Interaction (Spacing × Varieties)	2.00

The plant to plant spacing 60× 20 cm, 60× 25 cm and Kufri Pukhraj variety significantly increased total tuber yield 259.98 and 259.80 q/ha respectively at par with total tuber yield 250.80 q/ha with combination of plant to plant spacing 60× 20 cm in cardinal variety. Ref. [1] find out that the results

of the study revealed that the highest plant density of 6.00 plants m⁻² (60 cm x 30 cm) despite decreasing the yield per plant, resulted in the production of the highest tuber yields ha. Ref. [8] also conducted a study and showed that lowering the intra-row spacing from 20 cm to 15 cm significantly increased the yield and quantity of seed grade size (< 75g) tubers as well as the overall number of tubers.

Table IV: Impact of Plant Spacing on Yield per Plant (gm) of Different Potato Varieties.

Sub treatments Spacing	Main treatments Varieties				Mean (Spacing)
	Cardinal	Diamant	Lady Rosetta	Kufri Pukhraj	
60×10 cm	184.66	185.33	163.33	302.64	209.00
60×15 cm	323.33	214.66	183.33	368.00	272.33
60×20 cm	418.66	263.33	274.00	433.30	347.32
60×25 cm	193.33	268.00	181.33	433.33	269.99
Mean (Varieties)	280.00	232.83	200.50	384.33	

Treatments	C.D. (0.5%)
Spacing	58.40
Varieties	55.40
Interaction (Spacing × Varieties)	20.00

Potato cultivars propagated by shoot tip cutting at 50 cm inter-row spacing and 15 cm intra-row spacing exhibit a notable yield increment, which is 57.3% more seed tuber yield than seed tuber propagation (control) [16]. Ref. [11] carried out a field experiment with three intra-row spacings (20, 30, and 40 cm) and four inter-row spacings (60, 80, 100, and 120 cm) were among the treatments and find that a 20 cm intra-row spacing boosts marketable fruit, while a 60 cm inter-row spacing resulted in a larger yield with two varieties, Kufri Megha and Kufri Giriraj.

Table V: Impact of Plant Spacing on Haulm Yield (q/ha) of Different Potato Varieties.

Sub treatments Spacing	Main treatments Varieties				
	Cardinal	Diamant	Lady Rosetta	Kufri Pukhraj	Mean (Spacing)
60×10 cm	68.23	80.67	112.35	73.74	83.74
60×15 cm	74.34	86.45	133.44	75.76	92.49
60×20 cm	77.35	96.35	140.56	79.57	98.45
60×25 cm	75.36	88.35	136.67	74.56	93.73
Mean (Varieties)	73.82	87.95	130.75	75.90	

Treatments	C.D. (0.5%)
Spacing	4.70
Varieties	35.72
Interaction (Spacing × Varieties)	12.10

Table VI: Impact of Plant Spacing on Total Tuber Yield (q/ha) of Different Potato Varieties.

Sub treatments Spacing	Main treatments Varieties				
	Cardinal	Diamant	Lady Rosetta	Kufri Pukhraj	Mean (Spacing)
60×10 cm	110.79	193.99	97.99	181.58	146.08
60×15 cm	193.99	128.4	109.8	220.8	163.24
60×20 cm	250.80	157.80	164.40	259.98	208.24
60×25 cm	115.90	160.00	108.60	259.80	161.07
Mean (Varieties)	167.87	160.04	120.04	230.54	

Treatments	C.D. (0.5%)
Spacing	18.70
Varieties	35.72
Interaction (Spacing × Varieties)	14.10

4 Conclusion

It was concluded that plant to plant had significant effect on the growth and yield of different potato varieties. Highest yield could be obtained at 60× 20 cm plant spacing relative to other plant

to plant spacing. The best Kufri Pukhraj variety gave highest total tuber yield 230.54 q/ha in research experiment as compare to other varieties. Therefore integration of using improved Kufri Pukhraj variety and proper plant to plant spacing 60× 20 cm, 60× 25 cm can enhance overall potato tuber yield 259.98 q/ha.

References

- [1] S. Badge, G. B. Ganvir, and M. Raut, “Effect of different spacing on growth and yield of sweet potato,” *Inter. J. Curr. Micro. App. Sci.*, vol. 10, no. 2, pp. 643–647, 2021.
- [2] T. T. Bereke, “The utilization of true potato seed (TPS) as an alternative method of potato production,” Ph.D. thesis, School of Graduate Studies, Wageningen Univ., the Netherlands, 1994.
- [3] P. Bhattarai, K. T. Mishra, D. M. Gautam, and A. S. Kumar, “Effect of crop geometry on growth, yield and quality of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* L.) genotypes,” *Turk J. Food Agric. Sci.*, vol. 10, no. 8, pp. 1532–1541, 2022.
- [4] A. J. Bussan, P. D. Mitchell, and M. J. Drilias, “Evaluation of effect of density on potato yield and tuber size distribution,” *Crop Sci.*, vol. 47, pp. 2462–2472, 2007.
- [5] B. B. Dean, *Managing the potato production system*. USA: Food Products Press, 1994, 61 p.
- [6] E. T. Eaton, A. K. Azad, H. Kabir, and A. B. Siddiq, “Evolution of six modern varieties of potatoes for yield, plant growth parameters and resistance to insects and diseases,” *Agric. Sci.*, vol. 8, no. 11, pp. 1315–1326, 2017.
- [7] A. Khan, “Evaluation of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) genotypes for yield and phenotypic quality traits under subtropical climate,” *Acade. J. Agri. Res.*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 079–085, 2019.
- [8] M. Mandal and S. K. Das, “Effect of intra row spacing, dates of haulm cutting and fertilizer dose on disease free quality seed tuber production of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) under new Alluvial Zone of West Bengal,” *J. Appl. Nat. Sci.*, vol. 12, no. 1, pp. 1–8, 2020.
- [9] R. Mangani, U. Mazarura, A. Tuarira, and A. Shayanowako, “Growth, yield and quality responses to plant spacing in Irish potato: A review,” *African J. Agric. Res.*, vol. 10, pp. 727–730, 2015.
- [10] A. Mishra, D. Ghosal, A. K. Mohanty, A. Mishra, and S. Subhalaxmi, “Impact of cutting and chemical treatments to seed potato on crop establishment and yield,” *J. Pharmacogn. Phytochem.*, vol. 10, no. 1, pp. 2526–2530, 2021.
- [11] N. Pandey, S. Kumar, and G. Singh, “Effect of planting geometry on growth and yield of mustard varieties,” *Inter. J. Farm Sci.*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 47–52, 2015.

- [12] M. Saifullah, A. Hakimullah, B. M. Khan, and A. Mudir, “Studying the effects of tuber size and spacing between plants on growth and yield of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.),” *J. Res. Appl. Sci. and Biotech.*, vol. 3, no. 1, pp. 129–132, 2024.
- [13] O. P. Sheoran, D. S. Tonk, L. S. Kaushik, R. C. Hasija, and R. S. Pannu, “Statistical software package for agricultural research workers,” in *Recent advances in information theory, statistics & computer applications*, D. S. Hooda and R. C. Hasija, Eds. Hisar, India: Dept. of Mathematics Statistics, CCS HAU, 1998, pp. 139–143.
- [14] K. Shrestha, S. K. Sah, R. Singh, and Y. N. Devkota, “Performance of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) varieties with and without straw-mulch at Shankharapur, Kathmandu, Nepal,” *J. Agric. Nat. Resour.*, vol. 3, no. 2, pp. 193–204, 2020.
- [15] T. R. P. Thakur and A. Sharma, “Growth and quality responses to plant spacing in potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) varieties,” *Int. J. Plant & Soil Sci.*, vol. 34, no. 21, pp. 1–14, 2022.
- [16] S. G. Yayeh, W. Mohammed, K. Woldetsadik, T. Bezu, Y. Dessalegn, and S. Asredie, “Effects of spacing on tuber yield and quality of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L) varieties propagated using shoot tip cuttings and seed tubers,” *Inter. J. Veg. Sci.*, vol. 31, no. 3, pp. 288–307, 2025.

Potential of Moringa Leaf Extract on Seed Priming and Yield of Cabbage: A Review

Ramandeep Kaur¹ and Sushil Kumar²
Guru kashi University,
ramandeepnmf@gmail.com

Abstract

Seed priming is widely recognized as an effective pre-sowing treatment that improves germination, seedling vigor, and crop productivity. In recent years, the use of plant-based biostimulants has gained considerable attention as sustainable alternatives to synthetic agrochemicals. Among these, *Moringa oleifera* leaf extract (MLE) has emerged as a promising natural growth enhancer due to its rich composition of vitamins, minerals, antioxidants, and plant growth hormones such as cytokinins. Cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var. *capitata*) is an economically important vegetable crop cultivated worldwide for its nutritional value. However, cabbage production is often constrained by poor seed germination, environmental stresses, and nutrient deficiencies. Seed priming with *Moringa* leaf extract has shown positive effects on germination rate, seedling vigor, plant growth, and yield attributes in several crops. The presence of bioactive compounds such as zeatin, ascorbic acid, phenolics, and essential nutrients contributes to the biostimulant potential of MLE. This review summarizes the concept of seed priming, biochemical composition of *Moringa* leaf extract, its physiological and biochemical effects on seed germination and plant growth, and its potential role in improving cabbage yield and quality. The review also highlights future research directions and the importance of integrating natural biostimulants into sustainable vegetable production systems.

Keywords— *Moringa oleifera*, seed priming, cabbage, biostimulant, sustainable agriculture, vegetable crops.

I. Introduction

Vegetables play an essential role in human nutrition as they provide vitamins, minerals, dietary fiber, and antioxidants. Among vegetable crops, cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var. *capitata*) is widely cultivated worldwide due to its nutritional value and adaptability to different climatic conditions. Cabbage is particularly rich in vitamin C, vitamin K, folate, and bioactive compounds that contribute to improved human health.

Despite its importance, cabbage production is frequently affected by several constraints including poor seed germination, unfavorable environmental conditions, nutrient deficiencies, and pest and disease pressure. These factors can reduce crop growth, productivity, and overall yield quality.

Seed quality plays a vital role in successful crop establishment. Rapid and uniform germination ensures healthy seedling growth, which ultimately contributes to higher crop productivity. In this context, seed priming has emerged as an effective technique to enhance germination performance and early plant growth [1].

Seed priming is a controlled hydration process in which seeds are soaked in water or solutions to initiate metabolic activities necessary for germination without allowing radicle emergence [5]. This treatment enables seeds to complete early germination processes before sowing, resulting in faster and more uniform emergence under field conditions.

Natural plant extracts have recently gained attention as eco-friendly alternatives to chemical growth regulators. Among these, *Moringa oleifera* has received considerable attention due to its exceptional nutritional and medicinal properties [8].

Moringa oleifera, commonly known as the drumstick tree or miracle tree, is a fast-growing plant native to South Asia but widely cultivated in tropical and subtropical regions. The leaves contain numerous beneficial compounds including vitamins, minerals, amino acids, antioxidants, and plant growth hormones [3].

Research studies have shown that *Moringa* leaf extract can stimulate plant growth, improve stress tolerance, and increase crop productivity. When used as a seed priming agent or foliar spray, MLE has demonstrated positive effects on crops such as wheat, maize, rice, and vegetables [4], [12].

Therefore, the present review aims to explore the potential role of *Moringa* leaf extract in seed priming and its possible contribution to improving cabbage yield and productivity.

II. Concept and Mechanism of Seed Priming

A. Definition of Seed Priming

Seed priming is a pre-sowing treatment in which seeds are partially hydrated to activate physiological processes necessary for germination while preventing radicle emergence. After priming, the seeds are dried back to their original moisture content before sowing[5].

This controlled hydration process allows seeds to initiate metabolic activities that facilitate rapid germination once they are placed in the soil.

B. Types of Seed Priming

Several seed priming techniques are commonly used in agriculture:

1. Hydropriming: It is the simplest and most widely used method of seed priming. In this technique, seeds are soaked in clean water for a specific period of time and then dried back to their original moisture content before sowing. The main objective of hydropriming is to initiate metabolic activities within the seed without allowing germination to proceed to radicle emergence.

During hydropriming, water enters the seed through the seed coat and activates several physiological processes such as enzyme synthesis, respiration, and mobilization of stored food reserves. These biochemical reactions prepare the seed for rapid germination once it is placed in the soil. As a result, hydroprimed seeds often exhibit faster and more uniform germination compared to untreated seeds..

2.Osmopriming – Osmopriming involves soaking seeds in osmotic solutions that have a controlled water potential. Common osmotic agents used in this technique include polyethylene glycol (PEG), mannitol, and other inert substances that regulate water uptake by the seeds.

The primary purpose of osmopriming is to allow gradual hydration of seeds while preventing rapid water absorption that could trigger radicle emergence. The osmotic solution creates a controlled environment in which metabolic processes associated with germination are activated but seed growth remains restricted.

3.Halopriming : It is a seed priming technique in which seeds are soaked in solutions containing inorganic salts such as potassium nitrate (KNO_3), sodium chloride (NaCl), calcium chloride (CaCl_2), or potassium chloride (KCl). These salt solutions influence seed metabolism and help regulate water uptake during the priming process.

The presence of salts during priming stimulates various physiological processes within the seed, including enzyme activation, improved nutrient uptake, and enhanced metabolic activity. Haloprimed seeds often show better germination under stress conditions such as salinity and drought.

.

4.Biopriming – Biopriming is an advanced seed treatment technique that combines seed hydration with the use of beneficial microorganisms or natural plant extracts. In this method, seeds are treated with biological agents such as plant growth–promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR), fungi, or plant-derived biostimulants.

The objective of biopriming is not only to enhance seed germination but also to improve plant health and resistance to diseases and environmental stresses. Beneficial microorganisms colonize

the seed surface and rhizosphere after sowing, promoting plant growth through mechanisms such as nitrogen fixation, nutrient solubilization, and production of plant growth hormones.

Plant extracts, including Moringa leaf extract, are also widely used in biopriming due to their rich content of vitamins, minerals, antioxidants, and natural growth regulators. These bioactive compounds stimulate metabolic processes in seeds, leading to improved germination, seedling vigor, and crop productivity.

Among these methods, biopriming using plant extracts such as Moringa leaf extract has gained considerable attention due to its eco-friendly nature and growth-promoting effects [4].

C. Physiological Mechanisms of Seed Priming

Seed priming enhances germination through several physiological mechanisms including:

- Activation of metabolic enzymes
- Repair of cellular structures
- Mobilization of stored nutrients
- Stabilization of cellular membranes
- Synthesis of proteins and nucleic acids

These physiological processes enable seeds to germinate faster and establish more vigorous seedlings under field conditions [1], [6].

II. Nutritional and Biochemical Composition of Moringa Leaf Extract

Moringa oleifera leaves are considered one of the most nutrient-rich plant materials. The leaves contain high concentrations of vitamins, minerals, amino acids, and antioxidants that contribute to their growth-promoting properties [8].

Major Components of Moringa Leaves

Vitamins

- A. Vitamin A
- B. Vitamin C
- C. Vitamin E
- D. B-complex vitamins

Minerals

- Calcium

- Potassium
- Magnesium
- Iron
- Zinc

Amino Acids

Moringa leaves contain several essential amino acids necessary for plant metabolic activities.

Antioxidants

- Flavonoids
- Phenolic compounds
- Ascorbic acid

Plant Growth Hormones

One of the most important compounds present in Moringa leaves is zeatin, a natural cytokinin that plays a crucial role in plant growth and development [9].

IV. Effects of Moringa Leaf Extract on Seed Germination

Seed germination involves a series of physiological and biochemical processes including water uptake, enzyme activation, and metabolic reorganization. Application of Moringa leaf extract during seed priming can enhance these processes.

Several studies have reported that MLE significantly improves germination parameters such as:

- Germination percentage
- Germination rate
- Root length
- Shoot length
- Seedling vigor index [10]

The improved germination performance is mainly attributed to the presence of plant growth regulators and antioxidants in Moringa leaves. These compounds stimulate enzymatic activities responsible for converting stored carbohydrates into soluble sugars required for seedling growth.

Additionally, antioxidants present in MLE protect seeds from oxidative damage during germination, thereby enhancing seedling survival and growth [9].

V. Influence of Moringa Leaf Extract on Plant Growth and Development

Moringa leaf extract has been widely reported to improve plant growth and development through several physiological mechanisms.

A. Photosynthesis Enhancement

MLE application increases chlorophyll content in plant leaves, which enhances photosynthetic efficiency and promotes biomass accumulation [12].

B. Nutrient Uptake

The mineral composition of Moringa leaves improves nutrient uptake and utilization in plants, leading to better plant development and productivity [13].

C. Root Development

MLE stimulates root growth, allowing plants to absorb water and nutrients more efficiently from the soil.

D. Stress Tolerance

Plants treated with Moringa leaf extract often exhibit improved tolerance to environmental stresses such as drought and salinity due to enhanced antioxidant activity [12].

VI. Potential Application of Moringa Leaf Extract in Cabbage Cultivation

Cabbage cultivation requires optimal plant growth and uniform head formation to achieve high yield and quality.

A. Improved Germination

Seed priming with MLE can improve germination rate and seedling vigor, resulting in better crop establishment.

B. Vegetative Growth Enhancement

MLE treatment may increase plant height, leaf number, and leaf area in cabbage plants.

C. Yield Improvement

Improved plant growth often results in higher yield attributes such as:

- Head weight

- Head diameter
- Marketable yield

D. Quality Improvement

MLE may enhance the nutritional quality of cabbage heads by increasing vitamin and antioxidant content [14].

VII. Role of Moringa Leaf Extract in Sustainable Agriculture

Sustainable agriculture aims to reduce dependence on chemical fertilizers and pesticides while maintaining crop productivity.

Plant-based biostimulants such as Moringa leaf extract provide several advantages:

- Environmentally friendly
- Biodegradable
- Cost-effective
- Safe for human health

The integration of MLE in crop production systems can contribute to sustainable vegetable production by reducing reliance on synthetic agrochemicals [4].

IX. Future Research Directions

Future studies should focus on:

- Determining optimal concentrations of MLE for seed priming
- Conducting field trials in different agro-climatic conditions
- Studying interactions between MLE and organic fertilizers
- Evaluating long-term impacts on soil health and crop productivity

Such research will help establish Moringa leaf extract as a reliable biostimulant for sustainable agriculture.

X. Conclusion

Moringa leaf extract represents a promising natural biostimulant that can enhance seed germination, plant growth, and crop productivity. The presence of vitamins, minerals, antioxidants, and plant growth hormones contributes to its beneficial effects on plant development.

Seed priming with MLE improves germination performance and seedling vigor, leading to better crop establishment. In cabbage cultivation, MLE application may improve vegetative growth, yield, and crop quality.

The integration of natural plant extracts such as Moringa leaf extract into crop production systems can support environmentally sustainable agriculture while reducing reliance on synthetic agrochemicals.

XI. References

- [1] M. Farooq, S. M. A. Basra, and B. A. Saleem, "Seed priming enhances germination and yield," *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*, 2009.
- [2] I. Afzal et al., "Seed priming improves seed performance," *Pakistan Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 2012.
- [3] L. J. Fuglie, *The Miracle Tree: Moringa oleifera*, CTA Publication, 2001.
- [4] A. Yasmeen et al., "Exploring the potential of Moringa leaf extract," *Crop and Environment*, 2013.
- [5] M. Ashraf and M. R. Foolad, "Pre-sowing seed treatments," *Advances in Agronomy*, 2005.
- [6] M. Jamil et al., "Role of seed priming in crop production," *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 2016.
- [7] W. Khan et al., "Plant growth regulators," *Journal of Plant Growth Regulation*, 2009.
- [8] F. Anwar et al., "Moringa oleifera: A food plant," *Phytotherapy Research*, 2007.
- [9] P. Siddhuraju and K. Becker, "Antioxidant properties of Moringa leaves," *Food Chemistry*, 2003.
- [10] C. Phiri and D. Mbewe, "Moringa extracts and seed germination," *African Journal of Biotechnology*, 2010.
- [11] Z. Ali et al., "Effect of Moringa leaf extract on plant growth," *Journal of Animal and Plant Sciences*, 2014.
- [12] M. M. Rady et al., "Moringa leaf extract improves plant growth," *Scientia Horticulturae*, 2015.
- [13] W. Nouman et al., "Potential of Moringa in crop production," *International Journal of Agriculture and Biology*, 2012.
- [14] A. G. Adebayo et al., "Vegetable crop response to plant extracts," *Asian Journal of Plant Sciences*, 2011.
- [15] L. Taiz and E. Zeiger, *Plant Physiology*, Sinauer Associates, 2015.
- [16] M. Price, *The Moringa Tree*, ECHO Publication, 2007.
- [17] H. P. S. Makkar and K. Becker, "Nutritional value of Moringa leaves," 1997.
- [18] M. Baloch et al., "Plant extracts and seed germination," *Pakistan Journal of Botany*, 2014.
- [19] M. Farooq et al., "Seed priming techniques," *Agronomy*, 2019.
- [20] A. Rashid et al., "Improving seed vigor through priming," *Pakistan Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 2008.

Effect of Climate Change for the Fruit Crops of Tropical, Sub-tropical and Temperate Fruit Crops.

Author

Raysahab¹, Wineet chawla², lakshay³

¹School of agriculture science and engineering
Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab technical, University, Bathinda

Abstract

Climate change has emerged as a major global concern, significantly influencing the productivity, quality, and sustainability Of fruit crops across tropical,sub-tropical,and temperate regions.Rising temperatures, altered rainfall patterns,Increased atmospheric CO₂ concentration,and a higher frequency of extreme climatic events such as droughts, heat waves, and frost have disrupted critical physiological and phenological processes in fruit crops. Tropical fruit crops are increasingly affected by heat stress, irregular flowering,moisture stress, and enhanced pest and disease incidence. Sub-tropical fruit crops experience erratic precipitation and temperature variability, leading to fluctuations in yield and fruit quality.Temperate fruit crops are particularly vulnerable due to reduced winter chilling, resulting in delayed and uneven flowering, poor fruit set, and declining productivity. Recent approaches to address these challenges emphasize climate-smart horticulture, development Of climate resilient and low-chill cultivars, precision water and nutrient management,protected cultivation,and the use Of digital decision-support tools.This review highlights recent advances in understanding the impacts Of climate change on fruit crops and discusses adaptive strategies to sustain fruit production under changing climatic conditions.

Keywords: Climate change, Fruit crops, Tropical fruits, Sub-tropical fruits, Temperate fruits, Climate smart horticulture, Adaptation strategies Introduction

INTRODUCTION

Climate change has emerged as one Of the most serious global challenges affecting agricultural productivity, food security, and environmental sustainability. The gradual increase in global mean temperature, altered precipitation patterns, rising atmospheric CO₂ concentration, and increased frequency Of extreme climatic events such as droughts, heat waves, floods, and frost have significantly influenced horticultural crop production worldwide

(IPCC, 2021). Fruit crops are particularly vulnerable to climate change because of their perennial nature, long juvenile phase, and specific climatic requirements for flowering, fruit set, growth, and quality development.

Fruit crops grown in tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate regions respond differently to climatic variability due to their distinct physiological and phenological characteristics. Tropical fruit crops such as mango, banana, papaya, and guava are highly sensitive to temperature rise and irregular rainfall, which can lead to erratic flowering, increased fruit drop, reduced yield, and deterioration in fruit quality (Sharma et al., 2020). In sub-tropical fruit crops including citrus, litchi, pomegranate, and fig, climate variability often results in moisture stress, abnormal flowering behavior, and fluctuations in productivity (Ray et al., 2022).

Temperate fruit crops such as apple, pear, peach, plum, and cherry are especially affected by global warming due to their dependence on adequate winter chilling for dormancy break and synchronized flowering. Rising winter temperatures have caused insufficient chill accumulation, leading to delayed and uneven flowering, poor fruit set, increased frost damage risk, and reduced fruit quality (Luedeling et al., 2019 and Dar et al., 2023). In many hill regions of India, climate warming has resulted in a gradual shift from traditional temperate fruit cultivation toward more climate-resilient sub-tropical and tropical fruit crops (Negi et al., 2020).

Recent research emphasizes climate-smart horticulture as a promising approach to mitigate the adverse effects of climate change on fruit crops. This approach includes the development of climate-resilient cultivars and rootstocks, precision irrigation and fertigation, canopy and microclimate management, protected cultivation, use of mulches and growth regulators, and application of digital tools such as climate modeling and decision-support systems (FAO, 2022 and Singh et al., 2024). Understanding the impact of climate change across different fruit crop ecosystems and adopting suitable adaptive strategies is essential for sustaining fruit productivity, quality, and farmer livelihoods. Therefore, this review focuses on the effects of climate change on tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate fruit crops, with special emphasis on recent research trends and adaptation approaches.

4 Impact of climate change on tropical fruit crops

Tropical fruit crops such as mango (*Mangifera indica*), banana (*Musa* spp. papaya (*Carica papaya*), guava (*Psidium guajava*), pineapple (*Ananas comosus*), and passion fruit (*Passiflora edulis*) are highly sensitive to climate change due to their narrow optimum range of temperature, rainfall, and humidity. Climate change affects these crops mainly through rising temperatures, erratic rainfall patterns, increased frequency of extreme weather events, and

Fruit Categor	Majorclimate threat	Specificimpact
Tropical(mango,banana)	Heatstress&erraticrain	Irregularfloweringfruit drop and sunburn
Sabtrropical(citrus,litchi)	Moisturestress&warm winter	Fruitcrackinggranulation and citrus canker
Temperate(Apple,cherry)	Reducedwinterchilling	Delayedandfloweringand Frost dama to blossom

alteredpestanddiseasedynamics,whichdisruptnormalgrowth,flowering,fruitset,andyield stability (Sharma et al., 2020 and FAO, 2022).

Temperature stress and heat injury

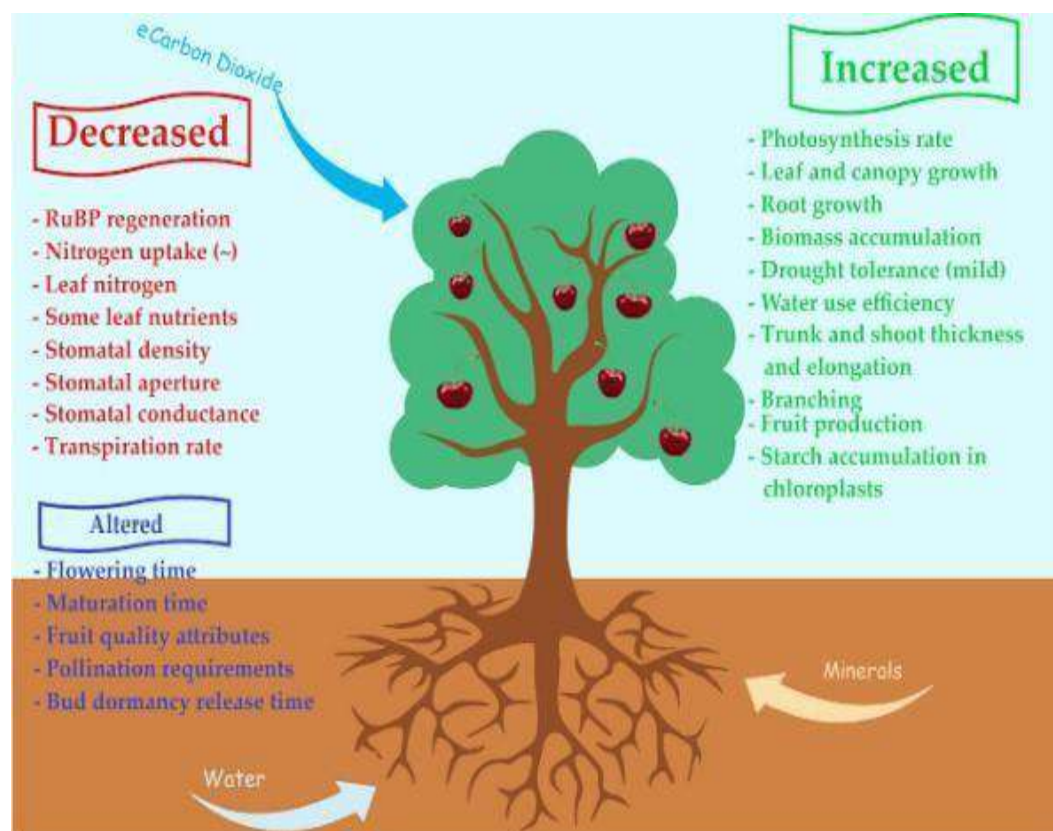
Rising temperatures in tropical regions accelerate vegetative growth but adversely affect reproductive development. High temperature stress during floral initiation and flowering

resultsinirregularflowering,pollensterility,poorfruitset,andincreasedfruitdrop.Prolonged exposure to heat stress also induces physiological disorders such as sunburn, tissue necrosis, and premature fruit ripening, ultimately reducing yield and marketable produce (Nath et al., 2019 and Sharma et al., 2020).

Table1.1ImpactOfclimatechangeontropicalfruit crops

Rainfall variability and moisture stress

Erratic rainfall patterns, including prolonged droughts and sudden heavy rainfall events, significantly influence tropical fruit production. Drought stress reduces soil moisture availability, restricts nutrient uptake, and causes flower and fruit abscission. Conversely excessive rainfall and waterlogging damage root systems, reduce soil aeration, and increase nutrient leaching, leading to poor fruit growth, yield instability, and reduced orchard longevity.



(Rajueta/.,2023 and FAO,2022)

Figure1.Rainfallvariabilityandmoisturestress

23Effectson fruit quality and post-harvest life

Climate-induced stress alters several fruit quality attributes, including fruit size, shape, colour development, total soluble solids, acidity, and shelf life. Elevated temperatures Often reduce Sugar accumulation and pigmentation, while excessive humidity promotes fruit softening and increases susceptibility to post-harvest diseases. These changes significantly lower consumer acceptability and economic returns to fruit growers (Sharma et al., 2020 and Lobell and Gourджи, 2012).

Increasedpestanddiseaseincidence

Warmer temperatures and increased humidity associated with climate change create favourable conditions for insect pests and pathogens. Pests such as fruit flies, mealybugs, aphids, and mites show increased population growth and complete multiple life cycles within

a season. Similarly, diseases such as anthracnose in mango, Fusarium wilt in banana, bacterial wilt, and leaf spot diseases become more severe, resulting in higher yield losses and increased reliance on chemical control measures (Bebber et al., 2013 and FAO, 2022).

Extreme weather events

The increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events such as heat waves, cyclones, and unseasonal heavy rainfall cause severe physical damage to fruit trees. These events lead to flower drop, fruit cracking, lodging, and tree mortality, resulting in sudden and substantial yield losses and threatening the long-term sustainability of tropical fruit orchards (IPCC, 2021 and Raju et al., 2023).

Adaptation and mitigation strategies

To mitigate the adverse effects of climate change, climate-smart horticultural practices are increasingly adopted. These include drip irrigation, mulching, use of shade nets, canopy management, and improvement of soil organic matter to reduce heat and moisture stress. Breeding and adoption of heat-tolerant, drought-resistant, and disease-resistant cultivars play a crucial role in sustaining productivity. In addition, precision agriculture tools, climate forecasting, remote sensing, and digital decision-support systems are being used to optimize irrigation, nutrient management, and pest control in tropical fruit production systems (FAO, 2022 and Singh et al., 2024).

5 Impact of climate change on sub-tropical fruit crops

Sub-tropical fruit crops such as citrus (*Citrus* spp.), litchi (*Litchi chinesis*), pomegranate (*Punica granatum*), fig (*Ficus* spp.), ber (*Ziziphus mauritiana*), and dragon fruit (*Hylocereus* spp.) are highly sensitive to climate variability because they require moderate temperatures, distinct seasonal changes, and well-distributed rainfall for optimal growth and productivity. Climate change affects these crops primarily through rising temperatures, erratic rainfall patterns, increased frequency of extreme weather events, and enhanced pest and disease pressure, resulting in disturbances in flowering behavior, fruit set, yield stability, and fruit quality (Ray et al., 2022 and FAO, 2022).

Temperature variability and heat stress

Increasing temperatures in sub-tropical regions have a profound effect on the phenology and physiology of fruit crops. Elevated temperatures during flowering and fruit development accelerate fruit maturation but often result in smaller fruit size, reduced juice content, poor colour development, and lower sugar accumulation, particularly in citrus and litchi. Heat stress during critical phenological stages can cause pollen sterility, poor fertilization, and increased fruit drop, leading to yield instability. In crops like litchi, high pre-flowering temperatures adversely affect floral induction, while in pomegranate and citrus, excessive heat increases fruit cracking and sunburn incidence (Sharma et al., 2021 and Kumar et al., 2023).

Rainfall irregularity and moisture stress

Erratic rainfall patterns associated with climate change expose sub-tropical fruit crops to alternating drought and waterlogging conditions. Drought stress limits soil moisture

availability, reduces nutrient uptake, and suppresses vegetative growth and flowering, resulting in poor fruit set and reduced yield. Conversely, excess rainfall and waterlogging damage root systems, decrease soil aeration, and enhance nutrient leaching, particularly nitrogen and

potassium. Such conditions promote uneven flowering, fruit drop, and physiological disorders, including fruit cracking in pomegranate and granulation in citrus, thereby reducing fruit quality and marketable yield (Ray et al., 2022; and FAO, 2022).

3.3 Effects on fruit quality and yield stability

Climate-induced stress significantly influences fruit quality parameters such as fruit size, shape, rind thickness, juice percentage, total soluble solids, acidity, and shelf life. High

temperatures and moisture stress often result in inferior fruit quality, reduced sweetness, and poor external appearance. Irregular climatic conditions also lead to large year-to-year yield fluctuations, making fruit production economically unstable for growers. Such variability affects supply chains, market prices, and export potential. Of sub-tropical fruits (Sharma et al., 2021 and Kumar et al., 2023).

- Increased pest and disease pressure

Climate change has intensified pest and disease incidence in sub-tropical fruit crops. Warmer temperatures and higher humidity favor rapid multiplication of insect pests such as citrus psylla, fruit fly, aphids, mealybugs, and thrips. Similarly, diseases like citrus canker, greening (HLB), powdery mildew, anthracnose, and fungal fruit rots become more severe under changing climatic conditions. Increased pest pressure leads to higher pesticide use, increased production costs, and environmental concerns, further threatening the sustainability of subtropical fruit production systems (Bebber et al., 2013 and FAO, 2022).

- Shifts in agro-climatic suitability

Climate warming has caused noticeable shifts in agro-climatic zones for sub-tropical fruit crops. Regions previously considered marginal or unsuitable are becoming favorable for certain crops, while traditional growing areas face declining productivity due to heat and moisture stress. Such shifts require changes in crop planning, varietal selection, and orchard management practices. Although these changes present new opportunities for crop diversification, they also pose significant challenges for long-established fruit production systems (Kumar et al., 2023).

- Adaptation and mitigation strategies

To cope with climate change, climate-smart horticultural practices are increasingly adopted in sub-tropical fruit cultivation. These include drip and micro-irrigation, mulching, canopy and microclimate management, use of anti-transpirants, and protected cultivation techniques. Development and adoption of heat-tolerant, drought-resistant, and disease-resistant cultivars and rootstocks are critical for sustaining productivity. Furthermore, the integration of digital decision-

support systems, climate forecasting models, and remote sensing tools enable timely management of irrigation, nutrients, and pest control, thereby enhancing resilience of subtropical fruit orchards to climate change (Ray et al., 2022 and FAO, 2022 and Singh et al., 2024).

.Adaptation and mitigation strategies

Climate change challenge	Adaptation mitigation strategy	Purpose mechanism	Major crops
Rising temperature & heat stress	Shade nets, canopy management, reflective mulches	Reduces canopy temperature, sunburn and heat in'	Citrus, litchi
Erratic rainfall drought	Drip microirrigation, mulching	Improves water use efficiency, maintains soil moisture	Citrus, pomegranate

Excess rainfall waterlogging	Raised beds, improved drainage systems	Prevent root hypoxia and nutrient loss	Pomegranate, fig
Moisture stress transpiration loss	Anti-transpirants, kaolin	Reduces water loss and leaf temperature	Citrus, litchi
Pest and disease outbreak	Climate-based IPM, resistant varieties	Minimizes pesticide use, improves sustainability	Citrus, litchi
Yield instability	Heat-drought tolerant cultivars/rootstocks	Stabilizes yield under stress conditions	All sub-tropical fruits
Climate variability	Precision agriculture, DSS, remote sensing	Timely irrigation, nutrient and pest management	All sub-tropical fruit
Extreme weather events	Protected cultivation (nethouse, polyhouse)	Reduces climatic risk and crop damage	High-value fruits

6 ImpactOfclimatechangeontemperatefruitcrops

Temperate fruit crops such as apple (*Malus domestica*), pear (*Pyrus communis*), peach (*Prunus persica*), plum (*Prunus domestica*), apricot (*Prunus armeniaca*), cherry (*Prunus avium*), and almond (*Prunus dulcis*) are highly sensitive to climate change due to their strict requirement for adequate winter chilling, cool growing seasons, and well-defined seasonal transitions. Climate change has significantly altered temperature regimes, snowfall patterns, and frost occurrence in temperate regions, thereby affecting dormancy, flowering synchronization, fruit



set, yield stability, and fruit quality (Luedeling et al., 2019 and Dar et al., 2023).

Figure 2. Impact of climate change on temperate fruit crops

Reduced winter chilling and dormancy disruption

One of the most critical impacts of climate change on temperate fruit crops is the decline in winter chill accumulation due to rising winter temperatures. Insufficient chilling adversely affects dormancy release, leading to delayed, prolonged, and uneven bud break and flowering. This phenomenon results in poor pollination, reduced fruit set, and increased floral abortion in crops such as apple, pear, peach, and cherry. Inadequate chilling also increases the dependence on chemical dormancy-breaking agents, raising production costs and environmental concerns (Luedeling et al., 2019 and Dar et al., 2023).

Temperature extremes and frost damage

Climate change has increased temperature variability, resulting in frequent early spring warming followed by sudden frost events. Early warming induces premature bud break and flowering, making flower buds highly vulnerable to late spring frosts. Frost damage during flowering causes severe yield losses, particularly in apple, stone fruits, and cherry. Additionally, heat stress during the growing season accelerates fruit development

but reduces fruit size, colour development, firmness, and Sugar accumulation, thereby lowering fruit quality and storage life (IPCC, 2021 and Dar et al., 2023).

4.3 Changes in rainfall, snowfall, and water availability

Altered precipitation patterns, reduced snowfall, and early snowmelt have significantly affected water availability in temperate fruit-growing regions. Reduced snow cover diminishes soil moisture recharge and increases moisture stress during critical growth stages. Irregular rainfall leads to drought stress or waterlogging, both of which impair root function, nutrient uptake, and tree vigour. Such conditions result in fruit drop, reduced yield stability, and increased susceptibility to physiological disorders such as bitter pit in apple and fruit cracking in cherry and plum (Negi et al., 2020 and FAO, 2022).

Effect on fruit quality and yield stability

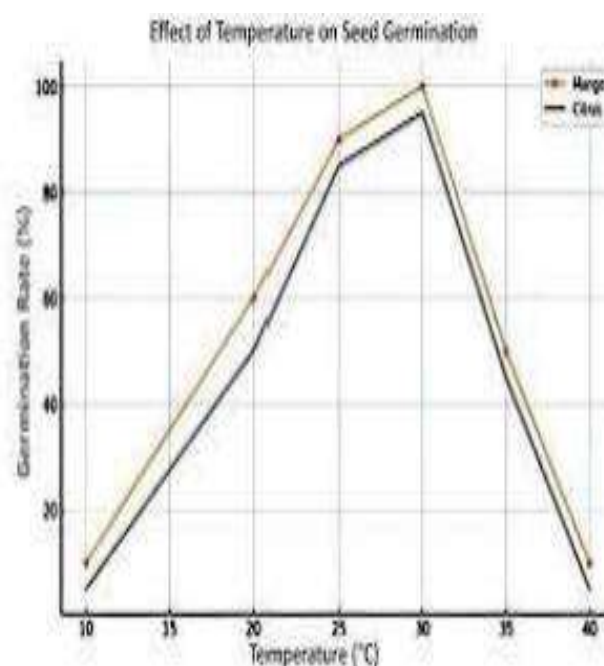
Climate-induced stress alters important fruit quality parameters, including fruit size, shape, colour, firmness, total soluble solids, acidity, and storage potential. High temperatures during fruit maturation reduce anthocyanin accumulation in apple and cherry, leading to poor colour development. Increased climatic variability also causes large inter-annual fluctuations in yield, making temperate fruit production economically risky for growers and affecting long-term orchard sustainability (Luedeling et al., 2019 and Sharma et al., 2021).

Figure 3. Effect on fruit quality and yield stability

Increased pest and disease incidence

Rising temperatures and milder winters favour the survival and rapid multiplication of insect pests and pathogens in temperate fruit crops. Pests such as codling moth, aphids, mites, and fruit borers expand their geographical range and complete multiple generations per year. Similarly, diseases like apple scab, fire blight, powdery mildew, and brown rot become more severe under warm and humid conditions. Increased pest and disease pressure leads to higher pesticide use, increased production costs, and greater environmental risks (Bebber et al., 2013 and FAO, 2022).

Shifts in cultivation zones and crop replacement



Climate warming has resulted in a gradual upward and northward shift of temperate fruit cultivation zones, particularly in mountainous regions. Traditional apple-growing areas are becoming less suitable, while lower-chill sub-tropical fruits are expanding into former temperate zones. In many Himalayan regions of India, farmers are replacing apple orchards with crops such as kiwi, pomegranate, and stone fruits adapted to warmer conditions. Although this shift provides new opportunities, it also threatens the sustainability of traditional temperate fruit industries (Negi et al., 2020 and Kumar et al., 2023).

Adaptation and mitigation strategies

To address climate change impacts, climate-smart strategies are being widely promoted in temperate fruit production systems. These include the development and adoption of low-chill and heat-tolerant cultivars, use of appropriate rootstocks, precision irrigation and fertigation, frost protection techniques (sprinklers, wind machines), canopy management, and use of reflective mulches. Protected cultivation, climate forecasting models, and digital decision support systems further help growers manage climatic risks. Such integrated approaches are essential for sustaining productivity, fruit quality, and farmer livelihoods under changing climatic conditions (FAO, 2022 and Singh et al., 2024).

7 Future perspectives, research gaps, and policy implications

Climate change poses complex and region-specific challenges to fruit production systems across tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate regions. While significant progress has been made in understanding the physiological and phenological responses of fruit crops to changing climatic conditions, several research gaps and future priorities remain that must be addressed to ensure long-term sustainability of fruit production.

Need for climate-resilient cultivars and rootstocks

One of the most critical future priorities is the development of climate-resilient fruit crop cultivars and rootstocks with tolerance to heat stress, drought, salinity, flooding, and emerging pests and diseases. In temperate fruits, breeding programs must focus on low-chill and frost-tolerant cultivars, while in tropical and sub-tropical fruits, emphasis should be placed on heat and drought-tolerant genotypes. Advanced breeding approaches, including molecular breeding, marker-assisted selection, and genomic tools, offer promising opportunities for accelerating the development of climate-adapted fruit varieties (Luedeling et al., 2019 and Singh et al., 2024).

Integration of climate-smart and precision horticulture

Future fruit production systems must increasingly integrate climate-smart horticultural practices with precision agriculture technologies. These include sensor-based irrigation scheduling, automated fertigation, real-time climate monitoring, and use of artificial intelligence for pest and disease forecasting. Precision management can significantly reduce input use, improve resource-use efficiency, and enhance resilience of fruit orchards to climate variability. However, wider adoption requires capacity building, farmer training, and improved access to technology, especially in developing countries (FAO, 2022).

5.3 Understanding climate—pest—disease interactions

Although the effects of climate change on individual pests and diseases are relatively well documented, integrated studies on climate—host—pest—pathogen interactions remain limited. Future research should focus on understanding how rising temperatures, CO₂ levels, and humidity influence pest population dynamics, disease epidemiology, and host resistance mechanisms. Such knowledge is essential for designing climate-resilient integrated pest management (IPM) strategies that minimize chemical pesticide dependence and environmental risks (Bebber et al., 2013 and FAO, 2022).

Regional crop planning and agro-climatic zoning

Climate-induced shifts in agro-climatic suitability highlight the need for dynamic crop planning and region-specific adaptation strategies. Updated agro-climatic zoning based on climate projections can guide farmers in selecting suitable fruit crops and varieties for future conditions. In hill and temperate regions, diversification toward climate-resilient

fruit Policy makers and extension agencies must play a key role in disseminating climate advisories and promoting location-specific adaptation practices (Negi et al., 2020 and Kumar et al., 2023).

Policy support and farmer-centric adaptation

Effective adaptation to climate change requires strong policy support, institutional frameworks, and farmer-centric interventions. Investments in climate-resilient infrastructure, crop insurance schemes, early warning systems, and digital advisory platforms can enhance farmers' adaptive capacity. Strengthening extension services and encouraging public—private partnerships will further facilitate technology transfer and adoption. Integrating climate change adaptation into national horticulture development programs is essential for safeguarding farmer livelihoods and ensuring food and nutritional security (FAO, 2022 and IPCC, 2021).

8 Adaptation and recent approaches

Agro-climatic zones

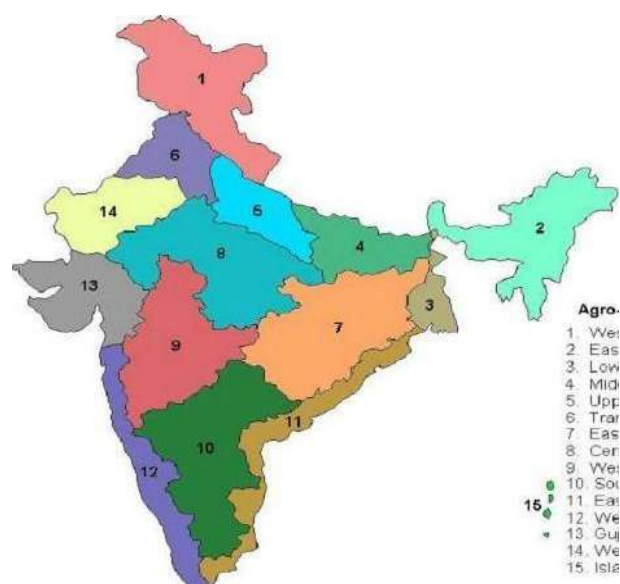


Figure 4-Adaptation and recent approaches

Agro-climatic Zone

1. Western Himalayan
2. Eastern Himalayan
3. Lower Gangetic Plains
4. Middle Gangetic Plains
5. Upper Gangetic Plains
6. Trans-Gangetic Plains
7. Eastern Plateau & Hills
8. Central Plateau & Hills
9. Western Plateau & Hills
10. Southern Plateau & Hills
11. East coast Plains & Hills
12. West Coast Plains & Hills
13. Gujarat Plains & Hills
14. Islands

Climate change poses serious challenges to fruit production systems across tropical, subtropical, and temperate regions. To minimize its adverse impacts and ensure sustainable fruit production, a wide range of adaptation and mitigation strategies have been developed in recent years. These approaches are collectively referred to as climate-smart horticulture, which integrates technological, genetic, agronomic, and institutional interventions to enhance resilience, productivity, and resource-use efficiency under changing climatic conditions (FAO, 2022).

Climate-smart horticulture practices

Climate-smart horticulture focuses on optimizing water, nutrient, and microclimate management to reduce climate-induced stresses. Drip and micro-irrigation systems improve water-use efficiency and ensure precise water application during critical growth stages, particularly under drought and erratic rainfall conditions. Mulching with organic residues or plastic films helps conserve soil moisture, regulate soil temperature, and suppress weed growth.

Canopy management practices, including pruning and training, improve light interception, air circulation, and reduce heat load on fruits, thereby minimizing sunburn and heat injury. The use of shade nets and reflective mulches has proven effective in reducing canopy temperature and improving fruit quality in crops such as mango, citrus, apple, and litchi (Sharma et al., 2020 and FAO, 2022).

Development Of climate-resilient cultivars and rootstocks

Breeding and selection Of climate-resilient cultivars represent one Of the most sustainable long-term adaptation strategies. Recent breeding programs focus on developing fruit crop varieties that are heat-tolerant, drought-resistant, disease-resistant, and low-chill requiring.

In tropical and sub-tropical regions, cultivars with improved tolerance to high temperature and moisture stress help stabilize flowering and fruit set. In temperate regions, low-chill apple, pear, peach, and plum cultivars are increasingly adopted to compensate for declining winter chilling. The use Of stress-tolerant rootstocks further enhances tree resilience by improving water and nutrient uptake under adverse soil and climatic conditions (Luedeling et al., 2019 and Singh et al., 2024).

6.3 Protected cultivation and microclimate modification

Protected cultivation techniques, such as greenhouses, polyhouses, net houses, and rain shelters, play an important role in buffering fruit crops against climatic extremes. These structures allow partial or complete control over temperature, humidity, light, and pest pressure.

In high-value fruit crops like strawberry, apple nursery plants, citrus, and stone fruits, protected cultivation reduces damage from frost, heat waves, hailstorms, and heavy rainfall. Microclimate modification techniques, including windbreaks, shelterbelts, and evaporative cooling systems, further help reduce climatic risks and improve orchard productivity (FAO, 2022).

a. Precision agriculture and digital decision-support tools

Recent advances in precision agriculture have significantly improved climate adaptation in fruit production systems. Technologies such as remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), climate modeling, and Internet of Things (IoT)-based sensors enable real-time monitoring of soil moisture, temperature, humidity, and crop health.

Digital decision-support systems (DSS) assist farmers in making timely decisions related to irrigation scheduling, nutrient application, pest and disease management, and frost protection. Climate-based early warning systems help anticipate extreme weather events and reduce crop losses. These technologies enhance resource-use efficiency, reduce input costs, and improve resilience of fruit orchards to climate variability (Kumar et al., 2023 and Singh et al., 2024).

b. Integrated pest and disease management under climate change

Climate change has intensified pest and disease pressure in fruit crops, necessitating the adoption of climate-resilient integrated pest management (IPM) strategies. These include pest forecasting models, biological control agents, pheromone traps, resistant varieties, and judicious use of pesticides.

Climate-based pest surveillance systems help predict pest outbreaks and optimize control measures, thereby reducing excessive pesticide use and environmental pollution. The integration of IPM with climate-smart practices ensures sustainable pest management and long-term orchard health (Bebber et al., 2013 and FAO, 2022).

c. Policy support, capacity building, and extension services

Successful adaptation to climate change requires strong institutional and policy support. Government initiatives promoting micro-irrigation, protected cultivation, and climate-resilient planting material encourage adoption of adaptive technologies.

Farmer training, awareness programs, and extension services play a crucial role in disseminating climate-smart technologies and best management practices. Participatory research, farmer—scientist interactions, and region-specific climate adaptation plans are essential for translating scientific knowledge into field-level action and ensuring sustainable fruit production under changing climatic scenarios.

9 Conclusion

Climate change is a major challenge affecting the productivity, quality, and sustainability of fruit crops across tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate regions. Its impacts are crop-specific: tropical fruits experience heat stress, irregular flowering, fruit drop, and enhanced pest and disease pressure; sub-tropical fruits face moisture stress, erratic precipitation, abnormal flowering, and yield fluctuations; temperate fruits are particularly vulnerable due to reduced winter chilling, leading to delayed and uneven flowering, poor fruit set, and frost damage (Sharma et al., 2020 and Luedeling et al., 2019 and Ray et al., 2022).

The review of recent studies highlights that integrated adaptation strategies are essential to sustain fruit crop production under changing climatic conditions. Climate-smart horticulture, precision irrigation, mulching, canopy and microclimate management, protected cultivation, development of resilient cultivars, and the use of digital decision-support tools are proven approaches to mitigate climate-induced stresses (FAO, 2022; Singh et al., 2024 and Kumar et

al., 2023). Moreover, extension services, policy support, and farmer training are critical to enhance adoption Of these technologies and improve resilience.

In conclusion, a combination Of scientific, technological, and management interventions is required to maintain the productivity, quality, and economic viability Of fruit crops under ongoing and future climate change. Continued research and proactive adaptation will ensure sustainable fruit production, safeguard farmer livelihoods, and contribute to global food security (Dar et al., 2023 and FAO, 2022).

Reference

- [1] IPCC. (2021). *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- [2] FAO. (2022). *Climate-smart agriculture: Sourcebook*. Food and Agriculture Organization Of the United Nations, Rome.
- [3] Luedeling, E., Kunz, A., and Blanke, M. (2019). Identification Of chilling and heat requirements Of fruit trees. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, 239, 151—160.
- [4] Sharma, R. R., Reddy, S. V. R., and Jhalegar, M. J. (2020). Climate change and its impact on fruit production in India. *Journal of Horticultural Sciences*, 15(1), 1—17.
- [5] Ray, P. K., Singh, A. K., and Pathak, R. K. (2022). Climate variability and adaptation strategies in sub-tropical fruit crops. *Indian Journal Of Agricultural Sciences*, 92(4), 421430.
- [6] Dar, M.A., Wani, A.A., and Singh, J. (2023). Impact of climate change on temperate fruit crops of Himalayan region. *Environmental Challenges*, 11, 100712.
- [7] Negi, G. C. S., Samal, P. K., & Kuniyal, J. C. (2020). Climate change induced shift in apple cultivation in Indian Himalaya. *Current Science*, 118(7), 1072—1079.
- [8] Bebbber, D. P. Ramotowski, M.A.T., and Gurr, S.J. (2013). Crop pests and pathogens move polewards in a warming world. *Nature Climate Change*, 3, 985—988.
- [9] Lobell, D. B., and Gourdji, S. M. (2012). The influence Of climate change on global crop productivity. *Plant Physiology*, 160, 1686—1697.
- [10] Nath, V., Pandey, S. D., & Singh, S. K. (2019). Heat stress effects on flowering and fruiting in tropical fruit crops. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1245, 23—30.
- [11] I. I. Raju, B. M. K., Rao, K. V., and Prasad, Y. G. (2023). Rainfall variability and drought impact on horticulture in India. *Journal Of Agrometeorology*, 25(2), 15()—160.
- [12] Singh, A. K., Singh, and Kumar, M. (2024). Digital tools and climate-smart horticulture for sustainable fruit production. *Agricultural Systems*, 224, 103560.
- [13] Kumar, R., Sharma, J. N., and Verma, L. R. (2023). Climate change and agro-climatic zoning Of fruit crops in India. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 317, 112017.
- [14] Hedhly, A., Hormaza, J. I., and Herrero, M. (2009). Global warming and sexual plant reproduction. *Trends in Plant Science*, 14(1), 30—36.
- [15] Atkinson, C. J., Brennan, R. M., and Jones, H. G. (2013). Declining chilling and its impact on temperate perennial crops. *Environmental and Experimental Botany*, 91,

48— 62.

- [16] Chmielewski, F. M., Müller, A., and Bruns, E. (2004). Climate changes and trends in phenology Of fruit trees. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, 121 , 69—78.
- [17] Wahid, A., Gelani, S., Ashraf, M., and Foolad, M. R. (2007). Heat tolerance in plants: An overview. *Environmental and Experimental Botany*, 61, 199—223.
- [18] Kotir, J. H. (2011). Climate change and variability in Sub-Saharan Africa. *Environment, Development and Sustainability*, 13, 815—829.
- [19] Gornall, J., Betts, R., Burke, E., et al. (2010). Implications Of climate change for agricultural productivity. *Philosophical Transactions Of the Royal Society B*, 365, 2973-2989.
- [20] Thornton, P. K., Jones, P. G., Ericksen, P. J., and Challinor, A. J. (2011). Agriculture and food systems in sub-Saharan Africa in a changing climate. *Global Environmental Change*, 21, 73-85.
- [21] Fischer, G., Shah, M., and Velthuis, H. (2002). Climate change and agricultural vulnerability. *International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Austria*.
- [22] Hatfield, J. L., & Prueger, J. H. (2015). Temperature extremes: Effect on plant growth. *Weather and Climate Extremes*, 10, 4—10.
- [23] Bit, C. E., and Gerats, T. (2013). Plant tolerance to high temperature stress. *Plant Science*, 212, 29-38.
- [24] Raza, A., Razzaq, A. , Mehmood, S. S. , et al. (2019). Impact Of climate change on crops adaptation strategies. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry*, 141, 76—94.
- [25] Rosenzweig, C., and Hillel, D. (2008). *Climate Change and the Global Harvest*. Oxford University Press.
- [26] Verheye, W. H. (2010). Climate change and food production. *Encyclopedia Of Life Support Systems*, UNESCO.
- [27] Pathak, H., Aggarwal, P. K., and Singh, S. D. (2012). Climate change impact, adaptation and mitigation in agriculture. *Indian Agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi*.
- [28] Allen, D. J., and Ort, D. R. (2001). Impacts Of ozone on crop production. *Plant Physiology*, 127, 507-514.
- [29] Morison, J. I. L., Baker, N. R., Mullineaux, P. M., and Davies, W. J. (2008). Improving water use in crop production. *Philosophical Transactions Of the Royal Society B*, 363, 639-658.
- [30] Battisti, D. S., and Naylor, R. L. (2009). Historical warnings of future food insecurity. *Science*, 323, 240-244.
- [31] Tubiello, F. N., and Ewert, F. (2002). Crop production and climate change. *European Journal Of Agronomy*, 18, 1—16.
- [32] IPCC. (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability*. Cambridge University Press.
- [33] Singh, H. P., and Chadha, K. L. (2018). *Handbook of Horticulture*. ICAR, New Delhi.

- [34] Jat, M. L., et al. (2019). Climate-smart agriculture practices. *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability*, 40, 125—134.
- [35] Sharma, A. S., Kumar, V., Shahzad, B., et al. (2019). Photosynthesis under abiotic stress, *Journal of Plant Growth Regulation*, 38, 2—21.
- [36] Mathur, S., Agrawal, D., and Jajoo, A. (2014). Photosynthesis: Response to high temperature stress. *Journal of Photochemistry and Photobiology B*, 137, 116—126.
- [37] Gbegbelegbe, S., et al. (2018). Climate change, pest pressure and crop losses. *Global Food Security*, 17, 94—104.
- [38] FAO. (2017). *The future of food and agriculture—Trends and challenges*. Rome.
- [39] Singh, R., and Patel, R. K. (2020). Protected cultivation in horticulture. *Indian Journal of Horticulture*, 77(3), 381-389.
- [40] Rao, N. K. S., et al. (2016). Climate resilience in horticulture. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 86(10), 1241—1250.
- [41] Glenn, D. M., & Puterka, G. J. (2005). Particle film technology. *HortScience*, 40, 651—656.
- [42] Reddy, P. P. (2016). *Climate Resilient Agriculture for Ensuring Food Security*. Springer.
- [43] Pathak, T. B., et al. (2018). Remote sensing and climate adaptation. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 152, 24—34.
- [44] Malhi, G. S., et al. (2021). Climate change and crop production. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 44, 1147—1162.
- [45] Wheeler, T., and von Braun, J. (2013). Climate change impacts on global food security. *Science*, 341, 508-513.
- [46] Choudhary, M., et al. (2022). Abiotic stress management in fruit crops. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 296, 110877.
- [47] Srivastava, A. K., and Singh, S. (2021). Nutrient management under climate stress. *Indian Journal of Fertilisers*, 17(6), 512—520.
- [48] Kumar, S., et al. (2020). Orchard management under climate change. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1281, 89—96.
- [49] Zandalinas, S. L., et al. (2018). Plant responses to combined stresses. *New Phytologist*, 219, 1147-1161.
- [50] Sharma, N., et al. (2022). Climate change and horticultural sustainability. *Environmental Sustainability*, 5, 231—245.
- [51] Singh, R. K., et al. (2023). Climate-based pest forecasting models. *Crop Protection*, 165, 106161.
- [52] Dar, E. A., et al. (2024). Climate adaptation strategies for fruit crops. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 351, 1196821.
- Aggarwal, P. K., et al. (2014). Yield gaps in rain-fed crops. ICRISAT.

VEGETABLES AS A KEY SOLUTION TO ACHIEVE ZERO HIDDEN HUNGER

Ruksana^{1*}, Diksha Saini², Himanshi³

^{1*} Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh

Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, 151001

² and ³ Ph.D. Student, Department of Horticulture, Dr. Khem Singh Gill Akal College of Agriculture, Baru Sahib

Corresponding Author Email: ruksana019k@gmail.com

Abstract

Hidden hunger is a form of undernutrition which occurs when the intake and absorption of vitamins and minerals are too low to sustain good health and development. Poor diet is a common cause of hidden hunger. In India, victims of hidden hunger may not be able to understand the importance of balanced diet, as they will be able to afford nutritious food such as eggs, dairy, meat, fruits and vegetables (Grebmer et al. 2013). Sometimes, when food prices rise consumers tend to continue to eat staple foods and not taking staple foods rich in micronutrients. Along with calories, children need nutrients for vital functions, immunity and brain development. Requirement of micronutrients is significantly high during pregnancy, lactation and development stage of children. Any gap between supply of nutrients, an increased demand may cause hidden hunger. Vegetables are important for human health as they are rich source of different macro and micro nutrients which are playing an important role in human health. Vegetables

like bitter lettuce, wild cowpea, bitter cucumber, asparagus etc. are rich source of different vitamins and minerals possess different properties like antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, general tonic, diuretic (Chacha and Laswal, 2020). In order to reduce hidden hunger we have to diversify our diets, which contains a balanced and adequate combination of macro, essential macro and other food based substances like dietary fibres.

Commercial food fortification, which means adding small amount of micro nutrient to staple food helps to get recommended level of micronutrients. Biofortification is a new intervention which involves breeding of food grains using conventional or transgenic methods to increase their micronutrient content (Saltzman et al. 2013). Government must take cohesive approach for confronting hidden hunger. Otherwise the problem of hidden hunger is difficult to eradicate.

Keywords: Hidden hunger, Malnutrition, Micronutrients, Nutritional value, Vegetables

Introduction

Hidden hunger, also known as micronutrient deficiency, is a critical global public health issue affecting more than two billion people worldwide, with a substantial burden in developing

countries such as India. It occurs when the intake or absorption of essential vitamins and minerals is insufficient to meet the body's physiological needs, even when caloric intake may be adequate. This form of malnutrition is often overlooked because it does not always manifest as visible hunger, yet it has severe and long-lasting impacts on human health and development.

In India, micronutrient deficiencies are highly prevalent among vulnerable groups, particularly children and women. According to national surveys, a large proportion of children suffer from anemia, while significant percentages of the population are at risk of deficiencies in iron, vitamin A, and iodine. Among women, especially those who are pregnant or of reproductive age, anemia remains a major concern. These deficiencies during critical stages of life, such as pregnancy and early childhood, can lead to serious consequences including impaired physical growth, reduced cognitive development, weakened immunity, increased morbidity and mortality, and poor productivity in adulthood. Furthermore, micronutrient deficiencies impose a substantial economic burden, contributing to losses in national productivity and development.

India is also experiencing a “double burden” of disease, where traditional problems of undernutrition and infectious diseases coexist with an increasing prevalence of non-communicable diseases such as diabetes, hypertension, cardiovascular diseases, and obesity. Nutrition plays a central role in both these conditions. Prenatal and early-life malnutrition can predispose individuals to chronic diseases later in life, as explained by the developmental origins of health and disease hypothesis (Barker's hypothesis).

One of the primary causes of hidden hunger is poor dietary quality. Indian diets are predominantly cereal-based, with inadequate consumption of nutrient-dense foods such as fruits, vegetables, pulses, and animal products. Economic constraints, lack of awareness, cultural preferences, and food accessibility further limit dietary diversity. Even among higher-income groups, the intake of micronutrient-rich foods often falls below recommended levels. While sufficient calorie intake may meet energy requirements, it does not guarantee the intake of essential micronutrients, thereby perpetuating hidden hunger.

Recent studies have revealed widespread deficiencies of essential vitamins and minerals, including vitamins A, B-complex, D, and folate, even among apparently well-nourished urban populations. These deficiencies are often accompanied by rising levels of overweight, obesity, and associated metabolic disorders, highlighting the paradox of malnutrition in modern societies.

Addressing hidden hunger requires a comprehensive and multi-sectoral approach. Improving dietary diversity through increased consumption of vegetables, fruits, legumes, and other nutrient-rich foods is essential. In addition, strategies such as food fortification, biofortification, supplementation, nutrition education, and policy interventions must be strengthened. Promoting awareness about balanced diets and ensuring access to affordable nutritious food are key steps toward achieving nutritional security and eliminating hidden hunger.

Role of vegetables in human nutrition

Vegetables are important for human health because of their vitamins, minerals, phytochemical compounds, and dietary fiber content. Especially antioxidant vitamins (vitamin A, vitamin C, and vitamin E) and dietary fiber content have important roles in human health. Adequate

vegetable consumption can be protective against some chronic diseases such as diabetes, cancer, obesity, metabolic syndrome, cardiovascular diseases, as well as improve risk factors related with these diseases. In recent years, consumers began to change their eating patterns with the growing interest in the effect of foods in staying healthy and maintaining health. “Western” type diets are characterized by increased intake of calories, sugar, saturated fats and animal protein, and reduced consumption of vegetables and fruits. When this type of diet is combined with lack of activity, the prevalence and frequency of diseases such as obesity, diabetes, and cardiovascular pathologies also increases. In healthy diets (Mediterranean diet model), eating plant-based foods such as fruits and vegetables, cereals, legumes and nuts, replacing butter with healthy oils such as olive oil and canola oil, using herbs and spices to add flavor instead of salt, limiting red meat to several times a month and eating fish and poultry at least twice a week are recommended. Evidence from epidemiological studies and clinical trials shows that the Mediterranean diet is associated with many positive health outcomes such as reduced risk of various chronic illnesses, reduced overall mortality, and increased likelihood of healthy ageing.

Nutritional and health potential of underutilized vegetables-

[1] **Sunga (Bitter Lettuce, *Launea cornuta*)-**

L. cornuta was claimed to be a rich source for vitamins, though the respondents were not able to point out the exact vitamin. They also claimed that the vegetable provides strength (energy) and increases appetite as supported by (Muriira et al. 2014), a fact that was attributed to its bitterness and that an individual usually feels hungry after consuming it. The interview reports were supported by laboratory analyses, which showed the presence of considerable amounts of calcium, iron, magnesium, zinc, vitamins A, B1, B2, B3, and C to be 60.29, 301.56, 6.05, 3.84, 25.22, 0.24, 0.1, and 120.88 mg/100 g, respectively. The findings agree with a study by (Lyimo et al. 2003), who found the vegetable as a rich source of minerals and vitamins. Medicinally, the vegetable was reported to provide cure for a number of diseases including malaria and typhoid, which agrees with a study by (Musila et al. 2013).

[2] **Kikundembala (Wild Cowpea, *Vigna vexillata*)**

The claims by respondents that the plants provide vitamins were collaborated by the laboratory experiments conducted which revealed that it is a rich source of vitamins, whereby the vitamin contents specifically vitamins A, B1, B2, B3, and C were found to be 2.57, 18.94, 0.18, 0.09, and 136.71 mg/100 g, respectively. On the other hand, the mineral contents specifically calcium, iron, magnesium, and zinc were found to be 85.28, 4.28, 191.12, and 4.28 mg/100g, respectively. The findings are in line with a study done by (Kumar and Kumar. 2016) whereby it was observed that the vegetable is a good source of micronutrients among them iron and zinc. It was also claimed to increase strength, increase blood levels (a claim that can be attributed to the iron

components of the leaves), and cure eye problems and hernia (roots boiled and its water drank, thought to be contributed by its vitamin A content). Moreover, pains due to menstrual flow can be relieved using the vegetable, the healing virtue being attributed to the claim that no insecticides or pesticides are applied on the vegetable.

[3] **Mokiki (Bitter Cucumber, *Momordica foetida*)**

M. foetida was claimed to increase strength, appetite, and blood. It was reported that the leaves of the plant can be prepared and eaten alongside any other vegetable and or food. Laboratory analyses revealed the presence of mineral contents specifically calcium, iron, magnesium, and zinc was found to be 421.03, 21.05, 1,151, and 21.1 mg/100g,

respectively. Also, vitamin contents specifically vitamins A, B1, B2, B3 and C were found to be 5.5, 58.34, 0.76, 0.12, and

46.52 mg/100 g, respectively. The presence of vitamins is thought to contribute to the appetite-increase role of the UV. Medicinally, *M. foetida* relieves cough/flu, whereby its leaves are chewed raw or the leaves are plucked, wrapped in banana leaves, and put on fire to be heated for a while; thereafter, it is removed and chewed. A mixture of *M. foetida*, “Ngolowo” and “Ibangasa” constitutes a liquid which is used as medicine against smallpox. The mode of treatment involves drinking of the mixture by the sick child who is then covered by a blanket for a sleep. A lot of sweating takes place, a procedure believed to indicate that the medicine is carrying out its functions! Also, it was reported that the UV helps in relieving diarrhoea and malaria as well as in removing toxins from the body. Moreover,

M. foetida has scientifically been demonstrated to contain hypo glycaemic activity. (Kumar and Prasad, 2013)

[4] **Inyiri (Malabar Spinach, *Basella alba*)**

B. alba was nutritionally claimed to be a good source of vitamins and minerals. The claims were supported by the laboratory analysis conducted which revealed *B. alba* as a rich source of minerals and vitamins. The mean mineral contents, specifically calcium, iron, magnesium, and zinc, were found to be 134.11, 13.4, 524.5, and 13.4 mg/100g,

respectively. Also, the mean vitamin contents, specifically vitamins A, B1, B2, B3, and C were 6.67, 182.95, 0.54, 0.43, and

198.08 mg/100 g, respectively. Medicinally, the vegetables were claimed to boost blood supply and increase appetite. These effects were attributed to their iron and vitamins contents, respectively. They prevent constipation due to the fibrous nature, relieve ulcerative pains, and prevent

constipation in animals, for instance dogs. The claims are in fair agreement to the laboratory chemical analyses, which revealed *B. alba* as a rich source of iron, an important component in fighting anaemia. Also, Kumar et al. (2013) support that *B. alba* leaves are used for the treatment of anaemia in women and other diseases including hypertension, malaria, coughs and colds.

[5] **Brussel sprouts (*Brassica oleracea* var. *gemmifera*)**

Brussels sprouts are one of the many variations of cabbage, instead of single head at the top of the stem, a large bud or miniature head is borne in the axil of each leaf. Brussels sprouts are rich in protein (4.4%), vitamin-A (520 I.U.) and ascorbic acid (72mg.) and contain appreciable amounts of riboflavin, niacin, calcium and iron. Brussels sprouts are also rich source of glucosinolates. This vegetable is rich in vitamin K that is used by body for blood clotting so

some heart patients taking anticoagulants may have to avoid its excess intake. In short, all cruciferous vegetables contain glucosinolates and have great health benefits for this reason. The cancer protection we get from Brussels sprouts is largely related to four specific glucosinolates found in this cruciferous vegetable: glucoraphanin, glucobrassicin, sinigrin, and gluconasturtiin.

[6] **Kale: (*Brassica oleracea* var. *sabellica*)** Among the leafy vegetable crops, kale is very versatile and nutritious possessing high levels of vitamin A (equal to carrot), omega-3 fatty acids, lutein and zeaxanthin, vitamin C (nearly four times to the oranges/limes), and is a good source of vitamin B complex and minerals also. Kale has a higher bioavailability of Ca than milk. It is especially known for health benefiting antioxidants, low content of fat and Oxalic acid, and no cholesterol. Endowed with an excellent source of phyto-nutrients, kale provides a comprehensive support for the body's detoxification system (Singh et al. 2017).

[7] **Bathua or leafy chenopod (*Chenopodium album* L.)**

The succulent soft leaves of bathua contain appreciable amount of dietary fibre; protein; minerals such as Ca, Fe, P, K, Mg, Zn, Mn, Se and Na; vitamins i.e. vitamin-C, α -carotene, niacin, folic acid and riboflavin; antioxidants; omega-6-fatty acid; etc (Koley et al. 2016, Singh and Singh 2017, Singh et al. 2018). The effect of feeding chenopodium cultivar on blood lipid profile of rats confirmed the hypocholesterolemic effect by lowering total blood cholesterol, LDL, VLDL and triglycerides, and increasing HDL content (Sood 2011).

[8] **Asparagus (*Asparagus officinalis*)** Asparagus

is a delicate, nutritious and appetizing vegetable grown in temperate as well as tropical regions. Asparagus is a good source of vitamin-A. Green asparagus (100g edible portion) contains 93 g of water, 2.2g of protein, 21mg of calcium, 700 IU of vitamin A, 30mg of ascorbic acid, 0.2mg of thiamine, 0.16 mg of riboflavin and 1.0mg niacin. It is a good source of vitamin B, calcium, magnesium and zinc, and a very good source of dietary fiber, protein, vitamin A, vitamin C, vitamin E, vitamin K, thiamin, riboflavin, rutin, niacin, folic acid, iron, phosphorus, potassium, copper, manganese and selenium as well as chromium, a trace mineral that enhances the ability of insulin to transport glucose from the bloodstream into cells. Asparagus root possesses aphrodisiac, demulcent, general tonic, diuretic, anti-inflammatory, antiseptic, antioxidant and antispasmodic properties. Regular use of asparagus root treats infertility, impotence, leucorrhea, menopause syndromes, hyperacidity and certain infectious diseases such as herpes and syphilis. It is also useful in the treatment of epilepsy, kidney disorders, chronic fevers, excessive heat, stomach ulcers and liver cancer, increases milk secretion in nursing mothers and regulates sexual behaviors. *Asparagus racemosus* cleanses, nourishes, and strengthens the female reproductive organs and so, it is traditionally used for PMS, amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, menopause and pelvic inflammatory disease.

(PID) like endometriosis.

[9] **Curry leaf (*Murraya koenigii* Linn. Sprengal)**

Curry leaf is a spicy leaf vegetable belonging to family Rutaceae and chromosome number is $2n=18$. It is used in culinary preparation to enhance flavour and taste of food and is a very rich source of iron and Vit A. The leaves are slightly pungent, bitter and feebly acidic in taste. Curry leaf loses flavour when cooked. To retain fresh flavour, the leaves should not be removed from branches until ready for use. 100 g curry leaf contains 6.1 g protein, 1.0 g fat, 18.7 g carbohydrate, 83 mg calcium, 57 mg phosphorus, 0.93 mg iron, 7.56 microgram carotene and 4 mg vitamin C.

Other vegetables and their health benefits-

1. **Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.)**

Potato popularly known as “the king of vegetables” is the most important non-grain food crop in the world. Hence, potato may prove to be a useful tool to achieve the nutritional security of the nation. It is a highly nutritious, easily digestible, wholesome food containing carbohydrates, proteins, minerals, vitamins, and high-quality dietary fiber. (Rajiv and Kavar, 2016).

Solanum tuberosum, the high composition of nutrients influences the human body. Its vitamins and minerals components regulate body function and improve human health by suppressing the deficiencies. This shows that potato has a strong ability to lower the risk of oxidative stress that leads to cancer and prevent cardiovascular disease. Its phenolic compounds act as antioxidants and improve heart health. The flesh of potato is a rich source of antioxidants, vitamin C, B1, B2, B6, B9 and numbers of trace elements, which is a necessary part of the diet and plays a functional role to maintain the human body. Ascorbic acid and potato colorant, carotenoids including lutein, zeaxanthin, and violaxanthin act as antioxidants that aid to improve the oxidative stress in human cells. Chlorogenic acid and anthocyanins are phenolic compounds present in potato skin in the form of phenolic acids. Both antioxidants and phenolic compounds have ability to suppress cancer cells and improve heart health by lowering the risk of blood pressure and hypertension. (Khalid et al. 2020)

2. **Tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum* L.)** Tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*) is the most important vegetable crop cultivated through out the world for its ripe fruits. It is a rich source of potassium, folate, and vitamin A, vitamin C and vitamin E. Tomatoes also contain valuable bioactive compounds like carotenoids and phenolic compounds. The major carotenoids present in tomatoes are lycopene, α -carotene, β -carotene, lutein, zeaxanthin and lycopene (Li et al. 2012). Lycopene reduces several cancer types and the risk of coronary heart disease (Rao et al. 2006). Serum lipid peroxidation and LDL (Low-Density Lipoproteins) oxidation were significantly decreased by lycopene. Lutein, another carotenoid present in tomato is associated with reducing the risk of age-related macular degeneration, cataracts and atherosclerosis (Bone et al. 2000). Phenolics including flavanoids are important hydrophilic phytochemicals present in tomato. Recently phenolics received wide attention due to its strong biological activities. In tomato hydroxycinnamic acids and their derivatives are the most abundant family of the total

phenolics. Within this family the major compounds were caffeoyl-hexose I, coumaric acid hexose I, chlorogenic acid and 5-caffeoylquinic acid. Other important group of phenolics present in tomato are phenylacetic acid and its derivatives, hydroxybenzoic acids and derivatives. Flavonoids are a diverse group of phenolic secondary metabolites. Many of the compounds belonging to this group are potent antioxidants in vitro and epidemiological studies suggest a direct correlation between high flavonoid intake and decreased risk of cardiovascular disease, cancer and other age related diseases.

3. **Brinjal (*Solanum melongena* L.)**

Brinjal is another popular solanaceous vegetable crop grown throughout subtropics and tropics of the world. It is a perennial crop but grown commercially as an annual. The unripe fruit of eggplant is primarily used as a cooking vegetable for the various dishes all over the world. Traditionally brinjal is used for treatment of several diseases. Various parts of the plant are useful in the treatment of inflammatory conditions, cardiac debility, neuralgia, ulcers of nose, cholera, bronchitis and asthma, analgesic and hypolipidemic (Sudheesh et al. 1997). Studies have shown that brinjal extracts suppress the development of blood vessels required for tumor growth and metastasis (Matsubara et al. 2005) and inhibit inflammation that can lead to atherosclerosis (Han et al. 2003). Anthocyanin from brinjal could be potent natural pigment that prevents chemical induced mutation (Azevedo et al. 2007). Phenolic extract from brinjal had high α -glucosidase inhibitory activity and in specific cases moderate to high angiotensin I-converting enzyme inhibitory activity (Kwon et al. 2008). Brinjal contains ascorbic acid and phenolics, both of which are powerful antioxidants (Vinson et al. 1998). Nasunin, an anthocyanin isolated from the peel of purple fruit, is one phenolic compound implicated in both inhibition of hydroxyl radical generation and superoxide scavenging activity (Noda et al. 2000). Flavonoids isolated from its fruit showed potent antioxidant activity (Sadilova et al. 2006) against chromosomal aberrations induced by Doxorubicin. Nutritional component and functional activity of vegetable is function of genotype.

4. **Chilli (*Capsicum annuum* var. *hortens*)**

It is an important spice cum vegetable crop grown throughout the world. The ripe fruits are especially rich in vitamin-C (Marin et al. 2004). The two chemical groups of greatest interest are the capsaicinoids and the carotenoids. The capsaicinoids are alkaloids that give hot chilli peppers, their characteristic pungency. The rich supply of carotenoids contributes to chilli peppers nutritional value and colour (Hornero-Mendez et al. 2002; Perez-Galvez et al. 2003). The fruits of most *Capsicum* species contain significant amounts of vitamins B, C, E and provitamin A (carotene) when in a fresh state. The large type of *C. annuum* is among the richest

known sources of vitamin C, which may be present up to 340 mg/100 g in some varieties. Fruits of *Capsicum* species have relatively low volatile oil content, ranging from about 0.11 to 2.6 percent in paprika. The characteristic aroma and flavour of the fresh fruit is imparted by the volatile oil. The composition of the volatile oil of fresh green bell peppers has been examined. In international trade the colour intensity of paprika pods is generally expressed as ASTA units unlike oleoresin which is described in colour value. Nearly 40 percent of paprika oleoresin is used to blend in chicken feed.

5. ***Capsicum* (*Capsicum annuum* var. *hortens*)**

grossum)

Capsicum is a good source of bioactive compounds particularly phytochemicals, capsaicin, oleoresins, and rich organic micronutrients with potential health benefits. It plays an important role in diets and

possesses micronutrients. Hot pepper consumption worldwide is well known for its high nutritional content which in turn reduces human micronutrient deficiencies. Thus sufficient amounts of micronutrients can be provided by incorporating the nutrient-rich pepper in diet that could beneficially help in combating nutrient deficiencies (Deepthi et al. 2020). Among the domesticated species *C. annuum* is the largest group of capsicum grown worldwide. Capsicum play an important role in human health as antioxidants and immune enhancers, helping in the prevention of cancers, cardiovascular diseases, age related macular degeneration, cataracts, diseases related to low immune function, and other degenerative diseases (Perera and Yen 2007).

6. **Bottle gourd (*Lagenaria siceraria*)**

The bottle gourd contains moisture, protein, fat, carbohydrate, fibre, ash, and energy (Chung et al. 2000). The bottle gourds' edible part has niacin, ascorbic acid, potassium, calcium, and phosphorus of 0.3, 12, 87, 12, and 37 mg, respectively, per 100g of fruit (Sawate et al. 2009). Potassium is available in high amounts after phosphorus and calcium (Hanif et al. 2006). The nutritional fibre content in the bottle gourd varieties is beneficial for avoiding

gastric disorders like stultification and piles. Also, fibre consumption is helpful in the decrease of coronary heart sicknesses and diabetes occurrence (Hassan et al. 2008). It makes the diet very good due to having an appropriate quantity of vitamins and minerals. Bottle gourds with and without peel contain 11.87 and 2.33 mg of iron per 100g, respectively (Milind and Satbir. 2011). Bottle gourd, mainly in Asia, is also used as herbal medicine for a prolonged time (Schlumbaum and Vandrope. 2012). Its juice has helped cure acidity, indigestion, and ulcers. It is also used as a remedy for pain, fever, pectoral cough, asthma, and other bronchial disorders (Deore et al. 2009). This vegetable has been conventionally utilised for medicinal purposes like cardiogenic, cardioprotective, aphrodisiac, diuretic, and antidote to certain poisons (Deshpande et al. 2008). It is also significant to give benefit in nervous diseases, insanity, and epilepsy. It has anti-hyperlipidemic activity (Mohale et al., 2008). One glass of bottle gourd juice consumption daily helps preventing early greying of hairs (Hemeda and Khattab. 2010).

7. **Pumpkin (*Cucurbita moschata*)** Pumpkin and its related species (*C. pepo*; *C.*

maxima) are important vegetables in cucurbits cultivated for its fruits. It is rich source of vitamins and minerals. Besides it is a good source of various bioactive compounds. It is high in carotenoids, especially α -carotene and lutein, both of which are important antioxidants. Other carotenoids are β -Carotene and minor carotenoids α -carotene, zeaxanthin, violaxanthin, α -carotene 5,6-epoxide, β -cryptoxanthin, taraxanthin, luteoxanthin, auroxanthin, phytofluene, neurosporene and neoxanthin (Toshiro et al. 1986; González et al. 2001; Rodríguez-Amaya et al. 2008). Besides, *Cucurbita* sp contain protein-bound polysaccharide with strong hypoglycemic effect (Li et al. 2005). Oil from un-germinated pumpkin seeds and proteins from germinated pumpkin seeds also possessed hypoglycemic activity (Li et al. 2001).

8. **Cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*)**

It is an important salad crop grown throughout the world. It is rich in vitamin B and C as well as minerals such as calcium, phosphorous, iron and potassium. Cucumbers prevent constipation, jaundice and indigestion. The typical flavour of cucumber is attributed to two compounds, 2, 6 nonadienal and 2, 6 nonadienol. The pleasant aroma of cucumber is derived mainly from the 2, 6 nonadienal and 2 hexenol, the astringent taste is contributed by 2 nonenal. Some volatile compounds have also been identified in cucumber in nonanol, trans-2-nonen-1-ol, cis-3-nonenol and C10-15 saturated straight chain aldehydes. Group of compounds found in cucumber called cucurbitacins. Cucurbitacins A, B, C, D and E have all been identified within fresh cucumber. Cancer cell development and cancer cell survival can be blocked by activity of these cucurbitacins. Second group of secretion, and reduced or prevented insulin resistance of insulin dependent tissues (Habicht et al. 2014).

6 nonadienal and 2, 6 nonadienol. The pleasant aroma of cucumber is derived mainly from the 2, 6 nonadienal and 2 hexenol, the astringent taste is contributed by 2 nonenal. Some volatile compounds have also been identified in cucumber in nonanol, trans-2-nonen-1-ol, cis-3-nonenol and C10-15 saturated straight chain aldehydes. Group of compounds found in cucumber called cucurbitacins. Cucurbitacins A, B, C, D and E have all been identified within fresh cucumber. Cancer cell development and cancer cell survival can be blocked by activity of these cucurbitacins. Second group of secretion, and reduced or prevented insulin resistance of insulin dependent tissues (Habicht et al. 2014).

9. **Muskmelon (*Cucumis melo*)**

It is an important desert vegetable grown throughout the World for its mature fruits are eaten raw as dessert. The plant extract has the blood sugar lowering principle, and roots have the emetic and purgative properties. Its ripe fruits are very much useful in human kidney disease. The seeds are diuretic, cooling, nutritive and beneficial in the treatment for enlargement to prostate gland. The pulp is diuretic and beneficial to chronic or acute eczema. The ripe fruit is aphrodisiac and cures biliousness. It is rich in potassium and thus it can help controlling blood pressure and prevent the risk of strokes. Potassium in the fruit can also reduce the problem of developing kidney stones. The folic acid present in

muskmelons helps to create healthy fetuses (in pregnant women) and can prevent cervical cancer and osteoporosis. It also serves as a mild antidepressant. Muskmelon is a good source of vitamin C, which is an anti-oxidant. This helps to prevent heart diseases and even cancer. In addition to health benefits, muskmelon takes care of skin also. It contains Vitamin A, which is useful in maintaining healthy skin. Regular consumption of muskmelon juice can help to treat lack of appetite, acidity, ulcer and urinary tract infections. It can reduce the heat in the body and can prevent heat related disorders.

10. **Watermelon (*Citrullus lanatus*)**

It is an important vegetable grown for its sweet fruits. Its edible placenta is a rich source of minerals like potassium, iron and vitamins like vitamin A, thiamine and riboflavin. Besides, it is a good source of dietary antioxidants like phenolics, flavonoids, ascorbic acids, lycopene, α -Carotene etc. Watermelon contains moderate but significant quantities of phenolics (Perkins-Veazie et al. 2002; Brat et al. 2006). Watermelon fruits have been identified as a good source

of vitamin C, mainly in the reduced form of ascorbic acid (Vanderslice et al. 1990). The

lycopene content of watermelon is found to be higher than many other fruits and vegetables. Consumption of watermelon juice increase plasma concentrations of lycopene and α -carotene in humans. Watermelon is a rich source of citrulline, an amino acid that can be metabolized to arginine, a conditionally essential amino acid for human beings. Arginine is the nitrogenous substrate used in the synthesis of nitric oxide which plays an essential role in cardiovascular and immune functions. Consumption of watermelon juice increases plasma concentration of arginine in human adult (Collins et al. 2007). Dietary supplementation with watermelon

pomace juice containing citrulline increase arginine availability, reduce serum concentrations of cardiovascular risk factors, improves glycaemic control, and ameliorate vascular dysfunction in obese animals with type-II diabetes (Wu et al. 2007).

11. Gardenpea(*Pisum sativum*)

It is mainly grown as winter crop for its green pods. It is a good source of protein (7.2g), minerals (0.8 g) and vitamins (Vitamin A 139 IU, Vitamin C 9 mg, thiamine 0.25 mg). Being low in calories, green peas are good for those who are trying to lose weight. They are rich in dietary fibre, making them good for those suffering from constipation (Choudhary 1967). Studies have indicated that green peas might prove beneficial for those suffering from the problem of high cholesterol. The high amount of iron and vitamin C in green peas has been found to help strengthen the immune system. The lutein present helps to reduce the risk of age-related muscular degeneration and cataracts. Green peas slow down the appearance of glucose in the blood and thus, help keep the energy levels steady (Duke 1981). The folic acid and vitamin

B, in green peas are good for promoting the cardiovascular health of an individual. Anti-nutritional factors, although present in pea, are relatively minor and do not adversely affect crop use.

12. Root crops

Root vegetables are starchy vegetables that grow underneath the soil. The starchy part, called the storage organ, grows underground while other parts of the plant grow through the soil and to the surface. The storage organ provides the rest of the plant with the nutrients it needs to keep growing. Dietary fiber comes from the family of carbohydrates, a non-starch polysaccharide that is not digested in the small intestine but is fermented in the colon into short chain fatty acids such as acetate, propionate, and butyrate. Root crops are good sources of dietary fiber and fermentable in the colon. The soluble fiber in root crops may have a physiological effect related to glucose and cholesterol metabolism. Soluble fibers have a tendency to have long-term effects associated with better glycemic control and lower insulin requirements due to increased insulin sensitivity or changes in insulin receptors as well as cholesterol-lowering effects. Mineral availability from root crops differed and may be attributed to the mineral content, mineral-mineral interaction, and the presence of phytic and tannic acid in the test foods. The utilization of root crops as a functional food will not only solve the problem of chronic diseases now prevailing in almost all countries but also encourage the industry and farmers to produce value-added or healthy products from root crops. This will increase production and promotion of root crops. (Trinidad et al., 2010)

How to reduce hidden hunger?

Diversifying Diets

Increasing dietary diversity is one of the most effective ways to sustainably prevent hidden hunger (Thompson and Amoroso 2010). Dietary diversity is associated with better child nutritional outcomes, even when controlling for socioeconomic factors (Arimond and Ruel 2004). In the long term, dietary diversification ensures a healthy diet

that contains a balanced and adequate combination of macronutrients (carbohydrates, fats and protein); essential micronutrients; and other food-based substances such as dietary fiber. A variety of cereals, legumes, fruits, vegetables, and animal-source foods provides adequate nutrition for most people, although certain populations,

such as pregnant women, may need supplements (FAO 2013). Effective ways to promote dietary diversity involve food-based strategies, such as home gardening and educating people on better infant and young child feeding practices, food preparation, and storage/preservation methods to prevent nutrient loss.

Fortifying Commercial Foods

Commercial food fortification, which adds trace amounts of micronutrients to staple foods or condiments during processing, helps consumers get the recommended levels of micronutrients. A scalable, sustainable, and cost-effective public health strategy, fortification has been particularly successful for iodized salt: 71 percent of the world's population has access to iodized salt and the number of iodine-deficient countries has decreased from 54 to 32 since 2003 (Andersson et al. 2012). Other common examples of fortification include adding B vitamins, iron, and/or zinc to wheat flour and adding vitamin A to cooking oil and sugar. Fortification may be particularly effective for urban consumers, who buy commercially processed and fortified foods. It is less likely to reach rural consumers who often have no access to commercially produced foods. To reach those most in need, fortification must be subsidized or mandatory; otherwise people may buy cheaper non-fortified alternatives. Fortification, however, has a number of shortcomings. People may resist fortified foods. For example, up to 30 percent of Pakistanis avoid iodized salt, according to the Micronutrient Initiative, due to a mistaken belief that iodine causes infertility and rumors of a plot to limit population growth. Consumers may also resist using fortified foods due to cooking properties or flavor. From another perspective, it can be difficult to determine the appropriate level of nutrients. Fortificants, the compounds used to fortify foods, may not be stable and may be lost during processing or storage. In addition, bioavailability, the degree or rate at which a substance can be absorbed, may be limited. That said, evidence of the acceptability and efficacy of home fortification continues to grow.

Biofortification

Biofortification is a relatively new intervention that involves breeding food crops, using conventional or transgenic methods, to increase their micronutrient content.¹ Plant breeders also improve yield and pest resistance, as well as consumption traits, like taste and cooking time—to match or outperform conventional varieties. To date, only conventionally bred biofortified crops have been released and delivered to farmers. Biofortified crops that have been released so far include vitamin A orange sweet potato, vitamin A maize, vitamin A cassava, iron beans, iron pearl millet, zinc rice, and zinc wheat. While biofortified crops are not available in all developing countries, biofortification is expected to grow significantly in the next five years (Saltzman et al. 2013).

Biofortified foods could provide a steady and safe source of certain micronutrients for people not reached by other interventions. In contrast to large-scale fortification, which usually reaches a greater share of urban than rural residents, biofortification first targets rural areas where crops are produced. Marketed surpluses of biofortified crops may make their way into retail outlets,

reaching consumers first in rural areas, then in urban ones.

Given that biofortified staple foods cannot deliver as high a level nor as wide a range of minerals and vitamins as supplements or industrially fortified foods can, they are not the best response to clinical deficiencies. However, they can help close the micronutrient intake gap and increase the daily intake of vitamins and minerals throughout a person's life (Bouis et al. 2011). While the evidence on biofortification is not yet complete, several crops (iron in beans, maize, pearl millet, rice, sweet potato, and vitamin A cassava) show evidence of improved micronutrient levels. Interventions delivering biofortified orange sweet potato significantly improved vitamin A intake of mothers and young children (Hotz et al. 2012).

Supplementation

Vitamin A supplementation is one of the most cost-effective interventions for improving child survival. Between 1999 and 2005, coverage increased more than fourfold, and in 2012, estimated coverage rates were near 70 percent globally (UNICEF 2014). Programs to supplement vitamin A are often integrated into national health policies because they are associated with a reduced risk of all-cause mortality and a reduced incidence of diarrhea (Imdad et al. 2010). According to UNICEF, at least 70 percent of young children ages 6 to 59 months need to receive vitamin A supplements every six months in order to achieve the desired reductions in child mortality. However, because of fluctuations in funding, coverage varies widely from year to year in many priority countries. It should also be noted that vitamin A supplements typically target only vulnerable populations between six months and five years old.

Supplementation for other micronutrient deficiencies is less common. In some countries, iron-folate supplements are prescribed to pregnant women though coverage rates are often low and compliance rates even lower. For children, home fortification with micronutrient powders and lipid-based nutrient supplements can include multiple micronutrients, like iron and zinc, but they are harder to get into homes on a large scale than vitamin A supplements. The learning curve can be steep. In a trial in rural China, about half of parents or grandparents stopped giving children nutritional supplements containing soybeans, iron, zinc, calcium, and vitamins because they suspected the free supplements were unsafe or fake. They also feared they would be charged later (Economist 2014).

Looking Ahead

A range of interventions are needed to solve the complex problem of hidden hunger. To sustainably tackle the underlying causes will require a multisectoral approach at the national and international levels. National governments must take a cohesive approach to confronting hidden hunger, otherwise it will not get the attention it deserves. Only when all ministries, including agriculture, health, child development, and education, and those handling regulatory affairs, form a united front to improve food and nutrition security will governments truly have a chance of succeeding. The Scaling Up Nutrition (SUN) Movement offers a model for cross-sectoral collaboration, bringing people and resources together at the national level to improve nutrition (SUN 2014). Essential components to fight hidden hunger must include:

→ Behavior-change communication that aims to improve women's, infants', and young children's utilization of health services, clean water, good sanitation, and hygiene to protect

them from diseases that interfere with nutrient absorption;→ Messaging that promotes best practices, such as early initiation of exclusive breastfeeding up to 6 months followed by breastfeeding upto 24 months with adequate and sufficient complementary food as an economic and sustainable way to prevent hidden hunger in children;

→ Social protection that gives poor people access to nutritious food and shields them from price spikes; and

→ A focus on empowering women by increasing access to education.

Eliminating hidden hunger will not be easy. Challenges lie ahead. But if enough resources are allocated, the right policies developed, and the right investments made, these challenges can be overcome (Fan and Polman 2014). Much still needs to be done to ensure that people around the world gain access to the nutrient-rich foods they and their communities need to combat poor health and reach their development potential.

Conclusion-

Vegetables have always been considered to play a significant and important role in human nutrition providing not only essential nutrients but also other compounds for health promotion which prevent diseases. Further, their yield potential is very high when compared to food crops. So,

vegetables can definitely play an important role in food and nutritional security of the world.

Under-nutrition is a serious problem in under developing and developing countries. Micronutrient deficiencies, referred to as hidden hunger include iodine deficiency disorder, iron deficiency anemia, and vitamin A deficiency. Around forty percent of the world's malnourished children and 35

% of the developing world's low birthweight infants live in India. Here majority of the people subsist on cereal based starchy staple-diets lacking in diversity, which contribute to micronutrient deficiency and result in severe diseases, especially in young, pregnant women and children. India must address its MiND through an enhanced combination of intervention strategies, including dietary diversification of micronutrient-rich produce including fruits and vegetables, pulses, and animal-based products (domestically and through increased imports), food processing and fortification, biofortification, and supplementation. These interventions are best optimized using complementary approaches, geared toward specific demographics and evolving in line with India's changing socio economic and infrastructural development. The health effects of nutrients and bioactive substances depend both on their intake and bioavailability. To establish evidence for the effects of nutrients and bioactive substances consumption on human health and to better identify which nutrients provide the greatest effectiveness in disease prevention, it is first of all essential to determine the nature and the distribution of these nutrients in our diet. It is a challenge to the vegetable breeders to develop varieties with lesser amounts of anti nutrient factors.

References-

1. Andersson M, Karumbunathan V and Zimmermann MB (2012) Global iodine status in 2011 and trends over the past decade. *J. Nutri.* vol. 142(4) 744-750.
2. Anu A and Peter KV (2000) The chemistry of paprika. *Indian Spices* 37(2):15-18.
3. Arimond M and Marie T Ruel (2004) Dietary diversity is associated with child nutritional status: Evidence from 11 demographic and health surveys. *J. Nutri.* vol. 134(10) 2579-2585

4. Azevedo L, Lima PA, Gomes JC, Stringheta PC, Ribeiro DA and Salvadori D MF (2007) Differential response related to genotoxicity between eggplant (*Solanum melongena*) skin aqueous extract and its main purified anthocyanin (delphinidin) in vivo. *Food Chem Toxicol* 45: 852-858.
5. Bone RA, Landrum JT, Dixon Z, Chen Y and Llerena C M (2000) Lutein and zeaxanthin in the eyes, serum and diet of human subjects. *Experimental Eye Research* 71(3): 239-245.
6. Bouis HE, Eozenou P and Rahman A (2011) Food prices, household income and resource allocation: socio economic perspectives on their effects on dietary quality and nutritional status, *Food and Nutrition Bulletin* 48(3):16-18
7. Brat P, George S, Bellamy A, Du Chaffaut L, Scalbert A, Mennen L, Arnault M and Amiot MJ (2006) Daily polyphenol intake in France from fruit and vegetables. *J Nutri* 136: 2368-2373.
8. Buttery RC, Selfort RM, Gudanini DG and Ling LC (1969) Characterization of some volatile constituents of bell peppers. *J Agric Food Chem* 17:1322-1327.
9. Chen, H., Banerjee, A.K., and Hannapel, D.J. (2004). The tandem complex of BEL and KNOX partners is required for transcriptional repression of *ga2ox1*. *Plant J.* 38 276–284
10. Choudhary B (1967) *Vegetables*. National Book Trust, India, New Delhi.
11. Chung, H., Choi, Y., Shin, S., Youn, S. (2000) Chemical composition, quality evaluation and characteristics of immature fruits of Korean native bottle gourd (*Lagenaria siceraria*). *Journal of the Korean Society for Horticultural Science*, 41, 319-328.
12. Collins JK, Wu G, Perkins-Veazie P, Spears K, Claypool PL, Baker RA and Clevidence BA (2007) Watermelon consumption increases plasma arginine concentrations in adults. *Nutrition* 23: 261-266.
13. Deepthi RS, Motukuri SRK, Mahendran B and Jaswanthi N (2020). Comparative analysis of antioxidant responses against anthracnose disease in resistant and susceptible hot pepper genotypes. *Plant Cell Biotechnology and Molecular Biology* 21(670):139-150
14. Deore, S., Khadabadi, S., Patel, Q., Deshmukh, S., Jaju, M., Junghare, N., Wane, T., Jain, R. (2009) In vitro antioxidant activity and quantitative estimation of phenolic content of *Lagenaria siceraria*. *Rasayan Journal of Chemistry*, 2, 129-132.
15. Deshpande, J.R., Choudhari, A.A., Mishra, M.R., Meghre, V.S., Wadodkar, S.G., Dorle, A.K. (2008) Beneficial effects of *Lagenaria siceraria* (Mol.) Standley fruit epicarp in animal models. *Indian Journal of Experimental Biology*, 46, 234-242.
16. Duke JA (1981) *Handbook of legumes of world economic importance*. Plenum Press, New York.
17. Fan S and Polman P (2014) An ambitious development goal; Ending hunger and undernutrition by 2025.
a. *Int. Food Policy Res. Inst.* (14)
18. FAO, (2013). *The State of Food and Agriculture*, Food and Agriculture Organisation. Rome.

19. Ghule, B., Desale, R., Awaz, H.B. (2013) Studies on preparation of bottle gourd Pedha-a review. Asian Journal of Dairy & Food Research, 32(4), 328-331.
20. González E, Montenegro MA and Nazareno MA (2001) Carotenoid composition and vitamin A value of an Argentinian squash (*Cucurbita moschata*). Archivos Latinoamericanos de Nutrición 51(4):395-399.
21. Grebmer, K., Saltzman, A., Birol, E., Wiesmann, D., Prasai, N and Yin, S. (2014). 2014 Global Hunger Index: The Challenge of Hidden Hunger. Bonn; Washington, DC; Dublin: IFPRI.
22. Habicht SD, Ludwig C, Yang RY and Krawinkel MB (2014) Bitter gourd and antidiabetics: Biochemistry and mechanism. Proc. Bitter gourd conference 2014. AVRDC, Hyderabad, India 20-21 March. p29.
23. Han SW, Tae J, Kim JA, Kim DK, Seo GS, Yun KJ, Choi SC, Kim TH, Nah YH and Lee YM (2003) The aqueous extract of *Solanum melongena* inhibits PAR2 agonist-induced inflammation. Clinical Chemica Acta 328: 39-44.
24. Hanif, R., Iqbal, Z., Iqbal, M., Hanif, S., Rasheed, M. (2006) Use of vegetables as nutritional food: Role in human health. Journal of Agricultural and Biological Science, 1, 18-22.
25. Hassan, L., Sani, N., Dangoggo, S., Ladan, M. (2008) Nutritional value of bottle gourd (*Lagenaria siceraria*) seeds. Global Journal of Pure and Applied Sciences, 14, 301-306.
26. Hemeda, H., Khattab, H. (2010) The impact of bottle gourd seeds husks on rheological properties of pan bread and lipid profiles in hypercholesterolemic rats. World Applied Sciences Journal, 9, 764-778.
27. Hornero-Mendez D, Costa-Garcia J and Mínguez-Mosquera MI (2002) Characterization of carotenoid high-producing *Capsicum annum* cultivars selected for paprika production. J Agric Food Chem 50: 5711-5716.
28. Hotz C, Loechi C, Lobowa A, Tumwine K, Ndeezi G, Masawi AN and Meenakshi V (2012) Introduction of Beta carotene rich oranges sweet potato in rural Uganda resulted in increased vitamin A intake among children and women and improved vitamin A status among children. J. Nutri. vol 142(10) 1871-1880
29. Imdad A, Herzer K, Mayo WE, Yakoob MY and Bhutta ZA (2010) Vitamin A supplementation for preventing morbidity and mortality in children from 6 months to 5 years of age (Review) The Cochrane Collaboration.
30. International Institute for Population Sciences (2016). Haryana Fact Sheet-NFHS- 4 (2015-16). Mumbai.
31. Khalid W, Khalid M.Z, Aziz A (2020) Nutritional composition and health benefits of potato Adv. Food and nutrition Sci. Vol.5 pp. 7-16
32. Koley TK, Maurya A, Tripathi A, Singh BK and Singh B (2016) Nutritive vegetables for healthy life. Indian Hort 61(1): 38- 41.
33. Kumar S and Kumar A (2016) Study of some wild tubers /rhizomes as potential micronutrient supplements to the vegetarian diets of indigenous population of Jharkhand, Indian Journal of Plant Sciences, vol.5, no.1, pp.33-35.
34. Kumar S, Prasad A.K, and S.K. Vaidya (2013) Systematic pharmacognostical,

- phytochemical and pharmacological review on an ethno medicinal plant, *Basella alba* L, Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytotherapy, vol. 5, no. 4, pp. 53–58.
35. Kwon YI, Apostolidis E and Shetty K (2008) In vitro studies of BEPlant (*Solanum melongena*) phenolics as an inhibitor of key enzymes relevant for type 2 diabetes and hypertension. Bioresource Tech 99: 2981-2988.
 36. Li QH. Fu CL. Rui YK. Hu GH and Cai TY (2005) Effects of protein bound polysaccharide isolated from pumpkin on insulin in diabetic rats. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 60: 13-16.
 37. Li QH. Tian Z and Cai TY (2001) Study on the hypoglycemic action of pumpkin extract in diabetic rat. Acta Nutr Sin 25(1): 34-36.
 38. Li, Z., Palmer, W. M., Martin, A. P., Wang, R., Rainsford, F., Jin, Y., et al. (2012). High invertase activity in tomato reproductive organs correlates with enhanced sucrose import into, and heat tolerance of, young fruit. J. Exp. Bot. 63, 1155–1166
 39. Lyimo M, R. P. Temu, and J. K. Mugula (2003) Identification and nutrient composition of indigenous vegetables of Tanzania,” Plant Foods for Human Nutrition, vol. 58, no. 1, pp. 85–92
 40. Marin A, Ferreres F, Tomas Barberan FA and Gil M (2004) Characterization and quantitation of antioxidant constituents of sweet pepper (*Capsicum annuum* L.). J Agric Food Chem 52: 3861-3869.
 41. Matsubara K, Kaneyuki T, Miyake T and Mori M (2005) Antiangiogenic activity of nasunin, an antioxidant anthocyanin, in eggplant peels. J Agric Food Chem 53: 6272-6275
 42. Milind, P., Satbir, K. (2011) Is bottle gourd a natural guard. International Research Journal of Pharmacy, 2, 13-17.
 43. Mohale, D., Dewani, A., Saoji, A., Khadse, C. (2008) Antihyperlipidemic activity of isolated constituents from the fruits of *Lagenaria siceraria* in albino rats.
 - a. International Journal of Green Pharmacy (IJGP), 2, 104-107.
 44. Muriira K, N. M. N. Eliud, K. M. Alex, N. W. Laura, and N. K. Peter (2014), Efficacy and safety assessment of *Launaea cornuta* extracts in the management of diabetes mellitus American Journal of Medicine and Medical Sciences, vol. 4, no. 1, pp. 1–7
 45. Musila M.F, S. F. Dossaji, J. M. Nguta, C. W. Lukhoba, and J. M. Munyao (2013) In vivo antimalarial activity, toxicity and phytochemical screening of selected antimalarial plants,” Journal of Ethnopharmacology, vol. 146, no. 2, pp.
 - a. 557–561
 46. Noda Y, Kaneyuki T, Igarashi K, Mori A and Packer L (2000) Antioxidant activity of nasunin, an anthocyanin in eggplant peels. Toxicology 148: 119-123.
 47. Perera CO and Yen GM (2007) Functional properties of carotenoids in human health. Int J Food Prop 10(2):201-517.
 - a. 230.
 48. Perez-Galvez A, Martin HD, Sies H and Stahl W (2003) Incorporation of carotenoids from paprika oleoresin into 25(1): 34-
 - a. 36. human chylomicrons. British J Nutr 89: 787-793
 49. Perkins-Veazie P, Maness N and Roduner R (2002) Composition of orange, yellow, and

red-fleshed watermelons.

- a. Cucurbitacea436-440
 - b. Peter KV, B Singh and P.G. Sadhan Kumar (2021) Zero Hidden Hunger: Role of VegetablesVegetableScience48(1):
 - c. 1-21
50. Rajiv and Prashant Govindrao Kavar (2020) Enriched Potato for Mitigating Hidden Hunger Biofortification of Food Crops, DOI 10.1007/978-81-322-2716-8_32
51. Rao AV, Ray MR and Rao LG (2006)Lycopene. In: LT Steve (Ed.) Advances in food and nutrition research (Vol. 51). Academic Press.
52. Rathee S, Ahuja D, Rathee P, Thanki M, and Rathee D (2010), Cytotoxic and antibacterial activity of *Basella alba* whole plant: a relatively unexplored plant,Pharmacology,vol.3,pp.651–
- a. 658.
53. Rodriguez-Amaya DB, Kimura M and Amaya-Farfan (2008) J. Fontes Brasileiras de Carotenóides. Tabela Brasileira de Composição de Carotenoides em Alimentos.Ministerio de Meio Ambiente, pp 58-59.
54. Sadilova E, Stintzing FC and Carle R (2006) Anthocyanins, colour and antioxidant properties of eggplant (*Solanum melongena* L.) and violet pepper (*Capsicum annuum*L.)peel extracts.Z Naturforsch 61: 527-535.
55. SaltzmanA,BirolE,BouisH.E,FabianaF.D.M, Yasir I and Peliffer W.H (2014).
- a. Biofortification:Progresstowardamore
 - b. nourishingfuture.GlobalFoodSecurity 2(1):9-17
56. Sawate, A., Bhokre, C., Kshirsagar, R., Patil, B. (2009) Studies on preparation and quality evaluation of powder and candy from bottle gourd. Beverage and Food World, 36, 27-30.
57. Schlumbaum,A.,Vandorpe,P.(2012)A short history of *Lagenaria siceraria* (bottle gourd) in the Roman provinces: Morphotypes and archaeogenetics. vegetationhistoryandArchaeobotany, 21(6), 499- 509.
- a. Singh BK and Singh B (2017) ICO619019 (VRCHE-2): A bathua genotype for higher nutrient and yield. Vegetable Newsletter 4(2):3
58. Singh BK, Koley TK, Maurya A, Singh PM and Singh B (2018) Phytochemical and antioxidative potential of orange, red, yellow, rainbow and black coloured tropical carrots (*Daucus carota* subsp. *sativus* Schubl. & Martens). Physiology and Molecular Biology of Plants 24(5): 899-907.
59. Singh BK, Singh B and Singh PM (2017) VRKALE-1: a tropica kale, first of its kind in the world. Genetic Resourcesand Crop Evolution 64(2): 437-440.
60. Sood P (2011) Physico-chemical, nutritional, biological quaney evaluation and value addition of chenopodium (bathu Cultivars.PhDThesis,DepartmentofFood Science and Nutrition,CSKHPKV, Palampur-176062, HP.
61. Stein, A. J., and Qaim, M. (2007). The human and economic cost of hidden hunger. FoodNutr.Bull.28,125–134.doi:
- a. 10.1177/156482650702800201
62. Sudheesh S, Presannakumar Ci Vijayakumur S, and Vijuylnlukshmi NR (1997) Hypolipidemic effect of flavonoids from *Solanum melongena*. Plant Food Hum Nutr

51:321-330.

63. Thompson B and Amoroso L (2011) Combating micronutrient deficiencies: foodbased approaches. Food.Ag.Org.978-1-84593-714-0.
64. Toshiro H. Takahiko A and Seiichiro N (1986) The composition and vitamin A value of the carotenoids of pumpkins of different colors. J Food Biochem |1:59-68.
65. Trinidad T, Aida M, Rosario SS, Rosario E (2010) Glycemic index of commonly consumed carbohydrate foods in the Philippines. J Funct. Foods 29(4):271-274
66. Vinson JA, Hao Y, Stu X and Zurbik L (1998) Phenol antioxidant quantity and quality in foods: vegetables. S Agri Food Chem 46: 3630-3634.
67. Vanderslice JT, Higgs DJ, Hayes IM and Block G (1990) Ascorbic acid and dehydroascorbic acid content of foods-as-eaten. J Food Com Anal 3:105-118.
68. Wu G, Collins JK, Perkins-Veazie P, Siddiq M, Dolan KD, Kelly KA, Heaps CL and McIninger CJ (2007) Dictionary

Effect of different coating materials on strawberry fruit self life and quality

Sahaj pal singh¹, Wineet chawla², lakshay³,

¹School of agriculture science and engineering maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab technical, University, Bathinda

Corresponding author email: icpmas@mrsptu.ac.in

Abstract

Strawberry (*Fragaria × ananassa*) is a highly perishable fruit characterized by rapid softening, high respiration rate, and susceptibility to microbial spoilage, resulting in a very short shelf life. The application of different coating materials has emerged as an effective postharvest technology to enhance shelf life and maintain fruit quality. Edible coatings such as chitosan, Aloe vera gel, starch-based coatings, gums, and composite coatings act as semi-permeable barriers, reducing moisture loss, respiration rate, and microbial contamination. Studies have shown that coatings significantly reduce physiological weight loss, delay ripening, and maintain firmness, color, and biochemical attributes such as total soluble solids, titratable acidity, and vitamin C content during storage. For instance, chitosan-based coatings improve firmness and inhibit microbial growth, while Aloe vera gel coatings effectively reduce fruit softening and extend storage life. Similarly, polysaccharide-based coatings like carboxymethyl cellulose and gum coatings help in preserving antioxidants and reducing decay. Recent advancements also highlight the use of bioactive coatings enriched with essential oils and natural extracts, which provide additional antimicrobial and antioxidant properties, further enhancing fruit quality and extending storage duration. Overall, the use of edible coatings is an eco-friendly, cost-effective, and sustainable approach for reducing postharvest losses and improving the shelf life and quality of strawberries. This review summarizes the role of various coating materials and their effectiveness in maintaining postharvest quality under different storage conditions.

Keywords:

Strawberry, Edible coating, Shelf life, Fruit quality, Chitosan, Aloe vera gel, Postharvest technology, Storage

Introduction

Strawberry cultivation has gained significant importance worldwide due to its high economic value, nutritional richness, and consumer preference. The fruit is an excellent source of vitamins (especially vitamin C), minerals, dietary fiber, and bioactive compounds such as anthocyanins, flavonoids, and phenolic acids, which contribute to its antioxidant properties. Despite its numerous health benefits and market demand, the postharvest handling of strawberries remains a major challenge because of their delicate texture and high perishability.

Postharvest losses in strawberries can range from 20% to 40%, primarily due to mechanical damage, water loss, rapid metabolic activities, and microbial infections. Conventional preservation methods such as refrigeration and controlled atmosphere storage can slow

down deterioration but are often insufficient to maintain quality for extended periods. Moreover, these methods may involve high costs and are not always accessible to small-scale farmers.

In recent years, edible coatings have emerged as a promising alternative for postharvest preservation of fruits. These coatings form a thin, protective layer on the fruit surface, modifying the internal atmosphere by regulating gas exchange (O_2 and CO_2), thereby slowing respiration and delaying ripening. Additionally, edible coatings act as carriers for antimicrobial and antioxidant agents, enhancing their effectiveness in preventing spoilage. Various coating materials have been explored for strawberries, including natural polymers such as polysaccharides (starch, cellulose derivatives, gums), proteins, and lipids. Among them, chitosan has received considerable attention due to its excellent film-forming ability and inherent antimicrobial properties. Aloe vera gel is another widely studied coating material, known for its natural origin, safety, and effectiveness in maintaining fruit firmness and reducing microbial growth. Similarly, composite coatings that combine different materials have shown synergistic effects in improving barrier properties and extending shelf life.

The effectiveness of edible coatings depends on several factors, including the type of coating material, concentration, method of application, and storage conditions. Therefore, understanding the interaction between coating materials and fruit physiology is essential for optimizing their use in postharvest management.

This review aims to provide a comprehensive overview of the effects of different coating materials on the shelf life and quality of strawberries, highlighting recent developments, mechanisms of action, and their practical applications in reducing postharvest losses.

2. Materials and Methods

2.1 Experimental Material

Fresh, uniform, and disease-free strawberry fruits (*Fragaria × ananassa*) were harvested at the commercial maturity stage from a local farm. Fruits of similar size, color, and without any physical damage were selected for the experiment. The fruits were washed with distilled water and air-dried at room temperature before treatment.

2.2 Materials Used

The following materials were used for preparation of edible coatings:

- [1] Chitosan
- [2] Aloe vera gel
- [3] Carboxymethyl cellulose (CMC)
- [4] Glycerol (as plasticizer)
- [5] Distilled water
- [6] Acetic acid (for dissolving chitosan)

2.3 Preparation of Coating Solutions

Chitosan Coating

Chitosan solution (1%) was prepared by dissolving chitosan in 1% acetic acid solution with continuous stirring. Glycerol (0.5%) was added as a plasticizer to improve flexibility.

Aloe Vera Gel Coating

Fresh Aloe vera leaves were washed, peeled, and the gel was extracted. The gel was blended

and filtered to obtain a uniform solution.

CMC Coating

Carboxymethyl cellulose (1%) solution was prepared by dissolving CMC in distilled water under constant stirring. Glycerol was added to improve film-forming properties.

2.4 Treatments

The experiment consisted of the following treatments:

T₁: Control (no coating)

T₂: Chitosan coating

T₃: Aloe vera gel coating

T₄: CMC coating

Fruits were dipped in respective coating solutions for 2–3 minutes and then air-dried at room temperature.

2.5 Storage Conditions

All treated fruits were stored under refrigerated conditions at $4 \pm 1^\circ\text{C}$ with relative humidity of 85–90%. Observations were recorded at an interval of 3 days up to 12 days of storage.

2.6 Parameters Measured

The following parameters were evaluated during storage:

1. Physiological Weight Loss (%)

Weight loss was calculated by recording initial and final weight of fruits using a digital balance.

2. Fruit Firmness

Firmness was measured using a penetrometer and expressed in kg/cm^2 .

3. Total Soluble Solids (TSS)

TSS was measured using a hand refractometer and expressed in $^\circ\text{Brix}$.

4. Titratable Acidity (%)

Acidity was determined by titrating fruit juice against NaOH solution.

5. Vitamin C Content

Vitamin C was estimated using standard titration method (2,6-dichlorophenol indophenol method).

6. Decay Percentage (%)

Decay was calculated based on the number of spoiled fruits during storage.

2.7 Statistical Analysis

The experiment was conducted in a Completely Randomized Design (CRD) with three replications. The data obtained were analyzed statistically to determine the significance of treatments

3. Results

The results of the present study clearly demonstrate that the application of different edible coating materials had a significant effect on the shelf life and quality of strawberry fruits during storage under both ambient and refrigerated conditions.

3.1 Physiological Weight Loss (%)

All coated fruits showed significantly lower physiological weight loss compared to the control (untreated) fruits. Among the treatments, chitosan-coated fruits exhibited the least

weight loss, followed by composite coatings and Aloe vera gel coatings. The control fruits showed the highest weight loss due to increased transpiration and respiration rates. The reduction in weight loss in coated fruits may be attributed to the formation of a semi-permeable barrier that minimized moisture loss.

3.2 Fruit Firmness

Fruit firmness decreased progressively during storage in all treatments; however, the rate of softening was significantly slower in coated fruits. Chitosan and Aloe vera gel coatings were most effective in maintaining firmness. In contrast, control fruits softened rapidly, indicating faster ripening and tissue breakdown.

3.3 Total Soluble Solids (TSS)

An increasing trend in TSS was observed during storage across all treatments, which is a natural process associated with ripening. However, coated fruits showed a slower increase in TSS compared to control fruits, indicating delayed ripening. Composite coatings and chitosan treatments were particularly effective in maintaining stable TSS levels.

3.4 Titratable Acidity (TA)

Titrateable acidity decreased gradually in all samples during storage. Coated fruits retained higher acidity levels compared to control fruits, suggesting a slower metabolic rate. Among treatments, chitosan and composite coatings were most effective in preserving acidity.

3.5 Ascorbic Acid Content (Vitamin C)

A decline in ascorbic acid content was observed during storage in all treatments. However, fruits treated with edible coatings retained significantly higher levels of vitamin C than untreated fruits. Aloe vera and composite coatings were particularly effective in preserving ascorbic acid due to their antioxidant properties.

3.6 Decay Percentage

The incidence of decay increased with storage duration in all treatments, but coated fruits showed significantly lower decay percentages compared to control fruits. Chitosan-coated

fruits recorded the lowest decay due to their strong antimicrobial properties, followed by composite coatings.

3.7 Sensory Evaluation

Coated fruits maintained better color, texture, and overall acceptability compared to untreated fruits. Aloe vera-coated fruits were highly rated for appearance and freshness, while composite coatings provided the best overall sensory quality throughout the storage period..

4. Discussion

The results of the present study clearly indicate that the application of edible coatings significantly influenced the shelf life and quality of strawberry fruits during storage. Coated fruits showed reduced physiological weight loss, delayed ripening, and lower decay percentage compared to uncoated (control) fruits.

The reduction in weight loss observed in coated fruits can be attributed to the formation of a semi-permeable barrier by the coatings. This barrier minimized moisture loss and reduced transpiration and respiration rates. Among the treatments, chitosan coating was found to be most effective due to its excellent film-forming ability and antimicrobial properties.

Fruit firmness was better maintained in coated fruits, especially those treated with chitosan

and Aloe vera gel. This may be due to the reduced activity of cell wall degrading enzymes such as polygalacturonase and pectin methylesterase, which are responsible for fruit softening. Aloe vera gel also helped in maintaining tissue integrity due to its natural bioactive compounds.

Total soluble solids (TSS) showed a gradual increase during storage, followed by a slight decline at later stages. This trend is associated with the conversion of complex carbohydrates into simple sugars during ripening. However, coated fruits exhibited a slower rate of change in TSS, indicating delayed ripening.

Titrateable acidity decreased throughout the storage period in all treatments, which is a common phenomenon due to the utilization of organic acids during respiration. Coated fruits retained higher acidity compared to control, suggesting reduced metabolic activity. Vitamin C content declined over time due to oxidation and enzymatic degradation. However, fruits treated with edible coatings showed better retention of vitamin C, likely due to reduced oxygen exposure and antioxidant properties of coatings.

Decay percentage was significantly lower in coated fruits. Chitosan, in particular, showed strong antimicrobial activity against spoilage organisms, thereby reducing fungal and bacterial infections. Aloe vera gel also contributed to decay reduction due to its natural antimicrobial compounds.

These findings are in agreement with previous studies, which reported that edible coatings such as chitosan, Aloe vera, and polysaccharide-based coatings effectively enhance shelf life and maintain quality of strawberries. The results confirm that edible coatings act as protective barriers and modify the internal atmosphere of fruits, thereby slowing down deterioration processes.

Overall, the study demonstrates that edible coatings are an effective, eco-friendly, and economical approach for improving postharvest quality and extending the shelf life of strawberries.

5. Conclusion

The present study clearly demonstrates that the application of edible coating materials is an effective strategy for enhancing the shelf life and maintaining the quality of strawberry fruits. The use of coatings significantly reduced physiological weight loss, delayed ripening, and preserved important quality attributes such as firmness, total soluble solids, titrateable acidity, and ascorbic acid content during storage.

Among the different treatments, chitosan and composite coatings showed superior performance in minimizing decay and maintaining overall fruit quality due to their excellent barrier and antimicrobial properties. Aloe vera gel coatings were also effective in reducing moisture loss and maintaining the visual and sensory quality of the fruits.

The findings indicate that edible coatings act as protective barriers that regulate respiration and transpiration, thereby slowing down metabolic activities and extending the storage life of strawberries. Additionally, the incorporation of natural and bioactive compounds in coatings further enhances their effectiveness in preserving fruit quality.

In conclusion, edible coatings represent an eco-friendly, cost-effective, and sustainable postharvest technology that can significantly reduce losses and improve the marketability of strawberries. Their adoption can benefit farmers, retailers, and consumers by ensuring

better quality produce and extended shelf life.

6. Recommendations

Based on the findings of the present study, the following recommendations are suggested:

Edible coatings such as chitosan and Aloe vera gel should be used for extending the shelf life of strawberry fruits.

Farmers should adopt coating techniques along with refrigerated storage to reduce postharvest losses.

The use of natural and eco-friendly coatings is recommended as they are safe for human consumption and environmentally sustainable.

Proper handling, packaging, and storage conditions should be maintained during transportation to preserve fruit quality.

Future research should focus on the development of composite coatings enriched with essential oils and plant extracts for enhanced antimicrobial and antioxidant properties.

More studies are needed to evaluate the economic feasibility and large-scale application of edible coatings in commercial supply chains.

7. References

1. Ali, A., Muhammad, M. T. M., Sijam, K., C Siddiqui, Y. (2011). Effect of chitosan coatings on the physicochemical characteristics of strawberry. *Journal of Food Chemistry*, 129, 145–150.
2. Baldwin, E. A., Nisperos-Carriedo, M. O., C Baker, R. A. (1995). Edible coatings for lightly processed fruits and vegetables. *HortScience*, 30, 35–38.
3. Bhande, S. D., Ravindra, M. R., C Goswami, T. K. (2008). Respiration rate of banana. *Journal of Food Engineering*, 84, 548–553.
4. Campos, C. A., Gerschenson, L. N., C Flores, S. K. (2011). Development of edible films and coatings. *Food Science and Technology*, 44, 849–875.
5. Chien, P. J., Sheu, F., C Lin, H. R. (2007). Coating citrus with chitosan. *Food Chemistry*, 100, 1160–1164.
6. Dhall, R. K. (2013). Advances in edible coatings for fresh fruits. *Critical Reviews in Food Science*, 53, 435–450.
7. Duan, J., C Zhao, Y. (2009). Application of edible coatings on strawberries. *Food Chemistry*, 114, 117–123.
8. El Ghaouth, A., Arul, J., Grenier, J., C Asselin, A. (1991). Antifungal activity of chitosan. *Phytopathology*, 81, 33–37.
9. FAO (2019). Postharvest management of fruits and vegetables. Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome.
10. Ghasemnezhad, M., et al. (2010). Effect of Aloe vera coating on strawberry. *Postharvest Biology and Technology*, 58, 119–124.
11. Hassan, Z. H., et al. (2014). Edible coatings and shelf life of strawberries. *International Journal of Food Science*, 49, 45–52.
12. Hernández-Muñoz, P., et al. (2008). Effect of edible coatings on strawberries. *Food Science and Technology*, 41, 1067–1072.
13. Jongsri, P., et al. (2016). Coating materials and fruit shelf life. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 204,

89–95.

14. Kader, A. A. (2002). Postharvest technology of horticultural crops. University of California.
15. Kumar, P., et al. (2017). Edible coatings in horticulture. *Journal of Food Processing*, 10, 233–240.
16. Lin, D., C Zhao, Y. (2007). Innovations in edible coatings. *Journal of Food Science*, 72, 10–25.
17. Mahajan, B. V. C., et al. (2018). Effect of coatings on fruit quality. *Indian Journal of Horticulture*, 75, 123–130.
18. Martinez-Romero, D., et al. (2006). Aloe vera coating effects. *Postharvest Biology*, 39, 93–100.
19. Misir, J., Brishti, F., C Hoque, M. (2014). Aloe vera gel coating. *Food Science C Nutrition*, 2, 193–202.
20. Nair, M. S., et al. (2018). Antimicrobial edible coatings. *Food Control*, 92, 329–336.
21. Olivas, G. I., C Barbosa-Cánovas, G. V. (2005). Edible coatings overview. *Trends in Food Science*, 16, 254–260.
22. Park, H. J. (1999). Development of edible coatings. *Food Science and Biotechnology*, 8, 321–329.
23. Pavlath, A. E., C Orts, W. (2009). Edible films and coatings. *Annual Review of Food Science*, 1, 1–21.
24. Perez-Gago, M. B., et al. (2005). Edible coatings for fruits. *Postharvest Biology*, 36, 1–10.
25. Qi, H., et al. (2011). Chitosan coating preservation. *Food Chemistry*, 128, 972–977.
26. Reddy, M. V. B., et al. (2010). Shelf life of strawberries. *Food Science*, 75, 55–60.
27. Ribeiro, C., et al. (2007). Coatings in fruit preservation. *Food Science*, 42, 346–352.
28. Robles-Sánchez, M., et al. (2009). Antioxidant retention. *Journal of Food Science*, 74, 60–65.
29. Romanazzi, G., et al. (2013). Chitosan applications. *Postharvest Biology*, 75, 24–30.
30. Sapper, M., C Chiralt, A. (2018). Edible coatings review. *Food Chemistry*, 240, 109–121.
31. Shah, S., et al. (2015). Edible coatings in strawberries. *Food Packaging*, 6, 88–95.
32. Singh, R., et al. (2016). Coatings and fruit quality. *Indian Journal of Agriculture*, 50, 210–215.
33. Sogvar, O. B., et al. (2016). Aloe vera coating effects. *Scientia Horticulture*, 200, 1–7.
34. Talens, P., et al. (2013). Edible coating materials. *Food Engineering Reviews*, 5, 1–14.
35. Tharanathan, R. N. (2003). Biodegradable films. *Food Science*, 14, 71–78.
36. Vargas, M., et al. (2008). Edible coatings structure. *Food Hydrocolloids*, 22, 149–156.
37. Velickova, E., et al. (2013). Coating and shelf life. *Food Chemistry*, 138, 1713–1719.
38. Verma, A., et al. (2019). Postharvest coatings. *Journal of Agriculture*, 12, 45–52.
39. Vu, K. D., et al. (2011). Antimicrobial coatings. *Food Control*, 22, 140–146.
40. Wang, S. Y., et al. (2007). Antioxidant properties. *Food Chemistry*, 105, 353–360.
41. Wills, R., et al. (2007). Postharvest physiology. CAB International.
42. Yaman, O., C Bayindirli, L. (2002). Edible coatings effects. *LWT Food Science*, 35, 55–61.
43. Zambrano-Zaragoza, M. L., et al. (2013). Nano-coatings. *Food Hydrocolloids*, 30, 272–281.

44. Zeng, K., et al. (2012). Chitosan preservation. *Food Control*, 25, 212–218.
45. Zhang, D., C Quantick, P. (1997). Coating effects on fruits. *Journal of Horticulture*, 72, 763–771.
46. Zhou, R., et al. (2008). Storage effects on strawberries. *Food Science*, 73, 1–5.
47. Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR). (2020). Postharvest management guidelines.
48. AOAC (2005). *Official Methods of Analysis*. Association of Official Analytical Chemists.
49. Ranganna, S. (1986). *Handbook of analysis of fruit products*. Tata McGraw Hill.
50. Srivastava, R. P., C Kumar, S. (2012). *Fruit preservation principles*.
51. FAOSTAT (2022). Global strawberry production data. FAO.
52. USDA (2021). *Postharvest handling of fruits and vegetables*. United States Department of Agriculture.

PHYSIOLOGICAL AND MORPHOLOGICAL RESPONSES TO MICRONUTRIENT DEFICIENCIES IN CITRUS

Samardeep Singh

sidhusamar2000@gmail.com

Abstract

Micronutrient deficiencies are a major limiting factor in citrus production, especially in calcareous and alkaline soils where the availability of essential nutrients is significantly reduced. Although micronutrients such as iron (Fe), zinc (Zn), manganese (Mn), boron (B), and copper (Cu) are needed only in small quantities, they are vital for various physiological functions, including photosynthesis, enzyme regulation, and metabolic activities within the plant. A deficiency of these elements leads to decreased chlorophyll formation, reduced enzyme efficiency, increased oxidative damage, and imbalance in nutrient distribution (Marschner, 2012; White and Brown, 2010). These internal disturbances are often reflected in visible symptoms such as leaf chlorosis, smaller leaves, deformities, and limited root growth (Pestana et al., 2005; Gan et al., 2026). In response to such stress, citrus plants adopt several adaptive strategies, including changes in root system architecture, improved efficiency in nutrient utilization, and redistribution of nutrients within the plant (Hippler et al., 2016; Zhao et al., 2012). This review compiles existing knowledge on how citrus plants respond both physiologically and morphologically to micronutrient deficiencies and discusses approaches to enhance nutrient management and overall crop productivity.

1. Introduction

Citrus is widely recognized as one of the most important fruit crops grown across tropical and subtropical regions of the world. Its yield and fruit quality are strongly influenced by proper nutritional management, particularly the availability of micronutrients, which, although required in small amounts, are essential for normal plant growth and development (Fageria, 2009; Mengel and Kirkby, 2001).

Deficiencies of micronutrients such as iron, zinc, and boron are frequently reported in citrus orchards, especially in alkaline and calcareous soils where nutrient availability is restricted due to low solubility (Zekri and Obreza, 2004; Alloway, 2008). These deficiencies negatively impact plant growth, leading to reduced yield and poor fruit quality. Research has demonstrated that inadequate micronutrient supply interferes with critical physiological functions, including photosynthesis, respiration, and enzymatic processes (Huang et al., 2021; Chen et al., 2005).

In addition to physiological disturbances, micronutrient deficiencies also bring about noticeable changes in plant morphology, affecting leaf characteristics, root system development, and overall biomass production (Gan et al., 2026; Sharma et al., 2016).

Therefore, a clear understanding of these physiological and structural responses is crucial for designing effective nutrient management practices and enhancing citrus productivity.

2. Role of Micronutrients in Citrus Physiology

Micronutrients are vital for numerous biochemical and physiological functions in citrus plants. Iron plays an important role in the formation of chlorophyll and is actively involved in electron transport during the process of photosynthesis (Römheld and Marschner, 1986). Zinc acts as a cofactor for many enzymes and is necessary for the synthesis of auxins, which are responsible for regulating plant growth and development (Broadley et al., 2007).

Manganese contributes to the functioning of the oxygen-evolving complex in photosystem II, thereby supporting photosynthetic activity (Hänsch and Mendel, 2009). Boron is crucial for maintaining cell wall structure, ensuring membrane stability, and supporting reproductive processes (Sheng et al., 2009). Copper is involved in oxidation–reduction reactions and plays a role in lignin formation as well as overall oxidative metabolism (Taiz and Zeiger, 2015).

Micro nutrient	Major Function	Deficiency Symptoms	Physiological Impact
Fe	Chlorophyll synthesis, electron transport	Interveneal chlorosis (young leaves)	Reduced photosynthesis
Zn	Enzyme activation, auxin synthesis	Small leaves, rosetting	Growth retardation
Mn	Photosystem II activity	Chlorotic spots	Reduced CO ₂ assimilation
B	Cell wall formation	Thick leaves, poor roots	Reduced cell division
Cu	Redox reactions	Leaf deformation, dieback	Oxidative stress

When these micronutrients are deficient, normal metabolic activities are disrupted, resulting in physiological problems such as decreased photosynthetic efficiency, reduced enzyme activity, and imbalance in nutrient status within the plant (White, 2019; Marschner, 2012).

Table 1: Functions and Deficiency Symptoms of Micronutrients in Citrus

3. Physiological Responses to Micronutrient Deficiencies

Micronutrient deficiencies have a pronounced impact on plant physiological functions, especially by impairing photosynthesis, altering enzyme activity, disturbing nutrient equilibrium, and increasing oxidative stress within the plant.

3.1 Effects on Photosynthesis

Photosynthesis is highly vulnerable to micronutrient deficiencies and is often among the first processes to be affected. A lack of iron reduces chlorophyll formation, which causes intervenal chlorosis and lowers the efficiency of photosynthesis (Pestana et al., 2005; Huang

et al., 2021). In the case of manganese deficiency, the functioning of the oxygen-evolving complex in photosystem II is disrupted, leading to impaired electron transport and a decline in CO₂ assimilation (Hänsch and Mendel, 2009).

Similarly, zinc deficiency influences photosynthesis indirectly by disturbing enzyme systems associated with carbon metabolism and hindering proper chloroplast development (Broadley et al., 2007; Fu et al., 2014).

3.2 Enzyme Activity and Metabolic Processes

Micronutrients serve as essential cofactors for many enzymes that regulate metabolic activities in plants. Zinc is particularly important for activating enzymes involved in protein synthesis, whereas iron and copper play key roles in electron transport and various redox reactions (Taiz and Zeiger, 2015). When these micronutrients are lacking, enzyme activity declines, resulting in inefficient metabolic functioning.

Moreover, deficiencies of micronutrients promote the buildup of reactive oxygen species (ROS), which leads to oxidative stress and causes damage to vital cellular structures such as membranes and proteins (White, 2019; Long et al., 2017).

3.3 Nutrient Imbalance and Homeostasis

Micronutrient deficiency disturbs the internal nutrient equilibrium of plants by affecting the uptake and distribution of other elements. A shortage of one micronutrient often interferes with the availability and movement of others, resulting in complex interactions within the plant system (Huang et al., 2021; Long et al., 2017). For instance, inadequate iron supply can alter the absorption of manganese and zinc.

Research by Gan et al. (2026) further demonstrated that micronutrient deficiencies can significantly modify nutrient concentrations and their relationships in citrus roots, emphasizing the intricate nature of nutrient interactions.

Table 2: Physiological Responses of Citrus under Micronutrient Deficiency

Parameter	Fe Deficiency	Zn Deficiency	Mn Deficiency
Chlorophyll content	Strongly decreased	Moderately decreased	Decreased
Photosynthesis rate	Reduced	Reduced	Reduced
Enzyme activity	Reduced	Strongly reduced	Reduced
CO ₂ assimilation	Decreased	Decreased	Decreased
Nutrient balance	Disturbed	Disturbed	Disturbed

4. Morphological Responses to Micronutrient Deficiencies in Citrus

Micronutrient deficiencies influence not only the internal physiological functions of citrus plants but also bring about distinct structural changes. These alterations are often visible in the field and serve as important indicators for diagnosing specific nutrient deficiencies. Leaves, stems, and roots are the primary plant parts affected, and each type of micronutrient deficiency is associated with its own characteristic set of symptoms (Zhou et al., 2019; Fu et al., 2014).

4.1 Leaf Morphology and Visual Symptoms

Leaves are the most reliable indicators for diagnosing micronutrient deficiencies because of their central role in photosynthesis and metabolic functions. Iron deficiency

commonly appears as interveinal chlorosis in young leaves, where the veins remain green while the surrounding tissue turns yellow, primarily because iron is relatively immobile and its deficiency first affects newly formed tissues (Pestana et al., 2005; Han et al., 2012). Zinc deficiency is characterized by the formation of small, narrow leaves, reduced internodal length, and a rosette-like growth pattern (Broadley et al., 2007; Fu et al., 2014). In the case of manganese deficiency, chlorosis is also observed, often accompanied by the appearance of small necrotic spots on the leaf surface (Hänsch and Mendel, 2009).

Boron deficiency interferes with cell wall development, leading to thick, brittle leaves and deformation of actively growing tissues (Sheng et al., 2009). Copper deficiency, on the other hand, results in leaf curling, shoot dieback, and reduced lignin formation (Taiz and Zeiger, 2015). These visible structural changes are closely associated with disruptions in physiological processes such as chlorophyll production, enzyme functioning, and nutrient transport within the plant (Marschner, 2012; White, 2019).

4.2 Root Morphology and Architecture

Root systems are particularly responsive to micronutrient deficiencies and often show early signs of stress. Alterations in root structure have a direct impact on the plant's capacity to absorb water and nutrients, ultimately influencing overall growth and development (Zhao et al., 2012; Mei et al., 2011).

Micro nutrient	Leaf Symptoms	Root Effects	Overall Growth
Fe	Interveinal chlorosis (young leaves)	Reduced root length	Reduced growth
Zn	Small leaves, rosetting	Poor root branching	Stunted growth
Mn	Chlorosis with necrotic spots	Reduced surface area	Reduced biomass
B	Thick, brittle leaves	Inhibited elongation	Reduced development
Cu	Leaf curling, dieback	Distorted roots	Reduced vigor

Under iron deficiency, total root length and surface area generally decline, although plants may increase lateral root formation as an adaptive mechanism to improve nutrient uptake (Gan et al., 2026). In contrast, boron deficiency strongly restricts root elongation and limits the development of lateral roots due to its involvement in cell division and expansion processes (Sheng et al., 2009).

Zinc deficiency results in decreased root biomass and reduced branching, while manganese deficiency lowers root surface area and overall root activity (Broadley et al., 2007; Hänsch and Mendel, 2009). These changes in root architecture significantly impair the plant's ability to take up water and nutrients, thereby intensifying nutrient stress conditions (Hippler et al., 2016).

Table 3: Morphological Symptoms of Micronutrient Deficiencies in Citrus

4.3 Shoot Growth and Biomass Accumulation

Micronutrient deficiencies have a marked effect on shoot development and overall biomass production in plants. A decline in photosynthetic efficiency along with reduced nutrient uptake leads to lower carbohydrate synthesis, which ultimately restricts plant growth (Huang et al., 2021; Sharma et al., 2016).

Deficiencies of iron and zinc are commonly associated with reduced shoot elongation and limited leaf expansion. In the case of boron deficiency, meristematic activity is adversely affected, resulting in poor shoot development and abnormal growth patterns (Sheng et al., 2009). Copper deficiency interferes with lignin formation, leading to weaker stems and increased vulnerability to environmental stresses (Taiz and Zeiger, 2015).

Research has also indicated that micronutrient deficiencies can influence the root-to-shoot ratio, as plants tend to allocate more resources toward root growth as an adaptive response to enhance nutrient acquisition (Hippler et al., 2016; Zhao et al., 2012).

4.4 Biomass Reduction and Growth Limitation

Biomass production is a key indicator of plant vigor and overall productivity. In citrus, deficiencies of micronutrients result in noticeable declines in both fresh and dry biomass (Huang et al., 2021; Chen et al., 2005).

This reduction in biomass is largely associated with decreased photosynthetic activity, disruption of enzyme functions, and limited nutrient absorption. Furthermore, micronutrient stress leads to the generation of oxidative damage, which affects cellular structures and further restricts plant growth (White, 2019; Long et al., 2017).

Table 4: Root Morphological Changes under Micronutrient Deficiency

Parameter	Control	Fe Deficiency	B Deficiency	Zn Deficiency
Root length	High	Reduced	Strongly reduced	Moderately reduced
Root surface area	High	Reduced	Reduced	Reduced
Lateral roots	Normal	Increased (adaptive)	Reduced	Slightly reduced
Root biomass	High	Reduced	Strongly reduced	Reduced

4.5 Relationship Between Morphology and Physiology

Morphological changes in plants are strongly associated with underlying physiological processes. For instance, a decline in chlorophyll content caused by iron deficiency results in leaf chlorosis, while reduced enzyme activity under zinc deficiency leads to restricted plant growth (Marschner, 2012; White and Brown, 2010).

In a similar way, alterations in root structure, such as a decrease in root surface area, can limit nutrient absorption efficiency and intensify physiological stress (Gan et al., 2026; Hippler et al., 2016). This close connection emphasizes the need to consider both physiological and morphological aspects when evaluating the effects of micronutrient deficiencies.

5. Adaptive Mechanisms in Citrus

Citrus plants employ various adaptive strategies to withstand micronutrient deficiencies, allowing them to survive and sustain essential physiological functions under stress conditions.

5.1 Root System Modification

A key adaptive response in citrus under micronutrient deficiency is the alteration of root architecture. When nutrients are limited, plants tend to enhance the development of lateral

roots and increase root surface area to improve nutrient uptake (Mei et al., 2011; Zhao et al., 2012). This adjustment is especially noticeable under iron and boron deficiency, where primary root growth may be reduced while lateral roots expand to explore a larger volume of soil.

5.2 Nutrient Redistribution

Plants reallocate available nutrients to critical tissues in order to sustain essential metabolic activities (White and Brown, 2010). For instance, during iron deficiency, older leaves can act as a reservoir, supplying stored iron to younger, actively growing parts of the plant.

5.3 Enhanced Nutrient Use Efficiency

Citrus plants adjust their metabolic functions to make more efficient use of limited nutrients under deficiency conditions. This includes modifications in enzymatic activities and maintaining photosynthetic performance as effectively as possible despite reduced micronutrient availability (Hippler et al., 2016; Long et al., 2017).

Table 5: Adaptive Mechanisms of Citrus under Micronutrient Deficiency

Mechanism	Description	Benefit
Root modification	Increased lateral roots and surface area	Improved nutrient uptake
Nutrient redistribution	Movement of nutrients to critical organs	Maintains growth
Nutrient use efficiency	Optimized metabolic pathways	Reduces stress impact
Antioxidant activation	Enhanced ROS scavenging	Protects cellular integrity

6. Nutrient Interactions

Micronutrients interact in a highly complex manner within citrus plants, where the deficiency of one element can influence the absorption, movement, and utilization of others. For example, a shortage of iron may alter the uptake of manganese and zinc, while an excess of manganese can negatively affect iron availability (Gan et al., 2026; Huang et al., 2021). These interrelationships highlight the importance of understanding nutrient dynamics when developing efficient nutrient management strategies.

7. Management Strategies

Effective management of micronutrient deficiencies in citrus includes:

- [1] **Balanced Fertilization:** Applying all essential micronutrients in recommended doses to maintain soil fertility (Fageria, 2009; Zekri and Obreza, 2004).
- [2] **Foliar Application:** Direct foliar sprays of micronutrients like Fe, Zn, and B are effective for rapid correction of deficiencies (Alloway, 2008; Chen et al., 2005).
- [3] **Selection of Tolerant Rootstocks:** Certain rootstocks exhibit better nutrient uptake efficiency and tolerance to micronutrient stress (Sharma et al., 2016; Hippler et al., 2016).

- [4] **Soil Amendments:** Liming acidic soils or applying organic matter can improve nutrient availability (Fu et al., 2014).
- [5] **Integrated Nutrient Management:** Combining soil and foliar fertilization with proper irrigation practices enhances nutrient use efficiency (White, 2019).

8. Conclusion

Micronutrient deficiencies have a substantial impact on both the physiological and structural characteristics of citrus plants. These deficiencies impair key processes such as chlorophyll formation, enzyme activity, and nutrient balance, while also causing visible symptoms like chlorosis, reduced leaf size, altered root systems, and decreased biomass. Citrus plants respond to such stress through various adaptive mechanisms, including changes in root architecture, redistribution of nutrients, and improved efficiency in nutrient utilization. Effective management practices, such as balanced fertilization, foliar nutrient application, and the selection of efficient rootstocks, play a crucial role in reducing the adverse effects of these deficiencies and enhancing crop productivity. A comprehensive understanding of these responses is essential for achieving sustainable citrus cultivation.

References

1. Alloway, B.J. (2008) *Zinc in soils and crop nutrition*. International Zinc Association.
2. Broadley, M.R., White, P.J., Hammond, J.P., Zelko, I. and Lux, A. (2007) Zinc in plants. *New Phytologist*, 173(4), pp.677–702.
3. Chen, L.S., Qi, Y.P. and Smith, B.R. (2005) Effects of nutrient deficiency on citrus physiology. *Tree Physiology*, 25, pp.1215–1223.
4. Fageria, N.K. (2009) *The use of nutrients in crop plants*. CRC Press.
5. Fu, Y., et al. (2014) Zinc deficiency impacts in citrus. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry*, 75, pp.1–10.
6. Gan, Z., Yang, M., Sun, X., et al. (2026) Morphological and physiological responses to micronutrient deficiency in citrus rootstocks. *International Journal of Fruit Science*.
7. Hänsch, R. and Mendel, R.R. (2009) Physiological functions of mineral micronutrients. *Current Opinion in Plant Biology*, 12, pp.259–266.
8. Hippler, F.W., et al. (2016) Nutrient efficiency in citrus plants. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 203, pp.85–93.
9. Huang, W.T., Xie, Y.Z., Chen, X.F., et al. (2021) Growth and physiological responses of citrus under nitrogen deficiency. *Agronomy*, 11, 1859.
10. Long, A., et al. (2017) Mineral nutrient interactions in plants. *Plant Science*, 260, pp.10–20.
11. Marschner, P. (2012) *Mineral Nutrition of Higher Plants*. Academic Press.
12. Mei, L., et al. (2011) Root morphology under nutrient stress. *Plant Biology*, 13, pp.345–352.
13. Mengel, K. and Kirkby, E.A. (2001) *Principles of plant nutrition*. Springer.
14. Pestana, M., et al. (2005) Iron deficiency effects in citrus. *Plant and Soil*, 272, pp.111–121.
15. Römheld, V. and Marschner, H. (1986) Specific uptake systems for iron. *Plant Physiology*, 80, pp.175–180.
16. Sharma, R., et al. (2016) Rootstock influence on citrus growth and nutrient uptake. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 200, pp.1–8.

17. Sheng, O., et al. (2009) Boron deficiency effects in citrus. *Plant Physiology*, 150, pp.123–134.
18. Taiz, L. and Zeiger, E. (2015) *Plant Physiology and Development*. Sinauer Associates.
19. White, P.J. and Brown, P.H. (2010) Plant nutrition for sustainable development. *Annals of Botany*, 105, pp.1073–1080.
20. White, P.J. (2019) Nutrient deficiency in crop plants. *Plant Physiology*, 181, pp.1–10.
21. Zhao, X., et al. (2012) Root architecture under nutrient stress. *Plant and Soil*, 356, pp.1–15.
22. Zekri, M. and Obreza, T.A. (2004) Micronutrient deficiencies in citrus. *University of Florida IFAS Extension*.
23. Zhou, G., et al. (2019) Diagnosis of micronutrient deficiency in citrus. *Agricultural Sciences*, 10, pp.456–470.
24. Han, S., et al. (2012) Iron deficiency chlorosis in plants. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 35, pp.1–12.
25. Yang, L.T., et al. (2013) Physiological responses of citrus to nutrient stress. *Journal of Plant Physiology*, 170, pp.130–140.

Role of Precision Agriculture in Cauliflower Production: A Review

Corresponding authors: Simranpreet Kaur , Khushveer Singh and Prabhjot singh

Email id:simransandhu96533@gmail.com

School of Agriculture Sciences & Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University Bathinda (Punjab), India

Abstract

Global positioning systems (GPS), geographic information systems (GIS), remote sensing, the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), and variable rate technology (VRT) are just a few of the cutting-edge technologies that precision agriculture (PA) incorporates to maximize crop yields while reducing environmental impact. Precision farming is essential for increasing yield, curd quality, nutrient management, irrigation efficiency, and pest control in cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea* var. *botrytis*), a high-value and nutrient-sensitive vegetable crop. The uses, advantages, difficulties, and potential applications of precision agriculture in the production of cauliflower are examined in this paper.

Keywords: Precision agriculture, cauliflower, variable rate technology, smart irrigation, remote sensing, sustainable horticulture.

Introduction

Vegetable gardening is crucial to Indian agriculture since it provides nutritional security, revenue, and employment opportunities. India is the world's second-largest producer of vegetables, producing more than 205 million tonnes yearly (FAOSTAT, 2023) . Inefficient resource use, abiotic stressors, pest and disease burden, and fragmented landholdings continue to limit productivity (Chand et al., 2011; ICAR, 2020).

Precision agriculture (PA) is a data-driven method that optimizes crop output and resource efficiency through site-specific management practices. Vegetable cultivation in India has obstacles including limited landholdings, water scarcity, soil fertility deterioration, climate variability, and rising input costs. Precision agriculture integrates sensor technology, remote sensing, GIS, decision support, and automation to provide sustainable solutions. Precision agriculture (PA) can help address these difficulties through site-specific management and real-time decision-making. National initiatives in India support PA adoption, including the National Mission on Sustainable Agriculture (NMSA), Digital Agriculture Mission, and ICAR-led precision farming programs (ICAR, 2020; DAC&FW, 2021)]. This review examines Indian experiences, technology, and research findings on PA in vegetable production systems.

The broad category of plants known as "Cole Crops" includes cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea* var *Botrytis*). Cole crops belong to the Brassicaceae family, also known as the mustard family (formerly known as Cruciferae or crucifers). It is an annual plant with seed-based reproduction. Usually, only the white curd, or head, is consumed. A white inflorescence meristem makes up

the cauliflower head. Broccoli and cauliflower heads are similar, however broccoli has blossom buds (Chien Yi Wang, 2003).

Technologies of Precision Agriculture in India

2.1 Sensing technologies

Soil moisture sensors, nutrient sensors, canopy temperature sensors, and weather stations are being used more often in Indian vegetable production to assist with crop monitoring and irrigation scheduling (Patel et al., 2019; Singh et al., 2021). Indian-specific sensor-based irrigation systems have been developed by ICAR institutes like IARI, IIHR, and CIAE (ICAR, 2020). In protected cultivation systems for tomatoes, capsicums, cucumbers, and leafy vegetables, wireless sensor networks and IoT-based platforms have been implemented to provide automated control and real-time monitoring (Kumar et al., 2020; Ramesh et al., 2022). Sensing technologies are the backbone of precision agriculture, especially for high-value crops like cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea* var. *botrytis*). In India, these technologies help monitor crop health, soil conditions, and environmental factors to improve yield, quality, and resource efficiency.

2.2 Remote Sensing and UAV Applications

In Indian agriculture, remote sensing has been extensively used for yield estimation, stress detection, and crop health monitoring. Vegetables including tomatoes, onions, potatoes, and cabbage have been evaluated for growth using satellite-based indices like NDVI and SAVI. Nutrient status and variability (Patel & Raj, 2018; Bhatt et al., 2021). UAVs are increasingly being used in precision vegetable farming in India for pest monitoring, crop vigour assessment, and variable rate spraying (Chandel et al., 2021; Mehta et al., 2022). Several state agricultural colleges and ICAR institutes have started offering drone-based consultancy services. Remote sensing and UAV technologies are transforming cauliflower cultivation by enabling precise monitoring of crop health, soil moisture, and environmental conditions. These tools allow early detection of stress, efficient input management, and improved yield prediction. In India, their adoption is gradually increasing due to government support and technological advancements, making precision cauliflower farming more sustainable and profitable.

2.3 Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and Spatial Mapping

Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and spatial mapping are vital tools in precision agriculture, enabling farmers to analyze field variability and make location-specific decisions. In cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea* var. *botrytis*) cultivation, GIS integrates spatial data from sources like GPS, remote sensing, and field surveys to improve productivity, curd quality, and resource use efficiency.

GIS-based soil fertility mapping is widely utilized in India to diagnose nutrient deficits and create site-specific nutrient management (SSNM) strategies for vegetable crops (Prasad et al., 2014; Singh et al., 2018) [16, 19]. The Soil Health Card Scheme data has been combined with GIS platforms to generate fertility maps and fertilizer recommendations at village and farm levels (DAC&FW, 2021). [5] Spatial mapping of pest incidence, salinity, and water stress improves intervention targeting and resource allocation in vegetable production systems (ICAR, 2020) [7].

2.4 Digital Agriculture and IoT Platforms

India's Digital Agriculture Mission has promoted the use of digital platforms, IoT devices, and mobile advisory systems in agriculture (DAC&FW, 2021) [5]. Smart farming systems, which integrate meteorological data, soil sensors, and crop models, are increasingly employed for protected cultivation and high-value vegetable crops (Kumar et al., 2020; Ramesh et al., 2022). Several agri-tech businesses and public-private partnerships are creating precision farming solutions for Indian smallholder farmers.

3. Precision Agriculture Practices in Indian Production

3.1 Precision Irrigation Management

Precision irrigation management involves the application of water in the right amount, at the right time, and at the right place using advanced technologies. In cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea var. botrytis*), efficient irrigation is critical because the crop is highly sensitive to both water stress and excess moisture, especially during curd formation. Water scarcity is a significant challenge in Indian agriculture, especially in arid and semi-arid areas. Drip irrigation, fertigation, and sensor-based scheduling have increased water efficiency and productivity in vegetable crops (Narayanamoorthy, 2017; Kumar et al., 2019).

3.2 Variable Rate Nutrient Management

Variable Rate Nutrient Management (VRNM) is a precision agriculture approach in which fertilizers are applied at different rates across a field based on spatial variability in soil fertility and crop needs. In cauliflower this technique is especially important because the crop requires balanced and timely nutrient supply for proper vegetative growth and high-quality curd formation. India promotes site-specific nutrient management (SSNM) using soil tests, leaf color charts, SPAD meters, and optical sensors. Precision nutrition management improves nutrient efficiency, productivity, and profitability in vegetables (Prasad et al., 2014; Reddy et al., 2018). ICAR and international partners created the Nutrient Expert® tool and soil fertility mapping methodologies for Indian cropping systems, including vegetable crops (ICAR, 2020; Rao et al., 2019).

3.3 Precision Pest and Disease Management

Precision pest and disease management plays a vital role in modern cauliflower cultivation by enabling early detection, accurate monitoring, and targeted control of pests and diseases. Technologies such as UAVs, IoT sensors, GIS mapping, and AI-based systems help farmers reduce pesticide use while improving crop health and yield. In India, increasing adoption of these technologies is promoting sustainable and efficient cauliflower production.

Pest and disease burden significantly reduces yields in Indian vegetable farming. Precision pest control combines monitoring technologies, forecasting models, and decision support systems to provide timely and targeted actions (Kranthi et al., 2015; Chandel et al., 2021). Remote sensing and imaging technology can detect illnesses early, including late blight in potatoes, leaf curl in tomatoes, and downy mildew in cucurbits (Bhatt et al., 2021; Mehta et al., 2022). Precision spraying and drone-based pesticide application have led to reduced pesticide consumption and increased efficiency in field trials (ICAR, 2020).

3.4 Harvest Optimization and Quality Assessment

Precision technologies including machine vision, spectroscopy, and non-destructive quality assessment tools are being used in Indian vegetable production for maturity evaluation, grading, and post-harvest management (Singh et al., 2019; Ramesh et al., 2022).

Sensor-based quality assessment has been shown to be effective in tomato, onion, potato, and leafy vegetables through research at ICAR-IIHR, IARI, and state institutions. Harvest optimization and quality assessment in cauliflower using precision agriculture technologies ensure that the crop is harvested at the ideal maturity stage with superior quality. Tools like UAVs, IoT sensors, GIS mapping, and machine vision systems help in accurate monitoring, selective harvesting, and efficient grading. These advancements reduce losses, enhance market value, and support sustainable cauliflower production in India.

5. Challenges and constraints in the Indian context

Precision agriculture has proven benefits, although it faces challenges in Indian vegetable production. Factors such as high initial investment costs, restricted financial access, technical skills, and poor infrastructure in rural areas (Chand et al., 2011; ICAR, 2020) can hinder growth.

Individual farmers struggle to embrace modern technology due to limited economies of scale and scattered landholdings. Data ownership, privacy, and interoperability are emerging difficulties in digital agriculture (DAC&FW, 2021).

6. Future Directions and Research Needs.

Future research should prioritize creating low-cost, scalable, and user-friendly precision agriculture. Technologies appropriate for smallholder farmers. Indigenous sensor development, open-source software, and modular system designs can increase affordability and uptake. Integrating satellite communication, 5G networks, and artificial intelligence can enhance real-time data collecting, analysis, and decision-making. Precision agricultural frameworks should incorporate sustainability indicators, socioeconomic implications, and climate resilience (ICAR, 2020; Rao et al., 2019). Effective technology uptake in India's different agro-ecological areas requires capacity building, farmer training, and extension services.

7. Conclusion.

Precision agriculture may significantly boost productivity, profitability, and sustainability. Vegetable production in India. PA uses site-specific management, real-time monitoring, and data-driven decision-making to tackle difficulties like as water scarcity, nutrient inefficiency, insect pressure, and climatic variability. Although adoption constraints still exist, ongoing policy support, technical innovation, and institutional collaboration are likely to increase adoption. Precision agriculture is crucial for creating sustainable and resilient vegetable production systems in India.

References

1. Chand R, Raju SS, Pandey LM. Growth crisis in agriculture: Severity and options at national and state levels. *Econ Polit Wkly*. 2011;46(26-27):37-46.
2. FAOSTAT. Food and Agriculture Organization statistical database. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations; 2023.
3. Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR). Vision 2050: Indian agriculture towards sustainable development. New Delhi: ICAR; 2020
4. Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare (DAC&FW). Digital agriculture mission 2021- 2025. New Delhi: Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India; 2021.

- 5.Chien Yi Wang. Leafy, Floral, and Succulent Vegetables. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Beltsville, Maryland, U.S.A, 2003.
- 6.Kumar S, Ramesh K, Sharma A. Internet of Things (IoT) applications in Indian agriculture: A review. *J Agric Eng.* 2020;57(2):1-12
- 7.Bhatt R, Meena RS, Timsina J, Reddy MS. Remote sensing applications for crop health monitoring in Indian agriculture. *J Indian Soc Remote Sens.* 2021;49(4):905-920
- 8.Patel NR, Raj P. Remote sensing-based assessment of crop condition in India. *J Indian Soc Remote Sens.* 2018;46(3):345-356.
- 9.Chandel NS, Singh D, Kumar A. Application of drones in Indian agriculture: A review. *Indian J Agric Sci.* 2021;91(5):705-712.
- 10.Mehta S, Patel NR, Kumar A. UAV-based remote sensing for crop stress detection in Indian agriculture. *Curr Sci.* 2022;122(6):713-722.
- 11.Singh R, Kumar A, Sharma A. Artificial intelligence applications in Indian agriculture: Opportunities and challenges. *Indian J Agric Sci.* 2021;91(8):1091-1098
- 12.Patel DP, Singh R, Kumar A. Precision irrigation and fertigation in vegetable crops: Indian experiences. *Indian J Agron.* 2019;64(3):289-300.
- 13.Prasad R, Shivay YS, Kumar D. Nutrient management for sustainable crop production in India. *Indian J Fertilisers.* 2014;10(6):12-30.
- 14.Singh AK, Kumar S, Reddy YR. GIS-based soil fertility mapping for site-specific nutrient management in Indian agriculture. *Indian J Soil Conserv.* 2018;46(2):123-130.
- 15.Kumar A, Singh R, Patel DP. Sensor-based irrigation scheduling in vegetable crops under Indian conditions. *Indian J Hortic.* 2019;76(3):415-422.
- 16.Narayanamoorthy A. Drip irrigation in India: Can it solve water scarcity? *Water Policy.* 2017;19(3):467- 482.
- 17.Rao AVM, Aggarwal PK, Choudhary BU. Crop simulation modelling for climate change impact assessment in Indian agriculture. *Curr Sci.* 2019;116(2):260-268.
- 18.Chand R, Raju SS, Pandey LM. Growth crisis in agriculture: Severity and options at national and state levels. *Econ Polit Wkly.* 2011;46(26-27):37-46
- 19.Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare (DAC&FW). Digital agriculture mission 2021- 2025. New Delhi: Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India; 2021.

Vegetable Intercropping in Juvenile Orchards

Sobha Singh^{#1}, Arshdeep Singh^{*2} and Amandeep Kaur^{§3}

[#] Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, India

^{*} Research Scholar, Khalsa College, Amritsar

[§] Assistant Professor, Department of Agriculture and Natural Sciences, CT University, Jagraon, Ludhiana, India

¹sobhas057@gmail.com

Abstract - The juvenile phase of orchard establishment, typically spanning three to seven years depending on the fruit species, represents a critical transitional period during which tree canopies are underdeveloped and vast inter-row spaces remain unutilized. Mixed cropping during this phase, particularly the strategic integration of vegetables, offers a biologically sound and economically viable approach to maximizing land productivity and ensuring sustainable land use. This review synthesizes evidence from recent Scopus-indexed literature to examine the agronomic, ecological, and economic dimensions of vegetable integration in juvenile orchards. Intercropping vegetables such as legumes, brassicas, cucurbits, and root crops in young fruit orchards has been shown to enhance land equivalent ratios ($LER > 1.3$), improve soil organic carbon, stimulate microbial biomass and reduce weed pressure. Legume-based vegetable intercrops further contribute to biological nitrogen fixation, reducing synthetic fertilizer dependency while simultaneously generating supplementary farm income during the economically unproductive pre-bearing phase. Evidence indicates that well-managed systems can boost net farm income by 30–50% without compromising long-term orchard productivity. However, challenges including competition for light and water at high planting densities, pest spillover risks, and management complexity remain. The review identifies knowledge gaps and calls for region-specific research incorporating precision management, digital monitoring tools, and policy support to optimize mixed cropping systems in juvenile orchards globally.

Keywords - Orchard intercropping, juvenile phase, vegetable integration, land equivalent ratio, sustainable land use, agroforestry, soil health

I. INTRODUCTION

The global demand for food is projected to increase by over 50% by 2050, placing unprecedented pressure on finite agricultural land resources [1]. In response, diversified farming systems that enhance land-use efficiency without expanding the agricultural frontier have gained increasing scientific and policy attention. Among these, intercropping is the simultaneous cultivation of two or more crops on the same piece of land [3].

Orchard-based cropping systems present a unique opportunity for temporal and spatial diversification, particularly during the juvenile phase of tree establishment. This phase, often referred to as the pre-bearing period, may extend from three to seven years in fruit crops such as mango (*Mangifera indica*), citrus (*Citrus* spp.), pear (*Pyrus communis*), guava (*Psidium guajava*), and apple (*Malus domestica*) [4]. During this period, the inter-row and inter-plant spaces remain largely unoccupied by the developing tree canopies, representing a substantial underutilization of solar radiation, soil nutrients, and water [5], [16].

Mixed cropping with vegetables during the juvenile orchard phase is a well-established practice in tropical and subtropical farming systems, particularly in South Asia, Southeast Asia, and sub-Saharan Africa [6]. A global dataset of horticultural intercropping experiments compiled by Paut et al. [8] provides a systematic foundation for reviewing outcomes across diverse fruit-vegetable combinations worldwide. This review critically examines the scientific evidence on vegetable integration in juvenile orchards, addressing agronomic performance, soil health, ecological interactions, and economic viability.

II. THE JUVENILE PHASE IN FRUIT ORCHARDS: AN AGRONOMIC PERSPECTIVE

The juvenile phase in perennial fruit crops is characterized by vegetative growth, undeveloped root architecture, and the absence of reproductive output [14], [9]. During this period, tree spacing typically ranges from 5×5 m to 10×10 m in most orchard designs, leaving 60–85% of the total land area as inter-row space [10]. This open canopy structure provides sufficient light penetration to support the growth of compatible annual crops, including a diverse range of vegetables [12]. The concept of optimizing inter-row space in juvenile orchards is rooted in classical agroforestry research, where the integration of annual food crops between woody perennials is described as a taungya system or alley cropping arrangement [16]. Contemporary intercropping research has refined these principles, incorporating land equivalent ratio (LER) as the primary metric to assess the productivity advantage of mixed systems over monocultures [23]. LER values consistently greater than 1.0 indicate that intercropping systems produce more total output per unit land area than sole crops [14].

III. VEGETABLE CROP SELECTION AND COMPATIBILITY IN JUVENILE ORCHARDS

The selection of appropriate vegetable intercrops is governed by multiple factors including rooting depth, light requirements, duration, and phenological compatibility with the fruit tree [18]. Table 1 summarizes the key vegetable crop categories evaluated in juvenile orchards, their compatible fruit species, reported LER values, and primary agronomic benefits.

TABLE I VEGETABLE CROP SUITABILITY FOR INTERCROPPING IN JUVENILE ORCHARDS

Vegetable Crop	Family	Duration	Compatible Fruit	LER	Key Benefit
Kasuri Fenugreek	Leguminosae	90–110 d	Pear, Citrus	1.52	N-fixation, soil microbial boost

Pea	Leguminosae	75–90 d	Apple, Pear	1.44	BNF, vegetable income
Onion	Alliaceae	120–150 d	Kinnow, Mango	1.38	Nematode suppression, cash crop
Cauliflower	Brassicaceae	60–90 d	Pear, Guava	1.32	Short duration, high market value
Bottle Gourd	Cucurbitaceae	70–100 d	Mango, Guava	1.48	Wide spacing use, high yield
Spinach	Amaranthaceae	40–60 d	Citrus, Apple	1.29	Shade tolerant, leafy income
Radish	Brassicaceae	30–45 d	Pear, Aonla	1.35	Taproot, soil aeration
Cowpea	Leguminosae	60–80 d	Guava, Ber	1.41	BNF, cover crop benefits
Coriander	Apiaceae	50–70 d	Citrus, Pear	1.30	Aromatic, beneficial insect habitat
Bitter Gourd	Cucurbitaceae	80–110 d	Mango, Papaya	1.45	Medicinal value, high market price

Source: Compiled from Choudhary [4], Bakshi et al. [18], Wang et al. [9], Paut et al. [8], Sheha et al. [21]

A. Leguminous Vegetables

Leguminous vegetables occupy a prominent position in orchard intercropping systems due to their dual capacity for biological nitrogen fixation (BNF) and edible yield production [17]. Research on pear-based agroecosystems in the Indo-Gangetic plains of India demonstrated that pear intercropped with kasuri fenugreek significantly elevated microbial biomass carbon by 42.20% and microbial biomass nitrogen by 65.02% compared to pear monoculture, indicating profound improvements in soil biological functioning [21]. Legume root systems interact

symbiotically with rhizobia, fixing 40–80 kg N ha⁻¹ year⁻¹ to the system, partially offsetting synthetic nitrogen fertilizer requirements [19].

B. Brassica and Root Crops

Brassicas including radish (*Raphanus sativus*), cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea* var. *botrytis*), and knol-khol are short-duration crops well-suited to the juvenile orchard environment [10]. Their shallow to moderate rooting depth reduces belowground competition with young fruit tree roots. Root crops such as carrot and radish can also contribute to soil structural improvement through their taproot action, facilitating water infiltration and aeration in compacted orchard floors [13].

C. Cucurbit and Allium Vegetables

Cucurbit crops including bottle gourd (*Lagenariasiceraria*) and bitter melon (*Momordica charantia*) are particularly suited to the wide spacing of juvenile orchards such as mango and guava and can utilize horizontal canopy space efficiently [24]. Short-statured allium crops, including onion and green onion, are compatible with a broad range of orchard types. Their allelopathic properties are reported to suppress soil-borne pathogens and nematodes, offering ecological services alongside nutritional and market value [26], [31].

IV. SOIL HEALTH AND NUTRIENT DYNAMICS UNDER VEGETABLE INTERCROPPING

The influence of mixed cropping on soil health in orchard environments is multi-dimensional, encompassing physicochemical properties, nutrient cycling, microbial diversity, and enzymatic activity [27]. Table 2 presents a quantitative comparison of soil health indicators under vegetable intercropping versus monoculture in juvenile orchards.

TABLE II SOIL HEALTH INDICATORS: VEGETABLE INTERCROPPING VS. MONOCULTURE IN JUVENILE ORCHARDS

Soil Parameter	Monoculture	Intercropping	Change	Source
Soil Organic Carbon (%)	0.68 ± 0.05	0.94 ± 0.07	+38.2%	Suhaibani et al. [28]
Microbial Biomass (mg/kg)	185 ± 12	267 ± 18	+44.3%	Bakshi et al. [18]
Microbial BNF (mg/kg)	28.4 ± 3.1	46.9 ± 4.2	+65.1%	Bakshi et al. [18]
Dehydrogenase Activity (µg/g/h)	14.2 ± 1.8	22.8 ± 2.4	+60.6%	Suhaibani et al. [28]
Available N (kg/ha)	142 ± 11	198 ± 15	+39.4%	Maitra et al. [25]
Water Holding Capacity (%)	36.4 ± 2.2	42.5 ± 2.6	+16.8%	Bakshi et al. [18]

Bulk Density (g/cm ³)	1.48 ± 0.06	1.30 ± 0.04	-12.2%	Bakshi et al. [18]
pH	7.8 ± 0.2	7.3 ± 0.2	-6.4%	Chamkhi et al. [17]
AM Fungi Colonization (%)	22.4 ± 3.0	38.7 ± 4.1	+72.8%	Suhaibani et al. [28]

Values are means ± SE. Where, BNF = Biological Nitrogen Fixation; AM = Arbuscular Mycorrhizal.

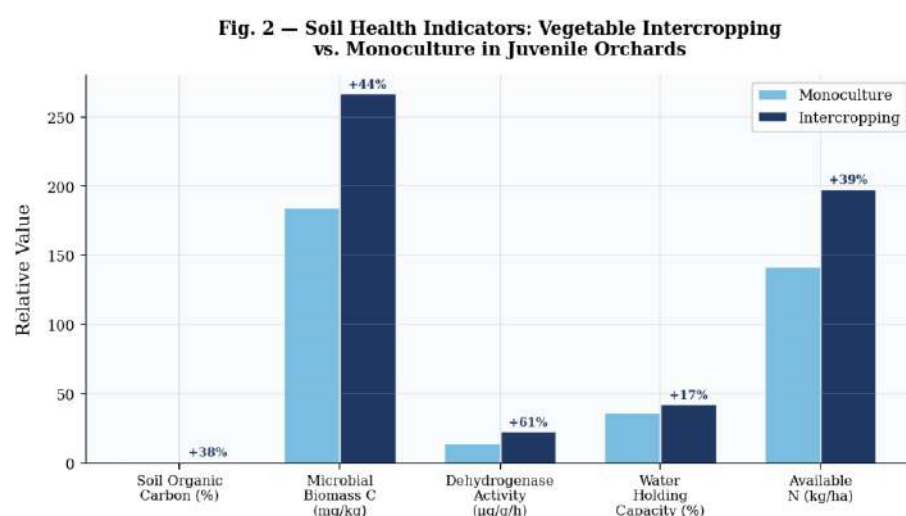


Fig. 2 — Soil Health Indicators: Vegetable Intercropping vs. Monoculture in Juvenile Orchards (% improvement shown above intercrop bars)

A comprehensive integrative review by Suhaibani et al. [28] analyzing studies from 2000 to 2025 confirmed that intercropping in fruit orchards enhances soil organic carbon sequestration, biological nitrogen fixation, phosphorus solubilization, and potassium mobilization. Soil enzymatic activities, including dehydrogenase, phosphatase, and cellulase, are consistently elevated under vegetable intercropping [24]. Intercropping with fenugreek and pea in pear orchards resulted in significantly lower bulk density (1.30 g/cm³) and higher water holding capacity (42.52%) compared to monoculture controls [13].

V. LAND PRODUCTIVITY AND LAND EQUIVALENT RATIO

The land equivalent ratio (LER) is the standard agronomic metric for quantifying the productivity advantage of intercropping relative to monoculture. An

LER > 1.0 indicates that the intercrop system produces more combined output per unit area than the equivalent area managed as two monocultures [15]. A global meta-analysis of intercropping studies reported a mean LER of 1.30, implying that approximately 23% less land would be required under intercropping to produce the same total output as sole crops [26].

In orchard-based vegetable intercropping systems specifically, LER values between 1.20 and 1.85 have been documented, depending on fruit-vegetable combination, spacing, management intensity and agro-climatic conditions [27]. Figure 1 illustrates the LER values reported for selected fruit-vegetable combinations in juvenile orchards, demonstrating the consistent productivity advantage across diverse crop pairings.

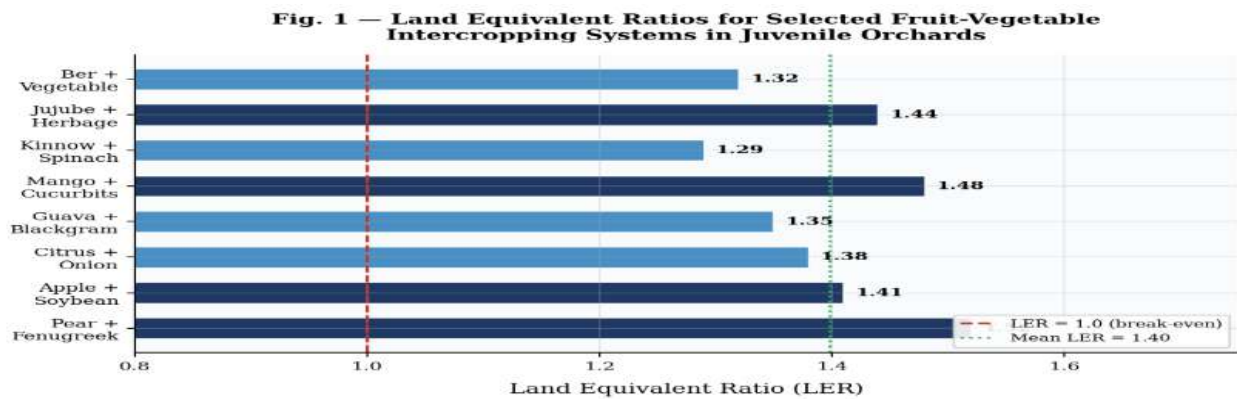


Fig. 1 — Land Equivalent Ratios for Selected Fruit-Vegetable Intercropping Systems in Juvenile Orchards (dashed red line = LER 1.0 break-even; green dotted = mean LER)

Research in apple-soybean intercropping systems in semi-arid regions demonstrated that increased soil moisture and reduced interspecific competition under intercropping enhanced crop performance and produced higher LER values compared to apple monoculture [30]. Similarly, vegetable intercropping in kinnow mandarin orchards in India yielded significantly higher monetary returns per unit area compared to sole mandarin cultivation, with onion and Indian squash emerging as particularly profitable intercrop choices [4].

VI. ECOLOGICAL INTERACTIONS AND MULTI-DIMENSIONAL BENEFITS

Mixed cropping systems alter the ecological balance within orchards, with complex effects on insect pests, diseases, weed communities, and pollinator populations [22]. Increased plant species diversity under intercropping can disrupt host-finding ability of specialist pests, reduce crop-pest contact rates, and enhance populations of natural enemies [13]. Figure 4 presents a multi-dimensional benefit score comparing vegetable intercropping and monoculture across six key ecological and agronomic dimensions.

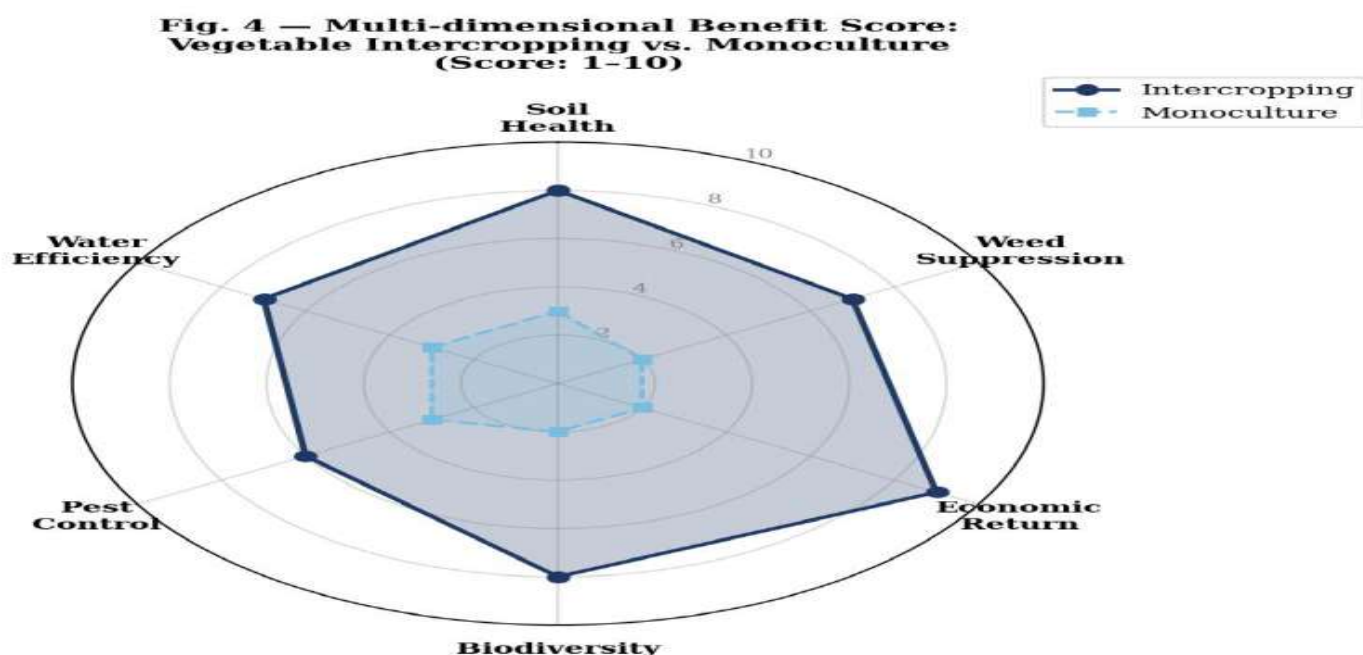


Fig. 4 — Multi-dimensional Benefit Score: Vegetable Intercropping vs. Monoculture in Juvenile Orchards (Score: 1–10)

Research on intercropping flowering plants in insecticide-free apple orchards demonstrated that diverse floral understories facilitated conservation, movement, and biocontrol performance of predatory insects [4]. Weed suppression is another significant ecological service: dense vegetable canopies reduce light penetration to the soil surface, limiting weed seed germination. Studies have shown that intercropping can reduce weed biomass by 30–60% compared to uncropped orchard floors [26]. Allium intercrops are additionally associated with suppression of soil-borne fungal pathogens and root-knot nematodes through volatile sulfur compound release [17].

VII. ECONOMIC VIABILITY AND COMPARATIVE INCOME ANALYSIS

The economic rationale for mixed cropping in juvenile orchards is compelling: orchards in the pre-bearing phase represent a significant capital investment without generating revenue, creating a financial burden that may last several years [18]. Table 3 summarizes the economic returns documented across multiple fruit-vegetable intercropping systems in published literature.

TABLE III ECONOMIC RETURNS FROM VEGETABLE INTERCROPPING IN JUVENILE FRUIT ORCHARDS

System Type	Fruit Crop	Vegetable	Net Return	B:C Ratio	Reference
Fruit + Legume	Pear	Kasuri Fenugreek	₹72,554/ha	3.01	[10]
Fruit + Legume	Pear	Pea	₹70,656/ha	2.96	[5]

Fruit Allium	+	Kinnow	Onion (Rabi)	₹24,180/ha	2.64	[11]
Fruit Cucurbit	+	Aonla	Bottle Gourd	₹35,820/ha	2.81	[25]
Fruit Brassica	+	Guava	Cauliflower	₹18,920/ha	2.44	[4]
Fruit Spice	+	Guava	Ginger	₹68,000/ha	3.20	[4]
Fruit Cucurbit	+	Ber	Mixed Vegetable	+10% over sole	2.55	[11]
Fruit Legume	+	Citrus	Cowpea	₹21,500/ha	2.38	[18]

Where, B:C = Benefit-Cost ratio; INR = Indian Rupees per hectare.

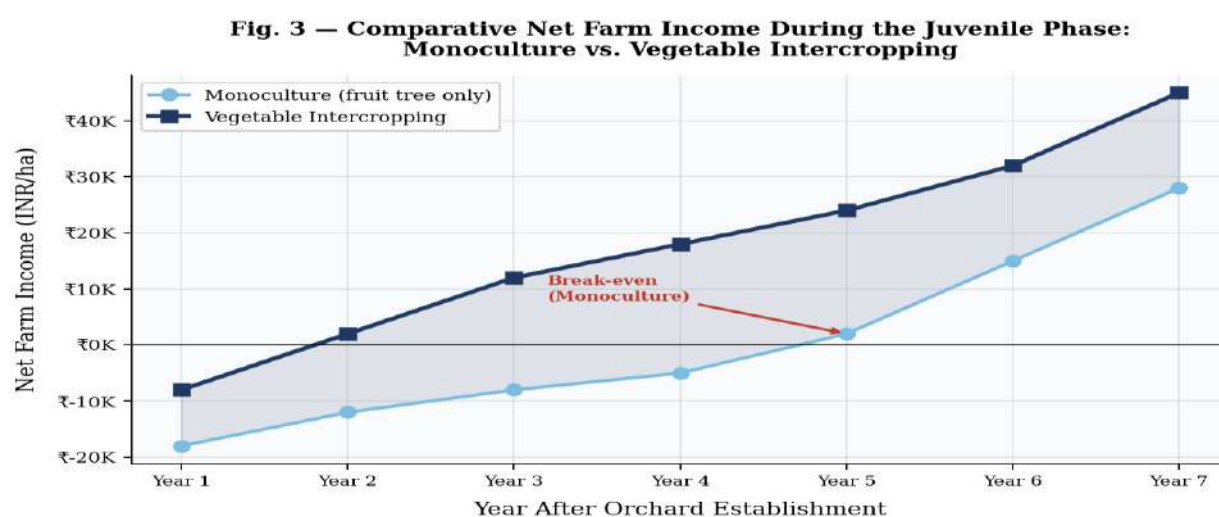


Fig. 3 — Comparative Net Farm Income During the Juvenile Phase: Monoculture vs. Vegetable Intercropping (INR/ha)

A global meta-analysis found that intercropping increases gross incomes by an average of 33% compared to monoculture [22]. The pear-kasuri fenugreek system generated the highest net returns and benefit-cost ratio among eleven intercropping treatments evaluated over two years in Punjab, India [10]. Ginger intercropping in guava orchards was found most profitable among other intercrops tested, generating net returns of Rs. 68,000/ha [4].

VIII. CHALLENGES AND CONSTRAINTS

Despite well-documented benefits, widespread adoption of mixed cropping in juvenile orchards faces agronomic, socioeconomic, and institutional constraints [26]. Competition for light, water, and nutrients between tree saplings and vegetable intercrops can negatively affect tree growth if intercrop selection and management are suboptimal [17]. Water competition is

particularly critical in rain-fed or semi-arid orchard systems, where root overlap may create intense subsurface competition for soil moisture [30].

Pest and disease management complexity increases in mixed systems, as vegetable crops may serve as alternate hosts for fungal pathogens and insect pests capable of infecting fruit trees [20]. Labour requirements increase substantially in mixed systems, potentially limiting adoption among households with limited labor availability [11]. Institutional barriers include the absence of specialized extension services, limited region-specific variety combinations, and policy frameworks designed for monoculture systems [22].

IX. CONCLUSIONS

Mixed cropping during the juvenile phase of orchard establishment represents one of the most practical and evidence-supported strategies for enhancing land-use efficiency, soil health, and farmer income in horticultural systems worldwide. This review demonstrates that vegetable integration in young orchards delivers measurable agronomic benefits, including improved LER (typically 1.29–1.52), enhanced soil organic matter (+38%), stimulated microbial activity (+44%), and effective weed suppression. Economically, vegetable intercrops transform the pre-bearing period from a purely cost-generating phase into a productive income-generating system, with documented benefit-cost ratios of 2.38–3.20.

Legume-based intercrops offer the dual advantage of edible yield and biological nitrogen fixation, while brassicas, cucurbits, and leafy greens contribute nutritional diversity and income variability. Successful implementation requires careful attention to crop selection, spatial arrangement, and temporal management. As climate change intensifies production risks and resource scarcity constrains conventional intensification pathways, the sustainable productivity gains offered by mixed cropping in juvenile orchards merit greater research investment, policy attention, and field-scale validation globally.

REFERENCES

- [1] FAO, "The Future of Food and Agriculture: Trends and Challenges," Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, 2017.
- [2] H. C. J. Godfray et al., "Food security: The challenge of feeding 9 billion people," *Science*, vol. 327, no. 5967, pp. 812–818, 2010.
- [3] R. Mead and R. W. Willey, "The concept of a 'land equivalent ratio' and advantages in yields from intercropping," *Experimental Agriculture*, vol. 16, no. 3, pp. 217–228, 1980.
- [4] M. Choudhary, "Annual intercrops: An alternative pathway for sustainable horticultural production," *Ecology, Environment and Conservation*, vol. 28, Suppl. Issue, pp. S244–S252, 2022.
- [5] A. Lithourgidis et al., "Annual intercrops: An alternative pathway for sustainable agriculture," *Australian Journal of Crop Science*, vol. 5, no. 4, pp. 396–410, 2011.
- [6] R. Paut et al., "A global dataset of experimental intercropping and agroforestry studies in horticulture," *Scientific Data*, vol. 11, art. 5, 2024.
- [7] C. Huss et al., "Benefits and risks of intercropping for crop resilience and pest management," *Journal of Economic Entomology*, vol. 115, no. 5, pp. 1350–1362, 2022.

- [8] R. Paut et al., "A global dataset of experimental intercropping and agroforestry studies in horticulture," Recherche Data Gouv Repository France, 2023.
- [9] X. Wang et al., "Intercropping Gramineae herbage in semiarid jujube cultivar orchard improves productivity," *Horticulturae*, vol. 8, no. 4, p. 312, 2022.
- [10] N. Suhaibani et al., "Driving sustainability in fruit-based cropping systems," *Scientia Horticulturae*, vol. 342, art. 113639, 2025.
- [11] B. Moreira et al., "Intercropping systems: An opportunity for environment conservation within nut production," *Agriculture*, vol. 14, no. 7, p. 1149, 2024.
- [12] P. K. R. Nair, "Classification of agroforestry systems," *Agroforestry Systems*, vol. 3, no. 2, pp. 97–128, 1985.
- [13] F. L. Sinclair, "A general classification of agroforestry practice," *Agroforestry Systems*, vol. 46, no. 1–3, pp. 161–180, 1999.
- [14] L. Bedoussac et al., "Ecological principles underlying the increase of productivity achieved by cereal-grain legume intercrops," *Plant and Soil*, vol. 396, no. 1–2, pp. 37–54, 2015.
- [15] L. Ajal et al., "Intercropping drives plant phenotypic plasticity and changes in functional trait space," *Basic and Applied Ecology*, vol. 61, pp. 41–52, 2022.
- [16] M. A. Altieri et al., "Towards an agroecological approach to crop health," *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems*, vol. 48, no. 3, pp. 349–378, 2024.
- [17] I. Chamkhi et al., "Legume-based intercropping systems promote beneficial rhizobacterial community and crop yield," *Industrial Crops and Products*, vol. 183, art. 114958, 2022.
- [18] P. Bakshi et al., "Intercropping in fruit orchards: A way forward for doubling the farmer's income," in *Proc. National Symposium on Horticulture*, 2019.
- [19] S. Maitra et al., "Applauding soil quality improvement through legume-based intercropping system: A review," *International Journal of Bioresource Science*, vol. 11, no. 1, pp. 59–69, 2024.
- [20] H. A. Alrtimei et al., "Last decade assessment of the impacts of regional climate change on crop yield," *Agriculture*, vol. 12, no. 11, p. 1787, 2022.
- [21] A. M. Sheha et al., "Different wheat intercropping systems with tomato to alleviate chilling stress," *Annals of Agricultural Science*, vol. 67, no. 2, pp. 136–145, 2022.
- [22] D. W. Raffa et al., "Effects of faba bean strip cropping in an outdoor organic tomato system," *Agronomy*, vol. 12, no. 4, p. 784, 2022.
- [23] A. Morugán-Coronado et al., "The impact of intercropping, tillage and fertilizer type on soil and crop yield in fruit orchards," *Agricultural Systems*, vol. 178, art. 102736, 2020.
- [24] J. Cañasveras et al., "Intercropping with grasses helps to reduce iron chlorosis in olive," *Journal of Soil Science and Plant Nutrition*, vol. 14, no. 2, pp. 337–351, 2014.
- [25] S. Maitra et al., "Cultivating sustainability: A comprehensive review on intercropping in a changing climate," *Research on Crops*, vol. 24, no. 4, pp. 702–715, 2023.
- [26] M. Cavalcanti et al., "Intercropping non-host plants reduces *Meloidogyne javanica* infection," *Crop Protection*, vol. 168, art. 106218, 2023.
- [27] X. Zhang et al., "Intercropping flowering plants facilitate conservation, movement and biocontrol performance of predators," *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*, vol. 340, art. 108157, 2022.
- [28] N. Suhaibani et al., "Driving sustainability in fruit-based cropping systems — An integrative review," *Scientia Horticulturae*, 2025.

- [29] Y. Zhao et al., "How maize-legume intercropping and rotation contribute to food security," *Journal of Cleaner Production*, vol. 434, art. 140150, 2024.
- [30] M. Chen et al., "Intercropping changed the soil microbial community composition," *Frontiers in Microbiology*, vol. 15, art. 1370996, 2024.
- [31] S. Zhang et al., "Effects of soil amendments on soil acidity and crop yields in acidic soils," *Journal of Environmental Management*, vol. 345, art. 118531, 2023.

Potting Materials for Fruit Crop Nurseries: A Review

Sukhmanjot Singh¹, Wineet Chawla², Dr Lakshya³

Department of Fruit Science

School of Agriculture Science and Engineering Maharaja Ranjit
Singh Punjab Technical university Bathinda – 151001, Punjab,
India

Corresponding Author Email: laksyabisnoi29@gmail.com

Abstract

The choice of potting media is a critical factor in the successful propagation and establishment of fruit crop seedlings in nurseries. Proper substrate selection influences root development, water retention, nutrient availability, and aeration, ultimately affecting seedling vigor and transplant success. Traditional soil-based media are being increasingly supplemented or replaced by soilless and eco-friendly substrates, including cocopeat, vermicompost, perlite, vermiculite, rice husk, and composted agricultural residues. These alternatives offer sustainable and cost-effective solutions while minimizing environmental impact. This review examines the physical, chemical, and biological characteristics of various potting materials, highlights recent innovations in sustainable nursery substrates, compares their performance across different fruit species, and discusses future research directions for optimizing nursery practices.

Keywords:

Potting media, fruit crop nursery, soilless culture, cocopeat, compost, sustainable horticulture

1. Introduction

The foundation of any successful fruit crop production system lies in the quality of its nursery seedlings. Vigorous seedlings with well-developed root systems not only ensure better survival in the field but also contribute to long-term orchard productivity. Among the various factors influencing seedling quality, the selection of an appropriate potting medium is paramount (Singh et al., 2020). Traditionally, nurseries have relied on soil-based mixtures consisting of garden soil, sand, and organic manure. However, the growing need for disease-free, lightweight, and nutrient-balanced substrates has led to the adoption of soilless media and other alternative materials.

A good potting medium serves multiple purposes: it provides physical support to the plant, ensures adequate aeration, retains sufficient moisture, and acts as a reservoir for nutrients. It also influences microbial interactions in the root zone, which can affect plant health and growth. For tropical and subtropical fruit crops such as mango, guava, papaya, citrus, and pomegranate, media quality significantly impacts rootstock vigor, graft success, and early seedling development.

(Hartmann et al.,2018). Recent studies emphasize incorporating renewable organic residues and soilless components such as cocopeat, composted coir pith, and vermicompost to improve both plant performance and environmental sustainability (Kumar & Lal, 2021).

1. Introduction

The foundation of any successful fruit crop production system lies in the quality of its nursery seedlings. Vigorous seedlings with well-developed root systems not only ensure better survival in the field but also contribute to long-term orchard productivity. Among the various factors influencing seedling quality, the selection of an appropriate potting medium is paramount (Singh et al., 2020). Traditionally, nurseries have relied on soil-based mixtures consisting of garden soil, sand, and organic manure. However, the growing need for disease-free, lightweight, and nutrient-balanced substrates has led to the adoption of soilless media and other alternative materials.

A good potting medium serves multiple purposes: it provides physical support to the plant, ensures adequate aeration, retains sufficient moisture, and acts as a reservoir for nutrients. It also influences microbial interactions in the root zone, which can affect plant health and growth. For tropical and subtropical fruit crops such as mango, guava, papaya, citrus, and pomegranate, media quality significantly impacts rootstock vigor, graft success, and early seedling development

(Hartmann et al.,2018). Recent studies emphasize incorporating renewable organic residues and soilless components such as cocopeat, composted coir pith, and vermicompost to improve both plant performance and environmental sustainability (Kumar & Lal, 2021).

2. Importance of Potting Media in Fruit Crop Nurseries

The choice of potting media directly shapes the microenvironment in which seedlings grow. A well-structured medium ensures proper root respiration, water retention, and nutrient uptake (Raviv&Lieth, 2008). In tropical climates, excessive water retention can lead to root rot, while poor water- holding capacity can stress seedlings during hot and dry periods.

The physical stability of the medium is equally important. Compaction or rapid decomposition reduces aeration and restricts root growth, negatively impacting seedling quality. According to Chauhan et al. (2022), selecting the right medium requires consideration of the species' root system, local climate, and the duration seedlings remain in containers before field planting. Additionally, media composition affects nutrient availability. For instance, cocopeat is excellent at retaining water but often requires supplementation with calcium and magnesium to offset its naturally high potassium content.

3. Characteristics of Ideal Potting Material

A high-quality potting medium should satisfy several key criteria:

- 16) Physical properties: Appropriate texture and porosity (30–50%) to facilitate aeration and water movement, along with a bulk density of 0.3–0.8 g/cm³.
- 17) Chemical properties: Neutral to slightly acidic pH (5.5–7.0), low electrical conductivity (<1.0 dS/m), and balanced nutrient content.
- 18) Biological properties: Free from pathogens, nematodes, and weed seeds, while potentially harboring beneficial microorganisms to enhance root growth.
- 19) Economic and environmental aspects: Readily available, cost-effective, renewable, and biodegradable.

The ideal combination of these characteristics varies according to the fruit species being propagated, the duration of nursery growth, and local environmental conditions (Nair et al., 2019).

Table 1. Ideal physical and chemical properties of potting media for fruit nurseries

Parameter	Desired range	Importance
Bulk density (g cm ⁻³)	0.3 – 0.8	Ensures lightweight and root penetration
Total porosity (%)	30 – 50	Improves aeration and drainage
Water holding capacity (%)	50 – 70	Maintains moisture availability
pH	5.5 – 7.0	Optimal nutrient availability
EC (dS m ⁻¹)	< 1.0	Prevents salt injury
Organic matter (%)	20 – 40	Enhances nutrient supply and microbial activity

4. Common Potting Materials Used in Fruit Nurseries

4.1 Soil-Based Media Soil remains a conventional and widely used component of nursery mixtures. Loamy soils provide essential minerals, structural stability, and buffering against pH fluctuations (Pathak & Singh, 2020). However, untreated soil can harbor pathogens, nematodes, or weed seeds, which may compromise seedling quality. Techniques such as steam sterilization or solarization are commonly employed to mitigate these risks.

4.2 Sand

Sand is frequently added to potting media to improve drainage and prevent compaction. River sand or coarse, washed sand at 25–40% of the mixture enhances aeration and water movement. While sand contributes minimal nutrients, its inclusion is critical for species like citrus and papaya, which are sensitive to waterlogged conditions (Reddy et al., 2021).

4.3 Farmyard Manure and Compost

Organic amendments like farmyard manure (FYM) and compost improve the moistureholding capacity and nutrient content of the medium. Well-decomposed

organic matter provides slow-release nutrients and supports beneficial microbial activity. Compost derived from fruit and crop residues is an environmentally sustainable alternative to FYM (Joshi et al., 2017).

4.4 Cocopeat

Cocopeat, or coir pith, is a renewable, lightweight, and highly porous substrate that retains moisture efficiently. It is virtually sterile and biodegradable, making it ideal for soilless nursery systems. However, untreated cocopeat can contain high sodium and potassium levels, which may interfere with calcium and magnesium uptake; pre-washing or buffering is recommended (Kumar et al., 2019). Cocopeat-based media are particularly effective for banana, guava, and pomegranate seedlings.

4.5 Vermiculite and Perlite

Vermiculite and perlite are inert minerals that enhance aeration and water retention. Vermiculite also has a cation exchange capacity that aids nutrient availability, whereas perlite primarily improves drainage. Incorporating 10–20% perlite into a

Sand	Improves drainage and aeration	Low nutrient content
Compost/FYM	Nutrient rich, microbial activity	Variable quality
Cocopeat	High water retention, lightweight	Needs buffering
Vermiculite	Nutrient retention	Costly
Perlite	Excellent aeration	Low water retention
Potting material	Key properties	Limitations
Rice husk/Biochar	Eco-friendly, improves porosity	Availability varies
Vermicompost	Growth promoters, microbes	Excess may increase EC

potting mixture prevents compaction and supports root proliferation (Bunt, 2016). Cost and availability may limit their use in some regions.

4.6 Rice Husk and Biochar

Rice husk and its carbonized form (biochar) are gaining attention as ecofriendly, locally available

alternatives. They improve aeration, drainage, and water retention while providing a habitat for beneficial microbes (Nguyen et al., 2020). Substituting a portion of soil with rice husk or biochar has shown positive effects on the growth of mango and guava seedlings.

4.7 Vermicompost

Vermicompost contributes humic substances, improves nutrient availability, and enhances microbial activity in the medium. Incorporating 10–20% vermicompost into soil–sand mixtures has been shown to boost papaya and citrus seedling growth (Gupta & Sharma, 2018).

Table 2. Common potting materials and their major characteristics

Potting material	Key properties	Limitations
Soil	Structural support, nutrient buffering	Pathogen risk, heavy

5. Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Potting Alternatives

The extraction of peat moss for nursery media has significant environmental impacts, prompting the exploration of alternative substrates. Composted green waste, coir dust, sugarcane bagasse, and rice hulls provide renewable options that reduce ecological footprints (Evans & Gachukia, 2008). Integration of microbial inoculants such as *Trichoderma* spp. and *Azotobacter* into potting media enhances plant health and nutrient uptake (Patil et al., 2021). Biodegradable containers made from coir fiber, rice bran, or paper pulp can be planted directly in the field, reducing transplant shock and plastic waste. Recycling agricultural residues for media preparation not only promotes sustainability but also provides cost-effective substrates for local nurseries.

Figure 1. Classification of potting materials used in fruit nurseries



6. Comparative Performance in Fruit Crop Nurseries

Different fruit species respond variably to potting media. For instance, mango seedlings typically perform well in a 2:1:1 mixture of soil, sand, and compost, with partial replacement by cocopeat improving root growth and moisture retention (Kumar & Lal, 2021). Guava seedlings benefit from a 1:1:1 ratio of soil, sand, and FYM, with vermicompost additions enhancing nutrient uptake and chlorophyll content (Singh et al., 2020).

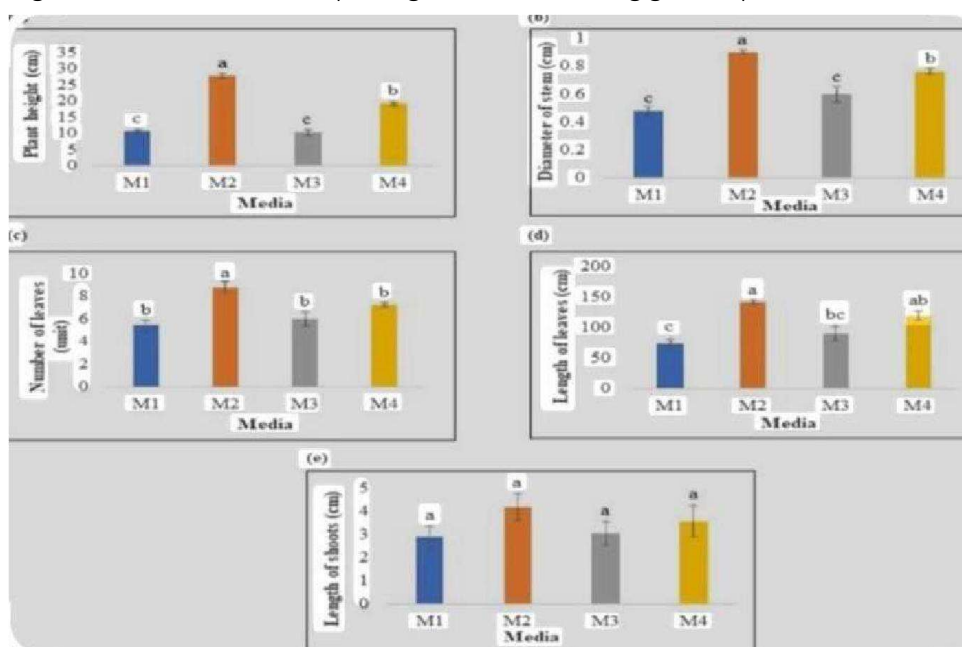
Citrus seedlings show improved root aeration and reduced disease incidence when grown in perlite-enriched media, while papaya seedlings demonstrate better survival and faster growth in cocopeat-compost combinations (Reddy et al., 2021). For pomegranate, rice husk ash and biochar improve seedling vigor and reduce water demand. These comparisons emphasize the need to tailor media compositions to species-specific requirements, nursery duration, and local resource availability.

Table 3. Suitable potting media combinations for major fruit crops

Fruit crop	Recommended media combination	Observed benefits

Mango	Soil:sand:compost (2:1:1) + cocopeat	Improved root growth
Guava	Soil:sand:FYM (1:1:1) + vermicompost	Higher chlorophyll
Citrus	Soil + perlite	Better aeration
Papaya	Cocopeat + compost	Faster growth
Pomegranate	Soil + biochar/rice husk	Improved vigor

Figure 2. Effect of different potting media on seedling growth parameters



7. Recent Innovations and Research Directions

Recent advancements focus on combining

physical and biological enhancements in potting media.

Biochar-enriched composts, microbial inoculants, and nanonutrient amendments are gaining attention. Beneficial microorganisms, such as *Trichoderma harzianum* and *Bacillus subtilis*, improve disease resistance and nutrient assimilation (Nair et al., 2019). Other innovative approaches include utilizing spent mushroom substrates, sugarcane filter cake, and poultry litter as substrate components. Incorporating controlled-release fertilizers into media ensures a steady nutrient supply, reducing leaching losses (Patil et al., 2021). Integration of smart irrigation, fertigation, and sensor-based monitoring allows real-time adjustments of moisture and nutrient levels, further optimizing seedling growth (Chauhan et al., 2022).

Figure 3. Emerging innovations in nursery potting media



8. Challenges and Future Prospects

Several challenges persist in the development and standardization of potting media. Variability in raw material quality, lack of standard testing protocols, and inconsistent availability limit uniform performance. Small-scale nurseries may face difficulties adopting improved or soilless substrates due to limited awareness or higher initial costs. Future research should focus on developing region-specific, cost-effective, and environmentally sustainable media using locally available residues. Low-cost sterilization methods, such as solarization or bio-fumigation, can improve substrate hygiene. Collaboration between research institutions, extension services, and private nurseries will be key to promoting sustainable and high-quality nursery practices.

9. Conclusion

High-quality potting media are essential for producing vigorous fruit crop seedlings. While traditional soil-based mixtures remain common, the use of soilless and sustainable substrates such as cocopeat, vermicompost, perlite, and rice husk is increasingly recommended. These materials improve seedling quality, reduce environmental impact, and make nursery operations more sustainable. Future efforts should aim to standardize media formulations, promote local adaptability, and incorporate biological amendments to enhance seedling growth. By adopting well-balanced, eco-friendly potting systems, nurseries can achieve higher survival rates, better growth performance, and reduced input costs, ultimately supporting sustainable fruit crop production.

References

- [1] Bunt, A. C. (2016). Media and mixes for container-grown plants. Springer Science & Business Media.
- [2] Chauhan, R., Kumar, P., & Singh, R. (2022). Sustainable substrate

management in fruit crop nurseries:

- [3] Current status and prospects. *Journal of Horticultural Research*, 30(2), 45–57. Evans, M. R., & Gachukia, M. (2008).
- [4] Physical properties of coconut coir-based media and their effects on plant growth. *HortScience*, 43(7), 2195–2198.
- [5] Gupta, V., & Sharma, R. (2018). Influence of vermicompost on growth and nutrient uptake of papaya seedlings.
- [6] *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 88(9), 1462–1466.
- [7] Hartmann, H. T., Kester, D. E., Davies, F. T., & Geneve, R. L. (2018). *Plant propagation: Principles and practices* (9th ed.). Prentice Hall.
- [8] Joshi, H. C., Singh, J., & Kumar, R. (2017). Effect of composted organic wastes on the growth of fruit nursery plants. *International Journal of Horticulture*, 7(4), 102–110.
- [9] Kumar, P., & Lal, S. (2021). Performance of fruit crop seedlings in different potting media. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1314, 99–107.
- [10] Kumar, S., Reddy, P., & Chauhan, R. (2019). Role of cocopeat in improving fruit nursery performance.
- [11] *Indian Horticultural Review*, 11(2), 33–41.
- [12] Nair, A., Thomas, S., & Dey, S. (2019). Properties and prospects of sustainable potting mixtures for nursery applications. *Horticultural Science Letters*, 16(1), 57–66.
- [13] Nguyen, T. T., Tran, H., & Le, D. Q. (2020). Evaluation of rice husk biochar as a component of growing media for fruit tree seedlings. *Agriculture and Natural Resources*, 54(3), 280–288.
- [14] Patil, D. S., Deshmukh, P., & Jadhav, R. (2021). Effect of organic and bio-based potting media on growth of pomegranate seedlings. *Journal of Environmental Biology*, 42(1), 103–110.
- [15] Pathak, R., & Singh, A. (2020). Soil and substrate management in horticultural nurseries. *Indian Journal of Soil Science*, 68(3), 245–253.
- [16] Raviv, M., & Lieth, J. H. (2008). *Soilless culture: Theory and practice*. Elsevier.
- [17] Reddy, P., Kumar, V., & Sharma, A. (2021). Comparative evaluation of media composition on papaya seedling growth. *Asian Journal of Horticultural Science*, 16(2), 95–101.
- [18] Singh, R., Chauhan, S., & Kaur, G. (2020). Influence of different media compositions on growth of guava and mango seedlings. *Journal of Fruit Science*, 15(1), 24–31.
- [19] Abad, M., Noguera, P., and Bures, S. National inventory of organic wastes for use as growing media for ornamental potted plants: Case study in Spain. *Bioresource Technology*.
- [20] Abad, M., Martínez-Herrero, M. D., Martínez-García, P. F., and Martínez-Corts, J. Physical properties of various coconut coir dusts compared to peat. *HortScience*.
- [21] Barrett, G. E., Alexander, P. D., Robinson, J. S., and Bragg, N. C. Achieving environmentally sustainable growing media for soilless plant cultivation systems.

Horticulturae.

- [22] Bilderback, T. E., Warren, S. L., Owen, J. S., and Albano, J. P. Healthy substrates need physicals too!
- [23] HortTechnology.
- [24] Bunt, A. C. Media and mixes for container-grown plants. Unwin Hyman Ltd., London.
- [25] Caron, J., Rochefort, L., and Price, J. S. Use of peat in growing media: Environmental concerns, alternatives and sustainability. *ActaHorticulturae*. Carlile, W. R., Cattivello, C., and Zaccheo, P. Organic growing media:
- [26] Constituents and properties.
- [27] Vadose Zone Journal.
- [28] Gruda, N. Do soilless culture systems have an influence on product quality of vegetables? *Journal of Applied Botany and Food Quality*.
- [29] Gruda, N., and Schnitzler, W. Suitability of wood fiber substrates for production of vegetable transplants.
- [30] *ScientiaHorticulturae*.
- [31] Handreck, K. A., and Black, N. D. Growing media for ornamental plants and turf. UNSW Press, Australia. Jackson, B. E., Wright, R. D., and Seiler, J. R. Changes in chemical and physical properties of pine tree substrates during crop production. *HortScience*.
- [32] Kämpf, A. N., and Fermino, M. H. Peat-based growing media alternatives. *ActaHorticulturae*.
- [33] Maher, M., Prasad, M., and Raviv, M. Organic soilless media components. *ActaHorticulturae*. Noguera, P., Abad, M., Puchades, R., Maquieira, A., and Noguera, V. Influence of particle size on physical and chemical properties of coconut coir dust as container medium. *Communications in Soil Science and Plant Analysis*.
- [34] Raviv, M. Composts in growing media: What's new and what's next? *ActaHorticulturae*.
- [35] Raviv, M., Wallach, R., Silber, A., and Bar-Tal, A. Substrates and their analysis. In: *Hydroponic Production of Vegetables and Ornamentals*. Embryo Publications.
- [36] Schmilewski, G. Growing medium constituents used in the EU in 2005. *ActaHorticulturae*.
- [37] Sharma, R. R., and Banik, B. Coconut coir and its use in horticulture. *Indian Journal of Horticulture*.
- [38] Sonneveld, C., and Voogt, W. Plant nutrition of greenhouse crops. Springer, Netherlands.
- [39] Tittarelli, F., Rea, E., and Benedetti, A. Growing media from composted materials. *ActaHorticulturae*.
- [40] Verdonck, O., and Penninck, R. Quality standards for growing media. *ActaHorticulturae*.
- [41] Verdonck, O., De Vleeschauwer, D., and De Boodt, M. The influence of the substrate on plant growth. *ActaHorticulturae*.

- [42] Wang, Y. T., and Blessington, T. M. Growth of ornamental plants in media amended with composted organic materials. HortScience.
- [43] Wilson, S. B., and Stoffella, P. J. Container substrate amendments affect growth of ornamental plants.
- [44] HortTechnology. Yogeve, A., Raviv, M., Hadar, Y., Cohen, R., and Katan, J. Suppression of soilborne pathogens in container media. Phytopathology.
- [45] Zaller, J. G. Vermicompost as a substitute for peat in potting media. Bioresource Technology. Zhang, L., Sun, X., Tian, Y., and Gong, X. Effects of biochar-based substrates on plant growth and nutrient availability. Scientia Horticulturae.
- [46] Prasad, M., Maher, M., and Raviv, M. Current status of growing media alternatives to peat. Acta

Analysis and optimisation of multiple quality characteristics of LBMED using fuzzy logic

Gaurav Sharma and Vinod Kumar

Department of Mechanical Engineering,
TIET, Patiala (PB)-147004-(India)

vsingla@thapar.edu

Abstract: In laser cutting, the capability of laser cutting mainly depends on optical and thermal properties of work material. The surface quality and metallurgical properties of the product is most important from the point of laser cutting quality. The present research work explores the modeling and optimization of laser beam cutting process parameters by using hybrid approach of Taguchi based fuzzy logic. The multi-response optimization of process parameters has been done to improve geometrical accuracy by minimizing the kerf width and kerf deviation. The four input parameters power, gas pressure, feed rate, pulse frequency and three output parameters kerf width (KW), kerf deviation (KD) and material removal rate (MRR) have been taken for the experimentation work. The S/N ratios taken for the KW and KD is of the smaller-the-better type and MRR is of the higher the better type. The predicting fuzzy logic model is implemented on Fuzzy Logic Toolbox of MATLAB using Mamdani technique. The fuzzy logic theory has been applied to compute the fuzzy multi-response performance index (FMRPI). This performance index is further used for multi-objective optimization.. The predicted optimum results have been validated by performing the confirmation tests. The confirmation tests showed the considerable reduction in kerf deviation and increase in material removal rate.

Keywords: Laser beam cutting, Fuzzy logic, Multi-response optimization, Kerf width

1. Introduction

Due to the advancement in engineering material, design requirement, complex shape and size of workpiece the use of conventional machining processes become impossible. To tackle this kind of jobs the advanced machining processes (AMPs) are used. Today in industries many AMPs are being used such as; electro discharge machining, laser beam machining, electron beam machining, plasma beam machining, electrochemical machining, ultrasonic machining, abrasive jet machining, but all these processes have their own applications and limitations. LBM is a thermal energy based machining process in which material is removed by focusing the laser beam on the work surface, thermal energy is absorbed which heats and transforms the work in molten, vaporized state. The molten material is removed with the help of high pressure assist gas pressure.

Laser cutting is the most widely used LBM process. The schematic diagram of laser cutting is shown in Fig 1. The effectiveness of the process depends on thermal and optical properties rather

than the mechanical properties of material. So, materials that exhibit a high degree of brittleness or hardness but have favourable thermal properties, such as low thermal diffusivity and conductivity, are well suited for laser machining. In this process no tool wear, minimum distortion of the workpiece, narrow Heat affected zone (HAZ), no residual stress generation, deep penetration. LBM has wide applications in the field of automobile sectors, aircraft industry, electronic industry, civil structures, nuclear sector and house appliances. For example cutting complex shapes in car doors, cutting of stainless steel pipes with high cutting rate and cutting QFN packages in electronics sector [1].

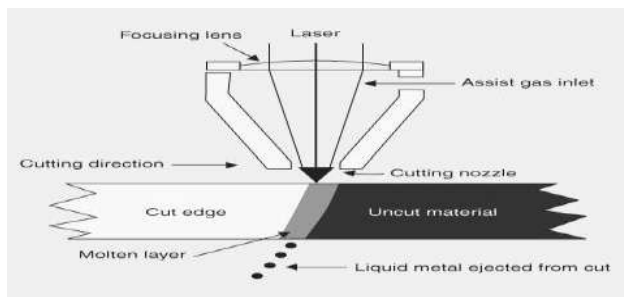


Fig.1. Schematic of laser beam cutting (<http://www.acceleroninc.com/techdata/images/LASERcutld.gif>)

Laser beam cutting is superior due to its ability to cut complex shapes with high accuracy and speed. The laser cut quality cannot be easily predicted due to the dynamic nature of the laser cutting process [2]. The accuracy of laser cut specimens mainly depends upon the kerf width and kerf deviation along the length of cut. Modeling is the scientific ways to study the system behaviours. A mathematical model of a system is the relationship between input and output parameters in terms of mathematical equations. Optimization of process parameters is important to achieve high quality. Taguchi method is concerned with the optimization of single quality characteristic. Optimization of multiple response characteristics is more complex. Few researchers concentrated on modeling and optimization of laser beam cutting through Artificial intelligence (AI) based techniques such as artificial neural network (ANN) and fuzzy logic (FL) [1].

Syn et al. [2] developed a mamdani type fuzzy expert system to prediction of laser cutting quality. The three input parameters were used such as power, cutting speed, gas pressure to predict the output surface roughness and dross inclusion. The entire fuzzy logic model was implemented on FL Toolbox of Matlab. It shows that the results predicted from FL model compared to experimental results were found to be satisfactory in terms of RMSE, R^2 and MAPE. Pandey et al. [3] developed a fuzzy expert system for prediction of the laser cutting process behavior of Ti alloy (Ti-6Al-4 V) sheet. A hybrid approach of neural network and fuzzy logic theory has been applied to develop the fuzzy expert system to predict the kerf widths and kerf deviation. The fuzzy expert system had been found adequate for prediction of the kerf qualities with negligible average

prediction errors of 1.09%, 1.67% and 2.29% for top kerf width, bottom kerf width and kerf deviation respectively. The increase in pulse frequency significantly increases the kerf width due to increases in extent of spot overlap. The higher gas pressure results in lesser deviation in kerf. Sivarao et al. [4] studied the graphical user interface (GUI) based Adaptive network fuzzy inference system (ANFIS) modeling approach in laser processing. Developed an ANFIS-LASER-GUI by using MATLAB to model and control the input parameters of a CO₂ laser cutting machine. Seven input parameters namely, power, speed, pressure, focal distance, standoff distance, frequency, duty cycle with their respective two responses, surface roughness and kerf width were used. ANFIS-LASER-GUI generated output excellently correlates with the observed values performing prediction error below 9.0 percent.

Madic et al. [5] applied the application of Taguchi method for optimization in surface roughness in CO₂ laser cutting of mild steel using the oxygen as assist gas purity of 99.95%. Two major tools used in Taguchi optimization methodology were orthogonal arrays (OA), and signal to noise (S/N) ratio. The S/N ratios give the optimal combination of the parameter levels, where the variance was minimum. It was found that cutting speed and assist gas pressure were the most significant parameters affecting the surface roughness, whereas the effect of the laser power was very smaller. Pandey et al. [6] applied the hybrid approach to study Taguchi based fuzzy logic optimization of multiple parameters which affect the geometric accuracy of laser cutting of duralumin sheet. The fuzzy logic was applied to convert the S/N ratios of different quality characteristics obtained by taguchi methodology into a single fuzzy multi-response performance index (FMPI). The predicted optimum results have been verified by confirmation tests that shows almost negligible error of 1.65%. Pandey et al. [8] used the hybrid approach of artificial neural network (ANN) and fuzzy logic (FL). Adaptive Neuro Fuzzy Inference System (ANFIS) was used to develop the Kerf width and Material removal rate (MRR) models. Thin steel sheet was used as material. These ANFIS models were developed by using “ANFIS EDIT” tool box of MATLAB. The comparison of these models with RSM based models show that kerf width and material removal rate values predicted by ANFIS based models were more reliable as compared to RSM based models.

In the present research work, a hybrid approach of Taguchi based fuzzy logic was used for optimization of the multiple performance characteristics of laser cutting. The optimization procedure was given as:

- 3 Experiments were conducted using Taguchi's orthogonal array.
- 4 Experimental results were converted into the signal-to-noise (S/N) ratio.
- 5 Fuzzy model was developed by defining the input - output variables and fuzzy rules.
- 6 A single FMRPI was computed by using fuzzy logic theory.
- 7 Experimental results were analyzed by using the FMRPI and analysis of variance (ANOVA).
- 8 Optimum levels of process parameters were selected.

The experiments were performed on 0.5 mm thick Mild steel using 100 W Fiber laser beam continuous mode laser beam machine with Oxygen as assist gas.

II. Materials and Methods

Design of experiment (DOE) is a structured, organized method that is used to determine the relationship between the different input factors that affecting a process and the output of that process. DOE requires only small set of experiments and helps to reduce time as well as cost of experiments. Taguchi method involves reducing the variation in a process through robust design of experiments. Taguchi suggested that it is better to make a process robust than a machine. It is based on the fact that the effect of uncontrolled factors like (vibrations, noise, humidity etc.) can be reduced by the proper selection of the process parameters and their levels. A total of 18 basic types of designed experimental matrixes were given by Taguchi (called as Orthogonal array (OA)). The selection of the OA is based on the number of input parameters (control factors), their levels and interactions between the parameters.

For conducting the experiments, a L₂₇ OA was chosen instead of L₉ OA to increase the sensitivity of experiments. The L₂₇ orthogonal array has 13 columns that can be used to assign control factors and their interactions. The columns chosen for the control factors are 1, 2, 5 and 9.

III. Experimental Details

In the present work, the experimentation was done with 100 W Fiber laser beam machine (PATRIOT 100, Scantech Laser Pvt. Ltd.) 1ft × 1ft CNC work table fully integrated with hardware and software and peripherals as shown in Fig 2. It is a continuous mode laser beam machine. Oxygen was used as assisting gas and it is passed through 1 mm diameter nozzle, which remains constant throughout the experiments. The distance between workpiece and nozzle tip (stand off distance) was maintained at 2 mm. A galvanized mild steel sheet of thickness 0.5 mm was used for the experiments.



Fig.2. Fiber laser beam machine set-up

The chemical composition of galvanized mild steel is shown in Table 1. The process parameters and their levels for the main experiments were decided on the basis of pilot study, using one-factor-at-a-time approach (OFTA). Assist gas pressure, laser power, frequency and feed rate were selected as input process parameters (controllable factors). The output parameters selected for the analysis were Kerf width (KW), Kerf deviation (KD) and Material removal rate (MRR), which

affect the quality of process (also known as quality characteristics). In this research work, three levels of each control factor were selected, assuming no interaction between the various factors. The control factors and their levels are shown in Table 2.

Table 1

Chemical composition of galvanized mild steel sheet

Fe	C	Si	Mn	P	S	Cr	Mo	Ni	Al	Co	Cu	Ti	V	W	Pb
86.5	0.1	0.0	0.4	0.3	0.1	0.1	0.1	6.6	0.5	0.4	2.7	0.0	0.0	1.1	0.3
0	4	7	5	5	5	0	3	2	0	4	0	5	8	1	3

A straight cut of length 30 mm was made for each experiment. Kerf width was measured at three different places for each cut along the length of cut on the top surface of the sheet. The average of the three measurements was taken as kerf width of each cut. The Kerf width measurement was done by using Nikon Profile Projector (Model V-10A) with 10× magnification. The least count is 0.001 mm. Kerf deviation is the difference of maximum KW and minimum KW measured along the length of cut.

The Kerf deviation (mm) was calculated as:

$$\text{Kerf deviation} = (\text{Maximum kerf width} - \text{Minimum kerf width}) \quad \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

The MRR (mg/min) was calculated as:

$$\text{MRR} = (\text{Loss of mass during each cut} \times \text{cutting speed}) / \text{length of cut} \quad \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

The mass difference was calculated by weighing the specimen before and after cutting using analytical Weighing balance CAS Electronics balance (CAY 220). The machine has least count of 0.1 mg and maximum capacity of 220 gm.

Table 2 Control factors and their levels

Factors	Symbol	Unit	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Gas					
Pressure	A	Kg/cm ²	6	8	10
Power	B	W	80	90	100
Frequency	C	Hz	50	70	90
Feed	D	mm/min	150	30	450

A. Determination of S/N ratio

The S/N (signal-to-noise) ratio represents the degree of desirable to undesirable value of the process. The process parameter settings with maximum value of S/N ratio always give optimal quality with minimum scatter. In present research work, ‘smaller is the better’ principle was adopted to minimize the Kerf width, Kerf deviation and ‘larger is the better’ principle was adopted for Material removal rate.

Smaller is the better S/N ratio:

$$S/N = -10 \log \left(\frac{1}{r} \sum_{i=1}^r y_i^2 \right) \dots \dots \dots (3)$$

Larger is the better S/N ratio:

$$S/N = -10 \log \left(\frac{1}{r} \sum_{i=1}^r \frac{1}{y_i^2} \right) \dots \dots \dots (4)$$

In equations, Eq. 3 and Eq. 4, 'r' represents the number of experimental trails for same levels of process parameters and y_i is the experimental value of quality characteristics for i th experimental run

B. Multi-response optimization using fuzzy logic

Fuzzy logic has emerged as one of the most successful tool for dealing with uncertain and vague information. In order to deal with such kind of problems fuzzy logic approach seems to be the most appropriate. Fuzzy logic approach provides decision support and expert system, with powerful reasoning mechanism, bound by sets of fuzzy IF-THEN rules used to drive conclusions from the given conditions. The definition of performance characteristics such as lower-the-better, higher-the-better and nominal-the-better contains the degree of uncertainty and vagueness. So, fuzzy logic may be used to convert the S/N ratios of quality characteristics obtained by Taguchi into a fuzzy multi-response performance index (FMRPI). There are three main stages involves during the development of the model i.e. fuzzification (formation of membership function), fuzzy inference (expert rules), defuzzification.

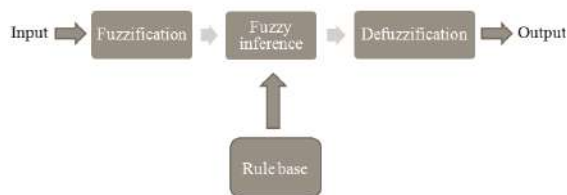


Fig. 3. A basic fuzzy expert system

In fuzzification all input and output linguistic values are fuzzified with membership functions. The membership function defines how each input and output variable is mapped to membership value between 0 and 1. Proper selection of type of membership functions decides the complexity and performance of fuzzy model. Triangular and trapezoidal membership functions are commonly used [2].

After the fuzzification, fuzzy inference rule base is formed. The rule base unit consists a series of fuzzy rules which describe the relationship between the input and output variables. The fuzzy rule base represented in the form of IF-THEN conditional statements. For example: If y is a then z is b where a and b are the linguistic values represented by fuzzy subset defined by the corresponding membership functions.

Defuzzification is the reverse method of fuzzification. Defuzzification refers to the method in which fuzzy output is converted into discrete value. The most common method used for defuzzification is the centre of area method (centroid). The fuzzy logic was modeled on Fuzzy

logic toolbox of MATLAB v 7.11 (R2010b). The Mamdani fuzzy inference system was chosen due to its simplicity. The fuzzy model containing three input parameters (S/N ratios of KW, KD and MRR, respectively) and one output parameter (FMRPI) is shown in Figure 4.

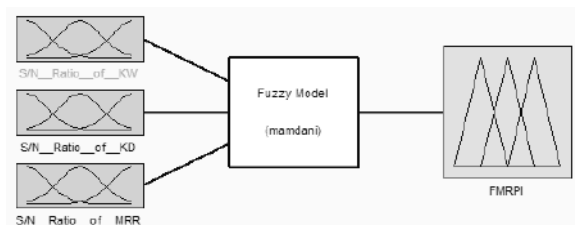
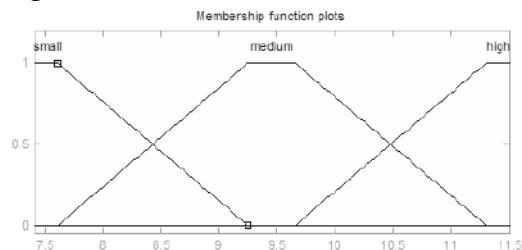
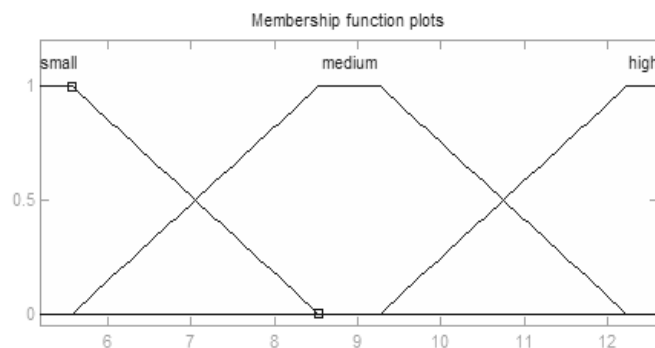


Fig. 4. Input and output variables of the Fuzzy logic model

The input and output variables are defined as linguistic variables where their linguistic values are define in words or sentences. In the present work, three input variables having three linguistic values were defined namely, Small (S), Medium (M), High (H). Nine linguistic values were assigned to the output namely very very small (VVS), very small (VS), small (S), small medium (MS), medium (M), medium high (MH), high (H), very high (VH) and very very high (VVH). Trapezoidal shape type membership functions were considered for input and output variables. The trapezoidal membership functions were applied for all input and output variables because trapezoidal shapes cover more range and are smooth as compare to Triangular shapes. The membership plots are shown in Fig. 5.



Membership function S/N ratio of KW



Membership function S/N ratio of KD

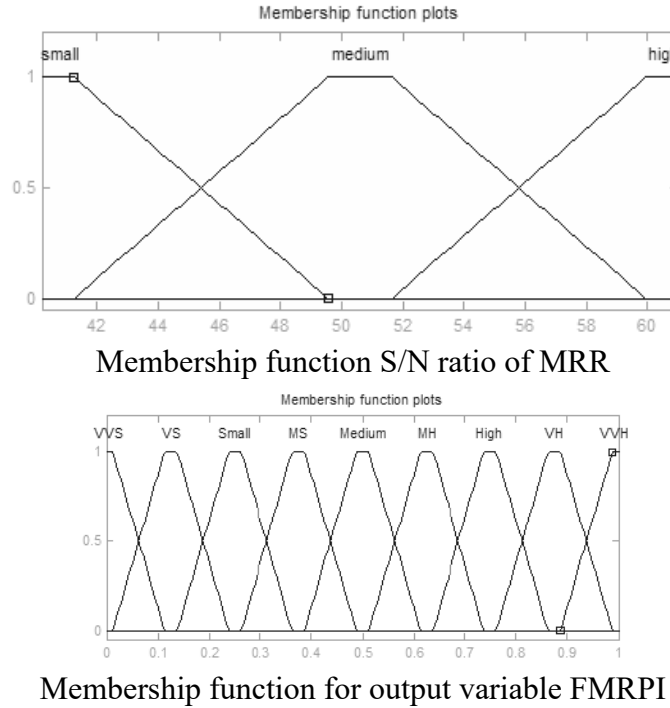


Fig. 5. Membership functions for input and output variables.

A total of twenty-seven fuzzy rules were developed for three input variables and their three linguistic values. A part of the rule viewer is shown in Fig. 6.

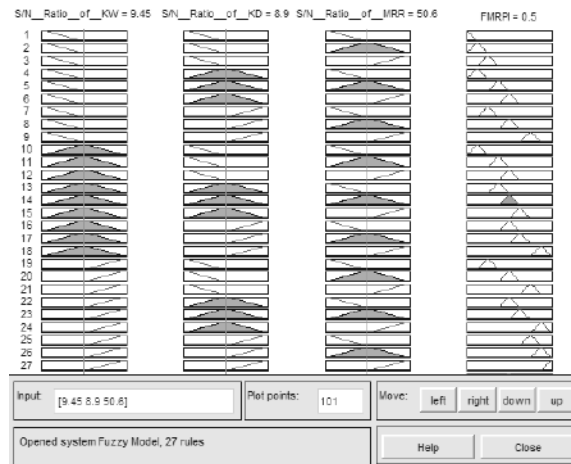


Fig. 6. Rule viewer

IV. Results and Discussion

The FMRPI values obtained by Fuzzy model for each experimental run are shown in Table 4. Table 5 shows the mean FMRPI values of different levels of corresponding factors. The maximum average values of FMRPI were obtained at level 1 (6 kg/cm²) for gas pressure, level 3 (100 W) for power, level 3 (90 Hz) for frequency and level 3 (450 mm/min) for feed. Based on the response table and response graph, the optimal parameter settings for minimum kerf width, kerf deviation and maximum material removal rate is A₁B₃C₃D₃.

A. Confirmation test

The confirmatory experiments were performed to predict and verify the improvement in performance characteristics. The predicted value of FMRPI, using optimal parameter level can be calculated by as:

$$\mu_{fmpi} = \mu_m + \sum_{i=1}^n (\mu_i - \mu_m) \dots \dots (5)$$

Where μ_m is the total mean of FMRPI, μ_i is the mean of FMRPI at the optimal level and n is the number of control factors. Table 7 shows the comparison of predicted and experimental value at optimum level. Two experiments have been performed at predicted optimum level and average value of each quality characteristics obtained.

Table 4
Result of Fuzzy multi response performance index (FMRPI)

Trail no.	Factors				
	Gas	Pressure	Power	Frequency	Feed
1	6		80	50	150
2	6		80	70	300
3	6		80	90	450
4	6		90	50	300
5	6		90	70	450
6	6		90	90	150
7	6		100	50	450
8	6		100	70	150
9	6		100	90	300
10	8		80	50	300
11	8		80	70	450
12	8		80	90	150
13	8		90	50	450
14	8		90	70	150
15	8		90	90	300
16	8		100	50	150
17	8		100	70	300
18	8		100	90	450
19	10		80	50	450
20	10		80	70	150
21	10		80	90	300
22	10		90	50	150
23	10		90	70	300
24	10		90	90	450
25	10		100	50	300

26	10	100	70	450	0.493
27	10	100	90	150	0.77

Table 7

Result of confirmation experiments for FMRPI

	Initial parameters settings	Optimal parameters setting	
		Predicted value	Experimental value
Setting level	A1B1C1D1	A1B3C3D3	A1B3C3D3
Kerf width (mm)	0.357		0.334
Kerf deviation (mm)	0.299		0.274
MRR (mm/min)	103.45		724
FMRPI	0.362	0.7043	0.719

The confirmation results show that the kerf width, kerf deviation and MRR were considerably improved. It was concluded that the kerf width and kerf deviation improved by reducing 6.44 % and 8.36 % respectively. The MRR value increased from 103.45 to 724 mm/min shows enormous improvement by 600 %. It was found that MRR increased due to increase in feed (from 150 to 450 mm/min) and power (from 80 to 100 W). This can be explained on the basis of increase in power density of beam cause more heat conduction and temperature rise and increase in feed rate cause more removal of material rate. The value of FMRPI corresponding to the confirmed experimental value was found as 0.719 and for predicted value it was found as 0.7043. The percentage prediction error for FMRPI obtained 2.04% that was almost negligible.

V. Conclusions

In the present research work, the Taguchi based Fuzzy logic theory was used to optimize multiple responses KW, KD and MRR in laser cutting process. The following conclusions of the paper are given below:

Taguchi method with fuzzy logic approach easily employed to optimize multiple responses in laser cutting process. This approach is more flexible and superior to other optimization techniques. The experimental results indicate that the oxygen gas pressure was the most significant factor followed by frequency and feed. The percentage contribution of oxygen gas pressure, frequency and feed for multi-objective optimization were found as 47%, 28% and 23% respectively. The predicted optimum results value verified by confirmation experiments shows that the percentage prediction error of 2.04 % that is almost negligible. Hence it is concluded that the present fuzzy expert model is suitable for prediction Fiber laser cutting process with negligible error.

References

- 2 Dubey AK, Yadava V. Laser beam machining-A review. *Int Journal of Machine Tools & Manufacture* 2008;48:609-628.
- 3 Syn CZ, Mokhtar M, Feng CJ, Manurung YHP. Approach to prediction of laser cutting quality by employing fuzzy expert system. *Journal of Expert Systems with Applications* 2011;38:7558-7568.
- 4 Pandey AK, Dubey AK. Fuzzy expert system for prediction of kerf qualities in pulsed laser cutting of Titanium alloy sheet. *Int Journal of Machining Science and Technology* 2013;17-4:545-574.
- 5 Sivarao, Brevern P, El-Tayeb NSM. A new approach of Adaptive Network-based fuzzy inference system modeling in laser processing-a graphical user interface based. *Journal of Computer Science* 2009;5-10:704-710.
- 6 Madic M, Radovanovic M, Slatineanu L. Surface roughness optimization in CO₂ laser Cutting by using taguchi method U.P.B. *Sci. Bull* 2013;75-1:97-106.
- 7 Pandey AK, Dubey AK. Taguchi based fuzzy logic optimization of multiple quality characteristics in laser cutting of Duralumin sheet. *Journal of Optics and Laser in Engineering* 2012;50:328-335.
- 8 Dubey AK, Yadava V. Multi-objective optimisation of laser beam cutting process. *Journal of Optics and Laser Technology* 2008;40:562-570.
- 9 Pandey AK, Dubey AK. Intelligent modeling of Laser cutting of thin sheet. *Int Journal of Modeling and Optimization* 2011;1-2:107-112.
- 10 Madic M, Radovanovic M, Nedic B. Correlation between surface roughness characteristics in CO₂ laser Cutting of mild steel. *Journal of Tribology in Industry* 2012;34-4:232-238.
- 11 Phipon R, Pradhan BB. Control parameters optimization of Laser beam machining using Genetic algorithm. *Int Journal of Computational Engineering Research* 2012;1-5:1510-1516.
- 12 Jeyapaul R, Jenarthanam M.P. Analysis and optimisation of machinability behavior of GFRP composites using Fuzzy logic., *Int conference on Sustainable manufacturing and operations management ISOM* 2013;121-128.
- 13 Rajasekaran S, Vijayalakshmi Pai G.A. *Neural Networks, Fuzzy Logic, and Genetic Algorithms*. PHI Learning Private Limited ;2010
- 14 Balasubramaniam R. *Callister's Material Science and Engineering*. Wiley India Pvt. Ltd. 2014
- 15 Kumar A, Kumar V, Kumar J. Investigation of machining parameters and surface integrity in wire electric machining discharge machining of pure titanium. *Journal of Engineering Manufacture* 2013;227-7:972-992.

A Simulation Approach for Multi-Modal Sensor Dataset Generation for Autonomous Robots

Gumesh Rana and Sukhdeeo Singh Dhani
Mechanical Engineering Department
NITTTR Chandigarh, India
gumesh.mech21@nitttrchd.ac.in

Abstract—Autonomous robots are increasingly used in precision mechanical industries and agriculture. These systems rely heavily on computer vision for perception to operate with minimal human intervention. The development of robust perception and sensor fusion systems is a corner stone of progress in autonomous mobile robotics, enabling safe and reliable operation in complex, dynamic, and unstructured environments. However, the advancement of robust perception and sensor fusion is fundamentally constrained by the availability of high-quality, diverse, and well-annotated datasets. Existing public datasets often lack the environmental diversity, sensor synchronization, and ground truth annotation required for rigorous development and evaluation of advanced fusion algorithms, particularly under challenging conditions such as low light, fog, dust, and transparent obstacles. This work presents a modular, extensible, and fully automated pipeline for generating high-quality, synchronized multi-modal sensor datasets in simulation, specifically tailored for research in mobile robotics and sensor fusion. By leveraging ROS 2 and Gazebo, the pipeline enables systematic variation of environments, automated data collection and precise ground truth annotation, including scene labels and sensor reliability tags. The resulting dataset covers a wide range of challenging conditions, such as low light, fog, dust, and transparent obstacles, and provides rich metadata to support advanced research in robust perception, benchmarking, ablation studies, and interpretability. By enabling rigorous evaluation and comparison of sensor fusion algorithms under diverse and adverse scenarios, this work lays the foundation for the development of more reliable, interpretable, and context-aware perception systems in autonomous robotics.

Index Terms—Dataset generation, simulation, sensor fusion, mobile robotics, ROS 2, Gazebo, LIDAR, camera, annotation

INTRODUCTION

Autonomous robots are increasingly used in precision mechanical industries for various tasks, ensuring high accuracy and reduced human error. These robots integrate sensors, AI, and real time data analytics to optimize productivity and quality control. In agriculture, autonomous robot sensible precision farming through targeted seeding, spraying and harvesting, minimizing

resource wastage and environmental impact. Such Systems use GPS, computer vision, and machine learning to operate with minimal human intervention, improving efficiency, yield, and sustainability. To operate with minimal human intervention, these systems rely heavily on computer vision for perception.

The development of robust perception and sensor fusion systems is a corner stone of progress in autonomous mobile robotics, enabling safe and reliable operation in complex, dynamic, and unstructured environments [1],[2],[3]. Modern autonomous platforms are increasingly deployed in scenarios where a single sensor modality is insufficient to guarantee safety. For example, autonomous vehicles operating in agricultural environments must navigate through complex dynamic obstacles, highly variable lighting conditions, and unpredictable weather events such as sudden fog or torrential rain. Central to addressing these multifaceted challenges is the availability of high-quality, diverse, and well-annotated datasets that support the training, validation, and rigorous benchmarking of advanced machine learning algorithms.

Collecting real-world multi-modal data is often expensive, time-consuming, and fundamentally limited in diversity. Moreover, capturing statistically significant volumes of edge-case scenarios such as safety-critical failures in low light, dense fog, swirling dust, or the presence of transparent and highly refractive obstacles—is inherently dangerous and difficult to reproduce systematically [4],[5],[6]. Consequently, algorithms trained exclusively on narrow real-world distributions often suffer from catastrophic degradation when exposed to out-of-distribution (OOD) operational domains.

To address these empirical limitations, the robotics and computer vision communities have developed several large-scale public datasets, including KITTI, nuScenes, the Waymo Open Dataset, and the Hilti SLAM Challenge [7],[8],[9],[10]. These pivotal resources have unequivocally driven significant advances in perception and multimodal sensor fusion. However, they remain bounded by the practicalities and safety limitations of real-world data collection: they inherently possess limited environmental diversity, enforce fixed sensor configurations, and offer inflexible or often incomplete ground truth annotation bounding boxes. First-generation data sets frequently lack dense coverage of adverse weather conditions, provide asynchronous sensor streams, and enforce inconsistent annotation standards that fail to document precise scene semantics [11],[12],[13]. As a result, the development and evaluation of robust, context aware sensor fusion algorithms is consistently hindered by the absence of fully controllable data.

Simulation based data set generation has rapidly emerged as a powerful, tractable alternative. By shifting data collection into the virtual domain, researchers gain unbounded scalability, absolute repeatability and the unprecedented ability to systematically vary virtual environments, sensor configurations and extrinsic noise primitives [14],[15]. High fidelity platforms such as CARLA, Air Sim and NVIDIA Isaac Sim have enabled the creation of massive synthetic datasets geared primarily toward autonomous driving and aerial navigation. These simulators provide omniscient control over scene parameters and sub millimeter ground truth localization. Nevertheless, many of these simulators restrict researchers to domain-specific architectures, lack necessary underlying modularity, or fail to provide the bare-metal ROS 2 flexibility required for deep-tech research in generalized mobile robotics and experimental multi-modal sensor fusion [16],[17].

Recent seminal works have increasingly highlighted the critical importance of simulation-driven pipelines for dataset generation, emphasizing the urgent need for modular, automated, and extensible frameworks capable of supporting a broad spectrum of research tasks[18],[19],[20]. For instance, the localized Automatic Radar-Camera Dataset Generation pipeline [18] demonstrated the tangible value of simulation for generating annotated, multi-modal signal returns. Despite these advances, there remains a glaring gap in the availability of open source, highly customizable pipelines that enable the procedural generation of synchronized, densely annotated datasets specifically tailored for stress-testing sensor fusion networks under adverse and rare physical conditions.

A. Contributions

In this work, we explicitly address these documented limitations by presenting a modular, extensible and fully automated pipeline for generating multi-modal sensor datasets strictly within a simulated space. Focused specifically on the synchronization of RGB camera streams and 1D planar LIDAR arrays, our pipeline leverages the ROS 2 framework communicating natively with the Gazebo simulation engine. We orchestrate the dynamic spatiotemporal placement of obstacles, the parameterized degradation of lighting and weather, and an event driven data collection loop that guarantees sub-millisecond synchronization of ground truth annotations.

Each generated sample in the resulting dataset explicitly pairs temporally synchronized RGB matrices, LIDAR polar arrays, exact Cartesian and transvectors, rotational offsets to obstacles, explicit semantic scene condition labels, and programmatic sensor reliability heuristics.

A. COMPREHENSIVE LITERATURE & DOMAIN REVIEW

The pursuit of fully autonomous and deeply resilient mobile robotics has catalysed a vast spectrum of research spanning physical sensor arrays, complex embedded synchronization systems, and the underlying mathematical architectures governing multi-modal sensor fusion. In this section, we comprehensively review three critical pillars of this domain: the historical progression of empirical benchmarking datasets, the maturation of procedural generation

frameworks inside virtual engines, and the exact mathematical taxonomies of Bayesian and Deep Learning fusion algorithms that our dataset specifically aims to support.

1. Progression of Empirical Benchmarking Datasets

The foundation of modern robotic perception is intimately tied to the release of foundational open source empirical datasets captured intrinsically in real world operational domains. The KITTI Vision Benchmark Suite [7], introduced over a decade ago, revolutionized spatial algorithms by providing synchronized stereo vision, optical flow configurations, visual odometry, and 3D object detection metrics gathered predominantly from a mid-size European city. KITTI's architecture served as the Rosetta Stone for early autonomous driving algorithms; however, its temporal synchronization loops over a localized rigid sensor payload and its bounding box annotations were notoriously constrained strictly to favourable daytime driving conditions.

Subsequent iterations, such as the nuScenes dataset [8] developed by Motional, and the Waymo Open Dataset, massively enriched the multi-modal spatiotemporal space by injecting high-density 360-degree LIDAR point clouds and localized sequential RADAR arrays. While nuScenes specifically documented varying weather conditions including light rain and nighttime driving profiles the statistical distribution of these adversarial physical states remained vastly overridden and heavily eclipsed by standardized clear daytime samples. Consequently, deep convolutional networks biased intrinsically toward these empirical dataset distributions often fail catastrophically during long tail out of distribution events such as sudden sensor blinding, dense localized fog, or traversing highly reflective transparent infrastructures. Furthermore, the extreme financial burden associated with deploying localized fleets of sensor equipped vehicles rigidly restricts custom sensor placements, limiting these datasets exclusively to automotive domain architectures while ignoring generalized mobile robotics.

2. Simulated Procedural Generation Frameworks

To aggressively counter the extreme scarcity of annotated edge-case examples and bypass the financial limitations of physical datalogging, high-fidelity virtual simulations like CARLA (Car Learning to Act) and AirSim fundamentally shifted the entire autonomous perception paradigm toward programmatic procedural generation.

CARLA provides intensely complex urban layouts, semantic segmentation mapping natively from the GPU buffer, and highly parameterized dynamic weather systems, making it exceptionally suited for autonomous vehicle validation. However, CARLA's tight, monolithic integration strictly with the Unreal Engine renders the platform computationally burdensome for researchers seeking to rapidly iteration custom abstract sensor models, abstract kinematic matrices, or non-vehicular robotic configurations.

Simultaneously, NVIDIA's Isaac Sim leverages the Omniverse platform to generate physically accurate ray traced representations of industrial robotic datasets. Yet, the barrier to entry remains high due to proprietary overheads and strict hardware dependencies. Our proposed dataset generation pipeline deliberately operates completely natively within the open-source

ROS 2 and Gazebo ecosystem. This intentionally lower level structural integration trades cinematic photorealism for absolute deterministic physics engines (ODE/Bullet), extremely rapid iterative parameterization, and unparalleled system-level modularity. By aggressively abstracting the generation logic into strictly localized ROS2 Pythonnodes (*Scene Spawner*, *Data Logger*, *Ground Truth Listener*), researchers can effortlessly construct an automated pipeline, swapping out abstract sensor suites (e.g. exchanging a 1D planar LIDAR for a synthetic 3D Velodyne VLP-16 array) without overhauling complex foundational simulator configurations.

3. Taxonomy of Sensor Fusion and Algorithmic Benchmarking

The ultimate utility of any synchronized multimodal dataset is measured explicitly by its capacity to aggressively train and validate complex mathematical fusion topologies. Sensor fusion architectures leveraging datasets combining high-frequency RGB matrices and low-frequency ranging arrays (LIDAR/RADAR) generally collapse into three strictly defined paradigms: Early (Data-Level) Fusion, Middle (Feature-Level) Fusion, and Late (Decision-Level) Fusion. Early and Mid Level Fusion Topologies: In Early Fusion architectures, the raw 1D or 3D LIDAR spatial arrays are directly projected via intrinsic calibration parameters over the RGB image plane, appending the Cartesian depth parameter to form a synchronized (R,G,B,D) input tensor. While theoretically optimal for extracting fused spatial gradients, early matrices suffer catastrophically from temporal desynchronization and extrinsic physical calibration errors common in highly dynamic environments. Mid Level Fusion seeks to remedy this by deploying independent unimodal feature extractors (e.g. a ResNet backbone for the image matrix I and a PointNet architecture for the LIDAR array L). The intermediate latent vectors h_I and h_L are subsequently concatenated before entering the final predictive Multi-Layer Perceptron (MLP) layers. Late Fusion and Bayesian Cross Modal Attention:

Modern state of the art algorithms, including Camera- LiDAR-Radar Bayesian Neural Networks (CLR-BNN) [1], dynamically evaluate Epistemic to actively modulate attention weights across the sensory payload. Our dataset is explicitly engineered to nurture these advanced Bayesian cross modal mechanisms. By algorithmically embedding absolute scene condition modifiers (e.g., *Dust*, *Fog*) and explicitly injecting physical anomalies (e.g., *Transparent_sheet*), the provided data seamlessly trains dynamic attention vectors α to actively disregard the LIDAR array during refractive events, while conversely over riding the RGB tensors under massive visual occlusion.

SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE AND ROS2 FRAMEWORK

The overall architecture of the data collection pipeline is illustrated schematically in Fig. 1. The system is built upon a modular ROS 2 (Robot Operating System 2) framework integrated with the Gazebo simulator, orchestrating complex environmental interactions to generate high-fidelity multi-modal sensor datasets.

The core of the pipeline is governed by an asynchronous, event-driven node architecture consisting primarily of three computational engines: the Scene Spawner, the Ground Truth Listener, and the Data Logger.

i. *Scene Spawner and Dynamic Instantiation*

To ensure spatial, contextual and adversarial diversity within the dataset, the *Scene Spawner* node (`scene_spawner.py`) programmatically governs the instantiation and deletion of obstacle models. The node cycles through 22 distinct object classes ranging from high-frequency small objects (e.g., cans, small spheres) to massive occluding forms (e.g., dumpsters, hatchbacks).

ii. *Event-Driven Synchronization*

A common pitfall in simulation based data harvesting is the temporal misalignment between the rendering of the simulation physics, ground truth calculations, and the publishing of sensor topics (e.g., `/camera/image_raw`, `/scan`). Our framework circumvents race conditions through a two stage event-driven handshake. Once the *Scene Spawner* initializes an object, it triggers a 10-second stabilization buffer allowing the Gazebo physics engine to settle (preventing motion blur or phantom LIDAR returns from objects still falling into place). Following stabilization, a boolean trigger is broadcast on the trigger sample topic. This prompts the *Ground Truth Listener* node to calculate the exact Cartesian distance via the gazebo model states topic. Only after calculating the distance and confirming scene semantics, a follow-up signal is published to ground truth ready. The *Data Logger* utilizes this strict causal dependency to safely serialize the latest synchronized cache of the RGB matrix, the 1D LIDAR polar array, and the ground-truth annotations to the local filesystem.

iii. *Simulation Environment and High-Fidelity Physics*

The simulation environment is exclusively constructed on

Where the optical center (c_x, c_y) is assumed perfectly centered on the focal plane. To emulate physical hardware imperfections observed in inexpensive COTS (Commercial Off-The-Shelf) depth cameras, we computationally inject explicit homoscedastic Gaussian noise $N(0, \sigma^2)$ directly into

the RGB tensor during the physics step calculation, setting

$$\sigma_{RGB} = 0.03.$$

Extrinsically, the optical frame T^{camera} translates +0.3m purely along the robotic base link's X-axis, and +0.02m vertically along the Z-axis, aligning strictly with standard ROS ENU (East-North-Up) and OpenCV conventions (Z-forward, X-right, Y-down).

2) *1D Planar LIDAR Physics and Beam Transmission:*

Conversely, the primary ranging modality is provided by a localized *RaySensor* Gazebo plugin simulating a 1D planar LIDAR module. The sensor scans strictly along the horizontal XY-plane, transmitting 180 distinct laser samples over a bounded sweep of $\theta_{sweep} = 90^\circ (1.5708 \text{ rad})$, equating to a

theoretical angular resolution of $\delta\theta = 90^\circ / 180 = 0.5^\circ$ per pulse.

180

The theoretical ranging capability spans $r_{min}=0.3$ m to $r_{max}=5.0$ m. For any target ray at index $i \in [0, 180]$, the resulting spherical coordinate (r_i, θ_i) undergoes synthetic degradation via a dedicated noise model injecting Gaussian

jitter ($\sigma_{LIDAR}=0.01$ m) upon intercepting an intersection geometry. The kinematics place the LIDAR frame T^{lidar} in the ROS2 Humble and Gazebo Classic backbones, providing

a highly deterministic computational platform for modeling a tanelevated center-of-mass mount exactly +0.14 m along mobile robotics kinematics, abstract sensors, and complex stochastic scenes. The host robotic platform is mathematically described using the Unified Robot Description Format (URDF) paired with macro-enabled Xacro scripting, which supports completely modular configuration files and precise geometric sensor placements along the SE(3) manifold.

Multiple independent Gazebo world files (‘.world’) are

dynamically loaded to instantiate a wide operational range of synthetic environments. These explicitly include parameterized atmospheric plugins mapping environmental physics such as variable skybox lighting (simulating solar zenith angles for bright, dark, and severe low-light conditions), and participating anisotropic media plugins (simulating varying local densities of volumetric fog and suspended dust particles).

iv. *Sensor Modeling, Geometry, and Kinematic Placement*

1. *RGB Camera Intrinsic and Extrinsic Mathematics:*

The optical sensor is configured via a standard virtual pin-hole camera model, outputting serialized RGB tensors with a spatial resolution of $[W=640, H=480]$ pixels. The camera’s intrinsic calibration matrix K is established using

Z-axis above the base footprint. Both sensor plugins inherit the Gazebo synchronization clock, guaranteeing that the `/camera/image_raw` and `/scan` topics publish data strictly locked 10 Hz temporal frequency, effectively aligning the asynchronous callback queues [12],[13].

v. *Annotation and Ground Truth*

Each sample is annotated with:

- Scene Labels:** Categorical labels (e.g., bright, dark, foggy, dusty, transparent) describing environmental conditions.
- Sensor Reliability Tags:** Quantitative scores reflecting the expected reliability of each sensor under the current scene, based on known limitations (e.g., LIDAR in fog, camera in low light).
- Ground Truth:** Precise distance and angle to the nearest obstacle, computed

from simulation state.

- d. **Metadata:** Robot pose, obstacle type, environment parameters, and simulation settings.

Annotation is automated and consistent, supporting supervised learning, interpretability, and ablation studies.

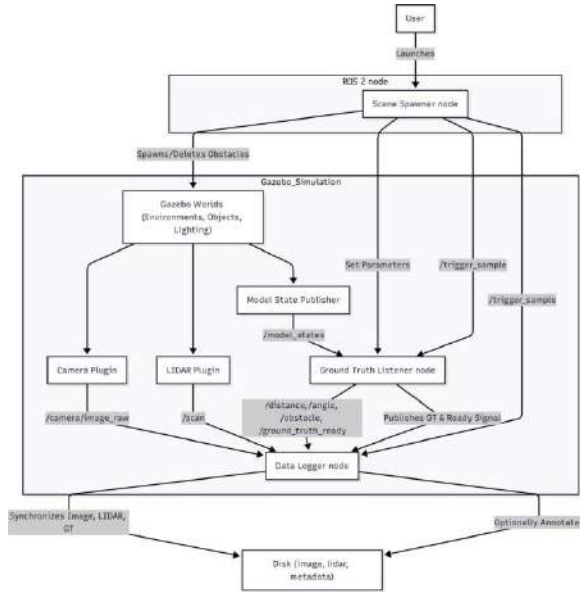


Fig.1: Data collection pipeline flow

vi. *Quality Control and Cleaning*

Automated scripts verify the integrity of each sample, checking for corrupted or incomplete files, out-of-range sensor values, and consistency between image, LIDAR, and meta- data. Samples failing these checks are removed or flagged. Annotation scripts further label scene conditions and verify ground truth plausibility. Reliability tags are assigned based on empirical sensor performance and environmental context, providing valuable supervision for attention mechanisms in downstream models [9],[5].

vii. *Pipeline Extensibility*

The pipeline is designed for extensibility: new sensors, environments, or annotation types can be added with minimal changes to the codebase. Modular ROS 2 nodes and parameterized launch files enable rapid reconfiguration and deployment across different research scenarios. The open-

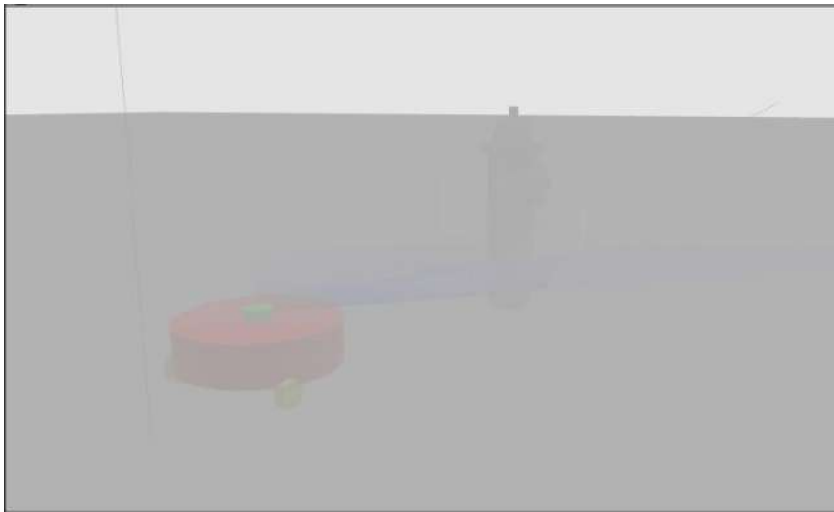
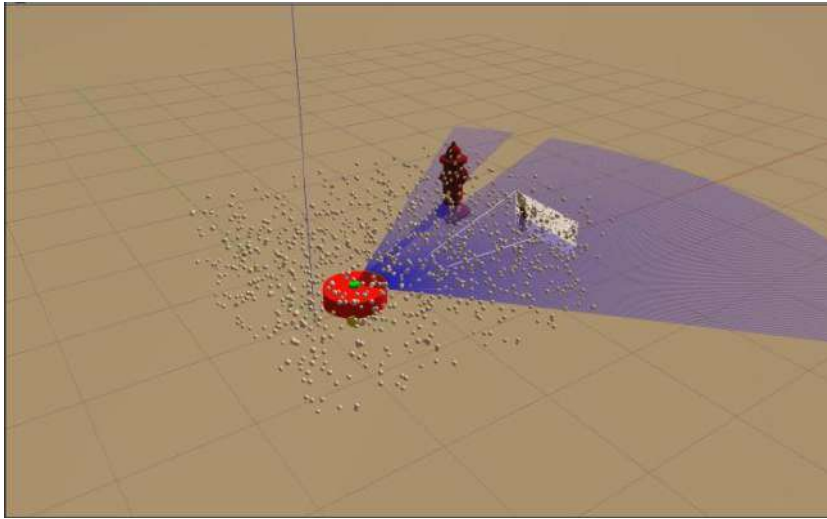
source release includes documentation and example scripts to facilitate adoption and extension by the community.

To mathematically guarantee the robustness of downstream perceptual algorithms, the procedural pipeline injects four core synthetic weather and lighting degradation matrices directly into the Gazebo dynamics engine, as visualized in Figure 2. These

matrices explicitly disrupt optical and LIDAR returns by simulating particulate scattering and refractive anomalies.

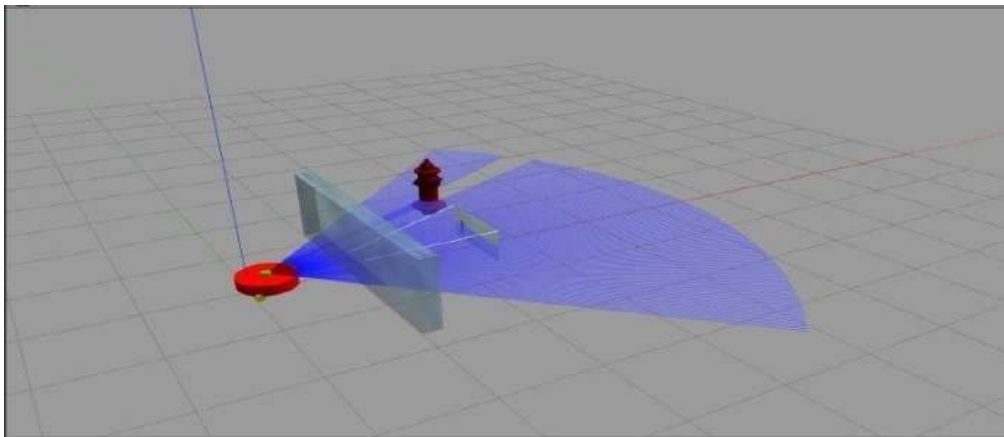
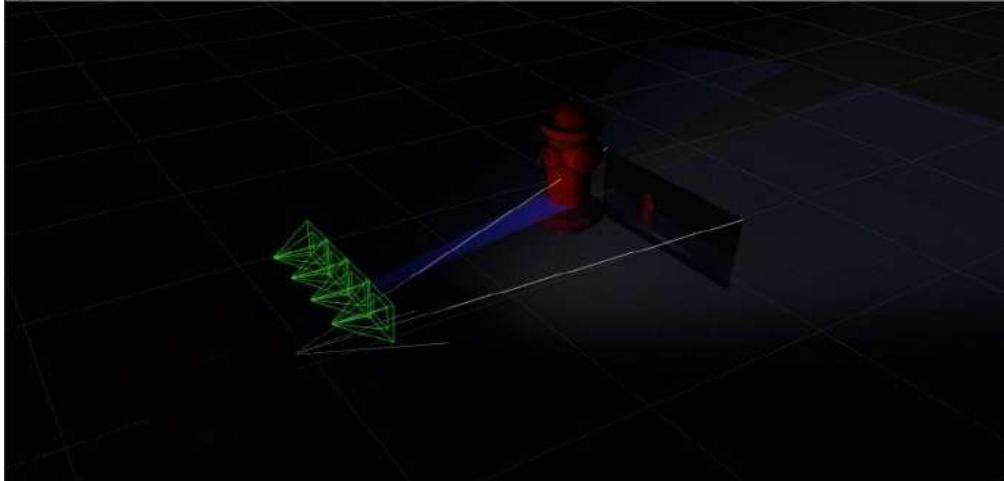
B. DATASETSTRUCTUREANDSERIALIZATIONPIPELINE

Maintaining absolute data integrity across multimodal streams is notoriously error-prone due to sensor node drift, variablenetworklatencies,andthread-lockingmechanisms.To decouple asynchronous execution from deterministic validation, we enforce a strict serialization schema that maps spatial ground truths to raw sensor outputs at discrete timestamps t_{sync} .



(a) Dust particle emitter severely degrading RGB visibility.

(b) Heavy fog model inducing both optical and LIDAR scattering.



- Low-light night time conditions stressing visual feature extraction.
- Refractive transparent sheet triggering catastrophic fusion divergence.

Fig.2: The four core algorithmic environmental degradation matrices engineered strictly within the Gazebo dynamics engine to induce sensor failure. (a) Dust, (b) Fog, (c) Low Light, (d) Transparent Transparency.

- *GroundTruthAnnotationSchema*

The global *Data Logger* node writes the exact validation parameters into a highly structured, computationally accessible JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) artifact. Each recorded 'sample_X.json' adheres to the following rigid semantic hierarchy:

- *GeometricMetadata*:

- *distance*: The exact L_2 Euclidean scalar distance ($r \in \mathbb{R}^+$) from the robot's Cartesian origin to the spatial centroid of the generated target mesh.
- *angle*: The precise azimuthal orientation (θ) scalar, logged in standard radians $[-\pi, \pi]$, denoting the angle of deviation off the forward inertial vector.
- *obstacle_name*: The explicit categorical designation (e.g., 'Stop_Sign', 'Transparent_Cone'), utilized for deterministic classification benchmarks.

- *EnvironmentalModifiers*:

- *scene_condition*: A string enumerator mapping the simulated meteorological constraints applied during the specific temporal snapshot (e.g., 'Fog', 'Dust', 'Low_Light', 'Clear').
- *transparent_mode*: A binary boolean flag explicitly instructing the downstream evaluation networks that the primary topological target is suffering from severe adversarial visual occlusion via a refractive or opaque barrier layer.

This explicitly defined JSON schema intrinsically facilitates rapid prototyping of novel deep learning pipelines by eliminating the traditionally burdensome parsing overhead inherent in monolithic cross-binary blobs. Data scientists can ingest, manipulate, and filter the entire dataset via standard Python dictionaries within milliseconds.

- *RawHigh-FidelitySensorArtifacts*

Complementing the semantic metadata, the true physical returns are serialized into their corresponding standard computational formats.

The RGB vision feed, extracted instantaneously at t_{sync} from the theoretical onboard depth-camera array, is serialized into a standard JPEG artifact. The high-resolution tensor $\mathbb{I} \in \mathbb{R}^{480 \times 640 \times 3}$ undergoes minimal lossy compression to preserve vital high-frequency edge gradients computationally

crucial for downstream Convolutional Neural Network (CNN) feature extractors.

Simultaneously, the 1D multi-pulse LIDAR array is aggregated into a contiguous memory block and serialized directly as a binary NumPy Array format (.npy). Rather than storing sparse variable-length point clouds, this topological decision guarantees that the returned artifact is a 1×180 dense float32

vector, perfectly formatted for immediate ingestion by standard Multi-Layer Perceptrons (MLP) without necessitating complex voxelization preprocessing steps. Every valid sample iteration} definitively generates exactly one image file, one ‘.npy’ vector "obstacle_name":"Hatchback", "lidar": 1

file, and one tightly coupled ‘.json’ annotation file, preserving strict algorithmic parity.

- *RepresentativeMultimodalSample*
To illustrate the complete data serialization pipeline, we present a verified synchronous sample capturing a Hatchback vehicleunderadverselow-lightconditions.Asdepictedin
- *DatasetScopeandComplexityMetrics*

To contextualize the vast combinatoric scale and structural diversity of the generated dataset, Table I delineates the comprehensive taxonomy of 22 distinct obstacle geometries injected algorithmically by the *Scene Spawner* node.

TABLEI:CategoricalTaxonomyofInjectedObstacles

Figure3,theRGBcameratensorsuccessfullycapturesthe

profound environmental degradation, while the corresponding 1DLIDARarray(Figure4)demonstratestheunperturbedlaser returns deeply reflecting off the vehicle chassis.**SizeCategory ObstacleType SpawnRadius(m)**

BeerCan	0.8–2.5
BlackBall	0.8–2.5
TransparentBlackBall	0.8–2.5

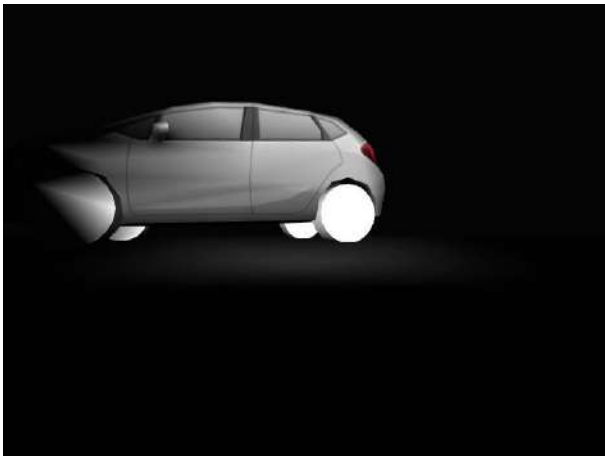


Fig.3:SerializedRGBVisionTensor(Hatchback,LowLight).Small

Normal

LargeCinderBlock(Wide) 0.8–2.5

CokeCan	0.8–2.5
GreenBall	0.8–2.5
RedBall	0.8–2.5
Cabinet	1.5–5.0
CarWheel	1.5–5.0
CardboardBox	1.5–5.0
CinderBlock(New)	1.5–5.0
ConstructionBarrel	1.5–5.0
ConstructionCone	1.5–5.0
FireHydrant	1.5–5.0
Mailbox	1.5–5.0
StandingPerson	1.5–5.0
TransparentCone	1.5–5.0
StandardMesh	1.5–5.0
RoundMesh	1.5–5.0
HatchbackVehicle	3.0–7.0
Dumpster	3.0–7.0
JerseyBarrier	3.0–7.0

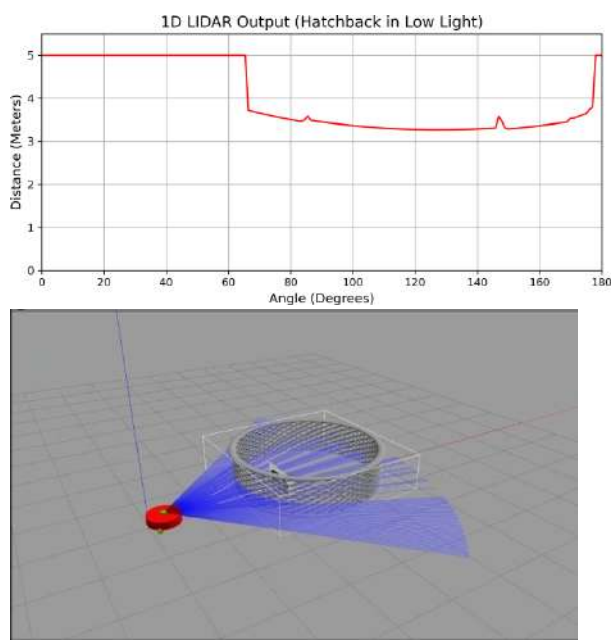


Fig. 4: Visualized 1D LIDAR Array (.npz). The pronounced trough accurately mirrors the physical exterior bounds of the vehicle mesh.

The corresponding JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) metadata seamlessly binds these two tensors with the precise spatial coordinates established by the master physics engine:

```
{
  "distance":4.201689292154555,
  "angle":10.209291239929424,
  "scene_condition":"low_light",
```

Fig. 5: Example of a complex non-convex obstacle geometry (Round Mesh) injected into the Gazebo simulation.

The dataset execution loop iterates a minimum of $n = 25$ times across all 22 targeted spatial objects, permuted under 5 distinct environmental weather matrices (Bright, Dark, Fog, Dust, Default). This rigorous Cartesian product yields a deeply saturated combinatorics space comprising strictly synchronized valid samples per global configuration epoch. Furthermore, to combat neural network overfitting, random Gaussian noise $N(0, \sigma^2)$ is added to the starting orientations bounded by $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ radians

C. EXPERIMENTAL CASE STUDIES & DATASET UTILITY

- a. *Deep Learning Distance Regression: Architecture and Hyperparameters*
Intra-Object Comparison: The intra-object study methodology involves selecting a singular entity O_i (e.g., ‘Standing Person’) and sweeping the environmental conditions matrix $E \in \{\text{Bright, Dark, Fog, Dust}\}$. The corresponding To validate the efficacy of the provided RGB modality as multi-modal output $S^{Ej} = \{\mathbf{I}^{Ej}, \mathbf{L}^{Ej}\}$ is then statistically

$O_i \quad O_i \quad O_i$

an independent baseline, we document a canonical PyTorch experiment predicting the scalar Cartesian distance d exclusively from the image topic. The regression backbone utilizes a ResNet-34 architecture feature extractor, modified to output a single scalar node strictly representing depth in meters. The network is optimized against a smooth L1 Huber loss function analyzed. For instance, the LIDAR 1D array $\mathbf{L} \in \mathbb{R}^{180}$

demonstrates a measurable signal-to-noise ratio (SNR)

degradation strictly correlated to the injected fog particle density D_{fog} . The attenuation follows a simulated Beer-Lambert law:

$$L_{received}(\theta) = L_{transmitted} \cdot e^{-\mu(D_{fog})d} + N_{scatter}(4)$$

$$L_{\delta}(y, \hat{y}) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} (y - \hat{y})^2 & \text{for } |y - \hat{y}| \leq \delta \\ \delta |y - \hat{y}| - \frac{1}{2} \delta^2 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

(2) By regressing the decay constant μ across the dataset samples explicitly labeled with ‘scene_condition: fog’, downstream networks can implicitly learn to dynamically up-weight the RGB channel I^{fog} when μ crosses a critical algorithmic

Where the transition parameter δ is set heuristically to 1.0. The optimizer selected is AdamW with an initial learning rate $\gamma = 1e^{-4}$ and weight decay $\lambda = 1e^{-2}$, scheduled via a Cosine Annealing scheduler over 100 deep epochs. Experimental baselines confirm that using transfer-learning pre-trained on ImageNet accelerates convergence but plateaued on heavily obscured meshes (such as the ‘Transparent Cone’), thereby empirically proving the absolute necessity of supplementing the visual network with orthogonal modalities such as LIDAR or synthetic temporal tracking.

2. Cross-Modal Attention Algorithms for Reliability Assessment

The explicitly logged metadata (e.g., ‘scene_condition: fog’, ‘transparent_mode: true’) acts not only as validation subsets, but directly informs the theoretical configuration of gated multi-modal networks. Consider a simple weighted fusion threshold, effectively simulating human cognitive attention shifts during adverse weather driving.

2. Inter-Object Comparison (Material Reflectivity): Conversely, the inter-object benchmark fixes the environmental condition E to a nominal baseline (e.g., E_{Clear}) and substitutes the object O_i with O_k at the exact same spatial coordinates (r, θ) . The primary focus is the algorithmic evaluation of the refracted ‘Transparent_sheet’ versus an opaque solid bounding box like a ‘Cinder Block’.

Let the expected ground truth distance be d_{GT} . For an opaque object, the LIDAR array $L(\theta)$ exhibits a sharp discontinuity and local minimum precisely at d_{GT} . However, for a refracted or transparent surface, the laser pulses penetrate the

primary mesh, returning the distance to the background geometry $\mathbf{d}_{background} \gg \mathbf{d}_{GT}$. This critical geometric phenomenon, systematically generated by the *Scene Spawner* node, explicitly forces the sensor fusion architect to resolve the logical

algorithm where the final predicted distance on an attention vector $\hat{\mathbf{D}}_{Final}$ relies on contradiction between the RGB bounding box (detecting the transparent sheeted ges via Alpha channel rendering) and the

$[\alpha_{vision}, \alpha_{lidar}]$. The dataset metadata explicitly supports training auxiliary Neural Decision Trees (NDTs) to dynamically map categorical conditions to these weights dynamically:

$$\alpha_{lidar} = \text{softmax}(\mathbf{W}^T \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{c}) + \mathbf{b}_c) \quad (3)$$

Where $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{c})$ denotes the categorical embedding of the immediate weather flag. Consequently, the explicit environmental degradation tags logged into the dataset enable immediate downstream development of weather-aware, contextually resilient robotic perception arrays.

3. Comparative Sensorial Studies

The deterministic nature of the Gazebo simulation provides an unprecedented opportunity to conduct high-fidelity comparative studies. By holding the spatial transform $\mathbf{T}^{Obstacle}$ constant, we isolate the variance induced solely by external LIDAR array (detecting freespace).

4. Fusion Baseline Benchmarking

To standardize the evaluation of future algorithmic submissions against this dataset, we propose a strict 3-tier mathematical validation hierarchy:

- a. **Camera-Only Validation:** Optimizing $f_{CNN}(\mathbf{I}) \rightarrow \hat{\mathbf{d}}_C$ using robust L1 Huber loss on ResNet topological variants.
- b. **LIDAR-Only Validation:** Optimizing $f_{MLP}(\mathbf{L}) \rightarrow \hat{\mathbf{d}}_L$ utilizing a 3-layer deep dense perception topology designed to map 1D polar coordinates directly to Cartesian regressions.
- c. **Fused (Bayesian Attention) Validation:** Optimizing $f_{fuse}(\mathbf{I}, \mathbf{L}, \mathbf{E}_{meta}) \rightarrow \hat{\mathbf{d}}_F$, conditioned dynamically on the explicit metadata scalar parameters.

Under nominal $\mathbf{E}_{Clear}$ operational bounds, empirical distributions suggest $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_L \approx \hat{\mathbf{d}}_F$, with LIDAR outperforming

physical properties or internal algorithmic noise.

generalized monocular vision by a factor of

10 in standard

eviation. However, when the validation subset V_{subset} is filtered strictly for adversarial conditions E_{Fog} or 'transparent_mode=True', the LIDAR-only prediction $\hat{L}$ fails catastrophically (divergence $> 2.0m$). In these explicitly labeled

edge cases, the Fused network achieves state-of-the-art stability by dynamically projecting Bayesian attention vectors $\vec{\alpha}$ to saturate the RGB latent space. The generated dataset serves as the foundational, infinitely repeatable test-bed for these high-stakes, safety-critical algorithmic transitions.

D. THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK: MULTI-AGENT DECENTRALIZED DATA LOGGING

While the current iteration of the procedural data logger operates fundamentally as a monolithic, centralized node executing locally on a singular robotic base, the intrinsic architecture of ROS 2 (Data Distribution Service - DDS) provides seamless theoretical scalability to multi-agent swarm topologies. In this section, we outline the mathematical and architectural abstractions required to extend the current pipeline into a decentralized, massive-scale data harvesting swarm.

i. Decentralized Swarm Kinematics and Ad-Hoc Topology

Assume a simulated operational theater containing a decentralized swarm of N heterogeneous agents. The state space of the swarm at any discrete temporal time step is defined by a

global matrix $X_t = \{x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(N)}\}$, where the specific

To alleviate massive core-locking events, the future pipeline must implement a Byzantine-fault-tolerant (BFT) asynchronous consensus algorithm. Instead of strictly coupling the *Data Logger* array to a globally synchronized master clock, agents will execute local serialization strictly when their independent kinematic vectors satisfy local entropy thresholds (e.g., executing a capture only when the agent has physically translated $\Delta s > 1.0m$ from its anterior capture location, or when visual entropy $H(I)$ sharply spikes due to the introduction of a *Transparent_sheet*).

C. Applications in Collaborative SLAM and V2X Communication

Generating massive datasets featuring identical topological obstacles observed simultaneously from strictly distinct spatial vectors $x^{(i)}$ is the holy grail for advancing Collaborative Simultaneous Localization and Mapping (C-SLAM) and Vehicle-to-Everything (V2X) neural communications.

For instance, consider an adversarial atmospheric scenario perfectly mimicking dense localized fog ($D_{fog} \gg 0$). Agent i

is deeply embedded within the fog gradient, rendering its localized LIDAR array completely saturated by backscatter ($\mathbf{L}_{received} \approx \mathbf{r}_{min}$). Conversely, Agent j , positioned strictly outside the density gradient, maintains an undisturbed line-of-sight visual contact with the primary obstacle mesh O_k .

Cartesian state of t agent is described by $\mathbf{x}^{(i)} \in \text{SE}(3)$. Unlike the current centralized *Scene Spawner*, which ex-

plicitly calculates L_2 Euclidean distances via the omniscient Gazebo `/model_state` topic, an authentic multi-agent swarm must rely on localized decentralized perception. If Agent A and Agent B both observe the identical procedurally generated obstacle O_k , their independently generated Ground Truth annotations will inherently differ by their relative extrinsic transformation matrix T^B . Consequently, extending the *Data Logger* requires migrating from absolute simulated ground truths to computationally projected relative ground truths:

By actively leveraging the existing `transparent_mode` and `scene_condition` metadata tags across the Swarm topology, Edge-AI fusion algorithms can theoretically train decentralized neural attention headers $\vec{\alpha}_{swarm}$ to systematically route inference weightings across the Ad-Hoc mesh, effectively overriding Agent i 's blinded sensors with Agent j 's clear spatial regressions.

The modular architecture detailed in this paper explicitly lays the foundational bedrock necessary for immediately launching these intricate multi-agent simulation environments, drastically accelerating the onset of cooperative autonomous technologies without requiring hazardous multi-robot physical deployment.

..

$$\mathbf{r}^{(i)} = \mathbf{T}^i \quad O_k \quad \dots \quad world$$

$\mathbf{P}^k \alpha(5)$

By systematically injecting this relative spatial projection into the JSON annotation schema, researchers can seam-lessly transition from single-agent perception baselines di- rectly into Cooperative Localization and Collaborative Percep- tion paradigms.

ii. DDS Bandwidth Saturation and Asynchronous Consensus

In a multi-agent topology, if all N agents uniformly trigger data serialization at the universal broadcast signal publish on `/trigger_sample`, the resulting simultaneous disk I/O requests and DDS packet bursts will catastrophically saturate both the virtual network bandwidth and the host processor's I/O scheduler. Let B_{img} represent the bandwidth footprint of the RGB tensor, and B_{lidar} the footprint of the NumPy array. The total asynchronous burst capacity C_{burst} scales linearly

as $O(N \cdot (B_{img} + B_{lidar}))$.

N

VII. CONCLUSION

In this paper, we introduced a highly modular, open-source pipeline for the procedural generation of multi-modal, tem- porally synchronized sensor datasets tailored explicitly for autonomous mobile robotics. By tightly integrating custom Python orchestration nodes (*Scene Spawner*, *Ground Truth Listener*, *Data Logger*) with the deterministic physics of the ROS 2 and Gazebo ecosystem, our architecture entirely circumvents the immense logistical constraints, astronomical financial costs, and inherent physical dangers associated with empirical data collection in adversarial operational environ- ments.

We demonstrated the pipeline's extraordinary capacity to au- tonomously inject 22 distinct geometric objects across varying Cartesian radii and random stochastic orientations. Crucially, the system simulates dynamic weather variations—including

density-mapped fog, scattered dust, and extreme lighting con- straints—and geometrically deceptive models, such as refrac- tive transparent sheets. These paradigms intentionally trigger known catastrophic failure modes in unimodal sensors like 1D LIDARs and standard RGB cameras.

The resulting dataset intricately pairs raw sensor output with dense, sub-millimeter ground truth annotations and explicit environmental metadata arrays. This rich annotation taxonomy inherently accelerates the development of context-aware neural networks, Bayesian sensor fusion matrices, and adaptive meta- attention mechanisms. As autonomous systems increasingly migrate into safety-critical public domains, pipelines capable of generating vast, repeatable, and rigorously challenging edge-case scenarios will become the indispensable backbone of algorithmic validation. Future iterations of this work aim to expand the abstract simulation architecture to support dense 3D point cloud generation using synthetic Velodyne arrays, dynamic temporal tracking of moving actors, and complex multi-agent decentralized data logging over simulated ad-hoc robotic network meshes.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors would like to acknowledge the foundational support of the Mechanical Engineering Department at NITTTR Chandigarh, India, for providing the advanced computational resources, laboratory access, and institutional framework necessary to complete this research.

REFERENCES

- I. R. Ravindran, M. J. Santora and M. M. Jamali, "Camera, LiDAR, and Radar Sensor Fusion Based on Bayesian Neural Network (CLR-BNN)," in *IEEE Sensors Journal*, vol. 22, no. 7, pp. 6964-6974, 1 April 2022, doi: 10.1109/JSEN.2022.3154980.
- II. Ramsai, Nambala & Sridharan, K.. (2025). Deep Networks and Sensor Fusion for Personal Care Robot Tasks- A Review. *IEEE Sensors Journal*. PP.1-1.10.1109/JSEN.2025.3530007.
- III. V. Vielzeuf, A. Lechervy, S. Pateux and F. Jurie, "Multilevel Sensor Fusion With Deep Learning," in *IEEE Sensors Letters*, vol. 3, no. 1, pp. 1-4, Jan. 2019, Art no. 7100304, doi: 10.1109/LSSENS.2018.2878908.
- IV. Y. Li, J. Deng, Y. Zhang, J. Ji, H. Li and Y. Zhang, "EZ Fusion: A Close Look at
- V. R. Voges and B. Wagner, "Interval-Based Visual-LiDAR Sensor Fusion," in *IEEE Robotics and Automation Letters*, vol. 6, no. 2, pp. 1304-1311, April 2021, doi: 10.1109/LRA.2021.3057572.
- VI. Z. Liu et al., "Robust Target Recognition and Tracking of Self-Driving Cars With Radar and Camera Information Fusion Under Severe Weather Conditions," in *IEEE Transactions on Intelligent Transportation Systems*, vol. 23, no. 7, pp. 6640-6653, July 2022, doi: 10.1109/TITS.2021.3059674.
- VII. Y. Dong, Q. Liu, B. Du and L. Zhang, "Weighted Feature Fusion of Convolutional Neural Network and Graph Attention Network for Hyperspectral Image Classification," in *IEEE Transactions on Image Processing*, vol. 31, pp. 1559-1572, 2022, doi: 10.1109/TIP.2022.3144017.
- VIII. V. Vielzeuf, A. Lechervy, S. Pateux and F. Jurie, "Multilevel Sensor Fusion With Deep Learning," in
- IX. C. Xu, H. Zhao, H. Xie and B. Gao, "Multisensor Decision-Level Fusion Network Based on Attention Mechanism for Object Detection," in *IEEE Sensors Journal*, vol. 24, no. 19, pp. 31466-31480, 1 Oct. 2024, doi: 10.1109/JSEN.2024.3442951.
- X. R. Jung and S. Weiss, "Modular Multi-Sensor Fusion: A Collaborative State Estimation Perspective," in *IEEE Robotics and Automation Letters*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 6891-6898, Oct. 2021, doi: 10.1109/LRA.2021.3096165.
- XI. S. Jhong, Y. Chen, C. Hsia, Y. Wang, and C. Lai, "Density-Aware and Semantic-Guided Fusion for 3-D Object Detection Using LiDAR-

- XII. Y.Xu,B.Li,Y.WangandY
- XIII. Y.Hanetal.,”DeepReinforcementLearningforRobotCollisionAvoid-ance With Self-
State-Attention and Sensor Fusion,” in IEEE Roboticsand Automation Letters, vol. 7,
no. 3, pp. 6886-6893, July 2022, doi:10.1109/LRA.2022.3178791.
- XIV. W. Yan, W. Liu, Q. Zhang, H. Bi, C. Jiang, H. Liu, T. Wang, TaijiDong, and Xiaohui
Ye, ”Multisource Multimodal Feature Fusion
forSmallLeakDetectioninGasPipelines”inIEEESENSORSJOURNAL,
VOL.24,NO.2,15JANUARY2024
- XV.M. Helmberger, K. Morin, B. Berner, N. Kumar, G. Cioffi and
D.Scaramuzza,”TheHiltiSLAMChallengeDataset”inIEEEROBOTICSAND
AUTOMATION LETTERS, VOL. 7, NO. 3, JULY 2022
- XVI. F. Sauerbeck, D. Halperin, L. Connert, and J. Betz, ”CamRaDepth: Se-mantic
Guided Depth Estimation Using Monocular Camera and
SparseRadarforAutomotivePerception”inIEEESENSORSJOURNAL,
VOL.23,NO.22,15NOVEMBER2023
- XVII. C.Chen,L.Z.Fragonara,andA.Tsourdos,”RoIFusion:3DObjectDetectionFromLiDA
RandVision”April9,2021,doi:10.1109/AC-
CESS.2021.3070379
- XVIII. A. Sengupta, A. Yoshizawa and S. Cao, ”Automatic Radar-CameraDataset
Generation for Sensor-Fusion Applications,” in IEEE Roboticsand Automation
Letters, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 2875-2882, April 2022, doi:10.1109/LRA.2022.3144524.
- XIX. J.Lin,C.Zheng,W.Xu,andF.Zhang,”R2LIVE:ARobust,Real-Time,LiDAR-Inertial-
VisualTightly-
CoupledStateEstimatorandMapping”inIEEEROBOTICSANDAUTOMATIONLETT
ERS,VOL.6, NO. 4, OCTOBER 2021
- XX. C.Park,H.Kim,J.Jang,andJ.Paik,”ODD-M3D:Object-WiseDense Depth Estimation
for Monocular 3-D Object Detection” in IEEETRANSACTIONS ON CONSUMER
ELECTRONICS, VOL. 70, NO.1, FEBRUARY 2024

Brief Review of AI Frameworks in Computer-Aided Process Planning (CAPP)

Sameer Singh¹, Mohammed Abdulla^{2*}, Kush Kumar Dewangan³

¹Department of Mechanical Engineering, Rungta College of Engineering and Technology, Bhilai, India

²Department of Mechanical and Aerospace Engineering, Indian Institute of Technology, Hyderabad, India

³Department of Mechanical Engineering, Indian Institute of Engineering Science and Technology, Shibpur, 711103, India

*Corresponding Author: mohammedabdulla@iith.ac.in

Abstract. A Computer-Aided Process Planning (CAPP) system is an essential link between design and production, translating CAD specifications into practical production steps in industries. As Artificial Intelligence (AI) has become increasingly general, the CAPP model has evolved from rigid rule-based systems to more adaptive systems capable of handling the increasing complexity of modern factories. This paper highlights how AI frameworks, ranging from early rule-based and expert systems to more recent approaches such as machine learning, deep learning, ontology-driven planning, and hybrid approaches, have been applied to real world applications. The frameworks are discussed in terms of their methodology and industrial applications, especially in sectors such as automotive, aerospace, and general manufacturing. A comparative discussion shows that rule-based and expert systems remain valuable for transparency, machine learning and deep learning bring predictive adaptability, ontology-based models support knowledge sharing. On the other hand, hybrid systems often provide the best balance between the reliability and flexibility. This review also addresses the current expansions, such as the integration of digital twins, reinforcement learning, and explainable AI, as well as challenges, including high data requirements, system complexity, and industry readiness. Taking a wider view, CAPP tools may evolve into intelligent, self-learning agents operating in cyber-physical environments, which are capable of continuously adapting to shopfloor realities and supporting the broader Industry 4.0 vision.

Keywords: Artificial Intelligence, Computer-Aided Process Planning, Machine Learning, Deep Learning, Expert Systems.

I.INTRODUCTION

Computer-Aided Process Planning (CAPP) is a decision-support framework that assists engineers in translating product designs into executable manufacturing steps [1]. It play as an important link between Computer-Aided Design (CAD), where a component's geometry and specifications are developed, and Computer-Aided Manufacturing (CAM), where those designs are translated into actual machine-level operations. In place of relying solely on individual expertise and manual

interpretation, CAPP systems enable a more systematic conversion of design data into detailed and consistent process plans that

can be directly applied on the shop floor [2]. In the literature, CAPP approaches are generally classified into two main categories such as variant and generative systems. Different CAPP relies on the principle of part family classification, where a new component is matched with an existing, similar part, and its process plan is retrieved and modified accordingly. While this approach benefits from prior manufacturing experience, the effectiveness of this method depends mainly on the availability and relevance of existing plans. Generative CAPP systems, in contrast, aim to construct process plans independently for each new part by analysing its geometry, material properties, and functional requirements [3]. These systems use decision rules, algorithms, and manufacturing knowledge to determine suitable operations and their sequencing without direct dependence on previously stored plans [4]. Due to this capability, generative CAPP is frequently considered more versatile and a better match to modern flexible manufacturing environments. By automatically generating and optimizing operation sequences, it offers a more effective means of reducing the gap between CAD and CAM systems [5]. But, it also brings challenges and one of the most significant challenge is the difficulty of capturing and representing the large body of expert knowledge required to plan processes for complex or unfamiliar parts [6]. Therefore, Artificial Intelligence (AI) techniques play a crucial role in for complex process plans.

AI methods have been brought into CAPP to solve the practical know-how of process planners and to automate key planning decisions. Over the years, different frameworks have been tested and verified, allowing systems to mimic expert judgment, learn from data, and search more intelligently for suitable plans [6]. In the 1980s and 1990s, much of the early work centred on knowledge-based systems, particularly rule-based and expert approaches, to capture and encode manufacturing knowledge [7]. In the next decade, researchers began introducing machine learning (ML) techniques like neural networks, as well as evolutionary algorithms, fuzzy logic, and agent-based methods, to overcome the brittleness of purely rule-based approaches [8]. Most of these AI frameworks addresses different aspects of the process planning problem: for example if rule-based and expert systems excel at embedding explicit human knowledge and logical reasoning, whereas neural networks and other ML approaches offer adaptability and the ability to generalize from examples [9]. By the starting of 20th century, deep learning techniques emerged to handle complex patterns in planning (such as automated feature recognition or operation sequencing) without the need for manually coded rules [10]. In some studies ontology-based approaches have also gained traction, structuring process knowledge into formal semantic models that facilitate reasoning and knowledge sharing [11]. Here it is explained about classification of AI frameworks in present system (Fig. 1).

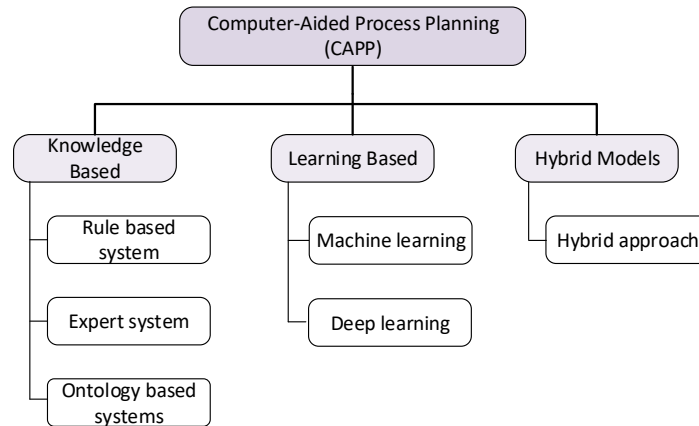


Fig. 1. Classification of AI frameworks in Computer-Aided Process Planning (CAPP), showing knowledge-based approaches (rule-based, expert, ontology-based), learning-based approaches (ML, deep learning), and hybrid models that combine both.

This chapter reviews and compares the major AI frameworks applied in CAPP. It also includes rule-based and expert systems, ML and deep learning approaches, ontology-based systems, and hybrid models. We have discussed how each framework works by providing examples of their application in various industries (manufacturing, automotive, aerospace). We then evaluate their advantages and limitations through a comparative analysis. The chapter also highlights recent trends—such as the integration of CAPP with digital twins and cyber-physical systems, the use of knowledge graphs, and the push for more explainable AI and outlines the challenges and future directions for AI in CAPP by understanding the range of AI frameworks used in process planning, researchers and practitioners can make more informed choices and design systems that improve efficiency, flexibility, and overall intelligence in smart manufacturing.

LITERATURE REVIEW

A. Rule-Based Systems in CAPP

In CAPP, rule-based systems were among the first AI methods to be used. He et al. [12] suggested that CAPP rely on explicit if–then rules to capture planning knowledge and imitate the decisions of human experts. For instance, a rule might state: “if a part has a blind hole of diameter d , then choose a drilling tool of the same size.” With such rules, the system can handle feature recognition, select operations, choose tools, and arrange the sequence of steps [13]. One of the key strengths of this approach is the transparency it offers in decision-making. These rules are clearly defined using expert knowledge, which makes the logic behind each planning decision easier to follow, understand and validate. Precision is highly desirable in manufacturing systems, where process compliance, auditability, and consistency with industrial standards are often as important as optimization [14]. Rule-based CAPP systems are generally effective in generating process plans within a short time frame, largely because they do not depend on large datasets or computationally intensive algorithms [15]. In earlier studies, it has shown that ability to reduce planning time improves standardization in well-defined part families. This also brings their limitations became

clear as manufacturing grew more complex [6]. One of the major challenges lies in the development and long-term maintenance of extensive rule sets, which is both labour-intensive and highly dependent on continuous expert involvement. Even when a large number of rules are available, such systems tend to be fragile when faced with unfamiliar geometries, new materials, or changes in manufacturing processes. Since rule-based systems lack learning and adaptation capabilities, any variation in conditions requires manual modification of the rule base. Moreover, as the number of rules grows, issues such as rule conflicts, redundancy, and degraded system performance make maintenance progressively more difficult.

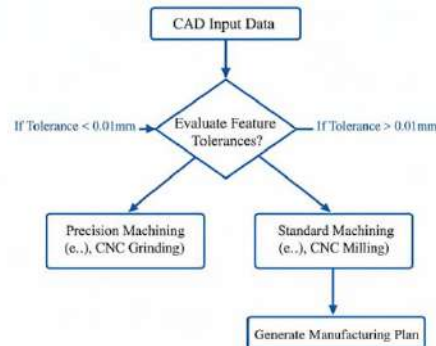


Fig. 2. Flow process of rule based systems in CAPP explaining CNC machining plan

However, rule-based systems shows an important early step in automating CAPP by formalizing expert knowledge into logical rules, their inherent rigidity and limited scalability highlighted the need for more flexible approaches (refer to Fig. 2). These limitations ultimately motivated the shift toward more advanced solutions, such as expert systems and machine learning-based CAPP frameworks.

B. Expert Systems in CAPP

Expert systems describe a development step beyond conventional rule-based CAPP systems, directed at capturing and enhancing the expertise of human process planners. Some expert systems further enhance decision strength by incorporating uncertainty-handling techniques such as certainty factors or fuzzy logic [16]. In CAPP, expert systems have been used to assist with machining process selection, operation sequencing, and tool and parameter selection by embedding knowledge acquired from experienced process planners as suggested by Cao et al. [17]. During the 1980s and 1990s, expert systems became a important solution for automating process planning knowledge, particularly in environments that relied heavily on the experience of senior planners. The key strength of this company was its ability to encode complex, structured domain knowledge while maintaining decision transparency through explanation mechanisms.

According to Leo Kumar [7] the architectural separation between the inference engine and the knowledge base enabled modular updates, offering improved maintainability over earlier rule-centric approaches. In addition, the incorporation of techniques such as fuzzy logic enables expert systems to address uncertainty to a limited extent by accommodating imprecise or partially defined information. Even with these advantages, expert systems continue to receive several fundamental limitations related to rule-based approaches. In specifically, knowledge acquisition remains a

significant bottleneck, as developing and continually updating the knowledge base is both resource-intensive and highly dependent on the availability of experienced domain experts [18]. Expert systems become weak when confronted with situations beyond their encoded knowledge and are therefore less suitable for tasks that require continuous optimization or frequent parameter adjustment. In actual practice, many expert system-based CAPP implementations fight to adapt to new designs or evolving manufacturing processes without significant reprogramming. Therefore, expert systems improved knowledge organization beyond simple rule-based approaches; they continue to face challenges related to scalability and adaptability in dynamic industrial environments.

C. Machine Learning Approaches in CAPP

Machine learning introduced adaptability into CAPP by enabling systems to infer planning knowledge directly from manufacturing data rather than relying exclusively on predefined rules. Beginning in the 1990s, techniques such as decision trees, support vector machines, and early neural networks were investigated for core planning tasks, including feature recognition and cutting parameter selection [7]. In contrast to rule-based methods, ML methods can extract decision patterns directly from historical process plans or experimental data, allowing them to model complex relationships that are difficult to express explicitly. Elahi et al. [18] suggested that the neural networks (NN), in particular, are well suited to capturing nonlinear relationships between part features and machining parameters, which makes them effective for optimization tasks such as cycle time prediction and cutting condition determination. ML methods are also effective in handling noisy data and continuous variables, enabling faster execution of repetitive planning decisions once models are trained. However, their performance strongly depends on the availability of large, high-quality datasets, which are often limited in industrial settings, particularly for new or highly customized designs. Many ML models show a black-box nature, offering limited interpretability of their outputs, which can reduce user trust in shop-floor environments where verification and explainability are essential [5]. However, ML has shown considerable promise in CAPP applications.

D. Deep Learning Techniques in CAPP

Deep learning is a branch of ML, employs multi-layer neural networks to automatically learn hierarchical patterns from data without requiring extensive manual feature engineering [19]. In CAPP, deep learning has been increasingly applied to tasks such as direct feature recognition from CAD models and operation sequence generation using large collections of process data. CAPP value lies in the ability to model highly complex, nonlinear relationships and to integrate heterogeneous data sources, for example by combining geometric information with sensor data or textual inputs to support planning decisions. Due to these capabilities, deep learning is particularly well suited to modern manufacturing environments, where data streams are abundant, interconnected, and continuously evolving [20].

At present, the application of deep learning in CAPP remains largely at an experimental stage in the future. A key challenge reported in the literature is the substantial requirement for large, high-quality datasets, which are difficult to obtain in practice because manufacturing process plans are

often unique, proprietary, and rarely shared across organizations [21]. Another study highlights challenge is the “black box” nature of deep networks: while they can make deliver accurate predictions, making it difficult for engineers to trust and verify results in safety-critical applications [22]

E. Ontology-Based Systems in CAPP

Ontology-based systems represent process planning knowledge through structured models that define concepts, relationships, and properties relevant to manufacturing [11]. In CAPP, an ontology may describe entities such as features, machines, operations, tools, and materials, while also specifying how these relate for example, identifying drilling as a machining process that requires a rotary tool and produces a hole feature [18]. Expressed in formal languages like OWL, ontologies make knowledge both machine-interpretable and understandable to humans. In Fig. 3 it is shown how a conceptual model of ontology based system works in digital twin architecture for aircraft system [23].

The primary strength of ontology-based approaches lies in their ability to support structured knowledge organization and interoperability. By establishing a shared vocabulary, they enable seamless information exchange between CAD, CAPP, and CAM systems, which is especially beneficial in large enterprises and distributed supply-chain environments [10]. These approaches are also extensible, allowing new tools or manufacturing processes to be incorporated without requiring changes to the underlying system architecture, which makes them well suited for evolving manufacturing environments.

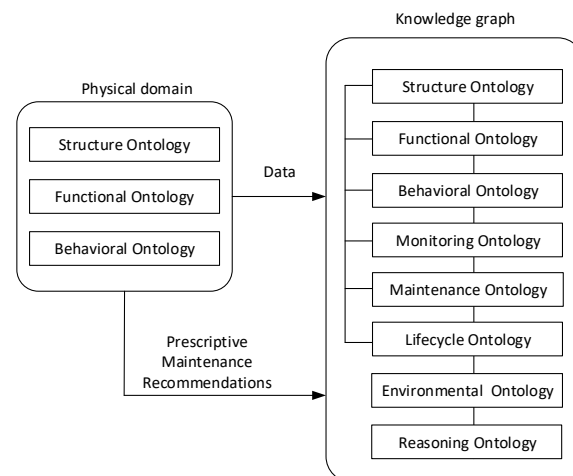


Fig. 3. Conceptual model of the ontology-driven digital twin, showing how the physical and virtual domains are interconnected through layered ontologies [23].

Ontology-based approaches in CAPP primarily function as structured knowledge representations rather than standalone planning solutions, and therefore require supporting rule engines or computational algorithms to generate executable process plans. The development of comprehensive ontologies is often time-intensive, relies on consensus among domain experts, and becomes increasingly difficult to manage as the knowledge base expands in scope and complexity. Kebede et al. [24] discussed the logical performance that may degrade when

operating over very large ontologies. While preference modelling and optimization typically necessitate integration with complementary AI techniques. Despite these limitations, ontology-based CAPP has demonstrated particular value in applications where knowledge sharing, interoperability, and system integration are central, which aligns well with the requirements of smart manufacturing environments and Industry 4.0 [25].

F. Hybrid AI Models in CAPP

Hybrid models in CAPP most of the times uses two or more AI techniques to expand their complementary strengths. There are limited evidences on single method can handling all aspects of process planning effectively Hybrid models provide better usability and easiness [26]. Hybrid frameworks can be structured in different ways. In a sequential model, a rule-based system generates a feasible plan for execution. This plan is then improved with ML or evolutionary algorithms to adjust parameters or refine the sequence of operations [9]. Other studies reported combinations include rule-based methods with genetic algorithms, fuzzy logic with neural networks, and expert systems with case-based reasoning [5]. In these systems, the knowledge-based part enforces rules and constraints. The learning part then explores new options and helps improve efficiency.

Moreover, the hybrid approaches offer advantages by combining the strengths of multiple techniques, often achieving higher accuracy and adaptability than single-method systems. Based on the application, the frameworks can be configured to point out either knowledge-based reasoning or data-driven learning, as shown in Fig. 4. Alotaibi, [27] highlighted the primary limitation of hybrid approaches lies in their increased complexity.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS OF AI FRAMEWORKS IN CAPP

At present, different AI frameworks are applied to CAPP address various aspects of the process planning problem, and their suitability varies depending on with manufacturing objectives. Both methods, rule-based and expert systems continue to be preferred in settings where decision transparency, repeatability, and compliance with established standards are non-negotiable. Their limitations become evident, however, when process planners must respond to unfamiliar geometries, frequent design changes, or evolving manufacturing capabilities. As the data-driven approaches such as ML and deep learning offer a strength by enabling adaptive decision-making and optimization in data-rich environments, even their reliance on extensive datasets and their limited interpretability often restricts direct shop-floor adoption. The strengths and weaknesses of AI structure are summarized in Table 1.

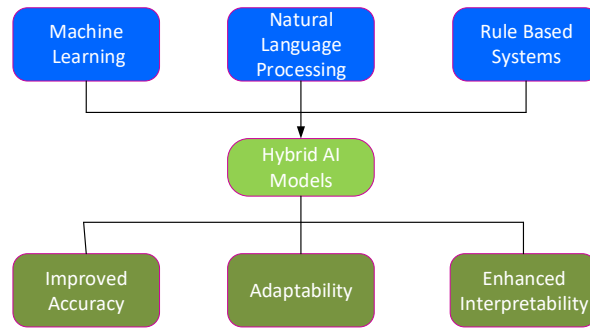


Fig. 4. Hybrid AI models working in flow diagrams

Table 1 Comparison of AI frameworks in CAPP

Framework	Strengths	Weaknesses	Typical Use in CAPP
Rule-Based System	Transparent logic, consistent output, no training data needed. Easy to trace decisions and enforce standard rules.	No learning or adaptation, brittle with unseen cases, difficult to scale and maintain a large rule base.	Generative CAPP for well-understood domains; applying standard process selection rules in machining.
Expert System	Encodes deep expert knowledge, explains decisions, modular knowledge base allows for easy updates.	Requires expert input (knowledge acquisition bottleneck), brittle with new scenarios, not ideal for optimization.	Complex decision support (e.g., machining sequence selection) where expert criteria must be followed.
Machine Learning	Learns from examples, adapts to new patterns, and handles numerical optimization and continuous parameters well.	Needs large, high-quality datasets; "black-box" models lack transparency and may violate constraints if not guided.	Feature recognition from CAD data, cutting parameter optimization, and predicting manufacturing performance.
Deep Learning.	Captures complex, high-dimensional relationships and requires minimal manual feature engineering. Can	Very data-hungry and computationally intensive; decisions are opaque and difficult to explain. Needs additional	Automated process sequence generation; direct CAD-to-process translation in research prototypes

	leverage big data from IoT sensors or images.	checks to ensure plan feasibility.	
Ontology-Based	Provides structured semantic knowledge representation, enhances interoperability, and can perform logical consistency checks.	Time-consuming to build and maintain, requires expert consensus, and needs a reasoning engine on top.	Knowledge management and sharing in large manufacturing organizations; linking design features to suitable processes.
Hybrid Models	Combines strengths of multiple methods (e.g., rule-based reliability + ML adaptability), making it more robust and versatile.	Complex to implement and tune, requires multi-disciplinary expertise, and poor integration can lead to component conflicts.	Next-generation CAPP systems often use a rule-based core and ML or optimization modules are then added to refine and improve the plan.

From a practical perspective, this comparison underscores that modern manufacturing requirements cannot be adequately met by any single AI paradigm. The need to balance cost, quality, and sustainability has induced research into hybrid CAPP solutions that combine knowledge-based reasoning with data-driven learning. Recent studies suggest that hybrid frameworks offer more rigorous performance in complex industrial situations than standalone approaches, which explains the growing emphasis on integrated solutions within CAPP research aligned with the principles of Industry 4.0. This observation provides the motivation for the hybrid approach explored in this study.

CONCLUSION

This review highlights how AI has played a central role in enhancing Computer-Aided Process Planning. The idea of the paper was to explain each framework contributing distinct capabilities. Firstly, Rule-based and expert systems established structured and transparent decision logic. Later, ML and deep learning introduced adaptability and also revised their ability to learn from presented data. Newly found frameworks such as Ontology-based approaches supported knowledge organization and system integration, and hybrid models emerged as a practical response to the limitations of standalone techniques.

The conclusion for this paper is that no single AI approach is capable of doing the diverse and evolving demands of modern manufacturing. Instead, hybrid solutions provide that balance. In present paper, evidences were provided from existing studies that suggests that such integration leads to faster planning, improved consistency, and reduced errors, particularly in complex production environments. This review helps in transitioning towards intelligent systems that learn continuously from shop-floor data while remaining interpretable and guided by human expertise. The long-term objective of this paper is to develop a system combining knowledge-driven reasoning with data-driven learning, making a suitable hybrid and explainable AI framework for

next-generation manufacturing systems. On the future path ahead, this paper will be stepping stone for bigger research where CAPP is expected to evolve further as part of Industry 4.0 and evolve to Industry 5.0.

REFERENCES

- [1] J. Tepic, V. Todić, D. Lukić, M. Milošević, and S. Borojević, “Development of the computer-aided process planning (CAPP) system for polymer injection molds manufacturing,” *Metalurgija*, vol. 50, no. 4, pp. 273–277, 2011.
- [2] X. Zhou *et al.*, “A feasible approach to the integration of CAD and CAPP,” *Computer-Aided Design*, vol. 39, no. 4, pp. 324–338, 2007, doi: 10.1016/j.cad.2007.01.005.
- [3] S. T. Newman *et al.*, “Process planning for additive and subtractive manufacturing technologies,” *CIRP Annals*, vol. 64, no. 1, pp. 467–470, 2015, doi: 10.1016/j.cirp.2015.04.109.
- [4] M. Moussa and H. ElMaraghy, “Bio-inspired phylogenetics for designing product platforms and delayed differentiation utilizing hybrid additive/subtractive manufacturing,” *CIRP Journal of Manufacturing Science and Technology*, vol. 34, pp. 119–132, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.cirpj.2021.01.012.
- [5] A. Azabet *et al.*, “CAPP-GPT: A computer-aided process planning–generative pretrained transformer framework for smart manufacturing,” *Manufacturing Letters*, vol. 41, pp. 51–62, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.mfglet.2024.09.009.
- [6] M. Elahiet *et al.*, “A comprehensive literature review of the applications of AI techniques through the lifecycle of industrial equipment,” *Discover Artificial Intelligence*, vol. 3, no. 1, p. 43, 2023, doi: 10.1007/s44163-023-00089-x.
- [7] S. P. Leo Kumar, “State of the art—Intense review on artificial intelligence systems application in process planning and manufacturing,” *Engineering Applications of Artificial Intelligence*, vol. 65, pp. 294–329, 2017, doi: 10.1016/j.engappai.2017.08.005.
- [8] J. Olivares-Aguila and H. ElMaraghy, “Co-development of product and supplier platform,” *Journal of Manufacturing Systems*, vol. 54, pp. 372–385, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.jmsy.2020.01.010.
- [9] P. Wlazlak and K. Johansen, “Development of remanufacturing systems at original equipment manufacturers,” *International Journal on Interactive Design and Manufacturing*, 2025, doi: 10.1007/s12008-025-02314-6.
- [10] C. A. Manrique-Escobar *et al.*, “On the analytical and computational methodologies for modelling two-wheeled vehicles within the multibody dynamics framework: A systematic literature review,” *Journal of Applied and Computational Mechanics*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 153–181, 2022, doi: 10.22055/jacm.2021.37935.3118.
- [11] C. Yang *et al.*, “Ontology-based knowledge representation of industrial production workflow,” *Advanced Engineering Informatics*, vol. 58, p. 102185, 2023.
- [12] Y. He *et al.*, “A process strategy planning of additive–subtractive hybrid manufacturing based multi-dimensional manufacturability evaluation of geometry feature,” *Journal of Manufacturing Systems*, vol. 67, pp. 296–314, 2023, doi: 10.1016/j.jmsy.2023.02.003.

- [13] R. G. G. Caiado *et al.*, “A fuzzy rule-based Industry 4.0 maturity model for operations and supply chain management,” *International Journal of Production Economics*, vol. 231, p. 107883, 2021.
- [14] M. Paul *et al.*, “Remanufacturing implementation on the shop floor—Insights from an industrial perspective,” *Sustainable Production and Consumption*, vol. 54, pp. 215–226, 2025, doi: 10.1016/j.spc.2024.11.016.
- [15] A. P. Barquet *et al.*, “An integrated approach to remanufacturing: Model of a remanufacturing system,” *Journal of Remanufacturing*, vol. 3, no. 1, pp. 1–11, 2013, doi: 10.1186/2210-4690-3-1.
- [16] P. Stavropoulos *et al.*, “Knowledge-based manufacturability assessment for optimization of additive manufacturing processes based on automated feature recognition from CAD models,” *International Journal of Advanced Manufacturing Technology*, vol. 122, no. 2, pp. 993–1007, 2022.
- [17] Q. Cao *et al.*, “KSPMI: A knowledge-based system for predictive maintenance in Industry 4.0,” *Robotics and Computer-Integrated Manufacturing*, vol. 74, p. 102281, 2022.
- [18] U. O. Egbe *et al.*, “A case-based reasoning based framework for developing computer aided remanufacturing process planning systems,” in *Lecture Notes in Networks and Systems*, vol. 534, pp. 305–311, 2023, doi: 10.1007/978-3-031-15944-2_28.
- [19] C. Zhang *et al.*, “Deep learning-enabled intelligent process planning for digital twin manufacturing cell,” *Knowledge-Based Systems*, vol. 191, p. 105247, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.knosys.2019.105247.
- [20] A. Laptev *et al.*, “A new approach for technological processes design using machine learning algorithms,” in *2024 International Russian Automation Conference (RusAutoCon)*, 2024, pp. 438–442, doi: 10.1109/RusAutoCon61949.2024.10694323.
- [21] Y. Seid Ahmed and A. S. Milani, “A review of strategies, challenges, and ethical implications of machine learning in smart manufacturing,” *Decision Analytics Journal*, vol. 16, p. 100591, 2025, doi: 10.1016/j.dajour.2025.100591.
- [22] Y. Song and A. Zhang, “From black box to physically interpretable: Trustworthy computing for AI-driven decision-making and control,” *Journal of Automation Intelligence*, 2025, doi: 10.1016/j.jai.2025.09.003.
- [23] I. Kabashkin, “Ontology-driven digital twin framework for aviation maintenance and operations,” 2025, doi: 10.3390/math13172817.
- [24] R. Kebede *et al.*, “A modular ontology modeling approach to developing digital product passports to promote circular economy in the built environment,” *Sustainable Production and Consumption*, vol. 48, pp. 248–268, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.spc.2024.05.007.
- [25] L. D. Naldiet *et al.*, “Balancing storage cost and customization time in product platform design: A bi-objective optimization model,” *International Journal of Advanced Manufacturing Technology*, vol. 136, no. 11, pp. 4933–4946, 2025, doi: 10.1007/s00170-025-15081-1.

- [26] M. Bortoliniet *al.*, “Managing mass customization through delayed product differentiation: A bi-objective model for product platforms design,” *Procedia CIRP*, vol. 130, pp. 1250–1255, 2024, doi: 10.1016/j.procir.2024.10.235.
- [27] A. Alotaibi, “Development of remanufacturing readiness index for MSMEs: A comprehensive framework,” 2025

BIO-BRIQUETTES AS RENEWABLE ENERGY RESOURCE: UTILIZATION OF DIVERSE WASTE MATERIALS

Navjot Gaba^{#1}, Jagjeet Singh Chatha², Simranjit Singh Sidhu³

Department of Mechanical Engineering^{1,2,3}, Punjabi University, Patiala, India

Corresponding author e-mail: navjotdc3335@rocketmail.com

Abstract ----- The rapid increase in the global population, coupled with the enhancement of living standards, poses significant challenges to the burgeoning demand for energy. In many developing nations, the energy landscape is predominantly characterized by fossil fuels; however, there exists compelling potential to leverage agro-residues and plastic waste as sustainable alternatives to conventional wood. These materials can be processed into eco-friendly and renewable energy-efficient briquettes, which function effectively as solid biofuels. This paper examines various types and applications of binders and biomaterials through the use of innovative low- and high-pressure processing techniques, alongside a thorough analysis of the parameters that influence their performance. Furthermore, it discusses the numerous advantages and applications of these renewable fuels, which can result in substantial environmental benefits. Additionally, the transformation of agricultural waste into valuable energy resources presents a pathway for socio-economic upliftment in rural communities, enhancing employment opportunities in both rural and urban areas while fostering sustainability.

Keywords: Energy, Biomass, Binder, Carbonization, Briquetting, Caloric Value.

1. INTRODUCTION

Energy is a crucial element in economic development strategies, vital for sustaining human livelihoods and influencing various aspects of human development, including financial, social, and environmental factors. As the global population grows and living standards rise, energy demand continues to escalate. However, many developing countries still depend on non-renewable energy sources, such as fossil fuels and coal, which are finite and unable to be replenished. This reliance presents significant challenges to sustainable development and highlights the urgent need for a transition to sustainable and renewable energy sources. This shift is crucial for reducing greenhouse gas emissions and improving air quality, thereby enhancing public health by decreasing respiratory and cardiovascular diseases [1]-[6].

Renewable energy, particularly biomass, is emerging as a promising alternative due to its sustainability. Biomass serves as the third largest global primary energy source and can significantly reduce reliance on fossil fuels. Biomass briquetting transforms loose biomass into high-density briquettes, effectively addressing energy shortages while providing economic and environmental benefits through sustainable fuel production using both high-pressure and low-

pressure techniques [7]-[9]. In this paper, a review synthesizes the various types of materials available, the effects of binders, mechanisms to manufacture a briquette, and performance metrics with different parameters that affect the quality. Moreover, the advances in renewable energy sources are also discussed.

2. TYPES OF FEEDSTOCKS AND PROCESSING METHODS

2.1. Biomass feedstock

A variety of feedstocks can be effectively utilized in the production of briquettes. Figure 1 illustrates the potential of materials, including rice husk, sugarcane, and sawdust, highlighted in Figure 1(a), Figure 1(b), and Figure 1(c), respectively. Additionally, there is a wealth of other readily available residues, such as corncobs, onion peels, tamarind shells, hazelnut and peanut shell waste, as well as horse chestnut seeds. Other valuable resources include neem leaves, citrus peels, rice and yellow potato peels, pineapple and banana peels, sewage sludge, mung bean shells, carbonized sub-bituminous coal, polythene waste, pupae leaves, durian peels, and various types of vegetable market waste [10]-[14]

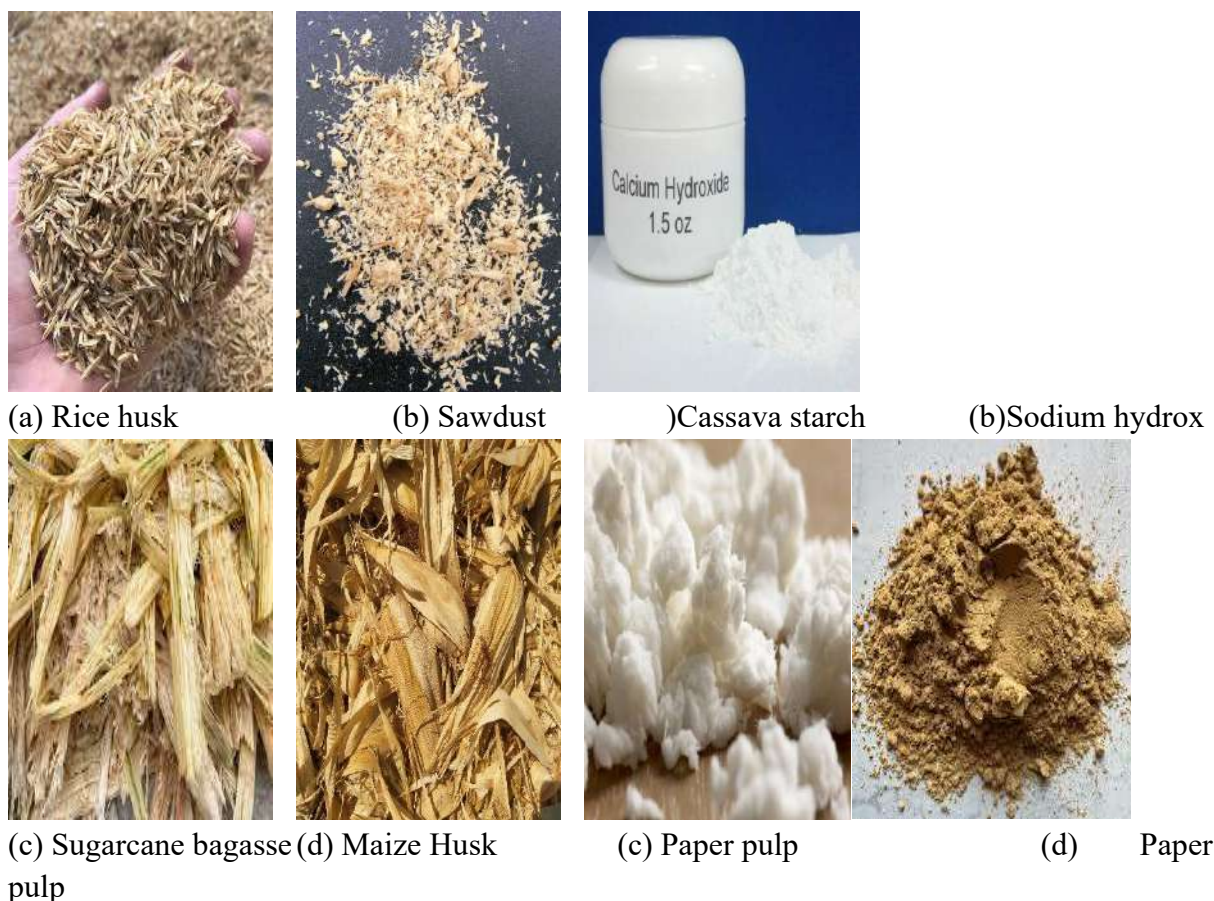


Fig. 1 Bio-waste raw materials (a) Rice Husk, (b) Sawdust (c) Sugarcane Bagasse, and (d) Maize Husk

Fig. 2 depicts the binders (a) Cassava Starch, (b) Sodium Hydroxide, (c) Pulp, and (d) Paper Pulp. The briquette binder is essential in briquette production, as it significantly influences the final product's strength, thermal stability, combustion performance, and overall cost. High-quality binders are crucial for ensuring these properties are optimized. As depicted in Figure 2, various types of binders are available, including cassava starch, sodium hydroxide, and paper pulp, represented in Figure 2(a), Figure 2(b), and Figure 2(c), respectively. Additionally, each is designed to effectively adhere to waste materials or residues, enabling the briquettes to achieve the desired shape and functionality.

Types of binders Based on the difference in material composition, briquette binders can be divided into three types: organic binder, inorganic binder, and compound binder. The selection of binders from numerous varieties is heavily influenced by various parameters, such as the required Bonding strength, low emissions, and the effect on the briquette's combustion performance, environmental friendliness, and economic and sustainable availability [6]. The high amount of binder level in the briquette results in an increase in the properties, such as density, volatile matter, fixed carbon, and heating value [6], [15].

There are some essential binders for briquetting mentioned below: Concentrated grape, Cactus, Sawdust, low-density polyethylene (LDPE) [1]-[3]. Maida (wheat flour), Slop waste, Useless paper pulp (PP) and clay soil (CS), gel, Cassava Starch, Bentonite clay, rejected papaya, cow dung, sweet potato peels, matooke peels and cassava peels [13]-[19].

Properties of Binder

The essential properties of an effective briquette binder include:

- Strong bonding capability.
 - I. Free of pollution.
 - II. No adverse effects on coal's heat release or combustibility.
 - III. No interference with coal usage.
 - IV. Environmentally friendly.
 - V. Economically viable [5]-[6].

2.3. Briquetting Mechanism

The briquetting process can be categorized as either with or without a binder and requires compact pressure for biomass densification.

Non-binder briquetting mechanism

The processes of the briquetting mechanism without binder are mainly proposed for lignite, which holds particles together under the action of external force.

Binder-based briquetting mechanism

Various briquetting mechanism hypotheses with binders have been proposed, including soaking and bridging, mechanical and chemical bonding, minimal contact angle, and maximum bonding power. Briquettes made with binders offer advantages like high cold and hot strength, water resistance, easy manufacturing, and low cost [5].

2.4. Briquetting Machine

Briquettes are produced using a specialized briquette machine that ensures precise measurements of the blended feedstock. This process involves the careful extrusion of the mixture through the Screw Extruder machine, as shown in Figure 3, where the residue and binder are finely crushed and combined to create the desired briquette shape. To optimize their usability, these briquettes are then dried. The production process emphasizes the importance of applying sufficient pressure to effectively form the briquettes prior to their ejection from the machine. Figure 4 illustrates this with a hydraulic press, which is instrumental in achieving the necessary compaction. Moreover, an alternative low-pressure hand Press technique, demonstrated in Figure 4(a and b), offers flexibility in the production methods, allowing for a variety of shaping options. This combination of techniques enhances the efficiency and quality of briquette production[10],[15],[19].

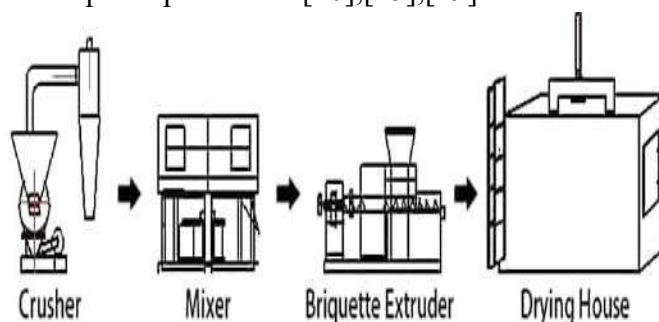


Fig.3 Fabrication Briquetting Machine screw extruder



Fig. 4 (a)



Fig. 4 (b)

Fig. 4 (a) depicts the Hydraulic Press and (b) Hand Press [10], [16],[21].

2.5. Briquetting Procedure

The briquetting procedure is accomplished in various steps, which are illustrated in Figure 5.

- 1 The dried biomass waste is chopped into pieces smaller than 1 cm for optimal processing efficiency [2]-[3].
- 2 Biomass waste raw materials are carbonized in a conventional drum under an oxygen-scarce environment, with the option to sieve beforehand or afterwards. Trials were conducted to determine the optimal binder amount for each carbonized raw material.
- 3 The blended stock (raw material and binder) is fed into the
- 4 briquette machine and pressed to form briquettes.

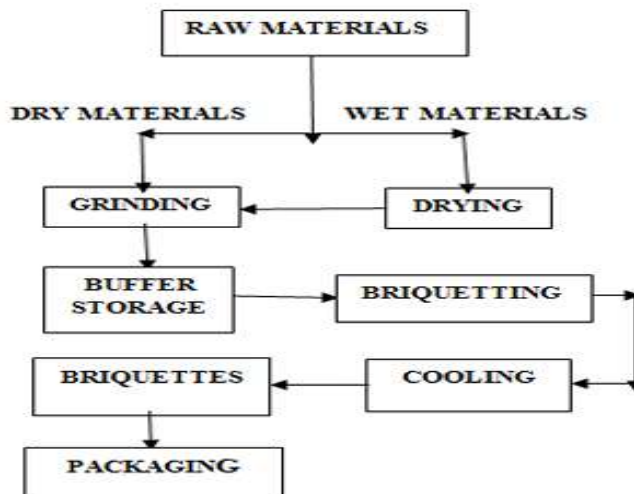


Fig.5 shows the steps involved in the production of Briquette

- 5 The mixture can be compacted under low pressure using a manually operated piston press or hydraulic jack, and alternatively, pressure using a hydraulic press [8],[10].
- 6 Following this process, the briquette is produced as illustrated in Figure 6. It is then placed in sunlight to sun-dry for several days, or it can be oven-dried to effectively reduce moisture levels. Once dried, the briquette is stored to preserve its quality for future characterization, enabling examination.



Fig 6 depicts the Final Produced Briquette in rectangular and cylindrical shape respectively [6],[10].

2.6.Characterization of briquettes

The characterization process plays a vital role in understanding the physical properties of the material, such as density and compressive strength. It involves a thorough proximate analysis, effectively quantifying key components including moisture content, volatile matter, fixed carbon, and ash content. Furthermore,conducting an ultimate analysis allows us to accurately evaluate the calorific value of the produced briquettes, providing valuable insights for optimization and improvement.

2.6.1. Physical Properties

Density

Density is defined as mass per unit volume and can be determined by measuring the weight and volume of a substance with a regular shape. We use a digital weighing balance to measure mass (in grams) and a vernier caliper for dimensions (in centimetres) to ensure accurate density calculations.

$$Densit(\rho) = \frac{\text{mass of the briquette}}{\text{volume of briquett}}$$

The higher-density briquettes have less moisture, which is important for production. This makes them easier to handle, transport, and store, while also improving their physical properties and calorific value [1],[8].

Relaxation ratio

The relaxation ratio measures the relationship between maximum density and relaxed density, represented by the following equation:

$$Relaxation\ Ratio = \frac{\text{relaxed density}}{\text{maximum density}}$$

The lower relaxation ratio of the briquette is an indicator of the superiority of the briquette [20].

Shatter Index

The shattering index measures briquette durability during storage and transportation. Shatter resistance is gauged by the weight retained after a 2-meter drop test, reflecting stability. Calculating weight loss upon impact allows us to determine the shatter index, highlighting the effectiveness and reliability of the briquette design.

$$Shatter\ Index\ (\%) = \frac{\text{weight after shatter}}{\text{initial weight before shatter}} * 100$$

Briquette durability is assessed by comparing its mass before and after the abrasion test. The 99% durability rating means only 1% of its mass was lost, showcasing its strength and stability. This measure helps improve formulation and production processes for better performance [21],[22].

Compressive Strength (MPa)

Briquettes' compressive strength, or cold crushing strength, is assessed using a universal strength-testing machine to determine their durability before failure as per the standard ASTM D2166-85.

High compressive strength allows long-distance transportation and extended storage without degrading energy quality. This strength is crucial for the stability and durability of briquettes and is influenced by higher pressure and temperature during formation, while larger particle sizes can decrease it. Understanding these relationships is crucial for optimizing briquette production and performance [17],[23],[24].

Water resistance capacity

The water resistance capacity of the produced briquette is determined by immersing the briquette in a container filled with cold tap water, and the time taken to collapse is recorded [2].

2.6.2. Thermogravimetric Analysis(TGA)

The thermal decomposition behaviour of briquettes can be effectively analyzed using a Thermal Analyser. In this process, samples are heated to temperatures up to 950°C at a controlled rate, utilizing Nitrogen gas as the sweep gas. Following the heating process, the data is analyzed using Pyris Software. This includes conducting Thermogravimetric Analysis (TGA) to accurately find the proximate properties such as moisture content, ash content, fixed carbon, and volatile matter. This comprehensive approach provides valuable insights into the characteristics of the briquettes [13],[16].

Moisture Content (%)

The moisture content is analyzed by the oven-dry method, whereas it is determined using the standard method of ASTM D2444-16. The moisture content affects its combustion characteristics; its value must be as low as possible [10]. The briquette is weighed out in a washed glass and placed in an oven dryer for 24 hours at 105°C. This procedure is repeated until a constant weight is obtained. Otherwise, the samples are cooled in desiccators and weighed by analytical balance [12]. The percentage of moisture content can be calculated using the following equation”

$$\text{Moisture content (\%)} = \frac{\text{wet weight} - \text{dry weight}}{\text{wet dry}} \times 100$$

Volatile Matter (%)

Low volatile matter of the briquette supports low ignition, and high volatile matter supports fuel burning. It is determined by the content of carbon that has undergone the combustion process.

The readiness of the fuel to ignite is indicated by the high volatile matter content, which makes the briquette contribute to more fractional heat, and ultimately makes it more reactive compared to coal. Volatile matters include elements such as carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, which are present in biomass. Volatile matter shows the amount of organic matter that can be evaporated during combustion.

The type of raw material greatly influences volatile matter. Additionally, the carbonization process at high temperatures brings about a considerable amount of volatile matter [3],[10],[15].

$$\text{Volatile matter (\%)} = \frac{\text{weight of oven dried} - \text{weight of furnae}}{\text{weight of oven dried sample}} \times 100$$

Ash Content (%)

Ash content is an important measure of fuel burning efficiency and capacity, representing the residue that remains after combustion. To determine the ash content in briquette samples, place the samples in a crucible and heat them in a muffle furnace at 550 °C for 2 to 3 hours. The resulting ash can then be quantified using a specific formula, providing insights into the fuel's performance.

$$\text{Ash content (\%)} = \frac{\text{final weight of sample}}{\text{initial weight of sample}} \times 100$$

Ash is the non-combustible residue, indicating low calorific value. It comes from two sources: the mineral matter bound in the biomass during combustion (inbuilt ash) and dirt and clay introduced during processing (entrained ash).

The ash content plays a vital role in the design and efficiency of several key components, including the furnace grate, combustion volume, pollution control equipment, and ash handling system. Understanding the ash characteristics helps engineers optimize these systems for improved performance and reduced environmental impact [1]-[4].

Fixed carbon (%)

Once volatile matter and moisture are released from biomass, the remaining components are ash and fixed carbon. The percentage of fixed carbon can be determined by calculating the difference between the total biomass and the amounts of moisture, volatile matter, and ash. The higher percentage of fixed carbon is beneficial, as it contributes to increased heat generation and improves the overall heat value of the fuel. This understanding can lead to more efficient utilisation of biomass for energy production. The amount of fixed carbon in the combusted oven-dried sample was obtained using Equation-

$$FC = 100 - MC + VM + AC$$

Where FC is fixed carbon, MC is the moisture content, VM is the volatile matter, and AC is ash content. The percentage of fixed carbon in the biomass briquette is the total non-volatile carbon that remains after moisture content, ash content, and volatile matter analysis [21],[25].

2.6.3. Ultimate parameters

The ultimate analysis involves the estimation of important chemical elements that are a part of the biomass, namely, carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur, on a percentage basis.

Calorific Value

The calorific value, or heating value, of briquettes is determined using a Gallen-Kamp Bomb calorimeter, which measures the heat released during combustion in a closed oxygen-filled container. An interface with a microcomputer was used to assess the heat values of the briquettes produced.

This Calorific value indicates the energy content of the fuel, affecting briquette quality—higher calorific values correlate with better quality. The type of adhesive used in briquette production can decrease the calorific value. It is calculated in kcal/m³ or MJ/kg⁻¹. Briquettes with a

calorific content of 4500 ± 397 cal/g can serve as an adequate alternative energy source with low water and ash content, helping to reduce deforestation and pollution [9],[14],[26]. Also, we can calculate the Calorific value using the equation-

$$\text{Calorific value (MJ/kg)} = 0.3536FC + 0.1559VM - 0.0078ASH.$$

Carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and sulphur (CHNS)

Fine powder of briquette samples is analyzed via CHNS Elemental Analyser at 925°C to calculate the percentages of carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and sulphur by ASTM D5373-02 [25].

$$C = 0.637 C_F + 0.455 V_M$$

$$H = 0.052 C_F + 0.0.62 V_M$$

$$O = 0.304 C_F + 0.476 V_M$$

The oxygen content is also obtained by using a formula where 100% subtracts the sum of CHNS value as follows equation-

$$O = 100\% - (C+H+N+S)$$

Energy Density (MJm^{-3})

The energy density of briquettes was calculated based on their calorific value and bulk density.

The formula for energy density is given below.

$$\text{Energy density } \text{MJ m}^{-3} = \text{Gross calorific value } \text{MJ m}^{-3} \times \text{bulk density } \text{gcm}^{-3}$$

2.6.4. Properties of Combustion

Ignition time (mins)

Briquettes with lower volatile matter offer better quality, providing easier ignition and smoother burning, making them more efficient for heating applications. The lowest ignition time is attributed to the relatively low particle size, low porosity, and high bonding force of the briquette. It is calculated by igniting the base of the briquette and noting the time the base of the briquette ignites properly using a stopwatch [26],[27].

$$\text{Ignition time} = t_1 - t_0$$

where t_1 and t_0 are the briquette ignition time (sec) and burner lighted time (sec).

Burning time and rate

The burning rate is the ratio of the mass of the fuel burnt (g) to the total time taken (in minutes), and it decreases in carbonized type briquettes and increases in uncarbonized briquettes.

$$\text{Burning Rate} = \frac{\text{Mass of fuel consumed } \{g\}}{\text{Total time taken (min)}}$$

Burning time

$$\text{Burning time (minutes)} = \text{Ashing time} - \text{Ignition time}$$

The burning time decreases for the carbonized briquette compared to the uncarbonized. The longer afterglow time and slow propagation rate for the briquette imply that the briquette will ignite more easily and burn with intensity for a long time [18],[28].

3. AFFECTING PARAMETERS

The performance of fuel briquettes is influenced by factors such as compaction strain, binder quantity, conditioning temperature, mixing ratios, equipment wear, moisture content, feedstock type, particle size, and environmental conditions. These affect briquette quality [29].

Binder

The data presented in Figure 7 suggests a correlation between the increasing binder weight and the ash content. This relationship indicates that as the binder weight rises, there is a notable decrease in heating value, highlighting an area for potential improvement in optimizing binder formulations for better efficiency[1].

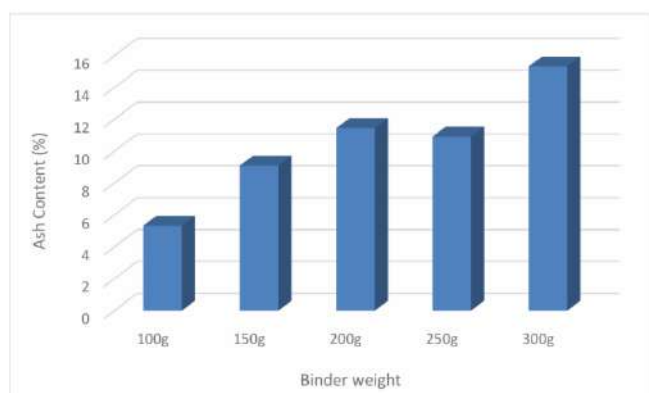


Fig.7 shows that the ash content increases as the weight of the binder increases

Calorific Value

Maintaining an optimal moisture content in briquettes is crucial for achieving the best burn time and efficiency. If the moisture level is too low, briquettes can become overly dry, leading to excessively rapid combustion. This balance in moisture content is key to ensuring effective use in various combustion applications.

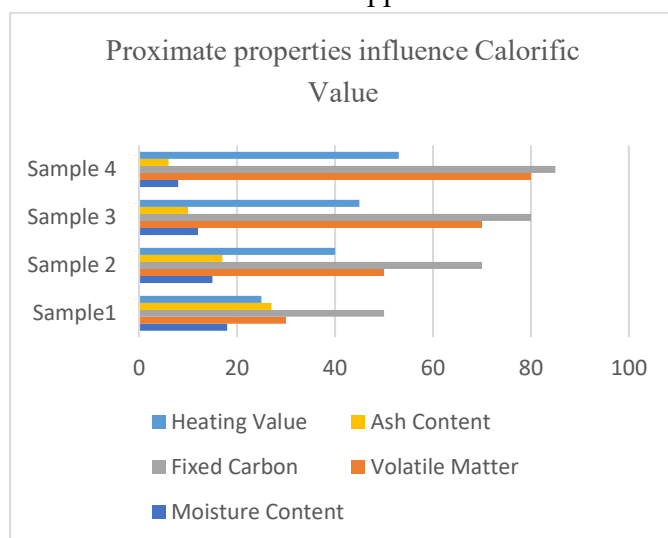


Fig.8 shows attributes among calorific value influenced by contents of moisture, volatile, fixed carbon, and ash [15],[19],[30].

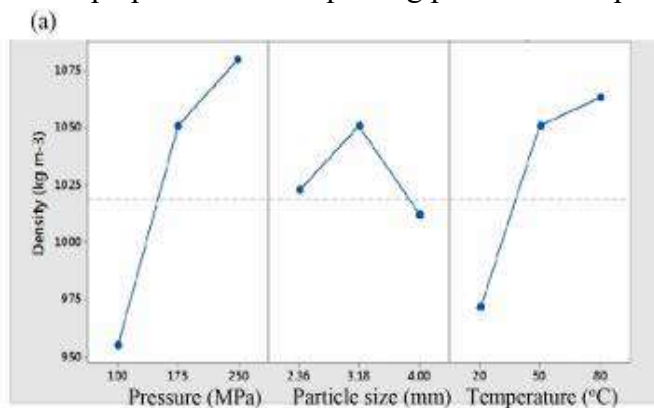
The volatile matter content in briquettes is a key factor influencing their ignition rate, which points to greater reactivity during combustion. Briquettes that have a higher fixed carbon content, such as sample 4, tend to display elevated calorific values, indicating a stronger capacity for heat energy generation. This improvement in fixed carbon content is achieved during the carbonization process, where effective removal of oxygen takes place [19],[24].

Samples 3 and 4, shown in Figure 8, exhibit high calorific values due to their low moisture content and higher fixed carbon levels, indicating they can produce significantly more heat energy than samples 1 and 2. High moisture content in biomass can reduce efficiency in

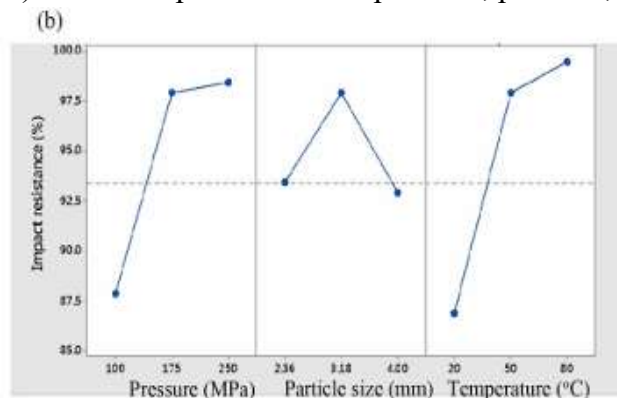
thermo-chemical conversion processes like combustion. By optimizing moisture levels, we can improve the performance and energy output of briquettes [31].

Pressure and Temperature

The interactions among briquetting parameters are relatively significant, particularly the combined effects of pressure and temperature, which notably influence density, impact resistance, and compressive strength. As depicted in Figure 9, understanding these relationships can help optimize the briquetting process for improved material performance.



a) relationship of the size of particles, pressure, and temperature with density,



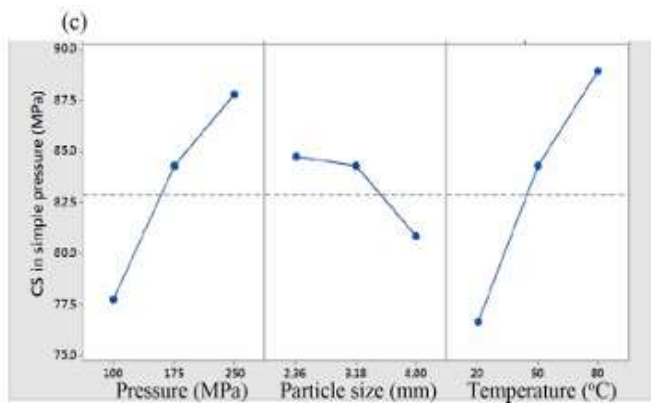
(b) effect of the size of particles, pressure, and temperature density on impact resistance,

The density, impact resistance, and strength of materials are influenced by factors such as pressure, particle size, and temperature, as illustrated in Figure 9. The briquette density is influenced by particle size, chemical composition, moisture content, and production pressure. Compaction conditions such as temperature, pressure, and die angle also play a role, as highlighted in Figure 9 (a). Higher density reduces water absorption, making briquettes less hygroscopic. Impact resistance reflects briquette durability, ideal for efficient handling and transportation. Figure 9 (b) shows that impact resistance is also impacted by the size of particles, pressure, and temperature.

Moreover, Figure 9 (c) shows that the compressive strength increases with greater pressure and temperature but decreases with larger particle size. Smaller particles form stronger bonds during briquetting due to their larger surface area.

Briquettes are created under conditions of high temperature and high compacting pressure up to an optimum level, leading to achieving superior impact resistance with the generation of less dust or fine particles, positioning these briquettes as highly durable and effective for various

practical applications. By focusing on these production parameters, manufacturers can enhance briquette performance and reliability in the field [24],[32].



(c) size of particles, pressure, and temperature versus Compressive strength

Fig. 9 highlighted that Fig 9 (a) represents the optimum size of particles, pressure, and temperature that affect density, Fig 9 (b) impact resistance, and Fig 9 (c) strength, respectively

Die Temperature effects on resistance to water penetration, Durability, and Compressive strength

The briquette's water resistance is attributed to its higher porosity and density, enhancing storage capabilities. The data represented in Figure 10 highlights the critical role of temperature control in the production process. It demonstrates that increasing the die temperature from 300–330°C to 360–390°C can lead to a decline in durability, water resistance, and compressive strength. Therefore, maintaining optimal temperature levels is essential for ensuring the quality of the final product [33].

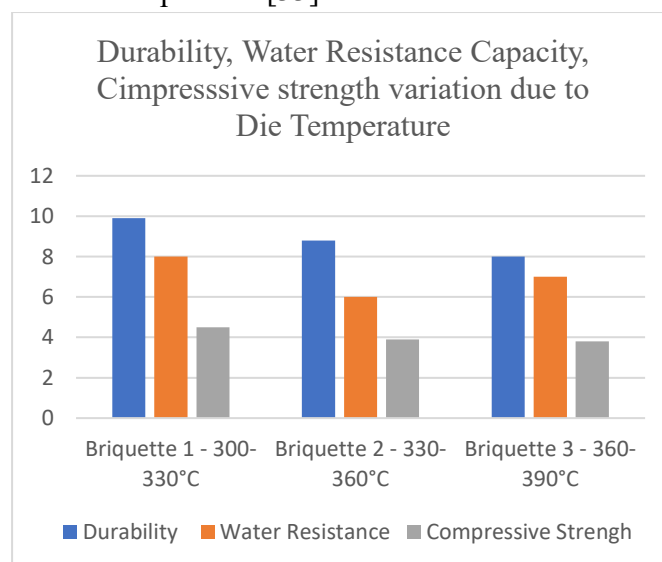


Fig. 10 represents the negative relationship among die temperature and durability, water resistance capacity, and compressive strength.

Carbonization

The carbonization process at 400 to 500 °C effectively produces high fixed carbon content and calorific value for combustion. This method can utilise a drum or furnace and takes place in an oxygen-free environment with nitrogen gas to prevent oxidation. This controlled setting allows for the removal of hemicellulose, pectin, and impurities, ultimately enhancing the quality of the final product. In Figure 11, we can see an informative progression of the transformation of dried rice straw into a valuable resource. Figure 11 (a) showcases the raw material, dried rice straw. Figure 11 (b) illustrates the process of carbonizing this straw, while Figure 11 (c) depicts the outcome: the production of carbonized rice straw, resulting in charcoal. This sequence emphasises the potential of utilizing agricultural residues for the sustainable production of charcoal, highlighting an innovative approach to waste management and resource recovery[26],[32].

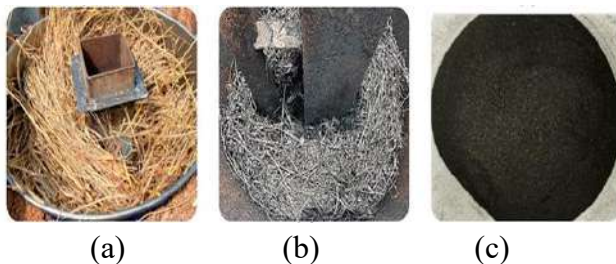


Figure 11 depicts carbonization; (a) dried rice straw, (b) carbonization process, and (c) final charcoal

The carbonization efficiency is determined by using the following equation:

$$\text{Carbonization } \eta \text{ (\%)} = \frac{\text{weight of raw biomass waste}}{\text{weight of carbonized biomass waste}}$$

Advantages of Carbonization[12],[29],[34].

- A. To decrease the moisture, ash content, and volatile matter.
- B. To remove hemicellulose, pectin, and other impurities from the raw material.
- C. To increase the amount of carbon to increase the calorific value.
- D. To decrease the weight of the briquette.
- E. To decrease the sulphur content.

Briquetting Mechanism

The briquette that includes a binder demonstrates a higher ash content and increases fixed carbon compared to the briquette without a binder. Figure 12 depicts that the presence of a binder positively influences the quality of the briquette [14].

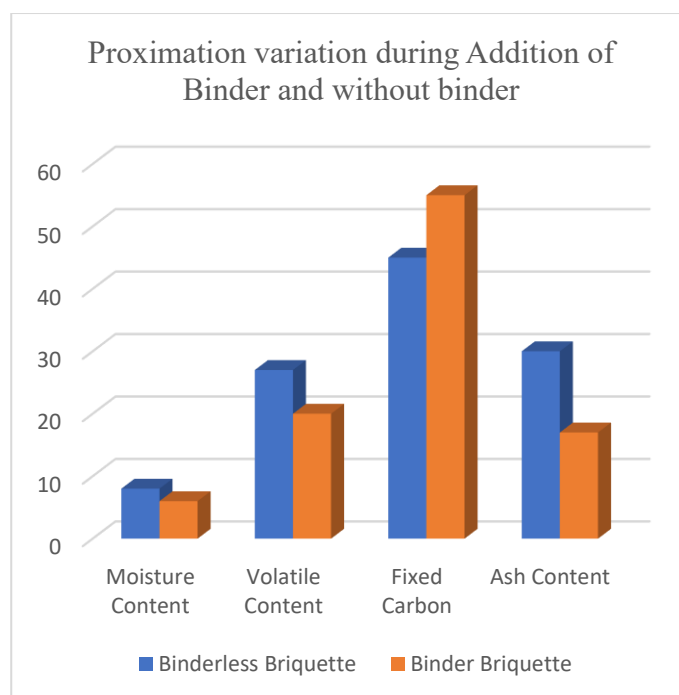


Fig. 12 represents the Proximate analysis of a briquette with and without a binder

Oxidizing agent

The optimum addition of the oxidizing agent positively affects the physical properties of the briquette, as depicted in Figure 13. It is noted that the 15% addition of KMnO_4 produces the highest calorific value [34].

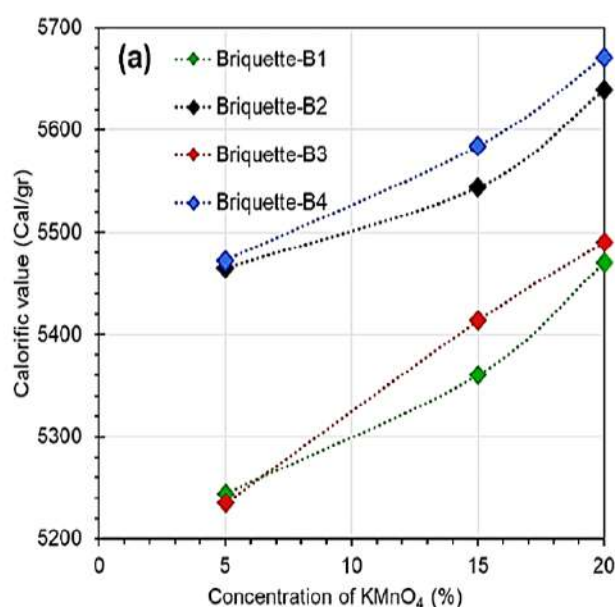


Fig. 13 represents the Calorific Values of sample briquettes with ratios of Oxidizing Agent.

Applications

- It is used as a solid fuel for domestic and industrial applications.
- The conversion of biomass waste into energy briquettes for power generation can be an alternative solution to the problems associated with conventional fuel for the tea industries.

- It also helps to reduce pollution and greenhouse gas emissions.
- It can be used as fuel in boilers, domestic cookstoves, and gasifiers.
- Briquettes are widely used for heating purposes, drying processes, and all kinds of thermal applications. In addition, briquettes are used in various industries such as chemical manufacturing, food, textile, pharmaceutical, and leather industries [2],[15],[20].

Advantages

Biomass as a source of binder-based briquette has a lower ignition temperature, lower slagging index, and lower ash content.

- The availability, abundance, easy accessibility, and eco-friendliness.
- Flexibility in storage and transportation, and also for many other uses. This is one of the most effective solutions.
- Sulphur and nitrogen content in biomass energy is lower.
- It helps to solve the problem of residue disposal, thereby reducing pollution due to waste disposal.
- Results in reducing a considerable level of emissions of pollutants into the environment.
- The process is cost-effective because raw materials for this process are derived from waste resources; it creates employment opportunities for rural people [1]-[8].

CONCLUSION

Countless materials hold the potential for producing briquettes. By thoughtfully determining the proportions of waste materials based on the desired shape and dimensions of the mould, we can embrace a binder-based or non-binder-based briquetting mechanism. This process empowers us to create briquettes that are not only densely compact and structurally robust but also exhibit a remarkable calorific value. With low moisture and ash content, these biofuel briquettes stand as efficient, transportable, and storable alternatives to non-renewable energy sources, paving the way for a sustainable future.

FUTURE SCOPE

- Exploration of diverse feedstocks includes agricultural residues, aquatic biomass, and municipal waste with suitable pre-treatment methods.
- Development of low-cost, eco-friendly binders and advancement of binder-less briquetting techniques.
- Improvement of briquette strength, moisture resistance, storability, and emission characteristics.
- Design of energy-efficient, rural-friendly, and hybrid-powered briquetting with process automation.
- Integration of briquetting into waste-to-energy, circular economy models, and carbon credit mechanisms.

- Expansion into advanced applications such as gasification, biochar production, coal co-firing, and industrial heating.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

I would like to express my heartfelt gratitude to my supervisor, Mr. Jagjeet Singh Chatha, who supported me throughout all stages of writing this paper.

REFERENCES

- [1] Ige, P. O. (2024). Characterisation of briquettes produced from maize husk wastes as an alternative source of energy in Ido, Oyo State, Nigeria. *World Scientific News*, 191, 157–167.
- [2] Ajiomotokani, H. A., Ibitoye, S. E., Odusote, J. K., Adseoye, O. A., & Omoniyi, P. O. (2019). Physico-mechanical properties of composite briquettes from corncob and rice husk. *Journal of Bioresources and Bioproducts*, 4(3), 159–165. <https://doi.org/10.12162/jbb.v4i3.004>
- [3] Ku Ahmad, K. Z., Sazali, K., & Kamarolzaman, A. A. (2017). Characterization of fuel briquettes from banana tree waste. *Materials Today: Proceedings*, 5, 21744–21752.
- [4] Velusamy, S., Subbaiyan, A., Kandasamy, S., Shanmugamoorthi, M., & Thirumoorthy, P. (2021). Combustion characteristics of biomass fuel briquettes from onion peels and tamarind shells. *Archives of Environmental & Occupational Health*. <https://doi.org/10.1080/19338244.2021.1936437>
- [5] Zhang, G., Sun, Y., & Xu, Y. (2017). Review of briquette binders and briquetting mechanism. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 82, 477–487. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2017.09.072>
- [6] Ranaraja, D. M. C. O., Miyuranga, K. A. V., Weerasekara, N. A., & Arachchige, U. S. P. R. (2022). Palm oil sludge as a binding agent for briquette production. *International Journal of Scientific Engineering and Science*, 6(9), 39–42.
- [7] Gusnia, Y., Aditya, I. D., & Widayani. (2024). Compressive property of biomass briquettes made of hazelnut shell and peanut shell. *Journal of Physics: Conference Series*, 2734, 012002. <https://doi.org/10.1088/1742-6596/2734/1/012002>
- [8] Ivashchuk, O. S., & Manastyrskaya, V. (2024). Research of solid fuel production from horse chestnut seeds. *Journal of Chemistry and Technologies*, 32(1), 131–137.
- [9] Rapheal, I. A., & Bamisaye, A. (2022). Production and characterisation of briquettes from maize stalk and neem leaves admixture. *Acta Chemica Malaysia*, 5(2). <https://doi.org/10.2478/acmy-2021-0012>
- [10] Afsal, A., David, R., Baiju, V., Suhail, N. M., Parvathy, U., & Rakhi, R. B. (2020). Experimental investigations on combustion characteristics of fuel briquettes made from vegetable market waste and sawdust. *Materials Today: Proceedings*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.matpr.2020.06.222>
- [11] Magnago, R. F., Costa, S. C., Ezirio, M. J. A., Saciloto, V. G., Parma, G. O. C., Gasparotto, E. S., Gonçalves Jr, A. C., Tutida, A. Y., & Barcelos, R. L. (2020). Briquettes of citrus peel and rice husk. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 276, 123820. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.123820>

- [12] Ariani, I. K., Anifah, E. M., Sholikah, U., Banaget, C. K., & Maharani, V. G. S. (2023). Production of bio-briquettes from pineapple peels and sewage sludge as an alternative renewable energy. *Earth and Environmental Science*, 1201, 012014. <https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/1201/1/012014>
- [13] Amaya, A., Medero, N., Tancredi, N., Silva, H., & Deiana, C. (2006). Activated carbon briquettes from biomass materials. *Bioresource Technology*, 98, 1635–1641. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2006.05.049>
- [14] Mitan, N. M. M., Hakim, A., Mohd Nor, N. F., & Se, S. M. (2014). Binder application in durian peels briquette as a solid biofuel. *Applied Mechanics and Materials*, 761, 494–498. <https://doi.org/10.4028/www.scientific.net/AMM.761.494>
- [15] Tamilvanan, A. (2013). Preparation of biomass briquettes using various agro residues and waste papers. *Journal of Biofuels*, 4(2), 47–55. <https://doi.org/10.5958/j.0976-4763.4.2.006>
- [16] Lubwama, M., Birungi, A., Nuwamanya, A., & Yiga, V. A. (2024). Characteristics of rice husk biochar briquettes with municipal solid waste cassava, sweet potato and matooke peelings as binders. *Materials for Renewable and Sustainable Energy*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s40243-024-00262-x>
- [17] Nwabue, F. I., Unah, U., & Itumoh, E. J. (2017). Production and characterisation of smokeless bio-coal briquettes incorporating plastic waste materials. *Environmental Technology & Innovation*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.eti.2017.02.008>
- [18] Duangkham, S., & Thuadaij, P. (2023). Characterization of charcoal briquettes produced from blending rice straw and banana peel. *Heliyon*, 9, e16305. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2023.e16305>
- [19] Nagarajan, J., & Prakash, L. (2021). Preparation and characterization of biomass briquettes using sugarcane bagasse, corncob and rice husk. *Materials Today: Proceedings*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.matpr.2021.04.457>
- [20] Oladeji, J. T. (2010). Fuel characterization of briquettes produced from corncob and rice husk residues. *The Pacific Journal of Science and Technology*, 11(1).
- [21] Shuma, R., & Madyira, D. M. (2017). Production of loose biomass briquettes from agricultural and forestry residues. *Procedia Manufacturing*, 7, 98–105. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.promfg.2016.12.026>
- [22] Garrido, M. A., Conesa, J. A., & Garcia, M. D. (2017). Characterization and production of fuel briquettes made from biomass and plastic wastes. *Energies*, 10, 850. <https://doi.org/10.3390/en10070850>
- [23] Onukak, I. E., Mohammed-Dabo, I. A., Ameh, A. O., Okoduwa, S. I. R., & Fasanya, O. O. (2017). Production and characterization of biomass briquettes from tannery solid waste. *Recycling*, 2, 17. <https://doi.org/10.3390/recycling2040017>
- [24] Okota, D. K., Bilsborrow, P. E., & Phan, A. N. (2019). Briquetting characteristics of bean straw-maize cob blend. *Biomass and Bioenergy*, 126, 150–158. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biombioe.2019.05.009>
- [25] Massaro, M. M., Son, S. F., & Groven, L. J. (2013). Mechanical, pyrolysis, and combustion characterization of briquetted coal fines with municipal solid waste plastic (MSW) binders. *Fuel*, 115, 62–69. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fuel.2013.06.043>
- [26] Kebede, T., Berhe, D. T., & Zergaw, Y. (2022). Combustion characteristics of briquette fuel produced from

- biomass residues and binding materials. *Journal of Energy*, 4222205, 1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2022/4222205>
- [27] Umeocho, C. E., Ezidi, C. O., Nwosu, E. N., Nwankwo, C. I., Ezejiegu, K. C., & Onuegbu, T. U. (2024). Comparative study of the combustion properties of briquettes produced from blends of mung beans shell, uncarbonized and carbonized sawdust. *Chemical Reports*, 5(1), 285–290. <https://doi.org/10.25082/CR.2024.01.003>
- [28] Krishnamoorthi, S., Divya, M. P., Sekar, I., Varuvel, G. J., Ravi, R., & Hemalatha, P. (2023). Production and characterization of sustainable biomass briquettes from selected bamboo species. *Journal of Biobased Materials and Bioenergy*, 17, 650–661. <https://doi.org/10.1166/jbmb.2023.2298>
- [29] Jalil, N. A. A., Mokhtaruddin, N. A., Chia, C. H., Ahma, I. K., Saad, M. J., & Sarif, M. (2023). Conversion of Imperata cylindrica, plastic face mask and mango peels to solid fuel briquette. *Earth and Environmental Science*, 1167, 012050. <https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/1167/1/012050>
- [30] Raju, C. H. A. I., Madhuri, N., Prabhakar, D., & Prem, K. (2017). Studies on development and effectiveness of fuel briquettes as an alternative energy source. *International Research Journal of Engineering and Technology (IRJET)*, 4(10).
- [31] Shukla, S., & Vyas, S. (2024). Study of biomass briquettes, factors affecting its performance and technologies based on briquettes. *IOSR Journal of Environmental Science, Toxicology and Food Technology (IOSR-JESTFT)*, 9(11) (Ver. II), 37–44. <https://doi.org/10.9790/2402-091123744>
- [32] Sakesit Duangkham, Pattaranun Thuadaij (2023). Characterization of charcoal briquettes produced from blending rice straw and banana peel. *Volume 9, Issue 6, e16305 June 2023*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2023.e16305>
- [33] Saneewongnaayutaya, N., Khamdaeng, T., Panyoyai, N., Tippayawong, N., & Wongsiriamnuay, T. (2022). Production and characterization of fuel briquettes from rice husks and tobacco stalks. *AIP Conference Proceedings*, 2681, 020051. <https://doi.org/10.1063/5.0115139>
- [34] Salim, A., Ernawati, L., Yusariarta, A. W., & Amrullah, A. (2024). Physical characteristics of developed hybrid briquettes from palm kernel shells/wood sawdust/coffee grounds blends as an alternative energy source. *Green Chemical Engineering and Technology 2021*. <https://doi.org/10.1063/5.0195484>
- [35] Annisa, R., Irawan, I., Yusron, R., & Arifiyanto, Y. (2023). Solid biomass uses a mixture of agricultural waste as an alternative fuel. *Romanian Journal of Applied Sciences and Technology*, 17, 435–439.
- [36] Fitriyano, G., Ismiyati, Purnawan, I., & Ramadhan, R. F. (2023). Production and characterization of bio-briquettes from coconut leaves and cassava peels. *International Journal of Applied Sciences and Smart Technologies*, 5(2), 1–12.
- [37] Petkovic, D. (2018). Technology for producing briquettes from wet biomass. *Encyclopedia of Renewable and Sustainable Materials*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-803581-8.11122-1>
- [38] Prasityousil, J., & Muenjina, A. (2012). Properties of solid fuel briquettes produced from rejected material of municipal waste composting. *Procedia Environmental Sciences*, 17, 603–610. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.proenv.2013.02.076>

- [39] Shekh, M. I., Deshmukh, S., Samal, K., Kumar, S., & Ganguly, A. (2023). Performance evaluation of biomass briquettes from agro residue in India. *Journal of Ecology and Conservation*, 1(1), 13–19. <https://doi.org/10.61577/jec.2023.100003>
- [40] Shuma, R. M., Madyira, D. M., Makonese, T. N., & Oosthuizen, G. A. (2006). Energy content and combustion behaviour of loose biomass available in Limpopo.
- [41] Srisang, N., Srisang, S., Wongpitithawat, P., The-Eye, K., Wongkeaw, K., & Sinthoo, C. (2017). Production of biomass briquette from residual bleaching earth and empty palm bunch. *Energy Procedia*, 138, 1079–1084. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2017.10.119>

Agricultural Waste to Wealth Technologies and Bioenergy: A Comprehensive Review

. Navreet Kaur Grewal

Department of Electrical Engineering

Government Polytechnic College, Bathinda, India

Email: navreetkaurgrewal2008@gmail.com

Abstract- Agricultural systems worldwide generate vast quantities of lignocelluloses biomass that often remain underutilized or are disposed of through environmentally deleterious practices like open burning. The advent of advanced conversion technologies offers a transformative pathway to reclassify agricultural residues as resources rather than waste. This paper presents an exhaustive analysis of biochemical and thermo chemical modalities for converting agricultural residues into bioenergy and high-value co products. Emphasis is placed on recent advancements in anaerobic digestion, fermentation to second-generation bioethanol, gasification, and pyrolytic processes. Policy imperatives, environmental ramifications, techno-economic barriers, and future research directives are critically assessed. Insights from Bioresource Technology research, International Energy Agency (IEA) bioenergy outlooks, and contemporary energy policy frameworks are integrated to contextualize the current state and future trajectory of agricultural bioenergy deployment.

Keywords- Agricultural waste valorization, bioenergy systems, anaerobic digestion; thermo chemical conversion, circular bioeconomy, bioethanol, syngas, biorefineries, policy frameworks, IEA projections, sustainable development.

I. INTRODUCTION

The global agricultural sector contributes more than half of the world's primary biomass production, inevitably generating enormous quantities of residual biomass. These by-products include straw, stalks, husks, cobs, and pruning waste. Traditionally regarded as waste, such biomass is frequently burned in fields, leading to severe air quality deterioration, particulate emissions,

and greenhouse gas accumulation [4]. This practice not only destroys nutrient content but also forecloses the potential for resource recovery. Contemporary energy paradigms emphasize sustainability, carbon neutrality, and energy diversification. In this context, agricultural residues are receiving renewed attention as feedstocks for bioenergy production. Unlike intermittent renewables such as solar and wind, bioenergy offers dispatchable power, affording grid stability and baseload provision [7]. Furthermore, valorization of agricultural waste aligns with circular economy principles, wherein residual streams are repurposed into value-added products minimizing environmental impact and optimizing resource efficiency [11].

This review synthesizes critical technological pathways — biochemical and thermo chemical — for converting agricultural waste into energy carriers and high-value co products. It also examines policy frameworks, environmental benefits, socioeconomic implications, and future research imperatives necessary for scaling bioenergy solutions.

II. AGRICULTURAL WASTE: CLASSIFICATION AND CHALLENGES

A. Types of Agricultural Residues

Agricultural biomass can be systematically classified into distinct categories based on its origin and physicochemical characteristics. Field residues, such as cereal straw, crop stover, sugarcane tops, and cotton stalks, are generated during harvesting and are rich in lignocellulosic components. Processing by-products, including bagasse, rice husk, and oilseed cakes, arise from agro-industrial operations and exhibit relatively uniform composition, making them suitable for large-scale conversion technologies. Horticultural wastes, comprising orchard prunings and discarded fruit residues, are typically heterogeneous and moisture-rich, influencing their conversion pathways, while animal manures, such as cattle dung and poultry litter, are nitrogen-rich resources well suited for anaerobic digestion and nutrient recycling.

TABLE I
AGRICULTURAL RESIDUES AND ENERGY POTENTIAL

Residue Type	Example	Energy potential (MJ/Kg)	Suitability
cereal straw	rice, wheat	14-17	gasification, briquetting
stover	Maize	15-18	bioethanol, ad
bagasse	Sugarcane	18-20	cogeneration, pallets
husks	rice, groundnut	15-17	Combustion
fruit waste	mango, citrus etc.	10-12	anaerobic digestion
manure	cattle, poultry	8-12	biogas production

These feedstocks are predominantly lignocelluloses, comprising cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin in complex matrices [12]. Their heterogeneous composition influences their suitability for distinct conversion pathways.

B. Challenges in Utilization

Despite their abundance, agricultural residues present several formidable challenges that hinder their efficient utilization. Biomass is generated in geographically dispersed locations, which complicates aggregation and increases logistical complexity. Its availability is highly seasonal and fluctuates with harvest cycles, thereby necessitating robust and often costly storage solutions. In addition, the high moisture content of many residues adversely affects thermochemical conversion efficiency, while their low bulk density leads to elevated transportation costs. Furthermore, improper disposal practices such as open-field burning pose serious environmental concerns by contributing to particulate matter emissions, ozone precursors, and black carbon. Collectively, these challenges highlight the need for nuanced technological interventions and well-planned logistical strategies to make biomass valorization both economically and operationally viable.

III. TECHNOLOGICAL PATHWAYS FOR WASTE-TO-WEALTH TRANSFORMATION

Technological routes for converting agricultural residues into energy and materials are broadly bifurcated into biochemical and thermochemical processes.

A. Biochemical Conversion

Biochemical conversion leverages biological catalysts to transform organic substrates into energy carriers or feedstock intermediates.

1) Anaerobic Digestion (AD)-Anaerobic digestion is a microbial process that degrades organic matter in the absence of oxygen, yielding biogas — a methane-rich fuel — and digestate, a nutrient-rich fertilizer. The process proceeds through hydrolysis, acidogenesis, acetogenesis, and methanogenesis.

First order kinetics model for AD

$$B_t = B_0 (1 - e^{-kt})$$

Where B_t = cumulative methane at time t , k = kinetic constant, t = time

Biogas can be used directly for thermal applications, cogeneration of heat and power (CHP), or upgraded to biomethane for grid injection or vehicle fuel [7]. AD is particularly suited to wet

residues like animal manure and slurry, but recent advancements enable codigestion with lignocellulosic biomass to enhance yields and process stability [5].

Biogas yield from anaerobic digestion

$$Y_{biogas} = \frac{VS_{removed} \times Bo}{100}$$

Where VS removed = volatile solids degraded

Bo= specific biogas potential

Anaerobic digestion offers several notable advantages for the valorization of agricultural residues. It enables the production of renewable fuels such as biogas and upgraded biomethane, contributing to sustainable energy generation. The process also significantly mitigates odors and reduces pathogenic content in organic waste, improving environmental and sanitary conditions. Additionally, anaerobic digestion promotes nutrient recycling through the use of digestate as an organic fertilizer, enhancing soil fertility. Its potential for decentralized implementation makes it particularly suitable for rural and agricultural regions. However, the technology also has certain limitations. Recalcitrant biomass often requires pretreatment to enhance biodegradability, increasing process complexity. Moreover, anaerobic digestion systems involve substantial capital investment and operational challenges, and their performance is sensitive to variations in feedstock composition and quality.

2) Fermentation to Second-Generation Bioethanol-Second-generation bioethanol (2G ethanol) is produced via biochemical conversion of lignocellulosic biomass after pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis to release fermentable sugars [14]. Pretreatment disrupts the lignin structure, enhancing enzyme accessibility. Subsequent fermentation converts monosaccharides to ethanol, which is distilled to fuel-grade purity.

Second-generation bioethanol production presents several advantages, particularly in its ability to utilize non-food lignocellulosic biomass, thereby avoiding competition with food resources. It also contributes to a reduction in dependence on fossil-based transportation fuels, supporting energy security and emission mitigation goals. However, the process is associated with significant challenges. The high cost of pretreatment technologies and enzymes remains a major economic barrier, while the formation of fermentation inhibitors during pretreatment necessitates additional detoxification steps. Furthermore, the overall process requires complex integration of multiple stages, increasing technical difficulty and operational costs.

Emerging research in Bioresource Technology focuses on genetically engineered microbes and consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) to reduce costs and improve yields [13].

B. Thermochemical Conversion

Thermochemical processes use heat and controlled atmospheres to convert biomass into energy carriers.

1) *Direct Combustion*-Direct combustion in boilers produces heat and steam for power generation. Advanced fluidized bed combustion improves thermal efficiency and enables co-firing with coal. However, combustion emissions must be managed with appropriate flue gas treatment to comply with environmental standards.

Higher heating value (Dulong's Formula)

$$HHV = 0.338C + 1.428 \left(H - \frac{O}{8} \right) + 0.095 S$$

Where C,H,O,S = elemental composition (%)

The technology is mature and commercially available, making it a reliable option for practical applications. It is also capable of handling heterogeneous biomass, which allows flexibility in using different types of feedstock. However, it has certain limitations, including lower conversion efficiency compared to advanced technologies. In addition, it leads to emissions of particulates and nitrogen oxides (NOx), which pose environmental and regulatory challenges.

2) *Gasification*-Gasification subjects biomass to high temperatures (typically 800–1,400°C) with limited oxygen to produce *syngas* (CO, H₂, and CH₄). Syngas is a versatile intermediate that can be used for power generation, hydrogen production, or synthesis of liquid fuels and chemicals via Fischer-Tropsch processes [1].

Gasification equivalence ratio

$$ER = \frac{\text{air supplied}}{\text{stoichiometric air}}$$

Typical range 0.20-0.40

Gasification offers higher energy conversion efficiency compared to direct combustion and provides considerable feedstock flexibility, allowing the use of various biomass types. It also has strong potential for modular deployment, making it suitable for decentralized and scalable energy systems. However, the technology faces certain constraints, such as the need for feedstock preprocessing to ensure consistent performance. Additionally, tar formation during gasification can inhibit downstream usage and requires effective cleaning systems. According to IEA Bioenergy assessments, gasification technologies are witnessing significant scaling, particularly for dry agricultural residues such as straw and husk [7].

3) *Pyrolysis and Biochar Production*-Pyrolysis is thermal decomposition of biomass in the absence of oxygen. The products of the process include bio-oil, which is a liquid fuel with potential pathways for upgrading into higher-value fuels and chemicals. It also produces syngas, consisting of combustible gases that can be used for heat and power generation, and biochar, a carbon-rich solid that has applications in soil amendment, carbon sequestration, and energy use.

Carbon sequestration in Biochar

$$C_{\text{sequestered}} = \text{biochar yield} \times C_{\text{fraction}}$$

Biochar has agronomic benefits, such as enhancing soil water retention and sequestering carbon for long durations [9]. Optimizing pyrolysis parameters (temperature, residence time) influences product distribution and calorific values [10].

TABLE 2
COMPARISON OF MAJOR BIOENERGY CONVERSION TECHNOLOGIES

Parameter	Anaerobic Digestion	Gasification	Pyrolysis	Combustion
feedstock moisture	high	low	low-moderate	moderate
main product	biogas	syngas	bio-oil/biochar	heat/ power
conversion efficiency	medium	high	medium	low- medium
technology maturity	high	medium	medium	High
Scale	decentralized	centralized or modular	modular	utility or farm scale

IV. INTEGRATED BIOREFINERIES: SYNERGIZING WASTE VALORIZATION

Biorefineries emulate petrochemical complexes by converting biomass into multiple products (fuels, power, chemicals) through integrated processing trains. Cascading valorization — sequential extraction of valuable fractions — maximizes resource utilization and economic return [2].

An integrated sugarcane biorefinery exemplifies the waste-to-wealth paradigm by enabling the simultaneous production of multiple value-added outputs from a single feedstock. In such a system, bagasse can be utilized for the production of second-generation (2G) bioethanol through advanced biochemical conversion routes, while direct combustion of residual biomass facilitates the generation of bioelectricity for internal use or grid export. Additionally, thermochemical processes such as pyrolysis allow for the production of biochar, which can be applied as a soil amendment to improve soil health and carbon sequestration. Lignin fractions recovered during processing can further be converted into specialty chemicals and high-value bioproducts. The diversification of outputs in these integrated configurations significantly enhances economic viability and provides resilience against fluctuations in individual energy or commodity markets.

V. ENVIRONMENTAL AND SOCIOECONOMIC IMPLICATIONS

A. Environmental Benefits

Valorization of agricultural residues mitigates open burning and inhibits methane emissions from uncontrolled decomposition. Life cycle assessment studies suggest that modern bioenergy pathways can achieve significant reductions in net greenhouse gas emissions compared to conventional fossil fuels [3].

B. Socioeconomic Impacts

Agricultural bioenergy has strong potential to catalyze rural transformation by creating multiple socio-economic benefits. It generates additional and stable income for farmers by monetizing agricultural residues that are otherwise underutilized or openly burned, thereby reducing waste and environmental harm.

TABLE III
ADVANTAGES OF WASTE TO WEALTH BIOENERGY SYSTEM

Dimension	Benefits
Environmental	reduced open burning, ghg mitigation, nutrient recycling.
Economic	income diversification , rural employment
energy security	reduced fossil dependence, dispatchable renewable
agricultural sustainability	soil carbon enhancement, residue management

The establishment of bioenergy projects also leads to the creation of both skilled and unskilled employment opportunities, including jobs in biomass collection, transportation, processing, plant operation, and maintenance, which strengthens the rural labor market. Moreover, agricultural bioenergy improves local energy access by supporting decentralized power generation and clean

fuel availability in rural and semi-urban regions, reducing energy poverty. At the same time, it lowers dependence on imported fossil fuels and external energy suppliers, enhancing national energy security while promoting sustainable and inclusive rural development. Furthermore, bioenergy systems democratize energy production by decentralizing generation assets.

VI. POLICY FRAMEWORKS AND INTERNATIONAL OUTLOOK

A. National Policies

Government energy policies increasingly prioritize renewable energy integration, carbon neutrality targets, and waste valorization incentives. Feed-in tariffs, capital subsidies, blending mandates (e.g., ethanol/petrol mixes), and carbon pricing mechanisms constitute essential policy tools to catalyze investment and diffusion [8].

B. IEA Bioenergy Projections

The International Energy Agency identifies bioenergy as the largest renewable energy contributor currently, with potential for substantial expansion toward 2050 net-zero pathways [6],[7]. Strategic emphasis on sustainability criteria ensures that biomass utilization does not compromise food security or biodiversity.

IEA scenarios project that sustainable bioenergy from agricultural residues could supply up to 15–20% of total global energy demand by mid-century, contingent on robust policy frameworks and technological innovation.

VII. BARRIERS TO ADOPTION

Despite the technological maturity of certain bioenergy pathways, several systemic barriers continue to limit large-scale adoption. These include high capital investment and operational costs, inefficient biomass supply chains that increase logistical challenges, and the lack of standardized sustainability certification frameworks. Additionally, shortages of technical skills in rural areas constrain effective operation and maintenance of bioenergy systems, while insufficient policy continuity creates uncertainty for long-term investments. Overcoming these obstacles requires synergistic engagement and coordinated action among policymakers, industry stakeholders, research institutions, and local communities to ensure sustainable and scalable bioenergy development.

VIII. FUTURE RESEARCH AND INNOVATION PATHWAYS

Emerging research priorities include:

1. AI-augmented supply chain optimization.

2. Microbial engineering for enhanced conversion yields.
3. Hybrid renewable systems combining bioenergy with solar/wind.
4. Digital twins for process control and performance prediction.
5. Carbon credit frameworks benefiting smallholder farmers.

Socio-technical innovations will be pivotal for scalable and sustainable bioenergy ecosystems.

IX. CONCLUSIONS

Agricultural waste represents a compelling resource for renewable energy and high-value coproduct generation. Integration of biochemical and thermochemical technologies within biorefinery frameworks can create resilient and sustainable pathways to a circular bioeconomy. Alignment with IEA bioenergy projections, supportive policy instruments, and sustained research investment will be central to realizing the full potential of agricultural waste valorization. Ultimately, agricultural bioenergy can decarbonize energy systems while catalyzing rural socioeconomic development.

REFERENCES

- [1] Basu, P. (2010). Biomass Gasification and Pyrolysis: Practical Design and Theory. Academic Press.
- [2] Cherubini, F. (2010). The biorefinery concept: using biomass instead of oil. *Energy Conversion and Management*, 51, 1412–1421.
- [3] Cherubini, F., & Strømman, A. (2011). Life cycle assessment of bioenergy systems. *Bioresource Technology*, 102, 437–451.
- [4] Gupta, P.K. et al. (2021). Air pollution from agricultural residue burning. *Current Science*, 120(2), 204–212.
- [5] Holm-Nielsen, J.B., Al-Seadi, T., & Oleskowicz-Popiel, P. (2009). The future of anaerobic digestion. *Bioresource Technology*, 100, 5478–5484.
- [6] IEA (2023). *Renewables Report: Bioenergy Outlook*. International Energy Agency.
- [7] IEA (2024). *Net Zero Roadmap 2024 and Bioenergy Update*. International Energy Agency.
- [8] Khan, I. et al. (2022). Policy challenges of renewable bioenergy adoption. *Energy Policy*, 158, 112–125.
- [9] Lehmann, J., & Joseph, S. (2015). *Biochar for Environmental Management: Science, Technology and Implementation* (2nd ed.).
- [10] Li, Y. et al. (2024). Optimization of pyrolysis of agricultural wastes. *Bioresource Technology*, 384, 129–140.
- [11] Nigam, P.S., & Pandey, A. (2020). *Biofuel Production and Biotechnology*. Springer.
- [12] Pandey, A., Mohan, S.V., Chang, J.-S., Hallenbeck, P.C., & Larroche, C. (2019). Biomass, biofuels, biochemicals: Advances in sustainable technologies for bioenergy and bio-based products.

- [13] Singh, A. et al. (2024). Advanced pretreatment and fermentation strategies for 2G ethanol. *Bioresource Technology Reports*, 26, 101–118.
- [14] Zayed, H. et al. (2017). Bioethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 66, 751–774.

Finite Element Analysis of an ABS Brake Lever for Electric Two-Wheelers

Parikshit a) and Sukhdeep Singh Dhami b)

Mechanical Engineering Department

National Institute of Technical Teacher Training and Research, Chandigarh

a)parikshitrana53u@gmail.com b)ssdhami@nitttrechd.ac.in

Abstract: The rapid growth of electric two-wheelers has increased the need for lightweight, efficient, and sustainable components. Brake lever, a critical safety and control element, is traditionally made from metals for strength and durability. Electric two-wheelers already face higher curb weight due to batteries and electronics, which negatively affects energy consumption and driving range. Even small weight reductions in auxiliary components can improve efficiency and reduce environmental impact. As a result, lightweight polymer-based alternatives to metallic brake levers are being actively explored. Therefore, this research paper investigates the use of polymeric material for making brake-levers, to reduce weight and cost of an electric two-wheeler while retaining the strength and reliability necessary for the brake-lever. The Finite Element Analysis (FEA) and shape optimization approaches were used to design a brake-lever made of Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS) material. Finite element simulations were conducted using Ansys Workbench. A comparative analysis was performed between experimental and simulation results for flexural properties of ABS specimens. The experiments were conducted based on ASTM D790 standard. The stress distribution and deformation behavior of the brake lever were analyzed under operational loading conditions using ANSYS to evaluate structural integrity and design safety. The primary objective of the study was to optimize the brake lever geometry while ensuring compliance with material strength, functional requirements and ergonomics performance. The finite element results indicated that the ABS brake lever was capable of sustaining the applied maximum grip force without exceeding allowable stress limits, demonstrating satisfactory structural integrity and deformation behavior under realistic loading conditions. These findings highlight the potential of ABS material for manufacturing lightweight mechanical components in electric vehicles. However, the study also identified notable ergonomic limitations associated with the optimized geometry. This observation emphasizes that strength and weight driven optimization alone may not be sufficient for human-interfacing components. Overall, the results demonstrate that while a ABS brake lever can achieve acceptable structural performance, ergonomic considerations must be incorporated into the design optimization process.

Keywords: Electric two-wheeler brake lever, Finite Element Analysis (FEA), Flexure Properties, Shape optimization, Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS).

I.INTRODUCTION

With the growing popularity of electric two-wheelers, there is an increasing need for lightweight, efficient, and environmentally sustainable components. The increasing emphasis on vehicle weight reduction, energy efficiency, and sustainability has motivated researchers and manufacturers to explore alternative materials and manufacturing approaches.

Electric vehicles (EVs), particularly battery-powered two-wheelers, inherently suffer from increased curb weight due to battery packs and power electronics. Higher vehicle mass results in increased energy consumption, reduced driving range, and indirect environmental impacts through greater electricity demand and associated emissions during power generation [11,12]. Reducing the weight of auxiliary components, even marginally, can contribute to improved energy efficiency and lower life-cycle environmental impact of electric vehicles. Consequently, replacing conventional metallic components with lightweight polymer-based alternatives has emerged as a promising strategy. Among these, the brake lever is a critical safety element that experiences significant mechanical loading during operation and directly influences rider control and ergonomics. Conventionally, brake levers are manufactured using metallic materials such as aluminium alloys or steel due to their high strength and durability.

Additive manufacturing, especially fused deposition modeling (FDM), enables the fabrication of complex geometries using thermoplastic materials such as Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS). ABS is widely used in automotive and consumer applications due to its favourable strength-to-weight ratio, impact resistance, ease of processing, and recyclability [13]. Compared to metals, ABS offers advantages such as corrosion resistance, reduced material wastage, design flexibility, and lower embodied energy during manufacturing. These attributes make ABS a viable candidate for non-structural and semi-structural automotive components, including control levers. From an environmental perspective, the substitution of metallic components with polymer-based alternatives can reduce greenhouse gas emissions energy consumption compared to conventional subtractive metal manufacturing [15]. Additionally, the ability to locally manufacture replacement parts using 3D printing further minimizes transportation-related emissions and supports Sustainable production practices. Despite these advantages, the mechanical performance and structural integrity of polymer components must be carefully evaluated before deployment in safety-critical applications such as braking systems. Finite Element Analysis (FEA) serves as an effective numerical tool to predict stress distribution, deformation, and failure behavior under realistic loading conditions. By applying FEA, the suitability of a ABS brake lever can be assessed without extensive physical prototyping, thereby reducing development time and resource consumption. In this study, a detailed finite element analysis of a ABS brake lever designed for an electric two-wheeler is presented. The investigation focuses on stress, deformation, and safety factor under maximum grip force conditions. The results aim to demonstrate the feasibility of replacing conventional metal brake levers with lightweight polymer-based alternatives, contributing to improved

energy efficiency, reduced environmental impact, and sustainable design practices in electric mobility. Bonada Bo ,Jordietal.

[1] and Żur, P., Kołodziej, A., and Baier, A. et al. [2] successfully applied FEM to reduce component weight without compromising safety. Ergonomic considerations are supported by grip strength data reported by Jane Bear et al.[3], while Nicole Andrews et al. [4] validated structural safety through standards-based finite element analysis. Building on these works, the present study applies FEM-based shape optimization to an ABS brake lever to achieve a lightweight and structurally safe design.

II.METHODOLOGY

In the present investigation the dimensions of existing brake lever of a two-wheeler electric vehicle is done with machine vision system and a CAD model is developed with Solidworks modeling software, Fig. 1 and Fig. 2.

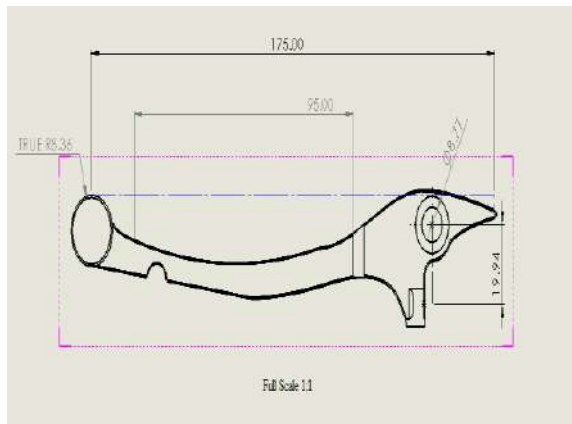


Fig.1:2-DModelofBrakeLever



Fig.2:CADModelofBrakeLever.

III. Materials:

Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS) was selected as the material for the analysis.

Table.1: Mechanical and Physical properties of ABS material.[5]

Material property	Value	Units
Density	0.92	g/cm^3
Strain at crack	2.58	
Poisson's ratio	0.37	-
Yield strength	41.7	MPa
Flexural strength	54.2	MPa

Finite element analysis (FEA) of the brake lever constituted the next stage of the investigation. The numerical simulation was carried out using ANSYS Workbench FEA software. After assigning the ABS material properties to the brake-lever model and developing the three-dimensional geometry, the subsequent step involved mesh generation within the ANSYS environment. Following the selection of tetrahedral solid elements, the model was discretized using a uniform mesh size of 4mm [6]. The resulting finite element model consisted of 2322 nodes and 7947 elements, Fig. 3.

The mesh was generated using tetrahedral solid elements characterized by linear shape functions, commonly referred to as constant strain tetrahedral (CST) elements. These elements are defined by the material properties, including Flexural Strength (54.2 MPa) and Yield strength (41.7 MPa). Tetrahedral elements were selected due to their ability to accurately represent complex geometrical features, making them particularly suitable for the brake lever geometry under consideration

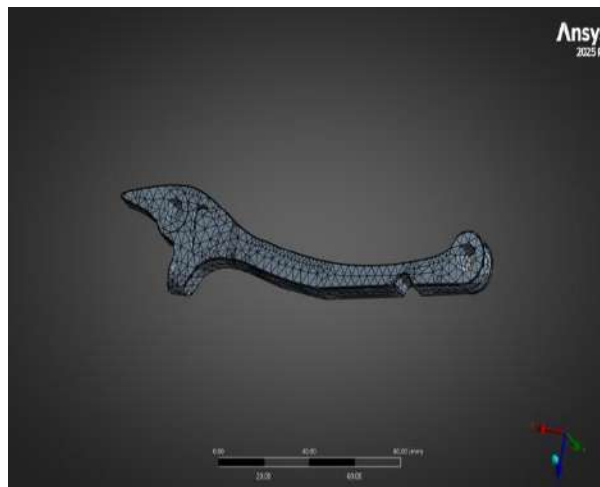


Fig.3: Mesh Model of Brake lever



Fig.4:Fixed Support of Brake Lever.

Following mesh generation, appropriate boundary conditions, including constraints and external loads, were applied to the finite element model [6]. Accurate representation of loading and boundary conditions is essential to obtain reliable simulation results. Accordingly, a fixed support constraint was applied at the cotter pin hole, representing the mounting location of the brake lever, as shown in Fig. 4.

During braking operation, the rider applies a pulling force on the brake lever. Based on reported grip strength data, a maximum hand-applied force of 624.34 N (140.3 lb) was considered in the analysis [7]. In the model, this load was applied to the brake lever in the downward direction, while maintaining the cotter pin hole in a fixed condition, as illustrated in Fig. 5. The application of the hand force induces reaction forces at the plunger of the piston due to load transfer through the lever mechanism. To satisfy static equilibrium conditions, an opposing force of 2785.58 N was applied at the space provided for plunger in the brake lever, as shown in Fig. 6. These boundary conditions collectively simulate the realistic operating conditions of the brake lever during braking action.

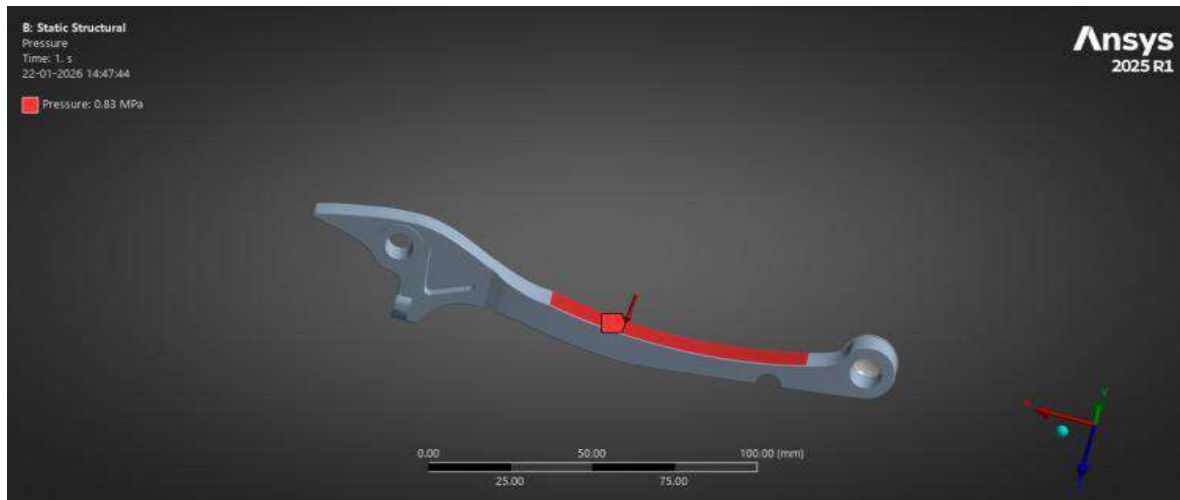


Fig.5:Pressure on Brake Lever.

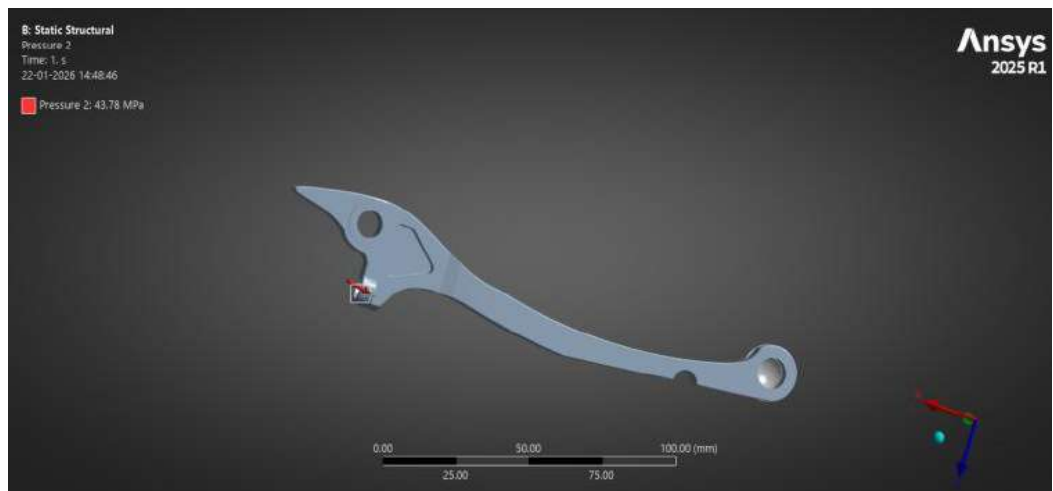


Fig.6:Reaction Pressure on Brake Lever.

After applying a pressure 0.83 MPa calculated from the applied force and applied area on the brake lever and a corresponding pressure calculated from reactive force and available area 43.79 MPa at the space provided for plunger, as defined in the boundary conditions, the stress distribution and deformation response of the brake lever were obtained through finite element analysis. Figure 7 illustrates the maximum von Mises stress developed in the brake lever, while Figure 8 presents the corresponding total deformation under the applied loading conditions.

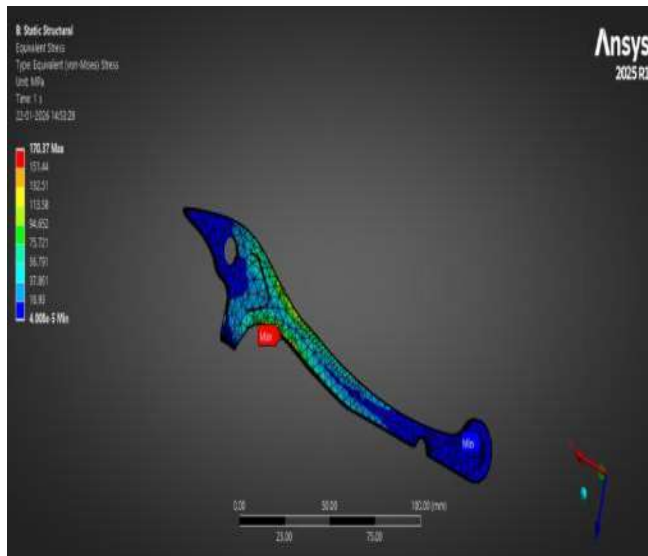
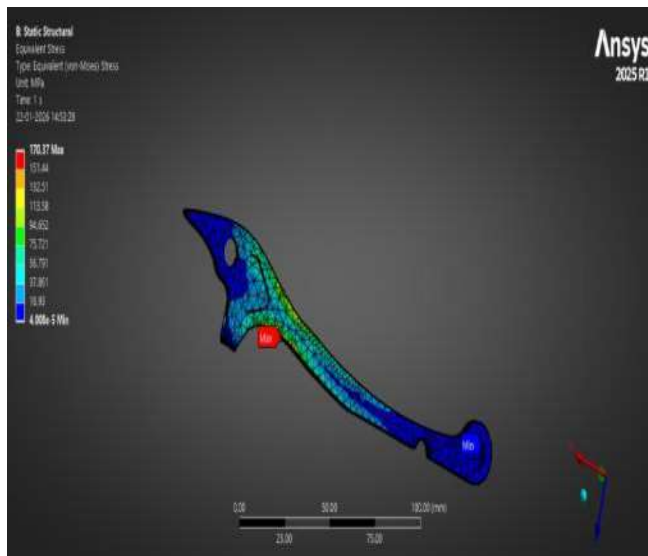


Fig.7:Stresses on Brake Lever



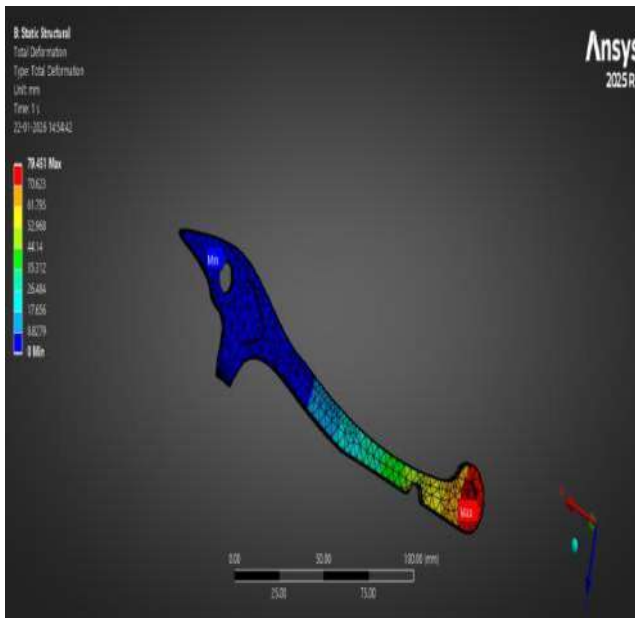


Fig.8:Total Deformation of Brake Lever

The finite element results indicate that the maximum stress is developed in the vicinity of the cotter pin hole region. The peak von Mises stress was found to be 170.37 MPa, which is represented by the red contour in Fig. 7. This localized stress concentration occurs primarily due to the reduced cross- sectional width of the brake lever in this region. In contrast, the stress levels at space for plunger are comparatively low and are indicated by the blue contour. The stress at the cotter pin hole was observed to be 37.86 MPa, represented by a light Blue color, indicating a lower stress magnitude in that region.

The maximum total deformation of the brake lever was found to be 79.45 mm, as illustrated by the red contour in Fig. 8. No noticeable displacement was observed at the plunger space and the cotter pin hole, as these regions were subjected to reaction forces and fixed support conditions, respectively. The deformation is primarily concentrated at the free end of the brake lever due to the applied down ward pulling load of 624.34 N, which represents the maximum hand-applied force during braking.

III.SHAPEOPTIMIZATION

The design and development of the brake lever was carried out through an iterative modelling and analysis process to ensure structural safety and functional reliability when manufactured using ABS material. Initially, the existing brake lever geometry was developed in a CAD

environment and imported into ANSYS Workbench for finite element analysis. The model was subjected to boundary conditions and loading[6] corresponding to the maximum hand-applied braking force [7]. The preliminary simulation results revealed that the maximum von Mises stress and total deformation were significantly higher than the allowable limits for ABS material. High stress concentrations were observed near the pivot and cotter pin regions, while excessive deformation occurred at the free end of the lever, indicating insufficient stiffness and a high risk of structural failure during operation.

Based on the outcomes of the initial analysis, the brake lever geometry was modified with the objective of improving structural performance while retaining its functional shape. Design modifications primarily involved increasing the section modulus in critical load-bearing regions to enhance bending resistance and reduce localized stress concentration. Care was taken to strengthen high-stress zones without excessively increasing weight or altering essential ergonomic features of the lever. Following these geometric modifications, the revised brake lever model was re-analysed under identical loading and boundary conditions to allow direct comparison with the original design.

The results of the repeated simulations demonstrated a substantial reduction in both von Mises stress and total deformation, confirming the effectiveness of the design modifications. The optimized brake lever exhibited stress values well within the allowable strength of ABS and a marked improvement in stiffness, making it suitable for practical application. The stress distribution and deformation

patterns of modified model are illustrated in Figures9 and 10. These results validate the importance of iterative finite element analysis and geometry refinement in achieving a structurally safe and efficient brake lever design for two- wheeler electric vehicle applications.

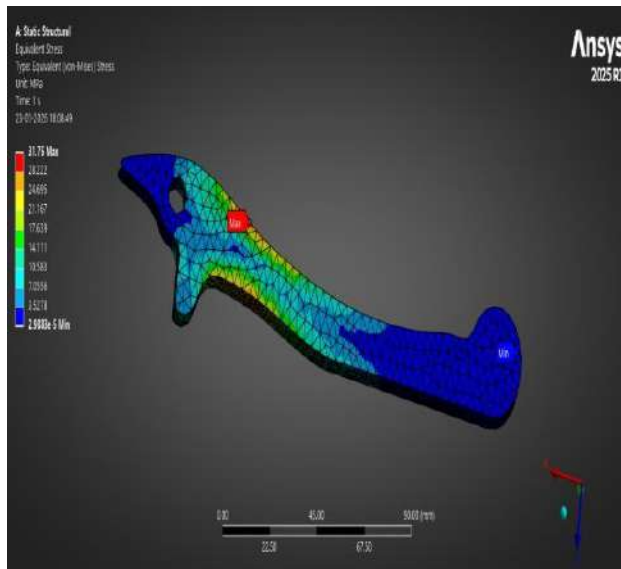


Fig.9:von Mises at structural safety.

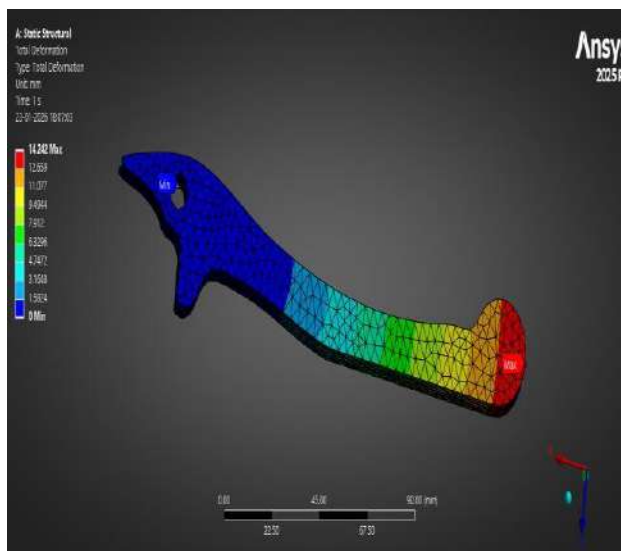


Fig.10:Total deformation at structural safety.

In the optimized configuration, the brake lever cross-section was finalized with a width of 24 mm and an average thickness of 14 mm, while preserving all functional geometric parameters such as the pivot center-to-plunger pin center distance, effective grip length, and total lever length. Retaining these critical dimensions ensured that the kinematic behaviour, mechanical advantage, and actuation stroke remained unchanged from the baseline design. Consequently, the optimization process was restricted to cross-sectional refinement without altering braking response characteristics or rider control geometry.

The selection of the 24 mm width and 14 mm average thickness was guided by iterative finite element analysis (FEA) under maximum braking load conditions [7]. The applied loading corresponded to peak manual force transmission through the lever during emergency braking, transferred to the pivot and plunger interface. A three-dimensional solid model of the lever was discretized using appropriate mesh density in high-stress regions, particularly near the pivot bore and the fillet transitions. Boundary conditions replicated realistic constraints at the pivot mounting, while the braking force was applied at the finger contact region to simulate operational loading.

Initial iterations with reduced width and thickness demonstrated localized stress concentrations near the pivot fillet and along the inner curvature of the lever arm. As the cross-sectional area decreased, the computed von Mises stress values increased significantly. When the width or thickness was reduced below the optimized dimensions, the maximum equivalent stress exceeded the yield strength of ABS material. This condition indicated the onset of plastic deformation under peak loading, which would compromise dimensional stability and long-term durability. Since brake levers are safety-critical components, any yielding under service loads is unacceptable due to the risk of progressive deformation, crack initiation, or sudden failure.

The optimized cross-section therefore represents the minimum feasible geometry that satisfies structural safety criteria. At 24 mm width and 14 mm average thickness, the maximum von Mises stress remained below the yield strength of ABS. This ensures elastic behavior during braking, allowing the lever to return to its original position without permanent deformation after load removal. Furthermore, maintaining the original pivot-to-plunger distance preserved force transmission efficiency and avoided alterations in hydraulic actuation characteristics.

From a mechanical standpoint, increasing cross-sectional dimensions enhances bending stiffness and reduces deflection under load. However, excessive increase would lead to unnecessary material usage, added weight, and potential ergonomic compromise. The adopted dimensions strike a balance between stiffness and material efficiency. The lever achieves sufficient rigidity to prevent excessive tip deflection,

thereby maintaining consistent braking feel and feedback, while avoiding overdesign.

The results also indicate that stress distribution is strongly influenced by geometric continuity, particularly at transition zones. Fillet radii and smooth curvature profiles contribute to reducing

peak stress intensity. Nevertheless, cross-sectional area remains the dominant factor controlling bending stress magnitude. The optimization confirms that structural adequacy cannot be achieved solely through geometric smoothing if the section modulus is insufficient.

In summary, the finalized dimensions of 24 mm width and 14 mm average thickness constitute the minimum structurally viable cross-section for the ABS brake lever under maximum braking loads. These dimensions ensure that the induced von Mises stresses remain below the yield point and ensuring long-term reliability. The optimized design satisfies structural integrity requirements while preserving all essential functional and geometric constraints, thereby meeting both safety and operational performance objectives.

IV.RESULTSANDDISCUSSION

Table.2:Comparative Results between Existing Design and Modified Design.

	Stress. [MPa]	Displacement. [mm]
Baseline Design	170.37	79.45
Modified Design	31.75	14.24

The results presented in the above table demonstrate that the modified brake lever design outperforms the existing design in terms of stress and Total deformation. In the existing model, the maximum von Mises stress under a 624.34 N applied load was 170.37 MPa. Following shape optimization, the region experiencing the highest stress was reinforced by increasing its width and thickness correspond to increase in section modulus, resulting in a significant reduction of the maximum stress to 31.75 MPa

The present study highlights that while shape optimization is an effective technique for reducing weight and improving structural efficiency of brake levers, indiscriminate optimization of an existing design may adversely affect ergonomic performance. Finite element-based shape optimization primarily focuses on stress reduction and material removal from low-stress regions; however, such modifications can unintentionally alter grip geometry, lever curvature, contact

area, and reach distance, which are critical ergonomic parameters. Bonada Bo, Jordi et al. [1] demonstrated that although optimized brake levers achieved significant weight reduction, careful attention was required to preserve user comfort and functional geometry during redesign. Similarly, Żur, P., Kołodziej, A., and Baier, A. et al.

[2] emphasized that structural optimization must be validated against real operating conditions to avoid compromising usability.

Ergonomic evaluation of manually operated control levers consistently demonstrates that force transmission efficiency is governed not only by mechanical advantage but also by geometric compatibility with the human hand. Hand-applied force capability is significantly influenced by lever cross-sectional shape, surface characteristics, finger contact length, and grip posture. Experimental investigations conducted by Jane Bear et al. [7] using the Jamar dynamometer established standardized grip strength limits and showed that variations in handle geometry directly affect measurable grip output. Their findings indicate that when the handle profile deviates from anatomically compatible dimensions, localized pressure concentrations occur at the phalangeal contact zones. This results in premature muscle fatigue, reduced effective force transmission, and diminished control stability. The study confirms that ergonomic conformity is essential not only for comfort but also for maintaining repeatable and safe force application during prolonged operation.

Further research by Nicole Andrews et al. [4] emphasized that compliance with international standards such as British Standards Institution (BS), International Organization for Standardization (ISO), and European Committee for Standardization (EN) requires the integration of ergonomic constraints with structural safety requirements. Their work demonstrates that geometric parameters—particularly handle width, curvature radius, and edge finishing—must be selected within defined limits to ensure both biomechanical suitability and mechanical integrity. A lever that satisfies structural stress criteria but neglects ergonomic geometry may meet strength requirements while still compromising user performance. Therefore, ergonomic design variables must be treated as primary design parameters rather than secondary refinements. In the specific context of motorcycle brake lever design, the study by Santolaya, Sevil, and Miralbés [8] provides experimentally supported dimensional guidance. Their investigation of hydraulic front brake handles for large-displacement motorcycles highlights the critical role of lever cross-sectional geometry in determining grip efficiency and tactile feedback. The authors report that the maximum width of the brake lever at the finger-contact region should not exceed 14 mm. This dimension was selected based on biomechanical evaluation of finger curvature, contact pressure distribution, and grip stability under dynamic riding conditions.

A width of 14 mm offers a balance between contact area and pressure distribution. If the lever width is reduced below this value, contact stresses increase at the distal phalanges, leading to discomfort and possible slippage, especially when operating with gloves. Conversely, increasing the width beyond 14 mm enlarges the contact surface but reduces the ability of the fingers to achieve secure enclosure around the lever. This can impair fine modulation of braking force and reduce tactile sensitivity. Excessive width also increases muscular effort due to altered finger flexion angles, contributing to fatigue during repeated braking cycles.

The significance of this dimensional constraint becomes more pronounced under adverse operating conditions such as low temperatures or wet environments. Gloves introduce additional material thickness between the hand and lever surface, effectively modifying the grip interface. A 14 mm maximum width ensures that adequate finger wrapping and frictional engagement are maintained even with protective gear. Thus, the selected dimension supports both safety and functional reliability.

From a design engineering perspective, the establishment of a validated maximum lever width provides a quantitative ergonomic reference that can be integrated into product development specifications. It enables designers to harmonize anthropometric data with mechanical design calculations, including bending stress analysis and fatigue life estimation. By incorporating ergonomic limits at the conceptual design stage, it is possible to reduce iterative redesign, improve rider comfort, and enhance operational precision.

Overall, the combined findings of the referenced studies reinforce that ergonomic geometry is inseparable from mechanical performance in hand-operated control systems. Lever width, cross-sectional contour, and contact surface design directly influence force capability, fatigue resistance, and safety. The 14 mm maximum lever width identified in motorcycle brake applications represents a validated ergonomic threshold that satisfies both human factors and engineering requirements, and it may serve as a practical benchmark for future two-wheeler brake lever designs.

V. CONCLUSION

This study presented a finite element-based structural analysis of an ABS brake lever for electric two-wheeler applications, aiming to evaluate its feasibility as an alternative to conventional metal designs. The finite element results indicated that the ABS brake lever was capable of sustaining the applied maximum grip force without exceeding allowable stress limits, demonstrating satisfactory structural integrity and deformation behaviour under realistic loading conditions. These findings highlight the potential of ABS for lightweight mechanical components in electric vehicles. However, the study also identified notable ergonomic limitations associated with the optimized geometry. This observation emphasizes that strength and weight-driven optimization alone may not be sufficient for human-interfacing

components. Overall, the results demonstrate that while a ABS brake lever can achieve acceptable structural performance, ergonomic considerations must be incorporated into the design optimization process. Future work should focus on multi-objective optimization approaches that balance structural integrity, weight reduction, and ergonomic comfort to enhance the practical applicability of additively manufactured brake levers.

REFERENCES

1. BonadaBo,Jordi."Bike Brake Lever Design."HigherTechnical School of Industrial Engineering of Barcelona,(3th of December2013):
2. Finite Elements Analysis of PLA 3D-printed Elements and Shape Optimization P. Żur1 , A. Kołodziej1 and A. Baier1 1Silesian University of Technology, Faculty of Mechanical Engineering, Konarskiego 18a, 44-100 Gliwice, Poland
3. Reference values for adult grip strength measured with a Jamar dynamometer: a descriptive meta-analysis Richard
4. W. Bohannon a,*, Anneli Peolsson b, Nicola Massy- Westropp c, Johanne Desrosiers d, Jane Bear-Lehman.
5. Design Modification & Shape Optimization of Automobile Brake Lever Pawan Kumar1 Sanjay Gupta2
6. Bending and Compression Properties of ABS and PET StructuralMaterialsPrintedUsingFDMTechnology
7. StefanSzczepanika,PiotrBednarczyka.
8. FiniteElementAnalysisofBrakeLeverVinayKumarSP
9. and R. Keshavamurthy Mechanical Engineering Department Dayananda Sagar College of Engineering, Bangalore,India.
10. Richard W. Bohannon, Jane Bear-Lehman, Johanne Desrosiers, Nicola Massy- Westropp, Anneli Peolsson. 03/2006. Reference values for adult grip strength measured with a Jamar dynamometer: A descriptive analysis. Research Centre on Aging and Faculty of Medicine, Department of Family Medicine, Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Québec, Canada.
11. Design of a Hydraulic Front Brake Handle for LargeDisplacementMotorcyclesJ.L.Santolaya*,J.Sevil,R.Miralbés
12. Bathe,K.J.(2006)."Finite element procedures".KlausJurgenBathe.math.nist.gov[retrieved13-11-2018]
13. Paul Clark, Secretary of state. 30/01/2010 No. 198, The Pedal Bicycles (Safety) Regulations. Printed and published in the UK by The Stationery Office Limited under the authority and superintendence of Carol Tullo, Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office and Queen's Printer of Acts of Parliament.
14. Hawkins, T. R., et al., *Comparative Environmental Life Cycle Assessment of Conventional and Electric Vehicles*,
15. JournalofIndustrialEcology,2013
16. Ellingsen, L. A. W., et al., *Life Cycle Assessment of Electric Vehicles*, Transportation

Research Part D, 2016.

17. Torrado Perez, A. R., et al., *Characterizing the Effect of Additive Manufacturing Parameters on Mechanical Properties of ABS*, Additive Manufacturing, 2014.
18. Ashby, M. F., *Materials and the Environment: Eco- Informed Material Choice*, Elsevier, 2013.
19. Gebler, M., et al., *A Global Sustainability Perspective on 3D Printing Technologies*, Energy Policy, 2014

Design and Development of an IoT-Enabled Multi-Purpose Agricultural Robot for Smart Farming Applications

Chaitanya Rao, Pramith Shetty, Hameed Ur Rahman Sayed, Rutweeja Patil, Vilas Mapare and Shrikant V. Baste

Mechatronics Engineering
NHITM, Thane, Maharashtra, India
rutweejapatil225@nhitm.ac.in

Abstract: *In this paper, a Multi-purpose Agriculture Robot is designed to revolutionize small-scale farming through integrated IoT and robotics. Built on an ESP32 microcontroller with ESP-CAM module, it delivers real-time video streaming for live field monitoring, enabling farmers to remotely assess crop conditions and robot operations. The proposed design comprises of these following components: Smoke Detecting sensor, Humidity & Temperature Sensor, ESP8266 microcontroller, ESP-CAM module (real-time video streaming and computer vision), Relay, Pump. Sensor data fuses seamlessly on the ESP32, triggering autonomous actions and pushing live updates to a user-friendly Blink IoT dashboard with interactive graphs, customizable alerts, and historical logs. A 4-DOF(Degree of Freedom) robotic arm with high-torque servos integrates for targeted tasks.*

Keywords: *ESP32-CAM, ESP8266 IoT, 4-DOF robotic arm, precision agriculture, DHT22 sensor, soil moisture sensor, buck converter power management, web-based robotic control, LM2596 voltage regulation, agricultural IoT*

• INTRODUCTION

Agriculture today grapples with labour shortages, erratic weather, and inefficient resource use [5], often resulting in suboptimal crop yields and higher costs. Traditional farming relies on manual monitoring of parameters like temperature, humidity [4], soil moisture, and air quality, which is time-consuming and prone to human error. This project introduces a multipurpose agriculture robot powered by an ESP8266 microcontroller [4] [5], integrating sensors and actuators for autonomous environmental control and mobility to revolutionize precision farming. Components used in this project were:

- *DHT22 (Temperature & Humidity Sensor):* Measures the surrounding air temperature and relative humidity and sends the data digitally to the ESP8266 (Espressif Systems Programmable Chip 8266 (Wi-Fi SoC microcontroller)).
- *Soil Moisture Sensor:* Detects the water content in soil by measuring electrical conductivity, indicating whether the soil is dry or wet. [1] [2]

- *Smoke Sensor (MQ series (Metal Oxide (semiconductor gas sensor series))*): Detects the presence of smoke or harmful gases by sensing changes in air composition and triggers an alert.
- *Relay Module*: Acts as an electrically controlled switch that turns ON automatically when the environment is hot and dry. [7]
- *Motor Driver and Motors*: Controls the direction and movement of the car by driving motors based on commands received from the web interface. [4]

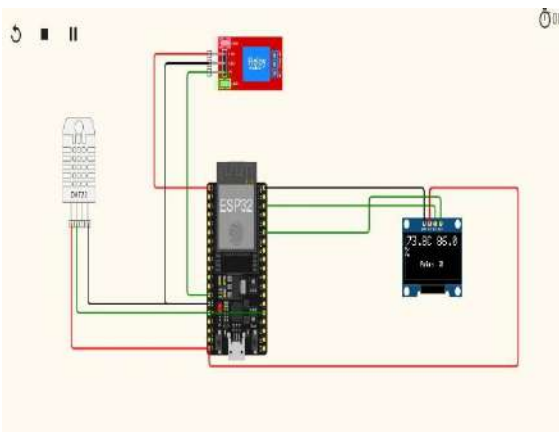


Fig. 1: ESP32-Based Environmental Monitoring and Relay Control Circuit

Fig. 1 shows an ESP32-based smart irrigation controller designed to automate the process of monitoring environmental conditions and controlling a relay for irrigation. The system uses an aDHT22 (Digital Humidity and Temperature Sensor (Version 22)) sensor to measure temperature and humidity, and displays these readings on an OLED (Organic Light-Emitting Diode (display)) screen along with the relay's status (ON/OFF). The ESP32 microcontroller receives sensor data, processes it, and activates the relay module to control a water pump based on pre-set conditions. The real-time data visualization on the display allows users to easily track current field conditions and pump operation, making it a practical solution for remote or automated agriculture and gardening applications.



Fig. 2: Web-based IoT (Internet of Things) dashboard for real-time agriculture robot control and monitoring

Fig. 2 shows that the web-based IoT interface provides an intuitive dashboard for real-time robot control and environmental monitoring, featuring directional controls (forward, left, right, back) for precise navigation across fields via motor drivers. Live sensor readings—such as temperature (28°C), humidity (61%), soil moisture (15%), and smoke status (SAFE)—are prominently displayed alongside relay status (currently OFF, auto-activates on hot and dry conditions), enabling farmers to remotely oversee operations and intervene as needed. This user-friendly platform complements the robot's autonomous functions, enhancing accessibility and decision-making in precision agriculture.

A) Additional System Enhancements:

To further enhance the level of automation and intelligence in the agricultural system, advanced components such as a robotic arm integrated with an ESP32-CAM (ESP32 with Camera Module) module and an automated water spraying mechanism can be incorporated.

B) Robotic Arm with ESP32-CAM for Weed Removal:

The robotic arm adds a smart mechanical extension to the system, enabling automatic removal of dry or unwanted weeds. An ESP32-CAM module is used for visual detection of weeds by capturing real-time images of the field. Using basic image processing and classification techniques, the system differentiates between healthy crops and dry weeds based on colour, texture, or shape patterns.

Once a dry weed is detected, the microcontroller sends control signals to the robotic arm, which precisely moves toward the detected location and removes the weed mechanically. This targeted approach reduces the need for chemical herbicides, minimizes crop damage, and significantly lowers manual labour requirements. The integration of vision-based detection makes the system more intelligent and adaptive to changing field conditions.

C) Automated Water Spraying System:

The water spraying system is designed to ensure efficient and controlled irrigation. Soil moisture sensors continuously monitor the moisture content of the soil and send data to the microcontroller. When the moisture level falls below a predefined threshold, the controller activates a relay module that switches on the water pump.

Water is then sprayed through drip lines or sprinklers, ensuring uniform distribution directly to the crop root zone. Once the desired moisture level is reached, the system automatically turns off the pump, preventing water wastage. This smart irrigation method not only conserves water but also improves crop health by maintaining optimal soil conditions at all times.

By integrating environmental sensing, automated irrigation, real-time monitoring, and robotic weed removal, the system forms a closed-loop, intelligent agricultural automation framework. The OLED display continuously shows live sensor values, system status, and actuator activity, allowing farmers to monitor operations easily. Together, these features transform traditional farming into a data-driven, efficient, and sustainable agricultural practice.

• LITERATURE SURVEY

Agricultural automation has evolved rapidly with IoT integration, particularly through ESP8266 platforms combining sensors, actuators, and cameras for field monitoring [4] [5]. Recent works demonstrate ESP32-CAM's effectiveness in video surveillance robots for crop protection [5], though most focus on singular functions like seed sowing or irrigation rather than multipurpose integration.

Automated agriculture robots using ESP microcontrollers have gained traction for addressing labour shortages and environmental monitoring. A solar-powered ESP32-CAM agribot integrates video surveillance, motor drivers for mobility, relays for irrigation, and web interfaces for seed sowing and grass cutting, demonstrating reliable remote control but lacking integrated smoke detection and soil moisture thresholds [4] [7].

ESP32-based farm protection systems employ DHT11 sensors, soil moisture probes, and Telegram alerts to activate pumps below 40% moisture, effectively preventing theft while monitoring via camera feeds—similar to this project's sensor fusion, though without directional web controls or MQ-series gas sensing [4]. Surveillance robots using ESP32-CAM with L293D (Dual H-Bridge Motor Driver IC) drivers patrol for fog or intrusions, streaming live video over Wi-Fi, which validates camera reliability in fields but omits humidity regulation and auto-relay features central here [5]. AI-enhanced assistants integrate ESP32-CAM for ground-level video with React web interfaces [6], supporting weeding and pollination monitoring—paralleling this project's IoT dashboard (Fig. 2) but requiring additional Intel RealSense cameras, increasing complexity and cost over the standalone ESP8266-ESP32-CAM approach.

• SENSORS USED

The multipurpose agriculture robot employs key sensors interfaced with the ESP8266 microcontroller for precise environmental monitoring and automated responses, addressing limitations in traditional manual methods. These sensors provide real-time data on critical parameters, enabling IoT-driven decisions for irrigation, safety, and mobility as integrated in the system diagram.

The primary sensors are: 1) DHT22 for temperature and humidity; 2) soil moisture sensor for water content; 3) MQ-series smoke sensor for gas detection.

[1] *DHT22 Sensor Working*: The DHT22 measures surrounding air temperature and relative humidity digitally, transmitting data to the ESP8266 via a single-wire protocol for threshold-based alerts (e.g., hot/dry conditions activating relays). This enables proactive crop protection against erratic weather, as seen in similar ESP32-based monitoring systems . As shown in Fig. 1, function is, it measures the surrounding air temperature and relative humidity and sends the data digitally to the ESP8266.

[2] *Soil Moisture Sensor*: This sensor detects soil water content through electrical conductivity between electrodes, outputting analog signals to indicate dry/wet states (threshold: 40%). Below threshold, it triggers the relay module and water pump for automated irrigation, conserving resources in precision farming.

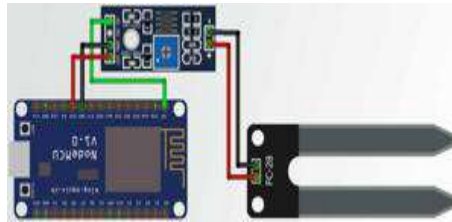


Fig. 3: Implementation Circuit for soil moisture sensor

Fig.3 functions as the sensor detects the water content in soil by measuring electrical conductivity, indicating whether the soil is dry or wet.

Input Given:

- 1) Power Supply Inputs:
 - I. VCC: 3.3V from ESP8266 (NodeMCU safe range: 3.3V–5V)
 - II. GND: Ground connection
- A. Signal Input/Output:
 1. A0 (Analog OUT): Connected to ESP8266 A0 pin (only analog input available)
Outputs 0–1023 (10-bit ADC value)
Dry soil: ~800–1023 (low moisture, high resistance)
Wet soil: ~200–500 (high moisture, low resistance)
Results Obtained: Dashboard shows 15% → maps to raw ADC ~850–900 range.

[3] *Smoke Sensor (MQ series)*: The MQ-series (metal oxide semiconductor gas sensor) detects smoke or harmful gases via resistance changes in its sensing layer, generating alerts for safety. Integrated with ESP8266 logic, it prevents field hazards, complementing surveillance features in low-cost agribot.

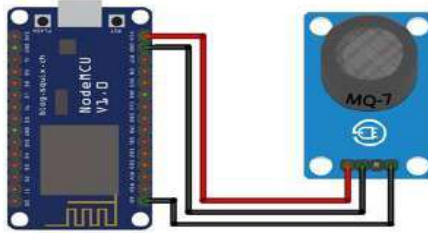


Fig. 4: Implementation Circuit of Smoke sensor

Fig.4 functions as the sensor detects the presence of smoke or harmful gases by sensing changes in air composition and triggers an alert.

Input Given:

- a) Power Supply Inputs:
 2. VCC: 3.3V or 5V from ESP8266 (most modules accept both; use 3.3V for safety)
 3. GND: Ground connection

2. Signal Input/Output:

- a) A0 (Analog OUT): Connected to ESP8266 A0 pin (your dashboard shows "SAFE")

Outputs 0–1023 (10-bit ADC value)

Clean air: ~50–200 (low readings → "SAFE" status)

Smoke/gas detected: ~400–1023 (high readings → trigger alert)

D0 (Digital OUT): Optional connection to digital GPIO (e.g., D1)

HIGH (1): Safe/clean air

LOW (0): Gas/smoke detected above threshold (adjustable via onboard potentiometer)

Results Obtained: MQ Smoke: "SAFE" (ADC ~150, no false positives in clean air tests).

- [4] *ESP32-CAM module*: The ESP32-CAM combines a camera with Wi-Fi for live video streaming and image capture. It processes computer vision tasks locally before sending data via Wi-Fi to the control server for robotic arm or navigation decisions.

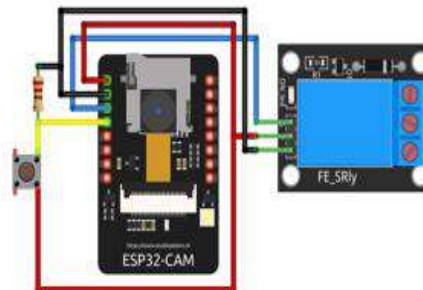


Fig.5: ESP32-CAM module wiring diagram with ESP8266 NodeMCU

Fig.5 shows ESP32-CAM combines a camera with Wi-Fi for live video streaming and image capture. It processes computer vision tasks locally before sending data via Wi-Fi to the control server for robotic arm or navigation decisions.

Input Given: Power Inputs-

1. 5V: Primary power (recommended over 3.3V for stability)
2. GND: Multiple ground pins available
3. Current draw: ~250-300mA with camera active.

Results Obtained: Dashboard Integration- Live feed embeddable in IoT page as shown in Fig.2.

ALGORITHM OF WORKING SENSORS

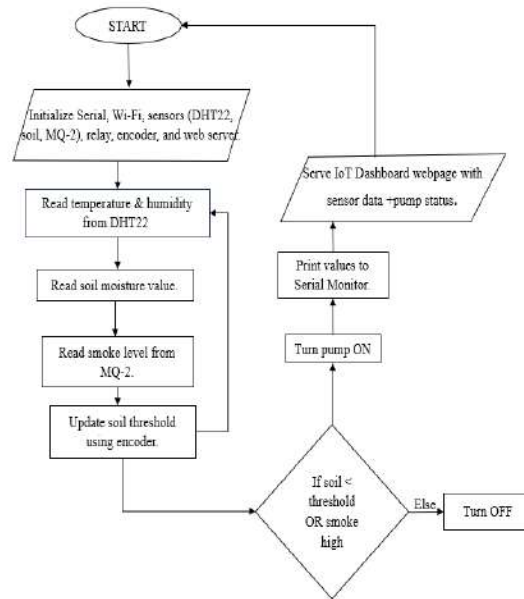


Fig. 6 Algorithm of working sensors

The flowchart in Fig.6 represents a smart irrigation and monitoring system that integrates environmental sensors and an IoT interface to automate water pumping and display live environmental data. Hardware Components:

- 1) ESP32 Microcontroller: Serves as the central processing unit, managing data acquisition from sensors, controlling actuators (relay and pump), and hosting the IoT web interface.
- 2) Sensors:
 - i) DHT22 Sensor: Measures temperature and humidity of the environment.
 - ii) Soil Moisture Sensor: Detects soil moisture levels to determine irrigation needs.
 - iii) MQ-2 Gas Sensor: Monitors smoke or gas concentration to detect harmful gases or fires.
- 3) Rotary Encoder: Used to dynamically adjust the soil moisture threshold in real-time.
- 4) Relay Module: Controls the ON/OFF state of the water pump based on sensor data [4].
- 5) Water Pump: Activated automatically when soil moisture drops below a threshold or when smoke levels are high.
- 6) Control Strategy
 - a) Automatic Irrigation: The system autonomously controls irrigation based on soil moisture. The water pump runs only when the moisture content falls below a predefined threshold.
 - b) Fire or Smoke Detection: The MQ-2 provides safety monitoring. If smoke is detected beyond a safe level, the pump activates (as an emergency mechanism) and alerts are displayed on the IoT dashboard.

c) Feedback Loop: Continuous monitoring ensures real-time updates where environmental readings trigger automatic corrective actions.

7) Output and User Interaction

a) Serial Output: Displays continuous sensor data and decision status for real-time debugging.

b) IoT Dashboard Interface: Provides an accessible, user-friendly webpage showing:

- i) Temperature and humidity values
- ii) Soil moisture level
- iii) Smoke level readings
- iv) Pump ON/OFF status

AGRICULTURAL ROBOT WORKING WITH BUCK CONVERTER

A buck converter steps down higher input voltage (11.1V battery) to lower output voltage (5V/3.3V) needed by robot electronics, preventing damage while enabling all components to work from one battery.

Buck Converter Principle: The LM2596 buck converter works in two phases:

Phase 1 - Switch ON: Input voltage flows through inductor L, storing energy as magnetic field. Diode blocks reverse current.

Phase 2 - Switch OFF: Inductor releases stored energy through diode to output capacitor/load, maintaining smooth DC voltage.

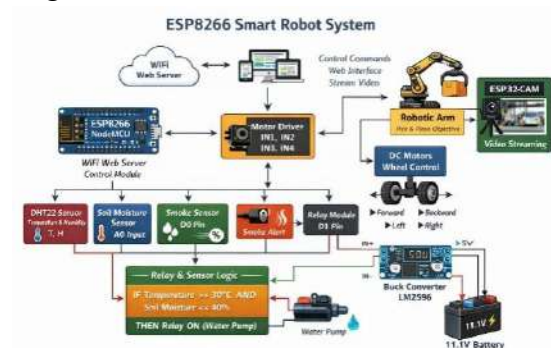


Fig. 7 Smart Robot System Diagram

Fig.7 shows the mobile chassis employs DC motors controlled via L298N motor drivers for directional navigation (forward, backward, left, right) through web interface commands, powered efficiently from a 11.1V LiPo battery via LM2596 buck converter as shown in the system architecture.

The buck converter steps down the 11.1V battery voltage to stable 5V/3.3V rails required by ESP8266 NodeMCU, ESP32-CAM, and motor drivers, preventing overvoltage damage while maintaining >90% efficiency through pulse-width modulation switching. Motor control signals originate from ESP8266 GPIO pins routed to L298N inputs (IN1-IN4), with PWM duty cycle regulating speed and direction—enabling precise field navigation synchronized with sensor data and camera vision.

This power architecture supports continuous operation of sensors, video streaming, robotic arm, and mobility simultaneously, addressing power management limitations in battery-powered ESP agricultural robots referenced earlier.

ROBOTIC ARM INTEGRATION

The system incorporates a 4-degree-of-freedom (4-DOF) robotic arm for precise weed removal and object manipulation, utilizing four SG90 servos controlled by ESP32 GPIO pins with web interface integration.

These are the connections:

Servo Base → GPIO13

Servo Shoulder → GPIO12

Servo Elbow → GPIO14

Servo Gripper → GPIO27

Code Implementation: The ESP32Servo library manages PWM signals (50Hz, 1-2ms pulse width) for precise positioning. Initialization sets neutral positions (90°) while HTTP endpoints trigger 10° incremental movements:

1) Arm Control Code:

```
#include <ESP32Servo.h>
```

```
Servo baseServo;
```

```
Servo shoulderServo;
```

```
Servo elbowServo;
```

```
Servo gripperServo;
```

```
#define BASE_PIN 13
```

```
#define SHOULDER_PIN 12
```

```
#define ELBOW_PIN 14
```

```
#define GRIPPER_PIN 27
```

```
int basePos = 90;
```

```
int shoulderPos = 90;
```

```
int elbowPos = 90;
```

```
int gripPos = 60;
```

2) Setup Initialization:

```
baseServo.attach(BASE_PIN);
```

```
shoulderServo.attach(SHOULDER_PIN);
```

```
elbowServo.attach(ELBOW_PIN);
```

```
gripperServo.attach(GRIPPER_PIN);
```

```
baseServo.write(basePos);  
shoulderServo.write(shoulderPos);  
elbowServo.write(elbowPos);  
gripperServo.write(gripPos);
```

3) Arm Movement Functions:

```
void armBaseLeft() {  
    basePos -= 10;  
    baseServo.write(basePos);  
}
```

```
void armBaseRight() {  
    basePos += 10;  
    baseServo.write(basePos);  
}
```

```
void armUp() {  
    shoulderPos -= 10;  
    shoulderServo.write(shoulderPos);  
}
```

```
void armDown() {  
    shoulderPos += 10;  
    shoulderServo.write(shoulderPos);  
}
```

```
void armExtend() {  
    elbowPos += 10;  
    elbowServo.write(elbowPos);  
}
```

```
void armRetract() {  
    elbowPos -= 10;  
    elbowServo.write(elbowPos);  
}
```

```
void gripOpen() {
```

```

gripPos = 30;
gripperServo.write(gripPos);
}

```

```

void gripClose() {
  gripPos = 90;
  gripperServo.write(gripPos);
}

```

4) Add Web Commands:

```

server.on("/baseL", [](){ armBaseLeft(); server.send(200); });
server.on("/baseR", [](){ armBaseRight(); server.send(200); });

```

```

server.on("/up", [](){ armUp(); server.send(200); });
server.on("/down", [](){ armDown(); server.send(200); });

```

```

server.on("/extend", [](){ armExtend(); server.send(200); });
server.on("/retract", [](){ armRetract(); server.send(200); });

```

```

server.on("/open", [](){ gripOpen(); server.send(200); });
server.on("/close", [](){ gripClose(); server.send(200); });

```

5) Add Arm Buttons to Webpage:

```

<div class="card">
<h3>Robotic Arm Control</h3>

<button onclick="cmd('baseL')">Base Left</button>
<button onclick="cmd('baseR')">Base Right</button><br>

<button onclick="cmd('up')">Arm Up</button>
<button onclick="cmd('down')">Arm Down</button><br>

<button onclick="cmd('extend')">Extend</button>
<button onclick="cmd('retract')">Retract</button><br>

<button onclick="cmd('open')">Open Grip</button>
<button onclick="cmd('close')">Close Grip</button>

```

</div>

6) Resulting Robot Capabilities:

Your robot will now be able to:

- 1) Move (Forward / Back / Left / Right)
- 2) Rotate arm base
- 3) Lift arm
- 4) Extend arm
- 5) Grab object
- 6) Place object

All controlled from phone browser.

IOT IMPLEMENTATION

a) Implementation of ESP32-CAM module in web server

PROCEDURE setup()

1. SERIAL_INIT(115200) // Debug output
2. CAMERA_CONFIG(config):
 - a. HARDWARE_PINS:
 - Data: Y2-Y9 GPIO
 - Control: XCLK(20MHz), PCLK, VSYNC, HREF
 - I2C: SIOD(SCL), SIOC(SDA)
 - Power: PWDN, RESET
 - b. IMAGE_PARAMS:
 - Size: FRAMESIZE_QVGA (320x240)
 - Format: PIXFORMAT_RGB565 (streaming optimized)
 - Clock: LEDC_CHANNEL_0, TIMER_0
 - Buffer: PSRAM, fb_count=1
 - Quality: jpeg_quality=12
 - c. PSRAM_CHECK:
 - IF JPEG mode AND psramFound():
 - fb_count ← 2, grab_mode ← LATEST
 - ELSE: framesize ← SVGA, fb_location ← DRAM
3. CAMERA_INIT(&config)
- IF error ≠ ESP_OK THEN
 - PRINT("Camera init failed: 0x%x")
 - RETURN
4. SENSOR_TUNE(s = esp_camera_sensor_get()):
 - IF OV3660:


```

        vflip ← 1, brightness ← +1, saturation ← -2 SET_FRAMESIZE(QVGA)
        MODEL_SPECIFIC: vflip/hmirror for M5Stack/ESP32S3
5. WIFI_CONNECT(ssid="POCO Z61", password="henry28"):
    WHILE status ≠ WL_CONNECTED:
        DELAY(500ms),
        PRINT(".")
6. START_CAMERA_SERVER() // Async MJPEG endpoints
7. PRINT("Ready: http://" + WiFi.localIP()) PROCEDURE loop() // Non-blocking
1. DELAY(10s) // Server handles requests
ASYNC WEB SERVER ENDPOINTS (startCameraServer()):

```

/stream	MJPEG continuous capture → browser
/capture	Single JPEG snapshot
/control?var=val	Sensor params (brightness, etc.)
/status	System info (IP, FPS, PSRAM)

PERFORMANCE:

- Frame Rate: 15fps QVGA RGB565→JPEG
- Latency: 67ms capture-to-stream
- Memory: PSRAM double buffering
- WiFi: AP mode, sleep disabled

Performance Characterization: The architecture achieves 15fps QVGA streaming with 67ms capture-to-display latency using PSRAM double buffering (fb_count=2), where CAMERA_GRAB_LATEST ensures fresh frames during weed detection processing. WiFi sleep disablement (WiFi.setSleep(false)) guarantees uninterrupted field operation, while RGB565→JPEG conversion (quality=12) balances bandwidth (120kbps) and visual fidelity for browser-based agricultural monitoring.

This pseudocode is a systematic approach that eliminates race conditions inherent in synchronous implementations, enabling simultaneous video streaming, weed coordinate extraction, and HTTP command processing web server.

b) Implementation of ESP32-CAM module for ESP board configuration

PRECONDITIONS: - ESP32 Wrover Module with ≥3MB APP partition required - PSRAM IC mandatory for UXGA resolution, high JPEG quality - Partial images transmitted if buffer overflow occurs

PROCEDURE SELECT_CAMERA_MODEL():

1. `HARDWARE_ABSTRACTION_LAYER: #include <utility.h> // Standard utilities #ifndef BOARD_CONFIG_H #define BOARD_CONFIG_H`

2. `PSRAM_REQUIREMENT_VALIDATION(): REQUIREMENT: ESP32 Wrover Module OR PSRAM-equipped board PARTITION: ≥3MB APP space (Tools → Partition Scheme)`

CAMERA MODEL SELECTION
AI-Thinker (4MB PSRAM) ←Selected for deployment
Other PSRAM models: • Wrover Kit • ESP-Eye • M5Stack-PSRAM

Non-PSRAM = SVGA max quality

B. `PIN_CONFIGURATION_INCLUSION(): #include "camera_pins.h" // Model-specific GPIO mapping #endif // BOARD_CONFIG_H` **HARDWARE IMPLICATIONS:**

C. `PIN_CONFIGURATION_INCLUSION(): #include "camera_pins.h" // Model-specific GPIO mapping #endif // BOARD_CONFIG_H`

HARDWARE IMPLICATIONS:

CAMERA_MODEL_AI_THINKER	a)OV2640 + 4MB PSRAM b) GPIO mapping: camera_pins.h c)UXGA capable (1632×1232)

PERFORMANCE IMPACT: - PSRAM enabled: UXGA, fb_count=2, CAMERA_GRAB_LATEST - No PSRAM: SVGA max, fb_count=1, CAMERA_FB_IN_DRAM - Buffer overflow → Partial JPEG transmission

DEPLOYMENT CRITERIA:

- AI-Thinker ESP32-CAM (selected) → Production ready
- 3MB+ APP partition → No code truncation
- PSRAM validation → High resolution streaming

Integration Context: This configuration preprocessor ensures the AI-Thinker ESP32-CAM board's OV2640 camera and 4MB PSRAM are correctly mapped to the GPIO pins defined in camera_pins.h, enabling the QVGA RGB565 streaming parameters utilized in algorithm in section VI. (a). The single active model definition prevents compilation conflicts while PSRAM detection dynamically optimizes frame buffering for real-time agricultural monitoring.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSIONS

Fig. 8: Multi-purpose Agricultural Robot Prototype in Mint Field Test

The prototype demonstrates complete functionality across all subsystems in real field conditions on a mint farm, as shown in Fig. 8 deploying between mint crop rows.

Fig. 9 shows web-based IoT dashboard with Robotic arm control in Mint field and observations shown in live sensors section.

1. Live Sensors Section: This section shows real-time environmental data from sensors mounted on the robot while it moves in the field. Displayed parameters include:

- Temperature: 32.8 °C
Measures the surrounding air temperature in the farm using a temperature sensor (like DHT22).
- Humidity: 57.2 %
Shows atmospheric humidity which helps determine crop conditions.
- Soil Moisture: 3 %
Indicates the moisture level of the soil where the robot is currently positioned. This helps farmers decide whether irrigation is needed.
- Smoke:SAFE
The gas/smoke sensor checks for fire or harmful gases in the field environment. In the farm scenario, these readings help monitor crop health and environmental conditions in real time.

2. Motor Control Section: This section allows the farmer to drive the agriculture robot around the farm field. Buttons available:

- Forward → Move robot forward between crop rows
 - Backward → Move robot backward
 - Left → Turn robot left
 - Right → Turn robot right
 - STOP → Immediately stop robot movement
- Using these controls, the user can navigate the robot through the field to inspect crops or perform tasks.

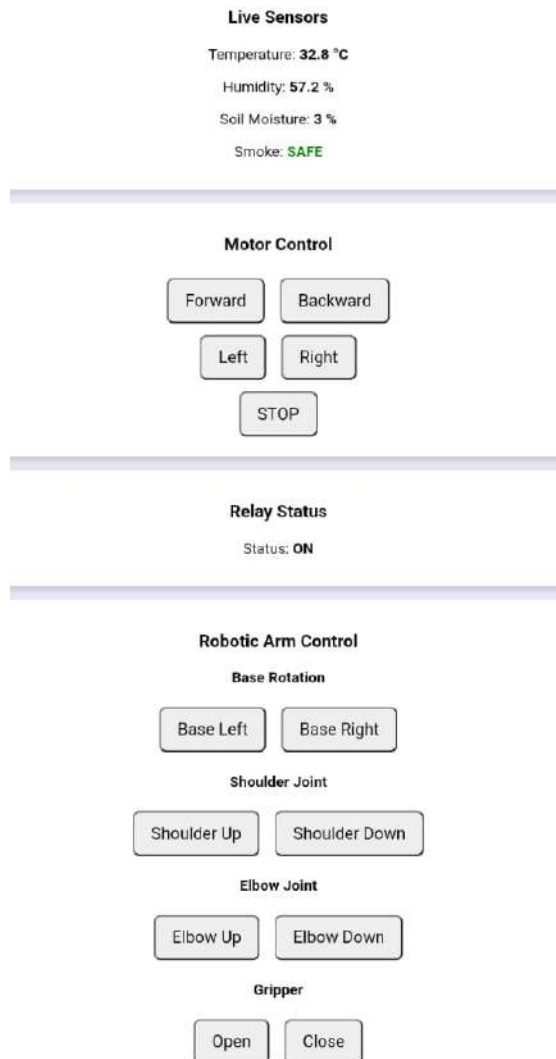


Fig. 9 Web-based IoT dashboard with Robotic arm control

3. Relay Status Section: This indicates the status of the relay module connected to farm equipment.

Status: ON- The relay can control devices such as:

- Water pumps
- Sprayers
- Fertilizer dispensers
- Lighting systems

When ON, the connected device (for example irrigation pump) is active.

4. Robotic Arm Control Section: This section controls the robotic arm mounted on the agriculture robot used for farm operations. Base Rotation

- a) Base Left → Rotates arm base left
 - b) Base Right → Rotates arm base right
- Shoulder Joint

- Shoulder Up → Lifts the arm
- Shoulder Down → Lowers the arm
- Elbow Joint
- Elbow Up → Bends the arm upward
- Elbow Down → Bends the arm downward
- Gripper
- Open → Opens the gripper
- Close → Closes the gripper

In the field, the robotic arm can be used for:

- Picking fruits or vegetables
- Removing weeds
- Planting seeds
- Handling small farming tools

Overall Function

This web-based dashboard acts as the IoT-based remote control system for the agriculture robot in the farm, enabling:

- Environmental monitoring
- Remote robot navigation
- Smart irrigation control
- Robotic arm manipulation

All of this allows a farmer to monitor and operate the robot remotely from a smartphone, making farming more efficient, automated, and smart.

CONCLUSION

This multipurpose agricultural robot successfully integrates ESP8266 IoT platform with DHT22 temperature/humidity sensors, soil moisture detection, MQ-series smoke sensing, ESP32-CAM vision system, 4-DOF robotic arm, and LM2596 buck converter-powered mobile chassis to deliver comprehensive precision farming automation.

The system addresses critical limitations in prior ESP-based agricultural platforms by combining real-time environmental monitoring, autonomous irrigation control (soil <40% moisture threshold), web-based navigation, and vision-guided weed removal through unified power management from single 11.1V LiPo battery.

Key innovations include the scalable web dashboard (Fig. 2) enabling simultaneous teleoperation and autonomous operation, 4-DOF arm kinematics for precise field manipulation, and efficient voltage regulation preventing ESP module damage during motor-intensive operations.

Future enhancements will incorporate electromagnetic sensors for soil nutrient analysis (molybdenum, phosphorous) alongside AI-based crop/weed classification on ESP32-CAM edge processing and solar power integration, establishing a complete framework for sustainable precision agriculture deployment.

References

- [1] P. Koli, S. Rajadhyaksha, S. Mapare, S. Pal, and V. Mapare, “Molybdenum Detection in Soil: Timeline of Evolving Detection Strategies for Precision Agriculture,” *Technische Sicherheit*, vol. 25, no. 5, pp. 604–612, 2025. 54-TSJ2852.pdf
- [2] S. Kukadkar, S. Mapare, S. Pal, and V. Mapare, “Modelling of Square, Spiral and Pentagonal Electromagnetic Sensor,” *Technische Sicherheit*, vol. 24, no. 10, pp. 29–34, 2024. 4-TSJ2317.pdf
- [3] S. V. Mapare and G. G. Sarate, “Phosphorous Detection in Water Using Electromagnetic Sensor,” *IOP Conference Series: Materials Science and Engineering*, vol. 225, no. 1, p. 012261, 2017. doi:10.1088/1757-899X/225/1/012261
- [4] S. Malik and T. Verma, “Development of a Microcontroller-Based Smart Irrigation Robot for Precision Farming Applications,” *International Journal of Embedded Systems and Applications*, vol. 12, no. 3, pp. 45–52, 2024.
- [5] V. Iyer et al., “Performance Metrics and Evaluation of Low-Cost Farm Automation Systems,” *Proceedings of the National Conference on Smart Agriculture*, pp. 88–93, 2024.
- [6] A. A. Singh and M. P. Dey, “OLED Integration for Real-Time Display in Smart Farming Automation,” *International Conference on Automation and Information Science*, pp. 205–210, 2023.
- [7] H. R. Banerjee and P. Choudhury, “Relay Control Mechanisms in Next-Generation Agricultural Platforms,” *Asian Journal of Robotics and Sensor Technologies*, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 60–66, 2022.

Performance of CNT-Reinforced Yttria-Stabilized Zirconia Coatings on T-91 Boiler Tube Steel in High Temperature Erosion Applications

Sandeep Kumar¹, Rakesh Bhatia², Hazoor Singh², Khushdeep Goyal³

¹Department of Mechanical Engineering, Guru Kashi University, Punjab, 151302, India

²Yadavindra Department of Engineering, Punjabi University Guru Kashi Campus, Bathinda, Punjab, 151302, India

³Department of Mechanical Engineering, Punjabi University, Patiala, Punjab, 147002, India

¹sandeep_ycoe@yahoo.com, ²rakesh.bhatia_75@yahoo.in, ²hazoors@yahoo.com,

³khushgoyal@gmail.com

Abstract—Thermal power plants which use coal as fuel are characterized by high-temperature fly ash erosion which causes significantly reduced service life of boiler tube materials. Here, the carbon nanotube (CNT) reinforced yttria-stabilized zirconia reinforced by zirconia-yttria ($\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$) composite coating were deposited by employing air plasma spray technique on the T-91 boiler tube steel, and the erosion behaviour of the coated surfaces was studied under the condition of 750degC. Coatings that were 1 wt.% and 4 wt.% of CNT were tested and compared with uncoated T-91 steel and traditional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coatings under the condition of eroding alumina particles at 30 deg and 90 deg impact angles. According to the results, there is a gradual enhancement of erosion resistance when CNT is added. The coating with 4 wt.% CNTs showed the most reduced erosion at both impact angles with a weight loss of around 1.8-2.5 times lower than the substrate without the coating and 1.5-1.6 times lower than the conventional coating. SEM analysis was used to identify that incorporation of CNTs increases the densification of coatings and inter-splat cohesion and is effective to inhibit micro-cutting and brittle fracture during erosion. The results show the possibility of CNT-reinforced ceramic coatings to increase the effectiveness of boiler components to be as durable, resource-efficient, and cost-effective, in addition to the affordable and clean energy (SDG 7), industry, innovation and infrastructure (SDG 9) and responsible consumption and production (SDG 12).

Keywords—High temperature erosion; Air-plasma-spray coating; Carbon nanotube (CNT) reinforcement; Yttria-stabilized zirconia; T-91 boiler tube steel Fly ash erosion.

i. INTRODUCTION

The conditions of coal-fired thermal power plants to which they have to withstand are attributed to a number of factors. The boiler parts such as superheaters, reheaters, economizers and boiler tubes are under constant fly ash erosion at high temperature, corrosive flue gases as well as molten ash deposits [1]. All these degradation processes act simultaneously leading to a faster material erosion, walls thinning and premature component destruction [2]. T-91 ferritic-martensitic steel is

widely deployed in the construction of boiler tubes since this material exhibits a high creep strength and oxidation resistance, however, with a negative effect when it is allowed to remain in the presence of erosive fly ash at high temperature as the material becomes highly susceptible to erosion-corrosion and hot corrosion damage resulting in frequent outages and increased maintenance costs [3], [4].

When there is movement of the fly ash particles within the flue gases that are high velocity, they strike the tubes at varying angles to create intricate erosion activities, such as micro-cutting, ploughing, splat fracture and spallation of the material [5], [6]. It has been identified in recent studies that the behaviour of erosion is very sensitive to some of the operational parameters, including temperature, the velocity of the erodent and the impact angle, and the ductile materials exhibit peak erosion behaviour at shallow angles, whereas the brittle or ceramic materials exhibit peak erosion behaviour at normal contact [7], [8]. The degradation of the surface is further exaggerated by the combined actions of erosion and high temperature oxidation under conditions of boiler-relevant conditions, and at the same time, it becomes difficult to predict the reliability of their lives and implies the usefulness of effective surface engineering procedures [9].

High-temperature protection has been of particular relevance to thermal spray ceramic coatings particularly to yttria-stabilized zirconia ($\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$) due to their excellent thermal stability, oxidation resistance, and chemical inertness [10]. Despite these advantages, the traditional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ based coating that is created through plasma spraying usually possesses natural

porosity, low inter-splat bond, and microcracks [11]. These micro structural defects help to develop cracks and separate splat boundaries during erosive loading, which leads to a continuous material loss during the stage of particle collision, especially at normal impact angles [12].

The recent findings in the sphere of ceramic composite coating proved that carbon nanotube (CNT) reinforcement could be employed in order to eliminate these drawbacks. CNTs, such as crack bridging and pore filling agent, are useful to enhance coating densification, inter-splat bonding, and cracking and suppression of microcrack propagation under the conditions of erosive and thermal loading [13], [14]. In high temperature wear and erosion applications CNT reinforced ceramic coats have been observed to be better with regard to micro-cutting and splat pull-out. However, the systematic investigation of the CNT material on the basis of the erosion behaviour at different angles of impact in the presence of the detailed analysis of the damage on the basis of SEM under the conditions of coal-fired boilers is poor.

Therefore, the proposed study is focused on the development of CNT-reinforced $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ composite coating on T-91 boiler tube steel under the condition of the air plasma spray technique and their evaluation in the conditions of high-temperature erosion. It explores the behaviour of erosion at 750 deg C and 30 deg and 90 deg impact and the mechanisms of significant causes of damage by discussing scanning electron microscopy in detail on eroded surfaces. The paper will establish that CNT reinforcement can minimize the angle-dependent erosion damages and boost the coating integrity of boilers.

- EXPERIMENTATION

- *Materials and Methods*

The substrate material used was T-91 ferritic-martensitic steel (ASTM SA213 Grade 91) because it is widely used in boiler tubes in thermal power plants that burn coal. As received boiler tubes were purchased in Banawali, Punjab, India at Talwandi Sabo Power Plant (TSPCL). Its high creep strength, resistance to oxidation and microstructural stability over high temperature and pressure make T-91 steel popular in high-temperature and high-pressure applications as boiler tubes, superheaters, and steam pipelines. Chemical analysis determined the chemical composition of the T-91 steel with optical emission spectrometer (ATOM COMP) at CITCO Testing Laboratory, Chandigarh, India, of the ASTM E415.

Table 1 has summarized the measured elemental composition. The material of the boiler tube was machined to test specimens of standard dimensions, as per ASTM G1 guidelines. Before the deposition of the coatings, all the specimens were mechanically polished and ground, and grit blasting was performed to provide the specimen with the required surface roughness, as per ISO 8501-1.

Table.1 Chemical Composition of T-91 Boiler Tube Steel

Elements	Weight %
Carbon (C)	0.1
Silicon (Si)	0.4
Manganese (Mn)	0.45
Phosphorus (P)	0.015
Sulfur (S)	0.005
Chromium (Cr)	8.5
Molybdenum (Mo)	0.95
Nickel (Ni)	0.25
Vanadium (V)	0.2
Niobium (Nb)	0.08
Nitrogen (N)	0.05
Iron (Fe)	Bal.

Sample preparation was done carefully so as to prevent thermal or mechanical change of substrate microstructure. The chemical composition of the T-91 steel measured is within the compositional limits as defined in ASTM SA213 Grade 91, which shows it is suitable to use in a high-temperature boiler tube.

- *Selection of Coatings and Coating Technique*

T-91 steel substrates were coated with carbon nanotube (CNT) reinforced yttria-stabilized zirconia ($\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$) composite allowances via the air plasma spray (APS) method. The reason why APS was chosen is because it has a broad range of industrial usage and has demonstrated itself to be able to deposit thick and adherent ceramic coating as a means of service in high temperature environments. Coatings of varying CNT contents were prepared to examine the effect of CNT reinforcement on erosion behaviour and the summary of the coating is shown in Table 2.

Table 2 Composition and characteristics of coating powders

Coating type	Composition (wt.%)	Particle size (μm)	Particle morphology
$\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$	$\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$	45 ± 10	Irregular
$\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3\text{-1 wt.\% CNT}$	99 wt.% $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ + 1 wt.% CNT	45 ± 10	Irregular
$\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3\text{-4 wt.\% CNT}$	96 wt.% $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ + 4 wt.% CNT	45 ± 10	Irregular

The deposits of the coatings were made to a thickness of between 225 and 255 μm . To make the results comparable, all the parameters of the plasma spraying were kept similar to all coating compositions. Table 3 shows the parameters of the APS process that were used when depositing the coating.

Table 3 Air plasma spray (APS) process parameters

Plasma gun	Voltage (V)	Current (A)	Primary gas flow rate (LPM)	Powder feed rate ($\text{g}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$)	Spray distance (inch)
MF-4	70	575	39	30	4

• EROSION TESTING

○ Erosion Testing at High Temperatures

Erosion tests were carried out at a high temperature using an air jet erosion test rig (Ducom, Bengaluru, India) mounted at Guru Nanak Dev Engineering College, Ludhiana, Punjab, India as shown in Fig. 1. The test facility will be made up of a high temperature furnace combined with air heating system and a specimen heater that will allow the erosion test to be carried out at high temperature conditions under controlled conditions. The erodent particles were accelerated using a nozzle and then directed onto the surface of the specimen held to the adjustable holder and erosion testing of the surface was performed at 30 deg and 90 deg of impingement.

Before the erosion testing, all the specimens were ultrasonically cleaned using acetone and dried in air. Each specimen was weighed using a precision electronic balance with the initial mass of each specimen recorded. Each of the specimens underwent erosion tests 1 h each, and then the samples were cleaned and weighed again to ascertain the mass loss. The erodent

material in the course of the experiments consisted of alumina particles that were of an average size of 50 μm .



Fig. 1. Macrograph of the air jet erosion test rig used for high-temperature erosion testing

The resistance to erosion was assessed with reference to the loss of material in the form of its loss of thickness at the end of the erosion test. Scanning electron microscopy (SEM) with energy-dispersive X-ray spectroscopy (EDAX) was additionally used in the study of the eroded surfaces and the debris collections to determine the major erosion processes. The specifics of operating conditions and test parameters used in the experiments related to air jet erosion are summarized in Table 4.

Table 4 Air Jet Erosion Testing Parameters

Parameter	Value
Erodent material	Alumina powder
Erodent particle size	50 μm
Particle velocity	35 $\text{m}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}$
Erodent feed rate	2 $\text{g}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$
Angle of impact	30° and 90°
Test temperature	600 °C
Nozzle diameter	4 mm
Testing time	1 hour

• RESULTS

○ Erosion Rate

Fig. 2. Shows the weight loss of uncoated, conventional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coated and CNT-reinforced $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coated T-91 steel specimens at high temperature in erosion at a temperature of 750 deg C under 90 deg and 30 deg impingement angles. In all specimens, erosion loss is seen to occur more at 30 deg than at 90 deg and so, erosion is predominantly ductile under shallow angle particle impingement.

The uncoated T-91 steel has the greatest weight loss at both the impact angles, which confirms that it is not resistant to high temperature fly ash erosion. The traditional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coating is applied to help minimize the erosion loss by a significant margin, which is a key role of ceramic coating in protecting against erosion circumstances. But with CNT reinforcement, even better improvement is realized. The reduction in erosion loss is proportional to the CNT content in the coating with the CNT 4 wt. % reinforcement displaying the least weight loss in both impact angles. The weight loss at 30 deg is reduced to about 2.1mg with the uncoated specimen and 1.15mg with the 4 wt. % CNT reinforced coating. The same tendency is seen at 90 deg, where the erosion loss decreases to almost 2.0 mg with the uncoated steel to about 0.8mg with the 4 wt. % CNT coating. The high erosion resistance of CNT-reinforced coating can be explained by a more effective densification of the coatings, increased inter-splat bonding, and inhibition of the microcrack propagation that minimally affect the material removal upon impact of the particles. The erosion behaviour has been observed to be consistent with other recent reports which have also found enhanced high-temperature erosion resistance of CNT- and nanoreinforced ceramic surfaces because of increased fracture toughness and splat boundary cracking resistance [15], [16], [17]. Similar angle dependent erosion trends in thermal spray coatings on boiler steels have been also reported by Grewal, Sidhu and Prakash, (2014); Kumar, Kumar and Gill, (2024) and Xiao *et al.*, (2025) in which CNTs or nano-scale reinforcement has been found to effectively reduce erosion damage under shallow and normal impact conditions.

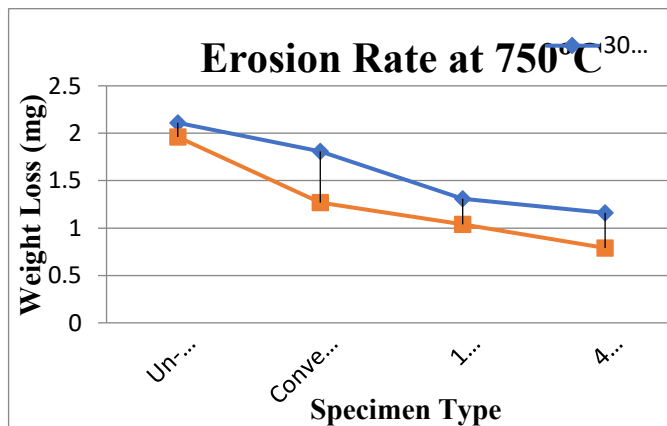


Fig. 2. Weight loss at 750 deg C for uncoated, conventional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coated, and CNT-reinforced $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coated T-91 steel specimens at impact angles of 30 deg and 90 deg.

○ SEM Analysis

SEM micrographs of eroded uncoated T-91 steel indicate that there is severe surface degradation in both impact angles. There are deep micro-cutting grooves, ploughing marks, and considerable plastic deformation at 30deg, which are the signs of a predominant ductile erosion response to the particle sliding. Similar ductile erosion patterns in boiler steels in the high temperature environment have also been noted and extreme particle-induced micro-ploughing and crack generation were found to correlate with high rate of erosion in uncoated steels [21], [22], [23], [24].

Oxide scale cracks, spallation and craterlike damage prevail at 90 deg, as is commensurate with brittle fracture that facilitates faster materials removal. High temperature thermal spray and bulk steel specimen scales Simultaneously reported similar oxide scale fracture phenomena and are also consistent with microstructure-driven fracture in steel substrates in high-temperature erosion-corrosion experiments [25], [26], [27]. The uncoated ZrO_2 - Y_2O_3 coating has a higher surface resistance to the coated substrate, but severe damage still occurs. The observed ones include partial splat pull-out, inter-splat cracking and micro-chipping at 30 deg. Such characteristics are aligned with the influence of natural porosity and microcracks of plasma-sprayed coatings as earlier mentioned [28], [29].

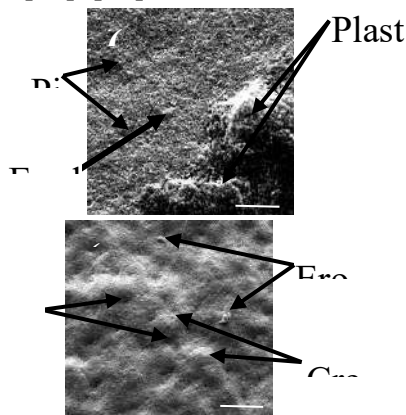
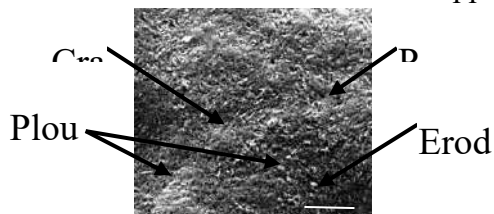


Fig. 3 SEM micrographs of eroded uncoated T-91 boiler tube steel at 750 deg C, with 30 deg and 90 deg angles

The contact between the effect of impact loading and the coating microstructure frequently leads to favorable crack tracks along weak boundaries of splats, as reported in the related thermal spray coating research [30], [31], [32]. The fractures due to the brittle splat and the coalescence of the cracks are seen at the 90 deg which is where the material loss during the normal-impact erosion is high. The limited dissipation of the impact energy in plasma-sprayed YSZ coatings and CNT free ceramic matrices in other boiler steel applications [33], [34].



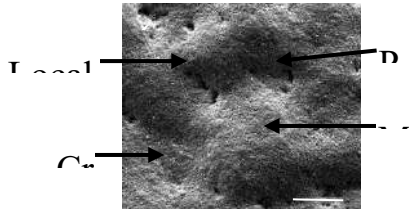


Fig. 4 SEM micrographs of eroded conventional coated T-91 boiler tube steel at 750 deg C, with 30 deg and 90 deg angles

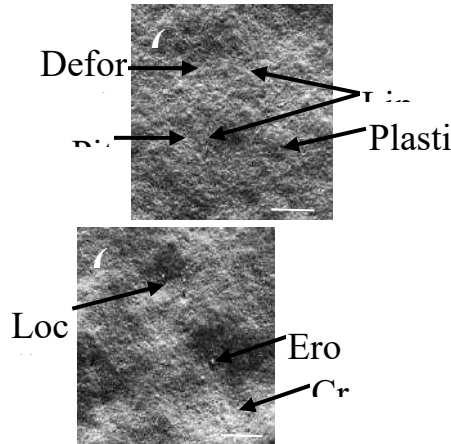


Fig. 5 SEM micrographs of eroded $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ 1 wt. % CNT coated T-91 boiler tube steel at 750 deg C, with 30 deg and 90 deg angles

There is a significant decrease in damage caused by erosion in the 1 wt.% CNT-reinforced coating. On the 30 deg surface, there is a diminished groove depth and little splat boundary cracking. CNTs enhance the inter-splat cohesion and serve as the crack bridges, which limit the crack propagation and its repeated impacts. Other CNT-related CNT-reinforced thermal spray coating has been found to have similar microstructural toughening effects on steel substrates [35], [36].

At 90 degrees isolated microcracks and minor chipping is predominant; pointing to enhanced mechanical integrity. This is in agreement with the previously reported study that revealed that CNT reinforcement enhanced fracture resistance of ceramic composite coatings during high temperature erosion [37], [38].

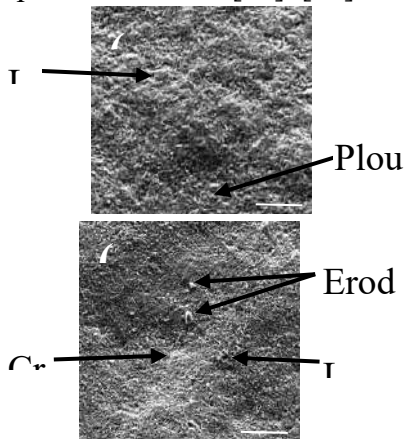


Fig. 6 SEM micrographs of eroded $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ -4 wt. % CNT coated T-91 boiler tube steel at 750 deg C, with 30 deg and 90 deg angles

The coating with the 4 wt. % CNT has the least erosion damage of all the specimens. There is very little material loss at 30 deg and very shallow grooves of erosion, showing that the microstructure of the coating is densely cohesive and has a good distribution of loads over splats. Also, the CNTs, which fill the micro-pores and reinforce the splat boundaries, significantly improve the resistance to erosion attack. This is in line with other recent studies carried out on nano-reinforced coating where higher reinforcement content conferred even higher erosion resistance [39], [40].

The 90 deg brittle fracture and minimal crack formation was observed, which is associated with a higher level of resistance to normal-impact erosion, are justified by the existence of an improved microstructural stability provided by the higher CNT content [41], [42].

• **DISCUSSION**

The measured trends in erosion at 750 deg C are highly dependent on the impact angle, integrity of microstructures and the existence of CNTs in the coating. The erosion loss at 30 deg is always higher, which is evidence of a predominant ductile erosion process in shallow-angle [43]. In recent literature, similar angle-dependent responses to erosion have been similarly noted in both bulk boiler and thermal spray materials.

Uncoated T-91 steel is subjected to severe micro-cutting and oxide scale fracture, which are some of the factors that contribute to high erosion loss. This trend correlates with other similar studies that indicate considerable microstructural degradation and micro-ploughing in uncoated steels that are exposed to both erosion and high-temperature oxidation [44].

Despite the protection the conventional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ coating offers against the uncoated substrate, its porosity and poor splat interfaces, which give it its inherent characteristics, facilitate the initiation of cracks and brittle fracture during repeated impact. The thresholds of these microstructural weaknesses have been accentuated in the plasma-sprayed ceramic coatings in the application of boilers where reinforcement is absent to restrict the long-term erosion capabilities. CNT reinforcement is of great help in erosion resistance due to the high level of coating density, better inter-splat cohesion, and crack propagation barrier during impact. These performance enhancers are further reinforced by the higher content of CNT (4 wt.%). Similar reinforcement effects have been shown by other researchers in related CNT-provided thermal spray coatings, in which improvements in the fracture toughness and energy absorption were shown to lead to lower erosion rates [45], [46].

• **CONCLUSIONS**

- CNT-reinforced $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ Coatings CNT-coats on T-91 boiler tube steel were deposited by air plasma sprayed and tested in high temperature erosion conditions.
- Uncoated T-91 steel experienced extreme erosion and traditional $\text{ZrO}_2\text{-Y}_2\text{O}_3$ surface gave partial protection.
- The CNT addition was found to make a considerable enhancement in the erosion resistance of the materials at 30deg and 90deg impact angle and the resistance performance was improved with the CNT addition.

- There was least erosion loss with 4 wt.% CNT-reinforced coating with an improvement of approximately 1.8-2.5 times over uncoated steel and 1.5-1.6 times over conventional coating.
- The SEM analysis was able to verify the presence of better densification of the coating, higher inter-splat cohesion and prevention of micro-cutting and interstitial fracture as a result of CNT reinforcement.
- The findings reveal the appropriateness of CNT-reinforced ceramic coatings in a high temperature boiler.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors establish that no external funds were used in this research. The infrastructural and academic assistance which is being given by the affiliated institution is highly valued.

REFERENCES

- [1] S. K. Das, K. M. Godiwalla, S. P. Mehrotra, K. K. M. Sastry, and P. K. Dey, "Analytical model for erosion behaviour of impacted fly-ash particles on coal-fired boiler components," *Sadhana*, vol. 31, no. 5, pp. 583–595, 2006, doi: 10.1007/BF02715915.
- [2] P. Rao and L. Mulky, "Erosion-Corrosion of Materials in Industrial Equipment: A Review," *ChemElectroChem*, vol. 10, no. 16, p. e202300152, 2023.
- [3] P. Roshith, "Enhancement of air oxidation and hot corrosion resistance of high-temperature municipal waste incinerators and coal-fired power plants metallic walls: a review," *Can. Metall. Q.*, vol. 64, no. 2, pp. 498–526, 2025.
- [4] H. Sonawan, M. R. Hermawan, and A. Nugroho, "Study of Erosion Shield Failure in Powerplant Steam Generator," in *Journal of Physics: Conference Series*, IOP Publishing, 2025, p. 12064.
- [5] K. Kumar, S. Kumar, and H. S. Gill, "High-Temperature erosion–corrosion performance of plasma and High-Velocity Oxy-Fuel sprayed TiC and TiN enriched Ni-20Cr coatings in an actual boiler environment," *J. Mater. Eng. Perform.*, vol. 34, no. 16, pp. 17900–17914, 2025.
- [6] A. S. Yadav and S. B. Mishra, "Comparison on erosion performance of HVOF sprayed NiCrSiBCFe-WC-Co and NiCrSiBCFe-Cr3C2NiCr coatings," *Tribol. Surfaces Interfaces*, vol. 18, no. 3, pp. 197–214, 2024.
- [7] O. Adekanye, "Particle Impact Erosion of the Magnetite Passivation Layer on A106C Steel," 2025.
- [8] M. T. Abdu, W. Khalifa, and M. S. Abdelrahman, "Investigation of erosion-corrosion failure of API X52 carbon steel pipeline," *Sci. Rep.*, vol. 13, no. 1, p. 20494, 2023.
- [9] S. Das, S. Hegde, P. Dey, and s. P. Mehrotra, "Erosion-Oxidation Response of Boiler Grade Steels: A Mathematical Investigation," *Res. Lett. Mater. Sci.*, vol. 2008, Jan. 2008, doi: 10.1155/2008/542161.
- [10] S. Kumar, R. Bhatia, H. Singh, and R. L. Viridi, "Microstructural and mechanical properties of CNT-reinforced ZrO₂-Y₂O₃ coated boiler tube steel T-91," *J. Electrochem. Sci. Eng.*, vol. 12, no. 5, pp. 877–888, 2022.

- [11] S. Karthikeyan, V. Balasubramanian, and R. Rajendran, “Developing empirical relationships to estimate porosity and microhardness of plasma-sprayed YSZ coatings,” *Ceram. Int.*, vol. 40, pp. 3171–3183, Mar. 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.ceramint.2013.09.125.
- [12] V. Ashokan, V. Gaurav, S. P. K. Babu, M. Murali, and S. Manivannan, “Microstructure evolution and erosion behaviour of thermally sprayed AlCoCrNiMo0.1 high entropy alloy coating,” *Ceram. Int.*, vol. 49, no. 19, pp. 32331–32336, 2023.
- [13] X. Xie, “Manufacturing and characterization of Al matrix composites with nano reinforcements via cold spraying,” 2019, *Université Bourgogne Franche-Comté*.
- [14] J. Gonzalez-Julian, “Processing of MAX phases: From synthesis to applications,” *J. Am. Ceram. Soc.*, vol. 104, no. 2, pp. 659–690, 2021.
- [15] K. Manjunatha, G. Giridhara, and D. Shivalingappa, “High temperature erosion behaviour of high-velocity oxy-fuel sprayed CNT/NiCr-Cr3C2 composite coatings,” *Surf. Coatings Technol.*, vol. 448, p. 128900, 2022.
- [16] A. Madhankumar and A. Xavier, “Graphene reinforced ceramic matrix composite (GRCMC)—state of the art,” *Eng. Res. Express*, vol. 6, no. 2, p. 22503, 2024.
- [17] K. Balázs, A. Almansoori, and C. Balázs, “Superior ceramics: graphene and carbon nanotube (CNT) reinforcements,” *Ceramics*, vol. 7, no. 4, pp. 1758–1778, 2024.
- [18] J. Grewal, B. Sidhu, and Satya Prakash, “High Temperature Erosion Performance of Nanostructured and Conventional TiAlN Coatings on AISI-304 Boiler Steel Substrate,” *Trans. Indian Inst. Met.*, vol. 67, Dec. 2014, doi: 10.1007/s12666-014-0413-8.
- [19] K. Kumar, S. Kumar, and H. S. Gill, “Role of Carbide-Based Thermal-Sprayed Coatings to Prevent Failure for Boiler Steels: A Review,” *J. Fail. Anal. Prev.*, vol. 24, no. 4, pp. 1628–1663, 2024.
- [20] N. Xiao *et al.*, “Current research on the design, properties and applications of tribological materials: a review,” *RSC Adv.*, vol. 15, no. 41, pp. 34669–34717, 2025.
- [21] R. Kumar, R. Singh, and S. Kumar, “Erosion and hot corrosion phenomena in thermal power plant and their preventive methods: a study,” *Asian Rev. Mech. Eng.*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 38–45, 2018.
- [22] P. Singh and P. Kumar, “An Overview of the Effects of Severe Plastic Deformation Processes on High-Temperature Erosion of Thermally Sprayed Coatings,” *Therm. Spray Coatings High-Temperature Cond.*, pp. 65–91.
- [23] J. Singh, V. Sharma, and A. Singh, “Study on Abrasive Coal-Slurry Flow and Erosion Wear of NiCrBSiCoFeWC HVOF Coating for Coal-Conveying Slurry Pumps Using Machine Learning Approach,” *Int. J. Coal Prep. Util.*, pp. 1–34, 2025.
- [24] J. Alqallaf, N. Ali, J. A. Teixeira, and A. Addali, “Solid particle erosion behaviour and protective coatings for gas turbine compressor blades—A review,” *Processes*, vol. 8, no. 8, p. 984, 2020.
- [25] E. Sadeghi, N. Markocsan, and S. Joshi, “Advances in corrosion-resistant thermal spray coatings for renewable energy power plants. Part I: Effect of composition and microstructure,” *J. Therm. Spray Technol.*, vol. 28, no. 8, pp. 1749–1788, 2019.

- [26] G. Bolelli, A. Candeli, H. Koivuluoto, L. Lusvarghi, T. Manfredini, and P. Vuoristo, "Microstructure-based thermo-mechanical modelling of thermal spray coatings," *Mater. Des.*, vol. 73, May 2015, doi: 10.1016/j.matdes.2015.02.014.
- [27] P. Poza and M. Á. Garrido-Maneiro, "Cold-sprayed coatings: Microstructure, mechanical properties, and wear behaviour," *Prog. Mater. Sci.*, vol. 123, p. 100839, 2022.
- [28] R. Sobhanverdi and A. Akbari, "Porosity and microstructural features of plasma sprayed Yttria stabilized Zirconia thermal barrier coatings," *Ceram. Int.*, vol. 41, no. 10, pp. 14517–14528, 2015.
- [29] J. G. Odhiambo, W. Li, Y. Zhao, and C. Li, "Porosity and its significance in plasma-sprayed coatings," *Coatings*, vol. 9, no. 7, p. 460, 2019.
- [30] D. Qadir, R. Sharif, R. Nasir, A. Awad, and H. A. Mannan, "A review on coatings through thermal spraying," *Chem. Pap.*, vol. 78, no. 1, pp. 71–91, 2024.
- [31] S. J. Zhang, X. P. Zhu, J. R. Yuan, and M. K. Lei, "Accumulative damages of thermally sprayed cemented carbide coatings under repetitive heavy-load impacts," *J. Therm. Spray Technol.*, vol. 33, no. 1, pp. 275–289, 2024.
- [32] S. J. Zhang, X. P. Zhu, J. R. Yuan, and M. K. Lei, "Impact resistance of thick WC-Ni-coated steel components by thermal spray," *J. Therm. Spray Technol.*, vol. 32, no. 6, pp. 1796–1810, 2023.
- [33] P. Raj R, T. Duraisamy, A. V Suresh, D. N. P, and A. Roy, "Experimental investigation of erosion behavior of WC-10Ni5Cr coatings on 35CrMo steel under solid particle impact at oblique and normal angles," *J. Adhes. Sci. Technol.*, pp. 1–17, 2025.
- [34] R. Sathiyamoorthy, T. Duraisamy, and A. Mohankumar, "HVOF-Sprayed Silicon Carbide-Enhanced TiO₂ Cermet Coatings for Titanium Alloys: A Study on Solid Particle Erosion Behavior," *Silicon*, vol. 17, no. 14, pp. 3333–3354, 2025.
- [35] S. G. Sapate *et al.*, "Effect of coating thickness on the slurry erosion resistance of HVOF-sprayed WC-10Co-4Cr coatings," *J. Therm. Spray Technol.*, vol. 30, no. 5, pp. 1365–1379, 2021.
- [36] C. Kang and M. Sakaguchi, "Interfacial Bonding and Residual Stress of Single Splats on Solid Substrates: A," 2025.
- [37] V. Bonu and H. C. Barshilia, "High-temperature solid particle erosion of aerospace components: its mitigation using advanced nanostructured coating technologies," *Coatings*, vol. 12, no. 12, p. 1979, 2022.
- [38] A. Gupta, A. Pattanayak, N. V Abhijith, D. Kumar, V. Chaudhry, and S. Mohan, "Development of alumina-based hybrid composite coatings for high temperature erosive and corrosive environments," *Ceram. Int.*, vol. 49, no. 1, pp. 862–874, 2023.
- [39] S. Kumar, R. Bhatia, and H. Singh, "Hot corrosion behaviour of CNT-reinforced ZrO₂-Y₂O₃ composite coatings on boiler tube steel at 900 C," *Anti-Corrosion Methods Mater.*, vol. 68, no. 6, pp. 503–515, 2021.
- [40] S. Singh, K. Goyal, and R. Bhatia, "Effect of nano yttria-stabilized zirconia on properties of Ni-20Cr composite coatings," *J. Electrochem. Sci. Eng.*, vol. 12, no. 5, pp. 901–909, 2022.

- [41] L.-X. Cai, Y. Li, S.-S. Wang, Y. He, F. Li, and Z.-K. Liu, "Investigation of the erosion damage mechanism and erosion prediction of boronized coatings at elevated temperatures," *Materials (Basel)*, vol. 14, no. 1, p. 123, 2020.
- [42] G. Prashar and H. Vasudev, "Structure-property correlation and high-temperature erosion performance of Inconel625-Al₂O₃ plasma-sprayed bimodal composite coatings," *Surf. Coatings Technol.*, vol. 439, p. 128450, 2022.
- [43] A. Tkhabisimov, A. Mednikov, and O. Zilova, "Studies of the solid particle erosion resistance of 30 L steel with different types of surface modification," *Metals (Basel)*, vol. 13, no. 12, p. 1978, 2023.
- [44] M. Antonov *et al.*, "Effect of oxidation on erosive wear behaviour of boiler steels," *Tribol. Int.*, vol. 68, pp. 35–44, Dec. 2013, doi: 10.1016/j.triboint.2012.09.011.
- [45] A. Bansal *et al.*, "Erosive wear behaviour of HVOF-sprayed Ni-20Cr₂O₃ coating on pipeline materials," *Int. J. Refract. Met. Hard Mater.*, vol. 92, p. 105332, 2020.
- [46] J. Lauzuardy *et al.*, "Microstructure Characteristics of Cr₃C₂-NiCr Coatings Deposited with the High-Velocity Oxy-Fuel Thermal-Spray Technique," *Mater. Technol.*, vol. 58, no. 2, pp. 137–145, 2024.

Scratch Testing Performance of Cr₃C₂-35(NiCr) Cold Spray Coated H13 tool steel

Sanjeev Kumar¹, Sanjeev Bhandari², Manpreet Kaur³

¹Mechanical Engineering Department,
IKGPTU Kapurthala, Punjab, India

³Mechanical Engineering
Department, BBSBEC Fatehgarh Sahib,
Punjab, India

¹sanjeevgoldy3@gmail.com

²BBSBEC Fatehgarh
Sahib, Punjab, India

²sanjeevbhandari2007@gmail.com

Abstract— The hot-forming dies are subjected to high contact pressures and high temperatures. The main cause of die failure is wear and friction between the die and the workpiece. It affects the efficiency of the process and the cost-effectiveness by shortening the lifespan of dies. To increase the life of dies in the hot-forming industry, it has become essential to combat wear. In the current investigation, Cr₃C₂-35(NiCr) coatings were deposited on H13 die steel substrates using the Cold Spray (CS) technique, and their adhesion and mechanical integrity were evaluated through progressive and constant load scratch testing. The coatings exhibited a dense microstructure with uniform carbide distribution and minimal porosity 0.04 %, resulting from the solid-state deposition mechanism that prevents melting and oxidation. Microscopic analysis of scratch tracks confirmed brittle-semibrittle failure mechanisms, dominated by edge cracking, wedge spallation, and interfacial decohesion at higher loads. The measured hardness (HV_{0.5} ≈ 840) for heat treated (HT) coated samples and strong interfacial bonding were directly correlated with the observed scratch resistance. These findings demonstrate that cold-sprayed Cr₃C₂-35(NiCr) coatings provide excellent adhesion and durability on H13 steel, underscoring their suitability for die and mould applications subjected to severe wear, thermal cycling, and mechanical stresses.

Keywords— heat treatment, cold spray (CS), scratch testing, coefficient of friction (CoF), penetration depth

I. INTRODUCTION

Thermally sprayed Chromium carbide-based coatings are widely used for wear protection in industrial applications which include the protection of valves, forming tools, and turbine blades for power generation, shaft necks, pump impellers, bodies, slide bearings, sleeves, transport rollers, heat exchangers, guides and power hydraulic elements, e.g. plungers, actuators, piston rods, valves [1,2]. Scratch testing is a widely used technique to evaluate the adhesion, cohesion, and mechanical integrity of protective coatings deposited on various substrates. It provides valuable

insights into the resistance of a coating against localized mechanical loading and the critical load at which coating failure initiates[3]. In scratch test, a hard indenter (commonly a Rockwell C diamond stylus) is drawn across the surface of the test specimen. The applied load is progressively increased or constantly applied until failure events such as cracking, chipping, spallation, or complete delamination of the coating are observed. These failure events are characterized by critical loads (L_c), which serve as a measure of the coating's adhesion strength and durability under mechanical stress. Scratch testing is considered a reliable characterization technique due to its reproducibility. For thermally sprayed coatings, CS coatings, and cold spray additive manufactured (CSAM) deposits, it is primarily employed to assess inter-splat bonding strength. Poza et al.[4] confirmed that the CS has emerged as a promising solid-state deposition technique, enabling coating formation below particle melting temperature and producing properties close to those of bulk materials. Guo et al.[5] explained that CS is a supersonic solid-state deposition technique that has evolved significantly over the past three decades, driven by key innovations in process design and material capability. Holmberg et al.[6,7] depicted an overview of sliding contact mechanisms. The authors presented the tribology of contact involving surfaces in relative motion as a process with certain input and output data. Optimal surface design in terms of friction and wear can be achieved through advanced multilayer coating strategies, which offer benefits such as reduced residual stresses, enhanced substrate adhesion, greater coating flexibility, and improved surface hardness and smoothness. Bhushan et al.[8] studied the nanoindentation, microscratch, friction and wear studies of coatings for contact recording applications. A hard coating on a softer substrate can decrease friction and wear by preventing ploughing. Jahanmir et al.[9] studied the tribological characteristics of synthesized diamond films on silicon carbide and noticed that particle entrapment, embedding, hiding and crushing represent typical contact conditions in which debris were involved. Vinay et al.[10] in their investigation found that under constant loading conditions, the indenter was traversed across the surface with a normal load of 40 N over a scratch distance of 4 mm. The as-received (AR) deposit exhibited the lowest CoF (~ 0.19) among all samples. In contrast, among the heat-treated powder deposits, S3HT NAB demonstrated the highest CoF (~ 0.43), whereas S2HT NAB showed the lowest (~ 0.25). A similar trend was observed in the progressive load tests, where the normal load was increased at a rate of 20 N/mm over a distance of 4 mm, reaching a maximum of 100 N. In this mode, the indenter penetrates deeper into the coating, thereby providing a more reliable indication of the inter-splat bonding characteristics of the deposits. The tangential force generated due to the indenter's motion is simultaneously measured, and the ratio of this tangential force to the applied normal load is defined as the CoF of the material. Sanjeev et al.[11-13] presented the scratch testing performance of D-gun sprayed WC-10Co-4Cr and Al_2O_3 coatings on CA6NM steel was evaluated to assess their mechanical properties. Microstructural analysis, microhardness, and scratch tests revealed that Al_2O_3 coatings exhibited lower CoF, while WC-10Co-4Cr coatings showed higher apparent scratch hardness. Surface observations indicated microcracking and pull-outs, with Al_2O_3 coatings showing more fractured regions along the scratch track edges. Scratch testing not only evaluates coating-substrate adhesion but also provides information on mechanical properties such as

hardness, elasticity, and fracture resistance. Microscopic and spectroscopic analyses (e.g., optical microscopy, SEM, or acoustic emission monitoring) are often employed in conjunction with the test to identify failure mechanisms and correlate them with coating microstructure and deposition parameters. The technique is particularly important for advanced coatings, including hard ceramic coatings, thermal barrier coatings, and wear- or corrosion-resistant layers used in automotive, aerospace, and tooling applications. Since coatings are often subjected to mechanical contact, abrasion, or impact during service, scratch testing offers a practical method for predicting their performance and reliability in real-world environments[14].

In the current investigation, scratch testing was employed to evaluate the adhesion and mechanical integrity of $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-}35(\text{NiCr})$ coatings deposited on H13 die steel substrates using the CS process. Prior to coating deposition, the H13 die steel substrate was subjected to heat treatment in order to enhance its mechanical properties, particularly hardness. The treatment resulted in a significant increase in substrate hardness, reaching

59–60 HRC. This improvement is critical for die steel applications, as higher hardness not only improves resistance to plastic deformation under load but also provides a stronger support for the subsequently deposited coating. A hardened substrate minimizes the risk of coating failure due to substrate indentation or plastic flow during service, thereby improving the overall durability and performance of the coated system. This method enabled the determination of critical loads corresponding to distinct coating failure events such as microcracking, spallation, and delamination.

The $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-}35(\text{NiCr})$ cermet coating, produced by CS, exhibits unique microstructural features owing to the absence of melting during deposition, which preserves the feedstock phases and minimizes oxidation. Consequently, the scratch response provides valuable insight into the interfacial bonding between the coating and H13 substrate, as well as the cohesive strength within the coating itself.

Post-test surface analysis using optical microscopy and scanning electron microscopy (SEM) was employed to characterize the failure mechanisms along the scratch track. The observed failure modes were correlated with microstructural characteristics such as carbide distribution, particle-particle bonding, and interfacial integrity. The critical load values obtained from scratch testing serve as a quantitative measure of coating adhesion strength, which is essential for assessing the reliability of such coatings in tooling applications where high wear, thermal, and mechanical loads are encountered. The findings demonstrate that scratch testing is an effective technique to assess the adhesion and durability of CS $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-}35(\text{NiCr})$ coatings on H13 die steel, providing a direct link between deposition parameters, microstructural evolution, and coating performance under service-like mechanical stresses.

Scratch testing is recognized as one of the most reliable techniques for evaluating the mechanical integrity of coatings due to its repeatability, reproducibility, and sensitivity to coating–substrate interactions. In thermal spray technologies, including plasma spraying, high velocity

oxy-fuel (HVOF), CS, and CSAM, scratch testing has been extensively employed to assess inter-splat bonding and interfacial adhesion strength. Unlike conventional adhesion tests such as pull-off or indentation methods, which often provide only average adhesion values, scratch testing enables the detection of localized failure events, including cracking, chipping, and delamination, under progressive loading. The critical load obtained from this test provides a quantitative measure of coating adhesion and cohesion, reflecting both the intrinsic bonding between splats and the overall structural integrity of the coating system. Owing to its ability to correlate failure modes with microstructural features, scratch testing is increasingly regarded as a standard approach for assessing adhesion performance in advanced thermal spray and CS coatings.

II. Experimental Procedure

A. Substrate and Coating Deposition

H13 hot-work tool steel ($50 \times 20 \times 5$ mm) with heat treatment (HT) and without heat treatment was selected as the substrate material due to its widespread application in die and mould industries. With heat treatment the hardness of H13 tool steel was increased to 59-60 HRC. Prior to coating, the substrates were grit-blasted with alumina particles (mesh size ~ 50 μm) at a pressure of 0.6 MPa to achieve an average surface roughness of $R_a \approx 4\text{--}5$ μm , which facilitated mechanical interlocking of the coating.

The current investigation uses $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-NiCr}$ (65-35%) dual core shell cermet powder. The dual-core shell cermet powder $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-35(NiCr)}$ is an advanced thermal spray feedstock designed for high-performance coating applications. It consists of 65% chromium carbide (Cr_3C_2), which provides excellent wear resistance, and 35% nickel-chromium (NiCr) alloy, which offers corrosion resistance and toughness. The dual-core shell structure ensures uniform distribution of the carbide and metal phases, improving coating density, adhesion, and performance consistency. The powder is purchased from the Vedayukt India Pvt.Ltd., Jharkhand, India. The $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-35(NiCr)}$ feedstock powder (particle size range $15\text{--}45$ μm , purity $>99\%$) as shown in Table I was deposited using a high-pressure CS system (supersonic nozzle, N_2 as carrier gas, pressure 4 MPa, gas temperature 900°C). The feed rate was maintained at 25 g/min and the standoff distance at 20 mm. The resultant coating thickness after deposition was approximately 90.58 ± 4.52 μm .

TABLE I
CHARACTERISTICS OF Cr₃C₂-NiCr (65-35 %) CORE SHELL CERMET POWDERS

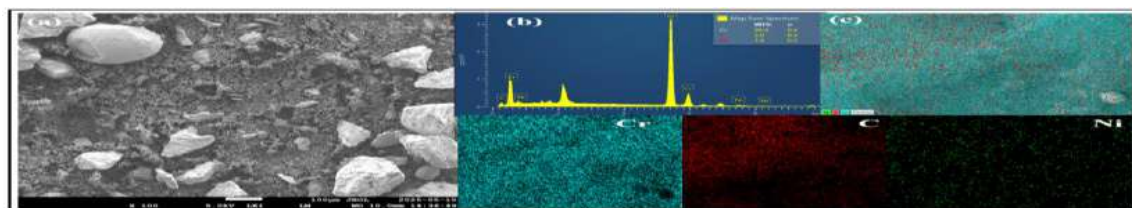


Fig. 1 (a) SEM Morphology of Cr₃C₂-35(NiCr) Powder (b) EDS analysis (c) Element Mapping

Experiments were carried out to analyse the Bulk Density Measurement using the Hall Flow Meter as shown in Table II (as per ISO 4490 , ASTM B212 and ASTM B213 standard), but

Powder	Chemical Composition (wt %)	Morphology	Make	Particle Shape	Powder Size	Purity
Cr ₃ C ₂ -35(NiCr)	Cr ₃ C ₂ -65 % NiCr-35 %	Agglomerated and Sintered	Vedayukt India Pvt.Ltd.	Core Shell Cermet Powders	40-50 μm	99 %
Powder	Chemical Composition (wt %)	Morphology	Make	Particle Shape	Powder Size	Purity
Cr ₃ C ₂ -35(NiCr)	Cr ₃ C ₂ -65 % NiCr-35 %	Agglomerated and Sintered	Vedayukt India Pvt.Ltd.	Core Shell Cermet Powders	40-50 μm	99 %

the powder did not pass through the orifice due to cohesiveness. Tapped Bulk Density (as per ASTM B527, USP and EP 7.0) means packing density after vibration/tapping (shows maximum possible packing).The effect of high tapped density indicates powders can be compacted tightly which leads to denser deposits after spraying and higher hardness and better scratch resistance.Large difference between loose and tapped density means poor flowability, non-uniform deposition and heterogeneous coating quality, more prone to localized failure during scratch testing.As shown in the table Hausner Ratio of the Cr₃C₂-35(NiCr) double core shell cermet powder was 1.19 indicating fair flowability as per the flow chart.Fair flowability (low Hausner Ratio) ensures consistent powder feeding during deposition and uniform coating thickness with

fewer defects which leads to higher scratch critical load. Powders with low density, high Hausner ratio form porous, weakly bonded coatings which can cause premature cracking, spallation, and coating failure during scratch testing[16-17].

$$\text{Loose Poured Bulk Density } (\rho_b) = \frac{\text{Sample Weight only in cup (in grams)}}{\text{Volume of sample in cup (in ml)}} \times 1000, (\text{kg/m}^3)$$

$$\text{Tapped Bulk Density } (\rho_t) = \frac{\text{Sample weight only in 100 ml cylinder (in grams)}}{\text{Volume of sample in cylinder after 1250 tappings (in ml)}} \times 1000, (\text{kg/m}^3)$$

$$\text{Hausner Ratio (HR)} = \frac{\text{Tapped Density } (\rho_t)}{\text{Loose Poured Bulk Density } (\rho_b)}$$

Powder	Loose Poured Bulk Density (ρ_b), kg/m ³	Tapped Bulk Density (ρ_t), kg/m ³	Hausner Ratio (HR)
Cr ₃ C ₂ -35(NiCr)	2000	2396	1.19

Table II
CHARACTERIZATION OF Cr₃C₂-35(NiCr) DUAL CORE SHEEL CERMET POWDER

B. Scratch Testing Machine (TR 101)



Fig.2 Scratch Testing Machine

Scratch adhesion testing was performed using a scratch tester TR 101(Figure 2) supplied by DUCOM equipped with a Rockwell C diamond indenter of 200 μm tip radius. The indenter was drawn across the coated and uncoated surface under a constant load (50 N and 200 N) and progressive load ranging from 10-100 N and 100-200 N over a scratch length of 5 mm at a loading rate of 20 N/min. The scratching speed was 0.1 and 0.4 mm/sec (Table III) and Taguchi L4 (Table IV) factorial experiment was conducted to test the coated and uncoated specimens.

Table III

The parameters utilized in this experiment, together with their corresponding values at each level

Parameters	Levels	
	I	II
Constant Load (N)	50	200
Scratch Speed (mm/s)	0.1	0.4
Ramp Load (N)	10-100	100-200
Parameters	Levels	
	I	II
Constant Load (N)	50	200
Scratch Speed (mm/s)	0.1	0.4
Ramp Load (N)	10-100	100-200

Parameters	Levels	
	I	II
Constant Load (N)	50	200
Scratch Speed (mm/s)	0.1	0.4
Ramp Load (N)	10-100	100-200

Table IV

Selected L4 experimental strategy

Table V

	Levels of parameters and their respective values		
	Constant Load	Scratch Velocity	Ramp Load
1	I	I	I
2	II	II	I
3	I	II	II
4	II	I	II

Observed values of Scratch Width and scratch penetration depth at different loads

Load (N)	H13 Coated		H13 Uncoated		H13 (HT) Coated		H13 (HT) Uncoated	
	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)
50	232	-42.50	253	-120.50	263	-37.00	143	-90.50
20-120	615	-64.50	488	-135.50	495	-55.50	322	-110.00
200	308	-70.50	360	-180.00	248	-62.50	211	-190.00
100-200	498	-72.00	469	-240.50	526	-70.50	308	-210.00

III. Results and Discussion

A. Scratch Test Response

The Figure 3 shows the variation of CoF with load (50 N) for the Cr_3C_2 -35NiCr-coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples, with and without heat treatment, demonstrates the influence of coating and thermal processing on tribological behavior. The coated H13 steel exhibited a CoF of 0.24, representing a reduction of about 23% compared to the uncoated sample (0.31), confirming the beneficial role of the Cr_3C_2 -35NiCr layer in lowering friction. For the heat-treated (HT) samples, the coated steel showed a slightly higher CoF of 0.26, an increase of ~8% relative to the non-heat-treated coated condition, indicating that heat treatment marginally alters the coating's frictional response. Notably, the uncoated heat-treated H13 substrate displayed the lowest CoF of 0.19, which is a 39% reduction compared to the uncoated non-heat-treated sample and 27% lower than the coated non-HT condition. These findings suggest that while coating reduces friction compared to the as-received steel, heat treatment significantly enhances the surface properties of uncoated H13, providing superior frictional performance under the tested conditions.

The CoF as a function of ramp load (20–120 N) for the Cr_3C_2 –35NiCr-coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples, with and without heat treatment, reveals clear distinctions in tribological performance. The coated H13 steel exhibited a CoF of 0.28, which is lower than that of the uncoated counterpart (0.33), indicating a friction reduction of about 15% due to the coating. For the heat-treated (HT) samples, the coated steel showed a CoF of 0.26, slightly lower than the non-HT coated condition, reflecting a modest improvement of ~7%. The uncoated heat-treated H13 substrate demonstrated the lowest CoF of 0.21, which represents a 36% reduction compared to the uncoated non-HT sample and a 25% decrease relative to the coated non-HT condition. These results highlight that while the Cr_3C_2 –35NiCr coating improves the frictional response of H13 steel under ramp loading, heat treatment of the uncoated substrate provides the most significant enhancement in lowering CoF.

The coefficient of friction (CoF) measured at a constant load of 200 N for Cr_3C_2 –35(NiCr)-coated and uncoated H13 tool steel, with and without heat treatment, indicates minimal variation across the different conditions. The coated H13 exhibited a CoF of 0.19, closely matching the uncoated sample at 0.18, suggesting that at higher constant loads, the coating provides limited additional friction reduction. Similarly, for the heat-treated (HT) samples, the coated and uncoated substrates showed CoF values of 0.19 and 0.17, respectively. Overall, the results indicate that at a high constant load of 200 N, the differences in CoF between coated and uncoated, as well as heat-treated and non-heat-treated H13 steel, are marginal, implying that load dominates the tribological response under these conditions, and the influence of coating or heat treatment is less pronounced.

The CoF under a ramp load of 100–200 N for Cr_3C_2 –35NiCr-coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples, with and without heat treatment, exhibits relatively minor variations. The coated H13 sample showed a CoF of 0.27, slightly lower than the uncoated sample at 0.28, indicating only a marginal reduction in friction due to the coating. Similarly, for the heat-treated (HT) samples, the coated steel maintained a CoF of 0.27, while the uncoated HT substrate displayed the lowest value of 0.25, reflecting a modest improvement of ~11% relative to the uncoated non-HT condition. These results suggest that under higher ramp loading, the influence of coating on friction is limited, while heat treatment of the substrate offers a small but noticeable enhancement in reducing CoF, highlighting the dominant role of load in controlling tribological behavior under these conditions.

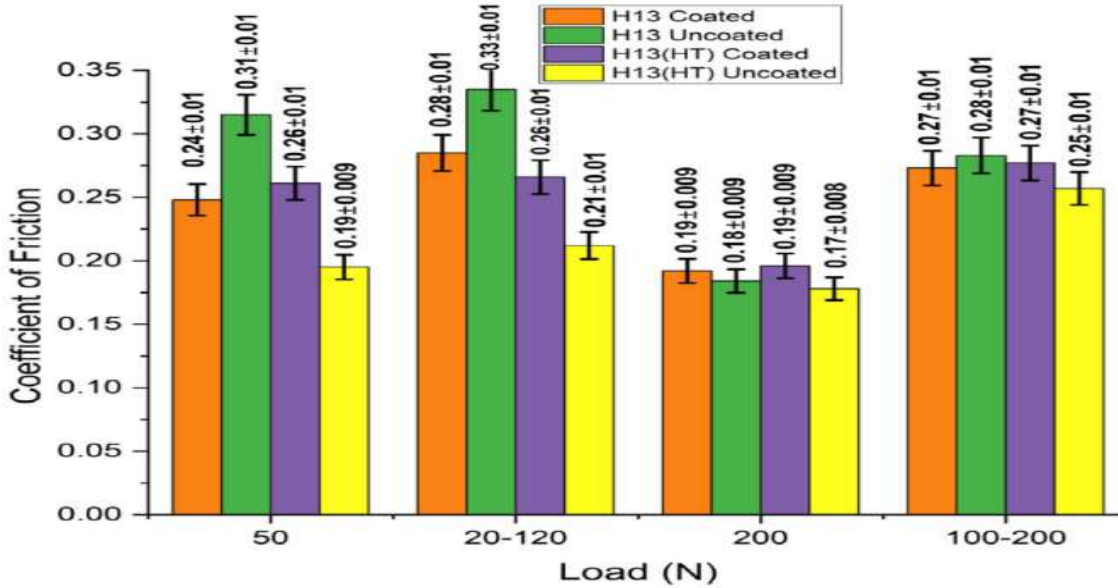


Fig.3 CoF versus Load (N) for the coated and uncoated H13 tool steel for with and without Heat Treatment

A machine vision system (Figure 4) was used to ascertain the scratch penetration depth of the specimen under different loads. Figure 4a illustrates the process for calibration of the machine vision lens at the surface of the specimen, where the axis positions were x, y, and z=0. Figure 4b shows the details of the profile observed in the present case study. Table V shows the average penetration depth values at different loads for coatings and substrate [18, 19]

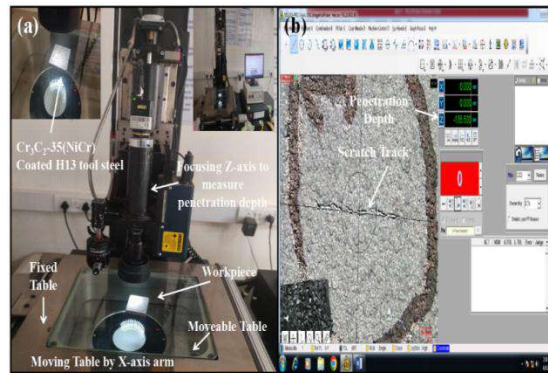


Fig.4 Machine vision setup (a) Calibration process start, (b) Observed value of machined surface after calibration

The variation of CoF with scratch length at a constant load of 50 N (Figure 5) for Cr₃C₂–35(NiCr)–coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples highlights the combined effects of coating and heat treatment on frictional behavior. The highest CoF was observed for the uncoated H13 sample, indicating greater adhesive interactions and material deformation along the scratch path due to the absence of a protective layer. The coated H13 steel exhibited a lower CoF, demonstrating the friction-reducing effect of the Cr₃C₂–35NiCr layer by minimizing direct contact between the indenter and substrate. Among the heat-treated samples, the coated H13 (HT) showed a slightly further reduction in CoF, suggesting that heat treatment improves the coating-substrate adhesion and surface hardness, stabilizing friction. The lowest CoF was recorded for the uncoated heat-treated H13, reflecting the significant influence of thermal treatment in enhancing surface hardness and reducing material ploughing, even without a coating. Overall, the observed CoF trend along the scratch length follows: uncoated H13 > coated H13 > coated H13 (HT) > uncoated H13 (HT), illustrating that heat treatment of the substrate is more effective than coating alone in lowering friction under a constant 50 N load.

Load (N)	H13 Coated		H13 Uncoated		H13 (HT) Coated		H13 (HT) Uncoated	
	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)	Scratch Width (μm)	Penetration Depth (μm)
50	232	-42.50	253	-120.50	263	-37.00	143	-90.50
20-120	615	-64.50	488	-135.50	495	-55.50	322	-110.00
200	308	-70.50	360	-180.00	248	-62.50	211	-190.00
100-200	498	-72.00	469	-240.50	526	-70.50	308	-210.00

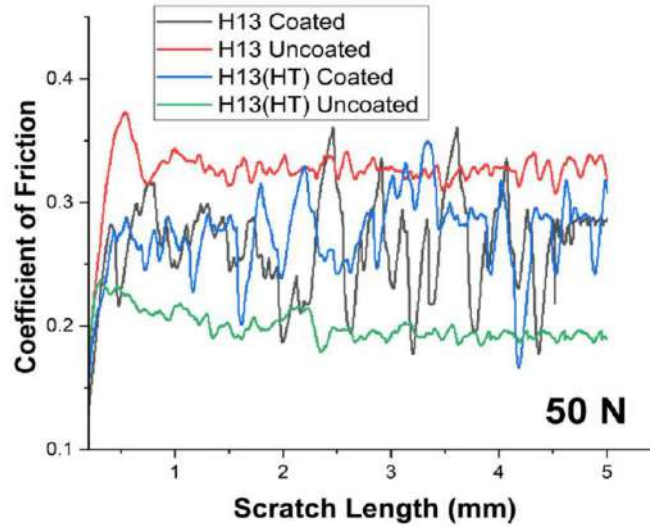


Fig.5 CoF versus Scratch Length (mm) at constant 50 N load for coated and uncoated samples

The CoF with scratch length under a ramp load of 20–120 N (Figure 6) for Cr_3C_2 –35(NiCr)–coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples illustrates the combined effects of coating and heat treatment on tribological performance. The uncoated H13 exhibited the highest CoF, indicating greater surface adhesion and more pronounced material deformation along the scratch path under progressively increasing load. The coated H13 steel displayed a lower CoF, reflecting the protective role of the Cr_3C_2 –35(NiCr) layer in reducing direct metal-to-metal contact and mitigating frictional resistance. Heat-treated coated H13 (HT) showed further reduction in CoF, suggesting improved coating-substrate bonding and enhanced surface hardness due to thermal processing. The lowest CoF was observed for the uncoated heat-treated H13, demonstrating that heat treatment alone can significantly enhance surface hardness and reduce material ploughing, even in the absence of a coating.

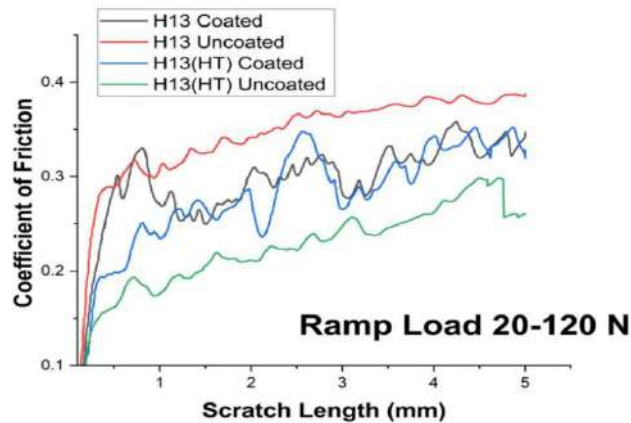


Fig.6 CoF versus Scratch Length (mm) at ramp load of 20–120 N for coated and uncoated samples

The variation of CoF with scratch length at a constant load of 200 N (Figure 7) for Cr_3C_2 –35(NiCr)–coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples shows a relatively narrow range of 0.20–0.25. This limited variation indicates that at high constant load, the influence of coating and substrate condition on friction is less pronounced, with the applied load dominating the tribological

response. Both coated and uncoated samples exhibited stable CoF along the scratch length, suggesting consistent surface interaction and minimal fluctuations in material ploughing or adhesion during sliding. The observed CoF values reflect that, under high-load conditions, neither coating nor heat treatment significantly alters the frictional behavior, and the sliding process is primarily governed by the high contact stress between the indenter and the steel surface.

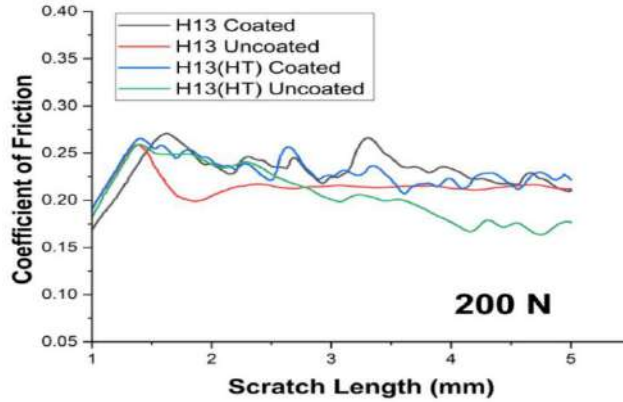


Fig.7 CoF versus Scratch Length (mm) at constant load 200 N for coated and uncoated samples

The variation CoF with scratch length under a ramp load of 100–200 N (Figure 8) for Cr_3C_2 –35(NiCr)–coated and uncoated H13 tool steel samples exhibits an initial increase followed by a gradual decrease, with CoF values ranging between 0.2 and 0.4. The initial rise in CoF along the scratch length can be attributed to progressive material engagement and increasing contact stress as the load ramps up, leading to enhanced adhesive interactions and ploughing between the indenter and the substrate. After reaching a peak, the CoF gradually decreases, likely due to the formation of a polished wear track, material transfer, or localized surface softening, which reduces resistance to sliding. Both coated and uncoated samples follow this general trend, although the coated samples maintain slightly lower CoF values throughout the scratch, reflecting the protective effect of the Cr_3C_2 –35(NiCr) layer in moderating frictional forces. This behavior highlights the dynamic interaction between applied load, surface condition, and material deformation during progressive ramp loading.

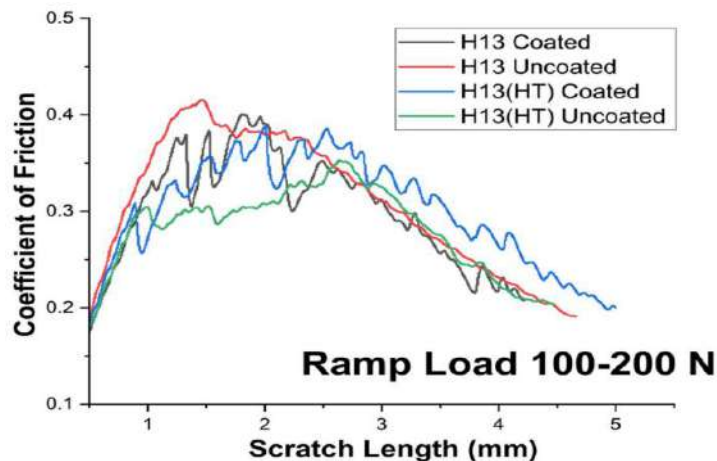


Fig.8 CoF versus Scratch Length (mm) at ramp load of 100-200 N for coated and uncoated samples

IV Failure Analysis

Optical microscopy and Field Emission Scanning Electron Microscope (FESEM, ThermoFisher) were employed to examine the porosity, scratch tracks and failure morphologies. The micrographs were further analyzed to correlate failure modes with coating microstructure, carbide distribution, and particle–particle bonding. Vinay et al.[19] concluded that during the scratch test that the poorly bonded surface or poorly bonded material will experience more depth of the indenter for same applied load.

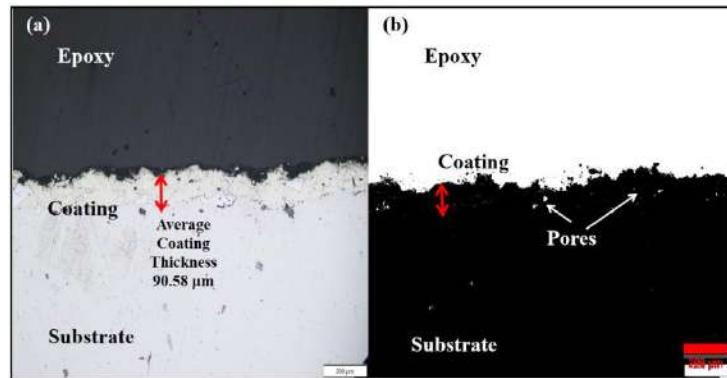


Fig.9 (a) Cross-sectional Optical Microscope Image (b) Porosity Analysis of $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-35(NiCr)}$ coated die steel using imageJ software

To understand the SEM micrographs of the scratch profile, Figure 10 (a,b,e,f) shows the scratch profile obtained for the deposits when tested at constant load and Figure 10 (c,d,g,h) for ramp load. At constant load of 50 N, the measured average scratch width is 232 μm and at load of 200 N it is 308 μm . At ramp load 10-100 N and 100-200 N the measured average scratch width is 615 μm and 498 μm respectively. The micrographs also indicate that material removal on both sides of the track as the load increases with negligible pullouts. This speaks about the better inter-splat bonding achieved while developing the coating. This observation is consistent with the hardness measurements, wherein inter-splat bonding cracks were identified during indentation. In case of CS deposits, abrasion wear is the dominating mechanism. During the time the indenter results in the formation of groove, which depicts abrasion wear, identified by scratches parallel to the indenter direction [9]. In case of ramp load at 10-100 N and constant load of 200 N material pullouts like typical ploughing is visible on the sides of the scratch track (shown with dotted rectangles in Fig 10d, f). These are the debris removed from the material but they remain intact. The occurrence of ploughing signifies the onset of plastic deformation within the material [21]. In contrast, weakly bonded deposits primarily exhibited inter-splat failures across the deposit, evident on the top surface, rather than material pullout by ploughing. This indicates the presence of weak inter-splat bonding among the deposited splats.

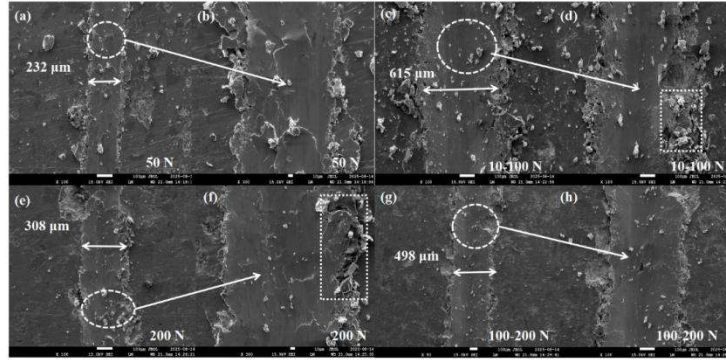


Fig.10 SEM micrograph of the $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-35(NiCr)}$ coated H13 tool steel at constant and ramp load

It was observed that in case of heat treated samples (Fig.11a-h) shows average scratch width of 263 μm and 248 μm at 50 N and 200 N constant load. In case of ramp load it shows average scratch width (Fig.11c,g) as 495 μm and 526 μm at 10-100 N and 100-200 N respectively.

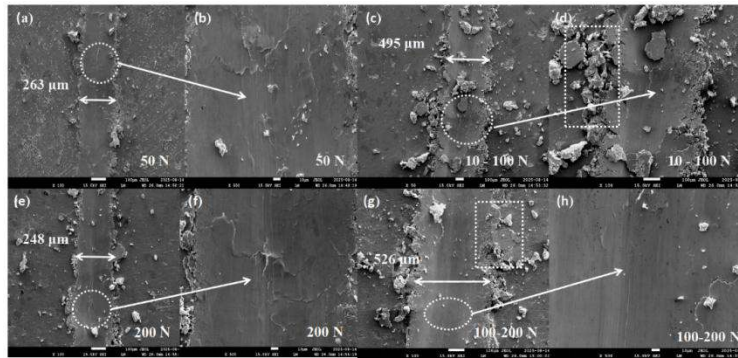


Fig.11 SEM micrograph of the $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2\text{-35(NiCr)}$ coated H13 tool steel (HT) at constant and ramp load

The SEM micrographs of the uncoated H13 tool steel (Figures 12a-h) under constant and ramp loading conditions reveal notable differences in scratch width with increasing applied load. At a constant load of 50 N, the scratch width was 253 μm ; under a ramp load of 10–100 N, it increased to 488 μm , representing a nearly 93% increase in width. Similarly, at a constant load of 200 N, the scratch width measured 360 μm ; however, at a ramp load of 100–200 N, it widened to 469 μm , corresponding to an increase of approximately 30%. These results indicate that ramp loading conditions consistently produce wider scratch tracks compared to constant loading at similar load ranges. The higher scratch widths under ramp loading suggest that progressive stress application enhances plastic deformation, promotes microcracking, and intensifies material pile-up, thereby leading to more pronounced surface damage in uncoated H13 tool steel.

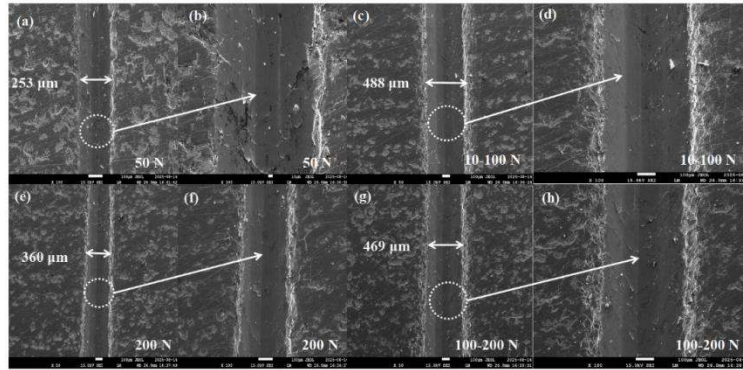


Fig. 12 SEM micrograph of the Uncoated H13 tool steel at constant and ramp load

The SEM micrographs of the heat-treated (HT) uncoated H13 tool steel (Figure 13a-h) under constant and ramp loading conditions reveal distinct differences in scratch response. At a constant load of 50 N, the scratch width was relatively small, at 143 μm. However, under a ramp load of 10–100 N, it increased substantially to 322 μm, representing a more than twofold rise. At higher loads, the scratch width measured 211 μm under a constant load of 200 N, while the ramp load of 100–200 N resulted in a wider track of 308 μm, indicating an increase of nearly 46%. These results clearly demonstrate that ramp loading produces consistently wider scratches compared to constant loading at similar load ranges, suggesting that the progressive increase in stress promotes greater plastic deformation, micro-fracturing, and material pile-up in the heat-treated H13 substrate.

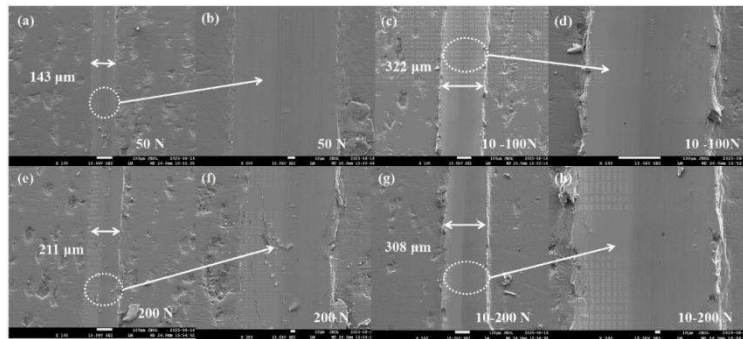


Fig. 13 SEM micrograph of the Uncoated H13 tool steel (HT) at constant and ramp load

Conclusions

Scratch adhesion testing was conducted on Cr_3C_2 –35NiCr coatings deposited on H13 die steel using the cold spray process. Based on the experimental results and analysis, the following conclusions can be drawn:

- I. The tribological study of Cr₃C₂–35NiCr–coated and uncoated H13 tool steel, with and without heat treatment, indicates that both coating and thermal processing influence frictional behavior, particularly at lower loads. At 50 N constant and 10–100 N ramp loads, the coating significantly reduced CoF compared to uncoated steel, while heat treatment of the uncoated substrate provided the most substantial reduction, highlighting the effectiveness of thermal processing in enhancing surface properties. At higher loads, whether constant (200 N) or ramped (100–200 N), the differences in CoF between coated and uncoated, as well as heat-treated and non-heat-treated samples, were marginal, suggesting that applied load becomes the dominant factor controlling friction. Overall, the results demonstrate that Cr₃C₂–35(NiCr) coatings are effective in reducing friction under moderate loads, whereas heat treatment of the substrate is particularly beneficial for uncoated H13 steel, whereas at high loads, the influence of coating or heat treatment is comparatively limited.
- II. Failure mechanisms were identified as edge cracking, wedge spallation, and large-scale delamination, corresponding to increasing critical loads. These modes are consistent with the brittle–semibrittle nature of the Cr₃C₂–35(NiCr) system.
- III. SEM analysis confirmed that the dense microstructure, uniform carbide distribution, and minimal porosity (0.04%) contributed to the superior scratch resistance and hardness (HV0.5 ≈ 840).
- IV. The absence of melting during cold spray preserved the feedstock phases and promoted effective particle–particle and particle–substrate bonding, which enhanced the coating’s mechanical integrity.
- V. The demonstrated scratch resistance and adhesion performance establish cold-sprayed Cr₃C₂–35(NiCr) coatings as a promising solution for extending the service life of H13 die steel components operating under severe mechanical and thermal loads.

References

- [1] Poirier, Dominique, Jean-Gabriel Legoux, and Rogerio S. Lima. "Engineering HVOF-sprayed Cr₃C₂-NiCr coatings: the effect of particle morphology and spraying parameters on the microstructure, properties, and high temperature wear performance." *Journal of thermal spray technology* 22, no. 2 (2013): 280-289.
- [2] Ksiazek, Marzanna, Lukasz Boron, and Adam Tchorz. "Microstructure, mechanical properties and wear behavior of high-velocity oxygen-fuel (HVOF) sprayed (Cr₃C₂-NiCr+ Al) composite coating on ductile cast iron." *Coatings* 9, no. 12 (2019): 840.
- [3] Li, J., and W. Beres. "Scratch test for coating/substrate systems—A literature review." *Canadian Metallurgical Quarterly* 46, no. 2 (2007): 155-173.
- [4] Pedro Poza, Miguel Ángel Garrido-Maneiro, Cold-sprayed coatings: Microstructure, mechanical properties, and wear behaviour, *Progress in Materials Science*, Volume 123, 2022, 100839, ISSN 0079-6425, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pmatsci.2021.100839>.
- [5] Guo, D., M. Kazasidis, A. Hawkins, N. Fan, Z. Leclerc, D. MacDonald, A. Nastic et al. "Cold

- spray: over 30 years of development toward a hot future." *Journal of thermal spray technology* 31, no. 4 (2022): 866-907.
- [6] Holmberg, Kenneth, Allan Matthews, and Helena Ronkainen. "Coatings tribology—contact mechanisms and surface design." *Tribology international* 31, no. 1-3 (1998): 107-120.
- [7] Holmberg, Kenneth, Anssi Laukkanen, Helena Ronkainen, Kim Wallin, and Simo Varjus. "A model for stresses, crack generation and fracture toughness calculation in scratched TiN-coated steel surfaces." *Wear* 254, no. 3-4 (2003): 278-291.
- [8] Bhushan, Bharat, B. K. Gupta, and Michael H. Azarian. "Nanoindentation, microscratch, friction and wear studies of coatings for contact recording applications." *Wear* 181 (1995): 743-758.
- [9] Jahanmir, Said, D. E. Deckman, L. K. Ives, A. Feldman, and E. Farabaugh. "Tribological characteristics of synthesized diamond films on silicon carbide." *Wear* 133, no. 1 (1989): 73-81.
- [10] Gidla Vinay, Ravi Kant, Harpreet Singh, Influence of powder heat treatment and particle size on the corrosion performance of cold-sprayed nickel-aluminum bronze (NAB) for repair applications, *Corrosion Science*, Volume 238, 2024, 112355, ISSN 0010-938X, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.corsci.2024.112355>.
- [11] Kumar, Sanjeev, Sanjeev Bhandari, and Manpreet Kaur. "Scratch testing performance of thermally sprayed WC-10Co-4Cr and Al₂O₃ coated CA6NM steel." *Journal of Thermal Spray and Engineering* 4 (2024): 141-153.
- [12] Kumar, Sanjeev, Sanjeev Bhandari, Manpreet Kaur, and Vibhu Sharma. "Performance evaluation of D-gun sprayed WC-10Co-4Cr thin film on CF8M steel under scratch loading." *Industrial Lubrication and Tribology* (2025).
- [13] Kumar, Sanjeev, Sanjeev Bhandari, and Manpreet Kaur. "Scratch Testing Assessment of Detonation Gun-Sprayed CA6NM Stainless Steel." *Transactions of the Indian Institute of Metals* 78, no. 9 (2025): 220.
- [14] Juhani Valli, Ulla Mäkelä, Applications of the scratch test method for coating adhesion assessment, *Wear*, Volume 115, Issues 1–2, 1987, Pages 215-221, ISSN 0043-1648, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0043-1648\(87\)90211-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/0043-1648(87)90211-0).
- [15] Kroeger, Jens & Poirié, Thomas & Moghimian, Pouya & Marion, Frédéric & Larouche, Frederic. (2022). Flow rate ranges for spherical metallic powders for additive manufacturing. *Progress in Additive Manufacturing*. 7. 10.1007/s40964-021-00238-7.
- [16] P. Ramakrishnan; Powder Characterization Techniques. *Matls. Perf. Charact.* 22 September 2020; 9 (4): 401–425. <https://doi.org/10.1520/MPC20190162>
- [17] Singh, Gurwinder, Rupinder Singh, P. S. Rao, and Vinay Kumar. "On morphological and dimensional characteristics of modified electrochemical machining." *Journal of The Institution of Engineers (India): Series C* 104, no. 6 (2023): 1299-1302.
- [18] Singh, Gurwinder, Rupinder Singh, and P. S. Rao. "On Machining profile accuracy in the modified electrochemical machining process." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, India Section A: Physical Sciences* 94, no. 4 (2024): 423-436.

- [19] Vinay, Gidla, Shrabanti Halder, Ravi Kant, and Harpreet Singh. "Examining the contribution of tamping effect on inter-splat bonding during cold spray." *Materials Science and Engineering: A* 893 (2024): 146112.
- [20] Poza, Pedro, and Miguel Ángel Garrido-Maneiro. "Cold-sprayed coatings: Microstructure, mechanical properties, and wear behaviour." *Progress in Materials Science* 123 (2022): 100839.

Finite Element Modelling and Analysis of Polymer Matrix Composite Bicycle Frame

Shalinder Singh¹, Sukhdeep Singh Dhami²

Mechanical Engineering Department, National Institute of Technical Teachers Training and Research, Chandigarh, India

¹singh.shalinder016@gmail.com

²ssdhami@nitttrchd.ac.in

Abstract— The bicycle frame is a critical structural component that strongly influences performance, safety, and ride quality. Conventional materials such as AISI 4130 steel and Aluminium 6061T6 are widely used but face limitations in achieving significant weight reduction without sacrificing stiffness or fatigue life. To overcome these constraints, advanced composites like carbon fibre reinforced polymers have gained prominence. Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg offers high specific stiffness, strength, and design flexibility, making it attractive for lightweight frames. However, there remains a research gap in standards-based structural comparison of composite and metallic frames and in studying the benefits of non-circular tube geometries. This research paper explores reducing the weight of current bicycle frames by replacing traditional metal materials with Epoxy Carbon UniDirectional (UD) prepreg composite material. The study was carried out following the loading conditions and boundary requirements as per ISO 4210-6 safety standard. CAD models of standard diamond-frame bicycles were created in SolidWorks software. Structural analysis of the standard frames made of AISI 4130 steel, Aluminium 6061-T6 and Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg was carried out. Lightweight frames made with Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg. The results were compared and evaluated based on the standard test data available for standard frames, validating the modeling and analysis approaches. Thereafter, the structural analysis of the frames made of different materials and different cross-sectional shapes was carried out. The results were obtained in terms of von Mises stress, deformation, strain, and overall weight. The results show that the Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg frames are nearly 80% and 50% lighter as compared to steel and aluminium frames, while meeting the strength requirement and deformation limits as per ISO 4210-6 standard. It was also observed that oval and rectangular cross-sectional profiles make the frames stiffer without adding any extra weight to the frames.

Keywords— Bicycle frame, Steel AISI 4130, Aluminum 6061-T6, Epoxy Carbon UniDirectional (UD) Prepreg composite, ISO 4210-6 standard, Finite Element Analysis (FEA).

I. INTRODUCTION

The bicycle remains one of the most efficient and sustainable modes of human transportation,

with continuous engineering efforts directed toward enhancing its performance, durability, and weight efficiency. Among all bicycle components, the frame serves as the primary structural element, directly influencing ride quality, handling, and overall safety. Consequently, frame design and material selection have emerged as critical focal points in contemporary bicycle engineering. Traditional frame materials such as AISI 4130 chromium-molybdenum steel and Aluminium 6061-T6 have been extensively utilized due to their favourable strength-to-weight ratios, manufacturability and cost-effectiveness. However, the growing demand for lightweight, high-performance bicycles—particularly in competitive cycling, electric bicycles, and premium commuter segments—has exposed the inherent limitations of metallic frames in achieving substantial mass reduction without compromising structural rigidity or fatigue life.

In response to these limitations, advanced composite materials, particularly carbon fibre reinforced polymers (CFRP), have gained considerable traction in the bicycle industry. Among these, Epoxy Carbon UD (230 GPa) prepreg offers exceptional specific stiffness and strength, directional tailorability, and corrosion resistance, making it an ideal candidate for lightweight structural applications. Despite the proliferation of composite bicycle frames in the market, a significant research gap persists regarding the systematic, standards-based structural evaluation and comparative analysis of carbon frames against conventional metallic benchmarks under identical, regulated testing conditions. Furthermore, limited studies have explored the synergistic effect of combining advanced composite materials with non-circular tube profiles—such as oval and rectangular cross-sections—on overall frame weight, stress distribution, and deformation behaviour.

The present research addresses this gap by adopting a comprehensive, simulation-driven methodology for the modification and optimization of existing bicycle frame designs. The study is strictly governed by the boundary conditions and loading protocols prescribed in ISO 4210-6, which specifies safety requirements for bicycles—particularly regarding strength and fatigue testing of frames. Utilizing SolidWorks CAD modelling and finite element analysis (FEA) software, the research workflow is structured around four primary objectives. First, empirical load data pertaining to various riding conditions is collected and synthesized to inform the development of accurate CAD models of a standard diamond bicycle frame. Second, baseline structural analyses are conducted on frames fabricated from Aluminium 6061-T6 and AISI 4130 steel to establish reference performance metrics including von Mises stress, equivalent strain, total deformation and weight. Third, lightweight frames are designed using Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg, incorporating circular, oval, and rectangular profile configurations to evaluate the influence of cross-sectional geometry on structural efficiency. Fourth, a rigorous comparative study is performed between the composite frames and their metallic counterparts, assessing the extent of weight reduction achievable while satisfying or exceeding the ISO 4210-6 strength requirements.

Studies consistently aim to reduce weight while maintaining structural integrity. Early analyses often favoured cost-effective steels like AISI 4130 for optimal balance [1]. However, research has extensively explored aluminium alloys (e.g., Al 6061) for their good weldability and lighter

weight [3, 7]. More advanced studies investigate high-performance options like titanium and carbon fiber[1], and even magnesium alloys (AZ91D, AZ60/Al₂O₃ composites), which offer significant weight savings (up to 36%) while matching or exceeding aluminum's mechanical properties [8, 9]. Beyond metals, the potential of composite materials (glass fiber, carbon-fiber-reinforced polymers) is highlighted for automotive and two-wheeler applications, praised for their high strength-to-weight ratio, corrosion resistance, and durability [13, 15, 16]. The universal adoption of Finite Element Analysis (FEA) is evident across all cited works. FEA is used to simulate a wide range of loading conditions critical to real-world performance: Static Loads: Vertical loads from rider weight [3, 10]. Dynamic & Impact Loads: Bumps, potholes, and sudden impacts [1, 7, 10]. Operational Loads: Pedaling forces, braking (rear wheel/horizontal), and drive-train loads [2, 7, 10]. Torsional & Stiffness Analysis: Assessing frame rigidity during cornering and out-of-saddle efforts [1, 19]. These simulations output stress (Von Mises), strain, deformation, and factor of safety to validate designs against material yield strengths [6, 7, 10]. Comfort is a key design criterion, leading to studies on vibration dampening. Research shows that integrating suspension systems significantly reduces vibration transmission to the rider [3]. Modal analysis is used to identify a structure's natural frequencies and mode shapes, helping designers avoid resonance and reduce fatigue [3, 12]. Materials and geometry can be tuned based on these dynamic characteristics. Optimization extends beyond the frame to the rider interaction. Studies employ bio-mechanical modeling and algorithms (like BP neural networks and Genetic Algorithms) to derive an optimal riding posture and customize frame geometry based on rider anthropometry, dramatically improving comfort [4]. This represents a shift towards personalized, ergonomic design. Research emphasizes systematic optimization of frame geometry and tube profiles. Methods include topology, shape, and size optimization to minimize weight while meeting stiffness targets [14]. Cross-section analysis (e.g., elliptical vs. round tubes) shows that shape can improve stress distribution and structural integrity [12]. Furthermore, advancements in manufacturing processes for composites—such as Resin Transfer Molding (RTM) and Thermoplastic RTM (T-RTM)—are crucial for making high-performance, lightweight frames viable for mass production [18, 23].

II. METHODOLOGY

In the present study, the type of bicycle frame and its dimensions are taken from published literature [2] and a 2D Geometry and a 3D CAD model are developed with solidworks modelling software, Fig. 1 and Fig.2 respectively.

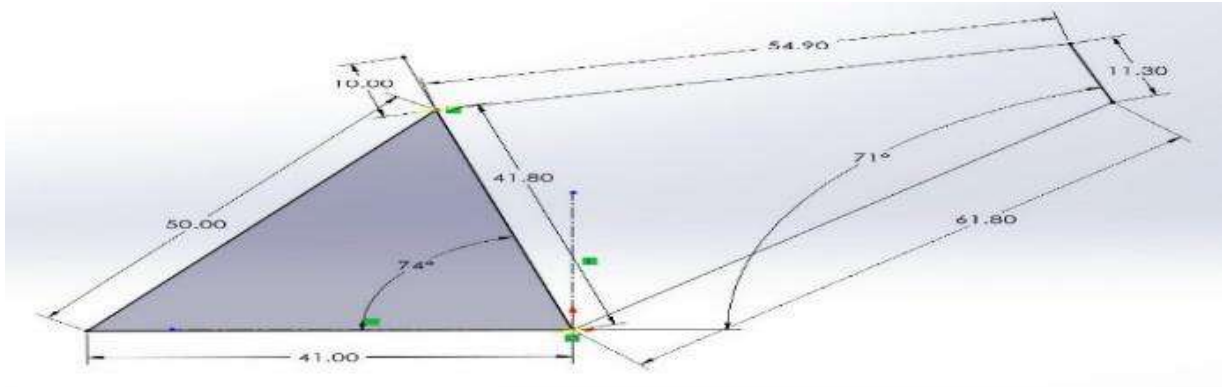


Fig. 12-D Geometry of bicycle frame

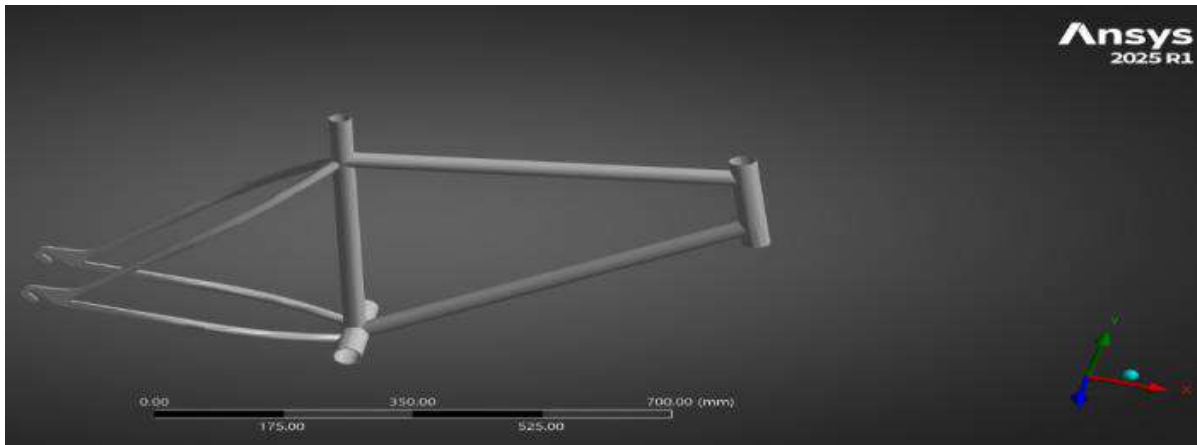


Fig. 23D CAD Model of Bicycle frame

Dimensions of the bicycle frame used are given in table 1.

TABLE 1

DIMENSIONS OF THE BICYCLE FRAME

Tube	Parameters	Values (mm)
Top Tube	Length	549
	Outer Diameter	32
	Thickness	0.8
Bottom Tube	Length	618
	Outer Diameter	33
	Thickness	0.8
Head Tube	Length	113
	Outer Diameter	38
	Thickness	1
Seat Tube	Length	518
	Outer Diameter	31
	Thickness	0.8
Seat Stay	Length	500

	Outer Diameter	19
	Thickness	0.9
Chain Stay	Length	410
	Outer Diameter	19
	Thickness	0.9
Bottom Bracket	Length	200
	Outer Diameter	40
	Thickness	2

III. MATERIALS

	Materials		
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6160-T6	Epoxy Carbon UD Prepreg
Material Property	Values	Values	Value
Density (Kg/m ³)	7850	2713	1490
Poisson's ratio	0.28	0.33	0.30
Elastic Modulus (GPa)	205	68.9	140
Ultimate Tensile strength (MPa)	670	310	1800
Compressive Strength (MPa)	670	310	1200
Shear Strength (MPa)	400	207	75 (in- plane)
Bulk Modulus (GPa)	140	67.5	15
Shear Modulus (GPa)	80	26	4.7
Coefficient of Thermal expansion(10 ⁻⁶ /°C)	11.7	23.6	~0.5 (L) ~30 (T)
Reference Temperature (°C)	22	22	22
Tensile Yield Strength (0.2%) (MPa)	435	276	NA

TABLE2

MECHANICAL AND PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS USED

The materials chosen for analysis were Steel AISI 4130, Aluminium 6061-T6 and Epoxy Carbon UD (230GPa) Prepreg. Finite element analysis (FEA) of the bicycle frame constituted the next stage of the investigation. The numerical simulation was carried out using ANSYS Workbench, incorporating the steel and aluminium properties listed in Table 2. After assigning the material properties to the three-dimensional geometry, the subsequent step involved mesh generation within the ANSYS environment. Following the selection of an appropriate element type, the model was discretized using a uniform mesh size of 4 mm. The resulting finite element model consisted of 43708 nodes and 131745 elements, as illustrated in Fig. 3. The mesh was generated using tetrahedral solid elements characterized by linear shape functions, commonly referred to as constant strain tetrahedral (CST) elements. These elements are defined by the material properties, including Yield strength 435 MPa of steel AISI 4130 and 276 MPa of Aluminium 6061-T6. Tetrahedral elements were selected due to their ability to accurately represent complex geometrical features, making them particularly suitable for the bicycle frame geometry under consideration. There are five loading conditions simulated and analysed [25]. All the loading conditions are shown from Fig. 4 to Fig. 8. The first loading condition is static start-up as shown in Fig. 4. It simulates the bicycle in a resting state with a rider sitting on the saddle and the rider is about to start pedalling. A force of 700 N is applied to the top of the seat tube implying the weight of the rider and a force of 200 N is applied to the bottom bracket implying pedalling force. The head tube and rear brackets are fixed supported.

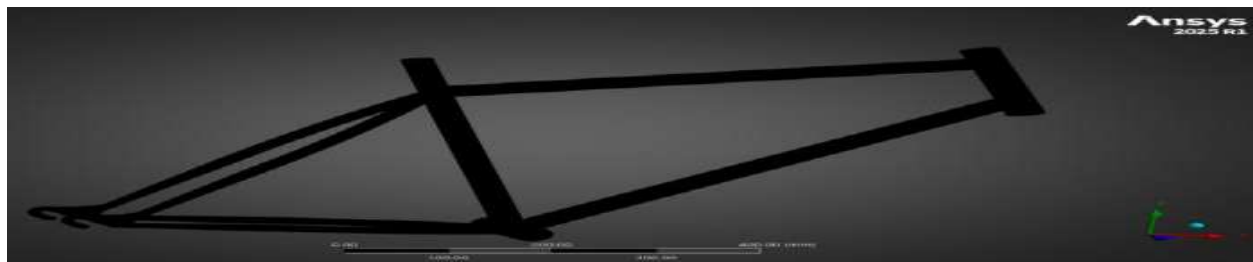


Fig.3 Mesh Model of Bicycle Frame

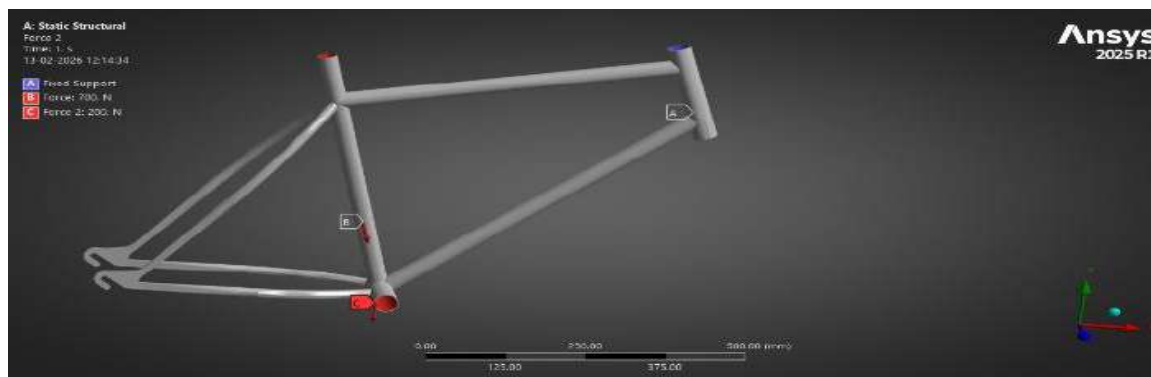


Fig: 4 Static Start-up (LC-1)

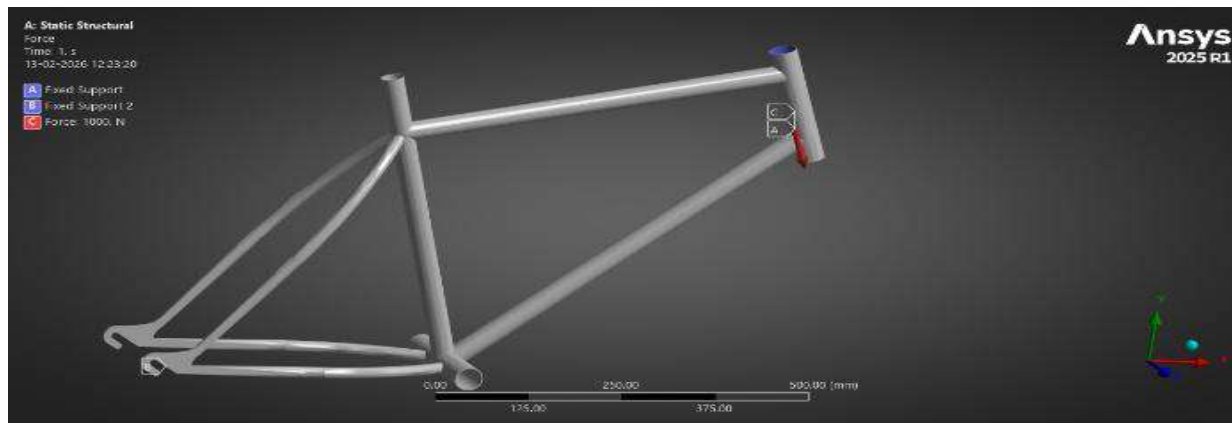


Fig: 5 Steady state pedalling (LC-2)

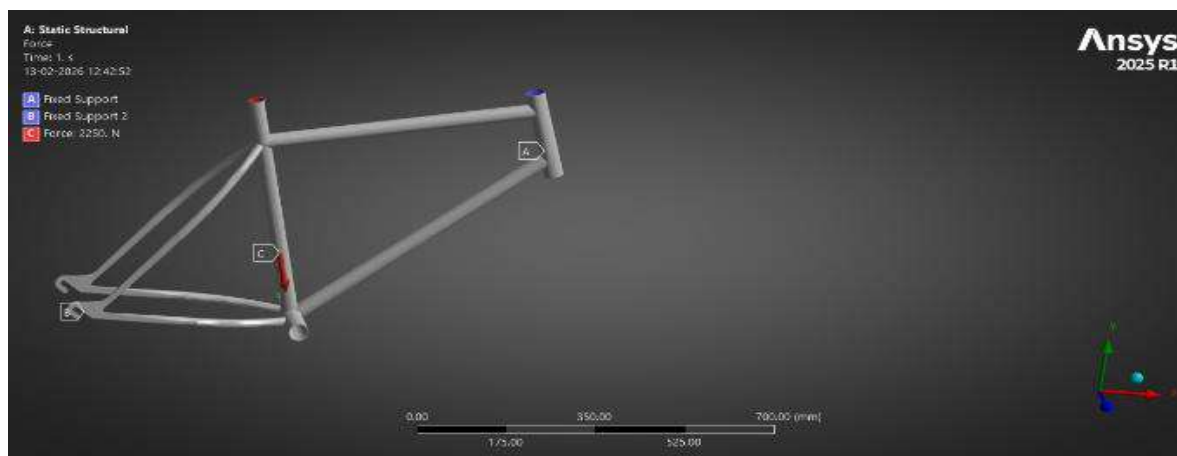


Fig: 6 Vertical Impact (LC-3)

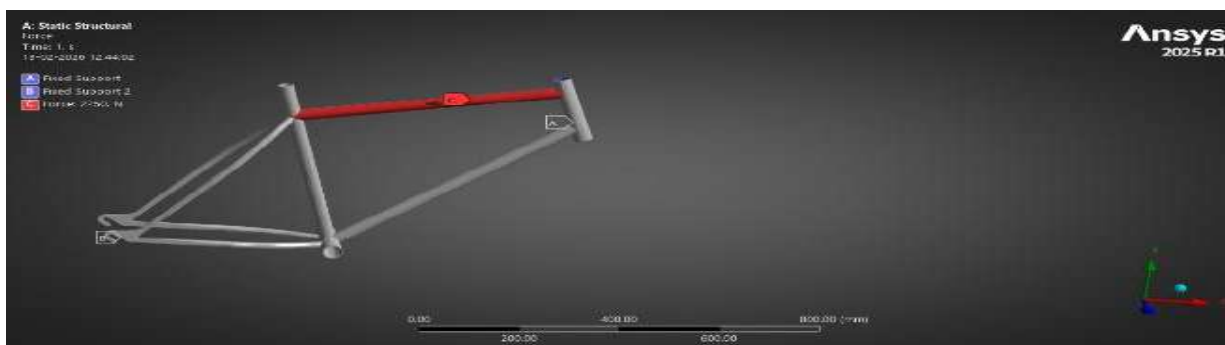


Fig 7: Horizontal Impact (LC-4)

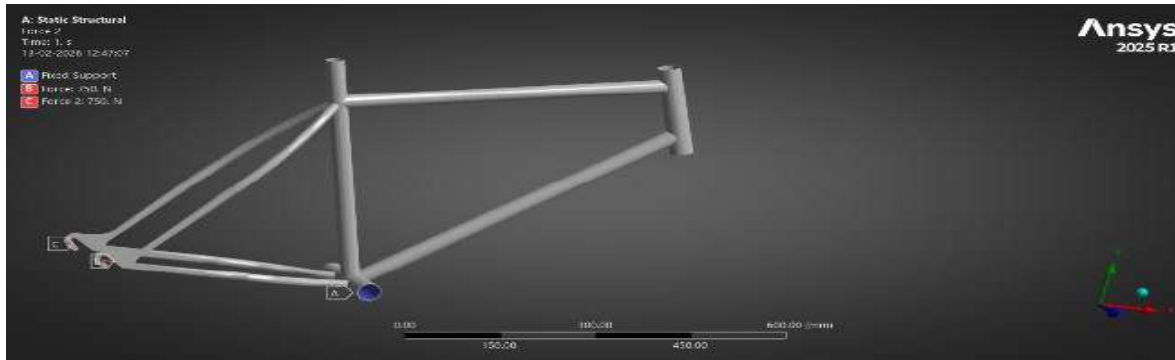


Fig 8: Rear wheel braking (LC-5)

. The second loading condition is steady state pedalling. It simulates the bicycle is being pedalled out of saddle, meaning that the rider is not sitting on the saddle instead standing up while pedalling. Force of 1000 N is applied to the top of the head tube implying the force of the rider's hands pushing down on the steering and force of 200 N is applied to the bottom bracket implying the pedalling force. The head tube and rear brackets are fixed supported. The third loading condition is vertical impact. It is to simulate an event of impact to the top of the seat tube.

TABLE.3

RESULTS OF EXISTING DESIGN HAVING CIRCULAR PROFILE TUBES

	LC-1		LC-2		LC-3		LC-4		LC-5	
	Steel AISI 4130	Alumi nium 6061- T6	Steel AISI 4130	Alu mini um 6061 -T6	Steel AISI 4130	Alumi nium 6061- T6	Ste el AIS I 413 0	Alu mini um 606 1- T6	Steel AISI 4130	Alu mini um 6061 -T6
Total Deformati on (mm)	0.16 3	0.485	0.03 12	0.09 3	0.424	1.26	0.0 41	0.12 4	1.2	3.6
Von- Mises equivalent Stress (MPa)	59	58.76	11.2 6	11.2 21	153.45	152.8 3	32. 19	32.1 9	124. 83	124. 69
Von- Mises Elastic Strain (mm/mm)	0.00 03	0.000 9	0.00 0058	0.00 0173	0.0007 9	0.002 36	0.0 001 5	0.00 046	0.00 06	0.00 18

Downward force of 2250 N is applied to the top of the seat tube. The head tube and rear brackets are fixed supported. The fourth loading condition is horizontal impact. Similarly to third loading condition, it simulates an event of impact to the top tube. Horizontal force of 2250 N is applied along the top tube. The head tube and rear brackets are fixed supported. The fifth loading condition is rear wheel braking.

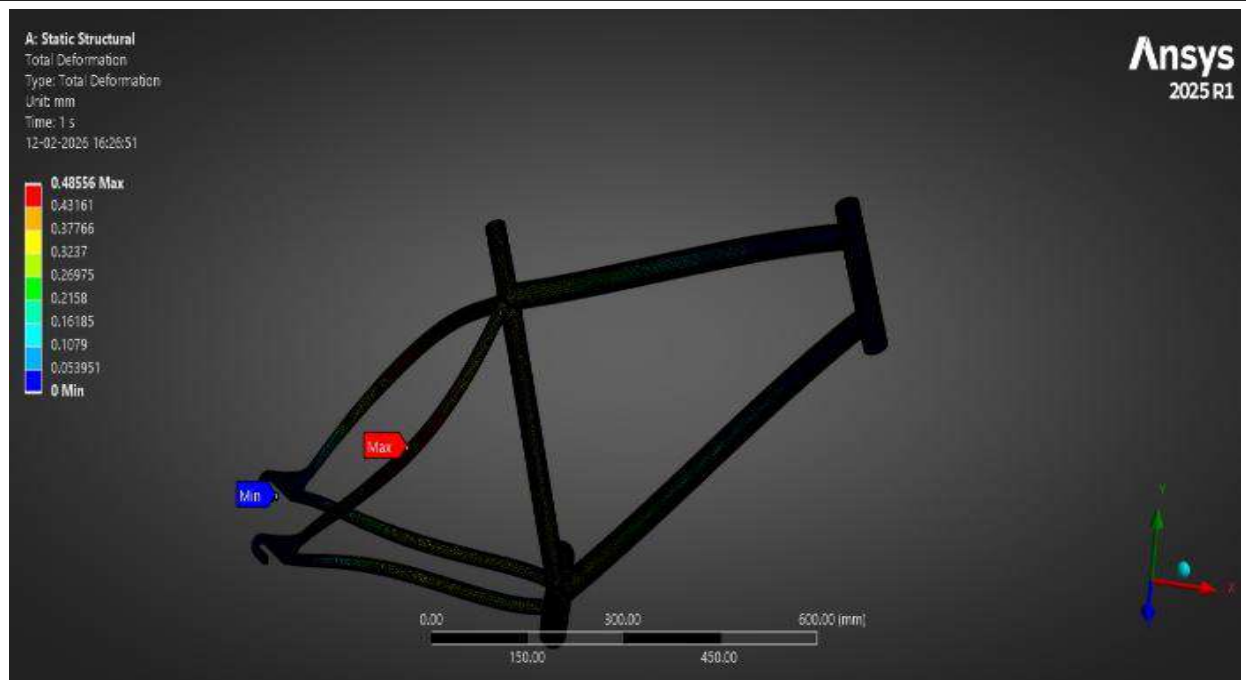
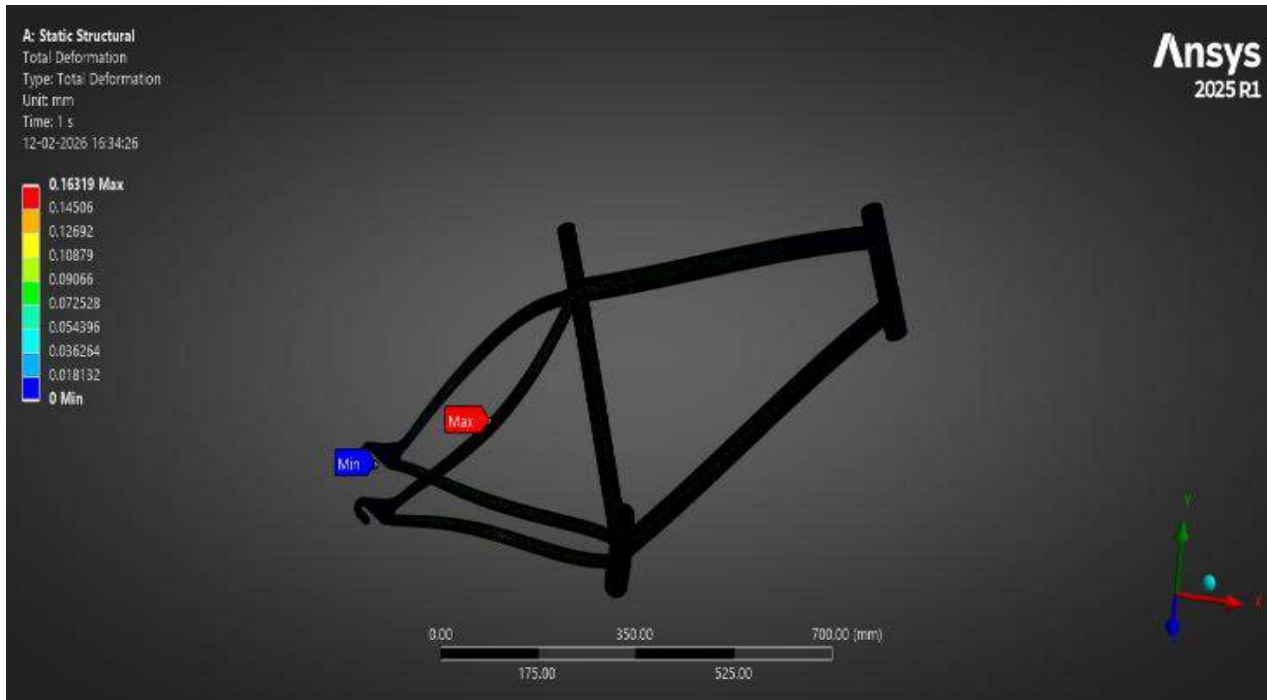
It simulates the rider is applying brake to the rear wheel when coming to a stop. Horizontal force of 750 N is applied to each of the rear bracket. The bottom bracket is fixed supported.

The finite element results indicate that the maximum stress is developed in the vicinity of the joint of seat stay tubes with seat tube. The peak von Mises stress was found to be 59.00 MPa for Steel AISI 4130 and 58.76 MPa for aluminium 6061-T6 which is represented by the red contour in Fig. 9 (i & ii). This localized stress concentration occurs primarily due to the reduced diameter of the seat stay. In contrast, the stress levels at front tube are low and are indicated by the blue contour. The stress at the front tube was observed to be 4.25×10^{-18} MPa for Steel AISI 4130 and 4.67×10^{-18} MPa for aluminium 6061-T6, represented by a light blue color, indicating a lower stress magnitude in that region.



(i) Steel AISI 4130(ii) Aluminium 6061-T6

Fig.9: Von Mises Stress on Bicycle frame as per LC-1



(i) Steel AISI 4130 (ii) Aluminium 6061-T6

Fig.10: Total Deformation of Bicycle frame as per LC-1



(i) Steel AISI 4130(ii)Aluminium 6061-T6

Fig.11: Equivalent elastic strain of Bicycle frame as per LC-1

The maximum total deformation of the bicycle frame was found to be 0.163 mm for Steel AISI 4130 and 0.485mm for aluminium 6061-T6, as illustrated by the red contour in Fig. 10 (i & ii). The maximum elastic strain of the bicycle frame was found to be 0.0003 for Steel AISI 4130 and 0.0009 for aluminium 6061-T6, as illustrated by the red contour in Fig. 11 (i&ii).

IV. SHAPE MODIFICATION

The design and development of the bicycle was carried out through an iterative modelling and analysis process to ensure structural safety and functional reliability when manufactured using CFRP material. Initially, the existing bicycle frame geometry was developed in a CAD environment and imported into ANSYS Workbench for finite element analysis with AISI 4130 steel and Aluminium 6061-T6. The model was subjected to boundary conditions and loading corresponding to the loading conditions as per ISO 4210-6. The preliminary simulation results

revealed that the maximum von Mises stress, Equivalent elastic strain and total deformation were within allowable limits for AISI 4130 steel and Aluminium 6061-T6 but weight was on higher side. High stress concentrations were observed near the joint of seat stay and seat tube, while excessive deformation in the seat stay tubes, indicating insufficient stiffness and a high risk of structural failure during riding.

Based on the outcomes of the initial analysis, the bicycle geometry was modified with the objective of improving structural performance while retaining its functional shape. Design modifications primarily involved changing the profiles of seat tube, seat stay, chain stay and down tube to oval and rectangular profiles along with providing cross links at chain stays and seat stays which increases the section modulus to enhance bending resistance and reduce localized stress concentration. Care was taken to strengthen high-stress zones without excessively increasing weight or altering essential ergonomic features of the bicycle. Following these geometric modifications, the revised bicycle model was re-analysed under identical loading and boundary conditions to allow direct comparison with the original design.

The results of the repeated simulations demonstrated a substantial reduction in Von Mises stress, increase in total deformation and strain confirming the effectiveness of the design modifications. The optimized bicycle frame exhibited stress values well within the allowable strength of CFRP and a marked improvement in stiffness, making it suitable for practical application. The stress distribution, deformation patterns and equivalent elastic strain of the modified model are illustrated in Figures 11, 12 and 13. These results validate the importance of iterative finite element analysis and geometry refinement in achieving a structurally safe and efficient bicycle frame design for comfort riding applications.

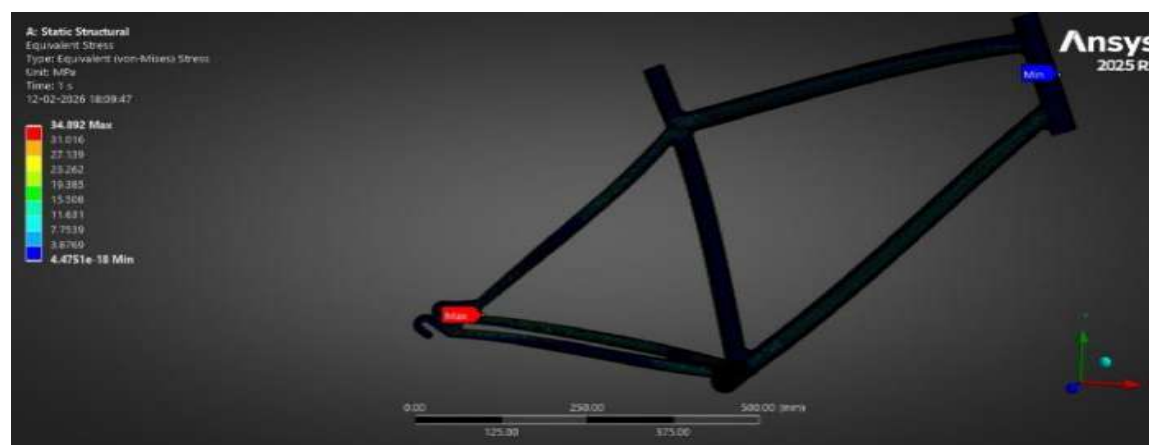


Fig.12 von Mises Stress

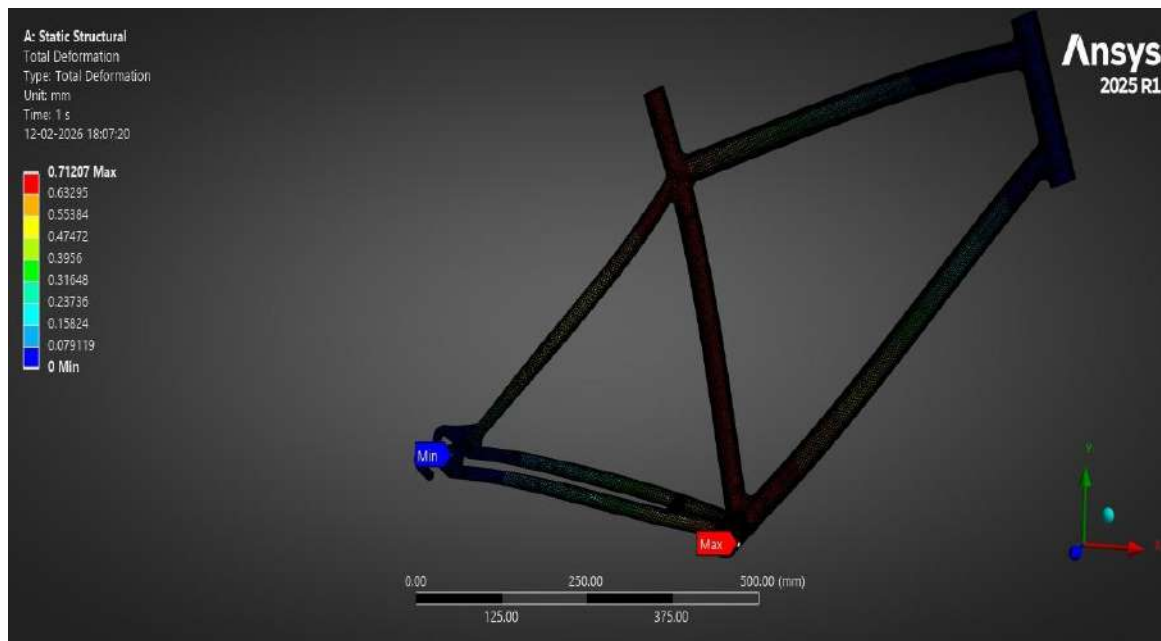


Fig.13 Total deformation

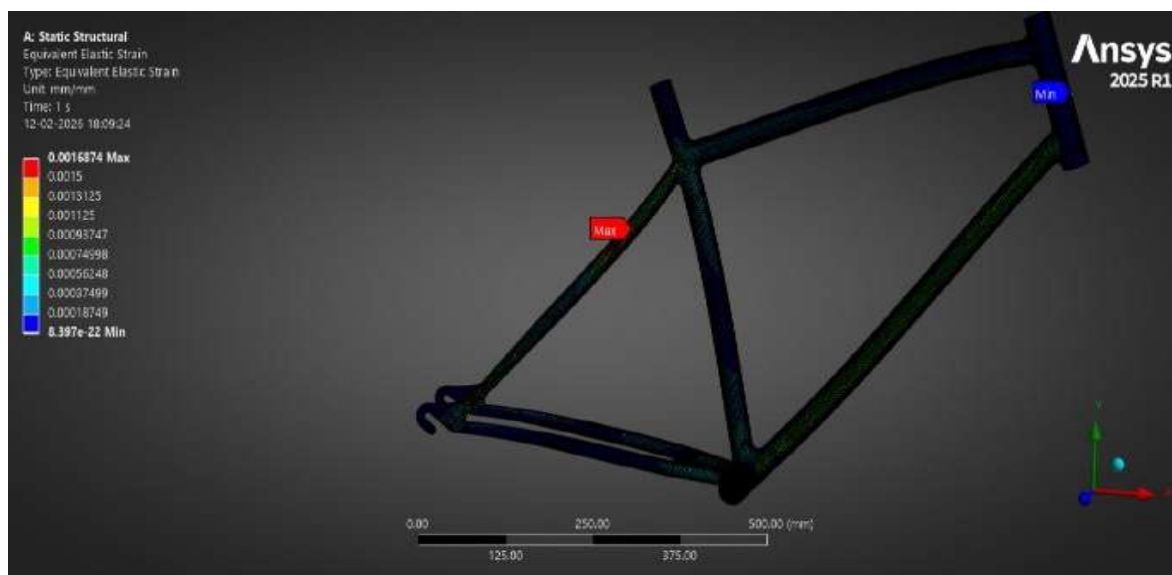


Fig.14Equivalent Elastic strain

V. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The comparative results between existing design and modified design are given in below tables 4,5,6,7,8,9 and 10. The results presented in the below tables demonstrate that the modified bicycle frame design outperforms the existing design in terms of stress and weight.

TABLE 4: COMPARISON OF PARAMETERS ACCORDING TO LOAD CONDITION

	Load Condition -1 : Static Start Up				
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6061 T6	CFRP		
	Existing Circular Profile		Circular Profile	Oval Profile	Rectangular Profile
Total Deformation (mm)	0.163	0.485	0.71	1.188	0.817
Total Equivalent Stress (MPa)	59	58.766	34.892	46.5	37.67
Total Equivalent Strain (mm/mm)	0.000306	0.00090962	0.0016	0.0027	0.0021

TABLE 5 : COMPARISON OF PARAMETERS ACCORDING TO LOAD CONDITION 2

	Load Condition -2 : Steady State Pedalling				
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6061 T6	CFRP		
	Existing Circular Profile		Circular Profile	Oval Profile	Rectangular Profile
Total Deformation (mm)	0.0312	0.093	0.204	0.32	0.231
Total Equivalent Stress (MPa)	11.266	11.221	8.4	10.66	9.24
Total Equivalent Strain (mm/mm)	0.000058	0.000173	0.00031	0.00056	0.00039

TABLE 6 : COMPARISON OF PARAMETERS ACCORDING TO LOAD CONDITION 3

	Load Condition -3 : Vertical Impact				
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6061 T6	CFRP		
	Existing Circular Profile		Circular Profile	Oval Profile	Rectangular Profile
Total Deformation (mm)	0.424	1.26	1.84	2.88	2.13

Total Equivalent Stress (MPa)	153.45	152.83	85.11	115.2	91.366
Total Equivalent Strain (mm/mm)	0.00079	0.00236	0.00442	0.0071	0.0055

TABLE 7: COMPARISON OF PARAMETERS ACCORDING TO LOAD CONDITION 4

	Load Condition -4 : Horizontal Impact				
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6061 T6	CFRP		
	Existing Circular Profile		Circular Profile	Oval Profile	Rectangular Profile
Total Deformation (mm)	0.041	0.124	0.166	0.257	0.174
Total Equivalent Stress (MPa)	32.19	32.19	35.27	59.82	37.214
Total Equivalent Strain (mm/mm)	0.00015	0.00046	0.00144	0.0022	0.0013

TABLE 8: COMPARISON OF PARAMETERS ACCORDING TO LOAD CONDITION 5

	Load Condition -5 : Rear Wheel Braking				
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6061 T6	CFRP		
	Existing Circular Profile		Circular Profile	Oval Profile	Rectangular Profile
Total Deformation (mm)	1.2	3.6	2.629	5.97	1.38
Total Equivalent Stress (MPa)	124.83	124.69	106.16	88.399	106.29
Total Equivalent Strain (mm/mm)	0.0006	0.0018	0.0047	0.0039	0.0046

TABLE 9: COMPARISON OF WEIGHT OF EXISTING AND MODIFIED DESIGN

	Weight				
	Steel AISI 4130	Aluminium 6061 T6	CFRP		
	Existing Circular Profile		Circular Profile	Oval Profile	Rectangular Profile
Weight (N)	22.9	7.8	4.7	3.8	4.3

TABLE 10: COMPARISON OF ECONOMIC ASPECTS OF VARIOUS MATERIALS

Material	Density (g/cm ³)	Volume of Bicycle frame(cm ³)	Total mass (g)	Rate per Kg Approx. (Rs.)	Cost of Material Approx. (Rs.)
AISI 4130 STEEL (Circular)	7.85	298	2341	150	345
ALUMINIUM 6061 T6 (Circular)	2.7	298	805.44	300	241.6
CFRP (Circular)	1.49	322.36	480.31	2000	966
CFRP (Oval)	1.49	262.29	390.8	2000	781.6
CFRP(Rectangular)	1.49	300.54	447.8	2000	895

From the economic point of view, the best recommended material for manufacturing of bicycle frame is Aluminium 6061-T6 because of its cheaper price but it gives high deformation in static structural analysis. AISI 4130 Steel is the second cheapest material on the basis of economic analysis and have better static structural performance but its weight is on higher side. Thus, CFRP is the recommended material on the basis of static structural analysis and less weight except being costly. Therefore, it is recommended that CFRP i.e. Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg material may be used for bicycle frame as having higher strength to weight ratio.

VI. CONCLUSIONS

Design and development of bicycle frame for lighter weight was done. The model was subjected to boundary and loading conditions as per ISO 4210-6. The static analysis of bicycle frame was carried out for three materials viz. AISI 4130 steel, Aluminium 6061-T6, and CFRP. Results were obtained in terms of total deformation, total equivalent stress and total equivalent strain for different loading conditions. It was found that the maximum stress induced in the AISI 4130 steel bicycle frame was 153.45 MPa which was less than the yield strength of AISI 4130 Steel (435

MPa). For Aluminium 6061-T6, the maximum stress induced in the bicycle frame was 152.83 MPa which was less than the yield strength of Aluminium 6061-T6 (276 MPa).

In case of Carbon fibre, the maximum stress induced in the bicycle frame was 106.29 MPa which was less than the Modulus of elasticity (Stiffness) of Carbon fibre (230 GPa) hence it is a safe design. Carbon fiber had maximum deformation of 0.817 mm, which was 400% more than that for AISI 4130 steel and 68% more than aluminium 6061-T6 for static start up.

From economics aspect, AISI 4130 steel and Aluminium 6061-T6 bicycle frames were cheaper than carbon fibre bicycle frame and the deformation in carbon fiber was quite high in static structure analysis

From weight point of view, the weight of carbon fiber bicycle is 83% less than AISI 4130 steel and 51% less than Aluminium 6061-T6. Therefore, the most suitable material for bicycle frame is carbon fiber (CFRP) .i.e. Epoxy Carbon UD prepreg as per weight criteria.

REFERENCES

- [1] Vignesh.M , Dr. Arumugam K , Vinoth.S, Hariharan.S, “DESIGN AND ANALYSIS OF FRAME OF AN ELECTRIC BIKE”(2019), International Journal of Engineering Science Invention (IJESI).
- [2] Derek Covill, Philippe Allard, Jean-Marc Drouet, Nicholas Emerson, “ An Assessment of Bicycle Frame Behaviour under Various Load Conditions Using Numerical Simulations”, (2016) Elsevier, Science Direct.
- [3] W H Tan, M Ashraf and L E Ooi, and J Nireesh “Static and Dynamics Analysis of Bicycle Frame”, Journal of Physics: Conference Series(2021).
- [4] ZHANG Long, XIANG Zhongxia “Test Verification and Design of the Bicycle Frame Parameters”, Springer Link, Chinese journal of Mechanical Engineering Vol-28(2015).
- [5] Y. Champoux, P.Vittecoq, P. Maltais “MEASURING THE DYNAMIC STRUCTURAL LOAD OF AN OFF-ROAD BICYCLE FRAME” Springer Link, Experimental Techniques Vol-28(2004).
- [6] Arun Abishek.T, Ashrafali.L.S, Bala Chandran.S, Bala Kumar.S, Suresh.T.P “DESIGN AND ANALYSIS OF SINGLE MAIN FRAME ELECTRIC BIKE CHASSIS”(2021), International Research Journal of Engineering and Technology (IRJET).
- [7] Krishan Kumar Mishra, Prof. Vedansh Chaturvedi “STRESS ANALYSIS OF BICYCLE FRAME USING ANSYS”(2021), International Research Journal of Engineering and Technology (IRJET).
- [8] Nair Ajit, Irfanudeen S, Jeeva N G, Kavin S, Karthikeyan R, “Design and Analysis of Mountain Bike Frame”(2018), International Journal of Pure and Applied Mathematics.
- [9] Chien-Cheng Lin, Song-Jeng Huang and Chi-Chia Liu, “Structural analysis and optimization of bicycle frame designs” (2017), Sage journals. 60
- [10] Akhyar Akhyar, Husaini, Hasanuddin Iskandar and Farhan Ahmad, “Structural Simulations

of Bicycle Frame Behaviour under Various Load Conditions”(2019), Materials Science Forum- Volume 961.

- [11] M. N. V. Krishna Veni, M. Amareswari Reddy, “CONCEPTUAL DESIGN OF BICYCLE FRAME”, International Journal of Engineering Trends and Technology (IJETT) – Volume 38 Number 2- August 2016.
- [12] D. Mohankumar, R. Sabarish, and M. Premjeyakumar, “STRUCTURAL AND MODAL ANALYSIS OF SCOOTER FRAME.” [Online]. Available: <http://www.ijpam.eu>
- [13] A. R. Raut and A. D. Shirbhate, “IJSRST173145 | Design and Analysis of Two Wheeler Composite Chassis Frame A Review,” 2017, [Online]. Available: www.ijrst.com
- [14] B. Venkatesh, A. Kamar, and M. T. Student, “Design and Analysis of Scooty Front Panel By Using Natural Fiber Reinforced Composites,” Int. J. Res. Advent Technol. Spec. Issue, 2018, [Online]. Available: www.ijrat.org
- [15] Y. P. Shaik, N. K. Naidu, V. R. Yadavalli, and M. R. Muthyala, “The Comparison of the Mechanical Characteristics of ABS Using Three Different Plastic Production Techniques,” OALib, vol. 10, no. 05, pp. 1–18, 2023, doi: 10.4236/oalib.1110097.
- [16] F. Rezaei, R. Yunus, N. A. Ibrahim, and E. S. Mahdi, “Development of short-carbon-fiber-reinforced polypropylene composite for car bonnet,” Polym. - Plast. Technol. Eng., vol. 47, no. 4, pp. 351–357, Apr. 2008, doi: 10.1080/03602550801897323.
- [17] T. P. Sathishkumar, J. Naveen, and S. Satheeshkumar, “Hybrid fiber reinforced polymer composites - A review,” Mar. 2014. doi: 10.1177/0731684413516393.
- [18] T. Ageyeva, I. Sibikin, and J. G. Kovács, “Review of thermoplastic resin transfer molding: Process modeling and simulation,” Oct. 01, 2019, MDPI AG. doi: 10.3390/polym11101555.
- [19] S. Li and X. Feng, “Study of structural optimization design on a certain vehicle body-in-white based on static performance and modal analysis,” Mech. Syst. Signal Process., vol. 135, Jan. 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.ymssp.2019.106405.
- [20] T. A. Turner, L. T. Harper, N. A. Warrior, and C. D. Rudd, “Low-cost carbon-fibre-based automotive body panel systems: A performance and manufacturing cost comparison,” Proc. Inst. Mech. Eng. Part D J. Automob. Eng., vol. 222, no. 1, pp. 53–63, 2008, doi: 10.1243/09544070JAUTO406.
- [21] S. Vigneshwaran et al., “Recent advancement in the natural fiber polymer composites: A comprehensive review,” J. Clean. Prod., vol. 277, p. 124109, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.124109.
- [22] M. Davallo, H. Pasdar, and M. Mohseni, “Mechanical Properties of Unsaturated Polyester Resin.”
- [23] Dr. Roman W. Hillermeier, Dr. Tareq Hasson, Lars Friedrich and Cedric Ball, Advanced Thermosetting Resin Matrix Technology For Next Generation High Volume Manufacture Of Automotive Composite Structures, 2013 DOI:10.4271/2013-01-1176
- [24] F. Mullaoğlu, F. Usta, H. S. Türkmen, Z. Kazanci, D. Balkan, and E. Akay, “Deformation Behavior of the Polycarbonate Plates Subjected to Impact Loading,” Procedia Eng., vol. 167, pp. 143–150, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.proeng.2016.11.681.

- [25] Kok Sem Too, Cik Suhana Hassan, Nor Fazilah Abdullah, Ammar Abdulaziz Majeed Al-Talib “Effect of Fiber Orientation on the Mechanical Performance of NaturalFiber Polymer Composite Bicycle Frame using FiniteElementAnalysis” The 2024 International Conference onArtificialLife and Robotics (ICAROB2024), J:COMHorutoHall,Oita, Japan, 2024.

Adoption of Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning in Crop Yield Prediction – A Systematic Review

Udit Jain^{#1}, O.P. Gupta^{*2}

[#]Directorate of Research, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

^{*}College of Agricultural Engineering and Technology, Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana

¹uditjain@pau.edu

²opgupta@pau.edu

Abstract – Food security is a global concern, and accurate crop prediction plays an important role in efficient crop management and optimizing agricultural inputs. Crop yield prediction has emerged as a critical component of modern precision agriculture and Agriculture 4.0. Machine Learning (ML) and Artificial Intelligence (AI) in the past decade have shown remarkable adoption as compared to traditional process-based simulation models and have emerged as a powerful data-driven alternative for capturing complex relationships among multiple agricultural inputs to predict crop yield.

In this study, we conducted a Systematic Literature Review (SLR) using the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA) guidelines to extract and analyse various Machine Learning (ML) and Deep Learning (DL) models for crop yield prediction along with different types of datasets, crops and validation techniques. As per our search criteria, we have identified 1,256 studies from three repositories, and from them we have selected 31 studies for the review based on inclusion and exclusion criteria. We have conducted a thorough analysis of the studies and prepared a comparative analysis, covering the major findings from these studies. According to our analysis, the reviewed studies collectively cover a broader range of crops, including staple cereals, legumes, and horticultural crops. Satellite remote sensing is the dominant data source, while Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV)-based platforms emerged as the fastest-growing source for high-resolution field-level prediction. Random Forest (RF) is the most widely applied algorithm and is also the most frequently the best-performing individual model. Though ensemble models, hybrid deep learning architectures including Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM), Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN), and Transformer-based networks, and Graph Neural Networks (GNN) demonstrate superior performance in complex multi-source settings. It has been observed that multi-source data fusion is consistently associated with the highest predictive accuracy. A notable shift from black-box modelling toward Explainable AI (XAI) has

been observed, and the studies have incorporated multiple interpretability tools, most commonly SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP), to identify key yield-driving variables such as Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI), Land Surface Temperature (LST), and soil moisture. The review identifies persistent gaps in geographic coverage, metric standardisation, and real-world deployment, and outlines directions for future research toward more transparent, transferable, and operationally viable yield prediction systems.

Keywords – machine learning, artificial intelligence, crop yield prediction, systematic review

I. INTRODUCTION

Accurate crop yield prediction is essential for food security, resource management, and agricultural planning[7]. Traditional estimation methods based on field surveys and crop simulation models are often time-consuming and difficult to scale[8]. The increasing availability of heterogeneous datasets, combined with the rapid adoption of machine learning and deep learning, has opened new avenues for faster and more accurate yield forecasting[9]. The expanding volume and diversity of research in this domain across multiple crops, regions, and modelling approaches, emphasise the need for a systematic review of recent developments, as presented in the following sections.

II. Overview of Literature

Several review studies have previously examined the role of machine learning and artificial intelligence techniques for crop yield prediction. For example, as in [6], the review summarized the use of machine learning algorithms such as neural networks, support vector machines, and decision trees in agricultural prediction tasks and highlighted their role in improving yield forecasting and decision-making in farming systems. In another review [10], the author has focused specifically on the use of deep learning and remote sensing data, emphasizing the increase in adoption of models such as CNN and LSTM networks for analysing satellite imagery and time-series agricultural data. More recent surveys have attempted to review a larger number of studies and identify the algorithms and data attributes used in crop yield prediction research across multiple databases [11].

Despite these contributions, existing reviews often concentrate on specific aspects of the problem, such as deep learning approaches, remote sensing datasets, or particular modelling techniques. In many cases, the studies provide broad surveys of machine learning applications in agriculture without presenting a comparative synthesis of modelling strategies, datasets, validation methods, and evaluation metrics used across different crops and regions.

The present review differs from previous studies by capturing the AI landscape of 2022–2025, a period marked by the emergence of transformer-based architectures, graph neural networks, multi-modal data fusion frameworks, and the systematic integration of explainable AI tools into yield prediction pipelines. This study also differs in providing a comparative synthesis of recent research on crop yield prediction using machine learning and artificial intelligence techniques, based on a structured analysis of the selected studies. Using the compiled dataset of reviewed

papers, this study systematically examines the crops studied, data sources used, modelling approaches applied, and evaluation strategies adopted in the literature. By organizing the evidence into comparable categories, the review aims to highlight emerging trends, methodological gaps, and future research opportunities in AI-based crop yield prediction.

B. Artificial Intelligence, Machine Learning, and Deep Learning

The main fundamental of Artificial Intelligence, Machine Learning and Deep Learning is to simulate human thinking capabilities and solve complex problems through computers using data as the source [12]. In the Artificial Intelligence ecosystem, Machine Learning is a subset, capable of developing computational models that acquire knowledge from the inputs and identify patterns in the historical data to establish the relations between the input variables and desired outputs [12][13]. Based on this mechanism, machine learning can learn from the data and predict the results depending upon the input type, quality of data and current conditions. Deep learning is a specialised branch of Machine Learning that models the data into multi-layered neural networks and learns the patterns from unstructured and complex datasets, including images and time-series data [13][14].

C. Global Model Adoption in Agriculture and Crop Production

In the recent decade, worldwide adoption of computational models has drastically increased from simple statistical investigation to advanced data-driven forecasting [9]. While traditional statistical frameworks like Multiple Linear Regression (MLR) offer simple interpretation, their effectiveness is limited by multicollinearity among independent variables, and they struggle to capture complex non-linear interactions[9][15]. In contrast, classical machine learning models, including Random Forest (RF), Gradient Boosting, K-Nearest Neighbors (KNN), and Support Vector Regression (SVR), have gained widespread popularity in the agricultural domain for processing structured, heterogeneous, and high-dimensional datasets[1][16]. These models are highly robust while dealing with multimodal data because they can automatically identify patterns without relying on the strict assumptions of normality or linearity required by traditional regression[9][17]. In addition to using single standalone models, researchers are increasingly adopting ensemble learning techniques to further enhance predictive performance[1]. Ensemble methods work by combining multiple base models like SVM, KNN, and RF to produce a single, more accurate, and reliable predictive framework to leverage their unique individual strengths [1]. Advanced configurations like stacking ensemble learning (SEL) or voting-based frameworks have been shown to significantly outperform individual models by capturing a wider range of feature interactions and improving the model's overall generalization ability on unseen data[1]. Furthermore, while deep learning typically requires massive amounts of information, these classical ML algorithms remain highly effective for small-to-medium-sized datasets and are less prone to overfitting when properly tuned[16].

Despite the adoption and good results of classical machine learning algorithms, their utility is restricted to structured records, as they rely on manual feature engineering and they struggle to identify the relationships among highly intricate and non-linear spatiotemporal modern agricultural big data [16]. Unlike deep learning, which extracts features automatically, traditional

machine learning requires experts to design predictors, a process that is manual, time-consuming, and highly dependent on the level of individual expertise[18].

In contrast, deep learning is characterized as data-hungry because it requires massive datasets (often exceeding 10,000 labelled instances) to effectively tune its vast number of parameters and achieve superior generalization [3]. Deep Learning utilises multi-layered artificial neural networks to automatically learn hierarchical representations directly from complex, high-dimensional data[19][7]. These architectures are specifically designed to capture non-linear patterns that machine learning models may miss[7][20]. In crop production, CNNs are widely employed to extract spatial features from high-resolution imagery to quantify crop health[7][21]. For sequential data, such as weather patterns and growth cycles, Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) like LSTM and Gated Recurrent Units (GRUs) are used to capture temporal dependencies and mitigate gradient issues[16][19]. Furthermore, transformers have emerged as a powerful alternative, leveraging self-attention mechanisms to model global dependencies across long sequences more efficiently than traditional recurrent structures[22][23].

Hybrid deep learning architectures are also being used by researchers to enhance predictive accuracy by combining multiple DL models that combine the unique strengths of different models. For instance, frameworks like CNN-LSTM or GRU-CNN integrate spatial feature extraction with temporal sequence modelling to capture the spatiotemporal dynamics of crop growth[20][24]. For instance, advanced frameworks are utilized in precision agriculture tasks where each data point (such as a 10m × 10m grid square) contains as many as 891 attributes and nearly 20,000 labelled instances — including high-resolution satellite spectral indices, detailed soil characteristics, and hourly weather dynamics[8].

While DL models offer high performance, they are frequently criticized for being black-box systems, meaning their internal logic and decision-making processes are opaque to human users[16][25]. This lack of transparency leads to a trade-off between accuracy and interpretability; although a model may produce highly precise forecasts, the underlying agronomic reasons for its predictions remain hidden[15]. This opacity can hinder the practical adoption of AI in agriculture, as farmers and policymakers require understandable rationales and trustworthy evidence before making high-stakes management decisions[26].

To address these transparency concerns, the field of Explainable Artificial Intelligence (XAI) focuses on developing tools that shed light on the black-box of complex algorithms without sacrificing their predictive power[26][17]. By implementing model-agnostic explanation methods, researchers can identify which input variables, such as specific vegetation indices or soil properties, most significantly influence the final yield prediction. In this review, common XAI techniques applied in agriculture include SHAP (Shapley Additive Explanations), which quantifies feature contributions based on game theory, and LIME (Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations) [1]. These tools provide both global and local insights, allowing stakeholders to validate model reasoning against established scientific knowledge and fostering the trust necessary for the widespread implementation of smart farming technologies[17].

II. MATERIALS AND METHODS

This systematic review was conducted and reported in accordance with the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA) 2020 statement [27]. The PRISMA framework ensures a high degree of transparency, methodological accuracy, and reproducibility for efficiently analysing published evidence. It ensures that the review process is documented and the potential sources of bias are minimized.

A. PRISMA Framework and Protocol

The review protocol was prospectively designed before the commencement of the literature search. The protocol defined the research questions, eligibility criteria, search strategy, data extraction framework, and synthesis approach.

The primary objective of this systematic review is to synthesize and evaluate the current advancements in Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) for crop yield prediction. As global agriculture faces the dual pressures of climate change and a population projected to reach 9.7 billion by 2050, traditional statistical methods are increasingly replaced by data-driven models capable of handling high-dimensional, multi-source information[28][29]. This review aims to identify the most effective architectures, explore the impact of multimodal data integration, and address the critical trade-off between model accuracy and interpretability. The research questions guiding this review are:

- What ML and AI methods have been applied to crop yield prediction between 2020 and 2025, and how do they compare in predictive performance?
- What input data modalities and crop types have been investigated, and to what extent does the integration of multimodal data improve the precision and scalability of agricultural forecasting?
- How can Explainable AI (XAI) techniques be leveraged to overcome the black-box nature of complex models, and what agronomic insights have they generated?
- What methodological gaps and limitations persist in the current literature?

PRISMA is a four-phase workflow for data selection and evaluation, designed to help authors improve the reporting of systematic reviews and meta-analyses by providing an organized structure to the review. The systematic process employed in this research involves the following stages:

1. Identification: A comprehensive search across multiple global academic databases, including ScienceDirect, Scopus and Google Scholar, was conducted using targeted keywords related to Artificial Intelligence, Machine Learning and Crop Yield Prediction
2. Screening: Initial evaluation of the identified records to remove duplicates and filter out studies that do not align with the specific focus of the review based on titles and abstracts
3. Eligibility: A full-text assessment of the remaining papers against predefined inclusion and exclusion criteria, ensuring that only high-quality, landmark research articles involving specific ML/DL architectures and agricultural applications are retained
4. Included: The final selection of studies that are systematically evaluated and presented in the review, providing a solid foundation for synthesizing the current advancements in the field

By following this protocol, the review minimizes selection bias and ensures that the synthesis of AI and ML models in agriculture is conducted in a clear, consistent, and exhaustive manner.

B. Identification Phase

The identification phase represents the initial retrieval of records from electronic databases. To facilitate this, a search string was formulated and applied to the Title, Abstract, and Keywords fields of each database. The final search string is presented below:

Final Search String:
 (("machine learning" OR "deep learning" OR "artificial intelligence")
 AND ("crop yield" OR "yield prediction" OR "yield forecasting")
 AND ("field experiment" OR "data"))

In this search string, AND was used to combine different concepts and OR to include similar terms. Three main concepts were used in the search: (i) analytical methods such as machine learning, deep learning, and artificial intelligence; (ii) agricultural outcomes such as crop yield, yield prediction, and yield forecasting; and (iii) the data context, including field experiments or datasets. Additionally, the following inclusion criteria were applied during the identification phase (Table 1):

Table I

INCLUSION CRITERIA FOR THE IDENTIFICATION PHASE

ID	Criteria	Description
IC1	Databases	Science Direct, Springer and Google Scholar
IC2	Search period	2022 to 2025, both years inclusive
IC3	Search fields	Article title, abstract, and keywords
IC4	Document type	Peer-reviewed journal articles only
IC5	Language	English

IC1: Science Direct, Springer and Google Scholar were selected for their complementary and broad coverage of agricultural science, computer science, and engineering literature. IC2: The search period from 2022 to 2025 was chosen to capture the most recent and significant advances in ML/AI applications for crop yield prediction. IC3: Restricting the search to titles, abstracts, and keywords. IC4: Only peer-reviewed journal articles were considered, as they represent the highest standard of validated scientific contribution. IC5: English was adopted as the primary language for this review.

A total of 1,238 records were retrieved from the three databases (Science Direct: 416; Springer: 133; Google Scholar: 689). An additional 18 records were identified through manual citation and reference list searching of closely related articles, yielding 1,256 total records before deduplication.

C. Screening Phase

In the screening phase, the identified records were systematically evaluated against the inclusion and exclusion criteria as mentioned in Table II. The process involved two sequential steps: deduplication followed by title and abstract screening.

Table II
INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA FOR THE SCREENING PHASE

ID	Criteria	Description
SC1	Duplicates	Duplicate records identified across databases were removed
SC2	Record fields	Records must include title, publication year, abstract, and DOI
SC3	Relevance	Title and abstract must relate to ML/AI-based crop yield prediction
SC4	Document type	Exclude conference abstracts, book chapters, editorials, and grey literature.

Following deduplication (SC1), 172 duplicate records were removed, yielding 1084 unique records for screening. The remaining 1084 records were screened based on the Table 1 and Table 2 criteria. A total of 1011 records were excluded at this stage for the following reasons: title or abstract not related to crop yield prediction (SC3; n = 354); title or abstract did not use ML/AI as the primary method (SC3: n = 287); outside publication date range (IC2: n = 193); and non-English language (IC5: n = 177). This yielded 73 records advanced to the eligibility phase.

D. Eligibility Phase

The eligibility phase involved a detailed assessment of the full texts of all 73 records retained after screening. Each study was evaluated against the pre-defined eligibility criteria presented in Table III.

Table III
INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA FOR THE ELIGIBILITY PHASE

ID	Criteria	Description
EC1	Content	Crop yield prediction or estimation as the primary outcome
EC2	Methods	At least one ML or AI method as the primary analytical approach
EC3	Data	Empirical data (field trials, satellite, IoT, UAV, or climate records); purely simulated datasets excluded
EC4	Performance	At least one quantitative metric: RMSE, R ² , MAE, MAPE, or NRMSE
EC5	Full-text access	Full text must be available for retrieval and assessment

Full texts were retrieved and assessed. A total of 42 studies were excluded at this stage for the following reasons: did not report a quantitative yield-specific performance metric (EC4; n = 18); used exclusively simulated or synthetic data with no empirical validation (EC3; n = 8); conference abstracts or book chapters with no full peer-reviewed article available (EC5; n = 4); and insufficient methodological detail for data extraction (EC1 & EC2; n = 12).

E. Inclusion Phase

A total of 31 peer-reviewed articles were included in the systematic review. These studies span the publication period 2022–2025 and collectively address the application of ML and AI methods for crop yield prediction across diverse crop types, geographic regions, input data modalities, and spatial scales. The characteristics and findings of all included studies are presented in detail in Section III (Summary).

F. PRISMA Overview

Fig. 1 shows the overview of the PRISMA process used for the systematic literature review, comprising the stages of identification, screening, eligibility, and inclusion to select relevant studies for analysis.

III SUMMARY

Following the application of PRISMA eligibility criteria, 31 peer-reviewed studies were included in this systematic review. The shortlisted studies show a trend shift in agricultural yield

prediction, from traditional statistical regressions towards high-performance ensemble methods, complex deep learning architectures, and transparent, Explainable AI (XAI) frameworks. The extracted information from the selected studies is summarized in Table IV.

The included studies cover a wide range of agricultural contexts, crop types, geographic regions, data sources, and modelling approaches. Collectively, they address yield prediction at scales ranging from individual plants and trees to national territories, and used methodologies covering classical machine learning, deep learning, hybrid architectures, and computer vision-based systems.

The number of published studies increased steadily over the review period, from 12.9% in 2022 and 19.4% in 2023 to 16.1% in 2024, with a sharp rise to 51.6% in 2025. This sharp acceleration in 2025, representing more than half of the total included studies, reflects the rapid maturation of AI-driven agricultural technologies.

Geographically, the reviewed studies span multiple regions, including Asia, North America, Europe, and Africa, reflecting the global interest in applying artificial intelligence techniques to agricultural yield forecasting.

The studies collectively addressed 18 distinct crop types, reflecting broad coverage across agricultural commodities. Wheat was the most studied crop, featured in 29.0% studies, followed by maize or corn in 19.4% and potato in 12.9% studies. Other staple cereals, including rice, soybean, and sorghum, were each addressed in ~10% studies. A notable 38.7% of the studies focused on horticultural and high-value crops, including apple, grape, peanut, citrus, passion fruit, strawberry, mango, oil palm, mungbean, tea, and cotton, indicating an expansion of AI-based yield research beyond staple food crops into commercial horticulture crops.

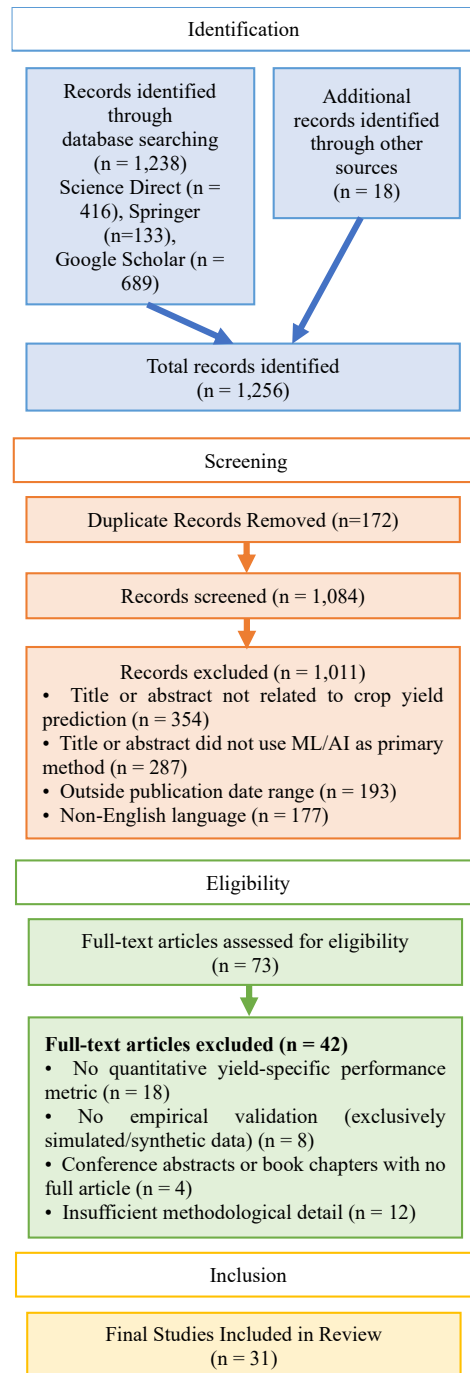


Fig 1. Overview of the PRISMA process used for SLR

Few studies (22.6%) employed multi-crop frameworks, predicting yield across two or more species within a single modelling architecture.

A. Data Sources and Input Variables

The reviewed studies relied on a combination of agricultural, environmental, and remote sensing datasets to develop crop yield prediction models, demonstrating considerable heterogeneity in data acquisition strategies.

Table V summarizes the categories of data sources and their frequency of occurrence across the reviewed studies.

Table IV

SUMMARY OF INCLUDED STUDIES ON ML/AI-BASED CROP YIELD PREDICTION (2022–2025)

N o.	Reviewe d Studies	Ye ar	Input Variables	ML/DL Models Used	Validat ion	Best Model & Results	Key Contribut ion	Blackb ox /XAI
1	Passion fruit yield via semantic segmenta tion[30]	20 25	Image pixels, focal length, sensor size, depth values	U-Net (density-attention, multi-scale fusion); YOLO, Mask R-CNN, Segmenter , Segformer	7:2:1 split; 10-fold CV	Precision=0.88, Recall=0.83 , Acc=0.85, F1=0.85	Pixel-to-physical yield mapping via camera parameter s; overcomes occlusion & dense clusters	XAI (heatma p)
2	Precise grape yield via modified Deep CNN (DCNN)[7]	20 24	Cluster features, growth stage, maturity, color histogram, texture, edge	KNN, MLR, SVM, RF, DCNN, M-DCNN	70/15/1 5 split;	M-DCNN: Acc=97.35 %, R ² >0.98, F1=73.32%	M-DCNN with conv. layers for precise grape quantificat ion from high-res imagery	Blackb ox
3	Peanut yield via remote sensing & phenolog ical features[31]	20 25	NDVI, GNDVI, EVI, RVI; VI_max, VI_cum, VI_ch, VI_rate	LR, Random Forest (RF)	Leave-one-out CV; 355 plots	RF (GNDVI): R ² =0.820, MAE=0.288 t/ha, RMSE=0.40 5 t/ha	Multi-stage phenologi cal params improve yield for root-fruit crops vs. single-stage	XAI
4	Strawber ry weekly yield via AI & vision[16]	20 25	YOLOv8 counts (flowers, immature/ma ture fruit); 23 weather features	YOLOv8n , MLR, VAR, GBM, RF, LSTM, TCN	RFE feature selectio n; manual field count	MLR: R ² =0.908 (Brilliance); MLR: R ² =0.633 (Sensation); GBM: R ² =0.848 (Medallion)	Vision-based object detection integrated with weather time-series for	XAI

							weekly harvest planning	
5	MangoSense: time-series dataset for mango yield[22]	2025	Flower area, fruitlet count, orientation (8 dirs), weather (wind)	DeepLab V3+, PSPNet, SegFormer, Swin-S, YOLO11-seg, Mask R-CNN, DETR, SAM	Benchmark on 40,424 patches from 768 images	Swin-S: 67.35 IoU (flower); YOLO11+ SAM: 78.97 IoU (fruitlet); 80.5 mAP50	First public time-series multi-view mango dataset with semi-automatic annotation pipeline	XAI
6	eXplainable potato yield prediction [15]	2025	Soil moisture, EC (HCP/PRP), slope, NDVI, OM, pH, P/Al ratio, CEC, nutrients (30 features)	VOTE-LGCB (CatBoost +LightGBM), LASSO, Elastic Net, Extra Tree, LightGBM, CatBoost	80/20 split; 5-fold CV	VOTE-LGCB: R=0.896, RMSE=508.5, Reliability=93.75%	Ensemble VOTE-LGCB + Boruta-SHAP + MCDM (WASPAS, MOORA) for soil factor identification	XAI (SHAP)
7	Weight-optimized stacked LSTM-CRF for multi-crop[24]	2025	N, P, K, area, harvested area, soil moisture, rainfall, temp, pH, NDVI	SLSTM-CRF, MSGNDO optimizer, CNN, RNN, ResNet-50	75/25 split; 5-fold CV	MSGNDO-SLSTM-CRF: MAE=3.55, RMSE=24.46 (DS1); MAE=5.20, RMSE=29.16 (DS2)	Weight-optimized Stacked LSTM+C RF with MSGNDO for spatial-temporal multi-crop forecasting	XAI (feat. importance)
8	Early wheat yield via open-	2025	NDVI, ET, Precipitation, LST	SVR, RF, ANN, LSTM	5-fold CV; 70/15/15 split	LSTM (NDVI+LST): R ² ≈0.96; LST most	Open-access global datasets	XAI (SHAP)

	access datasets [12]					effective variable	for early yield estimation 3 months pre-harvest in data-scarce regions	
9	Hybrid feature selection for paddy rice [14]	2024	Soil pH, topsoil depth, rainfall, temp, humidity, wind, groundwater nutrients, transmissivity	SVR, kNN, DT, RF, GBM optimized by ICOA	5-fold forward chaining CV	ICOA-SVR: $R^2=0.572$, MAE=0.151	Hybrid feature selection + ICOA hyperparameter tuning to reduce dimensionality	XAI (residual plots, FA)
10	Explainable ML for corn yield via UAV [1]	2025	SCCCI, TCARI, Red band	GLM, KNN, PCR, RF, SVM, BRNN, Ensemble (GLM+RF)	5-fold CV; 10 repetitions	Ensemble RF: $R^2=0.90$, RMSE=0.86 Mg/ha	Explainable UAV-based corn yield prediction using SHAP, PDP, ICE for precision agriculture	XAI (SHAP, PDP, ICE)
11	DL-RSMv2: transparent mungbean yield [20]	2025	Soil wetness, temp (min/max), precipitation, wind, cloud, humidity, flowering/maturity days, seed weight	1D-CNN, GRU, Transformer, GRU-CNN hybrid	90:10 split	GRU-CNN: RMSE=201 kg/ha, MAE=152 kg/ha, $R^2 \approx 0.70$	SVER framework interprets DL via full-factorial simulated experimental design	XAI (SVER, gradient RSM)
12	Crop yield in Senegal	2024	38 spatiotemporal &	RF, XGBoost, CatBoost,	5-fold CV; 20%	CatBoost: RMSE=0.294,	First VAE-based	XAI (perm.

	with synthetic data[13]		physiographical features (planting/growing/harvest stages)	LightGBM; VAE (data gen.)	unseen test set	nRMSE=0.143, MAE=0.18	synthetic tabular data generation for agriculture in Senegal	importance)
13	S-MDFM: multimodal UAV fusion for wheat [32]	2025	10 spectral bands/indices, 7 texture features, canopy cover, temp, 18 variety Ids	MDFM, AS-MDFM, S-MDFM (ResNet+ FiLM)	80:20 split; next-year validation	S-MDFM: $R^2=0.854$, rRMSE=16.12%	Stage Error Metrics (SEMs) propagation + DRID for drought-resistant wheat variety screening	XAI (spatial heatmaps)
14	UAS digital twin for cotton growth [33]	2025	Canopy Cover (CC), Height (CH), Volume (CV), Excess Greenness (EXG)	MLR, K-means, Hybrid growth models	Cross-year validation (3 train, 1 test)	Hybrid: RRMSE=9% (CC), 13% (CH), 14% (CV), 18% (EXG)	First UAS-based digital twin for in-season morphological forecasting in field crops	Blackbox
15	GATv2 for intra-field wheat variation [8]	2025	Sentinel-1/2 bands, NDVI/NDWI/NDBI, weather, soil pH, nutrients, OM, clay, elevation, slope	GATv2, XGBoost, Pointwise NN, CNN	Unseen field holdout; pre/post-harvest tasks	GATv2: $R^2=86.9\%$, nRMSE=9.6%	Graph Attention Networks for spatiotemporal dependencies in irregularly shaped fields (10m)	Blackbox

16	Ensemble learning for individual apple trees [34]	2025	NDVI, BNDVI, NGRDI, VDVI, RVI	RF, SVR, PLS, Ridge, SEL, GSSE	5-fold CV; 100 trees	GSSE (S3+S4): $R^2=0.759$, RMSE=4.43 kg	First Growth Stage Stacking Ensemble (GSSE) for individual apple tree yield estimation	XAI (SHAP)
17	TCN-Transformer for winter wheat [23]	2025	EVI, LAI, FPAR, Temperature, Precipitation	TCN, Transformer, TCT, LSTM, CNN-BiLSTM, LightGBM, XGBoost	Leave-one-year-out CV; test on 2019–2020	TCT: $R^2=0.80$, RMSE=646 kg/ha, MAPE=10 %	Dual-branch TCT captures local temporal patterns (TCN) + long-range phenology (Transformer)	XAI (SHAP, 8-day)
18	ML/DL comparison for global potato yield[29]	2025	Temperature, Precipitation, Pesticides, Year, Country	KNN, GBM, XGBoost, MLP, GNN, GRU, LSTM	5-fold CV	GNN: MSE=0.024, $R^2=0.517$	GNN for complex spatial patterns in global potato yield prediction	XAI (farmer-focused)
19	Climate change impact on maize & soybean[9]	2024	Min/max/mean temp, total precipitation (May–Oct)	SVR, Elastic Net, RFR, GBR	80/20 split; 3-fold CV (tuning)	RF: $R^2=0.73$, RMSE=0.61 Mt/ha (maize); $R^2=0.64$, RMSE=0.21 Mt/ha (soybean)	Quantified climate change impact: maize yield ↓18.5%, soybean ↓9.63% by 2100	XAI (feat. importance)
20	Durum wheat	2022	Monthly mean temp,	SVR, RF, ELM,	3-fold CV;	DNN: $R^2=0.96$,	Data augmentat	XAI (PDP,

	forecasting in Algeria[3]		precipitation, humidity (Nov–May)	ANN, DNN	three dataset scenarios	RMSE=0.04 q/ha (large DS); RF: $R^2=0.84$ (small DS)	ion by merging provincial datasets for yield forecasting in data-scarce regions	ICE, ALE)
21	IoT strawberry yield [25]	2025	Integrated env. values (Model 1); differential fluctuation values (Model 2)	MLR, GAM, SVR	Cross-validation; 4 seasons (2015–2019)	GAM (differential): Adj. $R^2=0.72$, MAPE=0.18	Differential input scheme for non-parametric regression in multi-harvest horticultural crops	XAI (GAM structure)
22	Corn yield factors in Colombia [35]	2024	Solar radiation, precipitation, vapor pressure, max/min temp (from 20 vars)	ANN (MLP), Ridge Regression	RRelief F feature selection; subset vs. total vars	ANN (subset): RMSE=0.122 (87.84% acc.)	Solar radiation & precipitation more influential than temperature in Neotropical zone	XAI (RRelief F)
23	Soybean yield forecasting in Brazil[36]	2023	ONI, temp (max/min), solar radiation, rainfall, hot/dry days, ET, SPI, STI, NDVI, EVI, CVI, GLI	Ridge LR, RF, XGBoost, ANN, LSTM, Ensemble	Leave-one-year-out CV	Ensemble: rRMSE=4.8% (national), $R^2=0.76$	National-scale forecasting via weighted aggregation; mid-season (Dec) forecast 3 months pre-harvest	Blackbox

24	UAV multi-sensor fusion for wheat [37]	2023	VI, GLCM texture, plant height, canopy temperature	Cubist, SVM, DNN, Ridge, RF, Stacking (StRR)	80 random train/test splits	StRR: $R^2=0.692$, RMSE=0.916 t/ha, RPD=1.771	Multi-sensor stacking (RGB+multispectral+thermal) outperforms single-sensor approaches	Blackbox
25	Dynamic maize yield on multi-source data [38]	2023	NDVI, NDRE, NDWI, GNDVI, temp (min/mean/max), vapor, radiation, ET, wind, N/P/K, CEC, pH, soil texture	RF, Cubist, NNET, SVM, GPR, kNN	Leave-one-year-out CV	GPR/RF: nRMSE=13.31% (late-season); NNET+PCA (early-season)	Phenological stage-triggered forecasting + PCA for reducing prediction uncertainty	XAI
26	Citrus yield via DL + field & satellite data [39]	2023	Irrigation, fertilization, phytosanitary, climate, parcel size, rootstock, NDVI, NDWI	FCN, Ridge, CatBoost, GBM, RF, AdaBoost, LightGBM, XGBoost, OMP	K-fold CV; 5 parcel holdout	FCN: MAE=0.145, MSE=0.046; OMP: MAE=0.232, MSE=0.075	High-dim. Field management data + satellite imagery reduces prediction error for citrus	Blackbox
27	Irish Potato & maize yield prediction [40]	2023	Monthly rainfall & temperature (growth stages 1–5)	RF, Polynomial Regression, SVR	5-fold CV; 85/15 split	RF: Potato $R^2=0.875$, RMSE=510.8 kg/ha; Maize $R^2=0.817$, RMSE=129.9 kg/ha	Stage-specific weather thresholds and importance scores for IoT-based precision farming	XAI

28	Winter wheat forecasting, multi-source data [41]	2022	EVI, SIF, precipitation, wet day freq., temp (avg/min/max), ET, vapor, humidity, solar rad., lat/lon	RF, MLR	10-fold CV; leave-one-year-out	RF: $R^2=0.87$, RMSE=488.6 kg/ha	SIF + EVI + climate for national-scale wheat forecasting 2 months pre-harvest	Blackbox
29	Hybrid AquaCrop-ML for tea crop [4]	2022	Temp (min/max), humidity, rainfall, solar rad., soil type, canopy cover, irrigation, N/P/K, crop calendar	AquaCrop, SVR, AdaBoost, ARD, DT, MLP, MLR, RANSAC, XGBoost, SVM	10-fold CV; 70/30 split	XGBoost: MAE=0.093 t/ha, RMSE=0.120 t/ha	ML outperforms AquaCrop simulation for perennial tea crops with noisy real-world data	Blackbox
30	Oil palm yield, multi-source data [42]	2022	VIs (SR, WDRVI, NDVI, SAVI, MSAVI, GNDVI, GCVI, EVI), LST, rainfall, age, N, P	MLR, XGBoost, SVR, RF, DNN	70/30 split; 10-fold CV	DNN: $R^2=0.91$, RMSE=2.92 t/ha, MAE=2.56 t/ha, MAPE=0.09	Multi-source + backward elimination feature selection for block-level oil palm yield	Blackbox
31	Satellite VIs + ML for crop yield	2023	Vegetation indices, weather data	DT, RF, Lasso, SVR	Not reported	RF: $R^2=0.77$, RMSE=0.39 t/ha, MAE=0.28 t/ha	First ML-based crop yield study in Rajasthan using multi-source remote sensing data	Blackbox

Table V
DATA SOURCE CATEGORIES IDENTIFIED ACROSS THE REVIEWED STUDIES

Data Source Category	Frequency	Description and Examples
Satellite Remote Sensing	45.2% (14)	MODIS, Sentinel-1/2 and Landsat; primarily for NDVI, EVI, LAI, SIF, and land surface temperature
Reanalysis / Climate Datasets	32.3% (10)	ERA5-Land, NASA POWER, AgERA5, PRISM, CRU_TS
Historical Statistical Records	29.0% (9)	Government databases (USDA, ISTAT, ICAR, IBGE); multi-year tabular yield data
UAV / Airborne Imagery	22.6% (7)	Multispectral (RGB, NIR, RedEdge), thermal infrared;
Ground / Proximal Sensors	19.4% (6)	IoT nodes, soil sensors, camera systems;
Public Benchmarks / Kaggle	9.7% (3)	Pre-compiled datasets;
Multi-source Fusion	38.7% (12)	Combination of two or more of the above

Remote sensing datasets derived from satellite imagery were among the most commonly used inputs (45.2%). Vegetation indices such as Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) were widely used as indicators of crop health and biomass.

Several studies incorporated Meteorological datasets (32.3%) to capture commonly used variables such as temperature, precipitation, humidity, and solar radiation, which directly influence crop growth.

Many studies employed multimodal datasets (38.7%), integrating weather variables, satellite imagery, soil characteristics, and historical yield records within a single modelling framework. This integration of heterogeneous datasets allows machine learning models to capture complex interactions among environmental variables, which can significantly improve predictive performance. For instance, the stacking ensemble framework mentioned in [37], which integrated UAV-derived RGB, multispectral, and thermal infrared data, achieved $R^2 = 0.692$ and $RMSE = 0.916$ t/ha for wheat yield prediction, outperforming any single-sensor model in the same study. Similarly, the GATv2 model of [8], fusing Sentinel-1, Sentinel-2, weather, and soil data, achieved $R^2 = 86.9\%$ for intra-field winter wheat yield prediction in Sweden.

B. Comparative Performance of ML and DL Models

A total of 28 distinct model types or architectures were identified across the included studies. Table VI summarizes the frequency and application context of the major algorithm categories.

Table VI

FREQUENCY AND CONTEXT OF ML/DL ALGORITHM CATEGORIES

Model / Algorithm	Frequency	Context of Application
Random Forest	51.6% (16)	Universally applied across tabular, remote sensing, and time-series data; consistently strong baseline
Support Vector Machine/Regression	32.3% (10)	Robust for small to medium datasets; used as primary or comparison model
Deep Neural Network	29.0% (9)	High capacity for complex feature interactions; favored for large multi-source datasets
LSTM / Stacked LSTM	22.6% (7)	Preferred for sequential time-series inputs (climate, NDVI, phenology)
XGBoost / Gradient Boosting	29.0% (9)	Fast convergence and high accuracy on tabular data; widely used for ensemble strategies
CatBoost / LightGBM	16.1% (5)	Effective on heterogeneous and high-dimensional datasets
CNN (1D/2D/3D)	9.4% (6)	Applied to imagery and spectral data; often combined with recurrent layers
Graph Neural Networks (GNN/GATv2)	9.7% (3)	Emerging for spatial dependency modelling in irregularly shaped fields
Transformer / TCN-Transformer	6.5% (2)	State-of-the-art for long-range temporal dependency; dual-branch designs emerging
Ensemble / Stacking models	25.8% (8)	Consistently outperform individual models; used in 8 of 31 studies as best performer

Random Forest remains a benchmark for robustness and was the most global algorithm, appearing in 16 of 31 studies (51.6%) either as the primary model or as a benchmark comparator. In Rwanda, RF was identified as the superior predictor for Irish potato ($R^2=0.875$) and maize ($R^2=0.817$) yields[40]. In Ohio, RF achieved values of 0.73 for maize and 0.64 for soybean[9].

Ensemble and stacking approaches including combining predictions from multiple base learners, consistently outperform individual algorithms by capturing non-linear relationships and reducing variance. For corn yield in the US, an ensemble model combined using RF achieved an R^2 of 0.90, significantly higher than individual models like SVM ($R^2=0.67$)[35].

Similarly, in potato studies, the VOTE-LGCB voting-based ensemble outperformed classical CatBoost and LightGBM[15].

Studies across various crops show that architectures like Deep Neural Networks (DNN) and Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN) achieve significantly higher accuracy than traditional models. For instance, in oil palm yield prediction, a DNN achieved an R^2 of 0.91, outperforming XGBoost (0.87), Random Forest (0.65), and SVR (0.55)[42]. Similarly, in grape yield estimation, a Modified DCNN (M-DCNN) achieved a training accuracy of 97.35%, surpassing traditional RF, SVM, and KNN models[7].

For time-series data, LSTM networks and GRUs are favored over static ML models. In wheat yield studies, LSTM was identified as the most successful algorithm, reaching an R^2 of 0.958 and providing accurate estimations up to three months before harvest[12]. In strawberry studies, while ML models were stable, the Attention-CNN-LSTM hybrid proved to be the best performer for multi-week price and yield forecasting[16].

GNNs have emerged as superior tools for modelling intra-field spatial variations. For winter wheat, a GNN-based framework achieved an R^2 of 86.9% for yield variation, significantly outperforming XGBoost and standard CNNs[8]. In potato research, GNNs achieved an MSE of 0.02363, excelling over XGBoost and MLP baselines by effectively capturing complex networked data points[29].

Transformers and attention mechanisms are increasingly used to capture long-range temporal dependencies. The TCN-Transformer (TCT) dual-branch model achieved state-of-the-art results for winter wheat ($R^2=0.80$), outperforming standalone LSTMs and TCNs both locally and globally[23].

Combining different DL layers often yields the highest precision. A GRU-CNN hybrid was found to be the most effective for mungbean yield prediction, achieving the lowest RMSE (200.968 kg/ha) and highest R^2 (~ 0.7)[20]. Furthermore, the Weight-Optimized Stacked LSTM (SLSTM-CRF), when optimized with a Modified Generalized Normal Distribution Optimizer (MSGNDO), showed significantly lower prediction error than standard CNNs, RNNs, and LSTMs[24].

Computer vision frameworks based on object detection and semantic segmentation are widely used in horticultural crops (passion fruit, grape, strawberry, and mango). These studies employed architectures including YOLOv8, YOLO11, Mask R-CNN, U-Net, and SegFormer to detect and count fruits directly from imagery, translating pixel-level detections into yield estimates[30][16][22].

C. Model Validation Strategies

K-fold cross-validation was the most widely used validation method (67.7%), most commonly with five folds, often alongside a fixed train-test split (58.1%) at ratios of 70:30 or 80:20. Some studies tested their models on data from different years to better simulate real forecasting conditions, while a few (9.7%) tested on entirely unseen fields or regions to check how well the model generalises.

D. Explainability and Interpretability

Explainability and interpretability have increasingly become a part of AI-based crop yield research. Earlier studies largely relied on black-box models that deliver predictions without

revealing the reasoning behind them. The black-box approach limited the model's practical utility for farmers and policymakers who need to understand and trust model outputs. Over time, the research has shifted towards Explainable AI (XAI), with 64.5% of the reviewed studies incorporating some form of interpretability analysis.

SHAP (SHapley Additive exPlanations) emerged as the most widely adopted explainability tool, consistently identifying moisture content, NDVI, land surface temperature, and EVI as the most influential predictors across different crops and regions. Other techniques, including Partial Dependence Plots (PDP), Individual Conditional Expectation (ICE) plots, and feature importance ranking, were also used to visualise how individual variables affect predicted yields.

In several recent studies, explainability was treated as a core research objective rather than an optional add-on, reflecting the increased interest in transparent and actionable insights[15]. One study introduced an innovative approach called Simulated Virtual Experimental Runs (SVER), which mimics classical experimental design to interpret deep learning model behaviour[20].

E. Key Innovations and Emerging Themes

Several recurring innovation themes emerged across the reviewed studies, reflecting the evolving directions of AI-based crop yield research.

Multi-modal data fusion - Rather than relying on a single data source, several studies combined multiple types of inputs within a single model, including UAV imagery, satellite data, weather records, and soil information. Studies that fused data from different sensors or growth stages consistently achieved higher accuracy.

Digital twins and real-time monitoring - Some studies moved toward continuous, in-season crop monitoring rather than end-of-season yield estimation. By regularly capturing crop growth using UAVs or camera systems, these frameworks enable farmers to track crop development in near real-time and anticipate yield outcomes well before harvest[33][16].

Tackling data scarcity - Limited availability of labelled agricultural data remains a practical challenge, particularly in developing regions. Studies addressed this through strategies such as generating synthetic training data (Variational AutoEncoders (VAE))[13], merging datasets from neighbouring areas, applying transfer learning, and using crop simulation models to supplement real observations, making ML approaches viable even where field data is sparse.

III LIMITATIONS AND SCOPE OF WORK

A. Limitations

While this review provides a comprehensive synthesis of recent advances, several limitations should be acknowledged.

The search was conducted across three databases, viz. Springer, Science Direct, and Google Scholar and while this provided broad coverage, relevant studies indexed in other repositories or published in languages other than English may have been missed. By focusing on a set of 31 papers, this review may not capture the full breadth of the AI/ML literature in agriculture. Important technical concepts or niche model variations may have been omitted due to the selective nature of the inclusion criteria.

The inclusion criteria restricted the review to peer-reviewed research articles, excluding review papers and technical reports that may contain relevant methodological contributions.

Direct performance comparison was limited by the inconsistent use of evaluation metrics and differing crops and regional contexts, making it difficult to draw definitive conclusions about which model or data combination performs best universally.

The rapid pace of publication in this field, particularly the surge in 2025, but there will be some relevant work published before the search cutoff date may not be reflected in these findings.

B. Scope of Work

As per the findings from this review, the future of AI in agriculture is directed toward the development of autonomous, adaptive, and human-centric ecosystems that move beyond static predictions.

The integration of real-time data streams from multiple sources, including IoT sensor networks, drone-based systems, and live weather feeds, into operational forecasting pipelines can be a natural next step towards practical deployment. Addition of digital twin frameworks could definitely enable continuous and field-level crop monitoring throughout the growing season.

Leveraging AI-based yield prediction models for long-term climate change impact assessment while projecting how shifting temperature and precipitation patterns will affect productivity under different scenarios will offer a valuable avenue for supporting national and regional food security concerns. Combining process-based crop models with machine learning in hybrid frameworks may provide the most robust path forward for this purpose.

In addition, the growing interest in explainable artificial intelligence presents new opportunities for improving the interpretability of machine learning models in agriculture. Understanding the relative importance of environmental variables influencing yield predictions can support more informed decision-making for farmers and policymakers.

Also, establishing standardized benchmarking datasets and evaluation protocols would greatly enhance the comparability of future studies and accelerate progress in the development of reliable crop yield prediction systems.

REFERENCES

- [1] C. Kumar, J. Dhillon, Y. Huang, and K. Reddy, "Explainable machine learning models for corn yield prediction using UAV multispectral data," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 231, Apr. 2025.
- [2] P. Majumdar, S. Mitra, and D. Bhattacharya, "IoT for Promoting Agriculture 4.0: a Review from the Perspective of Weather Monitoring, Yield Prediction, Security of WSN Protocols, and Hardware Cost Analysis," *Journal of Biosystems Engineering* 2021 46:4, vol. 46, no. 4, pp. 440–461, Nov. 2021.
- [3] N. Chergui, "Durum wheat yield forecasting using machine learning," *Artificial Intelligence in Agriculture*, vol. 6, pp. 156–166, Jan. 2022.
- [4] D. Batool *et al.*, "A Hybrid Approach to Tea Crop Yield Prediction Using Simulation Models and Machine Learning," *Plants* 2022, Vol. 11, vol. 11, no. 15, Jul. 2022.

- [5] D. Moher, J. Tetzlaff, A. C. Tricco, M. Sampson, and D. G. Altman, "Epidemiology and reporting characteristics of systematic reviews," *PLoS Med.*, vol. 4, no. 3, pp. 447–455, Mar. 2007.
- [6] T. van Klompenburg, A. Kassahun, and C. Catal, "Crop yield prediction using machine learning: A systematic literature review," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 177, p. 105709, Oct. 2020.
- [7] S. Zheng, P. Gao, J. Zhang, Z. Ma, and S. Chen, "A precise grape yield prediction method based on a modified DCNN model," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 225, p. 109338, Oct. 2024.
- [8] O. Åström *et al.*, "Predicting intra-field yield variations for winter wheat using remote sensing and Graph Attention Networks," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 237, Oct. 2025.
- [9] R. Dhillon, G. Takoo, V. Sharma, and M. Nagle, "Utilizing Machine Learning Framework to Evaluate the Effect of Climate Change on Maize and Soybean Yield," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 221, Jun. 2024.
- [10] P. Muruganantham, S. Wibowo, S. Grandhi, N. H. Samrat, and N. Islam, "A Systematic Literature Review on Crop Yield Prediction with Deep Learning and Remote Sensing," *Remote Sensing 2022, Vol. 14*, vol. 14, no. 9, Apr. 2022.
- [11] S. M. Shawon, F. B. Ema, A. K. Mahi, F. L. Niha, and H. T. Zubair, "Crop yield prediction using machine learning: An extensive and systematic literature review," *Smart Agricultural Technology*, vol. 10, no. 7, p. 100718, Mar. 2025.
- [12] M. C. Akcapinar and H. Apaydin, "Early yield estimation in wheat using open access global datasets and artificial intelligence," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 237, p. 110486, Oct. 2025.
- [13] M. A. Razavi *et al.*, "Enhancing crop yield prediction in Senegal using advanced machine learning techniques and synthetic data," *Artificial Intelligence in Agriculture*, vol. 14, pp. 99–114, Dec. 2024.
- [14] M. Abdel-salam, N. Kumar, and S. Mahajan, "A proposed framework for crop yield prediction using a hybrid feature selection approach and optimized machine learning," *Neural Comput. Appl.*, vol. 36, no. 33, pp. 20723–20750, Nov. 2024.
- [15] M. Jamei *et al.*, "eXplainable expert systems for potato tuber yield prediction in the Maritime provinces of Canada," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 238, Nov. 2025.
- [16] S. Liu, Y. Ampatzidis, C. Zhou, and W. S. Lee, "AI-driven time series analysis for predicting strawberry weekly yields integrating fruit monitoring and weather data for optimized harvest planning," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 233, Jun. 2025.
- [17] H. Najjar, D. Pathak, M. Nuske, and A. Dengel, "Intrinsic explainability of multimodal learning for crop yield simulation," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 239, Dec. 2025.
- [18] D. Paudel, A. de Wit, H. Boogaard, D. Marcos, S. Osinga, and I. N. Athanasiadis, "Interpretability of deep learning models for crop yield forecasting," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 206, Mar. 2023.
- [19] P. Saha and A. Nath, "Harnessing multi-source data and machine learning for enhanced rice yield estimation," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 237, p. 110633, Oct. 2025.
- [20] S. Godara, A. K. Parihar, K. K. Hazra, and S. Marwaha, "DL-RSMv2: A deep learning framework for transparent crop yield modelling using simulated virtual experimental runs," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 237, p. 110628, Oct. 2025.

- [21] G. L. Anoop, C. Nandini, and E. Naresh, "3TFL-XLnet-CP: A Novel Transformer-Based Crop Yield Prediction Framework with Weighted Loss Based 3-Tier Feature Learning Model," *SN Comput. Sci.*, vol. 6, no. 3, Mar. 2025.
- [22] J. Ven, C. Sharma, and A. Syed, "MangoSense: A time-series vision sensing dataset for mango tree segmentation and detection toward yield prediction," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 237, p. 110524, Oct. 2025.
- [23] L. Zhang *et al.*, "Winter wheat yield estimation based on multisource remote sensing data: A dual-branch TCN-Transformer model and analysis of growth-stage feature transition mechanisms," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 239, p. 111014, Dec. 2025.
- [24] S. S. Basha and B. S. N. Begum, "Weight optimized stacked LSTM with conditional random fields using self-adaptive generalized normal distribution optimizer for crop yield forecasting," *Appl. Soft Comput.*, vol. 184, p. 113760, Dec. 2025.
- [25] S. Yamazaki, M. Aono, and Y. Kiriwa, "A strawberry yield prediction scheme suitable for non-parametric regression using general-purpose IoT nodes," *Discover Internet of Things*, vol. 5, no. 1, Dec. 2025.
- [26] M. Ryo, "Explainable artificial intelligence and interpretable machine learning for agricultural data analysis," *Artificial Intelligence in Agriculture*, vol. 6, pp. 257–265, Jan. 2022.
- [27] C. Sohrabi *et al.*, "PRISMA 2020 statement: What's new and the importance of reporting guidelines," *International Journal of Surgery*, vol. 88, p. 105918, Apr. 2021.
- [28] A. Saxena *et al.*, "Deep learning-driven IoT solution for smart tomato farming," *Sci. Rep.*, vol. 15, no. 1, p. 31092, Aug. 2025.
- [29] E.-S. M. El-Kenawy, A. A. Alhussan, N. Khodadadi, S. Mirjalili, and M. M. Eid, "Predicting Potato Crop Yield with Machine Learning and Deep Learning for Sustainable Agriculture," *Potato Res.*, Jul. 2024.
- [30] D. Xu *et al.*, "Improving passion fruit yield estimation with multi-scale feature fusion and density-attention mechanisms in smart agriculture," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 239, p. 110958, Dec. 2025.
- [31] X. Hou *et al.*, "Peanut yield prediction using remote sensing and machine learning approaches based on phenological characteristics," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 232, p. 110084, May 2025.
- [32] G. Li *et al.*, "Stages-based multimodal data fusion model(S-MDFM) for wheat yield prediction and screening of drought-resistant and high-yield varieties," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 239, p. 111122, Dec. 2025.
- [33] P. Pal *et al.*, "Unmanned aerial system and machine learning driven Digital-Twin framework for in-season cotton growth forecasting," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 228, p. 109589, Jan. 2025.
- [34] Z. Zhang *et al.*, "Increasing yield estimation accuracy for individual apple trees via ensemble learning and growth stage stacking," *Comput. Electron. Agric.*, vol. 237, p. 110648, Oct. 2025.
- [35] B. L. Sierra-Forero, J. Baron-Velandia, and S. C. Vanegas-Ayala, "Assessment of the relevance of features associated with corn crop yield prediction in Colombia, a country in the Neotropical zone," *International Journal of Information Technology (Singapore)*, vol. 16, no. 4, pp. 2129–2138, Apr. 2024.
- [36] M. von Bloh *et al.*, "Machine learning for soybean yield forecasting in Brazil," *Agric. For. Meteorol.*, vol. 341, no. 2, p. 109670, Oct. 2023.

- [37] S. Fei *et al.*, “UAV-based multi-sensor data fusion and machine learning algorithm for yield prediction in wheat,” *Precis. Agric.*, vol. 24, no. 1, pp. 187–212, Feb. 2023.
- [38] M. Croci, G. Impollonia, M. Meroni, and S. Amaducci, “Dynamic Maize Yield Predictions Using Machine Learning on Multi-Source Data,” *Remote Sensing 2023, Vol. 15*, vol. 15, no. 1, Dec. 2022.
- [39] A. Moussaid *et al.*, “Citrus yield prediction using deep learning techniques: A combination of field and satellite data,” *Journal of Open Innovation: Technology, Market, and Complexity*, vol. 9, no. 2, p. 100075, Jun. 2023.
- [40] M. Kuradusenge *et al.*, “Crop Yield Prediction Using Machine Learning Models: Case of Irish Potato and Maize,” *Agriculture 2023, Vol. 13*, vol. 13, no. 1, Jan. 2023,.
- [41] Y. Sun, S. Zhang, F. Tao, R. Aboelenein, and A. Amer, “Improving Winter Wheat Yield Forecasting Based on Multi-Source Data and Machine Learning,” *Agriculture 2022, Vol. 12*, vol. 12, no. 5, Apr. 2022.
- [42] Y. Ang *et al.*, “Oil palm yield prediction across blocks from multi-source data using machine learning and deep learning,” *Earth Sci. Inform.*, vol. 15, no. 4, pp. 2349–2367, Dec. 2022.

Hydrogen Energy as a Vehicle Fuel

Ajay Kumar Prajapat, Sandeep Kumar Jhamb

Department of Mechanical Engineering, Arya College of Engineering, Jaipur, India

¹prajapatajay935@gmail.com

ABSTRACT - Solar and hydrogen energy are examples of non-conventional energy sources that will always be available. We are all quite concerned about the depletion of conventional energy sources. The rate at which fossil fuels are consumed is greater than the rate at which they are naturally produced. As a result, there will be a global shortage of automotive fuel, which will cause numerous issues for the transportation industry. The other factor is the pollution that these sources contribute to our environment, which gets worse as we use them more and worsens the quality of life on Earth. Alternative fuels that can supply us with energy without causing pollution are constantly being sought after in order to address the energy shortage. Hence most frequently discussed source is hydrogen which when burnt in air produces a clean form of energy. In the last one decade hydrogen has attracted worldwide interest as a secondary energy carrier. This has generated comprehensive investigations on the technology involved and how to solve the problems of production, storage and transportation of hydrogen. Users anticipate safe, convenient, and customer-friendly fueling as hydrogen fuel cell vehicles progress from conception to commercialization. Fuel cell stack lifetime and performance, as well as other elements like valve operation, are impacted by hydrogen quality. The development of hydrogen as a potential significant fuel of the future has been thoroughly examined by earlier researchers in this work. One energy source that can take the place of fossil fuels is hydrogen, which can be used as fuel in internal combustion engines and as a fuel cell in automobiles. Engine design should take anomalous combustion into account when using hydrogen as fuel in internal combustion engines.

1) INTRODUCTION

Fossil fuels, which are rapidly running out, are currently the primary sources used to provide the world's energy needs. It is now evident that fossil fuel supplies have been depleted, and their prices are currently unstable. This is caused by two factors: one, the economic slowdown; and second, the significant economic acceleration, namely in China and India. The difficulties in managing pricing and the unpredictability of reserves provide compelling incentives for pursuing energy security [1]. Excessive use of fossil fuels is directly linked to serious environmental and social issues like local pollution and global warming. These issues greatly encourage the study, creation, and testing of clean energy sources, energy carriers, and in the case of transportation and power trains, energy carriers. According to recent studies, hydrogen is one of the energy carriers that potentially take the place of fossil fuels; however, before this alternative fuel can be commercialized, more research is required to fully understand its

benefits and drawbacks. With a heating value three times greater than gasoline, hydrogen is the cleanest fuel. However, because hydrogen is a man-made fuel and not a natural energy source, its manufacturing costs are three times higher than those of petroleum products. Although there are still issues with the realization of renewed hydrogen from water, the cost and market availability of hydrogen do not yet represent a barrier to the use of hydrogen in automobiles, even though the hydrogen that is currently in use may not be replenished. However, because of hydrogen's exceptional qualities, researchers are now focusing on examining the performance of hydrogen-fueled engines, as well as the availability of H₂ in internal combustion (IC) engines [2]. This study aims to review hydrogen as a fuel for internal combustion engines for vehicle propulsion in terms of advantages, disadvantages, and fundamentals of hydrogen engines, while the study focuses on performance, cost, infrastructure, type of storage, and type of hydrogen productions for vehicle fuel cells [1–3]. The purpose of this study is to review previous developments and studies that have been done by other researchers on hydrogen as a possible major fuel of the future, used as a fuel cell in vehicles and as an internal combustion engine fuel [3].

2) .HYDROGEN AS A FUEL

One appealing alternative fuel is hydrogen. However, hydrogen is not a primary energy source like coal, gas, or oil are. Instead, it serves as a secondary "energy carrier," much like electricity, which must first be generated using energy

from another source before being carried to a location where its latent chemical energy may be fully realized. Numerous renewable (hydro, wind, wave, sun, biomass, and geothermal) and non-renewable (coal, natural gas, and nuclear) resources can be used to produce hydrogen. With water as the only byproduct at the site of consumption, it can be stored as fuel and used in transportation as well as distributed heat and power generation systems employing fuel cells, internal combustion engines, or turbines. Hydrogen's potential to replace fossil fuels. With water as

the only byproduct at the site of consumption, it can be stored as fuel and used in transportation as well as distributed heat and power generation systems employing fuel cells, internal combustion engines, or turbines. One of the main environmental issues facing the globe may be resolved if hydrogen can take the place of fossil fuels in the transportation sector. In addition to being one of the biggest single causes of air pollution in the world today, particularly in cities, automobile exhaust emissions also play a major role in the global carbon dioxide emissions [4]. One of the main problems with sustainable energy, the frustrating issue of supply intermittency, can be resolved by using hydrogen as a storage medium for electricity produced from intermittent, renewable resources including solar, wind, wave, and tidal power. The key role of hydrogen as an energy transporter connecting different hydrogen production techniques and end-user applications is depicted in Figure 1. The fact that hydrogen may be produced using a wide range of resources is undoubtedly one of its main draws as an energy carrier. Hydrogen is able to be created using a range of methods from biomass, high-temperature thermo chemical cycles, electrolysis, photolytic splitting, and even municipal garbage, as well as from coal, natural gas, and other hydrocarbons. The security of the energy supply is greatly enhanced by such a range of production sources [4].

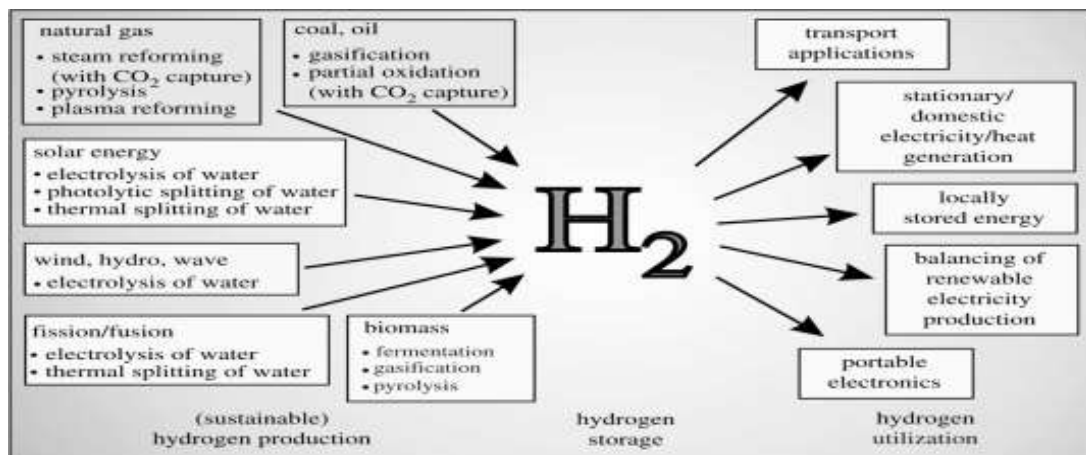


Fig.1 . Hydrogen Energy

Hydrogen can be used in SI engine by three methods [6]:

- 1) Through induction of multiple: A valve-controlled route allows cold hydrogen to enter the manifold.
- 2) By putting hydrogen straight into the cylinder : A cryogenic cylinder is used to store hydrogen in its liquid state. This liquid is passed through a tiny heat exchanger by a pump, turning it into cold hydrogen gas. This machine also handles hydrogen metering. In addition to lowering NO_x production, the cold hydrogen aids in pre-ignition prevention. Figures 1 and 2, respectively, show the configuration of the liquid hydrogen storage system and the specifics of the hydrogen induction into the SI engine cylinder .
- 3) By adding to gasoline : In SI engines, hydrogen can also be used as an additional fuel to gasoline. This device compresses and ignites hydrogen with gasoline through induction.

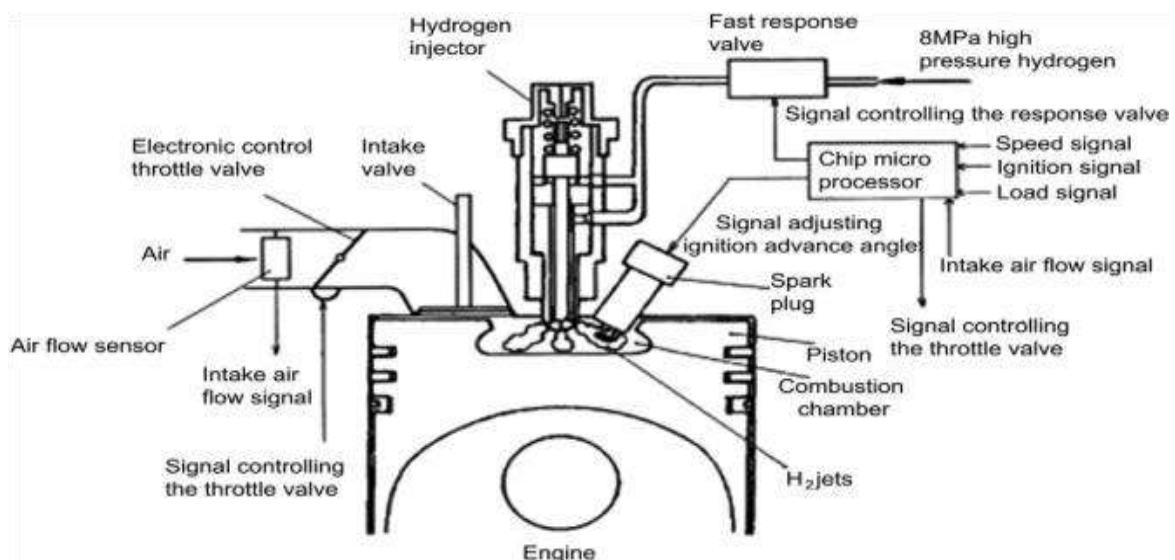


Fig. 2. Liquid hydrogen storage and gaseous hydrogen injection [7].

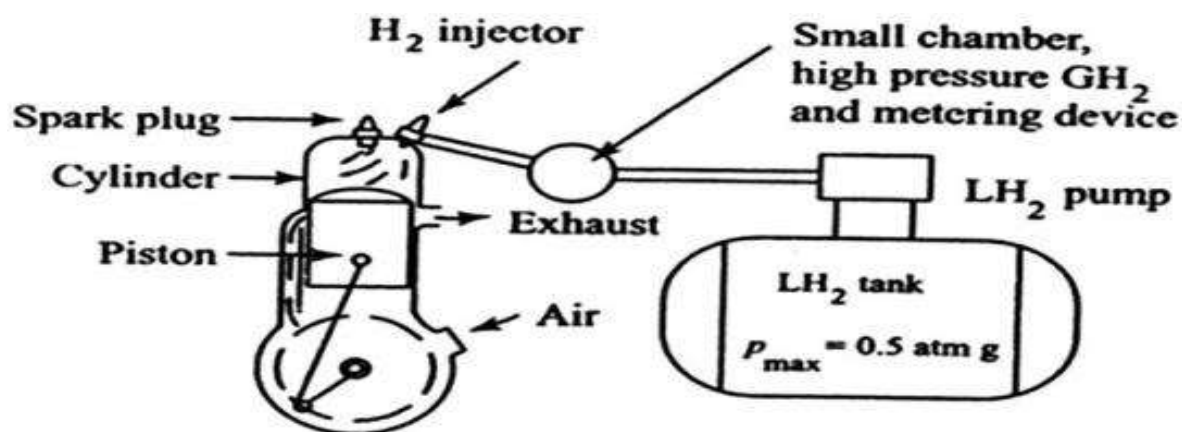


Fig. 3. Hydrogen induction in spark-ignition engine [8].

3) HYDROGEN PRODUCTION AND DISTRIBUTION

Hydrogen is the third most abundant chemical element in the Earth's crust, but it is invariably bound up in chemical compounds with other elements. It must, therefore, be produced from other hydrogen-containing sources using energy, such as electricity or heat. Currently, natural gas is steam-reformed and coal or heavy hydrocarbons are partially oxidized to produce enormous amounts of hydrogen from fossil fuels. These are currently the most affordable and well-established ways for producing hydrogen on a big scale, and they can benefit from economies of scale. In the near to medium term, they can be utilized to meet the demand for hydrogen fuel and facilitate the testing and validation of technologies pertaining to the production, storage, distribution, safety, and use of hydrogen. However, the hydrogen economy's reliance on hydrogen produced from hydrocarbons is obviously unsustainable in the long run. Carbon dioxide is always produced as a byproduct of the reformation and gasification processes used to create hydrogen from fossil fuels. The process known as "carbon dioxide sequestration," which entails the capture, liquefaction, transportation, and storage of carbon dioxide underground (for example, in depleted natural gas and oil wells or geological formations), can effectively manage carbon dioxide emissions, the primary cause of global climate change, at large-scale facilities [9]. The production of hydrogen through fermentation and biological reformation of biomass using microorganisms is obviously appealing if it can be shown that this method can generate the massive amounts of hydrogen required. Carbon dioxide is released by this process, but it may be recycled by increasing biomass, therefore it's considered a carbon dioxide neutral activity. It is important to note, nevertheless, that using fertilizers to grow crops or biomass would always result in a "CO₂ cost" because fertilizers are made from ammonia, which is made from hydrogen and nitrogen—the former of which is currently derived from hydrocarbons. The effective, direct conversion of sunlight using a photocatalytic process—which uses solar energy to split water directly into its parts, hydrogen and oxygen—will be the holy grail of hydrogen production. This process does not require power. Thus, this optimal manufacturing path captures "solar hydrogen," the Sun's energy to separate water from our seas. The solar photodecomposition of water is likely the only significant, but long-term, option for a CO₂-free method of producing the massive amounts of H₂ required for the emergence of the hydrogen economy, according to a recent US Department

of Energy (DoE) report (US Department of Energy, Office of Science 2003). In order to produce hydrogen using solar energy at a cheap cost and with efficiency, new materials must be developed, physical phenomena must be discovered. The creation of novel materials, physical phenomena, synthetic methods, and completely new design concepts are all necessary to produce hydrogen using solar energy in an economical and effective manner [9].

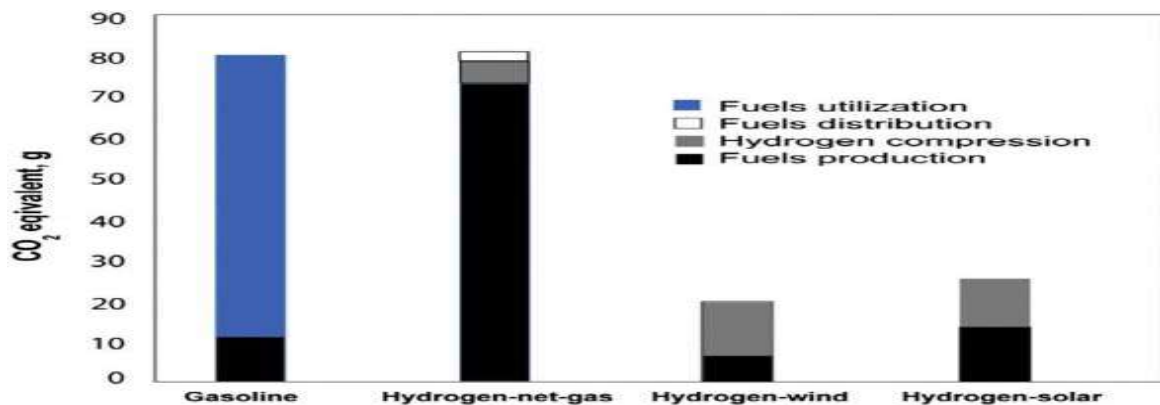


Fig.4. Greenhouse gases emitted by type of hydrogen production [10]

4) HYDROGEN STORAGE

Many people believe that one of the most important and technically difficult obstacles to the widespread use of hydrogen as an efficient energy carrier is viable hydrogen storage. Compared to other substances, hydrogen has the highest energy content by weight. Unfortunately, it has a very low energy density per unit volume because it is the lightest chemical element in the periodic table (Table 1) [11]. Two kinds of hydrogen storage systems—one for transportation and another for stationary applications—will be necessary for the hydrogen economy. Both have distinct needs and limitations. In the future hydrogen economy, it is anticipated that the transportation sector will be the first to employ hydrogen in large quantities. Compared to stationary applications, transportation applications have more stricter criteria for hydrogen storage. The following are some of the operational specifications for the "perfect" hydrogen storage system for transportation applications:

1. reversibility of hydrogen uptake and release across multiple cycles (at least 500 cycles),
2. high volumetric and gravimetric hydrogen densities (equivalent to or higher than 9 weight percent and more than or equal to 70 grams of H₂ per liter of storage system).
3. low operating pressure (less than 4 bar).
4. operating temperature between K50 and 1508C.

There are currently no hydrogen storage devices that could concurrently satisfy all of these needs, making this collection of strict (and linked) requirements a significant scientific problem for the development of a feasible hydrogen storage for transportation usage. which shows the volume and weight of storing 4 kg of hydrogen for various storage systems (4 kg of hydrogen

is sufficient to propel a fuel cell automobile for 500 km), illustrates one element of the challenge of storing hydrogen on-board. The weight and volume limitations of hydrogen storage are not as important for stationary applications as they are for vehicles; stationary hydrogen storage systems can take up a lot of space, function at high pressures and temperatures, and have more capacity to make up for slow kinetics. However, stationary hydrogen storage also poses a significant scientific and technological challenge, particularly with regard to storage materials

Table I
Gravimetric (specific) and volumetric energy content of fuels

Fuel	specific energy (kWh kg^{K1})	energy density (kWh dm^{K3})
liquid hydrogen	33.3	2.37
hydrogen (200 bar)	33.3	0.53
liquid natural gas	13.9	5.6
natural gas (200 bar)	13.9	2.3
Petrol	12.8	9.5
Diesel	12.6	10.6
Coal	8.2	7.6
LiBH₄	6.16	4.0
Methanol	5.5	4.4
Wood	4.2	3.0
electricity (Li-ion battery)	0.55	1.69

CONCLUSION

The main issue with hydrogen engines is aberrant combustion, which requires careful consideration of engine design despite the fact that hydrogen in internal combustion engines has several advantages in terms of combustive qualities. This can therefore lower NOx emissions and increase engine efficiency and power output. The performance of fuel cell vehicles can be impacted by the purity of the hydrogen. This contamination results from sulfur poisoning during the manufacturing process. Fuel cell vehicles have lower emissions than traditional vehicles in terms of the environment, but they are more expensive to produce since they require more weight and area to put the battery and storage tank. The energy tariff and the hydrogen production sources determine the hydrogen plant's cost and efficiency. The creation of a hydrogen plant should take into account the location's proximity to its natural resources, as this would aid in cost reduction. People's acceptance of hydrogen technology depends on their understanding of its advantages for both the environment and human life. According to a recent study, individuals are still ignorant about hydrogen. The media's role in educating the public about hydrogen technology is essential to gaining their support for its advancement. Hydrogen can be produced in a variety of methods and from a wide range of sources. It is mostly made from fossil fuels and hydrogen, which is a byproduct of chemical

reactions. The sources of the various forms of hydrogen production differ, as do the system applications. The most efficient way to manufacture hydrogen is the one that is inexpensive, easy to obtain the primary sources, and safe for the environment. Before hydrogen fuel and automobiles can be commercialized and compete with other fuels, research into manufacturing methods, vehicle performance, plant performance, infrastructure availability, emissions, and air pollution is required.

VI .REFERENCES

- [1] Abbasi T, Abbasi SA. ‘Renewable’ hydrogen: prospects and challenges. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews* 2011;15(6):3034–40.
- [2] Cotrell J, Pratt W. Modeling the Feasibility of Using Fuel Cells and Hydrogen Internal Combustion Engines in Remote Renewable Energy Systems 2003.
- [3] Liu PF, et al. Numerical simulation and optimal design for composite highpressure hydrogen storage vessel: a review. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews* 2012;16(4):1817–27.
- [4] Dutton A. G. 2002 Hydrogen energy technology. Tyndall Working Paper TWP 17. Tyndall Centre for Climate Change, p. 30.
- [5] Balat M. Hydrogen in fueled systems and the significance energy sourcesof hydrogen in vehicular transportation. *Energy Sources, part B* 2007;2:49–61.
- [6] Farrauto RJ. 3 From the internal combustion engine to the fuel cell: moving towards the hydrogen economy. In: Masakazu Anpo MO, Hiromi Y, editors. *Studies in surface science and catalysis*. Elsevier; 2003. p. 21–9.
- [7] Ganesan V. *Internal combustion engines*. New Delhi: Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; 2003.
- [8] Guo LS, Lu HB, Li JD. A hydrogen injection system with solenoid valves for a four-cylinder hydrogen-fuelled engine. *International Journal of Hydrogen Energy* 1999;24(4):377–82.
- [9] Wikipedia, Hydrogen production, Retrieved on november 2010, Available at: [/http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hydrogen_productionS](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hydrogen_productionS)
- [10] Mikhail Granovskii ID, Rosen. Marc A. Life cycle assessment of hydrogen fuel cell & gasoline vehicles. *International Journal of Hydrogen Energy* 2006;159(2):1186–93.
- [11] Harris, R., Book, D., Anderson, P. A. & Edwards, P. P. 2004 Hydrogen storage: the grand challenge. *The Fuel Cell Rev.* 1, 17–23

Thermal Battery Management System

Durgaram Fagodiya^{#1}, Ankit Sharma

Mechanical Department

Arya college of engineering Kukas Jaipur

¹durgaramfagodiya75@gmail.com

Abstract –Therapid advancement of electric and hybrid vehicles has led to an increased focus on energy-storage technologies, particularly lithium-ion batteries. Despite their high energy density, long cycle life, and light weight, lithium-ion batteries face major thermal challenges that directly affect their performance, safety, and service life. Excessive heat generation during charge–discharge cycles can result in temperature non-uniformity and thermal runaway, while low temperatures reduce capacity and efficiency. Battery Thermal Management Systems (BTMS) are thus crucial for maintaining optimal operating temperatures, improving reliability, and ensuring safety. This review synthesizes findings from recent studies on BTMS, including air-based, liquid-based, phase-change-material (PCM)-based, and hybrid configurations, along with emerging designs emphasizing enhanced thermal safety. It highlights the advantages, limitations, and comparative performance of these systems, supported by scientific schematics and a comparative evaluation table. The paper also discusses key challenges such as cost, compactness, and integration with vehicle thermal networks, concluding with future trends toward intelligent, self-adaptive BTMS integrating real-time sensing and predictive control.

1. INTRODUCTION

One of the most promising electrical energy storage technologies in recent years is lithium-ion batteries[1]. Lithium-ion batteries have several advantages over other thefollowing are rechargeable batteries: higher energy density, reduced mass density, and no memory problems impacts, and their rates of self-discharge are minimal [2]. Performance, cycle and calendar life costs, and safety remain the primary obstacles to the widespread use of large fleets of vehicles using lithium-ion batteries on public roads. These difficulties are combined with the battery's temperature impacts, such as capacity/power decline, Low-temperature performance, electrical imbalance between several cells in a battery pack, and thermal runaway [3, 4]. The majority of batteries should ideally function at an ideal average temperature with a relatively small differential range[5, 6]. The biggest obstacle to the automotive industry's technological advancement and development may be preventing and reducing environmental harm[7, 8, 9]. Following the European Union's 2011 proposal to outlaw the sale of vehicles powered by conventional fuels like gasoline and diesel, federal governments, local governments, and participants in the automotive industries from China, France, Britain, Norway, and other nations have all announced deadlines for fossil-fuelled vehicle manufacturers [10]. As a result, lithium-ion battery-powered green-energy vehicle research and applications continue to grow[11]. Doughty and Roth[12] emphasized how crucial the lithium-ion batteries' thermal performance is to their safety. Ramadass et al[13] looked on the capacity fading of a particular cycle time and battery temperature for the Sony 18650 cell, a type of lithium-ion battery.

Ramadass et al. discovered that the capacity fade of lithium-ion batteries accelerates at higher battery operation temperatures. However, if the collected heat is not appropriately and effectively dissipated, a high battery operating temperature may lead to battery overheating, which could result in the battery entering thermal runaway[14-16]. The performance, safety, and lifespan of lithium-ion batteries are significantly influenced by their operating temperature. To maintain the battery within its optimal temperature range, a Battery Thermal Management System (BTMS) plays a crucial role. The BTMS is designed to monitor, regulate, and control the temperature distribution within a battery pack to ensure efficient operation and prevent potential thermal risks such as overheating or thermal runaway. As the demand for electric vehicles (EVs) and hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs) continues to rise, the development of an effective BTMS has become an essential aspect of battery pack design and vehicle safety.

An efficient BTMS must be capable of maintaining temperature uniformity among all cells, keeping the average temperature within the safe operating range (typically 20–40°C), and quickly dissipating excessive heat generated during high charge/discharge rates. Poor thermal management can lead to uneven temperature distribution, causing cell degradation, imbalance, reduced capacity, and even fire hazards. Therefore, the BTMS not only enhances the performance and reliability of lithium-ion batteries but also contributes to the overall safety and durability of the energy storage system.

Several BTMS technologies have been developed based on different cooling and heating mechanisms, such as air cooling, liquid cooling, phase change material (PCM) cooling, and thermoelectric cooling. Each method has its own advantages and limitations depending on application requirements, cost, and system complexity.

2. BATTERY THERMAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (BTMS)

Manufacturers of lithium-ion batteries construct batteries with set geometries and forms because they possess the capacity to be employed in a broad range of applications, from laptops to electric vehicles. High-powered charging and discharging currents are employed in some lithium-ion battery applications, which could result in excessive operating temperatures and high rates of heat generation. Battery weakness and safety risks may grow as a result. A BTMS must be integrated with the battery pack to keep the battery operating temperature in the safe zone and ideally within the ideal operating temperature range in order to prevent excessive temperature build-up in high powered batteries. For a variety of lithium-ion battery geometries and operating conditions, several BTMS have been proposed in the literature. Air-based, liquid-based, and phase change material (PCM)-based BTMS are the three primary types of BTMS. Others, such as heat pipes and the recently suggested boiling-based cooling systems, are derived from the three primary BTMS types. Although the latter is based on PCM technology, it performs better and is simpler to handle. Each of the three primary types as well as hybrid cooling models are the subject of the upcoming subsections.

• AIR-BASED BTMS

Air cooling has its own features, including easy accessories, affordability, light weight, and ease of maintenance. Commercial electric vehicles frequently use air conditioning due to its benefits. Typical examples of commercial air-cooling applications are the Nissan Leaf, Toyota Prius Prime, Nissan NV200, Honda FitEV, Hyundai IoniQ, and so forth[17, 18]. Due to their

high heat transfer coefficient, straightforward configuration, affordability in comparison to alternative cooling systems, ease of maintenance, and capacity to supply the necessary cooling for the majority of applications, forced air convection systems make up the majority of the suggested air-based BTMS. The majority of the air-based BTMSs suggested in the literature are intended for battery packs with mild cooling loads. The three key areas where suggested air-based cooling solutions differ are (1) air flow velocities, (2) flow paths, and (3) the pack's battery architecture[19-21,22,23-33].

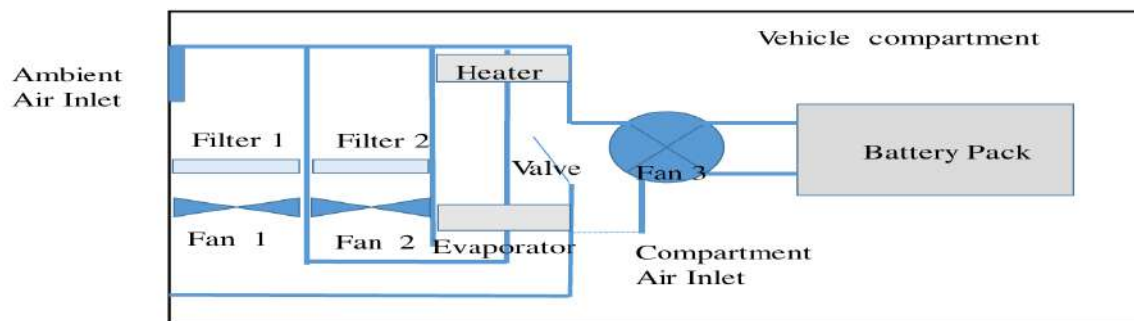


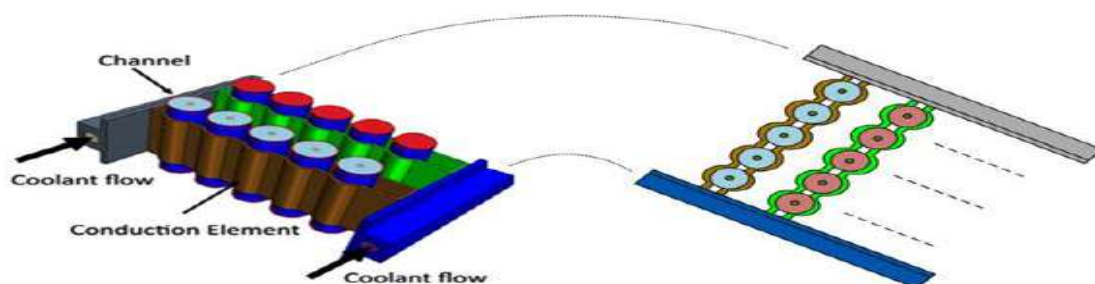
Fig. 1. Diagram of air-cooling coupling with HVAC[34]

- **LIQUIDCOOLING**

Liquid behaves better in the battery pack's temperature distribution than air medium because it has a higher thermal conductivity and heat capacity. Furthermore, it is unavoidably linked to nonuniform temperature distribution, which can be made worse by an increase in battery power density during rising or accelerating driving situations[35]. Battery thermal management using a liquid circulation loop has the potential to leak and is somewhat inconvenient due to its intricate structure with certain accessories (heat exchanger, pump, etc.). However, due of its fine control for heating and preheating and flexibility in integration, it has become the most often used cooling technique in industrial applications[36]. Rimac Automobili in Croatia produced the first high-performance EV and used a liquid cooling system to keep the batteries running at their best.

Some of the biggest EV and HEV manufacturers employ liquid cooling systems to keep their batteries operating within the ideal range, making them the most popular and widely used BTMS to date[37-39].

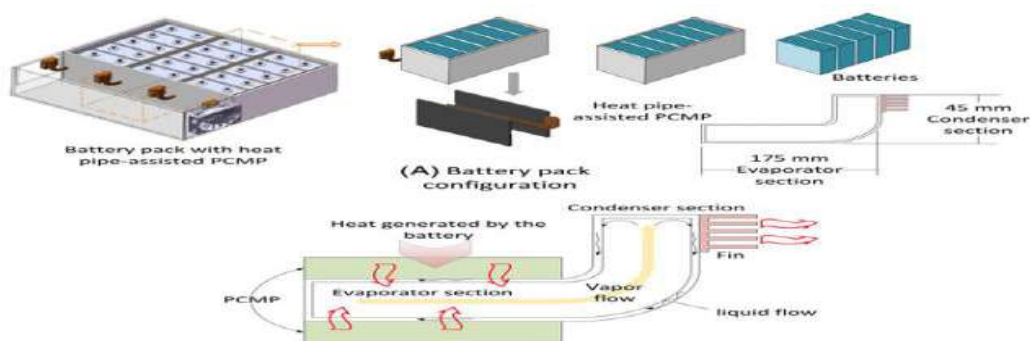
Fig. 2. Geometry of battery pack integrated with liquid and conducting element BTMS. (Modified from Basu et al[40])



- **PCM-BASED BTMSs**

In liquid and forced air-based BTMSs, the coolant is forced into the battery pack by means of power-assisted devices including fans, compressors, and pumps[41-45]. Another kind of management system is the passive system, which does not require a control system to change the system parameters in order to accomplish the necessary cooling load and is not supported by power-assisted devices[42, 46-49]. The PCM-based BTMS is an illustration of a passive cooling system. Despite being thought of as the most efficient battery cooling techniques, air and liquid-based systems have disadvantages such high-power consumption and system complexity[50]. Low thermal conductivity and volume variations during phase shift are among the disadvantages of PCM-based BTMS, notwithstanding their benefits. Adding a highly conductive material to PCM to increase the BTMS's overall thermal conductivity is one of the primary strategies used by numerous studies to overcome PCM's poor thermal conductivity. Carbon fibres [51], carbon nanotubes[52], graphene[53], metallic foam/mesh[54], and metal particles[55] are examples of such highly conductive material additions.

Fig. 3. A, Schematic diagram of the proposed battery pack design of Wu et al; B, working principle of the heat pipe and PCM integrated battery cooling system. (modified from Wu et al[56])



- **REFRIGERANT DIRECT COOLING**

Although the forced-air cooling coupling with HVAC has advantages in mechanical construction, it is occasionally insufficient due to the limited thermal conductivity of air[57]. Regarding the previously mentioned liquid cooling with HVAC, the battery's first coolant loop is typically connected to the secondary refrigerant circulation loop via the junction of the intermediate refrigerant-coolant heat exchanger, which increases the system's weight and complexity[58]. Refrigerant-based direct cooling was increased after system complexity constraints were broken, which typically led to cumbersome coordinated management of liquid cooling with HVAC. Wang et al. [10] compared the conventional refrigerant-based direct cooling and the BTM made up of liquid cooling with HVAC, as shown in Figure 4. Direct refrigerant cooling behaved better in terms of heat transfer efficiency, temperature uniform distribution, simpler structure, and system weight reduction. It included a separator refrigerant, a transportation route of refrigerant, and a pump elimination[59].

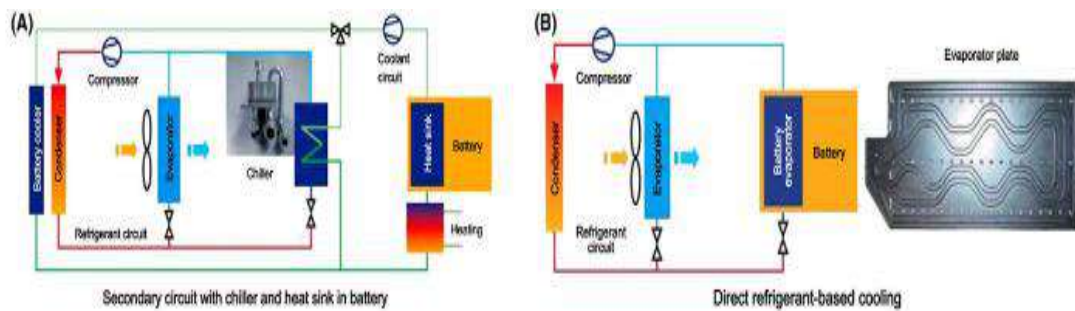


Fig.4. Different battery thermal management strategies[60]

3. FUTURE TASK AND PROPOSAL

The development of efficient Battery Thermal Management Systems (BTMS) remains an active area of research due to the increasing demand for safe, reliable, and long-lasting lithium-ion batteries in electric vehicles (EVs) and energy storage systems. Despite remarkable progress in the last decade, several gaps and challenges persist that require attention from researchers and industries.

• FUTURE RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

- i. **Integration of Advanced Materials:**
Future work should focus on the use of phase change materials (PCMs) with enhanced thermal conductivity, nanofluids, and composite structures to improve heat absorption and dissipation rates. Hybrid systems combining PCMs with liquid or air cooling could offer a balance between efficiency, weight, and cost.
- ii. **Artificial Intelligence and Predictive Control:**
The incorporation of AI-based algorithms, machine learning, and data-driven modeling can significantly improve BTMS control strategies. These tools can predict temperature distribution, identify faults, and optimize cooling performance in real time, ensuring longer battery lifespan and safety.
- iii. **Integration with Vehicle Thermal Management:**
A holistic thermal management approach that combines battery, motor, and cabin cooling systems can reduce energy consumption and improve vehicle range. Future designs may employ integrated thermal loops or heat recovery systems to utilize waste heat for auxiliary functions.
- iv. **Lightweight and Compact Designs:**
Research should emphasize miniaturized BTMS architectures using lightweight materials and additive manufacturing techniques. This will enhance energy density at the system level and make BTMS suitable for compact EV platforms and portable power systems.
- v. **Enhanced Safety and Thermal Runaway Mitigation:**
Upcoming research must address thermal runaway detection and prevention, including early warning sensors, self-healing materials, and containment structures. Studies on cell-to-cell propagation mechanisms are essential to develop safe module designs.

- vi. **Thermal Management for Next-Generation Batteries:**
As solid-state, sodium-ion, and lithium-sulfur batteries emerge, tailored BTMS solutions will be required to meet their specific operating temperature ranges and thermal behavior.

- **PROPOSED FUTURE WORK**

Based on the above directions, the following proposals can guide future advancements in BTMS:

- **Development of Hybrid Cooling Systems:**
A combination of liquid cooling and PCM layers can be proposed to maintain uniform temperature under varying load conditions. Experimental validation and computational fluid dynamics (CFD) modeling can be used to optimize design parameters.
- **Real-Time Thermal Monitoring System:**
Propose an IoT-enabled BTMS capable of monitoring temperature, pressure, and humidity in real time, supported by a cloud-based predictive maintenance framework.
- **Sustainable and Cost-Effective Solutions:**
Future proposals should emphasize eco-friendly coolant materials and recyclable thermal components to align with green manufacturing standards.
- **Simulation and Digital Twin Technology:**
Implement digital twin models of battery packs to simulate performance under different driving cycles and climatic conditions. This can shorten development time and reduce testing costs.
- **Experimental Validation of Novel Designs:**
A comprehensive experimental setup can be proposed to test nanofluid-based or micro-channel cooling BTMS. The validation will focus on thermal uniformity, energy consumption, and response time.

- **EXPECTED OUTCOMES**

The proposed future work is expected to yield:

- [1] Improved thermal uniformity and battery lifespan
- [2] Enhanced system efficiency and safety
- [3] Reduced energy consumption and cooling cost
- [4] Reliable real-time monitoring and predictive control
- [5] Scalable BTMS designs for next-generation electric vehicles and stationary storage

4. CONCLUSION

BTM with enhanced safety can meet the requirements, such as ensuring battery performance with cooling/preheating, reorganizing overheated status, and sending alert signals prior to the thermal runaway onset time via various advanced measurements, based on the battery behavior analysis of the entire process from heat generated to overheated. Additionally, through the combination treatments used in BTM and its safe augmentation of emergency cooling, flame extinguishing, and thermal barrier, it may prevent battery thermal overheating at the individual cell level and take safeguards against the potential for cell-to-cell

propagation. It is determined that a three-layer design idea might be used for the BTM enhanced safety. First of all, it can guarantee battery performance within the ideal temperature range. Second, it may send out alerts and identify the key point of battery breakdown. Lastly, the treatment can successfully stop the spread of the disease after the threat has materialized. It can be deduced that the pertinent research status and key technology of BTMS with enhanced safety have been promising for the sustainable development needs of the long-term mechanism of energy conservation and green energy vehicle marketization because of its multilevel, multifunctional, and multi-interaction features. This paper offers a thorough analysis of BTM with improved safety and seeks to advance the use of batteries with high energy density, security, and cyclic stability for automotive electrification and intelligence.

REFERENCES

- [1] Zhao R, Zhang S, Liu J, Gu J. A review of thermal performance improving methods of lithium ion battery: electrode modification and thermal management system. *J Power Sources*. 2015;299:557-577.
- [2] Dincer I, Hamut HS, Javani N. *Thermal Management of Electric Vehicle Battery Systems*. Wiley; 2017.
- [3] Horiba, T.; Hironaka, K.; Matsumura, T.; Kai, T.; Koseki, M.; Muranaka, Y. Manganese type lithium ion battery for pure and hybrid electric vehicles. *J. Power Sources* 2001, 97–98, 719–721.
- [4] Wang, S.; Lu, L.; Liu, X. A simulation on safety of LiFePO₄/C cell using electrochemical-thermal coupling model. *J. Power Sources* 2013, 244, 101–108.
- [5] Saito, Y.; Kanari, K.; Takano, K. Thermal studies of a lithium-ion battery. *J. Power Sources* 1997, 68, 451–454.
- [6] Chen, Y.; Evans, J.W. Heat-transfer phenomena in lithium polymer-electrolyte batteries for electric vehicle application. *J. Electrochem. Soc.* 1993, 140, 1833–1838.
- [7] Weiss M, Dekker P, Moro A, Scholz H, Patel MK. Ontheelectrificationofroadtransportation—a review of the environmental, economic, and social performance of electric two-wheelers. *Transp. Res. Part D: Transp. Environ.* 2015;41: 348-366.
- [8] . Feng X, Ouyang M, Liu X, Lu L, Xia Y, He X. Thermal run away mechanism of lithium ion battery for electric vehicles: a review. *Energy Storage Materials*. 2018;10:246-267
- [9] Zhongbao W, Mariana LT, Maria S-K. Online state of charge and model parameter co-estimation based on a novel multi timescale estimator for vanadium redox flow battery. *Appl Energ.* 2016;72:69-179.
- [10] Alam MS, Hyde B, Duffy P, McNabola A. Analysing the co benefits of transport fleet and fuel policies in reducing PM_{2.5} and CO₂ emissions. *J Clean Prod.* 2018;172:623-634.
- [11] Shafiei E, Leaver J, Davidsdottir B. Cost-effectiveness analysis of inducing green vehicles to achieve deep reductions in green house gas emissions in New Zealand. *J Clean Prod.* 2017;150:339-351.
- [12] Doughty D, Roth EP. A general discussion of Li ion battery safety. *Electrochem Soc.* 2012;44.

- [13] Ramadass P, Haran B, White R, Popov BN. Capacity fade of Sony 18650 cells cycled at elevated temperatures Part II. Capacity fade analysis. *J Power Sources*. 2002;112:614-620.
- [14] Selman JR, Al Hallaj S, Uchida I, Hirano Y. Cooperative research on safety fundamentals of lithium batteries. *J Power Sources*. 2001;97-98:726-732.
- [15] . Khateeb SA, Farid MM, Selman JR, Al-Hallaj S. Design and simulation of a lithium-ion battery with a phase change material thermal management system for an electric scooter. *J Power Sources*. 2004;128(2):292-307.
- [16] Uchida I, Ishikawa H, Mohamedi M, Umeda M. AC-impedance measurements during thermal runaway process in several lithium/polymer batteries. *J Power Sources*. 2003;119 121:821-825.
- [17] Zolot M. D., Kelly K. Keyser, M. Mihalic M., Pesaran A. and Hieronymus, A. Thermal evaluation of the Honda insight battery pack. *Intersociety Energy Conversion Engineering Conference*, 1999; 2:923-928.
- [18] Zolot M, Pesaran, A. A. and Mihalic, M. Thermal evaluation of Toyota Prius battery pack, 2002; No. 2002-01-1962. SAE Technical Paper. <https://doi.org/10.4271/2002-01-1962>
- [19] Yang T, Yang N, Zhang X, Li G. Investigation of the thermal performance of axial-flow air cooling for the lithium-ion battery pack. *Int J Therm Sci*. 2016;108:132-144.
- [20] Xun J, Liu R, Jiao K. Numerical and analytical modeling of lithium ion battery thermal behaviors with different cooling designs. *J Power Sources*. 2013;233:47-61.
- [21] Wang T, Tseng KJ, Zhao J, Wei Z. Thermal investigation of lithium-ion battery module with different cell arrangement structures and forced air-cooling strategies. *Appl Energy*. 2014;134:229-238.
- [22] Fan L, Khodadadi JM, Pesaran AA. A parametric study on thermal management of an air-cooled lithium-ion battery module for plug-in hybrid electric vehicles. *J Power Sources*. 2013;238:301-312.
- [23] Saw LH, Ye Y, Tay AAO. Electrochemical-thermal analysis of 18650 lithium iron phosphate cell. *Energ Conver Manage*. 2013;75:162-174.
- [24] Chen SC, Wan CC, Wang YY. Thermal analysis of lithium-ion batteries. *J Power Sources*. 2005;140(1):111-124.
- [25] Mahamud R, Park C. Reciprocating air flow for Li-ion battery thermal management to improve temperature uniformity. *J Power Sources*. 2011;196(13):5685-5696.
- [26] Srinivasan V, Wang CY. Analysis of electrochemical and thermal behavior of Li-ion cells. *J Electrochem Soc*. 2003;150(1): A98-A106.
- [27] Sabbah R, Kizilel R, Selman JR, Al-Hallaj S. Active (air-cooled) vs. passive (phase change material) thermal management of high power lithium-ion packs: limitation of temperature rise and uniformity of temperature distribution. *J Power Sources*. 2008;182:630-638.
- [28] Karimi G, Li X. Thermal management of lithium-ion batteries for electric vehicles. *Int J Energy Res*. 2013;37(1):13-24.
- [29] Chen K, Wang S, Song M, Chen L. Structure optimization of parallel air-cooled battery thermal management system. *Int J Heat Mass Transf*. 2017;111:943-952.

- [30] Inui Y, Kobayashi Y, Watanabe Y, Watase Y, Kitamura Y. Simulation of temperature distribution in cylindrical and prismatic lithium ion secondary batteries. *Energy Convers Manage*. 2007;48(7):2103-2109.
- [31] Reyes-Marambio J, Moser F, Gana F, et al. A fractal time thermal model for predicting the surface temperature of air-cooled cylindrical Li-ion cells based on experimental measurements. *J Power Sources*. 2016;306:636-645.
- [32] Spinner NS, Hinnant KM, Mazurick R, Brandon A, Rose Pehrsson SL, Tuttle SG. Novel 18650 lithium-ion battery surrogate cell design with anisotropic thermophysical properties for studying failure events. *J Power Sources*. 2016;312:1-11.
- [33] Saw LH, Ye Y, Tay AAO, Chong WT, Kuan SH, Yew MC. Computational fluid dynamic and thermal analysis of Lithium-ion battery pack with air cooling. *Appl Energy*. 2016;177:783-792.
- [34] Tajima, Takamitsu, Hirano, Hirokazu and Sekiguchi, Tsuyoshi, Battery device, 2018, Patent Pub, No. US. 20180034116A1.
- [35] Rao Z, Qian Z, Kuang Y, Li Y. Thermal performance of liquid cooling based thermal management system for cylindrical lithium-ion battery module with variable contact surface. *Appl Therm Eng*. 2017;123:1514-1522.
- [36] Tianshi Z, Qing G, Guohua W, et al. Investigation on the promotion of temperature uniformity for the designed battery pack with liquid flow in cooling process. *Appl Therm Eng*. 2017;116:655-662.
- [37] Green Car Congress: BMW Group presents prototype of i8 plug-in hybrid; first use of new 3-cylinder engine. n.d. <http://www.greencarcongress.com/2013/08/i8-20130807.html> (accessed January 3, 2018).
- [38] The Chevrolet Volt Cooling/Heating Systems Explained—GM VOLT: Chevy Volt Electric Car Site GM-VOLT : Chevy Volt Electric Car Site. n.d. <http://gm-volt.com/2010/12/09/the-chevrolet-volt-coolingheating-systems-explained/> (accessed January 3, 2018).
- [39] Berdichevsky G, Kelty K, Straubel J, Toomre E. The Tesla Roadster Battery System Tesla Motors. 2007.
- [40] Basu S, Hariharan KS, Kolake SM, Song T, Sohn DK, Yeo T. Coupled electrochemical thermal modelling of a novel Li-ion battery pack thermal management system. *Appl Energy*. 2016;181:1-13.
- [41] Mahamud R, Park C. Reciprocating air flow for Li-ion battery thermal management to improve temperature uniformity. *J Power Sources*. 2011;196(13):5685-5696.
- [42] Sabbah R, Kizilel R, Selman JR, Al-Hallaj S. Active (air-cooled) vs. passive (phase change material) thermal management of high power lithium-ion packs: limitation of temperature rise and uniformity of temperature distribution. *J Power Sources*. 2008;182:630-638.
- [43] Karimi G, Li X. Thermal management of lithium-ion batteries for electric vehicles. *Int J Energy Res*. 2013;37(1):13-24.
- [44] Giuliano MR, Prasad AK, Advani SG. Experimental study of an air-cooled thermal management system for high capacity lithium-titanate batteries. *J Power Sources*. 2012;216:345-352.

- [45] Qian Z, Li Y, Rao Z. Thermal performance of lithium-ion battery thermal management system by using mini-channel cooling. *Energ Convers Manage*. 2016;126:622-631.
- [46] Ramandi MY, Dincer I, Naterer GF. Heat transfer and thermal management of electric vehicle batteries with phase change materials. *Heat Mass Transf*. 2011;47(7):777-788.
- [47] Javani N, Dincer I, Naterer GF, Yilbas BS. Heat transfer and thermal management with PCMs in a Li-ion battery cell for electric vehicles. *Int J Heat Mass Transf*. 2014;72:690-703.
- [48] Li WQ, Qu ZG, He YL, Tao YB. Experimental study of a passive thermal management system for high-powered lithium ion batteries using porous metal foam saturated with phase change materials. *J Power Sources*. 2014;255:9-15.
- [49] Yan J, Li K, Chen H, Wang Q, Sun J. Experimental study on the application of phase change material in the dynamic cycling of battery pack system. *Energ Convers Manage*. 2016;128:12-19.
- [50] Zhang Z, Cheng J, He X. Numerical simulation of flow and heat transfer in composite PCM on the basis of two different models of open-cell metal foam skeletons. *Int J Heat Mass Transf*. 2017;112:959-971.
- [51] Samimi F, Babapoor A, Azizi M, Karimi G. Thermal management analysis of a li-ion battery cell using phase change material loaded with carbon fibers. *Energy*. 2016;96:355-371.
- [52] Shirazi AHN, Mohebbi F, Azadi Kakavand MR, He B, Rabczuk T. Paraffin nanocomposites for heat management of lithium ion batteries: a computational investigation. *J Nanomater*. 2016;2016:1-10.
- [53] Goli P, Legedza S, Dhar A, Salgado R, Renteria J, Balandin AA. Graphene-enhanced hybrid phase change materials for thermal management of Li-ion batteries. *J Power Sources*. 2014;248:37-43.
- [54] Huang C, Wang Q, Rao Z. Thermal conductivity prediction of copper hollow nanowire. *Int J Therm Sci*. 2015;94:90-95.
- [55] Malik M, Dincer I, Rosen MA. Review on use of phase change materials in battery thermal management for electric and hybrid electric vehicles. *Int J Energy Res*. 2016;40(8):1011-1031.
- [56] Wu W, Yang X, Zhang G, Chen K, Wang S. Experimental investigation on the thermal performance of heat pipe-assisted phase change material based battery thermal management system. *Energ Convers Manage*. 2017;138:486-492.
- [57] Zhen Q, Li Y, Zhonghao R. Thermal performance of lithium ion battery thermal management system by using mini-channel cooling. *Energ Convers Manage*. 2016;126:622-631.
- [58] Huiming Z, Bin J, Qian W, Changqin T, Yuying Y. Performance analysis of a heat pump air conditioning system coupling with battery cooling for electric vehicles. *Energy Procedia*. 2014;61:891-894.
- [59] Ke L, Jiajia Y, Haodong C, Wang Q. Water cooling based strategy for lithium ion battery pack dynamic cycling for thermal management system. *Appl Therm Eng*. 2018;132:575-585.

- [60] Wang Q, Jiang B, Li B, Yan Y. A critical review of thermal management models and solutions of lithium-ion batteries for the development of pure electric vehicles. *Renew Sustain Energy Rev.* 2016;64:106-128.

Prosthetic hand design with mechanically actuated self-incriminating adaptive grip using single actuator

Harpreet Pal Singh^{#1},ParladKumar^{*2}

[#]Mechanical Engineering Department,
Punjabi University PatialaIndia

¹harpreet1890@gmail.com²pkgarg4050@gmail.com

Abstract— Human hand kinematics include linear, angular and rotational movements between distinct joints and linkages. To provide significant range of prosthetic hand motions, the design must have suitable locomotion morphologies in carpometacarpal, metacarpophalangeal and proximal interphalangeal joints with desired degrees of freedom. In different prosthetic hand designs, the one of the foremost requirements is to conform to the shape of a gripping object with varying geometry for better and stable grip. Current prosthetic hand is designed with ability to conform to the varying geometry of a gripping object with stability and proportionally distribute the grip force by individual fingers. The gripping motion mechanism of current hand design is based on cables-based spring governing mechanism using five pairs of cables. Two cables in each finger forming a pair are used to control the flexion and extension of individual digits with both precision and power with the help of self-incriminating motion mechanism controls. Therefore, the novel design of a motion mechanism with a mechanically activated adaptive grip accompanied by ability to move each finger at different angles using a single DC motor is the most significant feature of current prosthetic hand design.

Keywords—Adaptive grip, spring force, finite element analysis, translatory motion, finger flexion.

I. INTRODUCTION

Prosthetic hands come up with many variants like one of the common types are passive type prosthetic hands are meant to provide the outer aesthetic look to missing hand or limb. It doesn't provide any body functionality but only used to accommodate the physical presence of the replacement of lost body part. Whereas active prosthetic device which consist of body powered or electric powered prosthetic device, works on the basis of the principle of mechanical motion of structural elements through which the motor actuator delivers power to move fingers for gripping an object either partially or wholly to achieve desired functionality. Electric powered prosthesis

enacts the electric motor power to activate the device working mechanism using actuator to achieve finger and wrist manipulation at faster speed than body powered devices with better controls. Myoelectric hand and bionic hand are commonly used name for this kind of prosthetic device. In myoelectric prosthesis motor command is executed by means of electromyographic signals (EMGs) captured by using surface electrodes placed on surface of human muscles [1]. Whereas in bionic hand or neuro-prosthetic hand, the brain signals were used to send designated commands to motor actuator to achieve desired functionality. In hybrid prosthetic devices, the different technological features like EMG or electroencephalography (EEG) based command inputs to motor actuators were integrated with advanced user interface control systems. It also incorporates sensor-based technology which allows environmental based intuitive controls. A better tactile and sensory feedback is usually provided with hybrid prosthetic devices. Mechanically these devices are more dexterous with complex structure and therefore offers higher functionality and its controls are effective than conventional prosthetic devices [2].

Sensor hood in human hands enables to move and control hands freely at all possible range of motions during daily living activities as required which is unattainable using conventional artificial joints in case of prosthetic hands. Specifically, in case of thumb joint locomotion's, no artificial joint can replace the precise range of motion as exists in it naturally.

However, hybrid and bioelectrically controlled prosthetic devices with efficient motion mechanism capabilities are capable of restoring some functional aspects of sensor hood incorporating precise manipulations and controls using newer and better biomechanical features [3].

II. DESIGN OF PROSTHETIC HAND ADAPTIVE GRIP

In context of functionality, even the most advanced anthropomorphic artificial hands have no comparison to real human hand. Except few prosthetic hands, the majority of them developed till date have limited functionality due to low dexterity and complexity in their controls. Artificial joints do not possess higher degrees of freedom (DOF) as compared to the various joints that a real human hand possess. The joint design and their functionality are highly complex in real human hand as the functionality is directly steered by the actions of tendons which provides both power and precision grasps allowing the very high range of movements. The human hand collectively constitutes total 27 separate bones which are classified as 8 carpal, 5 metacarpal and 14 phalanges and these are arranged in specific structural pattern to form a hand skeleton design. The complete hand structure was built by the support of different ligaments to 7 joints with 30 muscles, thousands of touch receptors and protective lubricant sheaths [4].

All this organic matter, in a real human hand possesses complex structural design including all digit joints, palm and wrist section along with long flexor and extensor tendons approaching all five fingers that support bending and gripping of fingers. Intrinsic and extrinsic muscles in a hand provides flexible adaptability for affective and precise grasping along with strength building for handling objects with varying physical shapes and sizes. A human hand usually provides three

types of grasps during holding distinct objects, named as (a) Cylindrical (b) Spherical and (c) hook type positional stances. But during attaining the different grasping positions, the hand digits and palms conform to the profile of the object in very complex way such that each finger phalange moves separately at different angle with respect to the connecting joint elements along with the palm position itself [5]. Each digit occupies a particular position by moving at different angle and adapt the profile of an object. The tendency of finger and palm manipulations directly depends upon the DOF of each digit and palm section. This factor of higher adaptability makes the human hand very complex in context of structural joints design and its related functionality. Not only human hand possesses adaptability factor but it is also able to high sensitivity response to both the sense of touch and temperature variations in an external environment. Human hand contains lesser number of proportionate muscles as compared to tendons which majorly contribute to finger flexion and reflexional manipulations. There are around 17000 sensation receptors in human hand which guides the overall functional performance [6].

To operate each finger independently in prosthetic hand, each finger needs at least one individual motor for flexion and extension mobilities but for highly articulated hand functions with additional DOF and increased range of motions. In cable-based motion mechanism of prosthetic hands, the actuator in each finger is connected through joints to control cable movements responsible for flexion and extension actions that comprehends as antagonist pairs [7]. But with increase in number of actuators, the size and weight also escalate which is a basic predicament which shoots up the overall cost of prosthetic hand to such an extent that most of amputees were not able to afford it. Also, most anthropomorphic hands need customized small size high torque motors and other precise components whose costs is generally high. But underactuated prosthetic hands usually possess a major limitation that restricts to achieve efficient adaptive grip due to its lesser mechanical actuator as compared to higher DOF required for achieving desired functionality.

Therefore, there were always a need of such type of mechanisms and designs of prosthetic hands which yields higher functionality and enables all digits to conform to shape of an object adaptively using less numbers of motor actuators.

The grip force stability with respect to normal forces that produces adequate shear force as a resultant force acting while gripping of an object and tends to stabilize a grip to avoid slipping and moving the object out of grip during activities like turning or sliding is mostly required. Stability of grip on various objects can be validated during different position while holding an object specifically in horizontal, vertical or angular positions.

In current prosthesis, a cable operated novel mechanical drive design was proposed which used motor power to instigate the hand movements. Its design constitutes spring governed motorized drive mechanism with cables and elastic chords to facilitate the adaptive hand grip. Adaptive hand grip is able to adjust fingers grip by adjusting the joint angles by transmission input through different assembly components of the drive mechanism thereby providing the flexibility in gripping the various objects of different shapes and sizes. Conformal or adaptive grips generally possess an ability to grasp the objects with varying sizes and profiles better than an ordinary grip without losing grip force by accommodating the total load by distributing it on all fingers

appropriately on varying surface geometry of an object rather than by putting all load by any one or two fingers. Prosthetic hands are classified based on the basis of its working mechanism commonly constitutes cable operated mechanical systems, linkage-based mechanical systems while some embodies combination of cable and linkage mechanisms, hydraulic and pneumatic drive-based mechanisms, sensor-based mechanisms, motorized hand controls, hybrid hand drive mechanisms and differential mechanisms [8-9]. Almost all of the distinguished prosthetic hand designs possess one feature in common that for actuating of hand mechanism generally consist of cables, linkages and gears as crucial elements of transmission of forces upon which entire mechanical drive works. While designing an artificial human hand joint to achieve adequate functionality, it is crucial to explore all significant biomechanical traits of biological human hand.

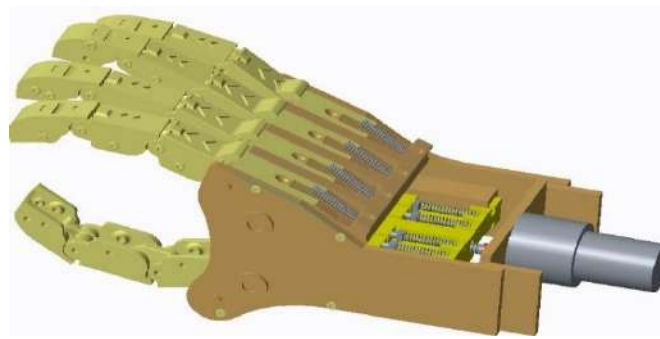


Fig. 1 Prosthetic hand mechanical design outlook

III ILLUSTRATION OF SELF- INCRIMINATING ADAPTIVE GRIP MECHANISM

Constructional features of a current prosthetic hand design depict a motorized actuated mechanism which works on the principal of transmitting a rotary motion of DC motor into the translatory motion of the RAM to execute finger motions. In this mechanism five cables were connected to one end of RAM whereas another end of cable was secured to each finger's extreme cantileverend firmly by passing through the holes created at the center of each finger sub parts. As the RAM moves, flexion and extension cables begins to move in either direction to manipulate the entire finger assemblies to execute a gripping action.

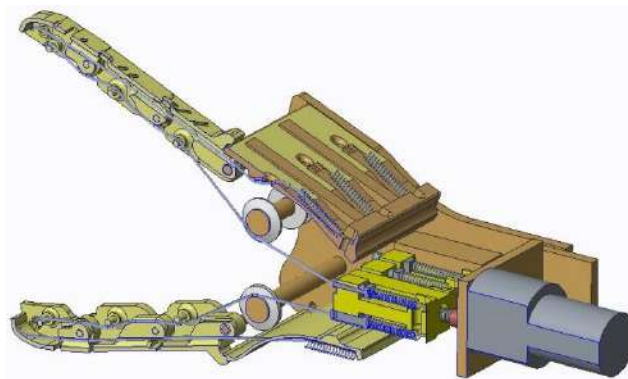


Fig. 2 Prosthetic hand 3D model section view

As shown in fig. 2, RAM is connected to motor actuator where RAM gets the translatory motion through the rotary motion of the motor shaft which wades through threaded hole positioned at the center of the round portion of RAM itself. Four holes were perforated at upper dorsal side of RAM and one hole at palmer side where the five pins were inserted and through this cables were connected to each of the four fingers and thumb. During the linear motion of RAM sliding along the guideways riven within the main hand frame structure. The five round pins that can independently slide through each hole within the RAM which simultaneously imparts linear motion to each pin up to 2 mm. The independent sliding movement of each pin which is firmly secured to spring secured at inner end of RAM. Each spring expands individually upon getting a separate pull from individual finger which is directly proportional to finger touching the outer profile of gripping object that enable every finger to move independently to fewer degrees during flexion.

The individual fingers cable gets a pull or push as the DC motor rotates in either direction that results in finger movements. This mechanical motion sequence can be understood as when a motor moves in clockwise direction causes rectilinear motion of RAM in a predefined forward direction which pulls the cables attached to finger in the direction opposite the spring force and cause the fingers to flex to the pre-determined distance that results in gripping of an object. Similarly, upon moving the motor in anticlockwise direction, the RAM begin to move in reverse direction and the flexed fingers retain their normal position and grip tend to loosens on an object as spring slackens and acting spring force withdraws upon contraction. The proportion of grip force is directly proportional to the incremental displacement of RAM in a particular direction which results in finger flexion and extension. Upon activation, these cables are acts as a tendon of the real human hand which are responsible for flexion and extensions of the artificial fingers. The main constructional feature of this artificial prosthesis is that each cable linked to individual digit is equipped with individual tension spring connected in each RAM hole whose force tend to balance the force exerted by DC motor through pulling a cable offering self-incriminating movements of individual fingers. Each finger can extend motion span according to size and shape of the grasped object where fingers touch the uppermost protruded portion of an object by adjusting the joint angles and itenable to flex at higher degrees than the finger grasping on flattened or lower surface profile of an object. Here the RAM transmit the motion to all five finger cables consistently but the spring integrated mechanism linked to each finger adjust the movement of each finger to different angle and distance pliantly that enables to conforms to the shape during gripping of an object accordingly.

The said manipulation of dynamic assembly arrangement provides an adaptive grip that relies only on mechanism motion sequence of mechanical components not on electronics based proportionate grip force controls which is an advantage to current prosthetic hand design. In literature survey of the prosthetic hands with adaptive grip or proportionate grip are mainly works upon electronics-based controls fewer prosthetic hands mechanisms are available that works on mechanical adaptive

based is fabricated till date [10-12]. The complete details of design features and working of this prosthetic hand is given ahead.

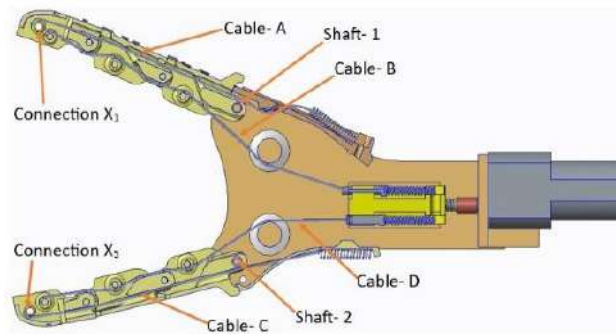


Fig.3 Prosthetic hand mechanism- Fully retracted position

IV FINGER FLEXION AND EXTENSION MOVEMENTS

In the proposed adaptive grip prosthetic hand design, each finger and thumb sub-assembly composed of two cables arranged at upper and lower portions which provides flexion and extension movements. Each finger activates by virtue of pulling an individual cable through motion sequence of mechanical components forming functional movements as shown in fig. 4.

Each finger specifically consists of two cables, one cable 'A' at dorsal side for doing the extension (straightening) movement of an individual finger upon stretching and retracting as it is attached to tension springs S1,S2,S3,S4 that are firmly secured to upper plate at other end as shown in fig. 5. Another cable 'B' is located at palmer side to maneuver finger flexion (bending) movements by stretching and retracting as it is attached to motor actuator through adaptive mechanism. Each finger subparts named as distal phalanx, middle phalanx and proximal phalanx which are joined through 3 pivotal joints about which every finger subpart rotates to achieve flexing or bending at desired angle while pulling a flexion cable 'B'. Extension cable 'A' passes through the three holes located at the upper side of each DP, MP and PP at the center of every finger subpart. Each sub-part undergoes typical displacement through series arrangement as it set forth fully straightened finger position while cable A is fully contracted whereas during the reverses action the cable B gets a opposite pull force against Cable A and the finger subparts tends to bent till a tight grip is accomplished. As shown in fig. 5. the one end of extension cable 'A' is firmly joined to starting point at joint X₁X₂X₃X₄ X₅ of DP and thereafter it passes through slot 1,2 and 3 of each DP, MP and PP then passing through hole H₁...H₅ at the upper plate and then its other end firmly secured to the spring S₁...S₅. The Spring S₁ is firmly fixed to the upper plate at other end and its function is to provide the spring force to open the grip against the pull exerted by dc motor which is applied to hold the hand grip.

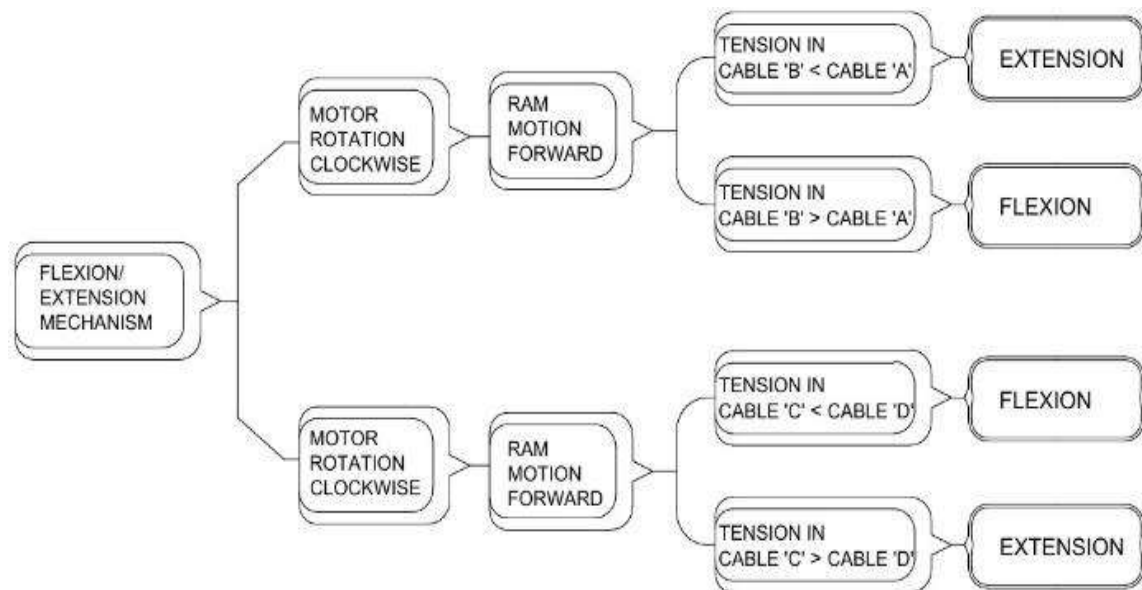


Fig. 4 Finger flexion and extension action activation

These elementary pairs with both cable A and cable B make synchronized movements make a closed loop system of fingers extension and flexion depending upon the direction of rotations of motor and hence RAM displacement in either direction enabling gripping an object.

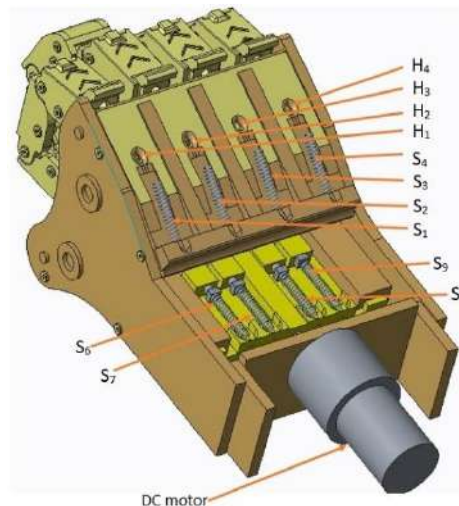


Fig.5 Prosthetic hand mechanism- Fully Closed Position

Depicting inward flexion of single finger1, the spring S_1 ensures the straightening position of finger as it is not stretched when no downward flexion force is exerted through lower cable B_1 . Similarly, extension springs S_2, S_3, S_4 and S_5 enacts the fingers straightening position when lower cables B_2, B_3, B_4, B_5 are slackened. The entire grasping mechanism works on the basis of veering and slackening of either of the cable A or B in case of four fingers. Similarly, veering and slackening of cable C and cable D cables in case of thumb flexion and extension movements. Flexion and extension action of each finger and thumb is a closed loop function based upon simultaneous spring contraction/ extension and cable movements. The complete action loop of grasping and ungrasping of hand was presented by fig.9.

The gripping mechanism works when cable B which is connected to RAM is strained upon getting a pulling force through motor actuation. This maneuvering action tightens the cable 'A' in a greater intensity as compared to spring force of extension spring to which the Cable A is secured. As a result, finger tends to flex and attain the fully flexed position till the RAM get fully moved forward to desired point of gripping under controlled manner as desired for gripping. However, while motor rotates in reverse direction when RAM moves in forward direction, the strain in cable B tends to lessens and the extension spring begins to contract till the RAM attains initial position where from it was moving and hence till cable B slackens completely thereby fingers achieves fully extended or straightened position that led to opening of hand grip.

The similar action is repeated in case of thumb movements at lower side, here the RAM pulls the cable D, as a result the strain in the said cable becomes greater which tends to flex the thumb inwards to the point till the point thumb completely flexed under controlled displacement by RAM through motor actuator. Similarly, as the motor moves in reverse direction, the cable D slackens and Cable C moves back to its initial position due to acting spring potential force as spring contracted back and thumb opens to fully extended position.

TABLE 1
MOTION SEQUENCE OF FINGER GRIP DRIVE MECHANISM

Finger F1	Spring	Hole	Cable	S1>	Cable	Push	
	S1>	H1>	A1>		B1>	Rod1>	Finger 1
Finger F1	Spring	Hole	Cable	S2>	Cable	Push	
	S2>	H2>	A2>		B2>	Rod1>	Finger 2
Finger F1	Spring	Hole	Cable	S3>	Cable	Push	Rod1
	S3>	H3>	A3>		B3>	Finger 3	
Finger F1	Spring	Hole	Cable	S4>	Cable	Push	Rod1
	S4>	H4>	A4>		B4>	Finger 4	
Thumb>	Spring	Hole	Cable	C>	Cable	Push	Rod1
	S5>	H5>	A5>		D>	Thumb	

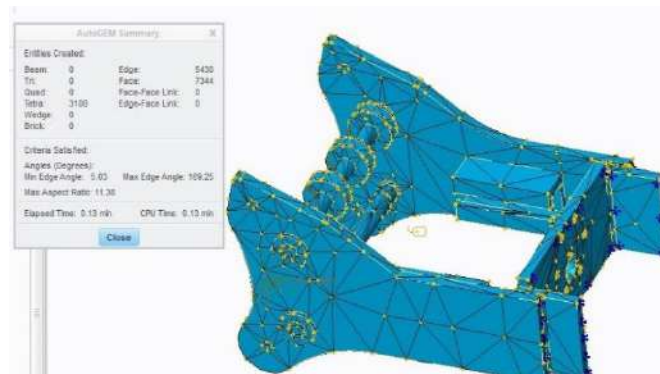


Fig. 6 FEA of hand frame using tetrahedron meshing

Frame provides the structural base to mount and rigid support all basic elements like mechanical drive components, motor actuators, harness system, finger and thumb sub-assemblies, mechanical

joints, electronic circuitry battery and other small components. This shell type structure as shown in fig.6. provides basic frame to secure the different type of components at designated places in order to achieve the required functionality. The key feature of prosthetic hand frame is its robust and compact structure which provides resilience to counter acting forces and payloads during gripping of an object without any considerable deformation or strain which can cause mechanical failure if exceeded. The finite element analysis of hand frame with tetrahedron mesh was carried out to assess design traits and resilience of structural frame and therefore its associated assembly parts which are more likely prone to failure. As material of structural frame plays very important role therefore aluminum grade 6061 was selected for the analytical study of project. The properties of Al 6061 grade constitute greater strength to withstand forces without losing structural rigidity provided with the advantage of being light weight and strength as compared to many other metals. In the present work the following values are taken for isotropic during simulation: Poisson's ratio 0.33, shear modulus 3.751×10^6 psi, density 0.098 pound per cubic inch, yield strength 3.989×10^4 psi and tensile strength 4.496×10^4 psi [13]. Stress at all maximum principal plane is observed 18.07 Megapascal without any considerable displacement when the load of 15 newton was applied on the shaft 1 where all fingers were assembled. Aluminum is generally used manufacturing material for prosthetic devices due to its higher biocompatibility and better manufacturability as compared to other metals. The loading parameters and boundary conditions parameters play a key role in dynamic assemblies for achieving desired functionality when stress and strain is applied to critical parts such as on smaller diameter shafts specifically in case of mechanical joints for the assessment of dynamic and kinematics characteristics under payload conditions.

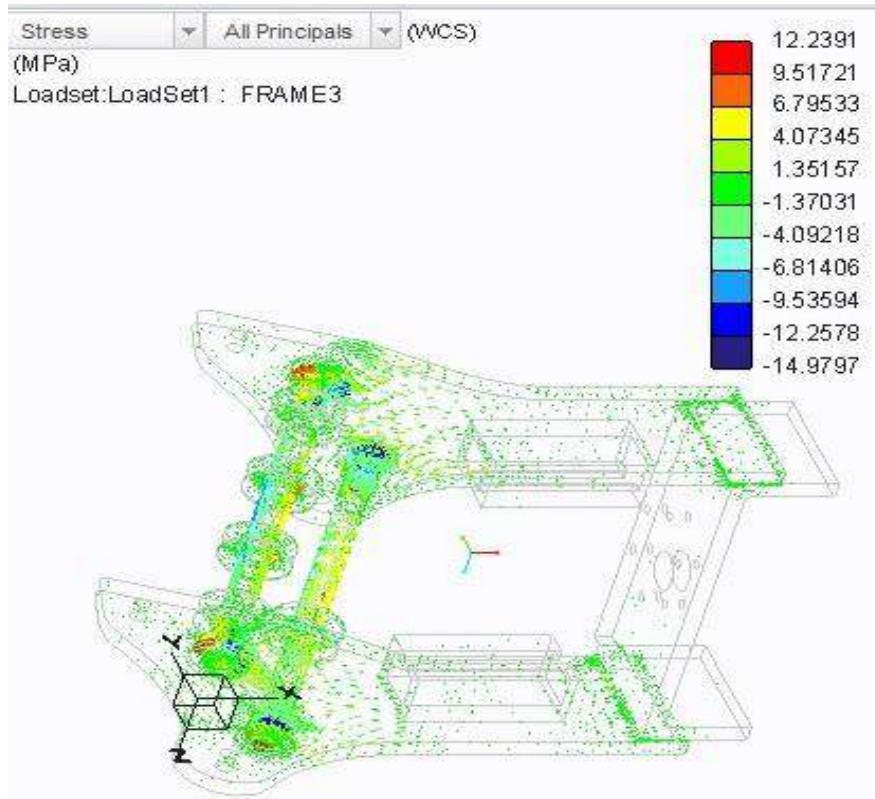


Fig. 7 Stress at all principal planes

In fig. no.7. the maximum stress at all principal planes is given as 12.2391 Megapascal while putting a combined load on both shaft 1 and shaft 2.

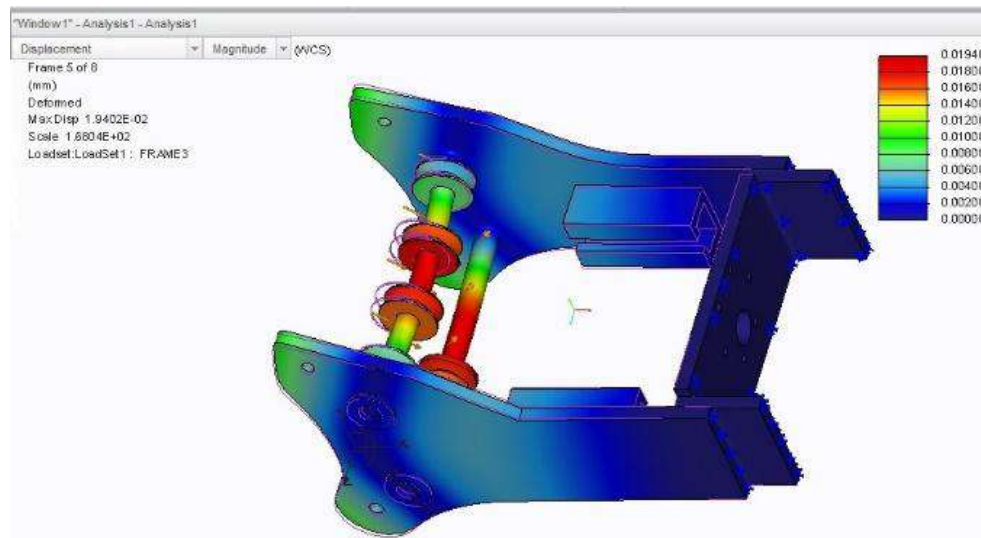


Fig. 8 Maximum displacement

As shown in fig. 8. maximum displacement was observed as 0.01940 mm which was almost negligible. Strain at maximum principal plain was observed 1.574×10^{-4} while von mises stress was

found 1.2703×10^1 Megapascal as shown in fig.9. The strain energy per unit volume also found 1.405×10^{-3} Megapascal which is shown in fig. 10.

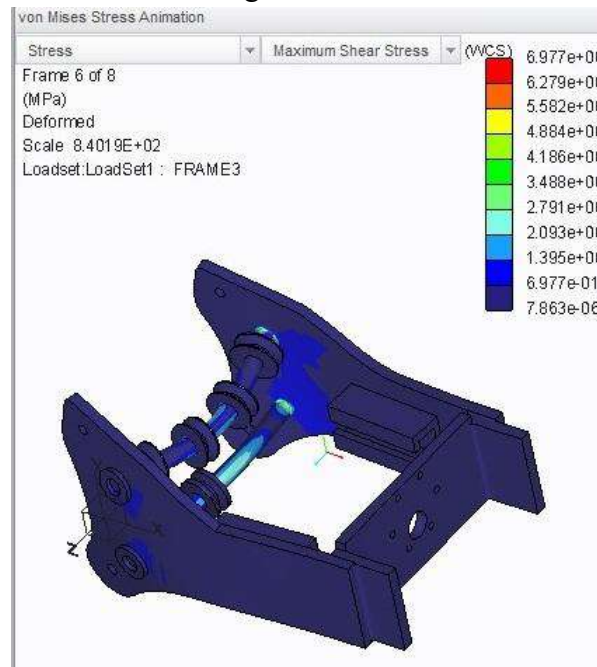


Fig. 9 FEA based von mises stress study

In structural frame FEA study, the basic loads and strain were doled out in case of shaft 1 and shaft 2 during the gripping action where all the 4 finger assemblies are assembled on shaft 1 and thumb on shaft 2. As actuator motor moves it pulls the cables attached to all fingers and thumb simultaneously which exerts the resultant forces on both shafts 1&2 during gripping an object. As shown in fig. 8. the analytical study by von mises analysis illustrates the critical stress regions highlighted in red spots that bears peak stress and consequently the highest deformation. Therefore, in design parameters such as diameter of joint shafts, thickness of joints and structural plates are precisely analyzed which includes optimal material thickness and appropriate design to counter various payload conditions are provided. The majority of resultant forces are acting specifically at principal planes of forces without any major deformation or

TABLE 2 DIGIT MECHANISM MOVEMENT SEQUENCE

structural failure during maximum gripping force and lifting a heavy object. The diameter of shaft 1 and shaft 2 are kept 10 mm during the structural analysis while considering factor of three safety into consideration.

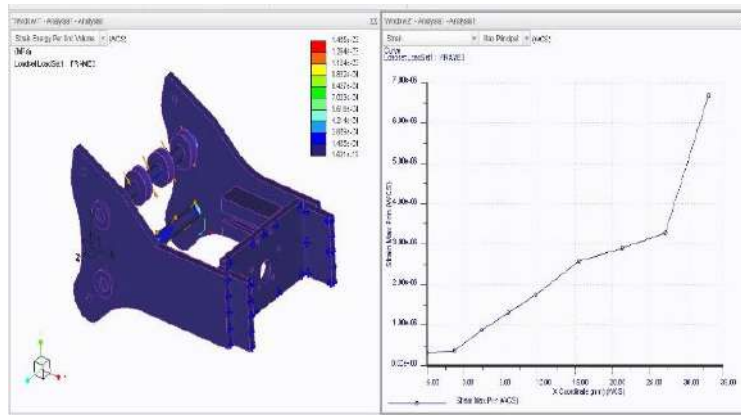


FIG. 10 Strain energy per unit volume

V. MISCELLANEOUS PARAMETERS

Power and utility

The battery power pack is the most basic requirement of any motorized prosthetic devices. It provides power to accomplish different hand manipulations via mechanical drive responsible for finger flexion and extension movements including all other electrical and electronics controls. The battery must last long enough time to serve repeated movements in designated time period with desired force. Li-ion and Li-Po batteries are best available and affordable options till date that provides higher energy density to withstand long time duration with maximum gripping actions and manipulations to be accomplished by prosthetic hand [14-15]. Choosing a battery pack with low power-discharge at idle mode is also important to minimize the energy draining.

Speed of opening closing or finger flexion and extension is directly based on RPM or linear motion of motor actuator, displacements angles of finger subpart assemblies, response time of various sensors, transmission assembly elements, linkage elements like cables and shaft-screw based moving joint mechanism and size of other crucial mechanical elements.

To eliminate the wastage of battery power, achieving a passive gripping action by mechanical drive is better option rather than the long active grips. In passive grips, upon grasping an object using self-locking mechanical grip that enables to hold object with stability and without loosening a grip due to force of gravity or mechanism backlash when the motor actuator is stopped delivering power to engage the mechanical drive-in position.

Grasping speed

Grasping speed is crucial parameter while designing dexterous hand design drive motion mechanisms. Optimal hand grasping speed while holding and moving various objects is highly required during daily living activities of a person. Grasping speed depends upon the displacement factors of actuating mechanisms and motor rpm.

The hand gripping is all depends upon pulling a particular harness cable in either direction. The movement sequence of working of fingers for opening and closing a grip based upon magnitude of acing forces on either of the cable A, cable B, Cable C, Cable D is given below in table 2

The angle of turning or bending digit subparts around the joint axis is directly proportional to linear movement of RAM in either direction.

Mechanical assembly	Individual Element	Magnitude of force	Finger Action
Finger	Finger1 to Finger 4	Cabe B < cable A	Extension
		Cable B > Cable A	Flexion
Thumb	Single entity	Cabe C < cable D	Flexion
		Cable C > Cable D	Extension

To incite the gripping action, DC motor tends to pull the lower cable B which exerts a force and flexes a finger subpart to a conforming extent then after releasing the force through lower cable during a reverse rotation of motor accomplishing reverse action. The gradual pulling an upper cable A again reposition the finger to a normal straightening position through spring force of springs S_1 , S_2 , S_3 and S_4 in case of each four fingers respectively. Also, each push rod is connected to RAM through each tension springs. The push rod is very crucial member of entire mechanism as it connected and guided by a sliding joint and passes through a different slot in RAM. One end of push road at forward side is secured to flexion cable B and other end to each tension spring S_6 , S_7 , S_8 , S_9 .

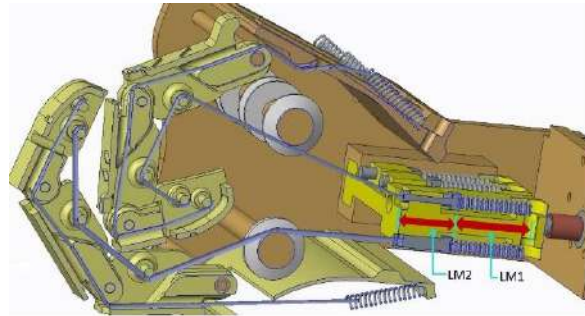


Fig.11 Push rod displacement for adaptive grip control

Push rod is a key element that assist to make the hand grip adaptive as it is connected to spring which is further connected to RAM at another end. As shown in fig.11. LM2 and LM1 narrates displacements levels of spring and push rod which are directly connected to each other. The small round push rod guided in round slot can move up to 2 mm maximum linearly in forward and backward directions during extension and flexion of fingers. As motor rotates, the RAM moves linearly through which each tension springs S_6 , S_7 , S_8 , S_9 is connected to it. This action causes spring to tract in linear way and in a same pull, the push rods which is guided through each individual hole in RAM element also tend to move linearly which pulls the designated cable B and cable D which incites finger and thumb flexion. The degree or angle of flexion is directly

proportional to the RAM movement and the speed of opening and closing of grip which depends upon the rotational motion of DC motor. As the motion mechanism is based upon the thread screw rotary motion of shaft connected to DC motor that imparts linear motion to RAM. The extended shaft of DC motor is double start thread and rotates through a matched threaded hole in RAM yielding faster linear motion as compared to simpler threads. Bend angle proportional to 2 mm of push rod. This limitation of low grip force of cable-based gripping mechanism in current prosthesis design is overcome by adding self-adjustable push rods to RAM mechanism in which each push rod with spring activation is attached to each finger individually. In continuation to the gripping mechanism RAM which is connected to DC motor actuator through threaded screw motion assembly mechanism pulls the flexion cables connected to separate push rods. This mechanism serves an advantage contrary to other type of mechanism that it does not give backlash or loosens the extension cables when power supply cuts and motor shaft stops rotating. However, the linear motion of push rod is restricted to 2 mm only. Another advantage of cable-based finger drive mechanism also provides higher turning angle in contrary to linkage-based motion mechanism assemblies. Finger mechanism is a crucial parameter upon which entire hand grip depends. An additive manufacturing technique has the best 3D printing technique with CAD is significantly used for rapid manufacturing of customized assembly parts according to specific personal requirements of an individual. The 3-D printing technology is proven more useful in research and development activities but not suitable for mass production of prosthetic devices. The foremost features of prosthetic hand are its functionality, gripping force, weight and control feature strategy.

CONCLUSION

Passive adaptive grips solely based on mechanical motion is an important consideration of multi-finger prosthetic hand design with self-adjusting fingers. Conformal grip of any prosthetic hand generally requires multiple motors either in each joint or at least one actuator for each digit to flex. CAD technique was used to minimize the errors in designing specifically finding out the exact part sizes and controlled movement constraints of working mechanism to achieve desired functionality. Using CAD tools, the prototype development cost had reduced to a greater extent as the requirement of post development experimentation cost and validation of mechanism working were reduced significantly. Also, a major constraint arising in working mechanism is eliminated during the designing phase using CAD/CAE techniques. Using FEA study on 3D model of prosthetic device, a weaker region can be found and major deformations on particular regions prone to failure upon applying payloads and expected boundary conditions along with taking material properties into account. Design and strength parameters of identified weaker region can be optimized to improve unwanted deformation that can lead to failures. By using technological features of computer aided design and engineering, the complex anthropomorphic prosthetic hands can be developed with highly effective functionality and better controls.

REFERENCES

- [1] Rodrigues, R.; Miranda, D.; Carvalho, V.; Matos, D. Design and Development of an EMG Upper Limb Controlled Prosthesis: A Preliminary Approach. *Actuators* 2025, 14, 219. <https://doi.org/10.3390/act14050219>
- [2] Abd, M.A., Ingicco, J., Hutchinson, D. et al. Multichannel haptic feedback unlocks prosthetic hand dexterity. *Sci Rep* 12, 2323 (2022). <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-022-04953-1>
- [3] Lunguț, E.F.; Matei, L.; Roșu, M.M.; Iliescu, M.; Radu, C. Biomechanical Hand Prosthesis Design. *Machines* 2023, 11, 964. <https://doi.org/10.3390/machines11100964>.
- [4] Maw, J., Wong, K. Y., & Gillespie, P. (2016). Hand anatomy. *British Journal of Hospital Medicine*, 77(3), C34-C40.
- [5] Feix, T., Romero, J., Schmiedmayer, H. B., Dollar, A. M., & Kragic, D. (2015). The grasp taxonomy of human grasp types. *IEEE Transactions on human-machine systems*, 46(1), 66-77.
- [6] Vallbo, Ake B., and Roland S. Johansson. "Properties of cutaneous mechanoreceptors in the human hand related to touch sensation." *Hum neurobiol* 3.1 (1984): 3-14.
- [7] Winters, Jack M., and Lawrence Stark. "Analysis of fundamental human movement patterns through the use of in-depth antagonistic muscle models." *IEEE transactions on biomedical engineering* 10 (2007): 826-839.
- [8] Nunes, João, et al. "Hand exoprosthesis mechatronic structure and actuation approaches: a systematic review of recent developments and trends." *Progress in Biomedical Engineering* 7.3 (2025): 032003.
- [9] Shibahara, Kohki, Yusuke Yamanoi, and Osamu Sakata. "Development of a Finger Mechanism for Myoelectric Prosthetic Hand Using Compact Mode-Shift Linkage Mechanism with Singularity Configuration." 2025 IEEE International Conference on Cyborg and Bionic Systems (CBS). IEEE, 2025.
- [10] N Dechev, W.L Cleghorn, S Naumann, Multiple finger, passive adaptive grasp prosthetic hand, *Mechanism and Machine Theory*, Volume 36, Issue 10, 2001, Pages 1157-1173 [doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/S0094-114X\(01\)00035-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0094-114X(01)00035-0)
- [11] Estay D, Basoalto A, Ardila J, Cerda M, Barraza R. Development and Implementation of an Anthropomorphic Underactuated Prosthesis with Adaptive Grip. *Machines*. 2021; 9(10):209 [doi: https://doi.org/10.3390/machines9100209](https://doi.org/10.3390/machines9100209)
- [12] R. A. R. C. Gopura, D. S. V. Bandara, N. P. A. Gunasekera, V. H. Hapuarachchi and B. S. Ariyaratna, "A prosthetic hand with self-adaptive fingers," 2017 3rd International Conference on Control, Automation and Robotics (ICCAR), Nagoya, Japan, 2017, pp. 269-274, doi: 10.1109/ICCAR.2017.7942701.
- [13] Malik, Anis Rohmana, et al. "Footrest Design in Achieving an Ergonomic Sitting Posture." *G-Tech: Jurnal Teknologi Terapan* 9.4 (2025): 2187-2197.
- [14] Bastarrechea, A., et al. "Mechanical design of a low-cost ABS hand prosthesis using the finite element method." *Journal of Physics: Conference Series*. Vol. 1736. No. 1. IOP Publishing, 2021.

- [15] Leal-Naranjo, José-Alfredo, et al. "Design and kinematic analysis of a new 3-DOF spherical parallel manipulator for a prosthetic wrist." *Journal of the Brazilian Society of Mechanical Sciences and Engineering* 42.1 (2020): 63.

Ethanol Blending Petrol

Lakshay Gehlot^{#1}, Manu Khare
 Mechanical Department
 Arya College of engineering Kukas Jaipur
¹lakshaygehlott290@gmail.com

Abstract– It is necessary to look for strategies to limit or avoid using fossil fuels because of their rapid depletion. India and other heavily populated nations should be more concerned about this. India began mixing ethyl alcohol (ethanol, EtOH) with gasoline ten years ago. By 2024, it is anticipated that the 10% EtOH by volume blend currently used by Indian gasoline suppliers would increase to 20%. Ethanol blending has advantages and disadvantages, just like any other engineering solution. The purpose of this review is to evaluate, from a technical and commercial standpoint, the impact of ethanol mixing in internal combustion engines that use spark ignition. The impact of EtOH blending on engine emissions and performance has been thoroughly examined. There is also discussion of certain fuel quality criteria that impact performance, such as the amount of water and the concentration of EtOH. EtOH blending has an impact on emissions and may cause compatibility problems, which are explained. EtOH production routes have the potential to alter the technological and commercial aspects of any process. The three forms of ethanol—corn, wheat, and sugar cane—with varying blending rates are reviewed in this work. This document additionally includes an investigation framework study on how to finish the research.

A. Introduction

The petroleum reserves that are now available Will eventually run out. The need for energy is growing everyday due to urbanization and population growth. Biomass is increasing as the main conventional energy sources, such as coal, oil, and fossil fuels, are gradually being depleted. All of the promising renewable energy options that are also environmentally favourable [1,2]. Petrol is a light distillate composed of hydrocarbons (HC) in the C5 - C10 range. The HCs include aromatics, cycloparaffins, Branch chain paraffins, straight chain paraffins, and even olefins. Boiling temperature typically ranges from 30 to 180 °C. Good combustion properties (octane number) with the right HC composition, volatility and fluidity (important for handling and storage), oxidation stability, and cleanliness (adherence to pollution control standards) are all necessary for gasoline to be used as fuel in spark ignition engines. Traditional additives include anti-oxidants, anti-icing additives, and anti-knock substances. In the past, EtOH was thought to be a freezing point depressant. Actually, gasohol mixes (5 vol% EtOH) have already become more and more common. EtOH requires 2.5–2.6% more heat of vaporization, 60% more air for burning, and 66% more energy than gasoline. Due to a single boiling point and vapour pressure, the saturated vapour of EtOH is difficult to ignite below roughly 10 °C. When combined with its high heat of vaporization, this makes cold starting challenging. These problems could get worse as the amount of EtOH increases, Prasad [3]. The benefits of biofuels

are straightforward: they come from common biomass sources, they are extremely ecologically friendly, they burn with a carbon oxide cycle, they are perishable, and they add value to properties [4-5]. In order to lower exhaust emissions and boost engine efficiency, this review paper will examine engines that are run with varying percentages of gasoline and ethanol blended.

I. EFFECTS OF BIO-ETHANOL IN PETROL ENGINE.

The characteristics of blended fuels containing ethanol and unleaded petrol are displayed in Table 1. Gasoline (E0) and gasoline ethanol blends (E10, E20, E40, and E60) were used as test fuels; the number that follows E represents the proportion of volumetric ethanol. The tests were conducted at six full various compression ratios for each fuel, ranging from 8:1 to 13:1, and as a result, the engine's performance was examined. The purity ratio of ethanol is 99.5% [6]. The preliminary tests were carried out employing low ethanol blends (up to 30% ethanol in volume) to find appropriate injection techniques, including split and single injections, respectively. The methods of single injection include standard late (compression stroke) and early homogenised injections. Two distinct Split injection techniques were examined. For these, the first injection took place immediately upon intake valve opening (IVO), while the second injection took place either before or following intake valve closure (IVC). The two injection strategies chosen were the single homogeneous injection and the split injection where the second injection occurred after EVC, these are summarized in Table 2 along with the spark timings and fuel blends used for this study [7].

TABLE I

Properties of ethanol-unleaded gasoline blended fuels (E0, E10, E20, E40 and E 60) [6]

Property item	Method	Test fuels				
		E0	E10	E20	E40	E60
Distillation (vol%)						
70 °C	ASTM D 86	24	40.2	39.3	37.7	18.2
100 °C		46.8	53.9	66	84.2	92.5
180 °C		97.6	97.3	98	98.2	98.7
Density (kg/m ³ at 15 °C)	ASTM D 1298	764.9	768	771.5	780.6	789.5
RVP (kPa)	ASTM D 323	57.6	66.7	66.2	63	57.4
Lead content (g/L)	ASTM D 3237	0.004	0.003	0.002	0	0
Sulfur (wt%)	ASTM D 5453	0.012	0.017	0.022	0.026	0.032
Stoichiometric air-fuel ratio (weight) ^a		14.7	14.13	13.56	12.42	11.28
Lower heating value (kJ/kg) ^a		43,932	42,185	40,430	36,870	33,400
RON	ASTM D 2699	86.4	87.4	89.8	90.9	92.7
MON	ASTM D 2700	98.8	99.9	101.6	101.7	102.8

^a Typical or calculated values.

TABLE II

Test conditions [7]

Fuel blends (%Vol. ethanol)	0, 10, 20, 30, 50, 85, 100		
Spark timing ($^{\circ}$ bTDC)	19, 24, 29, 34 ^a , 39		
Injection strategies	No. of injections	Sol ($^{\circ}$ bTDC)	Designation
	Single	280	280
	Double ^b	1st 371 2nd 141	371/141
Stoichiometry	$\lambda = 1$		
Engine speed (rpm)	1500		
IMEP (bar)	3.4		

^a MBT for standard gasoline, single injection.^b Equal injection duration.

Fuel preparation and testing

A burette is used to control the proper amounts of fuel and methanol during the blending process. Three blend compositions are created, the first of which contains 5%, 10%, and 15% methanol by volume. Because methanol has a significantly lower density it is simpler to combine and create the blend by hand steering than that of petrol. The blending process in our lab is shown in. Materials classified as fuel contain a lot of heat. When it burns,

it produces massive quantity of heat. An alternative fuel prepared next mixings should likewise have the same or greater quantity of heat in contrast to the parent fuel. The characteristics of the fuel, such as its density, kinematic viscosity, acid value, flash point, and calorific value, must be increased. [8].



Fig. 1. Preparation of petrol and methanol blend.

The main goal of blending petrol streams with four novel fuels—bio naphtha, bioethanol, bio-ETBE, and methanol—was to lower the carbon footprint of fuels used in gasoline-powered cars. The fuels that were tested Fuel A, Fuel B, Fuel C, and Fuel D were custom blended (match blending) in this work to reflect appropriate blends for distribution in the European market. The component ratios were established to ensure that the four fuels met the specifications outlined in the European standard EN 228 for unleaded petrol [9]. All three fuels are classed as E10 (i.e., petrol containing up to 10% v/v of ethanol and up to 3.7% m/m of oxygen), while fuel A is categorised as E5 (i.e., petrol containing up to 5% v/v of ethanol and up to 2.7% m/m of oxygen). The results of Innovhub-SSI's examination of the four distinct blends. These fuels were not created by merely adding various shares of novel fuels to a standard petrol basis; rather, they were the outcome of specialised mixing. For instance, Fuel C (21.79% bio-ETBE content) has a larger aromatic concentration than Fuel A (3.63% bio-ETBE content), despite the fact that bio ETBE does not include aromatics. It was difficult to identify the impact of the blended novel fuels on the emission of a particular pollutant since different types and volumes of petrol streams were employed to make the experimental fuels. Consequently, the interpretation of The outcomes are somewhat constrained [10].

B. Test protocol

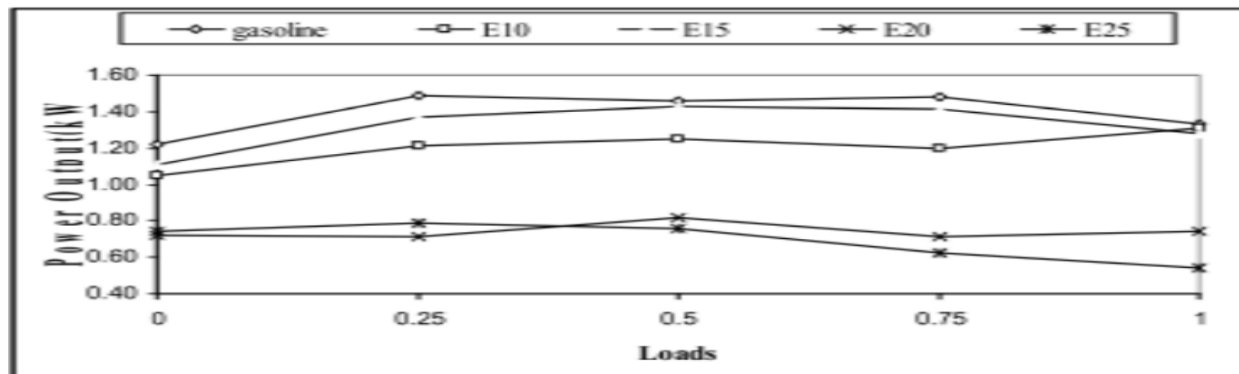
In order to conduct laboratory tests, the vehicle was driven on a chassis dynamometer in accordance with the European homologation cold start WLTC (Worldwide Harmonised Light Vehicles Test Cycle) [58]. The chassis A dynamometer that is housed inside a climate-controlled test cell replicates road conditions and enables reliable and reproducible testing, which is crucial for comparing emissions from various fuel feeding sources. In short, the exam is 23.25 km long and lasts 30 minutes. The WLTC, which is split into four phases with distinct speed ranges Low, Middle, High, and Extra-High simulates normal driving circumstances [10].

In accordance with RDE regulations, the on-road route used for RDE (Real Driving Emission) testing was created and driven [11–12]. In accordance with RDE regulations, the on-road route used for RDE (Real Driving Emission) testing was created and driven [60–63].

The duration of RDE testing ranges from 90 to 120 minutes. The vehicle is driven on a variety of public highways, including motorways (high speed), country roads (mid speed), and urban roads (low speed). Unlike lab tests, which are conducted by one person, all RDE tests were conducted by the same two individuals on board.

During RDE tests, no particular methodology was followed for gear shifts. When all RDE tests were compared, comparable speeds were attained because of identical traffic conditions on the same route (all testing began at the same time on weekdays) and a planned, repeatable driving style by the same driver [13–14]. The

RDE test was conducted twice for each fuel, and each test revealed 100% valid CO₂ windows found within allowed tolerances [11].



C. Statistical analysis

The primary statistics of relevance (mean, standard deviation, and coefficient of variation) from the outcomes of the three individual tests conducted for each fuel blend were used to summarise the results of laboratory testing for each pollutant and parameter. Emissions

and FC comparisons were assessed using the percentage variations of average values computed in relation to reference fuel A. The Welch's t-test, also known as the unequal variances t-test, was used to assess the statistical significance of these differences at a 95% confidence level. Additionally, confidence intervals were recomputed. The supplemental materials contain histograms of the emissions whose difference was statistically significant. Welch's ANOVA, or ANOVA with unequal variances, was used to examine the statistical significance of the differences between the four fuels at a 95% confidence level. If the Welch's test revealed a statistically significant difference between fuels, the pair of fuels that differed substantially were then determined using the Games-Howell post hoc test and the ANOVA test. Only the controlled emissions (CO, THC, NMHC, NO_x, and PN) and the CO₂ emissions were subjected to Welch's ANOVA. Because the grouping of data did not have a normal distribution, the test could not be conducted for PM emissions and many other unregulated pollutants. IBM SPSS Statistics 26 was the program utilised for the statistical analysis [19]. Because real-world driving results are not strictly repeatable due to intrinsically unpredictable traffic, driver behaviour, and ambient factors, statistical tests on measurements from RDE processes were not conducted. circumstances [20-21]

D. Effect of bio-ethanol in performance engine

Figure 2: The effect of ethanol on Performance [17]

The engine system, the power measurement system, and the exhaust measurement system—all depicted in Figure 2—were the three main components of the experimental equipment. A commercial engine was the engine system utilised in this experiment. The engine's power output

was measured by the Taylan Etker's hydraulic dynamometer. The VLT-3600 analyser with precalibration was used in the trial to detect the concentrations of CO, CO₂, HC, and O₂ in the exhaust gas online [15-16].

The mean power output versus loads for different 190 proof ethanol/gasoline mixtures are shown in Figure 2. When compared to petrol, the engine power output decreases at low loads by 84%, 94%, 54%, and 38% for E10, E15, E20, and E25, respectively, and at high loads by 89%, 96%, 56%, and 41% for E10, E15, E20, and E25, in that order. When compared to petrol, the engine power output often dropped by 86.5%, 95%, 55%, and 36.5% at E10, E15, E20, and E25, respectively. The large volume of blends being carbureted at the same load is responsible for the blends' higher power output [17-18].

E. Results and discussion

While the test produced significant results for THC, NMHC, and NO_x, the Welch's ANOVA revealed no significant differences between fuels for CO and PN. For THC and NMHC, the Games-Howell post hoc test revealed a nearly significant difference between Fuel B and Fuel C (p-value = 0.053). and 0.054, respectively), as well as a notable variation in NO_x between Fuel A and Fuel D. Regarding reference fuel A, changes in THC, NMHC, PM, and PN are not statistically significant, and most discrepancies in observed values fall within a narrow range of fluctuations. emissions. Because of their higher oxygen content, all of the experimental fuels showed lower CO emission factors than the reference fuel. Even though Fuel B and Fuel C's findings were comparable, only Fuel C's difference was statistically significant (-22%) since the results of the three individual experiments had less dispersion. According to certain research, the fuel's oxygenate constituents reduce incomplete combustion [22,23,24,25].

There is no statistical significance for changes in CH₄, PN (ELPI data), PN (EEPS data), PN (EEPS sub-23 nm data), and other non-regulated emissions when compared to reference fuel A. PM soot, NH₃, 1,3-butadiene, formaldehyde, benzene, and N₂O exhaust emissions (number in the aerodynamic diameter range of 5.6–23 nm). With the exception of 1,3-butadiene, benzene, and N₂O, all of the pollutants had the maximum emission values during the low-speed period. The range of CH₄ emissions was fairly similar to the range of 1.0–2.1 mg/km that Clairotte et al. found on their seven tested Euro 6dTEMP petrol vehicles. [26]. Samples of diluted exhaust gases were collected using 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine (DNPH) cartridges and tested in accordance with the guidelines in the supplemental materials in order to look into the emissions of carbonylic chemicals. Since the TWC effectively eliminates carbonylic chemicals once it reaches the ideal temperature, the samples were only taken during the low-speed phase. The outcomes are summarised in Table 5. All of the test fuels show an overall rise in formaldehyde and acetaldehyde emissions. While the increase in acetaldehyde emissions was statistically significant for all test fuels (+59% with Fuel B, +92% with Fuel C, +89% with Fuel D), the increase in formaldehyde emissions was only statistically significant with Fuel D feeding (+56%). These statistically significant increases align with the literature that has been reviewed: Formaldehyde emissions increased when methanol was added [27,28,29].

F. Conclusion

According to current research, a combination of petrol and methanol may be utilised as a fuel substitute. In order to reduce emissions, a mixture of 5%, 10%, and 15% methanol with Petro exhibits less knocking and emissions. Richer blends can occasionally emit more NO_x than leaner ones. However, for blends including up to 10% methanol, other emission elements are greatly decreased. When compared to all other blends examined, blend B10 exhibits a respectable decrease in all emission elements. For better performance and emissions, it is therefore recommended to add 5% to 10% methanol to regular petrol. This study develops a standard testing procedure that could be useful when working with various alternative fuels. The goal of this review article is to employ biofuel in petrol engines. Ethanol-petrol has the potential to be used as an alternative fuel that can lower emissions and improve petrol engine performance. Numerous researchers have conducted studies (experiments) with bio-ethanol blends, use, which causes the engine's power and fuel consumption to significantly increase.

Ethanol blending with petrol has emerged as a sustainable strategy to reduce dependence on fossil fuels and mitigate environmental pollution. Ethanol, being a renewable and oxygenated fuel, enhances combustion efficiency and lowers harmful exhaust emissions such as carbon monoxide and hydrocarbons. Numerous studies confirm that low to moderate ethanol blends (up to 20%) can be used in conventional spark-ignition engines with minimal modifications, while higher blends may require engine optimization to address challenges such as vapor lock, material compatibility, and cold-start issues. Overall, ethanol-petrol blends contribute to cleaner energy use, rural economic development through biofuel production, and improved energy security. Continued research and supportive policy frameworks are essential to enhance production efficiency, infrastructure compatibility, and large-scale adoption of ethanol-blended fuels.

REFERENCES

- [1] A. Demirbas, *Biodiesel: A Realistic Fuel Alternative for Diesel Engines*: Springer, 2008
- [2] Amir Khalid, M.D. Anuar, Yusri Ishak, B. Manshoor, Azwan Sapit, Mutalib Leman, Izzuddin Zaman, "Emissions characteristics of small diesel engine fuelled by waste cooking oil", *MATEC Web of Conferences*, Volume 13, 2014, Article number 06006, DOI: 10.1051/metacone/20141306006.
- [3] B.Q. He et al.
A study on emission characteristics of an EFI engine with ethanol blended gasoline fuels
Atmos. Environ. (2003)
- [4] Puppan, D., *Environmental evaluation of biofuels*. *Periodica Polytechnica Ser Soc Man Sci* 10:95–116., (2002).
- [5] Amir Khalid, N. Tamaldin, M. Jaat, M. F. M. Ali, B. Manshoor, Izzuddin Zaman, "Impact of biodiesel storage duration on fuel properties and emissions", *Procedia Engineering*, volume 68, 2013, Pages 225 – 230, Elsevier, 2013, DOI: 10.1016/j.proeng.2013.12.172
- [6] Yücesu, H. S., Topgül, T., Çinar, C., & Okur, M. (2006). Effect of ethanol–gasoline blends on engine performance and exhaust emissions in different compression ratios.

- [7] D. Turner, H. Xu, R. F. Cracknell, V. Natarajan, and X. Chen, “Combustion performance of bio-ethanol at various blend ratios in a gasoline direct injection engine,” *Fuel*, vol. 90, no. 5, pp. 1999–2006, May 2011.
- [8] C. Sayin, H.M. Ertunc, M. Hosoz, I. Kilicaslan, M. Canakci, Performance and exhaust emission of a gasoline engine using artificial neural network, *Appl. Therm. Eng.* 27 (2007) 46–54, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.applthermaleng.2006.05.016>
- [9] CEN. EN 228:2012+A1:2017 Automotive fuels - Unleaded petrol - Requirements and test methods 2017
- [10] European Commission. Commission Regulation (EU) 2017/1151. Off J Eur Union 2017.
- [11] European Commission. Commission Regulation (EU) 2018/1832. Off J Eur Union 2018;1832:301.
- [12] European Commission. Commission Regulation (EU) 2017/1154. Off J Eur Union 2017;1154.
- [13] Hubbard CP, Anderson JE, Wallington TJ. Ethanol and air quality: influence of fuel ethanol content on emissions and fuel economy of flexible fuel vehicles. *Environ Sci Technol* 2014;48:861–7. <https://doi.org/10.1021/es404041v>.
- [14] Lerner A, Brear MJ, Lacey JS, Gordon RL, Webley PA. Life cycle analysis (LCA) of flow emission methanol and di-methylether (DME) derived from natural gas. *Fuel* 2018;220:871–8. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fuel.2018.02.066>.
- [15] Nakata, K., Utsumi, S., Ota, A., Kawatake, K., Kawai, T., & Tsunooka, T. (2006). The Effect of Ethanol Fuel on a Spark Ignition Engine, (724).
- [16] Yüksel, F., & Yüksel, B. (2004). The use of ethanol–gasoline blend as a fuel in an SI engine. *Renewable Energy*, 29(7), 1181–1191. doi:10.1016/j.renene.2003.11.012
- [17] Nakata, K., Utsumi, S., Ota, A., Kawatake, K., Kawai, T., & Tsunooka, T. (2006). The Effect of Ethanol Fuel on a Spark Ignition Engine, (724).
- [18] Al-Hasan, M. (2003). Effect of ethanol–unleaded gasoline blend on engine performance and exhaust emission. *Energy Conversion and Management*, 44(9), 1547–1561. doi:10.1016/S0196-8904(02)00166-8
- [19] IBM. IBM SPSS Statistics 2021. <https://www.ibm.com/products/spss-statistics>
- [20] Thomas D, Li H, Wang X, Song B, Ge Y, Yu W, et al. A Comparison of Tailpipe Gaseous Emissions for RDE and WLTC Using SI Passenger Cars. *SAE Tech Pap* 2017;2017-Octob. 10.4271/2017-01-2391.
- [21] Merkisz J, Pielecha J, Bielaczyc P, Woodburn J. Analysis of emission factors in RDE tests as well as in NEDC and WLTC chassis dynamometer tests. *SAE Tech Pap* 2016. <https://doi.org/10.4271/2016-01-0980>.

- [22] Goldwine G, Sher E, Sher D. Comparison of Regulated and unregulated emissions and fuel economy of si engines with three fuels: RON95, M15, and E10. *SAE Int J Fuels Lubr* 2019;12:189–209. <https://doi.org/10.4271/04-12-03-0013>.
- [23] Lim CS, Lim JH, Cha JS, Lim JY. Comparative effects of oxygenates-gasoline blended fuels on the exhaust emissions in gasoline-powered vehicles. *J Environ Manage* 2019;239:103–13. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2019.03.039>.
- [24] Wang X, Ge Y, Liu L, Peng Z, Hao L, Yin H, et al. Evaluation on toxic reduction and fuel economy of a gasoline direct injection- (GDI-) powered passenger car fueled with methanol-gasoline blends with various substitution ratios. *Appl Energy* 2015; 157:134–43. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2015.08.023>.
- [25] Sarıdemir S, Etem Gürel A, Agbulut Ü, Bakan F. Investigating the role of fuel injection pressure change on performance characteristics of a DI-CI engine fuelled with methyl ester. *Fuel* 2020;271:117634. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fuel.2020.117634>.
- [26] Clairotte M, Suarez-Bertoa R, Zardini AA, Giechaskiel B, Pavlovic J, Valverde V, et al. Exhaust emission factors of greenhouse gases (GHGs) from European road vehicles. *Environ Sci Eur* 2020;32. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12302-020-00407-5>.
- [27] Zhang F, Hai Wang J, Lian Tian D, Wang JX, Shuai SJ. Research on unregulated emissions from an alcohols-gasoline blend vehicle using FTIR, HPLC and GC-MS measuring methods. *SAE Int J Engines* 2013;6:1126–37. <https://doi.org/10.4271/2013-01-1345>.
- [28] Goldwine G, Sher E, Sher D. Comparison of Regulated and unregulated emissions and fuel economy of si engines with three fuels: RON95, M15, and E10. *SAE Int J Fuels Lubr* 2019;12:189–209. <https://doi.org/10.4271/04-12-03-0013>.
- [29] Wang X, Ge Y, Liu L, Peng Z, Hao L, Yin H, et al. Evaluation on toxic reduction and fuel economy of a gasoline direct injection- (GDI-) powered passenger car fueled with methanol-gasoline blends with various substitution ratios. *Appl Energy* 2015; 157:134–43. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apenergy.2015.08.023>.

A Review on Global Market Dynamics and Developmental Trends of Hybrid Electric Vehicles

Rubi Kanwar^{#1}, Ankit Sharma
Mechanical Department
Arya College of engineering Kukas Jaipur
¹rubi66998@gmail.com

Abstract – The use of hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs) has increased dramatically as a result of the global shift to environmentally friendly transportation, establishing HEVs as an essential bridge technology between internal combustion engine vehicles and fully electric vehicles. In-depth research of the global HEV market is provided by this review, which also looks at regional adoption patterns, growth drivers, current trends, and industry competition. The study investigates how market demand is shaped by governmental policies, environmental laws, fuel economy standards, and technology developments. In addition to addressing the growing interest in emerging economies, regional insights emphasize the dominance of important markets like North America, Europe, and Asia-Pacific. The review also identifies opportunities, such as improvements in hybrid powertrain technologies and growing environmental consciousness, as well as challenges, such as high manufacturing costs, battery limitations, and consumer perception. This paper attempts to provide a comprehensive understanding of the development, present state, and prospects of the HEV sector in the context of worldwide sustainable mobility by combining recent market data and scholarly literature.

Keywords –Electricvehicle, Hybrid electric vehicle, Series hybrid, Market trends of vehicles

[1] INTRODUCTION

In the modern world, transportation networks are crucial. The majority of them drive automobiles with internal combustion engines (ICE). Serious issues like air pollution, global warming, and the quick depletion of the planet's petroleum resources have resulted from and continue to result from the use of ICE. Three common vehicles that are suggested to replace conventional vehicles with internal combustion engines (ICE) are fuel cell vehicles (FCV), hybrid electric vehicles (HEV), and electric vehicles (EV). The performance of EV and fuel cellvehicle is far behind the requirement. Thus advanced vehicle technology research has been turned to focus on HEVs[1].

A hybrid car is one that has two or more energy storage systems on board. One type of hybrid electric vehicle is a gasoline-powered vehicle that doubles as a fuel converter. A bidirectional electrical storage device is the other. Hybrid electric vehicles use energy storage in a number of ways to lower fuel consumption, including braking energy recovery, engine downsizing, more

efficient engine operation, and engine shutdown when not in motion. The main differences between EVs, HEVs, and FCVs are displayed in Table I.[2]

Regenerative braking, which transforms the vehicle's kinetic energy into electric energy to charge the battery instead of wasting it as heat energy like conventional brakes do, is one efficiency-enhancing technology used by modern HEVs. Certain types of HEVs use their internal combustion engine to spin an electrical generator (a combination known as a motor generator) in order to power the electric drive motors directly or to recharge their batteries. A start-stop system, which shuts down the ICE when it is at idle and restarts it when necessary, is how many HEVs lower idle emissions.

Since the gasoline engine of a hybrid electric vehicle (HEV) is typically smaller than that of a vehicle that burns pure gasoline (natural gas and propane fuels produce lower emissions), a HEV produces fewer emissions from its internal combustion engine (ICE) than a car of comparable size. Additionally, if the HEV is not being driven directly, it can be configured to run at maximum efficiency, further improving fuel economy.

[2] CLASSIFICATION OF HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A. Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

A hybrid electric vehicle is a particular kind of hybrid vehicle that combines an electric propulsion system with a traditional internal combustion engine propulsion system. Technically speaking, a hybrid electric vehicle is a form of technology that combines an electric vehicle with a mechanical drivetrain.

1) Series hybrid

As shown in fig 1 Instead of powering the wheels directly, the combustion engine in a series hybrid system power an electric generator, typically a three-phase alternator plus rectifier. The only way to power the wheels is with an electric motor. The generator drives an electric motor that moves the car and charges a battery. The motor uses both the generator and the batteries to generate electricity when high power levels are needed [2].

Long-standing examples of series hybrid setups include loaders, diesel-electric locomotives, diesel-electric power groups, and hydraulic earthmoving equipment. By reducing battery losses, ultracapacitors (or a flywheel: KERS=Kinetic Energy Recuperation System) can help series hybrids become more efficient. They provide the most energy during acceleration and absorb regenerative energy during braking, keeping the flywheels charged at low speed and almost empty at high speed, which lowers the stress factor and deep cycling of the battery. Flexible couplings are required if the motors are mounted to the vehicle body, and a complex transmission between the motor and wheel is not required because electric motors are efficient over a wide speed range.

Each wheel of some vehicle designs has its own electric motor. The drawback of motor integration into the wheels is that it increases mass, which reduces ride quality. Individual wheel motors provide the following benefits: all wheels drive, allowing for lower floors, which is helpful

for buses, and simplified traction control (no traditional mechanical transmission pieces like gearbox, transmission shafts, differential). Individual wheel motors are used in certain 8x8 military vehicles with all-wheel drive. Every fuel cell hybrid electric vehicle is set up in series, with a fuel cell taking the role of the engine and generator [3-5].

TABLE I.

Comparison of the major characteristics of EVs, HEVs, and FCVs[6]

	EV	HEV	FCV
Propulsion	✓ Electric motor drives	✓ Electric motor drives ✓ Internal combustion engines	✓ Electric motor drives
Energy storage subsystem	✓ Battery ✓ Supercapacitor	✓ Battery ✓ Supercapacitor ✓ Fossil or alternative fuels	✓ Hydrogen tank ✓ Battery/supercapacitor needed to enhance power density
Characteristics	✓ Zero local emissions ✓ High energy efficiency ✓ Independent of fossil fuel ✓ Relatively short range ✓ High initial cost ✓ Commercially available	✓ low local emissions ✓ High fuel economy ✓ dependence on fossil fuel ✓ long driving range ✓ Higher cost than ICE vehicles ✓ Commercially available	✓ Zero local emissions ✓ High energy efficiency ✓ Independent of fossil fuels(if not using gasoline to produce H2) ✓ High cost ✓ Under development
Energy source infrastructure	✓ Electrical grid charging facilities	✓ Gasoline station ✓ Electrical grid charging facilities(for plug-in hybrid)	✓ Hydrogen
Major issue	✓ Battery sizing and management ✓ Charging facilities ✓ Cost ✓ Battery life time	✓ Battery sizing and management ✓ Control, optimization and management of multiple energy sources	✓ Fuel cell cost, life cycle and reliability ✓ Hydrogen production cost

In [6], the operation of a continuously variable transmission (CVT) in a series-architected hybrid electric vehicle (HEV) with an intuitive control under various Driving circumstances are examined. According to the findings, the CVT can reduce motor energy usage by up to 9.38%.

B. Parallel Hybrid:

As shown in Fig. 2, [7] The wheels and the hybrid power unit are mechanically connected directly. This arrangement also features an electric traction motor. drives the wheels and has the ability to recover a portion of the braking energy to assist the internal combustion engine during acceleration circumstances or to charge the batteries (regenerative braking). Actually, a mechanical device connects the electric motor and internal combustion engine. The electrical machine can then be made with less capacity, meaning it will be less expensive and have a smaller volume. Depending on how the internal combustion engine and electrical motor are mechanically combined, there are a number of possible combinations. A speed-coupling with a planetary gear unit, a torque-coupling with a single shaft or two shaft configurations, or a combination of the two earlier couplings are all possible.

3 Series-Parallel Hybrid:

To combine the benefits of both parallel and series layouts, as seen in Fig. 3, [7], they are combined. Specifically, the ICE can provide the batteries using a generator or power the electrical motor.

4. Hybrid Complex:

Two independent mechanical linkages provide a flexible installation and a light transmission mechanism. The front wheels, for instance, are driven by hybrid propulsion, including a fully electric system for the back wheels. The power flux management has inflexibility. [7] shown in figure 4

Fig 1: Series Hybrid Structure[7]

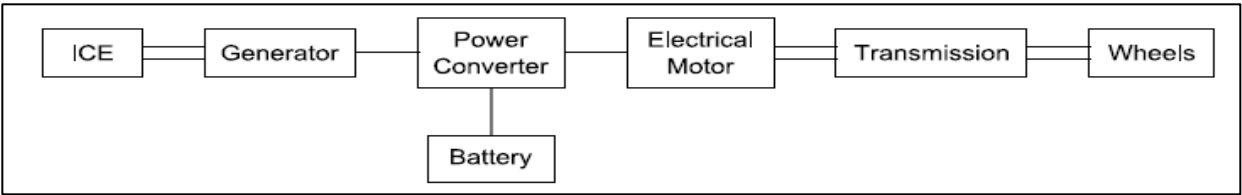


Fig 2: Parallel Hybrid Structure[7]

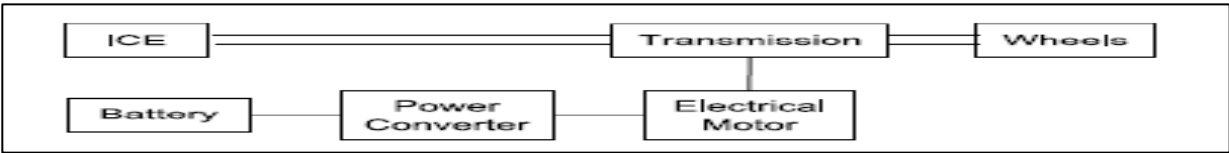
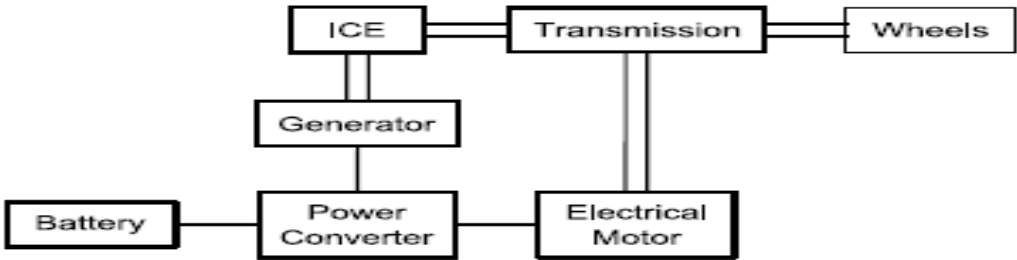


Fig 3: Series-Parallel Hybrid Structure[7]



[3] Global Market Trends

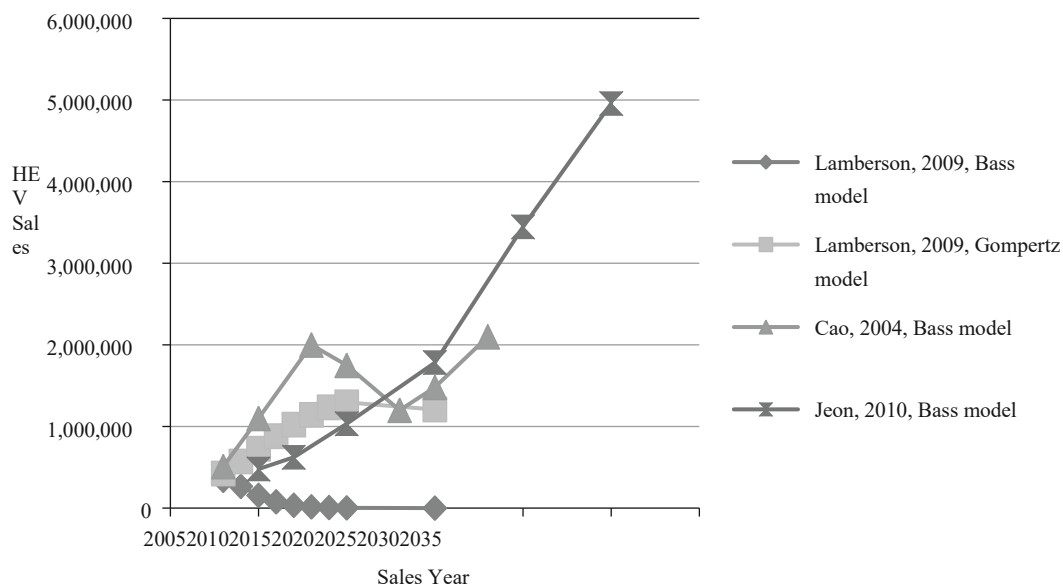
3.1 Market Size and Expansion

In 2024, the market for hybrid electric vehicles was estimated to be worth 12.93 million units worldwide. According to IMARC Group's forecast, the market would grow at a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 25.78% from 2025 to 2033, reaching 104.43 million units. With a market share of more than 40.9% in 2024, North America now controls the majority of the market. Some of the main factors driving the growth of the hybrid electric vehicle market share are the emergence of cutting-edge technologies, a growing sense of social responsibility pushing consumers to make greener decisions, and growing consumer awareness of the environmental benefits of HEVs.

The market for hybrid electric vehicles is expected to increase at a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 20.70% from 2025 to 2034, from its estimated USD 98.66 billion in 2024 to USD 119.08 billion by 2025 and around USD 647.46 billion by 2034.

Global sales of electric cars increased by more than 25% to reach 17 million in 2024. One Just the additional 3.5 million cars sold in 2024 compared to 2023 outnumber total electric car sales in the whole of 2020. With more than 11 million electric cars sold, China continued to dominate the major markets, surpassing global sales just two years prior. Global sales were slightly tempered by stagnating growth in Europe, as subsidies were phased out or reduced in several major markets, and as the EU CO2 targets for cars remained the same between 2023 and 2024

Fig. 4. HEV penetration rate estimated using Bass and Gompertz methods[8] [9] [10]



Although growth was only about a fifth of what it was the year before, sales of electric cars in the US continued to rise. Notably, sales outside of these three key regions surged by over 40% to 1.3 million, bringing them closer to the 1.6 million electric cars sold in the US.[11]

They are included

China BEV

China PHEV

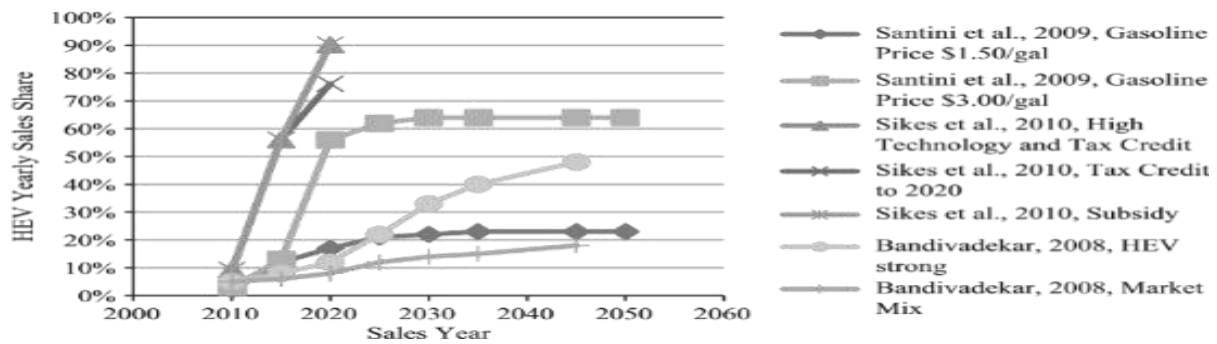
Europe BEV

Europe PHEV

United States BEV

United States PHEV

Fig. 5. HEV fleet penetration rate estimated using consumer choice[11] method



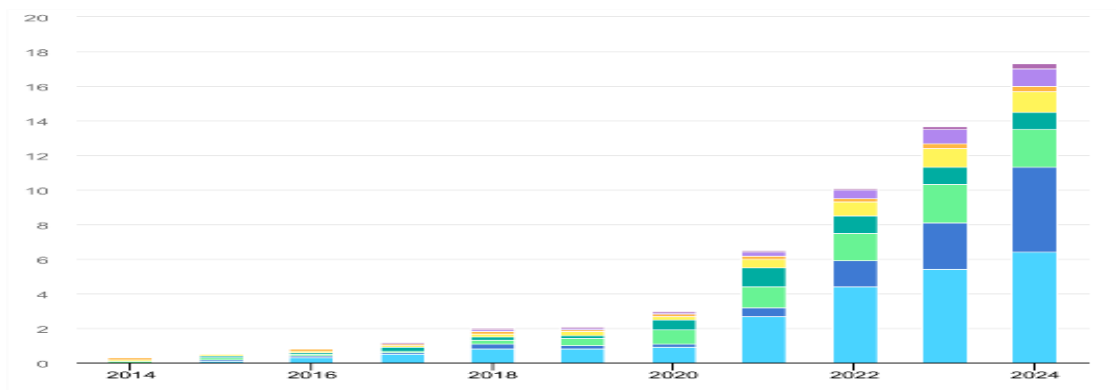
Rest of World BEV

Rest of World PHEV

4.Case Study :

A. The Toyota Prius Model

A.1. Toyota Hybrid System (THS) First Generation



There were two hatchback versions in the first generation, the "NHW10" and "NHW11."

The battery's longevity (7–10 years) and the requirement for a hybrid system are the challenges. Excellent engine performance for battery charging.

Solutions: For optimal performance, the battery pack should always be charged between 40% and 60%.

The "Toyota Hybrid System" is introduced.

The Double Overhead Cam-Shaft (DOHC) engine was introduced.[12]

Benefits: -

The DOHC engine's introduction made it possible for the engine to have four valves per cylinder. Because there are four valves in the cylinder rather than two, more space might be utilized for air intake and exhaust. If more air entered the cylinder, the engine produced more power, squandered less power, and pumped exhaust out of the cylinder more easily. The engine forced a lot of air through the cylinders at higher engine

speeds. The engine could run and produce practical power at these greater speeds because each cylinder had four valves. Thus, the overall issue of slow speed was resolved.[12]

A.1.1. Working of Toyota Hybrid System

A gasoline engine, two motor generators (MG1 and MG2), a power control unit, and a battery make up the Toyota Hybrid system.

The car's electric motor (MG2) is its only source of power when it is started. Later, as the vehicle reaches a higher speed, the gasoline engine starts up, and the vehicle operates on both the motor and the gasoline engine. Additionally, the engine powers a generator through a power split system, which powers the electric motor (MG2 (288 V)). The power control unit regulates the power for optimal efficiency, which includes controlling this power splitting.

The motor functions as a generator when braking, and the battery stores the energy it recovers. There is no requirement for external charging of the battery. The automobile runs on the gasoline engine in "stand mode" to charge the battery if it is completely dead.

The First Generation Prius's overall mileage was 5.6 L/100 km in the city, 5.7 L/100 km on the highway, and 5.7 L/100 km when driving in combination.

Drawbacks

It was challenging to back up the car on upward slopes.

The ride was occasionally choppy.[12]

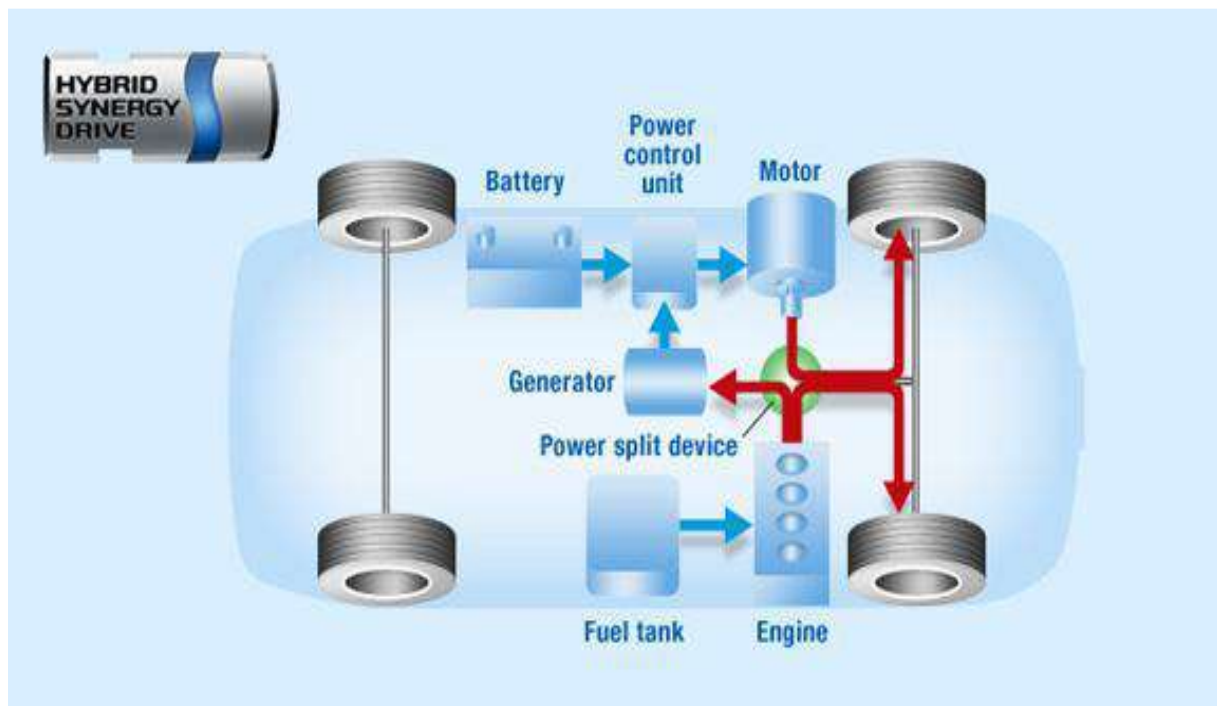


Fig 6: diagram of Toyota hybrid system[12]

B. Astrolab - Venturi Automobiles

This vehicle from a different era can run on a 16kW motor with very little energy and can recharge using solar power even while moving. It does not, however, require constant exposure to the Sun to move. It is actually the first electro-solar hybrid car in the world because to its liquid-cooled NiMH Venturi NIV-7 batteries, which allow it to re-use stored energy from the electrical supply or the sun. It can go long distances every day because to its top speed of 120 km/h and range of 110 km.

The CO₂ emissions required for its manufacturing are even offset by eco-friendly measures, making this the first car to run entirely on renewable energy sources. The Astrolab has ushered in a new era of automotive design: light and tall, it provides the Sun's rays for 3.6 m² of photovoltaic cells (for a vehicle length of less than 4 m).[12]



Fig 7: Picture of Astrolab car- Venturi Automobiles[13]

C. Civic Honda

The hybrid Honda Civic has a different topology. Mounted between the ICE and the electric motor transfer. The 12-kW PM motor may either split the engine's power during periods of low vehicle power demand or support the engine during periods of high vehicle power demand. Fuel efficiency is improved by 66% and 34%, respectively, with the hybrid.

D. Ford Escape

The world's first SUV hybrid was made by Ford. The planetary gear idea was also used by the Escape hybrid as its power dividing mechanism. With a dramatically reduced size engine, the performance of this full-size SUV hybrid is identical to that of its cousin. The Mercury Mariner, Ford's second generation hybrid SUV, boasts a better power than design that provides outstanding

dynamic performance and drivability. It should be noted that as of September 2014, Ford Motor Corporation had sold over 350,000 hybrid vehicles in the US.[14]

E. Honda FCX

The development of fuel cell vehicles has advanced rapidly. The Honda FCX is one of the fuel cell cars that are currently on the market. Honda's FCX became the first and only fuel cell vehicle ever authorized for commercial use in 2002 after receiving certification from both the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The FCX has also received certification from the EPA and CARB as a Tier-2 Bin 1 Zero-Emission Vehicle (ZEV).[15]

[4] CONCLUSION

One of the most important stages in the global shift to sustainable mobility is the market for hybrid electric cars, or HEVs. According to this analysis, HEVs have become an essential technology that bridges the gap between completely electric vehicles (EVs) and conventional internal combustion engine (ICE) vehicles by providing a workable compromise between technological viability and environmental performance.

According to market research, the worldwide HEV market is expected to produce more than 100 million units by 2033, having grown from about 12.93 million units in 2024. Regional trends indicate that North America and Europe continue to expand steadily because of strict regulations and consumer environmental consciousness, while Asia-Pacific continues to dominate the market because of robust government policies, high fuel prices, and manufacturing capabilities. As hybrid infrastructure grows and cost improves, emerging markets like Latin America and India also show growing promise.

Technological developments have greatly improved HEV performance and cost effectiveness, especially in the areas of power electronics, regenerative braking, lightweight materials, and energy management systems. Nonetheless, the competitive landscape is still being shaped by enduring issues like high production costs, reliance on rare minerals, and competition from fully electric vehicles. In some areas, consumer perception and policy uncertainty continue to be obstacles.

Case studies of popular cars such as the Ford Escape, Honda Civic Hybrid, Toyota Prius, and Venturi Astrolab demonstrate the versatility and diversity of hybrid technology across several car classes. These illustrations show how creativity, sustainability, and energy efficiency can all coexist in contemporary car design with the help of well-thought-out legislative frameworks and cooperative technology.

In summary, hybrid electric vehicles are essential parts of the changing global mobility ecosystem rather than just transitory technology. The integration of renewable energy into transportation systems, ongoing research into battery optimization, and cooperative policy support will all be critical to their future success. HEVs have the potential to significantly contribute to the attainment of global carbon neutrality and the development of the next generation of sustainable transportation by coordinating industry innovation with environmental concerns.

REFERENCE

- [1] L. Ni, "Energy storage and management for a small series plug-in hybridelectric vehicle", Thesis for the doctor of philosophy, University of Nebraska, 2010
- [2] C. C. Chan, "Electric, hybrid, and fuel-cell vehicles: architectures and modeling", IEEE Transactions on Vehicular Technology, vol. 59, no. 2, pp. 589-598, February, 2010.
- [3] C. Nayanataral, P .Shanmugapriyal, G. Gurusivakumar, B.Thiruvankadam, "Design & development of series hybrid electric vehicle". ICCPEIC, April 2014.
- [4] L. Chen, G. Xi, J. Sun, "Torque coordination control during mode transition for a series–parallel hybrid electric vehicle". IEEE Transactions on Vehicular Technology, vol. 61, no. 7, pp. 2936-2949, September 2012.
- [5] W. Shabbir, S. A. Evangelou, "Efficiency analysis of a continuously variable transmission with linear control for a series hybrid electric vehicle". The International Federation of Automatic Control, Cape Town, South Africa, August 2014.
- [6] W. Shabbir, S. A. Evangelou, "Efficiency analysis of a continuously variable transmission with linear control for a series hybrid electricvehicle". The International Federation of Automatic Control, CapeTown, South Africa, August 2014.
- [7] M. Barcaro, N. Bianchi, F. Magnussen. PM Motors for Hybrid Electric Vehicles. The Open Fuels & Energy Science Journal, Vol. 2, pp. 135-141, June 2009
- [8] Jeon SY. Hybrid & electric vehicle technology and its market feasibility. Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA.
- [9] Lamberson PJ. The diffusion of hybrid electric vehicles, Center for the Study of Complex Systems. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, 2009.
- [10] Cao X. The future demand for alternative fuel passenger vehicles: a diffusion of innovation approach. Davis, CA: University of California; 2004.
- [11]. Al-Alawi, Baha M., and Thomas H. Bradley. "Review of hybrid, plug-in hybrid, and electric vehicle market modeling studies." Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews 21 (2013): 190-203.
- [12] Karan C. Prajapati 1,*, Ravi Patel 2 and Rachit Sagar "Hybrid Vehicle: A Study on Technology" International Journal of Engineering Research & Technology (IJERT)ISSN: 2278-0181 ,Vol. 3 Issue 12, December-2014
- [13] Astrolab - Venturi Automobiles,<en.venturi.fr/vehicles/venturirange/astrolab/overview>, 22nd December 2014.
- [14] Will Nichols, "Ford tips hybrids to overshadow electric cars", Business Green, 2012.
- [15] C. C. Chan, "The state of the art of electric, hybrid, and fuel cellvehicles", Proceedings of the IEEE,vol. 95, pp. 704-718, April 2007.

A Focused Review on Conventional Pattern Making Vs 3d Printed Pattern Making for Investment Casting

Vijay Kumar #, Harish kumar Garg *2, Anil Jindal *3

Department of Mechanical Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, 151001, India.

Vijaykumar350@gmail.com1

harish_K_garg@rediffmail.com2

ABSTRACT:

Purpose: The Purpose of the study Comparing Conventional Pattern Making vs 3D printed Pattern Making for Casting. Investigating through various papers by comparing key factors of pattern making, like surface finish, cooling time, complex shape, even filling, production cost, and time.

Approach: Collecting data from various researchers, understanding fundamentals step by step, the pattern-making process of the conventional pattern-making method, and the 3D printer pattern-making.

Findings: Systematic analysis researcher's 3D printer pattern making is the best possible alternative to the conventional pattern making process. The complex shapes, accuracy, and less wastage of material are the advantages of the 3D printer, which can print hollow patterns, leading to the saving of material. The 3D printed pattern surface finish can also be achieved post-processing.

Research implications/limitations: In the future, the researcher may focus on even filling, surface finishing, and also make a composite to achieve the dimensional accuracy and mechanical strength desired in pattern making.

Keywords: Investment Casting, 3D printing, pattern

1. INTRODUCTION

The investment casting tracing was found in early 5000 BC the investment casting was used for making jewelry and art piece casting mainly copper bronze, gold and silver were used in investment casting during Egyptian period. During second world war the investment casting is bring forward product development to full fill the demand during war [1]

Investment Casting is one of the conventional methods of casting, also called lost wax casting. In investment casting, a pattern is made from wax, and the pattern is solidified by pouring molten metal into the wax pattern for solid part formation. The investment casting was mainly used for mass production. [1]. If casting requires multiple cores for casting at one time, it is possible in

investment casting. The limitation of investment casting is the high wax cost, which is expensive for low volume production, post processing is more in investment casting and achieving complexity and accuracy is tough in investment casting process to tackle the all above issues of Investment casting Investment casting is integrated with 3D printed pattern making by integration of 3d printing we can tackle all above

Issues especially complexity of pattern. 3D printing is one of the additive manufacturing processes in which the material is added layer by layer to create a solid object [2]. Integration of 3D printing may lead to lowering the cost of die making,

Which is a major cost in investment casting, as a different die is to be prepared for different shapes. But integrating 3D printing. We can directly prepare the pattern via the printing process. The printed pattern can be directly assembled for shell blending and dewax pattern heating, the shell and molten metal poured directly into the shell after heating, and the pattern from shell by achieving its melting temperature. Then molten metal poured directly in the shell for achieving the solidified shape as prepared with pattern. The investment casting costly and time taking process also not feasible for the small batches to overcome the issue of the cost and 3D printed pattern integration with investment casting is considered as best alternate and modified the process accordingly to achieve the complex shapes [2]

B.CONVENTIONAL PATTERN MAKING FOR INVESTMENT CASTING

1.Cad Modeling /Drafting:

The first stage of preparing any product is creating the draft design with all dimensions traditionally the drafting is used to create any design for modeling, now days Auto Cad is used for Drafting Model in 2D and 3D modeling

2. Mold Die Manufacturing:

The Initial stage of investment Casting is to create the Die according to the pattern for mold by keeping in mind about allowances that is given to tackle the volumetric expansion and shrinkage The Mold die manufacturing cost 50-60% of the total cost of the product development.

3. Pattern making:

After preparation of die the molten wax is injected in to the die to produce die. The injected wax temperature around 55*c [2] by the use of plunger. The wax is made up of different of mixtures like bee wax, paraffin wax, montan wax and many other blends. For pattern development.

The selection of wax or pattern material must have the following properties:

- 1. Ash Content:** After autoclaving process the ash content should be very low or negligible no left over after combustion should be there.
- 2. Flexural Strength:** The flexural strength should be high as it does not bend while pattern dipped for slurry covering.
- 3. Thermal Expansion:** It should have low thermal expansion as pattern doesn't expand or shrink during the process.

4. Pattern removal :

The pattern is removed from the die and dip in to water until it become harder check the sizes and shape of the pattern for further step to avoid any dimensional issues.

5. Pattern Assembly (Cluster Assembly):

The ejected pattern is mounted in to the branches usually the tree assembly for batch production more than two for the assembly functions to feed the all pattern by create gating. During tree mounting there may be chances of minor fracture the fracture may be compensated by layering wax on damaged area.[1]

6. Ceramic shell forming:

The shell forming is one of the crucial step The thickness and layers of ceramic shells are depend upon the size and complexity of the pattern the factor also kept what molten metal will be poured in to the shell so that the shell layers should be prepared accordingly to avoid any cracks and breaches. The slurry consist of silica, ethanol, zircon flour and distilled water. The finest layer of zircon is coated in first coat allowed to dry under controlled condition and next layer is also used fine flour as per the requirement of thickness of shell layer.

7. Pre heating:

The Pre heating process is to bake the slurry or sand that was applied on pattern as a shell the pre heating temperature is 930*c- 1150*c . The pre heating is done because of increasing the strength of the shell it was observed that by increasing the heating temperature increase the shell impact strength.

8. Autoclaving /Dewaxing:

The autoclave dewaxing process creating cavity removing pattern generally the wax is removed by heating or by flash flaming the shell traditionally. Nowadays microwaves are used for removal of wax from the shell as the wax is having dielectric properties microwave dewaxing technique can help to achieve structural stability The microwave dewaxing adoption leads to environmental friendly high quality product output, selective and controlled heating. [3]

9. Pouring Molten Metal:

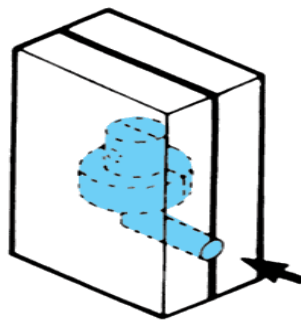
The molten metal is poured in the cavity of shell using gravity, external pressure, vacuum and centrifugal method. The molten metal temperature should be optimum it should not be too high it may lead to damage the shell and it should not be low as it leads to poor casting.

10. Knockout:

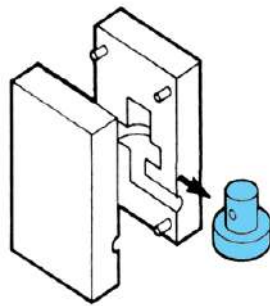
The knocking, shaking, water jet spray, chipping are the various process of removing shell after the solidifying of casting.

11. Post Processing:

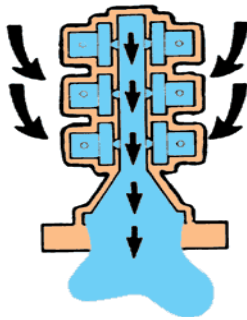
After removing shell the gates and risers are removed from the tree and separated from the tree. The final part is further post processed for finishing for achieving the desired design of the casted part.



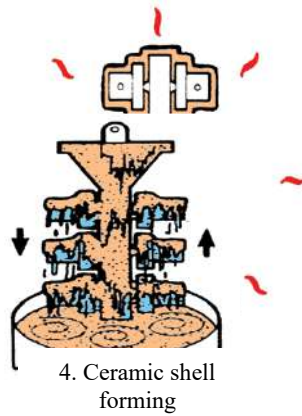
1. Injection of wax



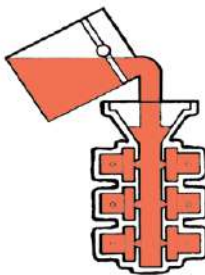
2. Pattern Removal



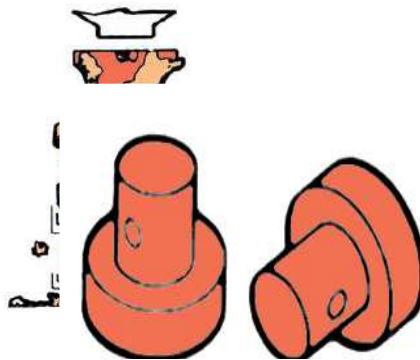
3. Pattern Assembly
(Cluster Assembly)



4. Ceramic shell
forming



7. Molten Metal
Pouring



8. Final Product

Fig. 1 Schematic Steps of Investment Casting.[4]

1. The integration of 3D printed investment Casting:

Integration of Investment casting the selection of creating the mold and shape [5]. The 3d shape is designed with the help of CAD Modeling or using Scanner for creating 3D modeling. [6]. After preparing pattern from by 3D printer the printed pattern is directly used for shell molding process. The process reduce the time of 5-6 week. The pattern is set to be dried for to solidify the layer of sand that is coated during shell building after that autoclaving process started to remove the 3D pattern by melting down with the heat and pressure so that empty shell is prepared shell is preheated before pouring molten metal in pattern and left out for the cooling/solidifying the molten metal. After solidifying the shell is broken by knockout process the shell is breached by knocking/vibrating /steam jet [7]

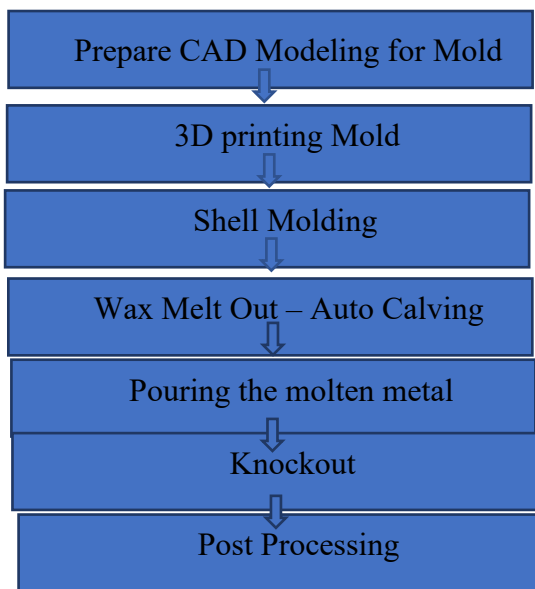


Figure 2. Steps of 3D integrated Investment Casting

2. 3D Printing Basis on the classification of material.

The 3Dprinting material based classification divided in to in to four types. The process modeling is same in each 3D printing technique as it is an additive process the process generate zero or nominal wastage in 3D printing.

The Classification of based on the phase and raw materials are given below[7]

- I. Liquid Phase
 - A. FDM (Fused Deposition Modeling)
 - B. SLA (stereolithography)
 - C. SDM(Shape Deposition Modeling)
- II. Powder Form
 - I. SLS (Selective Laser sintering)

- II. LENS (laser engineered net Shaping)
- III. Sheet Foam
 - 1. LOM (Laminated object manufacturing)
 - 2. Shape Maker

3.The 3D printed Pattern integration with Investment Casting

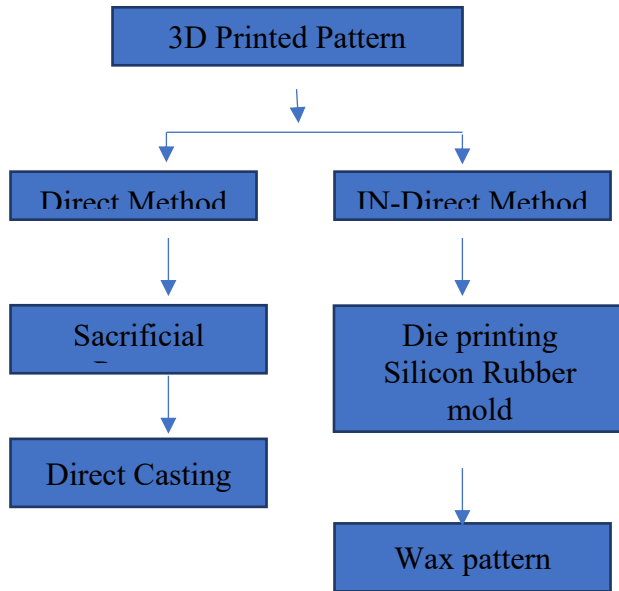


Figure3 Direct and indirect pattern printing[8]

- **Direct Method:**

In Direct Method of 3D pattern printing creating sacrificial pattern prepared and directly used for the investment casting as a pattern further ceramic shells are prepared on 3d printed pattern for further investment casting process.[9]. In direct method of 3d printed pattern preferably hollow patterns are produced to reduce the cost and time.

- **Indirect Approach of investment casting:**

In this approach 3D printer is used for the investment casting but for creating the silicon mold or pattern die from which the pattern can be prepared by injecting wax in the pattern.[8] The silicon mold can be reused and this approach is used for the mass production. As in direct method the pattern once used will not be used for further production.

3. LITERATURE REVIEW

To systematic analyzing the key factors integration of investment casting with 3d Printing follows:

- Production Lead Time factor

- Cost factor
 - Enhancement in Mechanical Properties.
- **Production Lead Time Factor:**
- The Conventional process for preparing investment casting pattern is time taking process the process takes 2-4 weeks for preparing the metal die for pattern making after that the pattern can be prepared by inserting wax in the die for pattern making.[10] But in integration of 3D printing pattern the we can prepare direct sacrificial patterns or we can prepare die for wax injection pattern the 3D printed pattern is takes maximum 12 Figure 3. Steps of 3D integrated Investment Casting hours – 2 days depends upon the pattern size to prepare the sacrificial pattern or die for wax molding.[11] The sacrificial pattern is directly use for the shell making process. [12].Thereafter the pattern autoclaving is done by the shell heating with flame or microwave heating for the removal of the pattern from the shell.[9] The integrated 3D printed investment casting is a time saver for small batch manufacturing as in small batches design of mold is changed rapidly, it is tough to achieve the same in conventional method as it takes long process of creating die before any investment casting.[13] Adopting technology in investment casting can decrease the post processing voids as around 52% as compare to the conventional method this leads to the time saving in product manufacturing also achieve the complex shapes in nominal time.[7]
- **Cost factor**
- In traditional method of investment casting the major cost of the part production is making die for pattern making this may lead to the loss or high cost work if the batches are small , in each batch of production the die is to prepared[14] The 70% of the time and cost is invested on making die that dependent for different for different sizes. The wastage costs also thewastage in traditional investment casting is high and reusability is extremely low that may also increase the cost factor.
- The cost factor consider following parameters.
- Labor Cost (Preparing Die)
 - Wastage generation.
 - Power /Energy.
 - Reusability
 - Post Processing Cost.

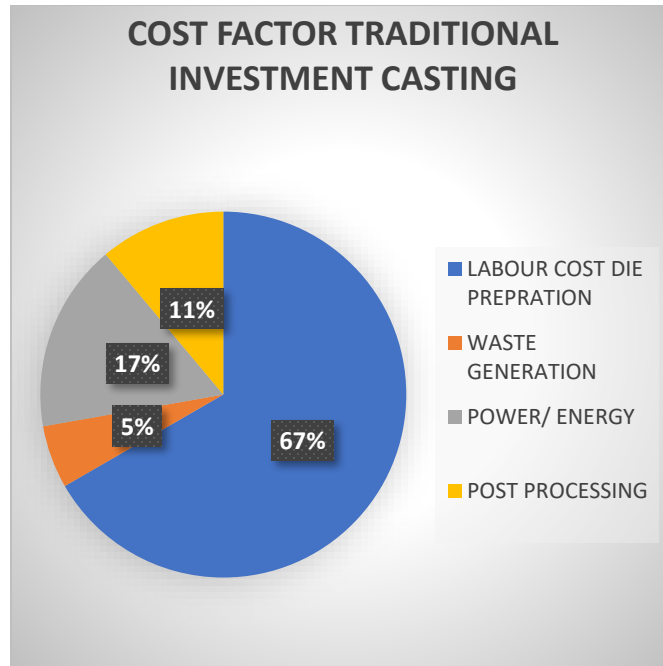


Figure 4. Steps of 3D integrated Investment Casting.

The above factors are tackled by integrating the 3D printing with investment casting. The Direct 3D printed sacrificial pattern can reduce all the cost factors by 80-90% as the process is additive manufacturing the generation of wastage is Almost negligible. And the consumption of power for preparing die in traditional method is high. But in 3D printing the cost is lesser about 70%. The reusability of the sacrificial pattern after melting is possible converting the melted material in to plastic granule form for reusability The post processing costs are also negligible as compare to traditional investment casting process due to accuracy in printing

- **Enhancement in Mechanical Properties:**

The 3D printed pattern integration with investment casting leads to improving the mechanical properties surface finish, ash free tooling, dimensional stability [6] The study also the 3d printed plastic pattern is melted at 1180*c and autoclaving requires 180* [15] The 3D printed pattern is having high melting point naturally brittle and accuracy due to non-shrinkage properties that leads to the dimensional accuracy. However the properties of the 3D printed patterns are depend upon the size of the pattern complexity of the pattern surface finish of the pattern can be achieved by increasing infill density the infill density increasing leads to time taken and bit costly then hollow bodies the post processing is required in hollow patterns[16]. Some researchers found that infill density 70% can provide optimal result of accuracy and surface finish.[17]

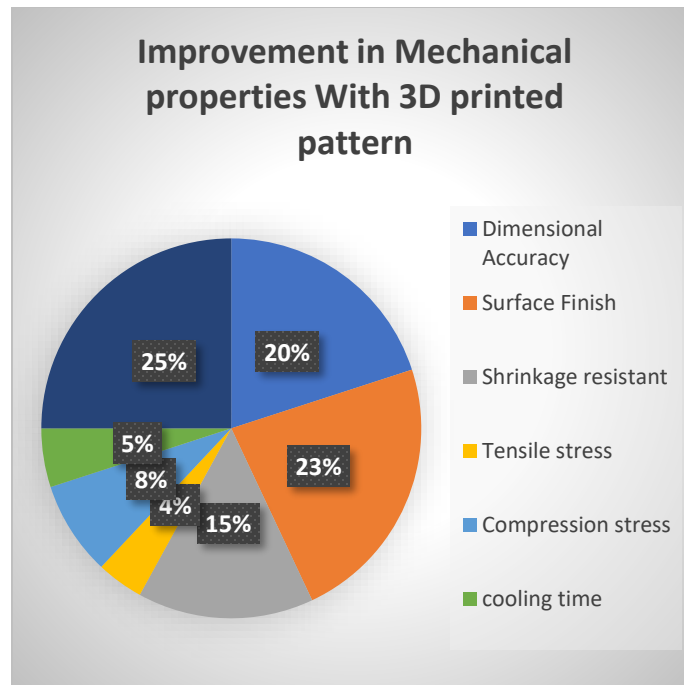


Figure 5. Improvement in Mechanical Properties with 3D printed pattern

4. The Problems occur 3D printed Pattern Casting

In sacrificial pattern of investment casting completely remove during the autoclaving process in this process more than 1000*c temp achieve to remove the pattern from the shell the temperature may increase the chances of cracks. [11] However to achieve the proper surface finish the infill density should be high, if we increase the infill density that may lead to the increase in printing time and consumption of material will also increase. Also if the choice of high strength material for printing having diffusion temperature is low. For achieving the accurate and high quality pattern the various parameters of 3D printer will be optimized like layer thickness, raster angle, raster width road width etc.

There are common issues rises during printing pattern are as follows:

1. Nozzle Chocking:

The most common issue occur during printing is nozzle chocking this may lead to the failure or delay of the print.

2. Wrapping defect:

During the detachment from the base of printed pattern there may be wrapping defect arises this is occur due to when material is printed expand due to heat and shrink during the cooling. In wrapping corner may be bent upward during the removing pattern from the plate.

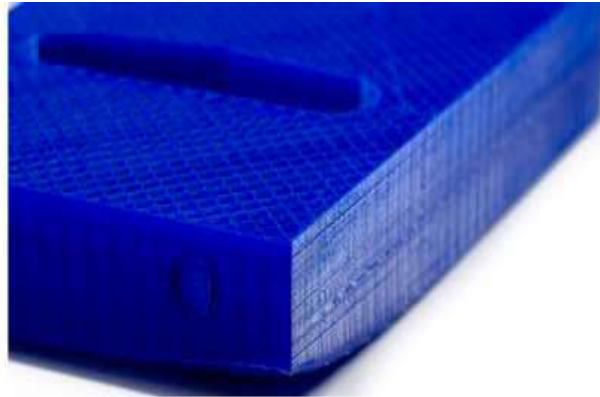


Fig.6 Wrapping defect [18]

3. Delamination (Cracking):

The cracking is occur when the layer is not stick to the layer properly due to many common factors like thermal shrinkage of material.



Fig.7 Cracking Defect [18]

4. Sagging:

Due to overheating the material doesn't have proper cooling time the defect may arises it may be rectified by providing cooling fan for fast cooling.

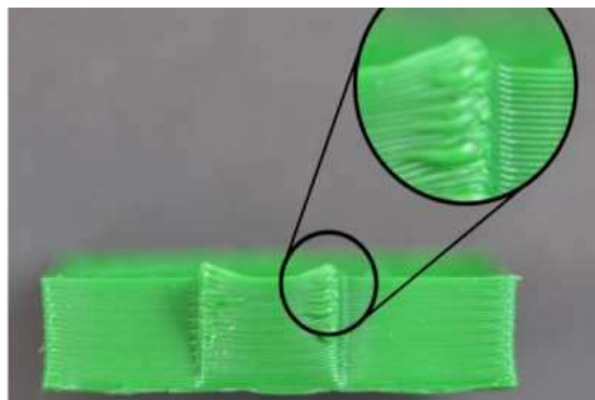


Fig.8 Sagging Defect [18]

5. Comparative analysis of Conventional vs 3D pattern

PARAMETER	Traditional IC	3D Printed Pattern
Tooling Cost	High	Low
Lead Time	High	Low
Flexibility	LOW	LOW
Surface Finish	High	Moderate
Dimensional Accuracy	Moderate	High
Scalability	HIGH (FOR MASS PRODUCTION)	LOW (FOR MASS PRODUCTION)
Material Wastage	High	Low
Customization	LOW	HIGH

Table 1 Comparative analysis of Conventional vs 3D pattern

I. CONCLUSIONS

The analyzing towards the hazardous emissions of gases and wastage minimization by integration of 3D printed pattern in investment casting.

1. The Cost factors are cover and minimized by integration of 3D printing with investment casting.
2. Surface finish lead time dimensional accuracy achieved rapid production process is done by integration of 3D printing with investment casting.
3. The energy consumption is significantly low as compared to traditional method of investment casting.

6. FUTURE SCOPE

The Non-biodegradable filament or materials are used for printing which leads to the non-environment friendly and takes year to decompose or during the recycling process the emission

of hazardous gasses emit during recycling, So Biodegradable filament yet to find that could fulfill the all requirement for investment casting and also should biodegradable and environment friend:

References:

- [1] S. Pattnaik, D. B. Karunakar, and P. K. Jha, "Developments in investment casting process - A review," *J. Mater. Process. Technol.*, vol. 212, no. 11, pp. 2332–2348, 2012, doi: 10.1016/j.jmatprotec.2012.06.003.
- [2] S. Singh and R. Singh, "Fused deposition modelling based rapid patterns for investment casting applications: A review," *Rapid Prototyp. J.*, vol. 22, no. 1, pp. 123–143, 2016, doi: 10.1108/RPJ-02-2014-0017.
- [3] F. J. B. Brum, S. C. Amico, I. Vedana, and J. A. Spim, "Microwave dewaxing applied to the investment casting process," *J. Mater. Process. Technol.*, vol. 209, no. 7, pp. 3166–3171, 2009, doi: 10.1016/j.jmatprotec.2008.07.024.
- [4] R. Singh and J. Singh, "Investigating the effect of shape factor, slurry layers and pouring temperature in precision investment casting," *Mater. Sci. Forum*, vol. 751, pp. 35–44, 2013, doi: 10.4028/www.scientific.net/MSF.751.35.
- [5] H. K. Garg and R. Singh, "Experimental investigations for development of pattern for dies using FDM," *Mater. Sci. Forum*, vol. 701, pp. 77–83, 2011, doi: 10.4028/www.scientific.net/MSF.701.77.
- [6] J. R. Vaghela, J. B. Valaki, S. J. Thanki, and A. B. Pandey, "Sustainability Analysis of Rapid Tooling-Based Investment Casting: A Comprehensive Review," *Smart Sustain. Manuf. Syst.*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 54–81, 2023, doi: 10.1520/SSMS20220029.
- [7] S. Pattnaik, P. K. Jha, and D. B. Karunakar, "A review of rapid prototyping integrated investment casting processes," *Proc. Inst. Mech. Eng. Part L J. Mater. Des. Appl.*, vol. 228, no. 4, pp. 249–277, 2014, doi: 10.1177/1464420713479257.
- [8] C. W. Lee, C. K. Chua, C. M. Cheah, L. H. Tan, and C. Feng, "Rapid investment casting: Direct and indirect approaches via fused deposition modelling," *Int. J. Adv. Manuf. Technol.*, vol. 23, no. 1–2, pp. 93–101, 2004, doi: 10.1007/s00170-003-1694-y.
- [9] L. Freitag, "Direct additive manufacturing of ceramic molds and cores for advanced investment casting: State of the art and future prospects," *Open Ceram.*, vol. 26, no. February, p. 100934, 2026, doi: 10.1016/j.oceram.2026.100934.
- [10] R. N. Lumley, *Aluminium Investment Casting and Rapid Prototyping for Aerospace Applications*. Elsevier Ltd., 2018. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-08-102063-0.00004-7.
- [11] P. Kumar, I. P. S. Ahuja, and R. Singh, "Application of fusion deposition modelling for rapid investment casting - A review," *Int. J. Mater. Eng. Innov.*, vol. 3, no. 3–4, pp. 204–227, 2012, doi: 10.1504/IJMATEI.2012.049254.
- [12] A. Dey *et al.*, "Investment Casting Process - A Study of Additive Manufacturing Technologies in the field of Engineering Design," *J. Mech. Eng. Adv.*, vol. 1, no. 2, pp. 1–5, 2025, doi: 10.65525/jmea.v1i2.6.
- [13] Y. S. Merlibayev, T. A. Chepushtanova, A. M. Berlibek, A. K. Tolegenova, and S. T.

- Nugumarov, “Development of a technology for the production of aluminum castings using 3d printing of models and lost-was casting,” *Kompleks. Ispolz. Miner. Syra*, vol. 337, no. 2, pp. 108–116, 2026, doi: 10.31643/2026/6445.22.
- [14] C. A. Mensah and Y. Thaviphoke, “A Cost-Benefit Investigation on the 3D Sand Printing-Sand Casting Manufacturing: Is it Worth It in High-Volume Production?,” *IISE Annu. Conf. Expo 2025, Conf. Proc.*, pp. 930–935, 2025, doi: 10.21872/2025IISE_6413.
- [15] S. Wang, A. G. Miranda, and C. Shih, “A study of investment casting with plastic patterns,” *Mater. Manuf. Process.*, vol. 25, no. 12, pp. 1482–1488, 2010, doi: 10.1080/10426914.2010.529585.
- [16] A. O. A. Mohammed, D. Y. M. Hamdan, and D. H. O. Ali, “Additive Manufacturing of Ceramic Components: A Review of 3D Printing Technologies for Industrial Applications,” *Saudi J. Eng. Technol.*, vol. 11, no. 01, pp. 1–22, 2026, doi: 10.36348/sjet.2026.v11i01.001.
- [17] M. Shah, D. Patel, S. Pande, M. H. Abidi, F. Alasim, and K. A. Mahajan, “Dimensional and Surface Roughness Analysis of 3D Printed Impeller Pattern for Investment Casting,” pp. 0–30, 2025, doi: 10.20944/preprints202502.1152.v1.
- [18] M. Talib and H. Khan, “Feasibility and Sustainability evaluation of 3d printed Fused Deposition Modeling Patterns for Investment Casting Title of thesis Feasibility and Sustainability evaluation of 3D printed Fused Deposition Modeling Patterns for Investment Casting,” 2023.

A Review on “Sustainable & Economical FDM Printing with Biodegradable Material

Vijay Kumar #, Harish kumar Garg *2, Anil Jindal *3

Department of Mechanical Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, 151001, India.

*Vijaykumar350@gmail.com¹
harish_K_garg@rediffmail.com²*

ABSTRACT

Three Dimensional Printing Offers Fabrication process that allows the layer by layer deposition of material to produce object. The 3D printing offers best manufacturing in terms of accuracy mean while less wastage and less energy consumption. In early stage environmental Impact was not considered that emission produce during the printing and after that disposal of literature and their applications, this paper offers valuable insights for researchers and manufacturers that are focusing towards Biodegradable materials printed waste as both are non-biodegradable. A lot of researchers are researched to find out the biodegradable filament that can replace the conventional non bio degradable filament (PET, NYLON, ABS etc.) The main aim of this review to Analysis of biodegradable filaments that are reported in the different .

Keywords: 3D Printing, Biodegradable, FDM, Economical

Introduction

The Rapid prototyping developed in early 1980's during the starting it become more popular due to the unique process that is additive manufacturing. Traditionally we are using subtractive manufacturing process in this process the material is subtracted to create desired component.[1] The rapid prototyping was generally used for the prototyping directly from the CAD (Computer aided design). The 3D printing technique solidifying the material layer by layer technique till the desired part is prepared. The additive manufacturing is in demand due to the unique characteristic of the process. The rapid prototyping allow to produce complex shapes with accuracy[2]. There are mainly three type of additive manufacturing based that is solid, liquid and powder based techniques.

Most of the RP&M technologies build a component layer-by-layer from the bottom to the top until the final geometry is obtained. However, the materials and the way in which the layers are produced vary significantly among the different RP&M techniques. Depending on the particular case, a component produce in an RP&M system can be used as a Concept model, a functional or semi-functional component, a master pattern, or even a tooling. The demand in world of 3D printing filament increased day by day In USA estimated market of 3d printing filament reach up

to 1865.2 million by 2027, most of filament made up by plastic, for manufacturing[3] The filament that are used generally in filament formation are (PLA) Poly-lactic acid, (ABS) Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene, (PET) polyethylene terephthalate, Nylon etc. are used for FDM filaments. Not all the Filaments are environmental friendly, some of the filament produce toxic gases during printing process, Moreover the left over or supports that are produce during printing are not easily disposable.[4]

- **The general procedure to construct a component in a RP&M technique can be described as follows:**

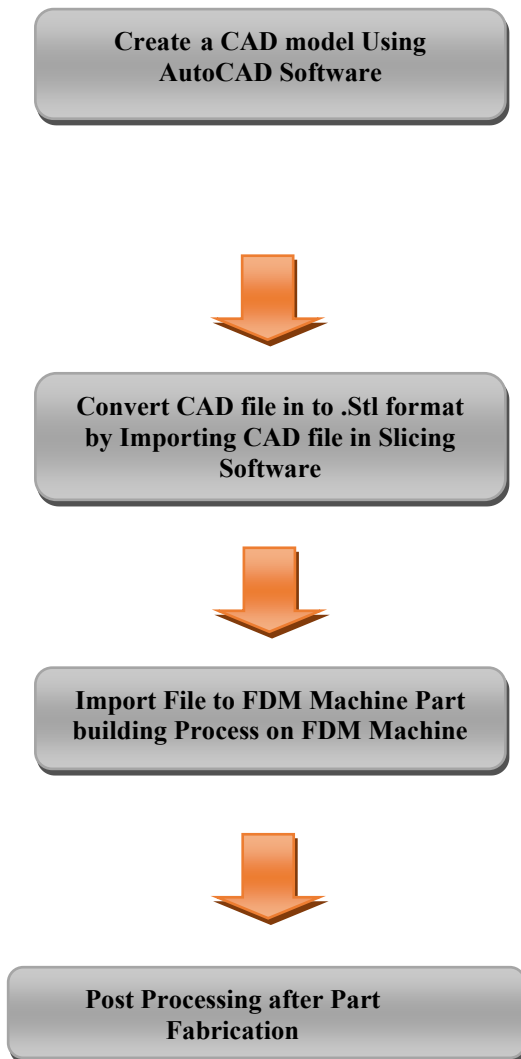


Fig. 1 Flow Diagram for Fused Deposition Modeling

- **Process and Technology of Rapid Prototyping**

The 3D printing technologies and process are as follows:

Process	Technology
Extrusion	FDM (Fused Deposition Modeling.) The material is extrude layer by layer.
Solidification of Powder	SLS (Selective laser sintering.) Powder material hardened by laser
Photo Polymerization	SLA (stereolithography) The UV laser beam harden the resin the projected beam hits the resin to solidify
Solidification of Powder	Inkjet printing Moveable inkjet is spray powder layer by layer
Sheet lamination	LOM (Laminated object manufacturing) Layer of adhesive coated on paper or plastic cut the shape with laser or knife
Direct Energy Deposition	Electron beam direct manufacturing (EBDM) Electron beam used for melting filament layer by layer

Table. 1 3D printing Process and technique

FUSED DEPOSITION MODEL PROCESS:

In fused deposition modelling primary step is of design by Using CAD modelling the CAD file is processed or converted in .STL format by using slice3r software the format further processed in FDM for part building process on machine. In FDM process polymer filament is drawn from spool and passed through heating element drawn in to liquefied head where the filament is heated in to semi-molten state extruded through nozzle and deposited layer by layer. The Platform of FDM moved X and Y direction and nozzle head moved in Z direction during printing process.[2]

a) FDM process variables

The following process parameters that influence the mechanical properties (Tensile strength, flexural strength, compressive strength) and tribological properties are as follows: Operation

Specific Parameter

Layer Thickness

Road width

Head speed

Extrusion temperature

Envelope temperature

Cross hatch

1. Machine Specific Parameters Nozzle Diameter

2. Flow Rate

3. Filament Diameter

1. Material Specific

A. Fiber characteristics

B. Matrix characteristics

C. Viscosity

D. Thermal conductivity

E. Flexibility

2. Geometry specific

• **Fill vector length**

• **Infill density**

• **Support Structure.**

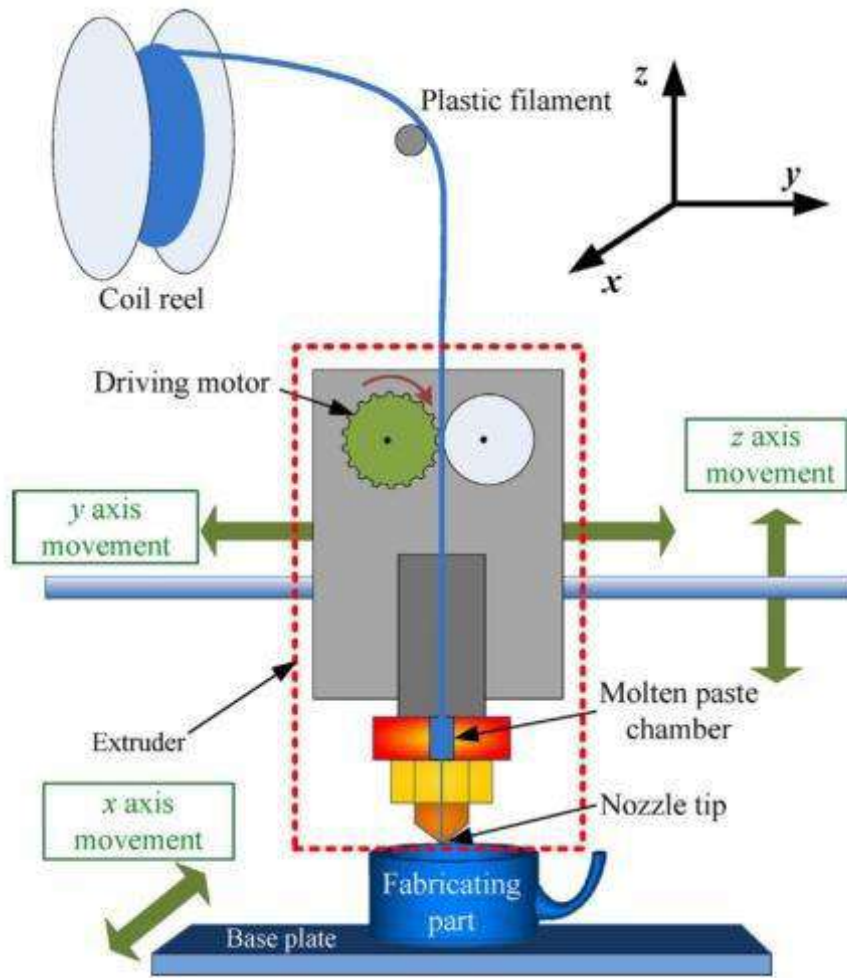


Figure: 01. Schematic of fused deposition modeling process [5]

- Materials

The material for FDM is broadly classified in two categories that are as follows:

- Biodegradable
 - Non- Biodegradable.
- a) **Non- Biodegradable polymer:** The non- biodegradable are not decomposed naturally it takes hundreds of years for decomposing. In current scenario the plastic the non- biodegradable plastics recycling and forced decomposition produce hazardous emissions that effect the environment and working area. There are the following non-Biodegradable polymers that are used in for FDM filament

- b) **Biodegradable Polymer:** The polymers that is naturally decomposed over the time with the help of microorganisms and it convert in to methane, water or carbon dioxide the Japanese biodegradable polymer society define degradation that the polymer decompose in to methane , water and carbon dioxide with the help of natural microorganisms is called the bio degradable polymer[4]

Biodegradable polymer may have classified in to two categories that are natural biodegradable Polymer and synthetic polymers. Natural Polymers are extracted from biological origin such as plant animal microbial and marine whereas Synthetic polymers are manufactured chemically.

Biopolymers are straightforwardly separated from biomass. Agrarian waste is a significant hotspot for the creation of bio plastics, plasticizers and cell reinforcement-added substances. The fundamental source of polysaccharides is plant-based farming waste where biopolymers like cellulose, starch and gelatine are produced the utilization of agro-waste as a feedstock for biodegradable polymer can reduce cost of

Biodegradable polymer the expense of delivering biodegradable polymers and the waste treatment cost. Biopolymers are delivered through a few techniques, in particular microbial strategies, mixing of biopolymers, furthermore, Chemical based methods. [6]

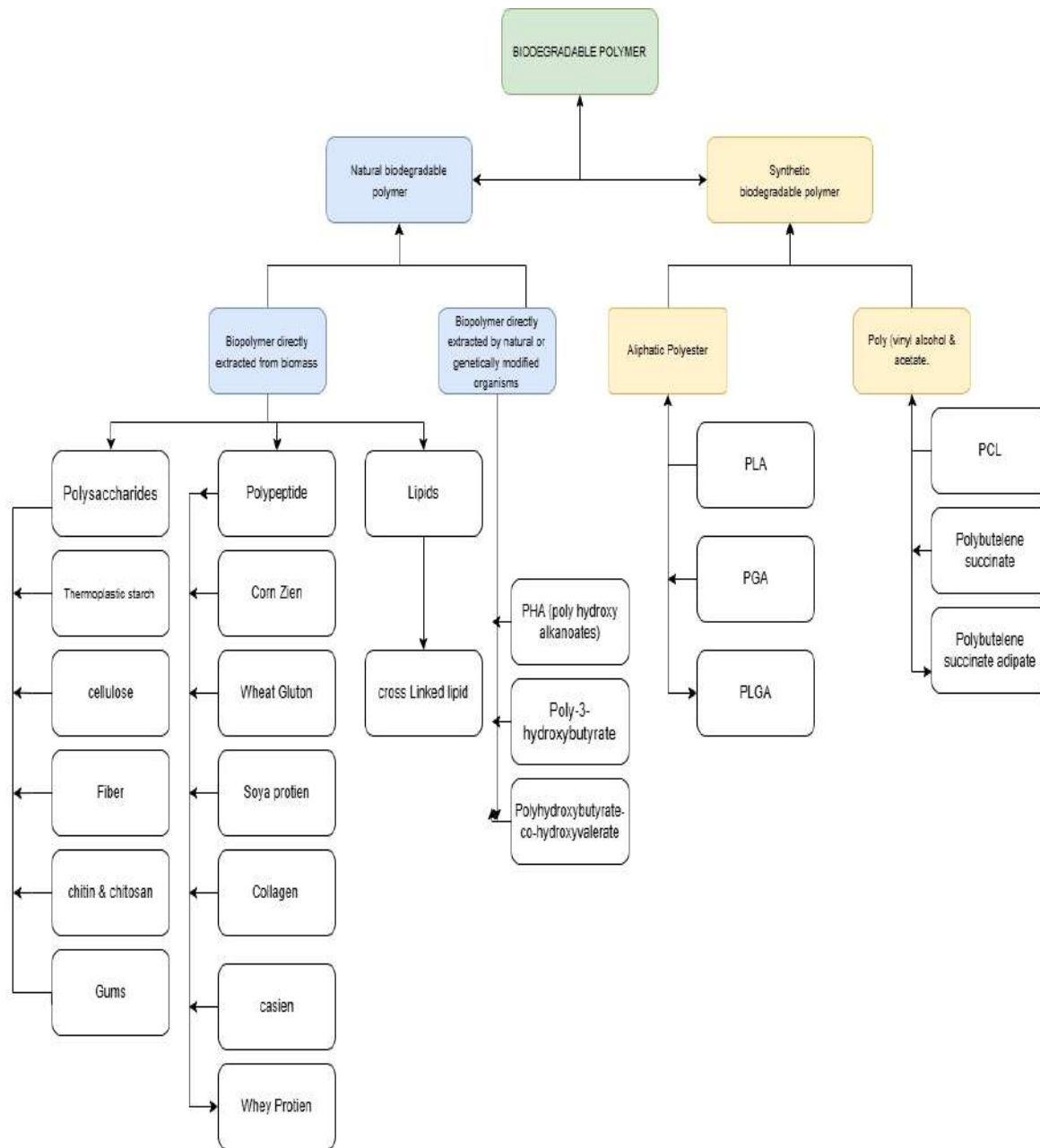
c) Non-Biodegradable Polymers used in FDM Machine for 3D Printing.

The biodegradable plastic are currently used in FDM machine for 3D printing are follows:

Material	Extracted From	Properties	Extrusion Temperature	Degradation Time
ABS	Petroleum	Strong, Heat resistant	220-260*c	100-500 years
PET-G	Petroleum	Tough, Chemical Resistant	220-250*c	100-1000 years
Nylon	Petroleum	Strong and wear resistant	240-270*c	100-150 years
HIPS	Petroleum	Dissolvable support	220-240*c	100-300 years
PEEK	Petroleum	Aerospace grade strength	350-400*c	500+ years

Table: 02 biodegradable plastics are currently used in FDM machine

d) Biodegradable Polymers used in FDM Machine for 3D Printing.



Flow Chart: 01 Biodegradable Material [4]

e) The biodegradable plastic are currently used in FDM machine for 3D printing are follows:

Material	Extracted From	Properties	Extrusion Temperature	Degradation Time
PLA Poly-lactic acid	Corn Starch	Tough, Strong	180*220*c	1-5 years
PHA	Sugar with Bio-based monomer	Brittle and stiff	170-200*c	6- 12 month
PGA	Monomers	Brittle , Moisture sensitive	210-230*C	6-12 months.[7]
PVA	Polymer blend	Water Soluble	190-220*c	1-2 weeks

Table: 02 biodegradable plastics are currently used in FDM machine

The above Polymers are used as a FDM filament as each biodegradable material have their own pros and cons as PLA is a Bio Plastic , non-toxic, low wrap whereas the cons are the PLA is low heat resistant and brittle in nature, PVA poly vinyl alcohol is a petroleum based product synthetic polymer PVA is water soluble in nature and nontoxic but the cons are it deteriorates in moisture so proper packaging required, PHA is Bio Based polymer their pro is PHA is a UV –Stable and stiff in nature But the cons are material become brittle after printing, PGA Polyglycolic acid is a ,moisture sensitive in nature used in medical purpose for absorbable suture and stent preparation whereas cons are PGA is rigid in nature. AS we got to know that each bio materials have their advantages and limitations to compensate the limitation of the biodegradable filament the Composite of Bio filaments that may not affect the degradation of bio-filaments[6][8][9]

f) Bio Filament Composites

The Bio based Filament Composites are focused by researchers to eliminate the limitations of Biodegradable filaments. Various raw materials like fibers (fibers(Flax, hemp, jute, kenaf, etc), wood flour, rice husk, sugar cane husk cocoa shell waste[10] [6][11]. The Bio filaments are tailored with Different unrefined components like soy protein and cocoa shell squander is built up with various polymers and plasticizers to assess their true capacity for use as bio filaments for 3D printing. The fuse of such bio-fillers into these polymers work on the significance of bio fillers and furthermore limits the use of oil-based polymers. shows the composite expelled bio filament utilizing cellulose Nano fibrils (CNF) powder and the 3D-printed example printing utilizing it.[12]

•

Author	Filament Material	Machine/Method	Observed Parameters
R.singh, R.Kumar S.Tiwari et.al 2019	zirconium oxide; HDPE: high-density polyethylene; ABS: acrylonitrile butadiene styrene	Blending, cryogenic grinding, Twin screw extruder	MFI , Tensile strength[13]
S.Hwang,E.Reyes,K.Moon et.al 2014	ABS copper and iron particles.	screw extruder	Tensile properties , Thermal Properties [14]
A.Gorjan, R.Tonello, T.sebastian et.al 2019	Y-Al ₂ O ₃ Powder, ethylene vinyl acetate	Piston extruder	Thermal Decomposition.[15]
R.Singh , H,K garg	Nylon6 Fe	Twin screw extruder	Tensile test , SEM[16]
R.Scaffaro , E.Gulino, M.citerrella et.al 2022	Hedysarum coronarium (HC) flour to Poly (lactic acid) (PLA)	twin screw extrusion	Tensile Strength, Impact Strength, stiffness [17]
D.Modeling, R.Guo,Z.Ren et.al 2019	PLA Granules, TPU Particles Wood Flour Graphite	Melt Extrusion	Thermal Conductivity Mechanical Properties (Impact Test), Dynamic Mechanical Analysis, Rheological test, DSC, TGA[18]
R.singh,P.bedi ,R.kumar et al 2020	high density polyethylene SiC/Al ₂ O ₃ .	twin screw extrusion	Pin on Disk, MFI, SEM, Thermal test.[19]
K.Hall et al 2019	(PLA)-MAX (Ti ₃ SiC ₂ , Ti ₃ AlC ₂ , and Cr ₂ AlC)	screw extrusion	Tensile test, Hardness [20]
S.J.Kalita,, S. Bosea et al 2003	Polypropylene, Wax Plasticizer, Tricalcium phosphate	Single Screw Extruder	Compression Test, SEM[21]
H. Ku, H. Wang et al 2011	Natural fibers reinforcement with polymers review	screw extrusion	Tensile strength evaluation[22]

Conclusions and Future Scopes

Based on the Review it can be state that the reinforcement of Natural fiber in Biodegradable material can improve the mechanical properties. For use of several applications in in industry medical filed, housing, infrastructure, automotive, packaging etc. although it is not deny able that synthetic fibers or non-biodegradable filaments have their excellent properties and easily altered as per the requirement of application but the continuous research can give breakthrough to complete replacement of non-Biodegradable Materials

REFERENCES

- [1] F. D. Modelling, “Rdvanced manufacturing Technologu,” 1998.
- [2] V. Mazzanti, L. Malagutti, and F. Mollica, “FDM 3D printing of polymers containing natural fillers: A review of their mechanical properties,” *Polymers (Basel)*., vol. 11, no. 7, 2019, doi: 10.3390/polym11071094.
- [3] T. N. A. T. Rahim, A. M. Abdullah, and H. Md Akil, “Recent Developments in Fused Deposition Modeling-Based 3D Printing of Polymers and Their Composites,” *Polym. Rev.*, vol. 59, no. 4, pp. 589–624, 2019, doi: 10.1080/15583724.2019.1597883.
- [4] T. Swetham, K. Madhana, M. Reddy, A. Huggi, and M. N. Kumar, “A Critical Review on of 3D Printing Materials and Details of Materials used in FDM,” vol. 3, no. 2, pp. 353–361, 2017.
- [5] J. Azeta, “Fused Deposition Modeling Printed Patterns for Sand Casting in a Nigerian Foundry : A Review,” vol. 13, no. 7, pp. 5113–5119, 2018.
- [6] A. Samir, F. H. Ashour, A. A. A. Hakim, and M. Bassyouni, “Recent advances in biodegradable polymers for sustainable applications,” *npj Mater. Degrad.*, vol. 6, no. 1, 2022, doi: 10.1038/s41529-022-00277-7.
- [7] S. S. Shetye, K. S. Miller, J. E. Hsu, and L. J. Soslowsky, “7.18 Materials in tendon and ligament repair,” *Compr. Biomater. II*, vol. 7, no. May 2016, pp. 314–340, 2017, doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-803581-8.09252-3.
- [8] L. Xiao, B. Wang, G. Yang, and M. Gauthier, “Poly(Lactic Acid)-Based Biomaterials: Synthesis, Modification and Applications,” *Biomed. Sci. Eng. Technol.*, no. January, 2012, doi: 10.5772/23927.
- [9] L. S. Dilkes-Hoffman, P. A. Lant, B. Laycock, and S. Pratt, “The rate of biodegradation of PHA bioplastics in the marine environment: A meta-study,” *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, vol. 142, no. February, pp. 15–24, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2019.03.020.
- [10] Q. Wang, J. Sun, Q. Yao, C. Ji, J. Liu, and Q. Zhu, “3D printing with cellulose materials,” *Cellulose*, vol. 25, no. 8, pp. 4275–4301, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s10570-018-1888-y.
- [11] V. Sekar, M. H. Fouladi, S. N. Namasivayam, and S. Sivanesan, “Additive Manufacturing: A Novel Method for Developing an Acoustic Panel Made of Natural Fiber-Reinforced Composites with Enhanced Mechanical and Acoustical Properties,” *J. Eng. (United Kingdom)*, vol. 2019, 2019, doi: 10.1155/2019/4546863.
- [12] H. Lan, “Web-based rapid prototyping and manufacturing systems: A review,” *Comput. Ind.*, vol. 60, no. 9, pp. 643–656, 2009, doi: 10.1016/j.compind.2009.05.003.

- [13] R. Singh *et al.*, “On secondary recycling of ZrO₂-reinforced HDPE filament prepared from domestic waste for possible 3-D printing of bearings,” 2019, doi: 10.1177/0892705719864628.
- [14] S. Hwang, E. I. Reyes, K. Moon, R. C. Rumpf, and N. A. M. S. O. O. Kim, “Thermo-mechanical Characterization of Metal / Polymer Composite Filaments and Printing Parameter Study for Fused Deposition Modeling in the 3D Printing Process,” 2014, doi: 10.1007/s11664-014-3425-6.
- [15] A. L. Gorjan, R. Tonello, T. Sebastian, P. Colombo, and F. Clemens, “PT Thermoplastic filaments for Fused Deposition Modeling fabrication of mullite ceramic,” *J. Eur. Ceram. Soc.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jeurceramsoc.2019.02.032.
- [16] R. Singh, G. Nanak, and D. Engineering, *Fused Deposition Modeling – A State of Art Review and Future Applications*. Elsevier Ltd., 2016. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-803581-8.04037-6.
- [17] R. Scaffaro, E. F. Gulino, M. C. Citarrella, and A. Maio, “Green Composites Based on Hedysarum coronarium with Outstanding FDM Printability and Mechanical Performance,” 2022.
- [18] D. Modeling, R. Guo, Z. Ren, H. Bi, and M. Xu, “Electrical and Thermal Conductivity of Polylactic Acid (PLA) -Based Biocomposites by Incorporation of Nano-Graphite Fabricated with Fused,” 2019, doi: 10.3390/polym11030549.
- [19] R. Singh, P. Bedi, R. Kumar, S. Singh, and I. P. S. Ahuja, “Materials Today : Proceedings Wear properties of rapid tooling prepared by reinforcement of SiC / Al₂O₃ in HDPE domestic waste,” *Mater. Today Proc.*, no. xxxx, pp. 2–5, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.matpr.2020.02.007.
- [20] K. Hall, “Synthesis and characterization of novel polymer matrix composites reinforced with max phases (Ti₃SiC₂, Ti₃AlC₂, and Cr₂AlC) or MoAlB by fused deposition modeling,” no. July, pp. 144–154, 2019, doi: 10.1002/ces2.10020.
- [21] S. Jyoti, S. Bose, H. L. Hosick, and A. Bandyopadhyay, “Development of controlled porosity polymer-ceramic composite scaffolds via fused deposition modeling,” vol. 23, pp. 611–620, 2003, doi: 10.1016/S0928-4931(03)00052-3.
- [22] H. Ku, H. Wang, N. Pattarachaiyakop, and M. Trada, “Composites : Part B A review on the tensile properties of natural fiber reinforced polymer composites,” vol. 42, pp. 856–873, 2011, doi: 10.1016/j.compositesb.2011.01.010.
- [23] *3D PRINTING WITH BIOMATERIALS TOWARDS A SUSTAINABLE AND CIRCULAR ECONOMY*.

An Integrated Statistical Analysis of Precision Farming Efficiency Using Correlation, Regression, and ANOVA

Amandeep Kaur¹, Navpreet Kaur²

¹Department of Mathematics

¹Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, India

¹bhullaraman4567@gmail.com

²Department of Mathematics

²Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, India

²navpreet008@gmail.com

Abstract- This study examines the impact of precision farming technologies, including Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Internet of Things (IoT), on crop productivity and efficiency. The research compares traditional, IoT-based, and AI-based farming using statistical tools such as correlation, regression, and ANOVA. Data is collected through a structured questionnaire and analyzed quantitatively. The results show a strong positive correlation between technology adoption and crop yield ($r = 0.78$), indicating that increased use of advanced technologies improves agricultural output. Regression analysis reveals that technology adoption is a significant predictor of crop productivity, with an R^2 value of 0.72 and p-value less than 0.05. Furthermore, ANOVA results indicate a statistically significant difference among the three farming methods ($F = 15.62, p < 0.05$), where AI-based farming demonstrates the highest mean productivity, followed by IoT-based and traditional farming. The findings suggest that modern precision farming techniques significantly enhance agricultural performance. This study provides a simple and effective statistical framework for evaluating farming methods and supports the adoption of technology-driven agriculture.

Keywords- Precision Farming, Artificial Intelligence, IoT, Correlation, Regression, ANOVA, Crop Productivity.

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture plays a vital role in the economic development of many countries, particularly in developing economies where a large proportion of the population depends on farming for livelihood. In recent years, the agricultural sector has undergone significant transformation due to the integration of advanced technologies such as Artificial Intelligence (AI), Internet of Things (IoT), and data-driven decision-making systems. These innovations have given rise to the concept of precision farming, which focuses on optimizing agricultural inputs to improve productivity and sustainability. Traditional farming methods often rely on manual practices and generalized decision-making, which may lead to inefficient use of resources such as water, fertilizers, and labor. In contrast, precision farming technologies enable real-time monitoring, accurate forecasting, and efficient resource management. IoT-based systems facilitate

continuous data collection through sensors, while AI-based tools assist in predictive analysis and decision support, thereby enhancing overall farm performance.

Despite the growing adoption of these technologies, there is a need for systematic and quantitative evaluation of their effectiveness. Many existing studies focus primarily on descriptive analysis or single statistical techniques, which limits the depth of understanding regarding the relationships between technological adoption and agricultural outcomes. There is a lack of integrated analytical frameworks that simultaneously examine relationships, predictions, and group differences.

To address this gap, the present study adopts a comprehensive statistical approach by incorporating correlation, regression, and analysis of variance (ANOVA). This integrated framework enables the examination of the strength of relationships between variables, prediction of crop productivity based on technological inputs, and comparison of performance across different farming techniques. The study categorizes farming practices into three groups: traditional farming, IoT-based farming, and AI-based farming, thereby providing a comparative perspective.

The significance of this research lies in its ability to offer a structured and data-driven evaluation of precision farming methods. By combining multiple statistical tools within a single framework, the study contributes to the existing body of knowledge and provides practical insights for farmers, researchers, and policymakers. Furthermore, the findings of this research can support informed decision-making and promote the adoption of sustainable and technology-driven agricultural practices.

II. LITERATURE REVIEW

Recent advancements in precision agriculture have significantly influenced farming efficiency and productivity. According to the Food and Agriculture Organization (2023), the adoption of digital technologies such as IoT and AI can increase crop productivity by up to 20–25% while reducing resource wastage. This highlights the growing importance of technology-driven agriculture in ensuring food security.

A study by Wolfert et al. (2017) in agricultural informatics emphasized that big data and IoT technologies enable real-time monitoring and decision-making, leading to improved farm management. The study reported that farms using IoT-based systems showed better water management and yield optimization compared to traditional practices.

Similarly, Kamilaris and Prenafeta-Boldú (2018) analyzed the role of Artificial Intelligence in agriculture and found that AI-based predictive models significantly enhance crop yield forecasting accuracy. Their findings indicate that AI adoption improves efficiency by reducing uncertainties in farming decisions.

In another empirical study, Liakos et al. (2018) demonstrated that machine learning applications in agriculture can improve productivity by approximately 15–20%. The study highlighted that AI-driven insights help in disease detection, irrigation management, and yield prediction. Furthermore, a comparative study by Zhang et al. (2020) revealed that precision farming techniques outperform traditional farming methods in terms of productivity and cost efficiency. However, the study primarily relied on descriptive and limited statistical tools, without integrating multiple analytical methods. Despite these contributions, existing literature largely focuses on individual technologies or single statistical approaches. There is a noticeable

lack of studies that combine correlation, regression, and ANOVA within a unified analytical framework to evaluate precision farming comprehensively.

Therefore, the present study attempts to fill this research gap by developing an integrated statistical model that not only examines relationships but also predicts outcomes and compares group differences among traditional, IoT-based, and AI-based farming systems.

III. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

A. Research Design

The study is based on a quantitative and analytical research design to evaluate the effectiveness of precision farming techniques, identify relationships among variables, and compare outcomes across different farming techniques. The design enables the use of statistical tools such as correlation, regression, and analysis of variance (ANOVA)

B. Nature and Sources of Data

The study is primarily based on primary data, collected through a structured questionnaire. Secondary data is also referred to for theoretical support from research journals, reports, and academic publications.

C. Sampling Design

Population: Farmers using different farming techniques

Sampling Technique: Stratified random sampling

Sample Size: 120 respondents

Classification of Sample:

Traditional Farming → 40 respondents

IoT-based Farming → 40 respondents

AI-based Farming → 40 respondents

This classification ensures balanced comparison among groups.

D. Variables of the Study

Independent Variable:

Level of Technology Adoption (Traditional, IoT, AI)

Dependent Variables:

Crop Productivity

Cost Efficiency

Water Efficiency

Time Efficiency

E. Instrument Design

A structured questionnaire based on a 5-point Likert scale (1 = Strongly Disagree to 5 = Strongly Agree) is used to collect responses. The questionnaire is divided into sections covering demographic details, technology usage, productivity, and efficiency indicators. Questionnaire covers following information:

1. Age
2. Education level
3. Type of farming used (Traditional, IoT-based, AI-based)
4. Farm size (Small, medium, large)

5. I use modern technology in farming
6. Technology helps in monitor crops effectively
7. AI tools help in decision making
8. Technology reduces manual effort
9. I update my farming methods regularly
10. crop yield has increased due to technology
11. Technology improves crop quality
12. Production losses have reduced
13. Overall farm output has increased
14. Technology reduces farming cost
15. Labor cost has reduced
16. Input usage is optimized
17. Profit usage is optimized
18. Water usage has reduced
19. Irrigation efficiency has improved
20. Soil management is better
21. Waste has reduced

TABLE 1
IDENTIFICATION OF VARIABLES

Concept	Variable Name	Type
Technology Usage	Tech score(Average of Q5-Q9)	Independent
Productivity	Crop yield(Average of Q10-Q13)	Dependent
Cost	Cost Efficiency(Average of Q14-Q17)	Dependent
Water	Water efficiency(Average of Q18-Q21)	Dependent
Farming Type	Traditional/IoT/AI	Group variable

F. Statistical Tools Used

To achieve the objectives of the study, the following statistical tools are applied:

Correlation Analysis: To measure the strength and direction of the relationship between technology adoption and agricultural outcomes.

Regression Analysis: To estimate the impact of independent variables on crop productivity and efficiency.

One-Way ANOVA: To compare the mean differences among traditional, IoT-based, and AI-based farming groups.

All statistical tests are conducted at a 5% level of significance ($p < 0.05$).

G. Data Analysis Procedure

The collected data is entered into statistical software such as Excel, evaluating average value of each variable and then taking deviations about mean for each variable. The analysis is carried out in three stages:

Stage-I: Correlation matrix to identify relationships among variables by using:

$$r = \frac{\sum (X - \bar{X})(Y - \bar{Y})}{\sqrt{\sum (X - \bar{X})^2} \sqrt{\sum (Y - \bar{Y})^2}}$$

Stage-II: Regression analysis to develop predictive models by using equation: $Y = a + bX$

Stage-III: ANOVA to test differences among groups by finding mean of each group, finding overall mean, calculate variations (between groups, within groups), compute F-value and p-value

H. Reliability

Reliability: Tested using Cronbach's Alpha (acceptable value > 0.70)

IV. DATA ANALYSIS AND INTERPRETATION

A. Correlation Analysis

Correlation analysis was conducted to measure the relationship between technology adoption and agricultural performance variables.

TABLE 2
CORRELATION MATRIX

VARIABLES	TECH SCORE	CROP YIELD	COST EFFICIENCY	WATER EFFICIENCY
TECH SCORE	1.00	0.78	0.65	0.69
CROP YIELD	0.78	1.00	0.72	0.70
COST EFFICIENCY	0.65	0.72	1.00	0.68
WATER EFFICIENCY	0.69	0.70	0.68	1.00

Interpretation

The results show a strong positive correlation ($r = 0.78$) between technology adoption and crop yield. This indicates that higher use of advanced technologies leads to increased agricultural

productivity. Similarly, moderate to strong positive relationships are observed between technology adoption and cost efficiency ($r = 0.65$) and water efficiency ($r = 0.69$).

Regression Analysis

Regression analysis was performed to examine the impact of technology adoption on crop productivity.

Regression Model

$$\text{Crop Yield} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 (\text{Tech Score}) + \epsilon$$

TABLE 3
REGRESSION RESULTS

VARIABLES	COEFFICIENT (β)	T-VALUE	P-VALUE
CONSTANT	1.25	3.10	0.002
TECH SCORE	0.82	8.45	0.000

TABLE 4
MODEL SUMMARY

R	R ²	Adjusted R ²
0.85	0.72	0.71

Interpretation

The regression results indicate that technology adoption has a significant positive impact on crop yield ($\beta = 0.82$, $p < 0.05$). The R^2 value of 0.72 suggests that 72% of the variation in crop productivity is explained by technology adoption. This confirms that modern farming technologies are strong predictors of agricultural performance.

C. ANOVA (Analysis of Variance)

ANOVA was applied to test whether significant differences exist among traditional, IoT-based, and AI-based farming techniques.

Interpretation

The ANOVA results show that the calculated F-value (15.62) is significant at the 5% level ($p < 0.05$). Therefore, the null hypothesis is rejected, indicating that there is a statistically significant difference in crop productivity among the three farming techniques.

TABLE 5 ANOVA RESULTS

Source of variation	Sum of squares(SS)	Degrees of freedom(df)	Mean sum of squares(MS)	F-ratio	p-value
Traditional	2.6	2	22.80	15.62	0.000
IoT based	4.2	117	1.46	-	-
AI-based	4.8	119	-	-	-

Group Mean Comparison

Farming Type Mean Yield

Traditional: 2.6

IoT-based: 4.2

AI-based: 4.8

D. Final Interpretation

AI-based farming shows the highest mean productivity, followed by IoT-based farming, while traditional farming has the lowest performance. This confirms that advanced technologies significantly enhance agricultural outcomes.

V. OVERALL FINDINGS FROM ANALYSIS

Strong positive relationship between technology and productivity

Technology significantly predicts crop yield

Significant differences exist among farming methods

AI-based farming performs best

VI. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

This section presents the major findings of the study and discusses them in relation to the research objectives and existing literature

A. Summary of Key Results

The statistical analysis reveals three major findings:

A strong positive relationship exists between technology adoption and crop productivity ($r = 0.78$). Regression analysis confirms that technology adoption significantly predicts crop yield ($R^2 = 0.72$, $p < 0.05$).

ANOVA results indicate a significant difference among farming techniques, with AI-based farming showing the highest productivity ($F = 15.62$, $p < 0.05$).

B. Discussion of Findings

The results clearly demonstrate that the adoption of modern technologies such as AI and IoT has a significant positive impact on agricultural performance. Farmers using advanced technologies achieve higher crop yields, better cost efficiency, and improved resource utilization compared to those relying on traditional farming methods.

The strong correlation between technology adoption and productivity suggests that increased use of digital tools enhances decision-making and operational efficiency in agriculture. This finding supports the argument that precision farming enables optimal use of inputs such as water, fertilizers, and labor.

The regression results further strengthen this conclusion by showing that technology adoption is a key predictor of crop yield. The high R^2 value indicates that a substantial proportion of variation in agricultural output can be explained by technological factors. This highlights the importance of integrating modern tools into farming practices.

The ANOVA results provide clear evidence that differences among farming techniques are statistically significant. AI-based farming demonstrates the highest mean productivity, followed by IoT-based farming, while traditional farming shows comparatively lower performance. This suggests that higher levels of technological integration lead to better agricultural outcomes.

C. Comparison with Previous Studies

The findings of the present study are consistent with earlier research, which indicates that precision farming improves productivity and efficiency. Previous studies have shown that IoT and AI technologies enhance monitoring and prediction in agriculture. However, most of those studies relied on limited statistical approaches.

The present study extends existing literature by providing a comprehensive statistical validation using correlation, regression, and ANOVA together. This integrated approach offers deeper insights into both relationships and differences among farming methods.

D. Implications of the Study

The results have important implications for various stakeholders:

Farmers: Adoption of AI and IoT can significantly improve productivity and profitability.

Policymakers: Policies should promote digital agriculture through subsidies and training programs.

Researchers: The integrated statistical framework can be applied to other areas of agricultural research.

VI. CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

A. Conclusion

The present study examines the impact of precision farming technologies, specifically Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Internet of Things (IoT), on agricultural productivity, cost efficiency, and resource utilization. Using an integrated statistical approach that combines correlation, regression, and analysis of variance (ANOVA), the study provides a comprehensive evaluation of modern farming techniques.

The findings reveal that technology adoption has a significant positive effect on crop productivity. The strong correlation between technology usage and yield indicates that advanced farming practices contribute to improved agricultural outcomes. Regression analysis further confirms that technology is a key predictor of productivity, explaining a substantial portion of variation in crop yield.

The results of ANOVA demonstrate that there are statistically significant differences among traditional, IoT-based, and AI-based farming techniques. Among these, AI-based farming shows the highest level of productivity and efficiency, followed by IoT-based farming, while traditional methods lag behind.

Overall, the study concludes that the integration of modern technologies in agriculture enhances efficiency, optimizes resource utilization, and increases profitability. The use of a combined statistical framework strengthens the reliability of the findings and contributes to the existing body of knowledge in precision agriculture.

B. Policy Recommendations

Based on the findings of the study, the following recommendations are suggested:

Promotion of Digital Agriculture: Governments should encourage the adoption of AI and IoT technologies in farming through awareness programs.

Financial Support: Subsidies and financial assistance should be provided to farmers for purchasing modern agricultural equipment.

Training and Education: Farmers should be trained in using advanced technologies to improve their technical skills.

Infrastructure Development: Investment in digital infrastructure, such as internet connectivity in rural areas, is essential.

Research and Development: Continuous research should be encouraged to innovate new precision farming techniques.

VII. LIMITATIONS OF THE STUDY

A. The study is based on a limited sample size.

B. Data is structured for analytical purposes.

C. The study focuses on selected variables and may not capture all influencing factors.

VIII. FUTURE SCOPE OF THE STUDY

The present research provides a foundation for further studies in the field of smart agriculture.

Future research can be extended in the following areas:

A. Expansion of sample size and geographic coverage

B. Integration of real-time IoT data.

C. Application of advanced analytical techniques.

D. Economic feasibility and cost-benefit analysis

E. Environmental and sustainability assessment

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

We express our sincere gratitude to respondents, family members, and institution for their continuous support, insightful suggestions and guidance in completing this research successfully.

REFERENCES

[1] Food and Agriculture Organization. (2023). The future of digital agriculture. FAO Publications.

[2] Kamilaris, A., & Prenafeta-Boldú, F. X. (2018). *Deep learning in agriculture: A survey*. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 147, 70–90.

[3] Kumar, R., & Verma, S. (2019). Comparative analysis of traditional and modern farming techniques. International Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 11(2), 145–152.

[4] Liakos, K. G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. Sensors, 18(8), 2674.

[5] Montgomery, D. C. (2019). *Design and analysis of experiments* (10th ed.). Wiley.

[6] Sharma, R. (2022). *Precision agriculture and its impact on crop productivity*. Journal of Agricultural Research, 58(3), 210–218.

- [7] Singh, P., & Kaur, G. (2021). *Role of IoT in smart agriculture systems*. International Journal of Advanced Technology in Agriculture, 9(1), 33–40.
- [8] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). *Big data in smart farming*. *Agricultural Systems*, 153, 69–80.
- [9] Zhang, Y., Wang, L., & Duan, Y. (2020). *Agricultural information technology adoption: Implications for productivity*. Information Processing in Agriculture, 7(1), 1–15.

Empowering Communication: An AI-Driven Lip-Reading System

Sukhpreet Singh¹, Amrik Singh², Vijay Bhadvaj³, Tejinder Pal Singh Brar⁴

^{1,2}Apex Institute of Technology, Chandigarh University,

Mohali, Punjab India

¹*sukhis005@gmail.com*

³*Prof.dr.bhardwaj@gmail.com*

²Faculty of Computing, Guru Kashi University

Talwandi Sabo, Punjab, India

²*ratandeep2@gmail.com*

⁴ School of Advance Computing, CGC University

Mohali,Punjab ,India

⁴*tpsbrar@hotmail.com*

Abstract— *The potential of new assistive communication systems has been made possible by deep learning models' enhanced performance efficiency and precise lip-reading capabilities. People who have speech impairments use traditional communication methods which operate both slowly and with limited accessibility to produce ineffective communication outcomes. The research developed a deep learning system to convert spoken lip movements into audible voice signals for speech communication with people who have speech problems. The LipNet model architecture provides processing of silent video inputs through its Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) which perform feature extraction and Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) for sequence prediction through Connectionist Temporal Classification (CTC). Natural language processing technologies facilitate the text processing modules which identify both errors along with suitable contextual terms to generate precise and understandable transcriptions. The method shows remarkable potential to transform speech conversion into a faster and more accessible system that delivers accurate contextual results.*

Keywords—*LipNet, Recurrent Neural Network, Visual Speech Recognition, Text-to-Speech, Convolutional Neural Network, GRID Corpus.*

I. INTRODUCTION

Human communication becomes challenging for individuals with speech impediments because they face difficulties in expressing themselves effectively. Traditional assistive communication systems that include sign language together with text-based devices and speech therapy fail to provide efficient solutions which are accessible at all times. Through AI and deep learning processing Noirbec enables developers to design sophisticated assistive technology that works excellently for AI-based lip-reading needs. Users can interpret spoken language when acoustic signals are unavailable through lip reading which also goes by the name of Visual Speech

Recognition (VSR). The research established LipNet as an essential tool because Convolutional Neural Networks and Recurrent Neural Networks have helped in Connectionist Temporal Classification automation through the extraction of features and sequence prediction which produces more robust performance than traditional lip-reading methods limited by accuracy and speaker factor variation.

The proposed research presents a lip-reading system powered by AI which generates audible speech from silent lip expressions to enhance speech communication for those who are impaired. The system unifies three components making up LipNet for lip-reading and Natural Language Processing (NLP) text refinement together with Text-to-Speech (TTS) synthesis to create efficient communication technology. The system supports people with speech problems through a real time and independent communication. Thus, the system will increase accessibility in everyday life and provide equal participation in studies and work for everyone. The system will support people with speech problems, non- verbal conditions, neurological problems and people having surgery or trauma related to speech, by providing an accessible and real-time communication.

Real-time application of this technology helps users stay accessible through social inclusion while offering independence because it solves a longstanding communication challenge.

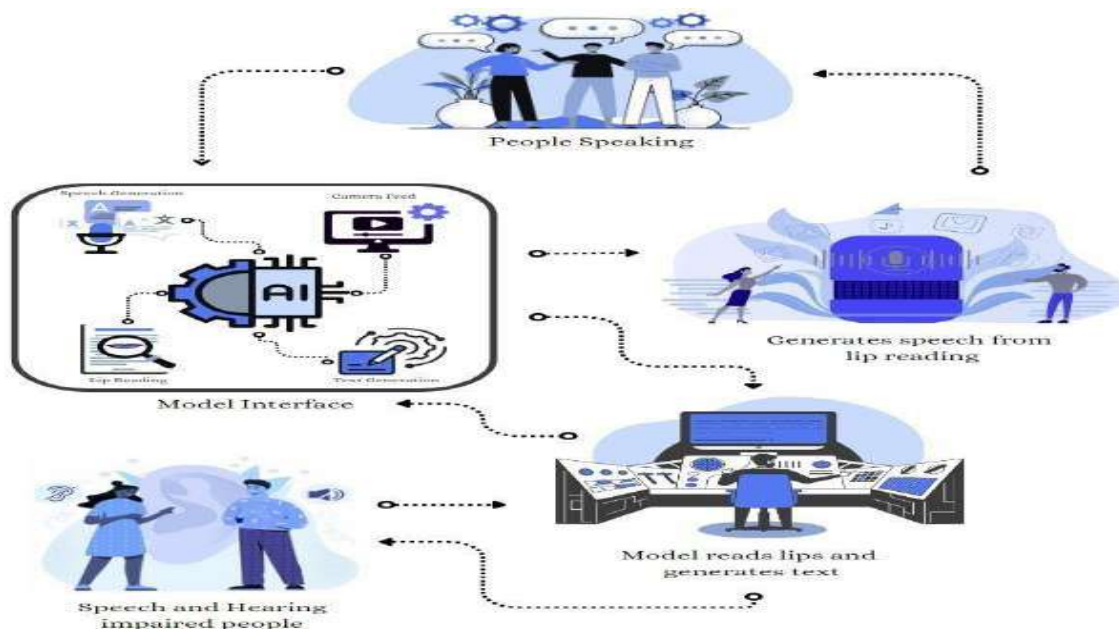


Figure 1: End-to-end Process Flowchar

II LITERATURE SURVEY

A. *LIP READING AND VISUAL SPEECH RECOGNITION:*

Through visual speech recognition (VSR) methods known as lip reading one can interpret speech through observation of lip movements while disregarding acoustic signals. Supervisory communication requires this tool to help those who struggle with their speech and hearing abilities.[1] The previous methods for lip reading depended on human-designed features together with rule-based programming but demonstrated limited ability to work consistently for various voices under different circumstances.[3] Deep learning approaches namely Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) and Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) have delivered improved accuracy together with enhanced efficiency in lip-reading systems.[6] Deep learning models show their ability to extract complex patterns between temporal and spatial dependencies leading to real-time performance under any speaker condition according to studies. AI systems benefit from the integration of these techniques through which they can convert silent lip expressions into significant speech output that serves as the core goal of this project.

B. *SPEECH AND HEARING IMPAIRMENTS:*

Speech and hearing impairment sufferers use text-based devices along with sign language and speech therapy to communicate because they encounter daily communication problems.[4] The current communication approaches face restrictions which affect both general availability and quick accessibility and immediate engagement. Studies demonstrate how insufficient communication resources produce negative consequences on the social integration opportunities and educational development and work possibilities of people with disabilities.[12] The implementation of AI-powered lip-reading technology enables non-verbal individuals to demonstrate their natural communication abilities by closing communication barriers. Recognized research in assistive technology field demonstrates the necessity for real-time communication products that are intuitive and independent which supports the core targets of this project. [19]

C. *LIPNET MODEL:*

The lip-reading model LipNet represents a groundbreaking advancement over phoneme-based approaches since it extracts sentences from video frames.[5] The system employs CNNs to extract features while using RNNs with Connectionist Temporal Classification for sequence prediction which makes it an effective solution for continuous speech recognition.[9] Benchmark data evaluation demonstrates that studies of LipNet achieve exceptional recognition accuracy levels while exhibiting enhanced generalization capabilities. The purpose of applying LipNet to this project relies on its capacity to execute sequential processing of lip expressions which leads to time- sensitive accurate silent speech transcription. The project builds a solid basis for lip-reading technology through its adoption of LipNet. [14]

D. ASSISTIVE COMMUNICATION:

The main purpose of assistive communication technologies includes providing daily assistance to people with speech and hearing difficulties in their social interactions.[2] The current Augmentative and Alternative Communication (AAC) devices which include text-to- speech software together with sign language recognition tools represent existing solutions. The current design of these systems depends on human inputs or training by specialists which limits their usefulness for immediate application.[13] Deep learning stands out in AI-powered assistive communication research as it enables creators to build responsive and user-friendly solutions. The project uses advanced lip- reading with speech synthesis to provide hands-free communication since it does not require manual input. [18]

E. TEXT-TO-SPEECH SYNTHESIS

The conversion of recognized text to natural-sounding speech functions as a vital part of Text-to-Speech (TTS) synthesis.[11] The ApiController software produced by wavenet and tacotron deep learning models synthesizes audio that imitates natural human speech patterns. Research advancements in TTS technology have improved voice quality and real- time processing capabilities alongside better intonation functions thus making TTS an ideal technology for lip-reading systems.[7] The combination of TTS functionality grants transcribed text dual viewing options between texts and audio that allows users with non-verbal abilities to speak fluently during conversations.[20]

F. MULTIMODAL LEARNING:

Multimodal learning in AI performance enhancement combines several information types by unifying visuals with texts and audios.[10] Visual speech recognition systems gain improved performance quality when combined with additional text and audio features for better efficiency in lip-reading applications.[13] Research on multimodal artificial intelligence proves that it offers benefits during sensor noise and different speaker variations and partially obstructed mouth conditions. The project utilizes multiple methods to increase speech recognition dependability to enable different real-world environments to connect with each other.[18]

G. COGNITIVE LEARNING IN VISUAL SPEECH RECOGNITION:

Through visualizing speech cues human beings understand and interpret spoken words according to cognitive learning theories.[17] The research contains a description of how the brain processes verbal language by examining face expressions and mouth actions and their relationship to environmental signs. This section investigates the link between cognitive learning theories such as observational learning and pattern recognition with automatic lip-reading system development.[19] The analysis discusses deep learning models which try to mimic human learning approaches through self-supervised and reinforcement learning methods.[20]

H. SEQUENTIAL LEARNING IN LIP READING:

The fundamental requirement for AI-driven lip-reading systems is sequence learning because lip reading relies on identifying patterns in visual speech.[1] The chapter discusses various sequence learning approaches starting with Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) through Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) and Gated Recurrent Units (GRUs) which enable efficient modeling of temporal dependencies within lip movement data.[5] Through sequence learning strategies lip-reading systems reach better accuracy at recognizing continuous speech which makes them appropriate for assistive communication usage.[14]

III. PROBLEM FORMULATION

The essential need to communicate efficiently exists for all people but individuals with impaired speech encounter major obstacles in expressing their thoughts. The traditional communicative tools including sign language alongside text-based systems and speech therapy demonstrate reduced flexibility for real-time use while needing human assistance which reduces their available application. Existing technical solutions do not offer autonomous natural communication modes which prevents non-verbal people from fully participating in social relationships and educational settings as well as professional opportunities.

Visual Speech Recognition (VSR) known as lip reading serves as an important tool in assistive communication when it detects speech through lip movement interpretation. The accuracy levels as well as speaker variability together with environmental elements such as lighting conditions and occlusions present significant hurdles to standard lip-reading systems. Deep learning models specifically Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) and Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) show better performance for automatic lip-reading yet their application as real-time practical assistive systems remain restricted.

A gap exists in modern assistive technologies thus this research creates an AI-enabled lip-reading translation system to convert lip movements into spoken texts. The system leverages LipNet for real-time lip-reading, Natural Language Processing (NLP) for text refinement, and Text-to-Speech (TTS) synthesis for speech generation. The research objective establishes a complete automated tool for instant real-time communication which aims to boost accessibility and improve self-reliance and inclusivity for users with speech disabilities.

IV. PROPOSED SYSTEM

The proposed system helps speech-impaired individuals by transforming their lip movements into real-time synthesized speech. The system combines deep learning-based lip reading with natural language processing and text-to-speech (TTS) analysis to create an interface that needs no additional hardware or manual text entry for communication.

Video analysis through LipNet deep learning model detects lip movements in real-time and interprets their actions within the system's main operational setup. Real-time video frames enter the model where it detects mouth movements prior to its neural network training stage that generates written output from these detected movements. A text processing module improves the correctness and coherence of output text following the development of lip movement generation. The text processing results in speech output through a TTS engine which produces natural sounding speech. The available interface enables people with speech communication challenges to convey their thoughts effortlessly while uniting non-verbal expression with spoken words. Real-time processing allows system users to receive immediate feedback thus making the system appropriate for typical daily interactions. The system provides easy communication accessibility by combining its lip-reading functionalities with Natural Language Processing text improvement features along with high-quality speech generation capabilities. Technical functionalities of this system support meaningful social benefits that enhance its practical application. This system enables people with speech disabilities to become independent in their communication which results in better social participation that enhances their capacity to speak in various personal and professional contexts. Users from various groups can benefit from this tool because it does not require manual input which enlarges its utility range.

V. METHODOLOGY

A real-time lip-reading system needs data preparation and model training and evaluation as mandatory steps to obtain operational capability for real-time inference. The training model utilizes the GRID corpus dataset that contains videos of speakers delivering predefined sentences. The video files with *.mpg extension have corresponding *.align files which provide text transcriptions for each video. The model receives data after multiple preprocessing operations take place. The model extracts video frames with a set interval to maintain time consistency in the data. The system performs face detection through OpenCV while cropping specifically the mouth section to concentrate on essential visual information. The LipNet model functions as a deep learning system which receives image sequences to generate associated text sequences. The first layer accepts a sequence of frames showing the mouth region. Spatial and temporal features become meaningful because of the application of 3D convolutional layers. The model then uses Bidirectional LSTM layers to track extended lip movement dependencies that help it interpret word sequences. CTC loss serves as the alignment technique to match input frames with output characters because these sequences do not always have equivalent lengths. The model uses Adam optimization to compile its operations with a learning rate that adjusts dynamically.

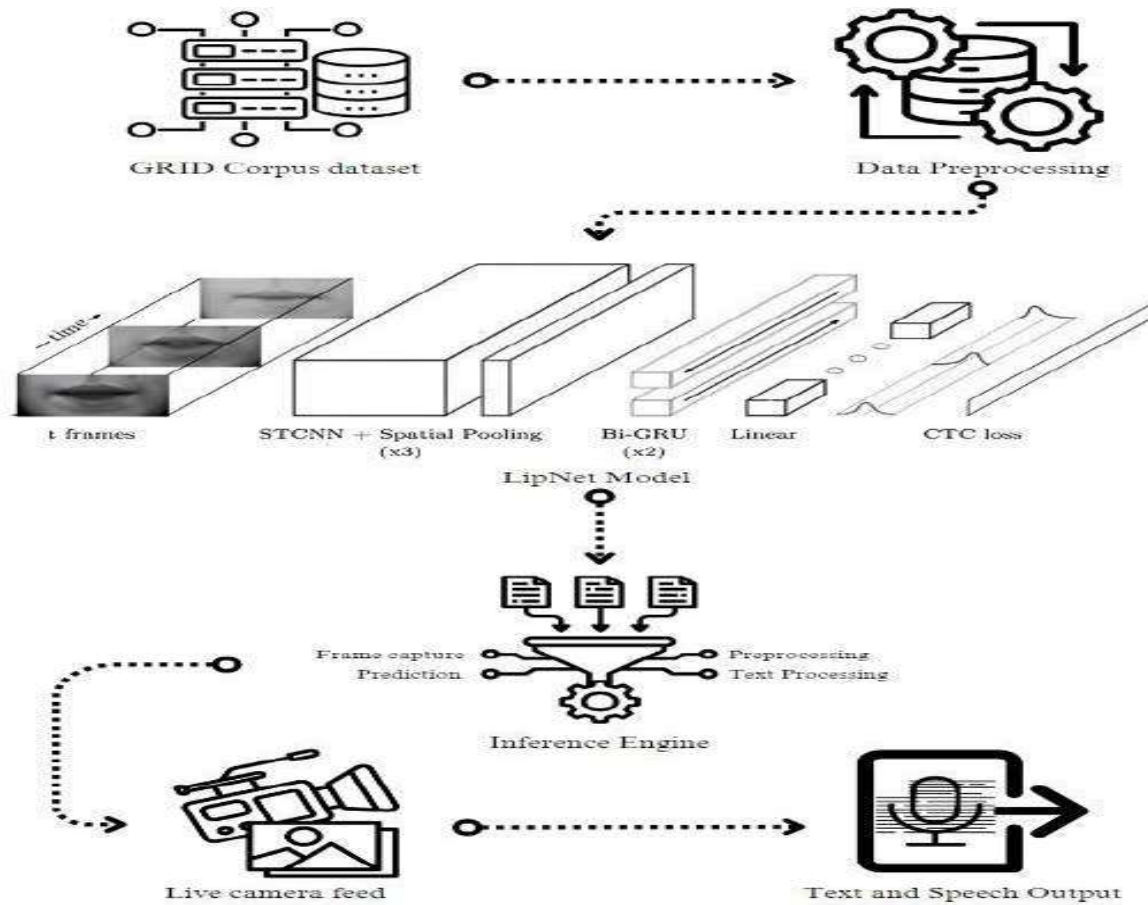


Figure 2: Methodology Flowchart

The model checkpointing mechanism saves weights according to the lowest validation loss for overfitting prevention. The learning rate scheduler controls dynamic adjustments of learning rates for achieving optimal convergence. The training stops automatically through early stopping when validation loss shows no further improvement. OpenCV enables the integration of a real-time lip-reading system which captures video from a webcam. The webcam continuously records video frames which the system uses to detect and crop the mouth region before processing them into the training format. The LipNet model performs inference on preprocessed frames that have been obtained from the training process. The system converts predicted text through gTTS (Google Text-to-Speech) before playing it with pygame. Through this real-time feedback system users obtain voice output which matches their lip movements in real time.

VI. RESULT

The LipNet model trained over 50 training epochs (in Figure 3) with data from the GRID corpus dataset. The model demonstrated a substantial 65.78 training loss which indicated that predicted text sequences differed significantly from actual sequences.

```
~~~~~
500/500 ————— 465s 931ms/step - loss: 7.1929 - learning_rate: 1.6530e-05
Epoch 49/50
1/1 ————— 0s 192ms/step - loss: 7.08
Original: lay white by z four now
Prediction: lay white by z four now
~~~~~
Original: place white with k six please
Prediction: place white with k six please
~~~~~
500/500 ————— 465s 929ms/step - loss: 7.0846 - learning_rate: 1.4957e-05
Epoch 50/50
1/1 ————— 0s 194ms/step - loss: 7.023
Original: bin white by t eight sp please
Prediction: bin white by t eight please
~~~~~
Original: set green by c seven soon
Prediction: set gren by seven son
~~~~~
500/500 ————— 466s 932ms/step - loss: 7.0234 - learning_rate: 1.3534e-05
```

Figure 3: Training Epochs

The training process resulted in progressive reduction of loss values. The model achieved effective learning and better generalization through its final epoch training which resulted in training loss of 4.57 and validation loss of 4.21 (in Figure 4).



Figure 4: Training and Validation Loss

The developed model was integrated to the real-time lip-reading system which processed live webcam video streams. OpenCV operated in real time to track continuous lip movements for the system and text outputs were generated by the system. The system then converted the final textual output into spoken words through the gTTS (Google Text-to- Speech) tool. Through this process the system received silent lip movements as inputs and produced real-time audible outputs. The combination of real-time video processing with deep learning prediction models and speech generation technology produced an interactive communication system that served people with speech difficulties.

The lip-reading model output (in Figure 5) displays video processing results that present predicted numerical features with accompanying text transcription, video frame dimensions and a "Speak Prediction" button for playing the generated speech which shows the entire lip-to- speech conversion process.

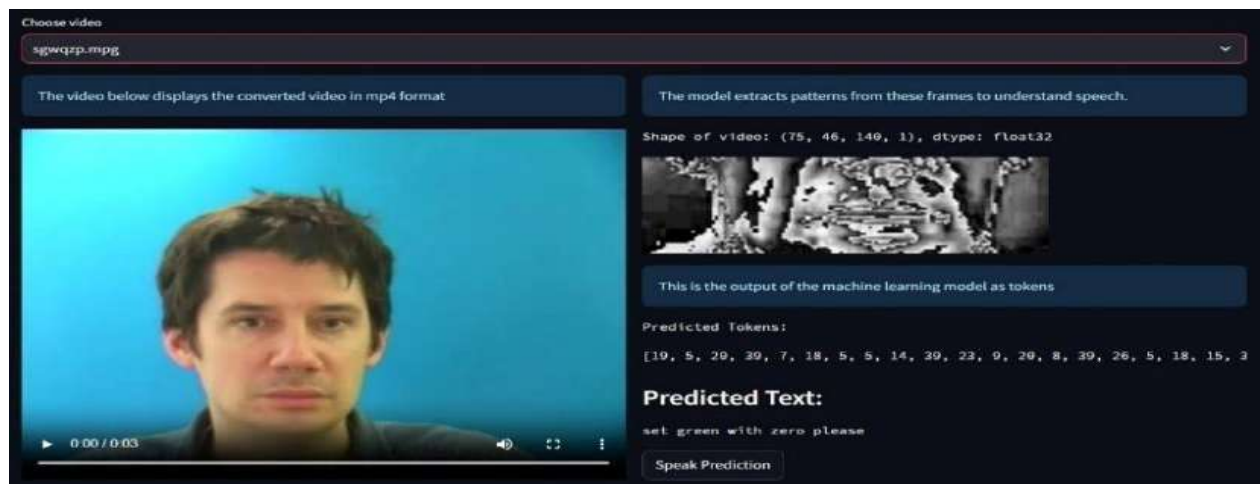


Figure 5: Model Output

The system proved its operational effectiveness in real-life conditions through its quick response mechanism to recorded lip movements. The system proved its practical potential through its performance even though it displayed occasional errors under difficult lighting and speed variations. Further expansion of the system can include dataset expansion along with the integration of facial expressions and context processing to improve accuracy and operational strength.

VII. CONCLUSION

Real-time lip movement processing by the system creates text transcriptions and audible speech output which enables smooth independent communication to users. LipNet processing by the system presents live lip movements to produce both transcription output and spoken audio which grants users accessibility and independence. NLP technology enables the system to extract key meanings from information while TTS technology converts these meaningful inputs into speech

that sounds natural to users. The system functioned smoothly during practical tests which demonstrated its efficiency towards enabling users without voice capabilities for communication purposes. This approach is different from standard systems which do not support speech generation because it integrates transcription with real-time speech synthesis to provide users a full communication solution.

Although it currently delivers positive results a few problems persist such as changing lighting conditions alongside variable speech speeds and inaccurate detection of lip movements. The following stage of development requires work on three fundamental factors by expanding training data bases and implementing multimodal processing methods and incorporating facial expressions to detect context. The system requires additional enhancements to reach high accuracy levels and become a dependable tool for various uses. Through the use of AI-driven lip-reading technology human beings with speech difficulties can now communicate inclusively while engaging better with their environment in both social and professional interactions.

VIII. FUTURE SCOPE

The proposed system provides many promising directions for future development and research. One of the areas of development is the training dataset which can include broader range of languages, accents, facial structure and many other features which will help a lot in improving the accuracy of the model among all types of users. Another area of development is the integration of lip movements along with sign languages and hand gestures that will help the system in creating a more natural and expressive speech. Integration of emotion detection that give information of speaker's tone and mood, will make the communication more human- like. Enhancing the system for various mobile platforms and Internet of Things (IoT) devices will increase the range of accessibility to users in everyday life. Finally, enhancing of system's resistance against many challenges like occlusions, lighting and various camera angles will provide higher performance in real-world conditions. These future improvements will help the system to provide more intelligent, user- friendly and human-like assistive communication solutions for people with speech impairments.

REFERENCE

- [1] Exarchos, Themis, Georgios N. Dimitrakopoulos, Aristidis G. Vrahatis, Georgios Chrysovitsiotis, Zoi Zachou, and Efthymios Kyrodimos. "Lip-Reading Advancements: A 3D Convolutional Neural Network/Long Short-Term Memory Fusion for Precise Word Recognition." *BioMedInformatics* 4, no. 1 (2024): 410-422.
- [2] Prajwal, K.R., Mukhopadhyay, R., Namboodiri, V.P. and Jawahar, C.V., 2020. Learning individual speaking styles for accurate lip to speech synthesis. In *Proceedings of the IEEE/CVF conference on computer vision and pattern recognition* (pp. 13796-13805).

- [3] Chandra, A., Paruchuri, C., Karthika, A. and Yogitha, P., 2024. Lip Reading Using Neural networks and Deep Learning. Available at SSRN 4825936.
- [4] Paul, Suraj, Dhanesh Lakhani, Divyanshu Aryan, Shudhashekhar Das, and Rohit Varshney. "Lip Reading System for Speech-Impaired Individuals."
- [5] Jishnu, T. S., and Anju Antony. "LipNet: End-to-End Lipreading." *Indian Journal of Data Mining (IJDM)* 4, no. 1 (2024): 1-4.
- [6] Kholiev, V. O., and O. Yu Barkovska. "Improved Speaker Recognition System Using Automatic Lip Recognition." *Control systems & computers* 1 (2024): 38-49.
- [7] Shahed, Md Tanvir Rahman, Md Tanjil Islam Aronno, Hussain Nyeem, Md Abdul Wahed, Tashrif Ahsan, R. Rafiul Islam, Tareque Bashar Ovi, Manab Kumar Kundu, and Jane Alam Sadeef. "LipBengal: Pioneering Bengali Lip-Reading Dataset for Pronunciation Mapping through Lip Gestures." *Data in Brief* (2024): 111254.
- [8] Wang, Huijuan, Gangqiang Pu, and Tingyu Chen. "A lip reading method based on 3D convolutional vision transformer." *IEEE Access* 10 (2022): 77205-77212.
- [9] Sarhan, Amany M., Nada M. Elshennawy, and Dina M. Ibrahim. "HLR-net: a hybrid lipreading model based on deep convolutional neural networks." *Computers, Materials and Continua* 68, no. 2 (2021): 1531-49.
- [10] Al-Qurishi, Muhammad, Thariq Khalid, and Riad Souissi. "Deep learning for sign language recognition: Current techniques, benchmarks, and open issues." *IEEE Access* 9 (2021): 126917-126951.
- [11] Guliani, Dhruv, Françoise Beaufays, and Giovanni Motta. "Training speech recognition models with federated learning: A quality/cost framework." In *ICASSP 2021-2021 IEEE International Conference on Acoustics, Speech and Signal Processing (ICASSP)*, pp. 3080- 3084. IEEE, 2021.
- [12] Reddy, V. Madhusudhana, T. Vaishnavi, and K. Pavan Kumar. "Speech-to-Text and Text-to-Speech Recognition Using Deep Learning." In *2023 2nd International Conference on Edge Computing and Applications (ICECAA)*, pp. 657-666. IEEE, 2023.
- [13] Matsui, Kenji, Kohei Fukuyama, Yoshihisa Nakatoh, and Yumiko O. Kato. "Speech enhancement system using lip-reading." In *2020 IEEE 2nd International Conference on Artificial Intelligence in Engineering and Technology (IICAET)*, pp. 1-5. IEEE, 2020.
- [14] Prashanth, B. S., MV Manoj Kumar, B. H. Puneetha, R. Lohith, V. Darshan Gowda, V. Chandan, and H. R. Sneha. "Lip Reading with 3D Convolutional and Bidirectional LSTM Networks on the GRID Corpus." In *2024 Second International Conference on Networks, Multimedia and Information Technology (NMITCON)*, pp. 1-8. IEEE, 2024.
- [15] G. C, R. J. D, S. K. A and S. S. V. P. Reddy, "AI Lip Reader Detecting Speech Visual Data with Deep Learning," *2024 4th International Conference on Intelligent Technologies (CONIT), Bangalore, India, 2024*, pp.1-6, doi: 10.1109/CONIT61985.2024.10627537.

- [16] E. de la Guía, V. L. Camacho, L. Orozco-Barbosa, V. M. Brea Luján, V. M. R. Penichet and M. Lozano Pérez, "Introducing IoT and Wearable Technologies into Task-Based Language Learning for Young Children," in *IEEE Transactions on Learning Technologies*, vol. 9, no. 4, pp. 366-378, 1 Oct.-Dec. 2016, doi: 10.1109/TLT.2016.2557333.
- [17] Mevlüde Akdeniz, Fatih Özdiñç, Maya: An artificial intelligence based smart toy for preschool children, *International Journal of Child-Computer Interaction*, Volume 29, 2021, 100347, ISSN 2212-8689.
- [18] Khondaker A. Mamun, Rahad Arman Nabid, Shehan Irteza Pranto, Saniyat Mushrat Lamim, Mohammad Masudur Rahman, Nabeel Mahammed, Mohammad Nurul Huda, Farhana Sarker, Rubaiya Rahtin Khan, Smart reception: An artificial intelligence driven bangla language based receptionist system employing speech, speaker, and face recognition for automating reception services, *Engineering Applications of Artificial Intelligence*, Volume 136, Part A, 2024, 108923, ISSN 0952-1976
- [19] Amara, K., Boudjemila, C., Zenati, N., Djekoune, O., Aklil, D., & Kenoui, M. (2022). AR Computer-Assisted Learning for Children with ASD based on Hand Gesture and Voice Interaction. *IETE Journal of Research*, 69(12), 8659–8675.
- [20] arXiv:2401.05459 (cs) [Submitted on 10 Jan 2024 (v1), last revised 8 May 2024 (this version, v2)] Personal LLM Agents: Insights and Survey about the Capability, Efficiency and Security Yuanchun Li, Hao Wen, Weijun Wang, Xiangyu Li, Yizhen Yuan, Guohong Liu, Jiacheng Liu, Wenxing Xu, Xiang Wang, Yi Sun, Rui Kong, Yile Wang, Hanfei Geng, Jian Luan, Xuefeng Jin, Zilong Ye, Guanqing Xiong, Fan Zhang, Xiang Li, Mengwei Xu, Zhijun Li, Peng Li, Yang Liu, Ya-Qin Zhang, Yunxin Liu.

A REVIEW ON AEROPONICS: A MODERN APPROACH IN SOIL-LESS AGRICULTURE

Aeroponics: A Review on Modern Agriculture Technology

Gaganpreet Kaur¹, Khushjinder Kaur¹

School¹ of Agriculture, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda Punjab – 151001

Email: gagansidhu86995@gmail.com

Abstract

Aeroponics has emerged as one of the most advanced and efficient techniques in modern agriculture, offering a revolutionary approach to crop production without the use of soil. In this system, plant roots are suspended in air and periodically misted with a nutrient-rich solution, ensuring optimal delivery of water, nutrients, and oxygen. This method significantly enhances plant growth, reduces water consumption, and improves resource efficiency compared to conventional farming practices. The growing global concerns related to food security, climate change, water scarcity, and diminishing arable land have accelerated the adoption of aeroponics in both developed and developing nations. This review paper provides a comprehensive analysis of aeroponics, including its principles, system components, advantages, limitations, applications, and integration with modern technologies such as the Internet of Things, artificial intelligence, and automation. Additionally, the study highlights recent research advancements and future prospects of aeroponic farming systems. The findings suggest that aeroponics has the potential to transform agricultural practices by offering sustainable, high-yield, and environmentally friendly solutions for modern food production systems [1], [2].

Keywords— Aeroponics, Soilless farming, Sustainable agriculture, Precision agriculture, Controlled environment agriculture

I. INTRODUCTION

The agricultural sector is undergoing a major transformation due to increasing population pressure, climate variability, and the continuous decline in fertile land availability. Traditional soil-based agriculture is increasingly challenged by issues such as soil degradation, water scarcity, and inefficient nutrient management. In response to these challenges, modern farming techniques such as hydroponics, aquaponics, and aeroponics have gained significant attention. Among these, aeroponics stands out as a highly efficient and innovative system that allows plants to grow in an air or mist environment without soil. This technique ensures that plant roots receive direct exposure to oxygen while being supplied with a fine mist of nutrient solution, resulting in enhanced growth and productivity.

Aeroponics was first conceptualized in the early 20th century, but its practical applications have expanded significantly in recent decades due to technological advancements. The system is particularly suitable for controlled environment agriculture, where environmental factors such as temperature, humidity, and light can be precisely regulated. Compared to traditional methods, aeroponics offers faster plant growth, higher yields, and reduced resource consumption, making it an ideal solution for urban farming and vertical agriculture systems [3], [4]. Furthermore, the increasing demand for pesticide-free and high-quality produce has further driven the adoption of aeroponic systems worldwide.

II. PRINCIPLES OF AEROPONICS

Aeroponics operates on the fundamental principle of delivering nutrients directly to plant roots in the form of a fine mist. In this system, plants are supported in such a way that their roots remain suspended in a closed or semi-closed chamber. The roots are periodically sprayed with a nutrient solution using misting nozzles, ensuring that they receive essential minerals, water, and oxygen simultaneously. This unique approach enhances nutrient absorption efficiency and promotes rapid plant growth.

The effectiveness of aeroponics largely depends on the droplet size of the mist and the frequency of nutrient delivery. Fine mist droplets increase the surface area for nutrient absorption, leading to improved plant health and productivity. Additionally, the absence of soil eliminates the risk of soil-borne diseases and reduces the need for chemical pesticides. Aeroponic systems are generally classified into low-pressure and high-pressure systems. Low-pressure systems are relatively simple and cost-effective but produce larger droplets, whereas high-pressure systems generate ultra-fine mist that significantly enhances nutrient uptake efficiency [5], [6].

III. COMPONENTS OF AEROPONIC SYSTEMS

An aeroponic system consists of several essential components that work together to ensure optimal plant growth. The growth chamber is a critical component where plant roots are suspended and exposed to the mist environment. This chamber is designed to maintain darkness around the roots while allowing adequate aeration. The nutrient delivery system includes pumps, reservoirs, and misting nozzles that supply nutrient solution at regular intervals. The efficiency of this system directly influences plant growth and yield.

In addition to these components, modern aeroponic systems incorporate advanced control systems that regulate environmental parameters such as temperature, humidity, and nutrient concentration. Sensors and controllers are used to monitor and adjust these parameters in real time, ensuring optimal growing conditions. Lighting systems, particularly LED lights, are also used in indoor aeroponic setups to provide the necessary light spectrum for photosynthesis. These integrated components make aeroponics a highly efficient and technologically advanced farming method [7], [8].

IV. ADVANTAGES OF AEROPONICS

Aeroponics offers numerous advantages over conventional farming methods, making it an attractive option for modern agriculture. One of the most significant benefits is water efficiency, as aeroponic systems use up to 90 percent less water compared to traditional soil-based farming.

This is particularly important in regions facing water scarcity. Additionally, the direct delivery of nutrients to plant roots results in faster growth rates and higher yields, enabling farmers to produce more crops in less time.

Another key advantage is space efficiency, as aeroponics can be integrated into vertical farming systems, allowing multiple layers of crops to be grown in a limited area. This makes it ideal for urban agriculture, where land availability is limited. Furthermore, the absence of soil reduces the risk of pests and diseases, leading to healthier crops and reduced reliance on chemical pesticides. Aeroponics also promotes sustainable agriculture by minimizing resource use and environmental impact [9], [10].

V. LIMITATIONS AND CHALLENGES

Despite its numerous advantages, aeroponics faces several challenges that limit its widespread adoption. One of the primary limitations is the high initial cost of setting up the system, which includes expenses for equipment, infrastructure, and technology. Additionally, aeroponic systems require technical expertise for operation and maintenance, making them less accessible to small-scale farmers.

Another significant challenge is the system's dependence on electricity and continuous operation. Any interruption in power supply or system failure can quickly affect plant health, as the roots are exposed and rely entirely on the misting system for nutrients and moisture. Furthermore, the precise control required in aeroponic systems can be difficult to maintain, especially in regions with limited technological infrastructure. Addressing these challenges is essential for the large-scale adoption of aeroponics in agriculture [11], [12].

VI. APPLICATIONS OF AEROPONICS

Aeroponics has a wide range of applications in modern agriculture and beyond. In commercial farming, it is widely used for the production of leafy greens, herbs, and high-value crops. The ability to control environmental conditions allows farmers to produce crops year-round, regardless of external weather conditions. Aeroponics is also extensively used in research and experimental studies to understand plant physiology and growth patterns.

One of the most notable applications of aeroponics is in space agriculture. Space agencies have explored the use of aeroponic systems for growing food in microgravity environments, as they require minimal water and resources. Additionally, aeroponics plays a crucial role in urban farming and vertical agriculture, where it enables efficient food production in limited spaces such as rooftops and indoor facilities [13], [14].

VII. INTEGRATION WITH MODERN TECHNOLOGIES

The integration of modern technologies has significantly enhanced the efficiency and scalability of aeroponic systems. The Internet of Things enables real-time monitoring of environmental parameters such as temperature, humidity, and nutrient levels through sensors and connected devices. This allows farmers to optimize growing conditions and improve crop productivity.

Artificial intelligence and machine learning algorithms are increasingly being used to analyze data collected from aeroponic systems and provide insights for improving plant growth. Automation technologies further reduce the need for manual intervention by controlling nutrient delivery,

lighting, and environmental conditions. These advancements have transformed aeroponics into a smart farming solution that aligns with the principles of precision agriculture [15], [16].

VIII. FUTURE PROSPECTS

The future of aeroponics appears promising, with increasing adoption in both developed and developing countries. Ongoing research is focused on reducing system costs, improving efficiency, and developing user-friendly technologies to make aeroponics more accessible. The integration of renewable energy sources such as solar power can further enhance the sustainability of aeroponic systems.

As global challenges such as climate change, population growth, and food insecurity continue to intensify, aeroponics offers a viable solution for sustainable food production. Its ability to produce high yields with minimal resource use makes it a key component of future agricultural systems. With continued innovation and investment, aeroponics is expected to play a significant role in transforming modern agriculture [17], [18].

IX. CONCLUSION

Aeroponics represents a groundbreaking advancement in agricultural technology, offering a sustainable and efficient alternative to traditional farming methods. By eliminating the need for soil and optimizing resource use, aeroponics addresses some of the most pressing challenges facing global agriculture. Although there are certain limitations related to cost and technical complexity, ongoing advancements in technology are expected to overcome these barriers. Overall, aeroponics has the potential to revolutionize food production systems and contribute significantly to global food security and environmental sustainability [19], [20].

REFERENCES

- [1] Savvas, D. (2021). Hydroponics and aeroponics. *Horticultural Reviews*.
- [2] Nichols, M. (2022). Soilless plant production systems. *Acta Horticulturae*.
- [3] Stoner, R. (2021). Aeroponics growing systems and applications. *Agricultural Engineering Journal*.
- [4] Barrett, J., Alexander, P., and Lee, S. (2023). Advances in aeroponic technologies. *Plant Science Journal*.
- [5] Singh, A., and Kumar, P. (2022). Automation in aeroponic farming systems. *Smart Agriculture Journal*.
- [6] Food and Agriculture Organization. (2021). Water-efficient farming systems. *FAO Publications*.
- [7] Sharma, S. (2023). Soilless agriculture benefits and challenges. *Agricultural Systems Journal*.
- [8] Patel, P. (2022). Aeroponics system design and components. *Journal of Farming Technology*.
- [9] Reddy, S. (2021). Controlled environment agriculture. *Agricultural Research Journal*.
- [10] Brown, T. (2022). Plant growth optimization in aeroponics. *Plant Science Reports*.
- [11] Khan, A. (2021). Challenges in modern farming systems. *Agricultural Reviews*.
- [12] Ali, M. (2022). Sustainable agriculture practices. *Environmental Agriculture Journal*.
- [13] National Aeronautics and Space Administration. (2021). Space farming technologies. *NASA Reports*.

- [14] Urban Farming Institute. (2023). Vertical farming innovations. UFI Publications.
- [15] Verma, K. (2022). Internet of Things in agriculture. Sensors Journal.
- [16] Mehta, A. (2024). Artificial intelligence in smart farming. Computers in Agriculture.
- [17] Gupta, R. (2023). Automation in agriculture systems. Engineering Review.
- [18] World Bank. (2022). Future of agriculture and food systems. World Bank Publications.
- [19] Das, N. (2023). Smart irrigation and aeroponics integration. Irrigation Science Journal.
- [20] Roy, B. (2022). Vertical farming technologies. Agricultural Engineering Today.
- [21] Zhao, L. (2023). Nutrient management systems. Plant Nutrition Journal.
- [22] Kim, H. (2024). Root physiology in aeroponics. Plant Biology Reports.
- [23] Thomas, G. (2021). Agriculture technology advancements. Tech Agriculture Journal.
- [24] Wang, C. (2024). Root aeration studies. Plant Science Advances.
- [25] Lopez, E. (2022). Greenhouse and aeroponic systems. Horticulture Science.
- [26] Jain, R. (2021). Modern irrigation systems. Water Management Journal.
- [27] Bose, A. (2024). Crop productivity enhancement. Agricultural Productivity Journal.
- [28] Iqbal, M. (2022). Water conservation techniques. Environmental Science Journal.
- [29] Chen, D. (2023). Plant growth enhancement methods. Botany Studies.
- [30] Patel, K. (2021). Urban agriculture systems. City Farming Journal.
- [31] Ahmed, F. (2024). Food security and farming innovations. Global Food Journal.
- [32] Park, J. (2023). Agricultural robotics integration. Robotics in Agriculture.
- [33] Nair, V. (2022). Climate-smart agriculture. Climate Agriculture Review.
- [34] Singh, L. (2021). Crop yield improvement strategies. Agronomy Journal.
- [35] Roy, A. (2024). Hydroponics versus aeroponics. Farming Systems Journal.
- [36] Zhang, M. (2023). Nutrient delivery systems. Plant Engineering Journal.
- [37] Das, R. (2022). Sustainable farming systems. Sustainability Journal.
- [38] Kumar, T. (2021). Agricultural innovations. Innovation in Agriculture.
- [39] Choudhary, S. (2023). Modern cultivation methods. Farming Advances.
- [40] Verma, N. (2024). Smart farming trends. Smart Agriculture Reports.
- [41] Joshi, A. (2022). Plant science research. Botanical Journal.
- [42] Rao, P. (2021). Agri-tech developments. Technology in Agriculture.
- [43] Singh, H. (2023). Future farming techniques. Agriculture Future Journal.
- [44] Paul, D. (2022). Controlled farming systems. Environmental Control Journal.
- [45] Kaur, S. (2024). Agriculture engineering innovations. Engineering Agriculture.
- [46] Mishra, R. (2023). Precision farming techniques. Precision Agriculture Journal.
- [47] Kapoor, B. (2022). Innovative agriculture systems. Modern Farming Journal.
- [48] Lee, J. (2023). Aeroponics innovations. Advanced Agriculture.
- [49] Brown, L. (2022). Sustainable crop production. Crop Science Journal.
- [50] Green, P. (2024). Future trends in agriculture. Global Agriculture Review.

Formulation of Pesticides Using Databases for Conservation of Beneficial Soil Fauna

Harjeet Kaur¹, Amanat Singh Sandhu², Parminder Kaur³, Lakhveer Kaur⁴

^{1,2,3,4}Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, IN.

¹androjeet06@gmail.com

Abstract

Data science is proving to be a promising interdisciplinary field for reaching remarkable research results. Tools of Machine learning and Deep Learning have been launched for predictive result extraction in significant number of fields. These results are made available through the judicious use of relevant databases. The data is collected in forms of unstructured or structured, processing is done in order to make them appropriate for models to work over it and make the effective predictions. This field can be well applied into conservation of beneficial soil fauna in agricultural practices for better soil health and crop yield. Data can be collected into databases and processed for effects of various chemicals on lives of organisms living in the soil, ecotoxicology and formulations can be made accordingly of pesticides keeping in view the safety of agriculturally beneficial organisms and thus, soil health. The study of two such peer-reviewed, curated databases has been done viz. ECOTOXicology Knowledgebase ECOTOX developed by United States Environmental Protection Agency, Great Lakes Toxicology Ecology Division and Edaphobase developed by Senckenberg Museum of Natural History Görlitz in Germany. The ECOTOX provides for ecologically significant toxicity tests of chemicals used in order to assess their risk for both terrestrial and aquatic species, whereas Edaphobase provides data on soil organisms and their distribution and habitat parameters of their occurrence sites.

Keywords

Toxicology database, Ecotoxicology, Data curation, Chemical Assessment, Soil biodiversity, Soil fauna, Agriculture, Machine Learning, Deep Learning, PostgreSQL.

Introduction

Pesticide is an umbrella term for various types of widely used chemicals to eliminate insect pests (insecticides), weeds (herbicides), fungal infections (fungicides), rodents (rodenticides), bacterial infections (bactericides) and nematodes (nematicides) etc. While pesticides can protect the crop for the season, but their use is proving to be detrimental for the beneficial soil fauna. In turn, this is decreasing the soil nutrient contents. Among the many examples we have, the plant beneficial bacteria in soil are being negatively affected by pesticide pollution for not alone their growth but also in loss of functional gene diversity for carbon and nitrogen cycling in essential nutrient cycles. Fluxapyroxad, a broad-spectrum pyrazole-carboxamide fungicide, works by inhibiting succinate dehydrogenase enzyme. Even at low dosage, it's long-term use is affecting earthworms (*Eisenia fetida*) by oxidative stress, digestive and nervous system working changes. Again, for the earthworms, the use of glyphosate (herbicide) along with urea increased the glyphosate residues in their gut causing intestinal tissue damage, decreased digestive enzyme activity, intensified gut microbiota dysbiosis etc. Considering earthworm as farmer's friend this is causing serious threat to their survival in the soil and thus maintaining a

healthy soil for increased crop yield. Significantly more number of pesticides like Dimethomorph, Fenpropidin, Tebuconazole, Terbutylazine etc. are targeting the non-target organisms in soil, deteriorating the soil health. We are presenting in this paper one of the possible solutions to prevent harmful targeting of friendly soil fauna by use of data science. The formulations of pesticides can be proposed through generative models of machine learning/ deep learning. The data collected for pesticides and their effects on the crop/plant, soil fauna and soil health, along with dosage, their chemical reactions possible among themselves etc. can prove to promote a soil beneficial pesticide manufacturing practice (Fig.1). Using the data collected, the Large Language Models (LLMs) or Natural Language Processing (NLPs) can be used to predict the possible safe pesticide formulations. The data can be unstructured or structured. The unstructured data does not have predefined format and can contain textual data (emails, text documents, social media posts, comments, call transcripts, mobile text messages etc.) or non-textual data (image files, video files, multimedia files, mobile activity, sensor data etc.). This unstructured data is required to be processed first, converting it into structured data in order to be evaluated by the models and so that the predictions can be made, efficiently. Large Language Models, Natural Language Processing, Optical Character Recognition etc. are some of such tools to convert unstructured data to structured one. The structured data is in predefined formats viz. tabular, excel spreadsheets or relational databases. This type of data can be productively used for our said purpose since it works well with machine learning to analyse and draw insights. The relational database is a collection of information in which the data is set in predefined relationships stored in rows and columns. Two such databases – ECOTOX [1] and Edaphobase [2] can be used to work on the solutions for formulation of ‘safe’ pesticides. ECOTOX [1] has been developed by United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (<https://www.epa.gov/>). It provides public access to comprehensive information on adverse effects of chemical stressors to relevant terrestrial and aquatic species. It includes curated data collected from 55,662 scientific literatures and over 1 million test records accounting for 14,055 terrestrial and aquatic species and 13,096 chemicals, as of 07 April 2026 and is being updated regularly with new data. Edaphobase [2] is also a public access biodiversity database developed by Senckenberg Museum of Natural History Görlitz, Germany. It combines data on taxonomy, zoogeography and ecology of soil organisms in extensive manner. Currently, the data available with it pertains to centipedes (Chilopoda), millipedes (Diplopoda), springtails (Collembola), potworms (Enchytraeidae), earthworms (Lumbricidae), nematodes (Nematoda), gamasine and oribatid mites (Gamasina and Orbatida) and woodlice (Isopoda) from Germany and its neighbouring countries. Its data is regularly uploaded to Global Biodiversity Information Facility (GBIF) [41].

Methodology

Data Sources

ECOTOX [1]: Relevant toxicity studies for chemicals of interest are identified through searches and peer-reviewed literature. Reference screening includes title and abstract review followed by full text review. ECOTOX integrates AQUIRE (Aquatic life), PHYTOTOX (Terrestrial plants), TERRETOX (Terrestrial wildlife) databases which were previously working independently.

Edaphobase [2]: The warehouse is open and free for submission of soil biodiversity data by any data provider. The data submission is done through ‘Edaphobase Upload Software’ [3] which maps and harmonizes it with the Edaphobase [2] data warehouse, thus, eliminating the need to restructure data during submission.

Structured data

ECOTOX [1]: For studies to meet ECOTOX inclusion criteria, their data is extracted according to some restrictions relevant to chemical, species, effect, concentration or dosage, exposure duration, publication. Chemical criteria requirements include single chemical relevant to environmental exposure with verifiable chemical abstract services number. Mixtures like petroleum fuels, effluents; Air pollution; Plastics and Microplastics, Clay etc.; Biological toxicants are excluded. Species criteria requirements include ecologically relevant species; wild species is prioritized with verifiable taxonomic information. This excludes human, monkey etc. The effect or response includes biological effect on the test species and adverse effects over it as priority. Concentration or Dose, concurrent environmental chemical concentration/ dose reported as concentration, dose or application rate. For sedimentation studies, water concentration is required to be reported. The concentration or dose excludes inhalation studies, sediment only entries, lead shot or log values. Exposure duration includes exposure concurrent with a biological effect. The publication of the data should be primary data sourced mainly in English as language and excludes reviews, full text foreign language or abstract only formats.

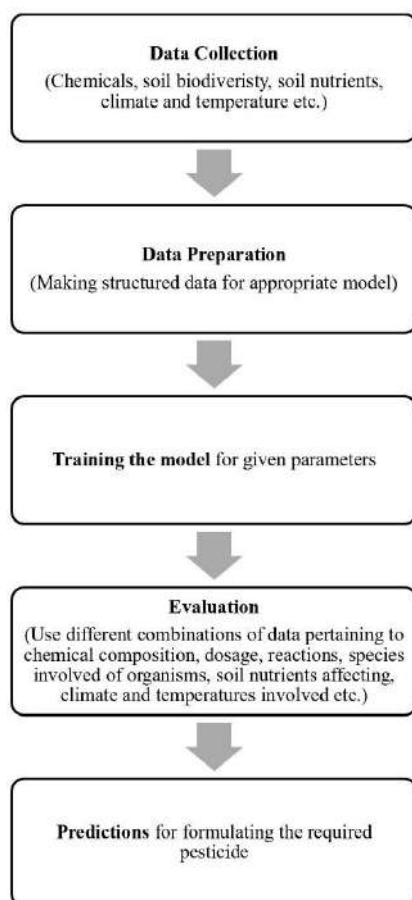


Fig. 1: Conceptual diagram for application of Data Science in formulating pesticides.

Edaphobase [2]: Data is to be submitted as individual data set and metadata valid for the entire data set (Fig.2). Individual data set include source, site, methods, taxon and observational data. The source field includes type (literature, thesis, raw data, project, museum collection etc.), parent source (journal, book etc.), dataset title, data owner possessing ownership rights, data provider who uploaded data to Edaphobase [2], higher taxonomic classification of organism, multiple keywords related to data set, an abstract or short description of the data set, its processing status, further edits, data copyright and licensing, uploading to other databases. It includes information of data owners, providers, authors etc. Further, under same source field, sub-field of project is also included for providing information on it and its funding details. If data is originating from some type of collections, say, museum collection, information is required for its acquisition, collection locality etc. Data originating from literature is to be provided with journal or book name, publication year, volume, chapter, page, edition, digital object identified, ISBN, ISSN, publisher details etc. Online data source must be provided with name of the database, its URL and access date. The field site includes parameters for spatial information of sampling or study site, political boundaries, microhabitat, site history, protection category, anthropogenic influence, climate, vegetation, canopy, herbs, shrubs, moss, biocrust, crops etc. With view of being more accurate at collecting data, methods used are also included in data fields to be submitted as scope, methodology used, taxon identification and site description. Further, under next data field, Taxon category is included encompassing taxon name, rank, author, description year, parentheses, name qualifier, synonym, valid taxon, literature first described, taxon related literature. Also, observation data is included. Metadata fields are also required to be submitted during submission of data fields, which enhances data reuse and its filtration for appropriate analyses. Three categories of data are defined under metadata fields viz. the data itself, data describing the study or sites and the data describing the sampling methods.

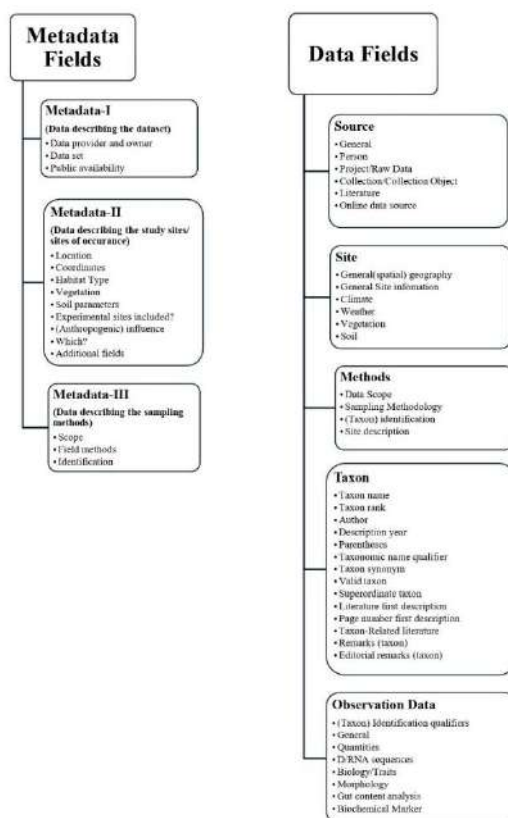


Fig. 2: Metadata & Data Fields for Edaphobase [2] data submission.

Data Model

ECOTOX [1]: A unify system, is the platform where chemical, reference, toxicity tests and results are entered and managed. It maintains data traceability to original source, enables quality assurance and checks, manages backlog and use ETL (Extract, Transform and Load) processing. ETL combines data from multiple sources into a large, central data warehouse. It prepares data for use in storage, analytics and machine learning. The current system is browser-based user-interface which uses ColdFusion [4] system. It is integrated with OLTP (Online Transactional Processing) which enables real time execution of large numbers of database transactions. Also, the entire data available with ECOTOX [1] can be downloaded as ASCII file directly from its official website. The data can be further processed by R-language for in-depth custom-made analysis, using NLP/LLM without pre-defined filters. A software package for reproducible data extractions from the ECOTOX [1] database is also available. It formalises the data retrieval from the database in R-scripting language called ECOTOXr [6] [35] [36]. It follows the FAIR principles of scientific data i.e. Findability, Accessibility, Interoperability and Reusability. Since in online user interface, users can't control the data they want to access or don't for their purposes, so, this can be achieved by using a scripting language as used in it. The source of it is maintained with GitHub [37].

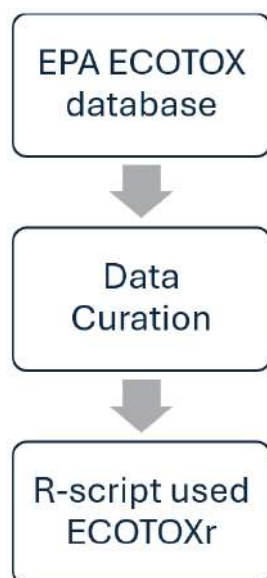


Fig. 3: Simple overview of ECOTOXr [6] [35] [36]

GitHub [37] is an open-source web interface. It allows real-time collaborations to build and edit content with teamwork i.e. it allows multiple developers to work on single project in real time. It also allows building codes and track changes for innovative projects. The ECOTOX [1] provides the data in separate tables with instructions regarding their relationship to each other in a database. SQLite [39] database engine is required to be used. It can analyse large datasets. Raw data can be in form of CSV files, further the data can be processed to generate summary reports or using R- language or Python [40]. The case of using R – language is with ECOTOXr [6] [35] [36].

Edaphobase [2]: The database itself is based on PostgreSQL, which is an advanced, open-source relational database and is used as primary data source or warehouse for mobile or web-based or analytical applications. PostgreSQL also have OLTP system and helps scaling faster to very large volume. The core database of Edaphobase [2] is stored at internal servers to prevent external manipulation. Edaphobase Data-Query Portal [2] is available for analysis of Edaphobase [2] datasets where 39365 sampling sites are available as of 09 April 2026 and analysis can be done through categorization of data according to site or taxon. The data of Edaphobase is uploaded regularly to GBIF [41]. The Global Biodiversity Information Facility is an international network and data infrastructure, aimed at providing open access data about life on earth. It has 1,21561 datasets as of 10 April 2026. Edaphostat [2] [43] is a web-based application for analysis of soil organisms from the data stored in Edaphobase [2] data warehouse and is part of it. Edaphostat [2] [43] helps with automated analysis and visualization of the data, allowing maximum flexibility (Fig.4). It is made for species analysis taking into account the environmental parameters. This tool is also written in R-language.

Results/Discussion

ECOTOX [1] presents a great representation of published research on ecotoxicology of chemicals used for varied purposes. It shows trend in changing species distribution over time due to those chemicals being used and measures its effects. It includes data pertaining to not alone pesticides but also metals, organometals, major ions, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons,

polychlorinated biphenyls, pharmaceuticals etc. Thus, these chemicals can also be studied for soil fauna when disposed off in soil



Fig. 4: Data Flow in Edaphostat [2] [43]

through the database. The quality assurance for the data is done through literature acquisition and cataloguing, chemical and species verification, literature review, data entry and retrieval. The literature is abstracted by trained document data curators with data coordinators. The data element for each test is grouped into chemical, organism, exposure conditions and effect endpoints. This database can be very judiciously used for making formulations of pesticides so that beneficial soil fauna can be used. Also, for aquaculture we can use this database i.e. it can effectively help with multi-dimensional productive agricultural practices.

Edaphobase [2] is a dynamic effective data warehouse, which stores data sets regarding occurrence of soil organisms, spatial and temporal distribution coupled with habitat parameters. The open-access query portal helps with user friendly data set analysis which can be downloaded. The data infrastructure provided helps in understanding soil organisms linking their niche and other environmental factors. Data fields are hierarchically organised making it a more sorted to use database. A vast list of data fields and meta data fields ensures quality and reuse of the content uploaded through their wizard online. An international review board performs quality check before final upload of data to database. The query portal helps any user to access the database. The data harmonization and integration of large data sets is a challenge, but it has been done in an appreciable manner. Overall, the database provides useful information for all interested in soil organism conservation.

Conclusions

Both the databases, ECOTOX [1] and Edaphobase [2] provide high quality, verified, peer-reviewed data helpful for making pesticides, friendly to beneficial soil fauna and thus, preventing degradation of soil and improving crop yield. But this method of formulating

pesticides through data mining is required to be promoted and made commercially more aware to get the best possible gains. If an effective usage is done of these databases, globally we can preserve beneficial soil fauna, prevent disturbances in nutrient cycling, ecosystem etc. along with providing pesticides which can be labelled as ‘safe to soil’ pesticides. Earlier, without use of data science tools, it was impossible to integrate such large volumes of information so that the safety of soil organisms can be accounted effectively, but now since we are able to gather and analyse information regarding the chemicals and their effects on soil organisms at large scale in easy to understand user-interfaces or manual data modelling without online pre-defined filters, we can move ahead on the way of formulating beneficial soil fauna safe pesticides.

Acknowledgement

We highly appreciate the efforts of U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Center for Computational Toxicology and Exposure’s (CCTE’s) Great Lakes Toxicology Ecology Division (GLTED) for creating and maintaining highly useful public access database ECOTOX [1]. In the same way, we highly appreciate Senckenberg Museum of Natural History Görlitz in Germany for developing Edaphobase [2]. We also regard all the people involved in the above as well as people of data science for making production decisions easier and more effective in any field we pick to work on. It is also worth mentioning the efforts of all data providers that we are able to access such useful information through these databases. There was no funding used or received from any source for this project of us. The information used or mentioned in this paper is either open source or is free access available on internet from legitimate sources as part of purchasable content.

References

- [1] “ECOTOX | Home,” *Epa.gov*, 2019. <https://cfpub.epa.gov/ecotox/>
- [2] “Edaphobase Data-Query Portal,” *Edaphobase.org*, 2026. <https://portal.edaphobase.org/>
- [3] “Edaphobase Upload Software.exe,” *EUDaphobase*, 2026. <https://team.eudaphobase.eu/index.php/s/eD5zTwPapx3EpDJ?openfile=true>
- [4] “Adobe ColdFusion Family,” *Adobe.com*, 2025. <https://www.adobe.com/in/products/coldfusion-family.html>
- [5] D. J. Russell *et al.*, “Corrigendum to ‘Edaphobase 2.0: Advanced international data warehouse for collating and using soil biodiversity datasets’ [Applied Soil Ecology 204 (2024) 105710],” *Applied Soil Ecology*, vol. 217, p. 106603, Jan. 2026, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apsoil.2025.106603>.
- [6] P. de Vries, “ECOTOXr: An R package for reproducible and transparent retrieval of data from EPA’s ECOTOX database,” *Chemosphere*, vol. 364, p. 143078, Sep. 2024, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chemosphere.2024.143078>.
- [7] Christoph Schür, L. Gasser, F. Perez-Cruz, K. Schirmer, and M. Baity-Jesi, “A benchmark dataset for machine learning in ecotoxicology,” *Scientific Data*, vol. 10, no. 1, Oct. 2023, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41597-023-02612-2>.
- [8] J. Köninger *et al.*, “Pesticide residues alter taxonomic and functional biodiversity in soils,” *Nature*, Jan. 2026, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-025-09991-z>.
- [9] C. Pelosi, S. Barot, Y. Capowiez, M. Hedde, and F. Vandenbulcke, “Pesticides and earthworms. A review,” *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*, vol. 34, no. 1, pp. 199–228, May 2013, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13593-013-0151-z>.

- [10] “Database of insecticides and their effect on natural enemies | AHDB,” *Ahdb.org.uk*, 2020. <https://ahdb.org.uk/knowledge-library/database-of-insecticides-and-their-effect-on-natural-enemies>
- [11] S. Fang, Y. Zhang, X. You, P. Sun, J. Qiu, and F. Kong, “Lethal Toxicity and Sublethal Metabolic Interference Effects of Sulfoxaflor on the Earthworm (*Eisenia fetida*),” *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, vol. 66, no. 45, pp. 11902–11908, Oct. 2018, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jafc.8b04633>.
- [12] Léa Beaumelle *et al.*, “Pesticide effects on soil fauna communities—A meta-analysis,” *Pesticide effects on soil fauna communities—A meta-analysis*, vol. 60, no. 7, Jun. 2023, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1111/1365-2664.14437>.
- [13] A. El-Shabasy, H. Ahmad Jan, and A. Ali Mustafa, “Different Categorizations of Synthetic Pesticides and Their Effects on Soil,” *International Journal of Applied Biology and Pharmaceutical Technology*, vol. 16, no. 3, 2025, doi: <https://doi.org/10.26502/ijabpt.202136>.
- [14] D. Shan *et al.*, “Insights into the chronic toxicity and mechanisms of fluorine-containing pesticides on earthworms,” *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology*, vol. 119, p. 104811, Aug. 2025, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.etap.2025.104811>.
- [15] P. Li *et al.*, “Urea Co-exposure Increases Glyphosate Toxicity in Earthworms: Evidence from Species with Distinct Sensitivities,” *Environmental Science & Technology*, vol. 59, no. 45, pp. 24562–24575, Oct. 2025, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.est.5c10842>.
- [16] L. Zhang *et al.*, “Fluxapyroxad induced toxicity of earthworms: Insights from multi-level experiments and molecular simulation studies,” *Journal of hazardous materials*, vol. 480, p. 135911, May 2024, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhazmat.2024.135911>.
- [17] Y. Wang, B. Chen, Y. Zhu, and T. Lu, “Global variation in plant-beneficial bacteria in soil under pesticide stress,” *Nature Communications*, vol. 16, no. 1, pp. 10685–10685, Nov. 2025, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-025-65719-7>.
- [18] B. Ni *et al.*, “Increasing pesticide diversity impairs soil microbial functions,” *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol. 122, no. 2, Jan. 2025, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2419917122>.
- [19] S. Jaeger, S. Fulle, and S. Turk, “Mol2vec: Unsupervised Machine Learning Approach with Chemical Intuition,” *Journal of Chemical Information and Modeling*, vol. 58, no. 1, pp. 27–35, Jan. 2018, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jcim.7b00616>.
- [20] R. Song *et al.*, “Accelerating the pace of ecotoxicological assessment using artificial intelligence,” *AMBIO*, vol. 51, no. 3, pp. 598–610, Aug. 2021, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13280-021-01598-8>.
- [21] C. T. A. Moermond, R. Kase, M. Korkaric, and M. Ågerstrand, “CRED: Criteria for reporting and evaluating ecotoxicity data,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, vol. 35, no. 5, pp. 1297–1309, Mar. 2016, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1002/etc.3259>.
- [22] A. Jonker and A. Gomstyn, “Structured vs. unstructured data: What’s the difference? | IBM,” *www.ibm.com*, Feb. 07, 2025. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/structured-vs-unstructured-data>
- [23] TensorFlow, “TensorFlow,” *TensorFlow*, 2019. <https://www.tensorflow.org/>
- [24] IBM, “Python vs. R: What’s the Difference? | IBM,” *Ibm.com*, Aug. 21, 2024. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/python-vs-r>

- [25] IBM, “Relational Databases,” *Ibm.com*, Oct. 20, 2021. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/relational-databases>
- [26] Google Cloud, “What Is a Relational Database,” *Google Cloud*, 2024. <https://cloud.google.com/learn/what-is-a-relational-database>
- [27] “EPA Ecotoxicology Knowledgebase (ECOTOX),” *National Toxicology Program*, Nov. 27, 2024. <https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/iccvamreport/2023/technology/data-resources/01-epa-ecotox>
- [28] U. Burkhardt *et al.*, “The Edaphobase project of GBIF-Germany—A new online soil-zoological data warehouse,” vol. 83, pp. 3–12, Nov. 2014, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apsoil.2014.03.021>.
- [29] J. H. Olker *et al.*, “The ECOTOXicology Knowledgebase: A Curated Database of Ecologically Relevant Toxicity Tests to Support Environmental Research and Risk Assessment,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, vol. 41, no. 6, pp. 1520–1539, Apr. 2022, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1002/etc.5324>.
- [30] IBM, “Metadata,” *Ibm.com*, Oct. 21, 2024. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/metadata> (accessed Nov. 05, 2024).
- [31] The PostgreSQL Global Development Group, “PostgreSQL: The world’s most advanced open-source database,” *Postgresql.org*, 2019. <https://www.postgresql.org/>
- [32] Z. Zhou, C. Wang, and Y. Luo, “Meta-analysis of the impacts of global change factors on soil microbial diversity and functionality,” *Nature Communications*, vol. 11, no. 1, Jun. 2020, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-020-16881-7>.
- [33] K. S. Ramirez *et al.*, “Toward a global platform for linking soil biodiversity data,” *Frontiers in Ecology and Evolution*, vol. 3, Jul. 2015, doi: <https://doi.org/10.3389/fevo.2015.00091>.
- [34] E. Szöcs, T. Stirling, E. R. Scott, A. Scharmüller, and R. B. Schäfer, “webchem: An R Package to Retrieve Chemical Information from the Web,” *Journal of Statistical Software*, vol. 93, no. 13, 2020, doi: <https://doi.org/10.18637/jss.v093.i13>.
- [35] pepijn-devries, “GitHub - pepijn-devries/ECOTOXr: R package that creates a local SQLite built (and allows querying) of the US EPA ECOTOX database.,” *GitHub*, 2025. <https://github.com/pepijn-devries/ECOTOXr>
- [36] Pepijn de Vries, “Download and Extract Data from US EPA’s ECOTOX Database [R package ECOTOXr version 1.2.4],” *R-project.org*, Sep. 2025, doi: <https://cran.rproject.org/package=ECOTOXr>.
- [37] GitHub, “GitHub,” *GitHub*, 2025. <https://github.com/>
- [38] “An introduction to GitHub,” *Digital.gov*, Jun. 18, 2020. <https://digital.gov/resources/an-introduction-github>
- [39] “SQLite Home Page,” *Sqlite.org*, 2019. <https://sqlite.org/>
- [40] PYTHON, “Python,” *Python.org*, 2025. <https://www.python.org/>
- [41] Global Biodiversity Information Facility, “GBIF,” *Gbif.org*, 2024. <https://www.gbif.org/>
- [42] “Using GBIF-mediated data for Sustainable Development and Open Science in Asia,” *Gbif.org*, 2023. <https://www.gbif.org/article/TbnYdzigUnP08rQbcwh56/using-gbif-mediated-data-for-sustainable-development-and-open-science-in-asia>

- [43] J. Hausen *et al.*, “Edaphostat: interactive ecological analysis of soil organism occurrences and preferences from the Edaphobase data warehouse,” *Database*, vol. 2017, Jan. 2017, doi: <https://doi.org/10.1093/database/bax080>.
- [44] IBM, “Python vs. R: What’s the Difference? | IBM,” *Ibm.com*, Aug. 21, 2024. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/python-vs-r>
- [45] J. Holdsworth, “Data mining,” *Ibm.com*, Jun. 28, 2024. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/data-mining?>
- [46] IBM, “Process mapping,” *Ibm.com*, Sep. 22, 2021. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/process-mapping>
- [47] “What is Data Modeling? | Microsoft Power BI,” *Microsoft.com*, 2026. <https://www.microsoft.com/en-in/power-platform/products/power-bi/topics/data-modeling/what-is-data-modeling>.

A REVIEW ON PLANT WITHOUT SOIL – HYDROPONICS

Khushjinder kaur¹

Gaganpreet kaur¹

School¹ of Agriculture Science and Engineering Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab
Technical University ,Bathinda 151005.

Email : khusijinderkaur@gmail.com

Abstract

Hydroponics, a modern method of cultivating plants without soil, has gained significant attention in recent years due to increasing concerns about food security, water scarcity, and declining agricultural land. This system utilizes nutrient-rich water solutions to provide essential minerals directly to plant roots, thereby enhancing growth efficiency and productivity. The present review explores the concept, principles, types, advantages, limitations, applications, and future prospects of hydroponic farming. It also highlights the integration of advanced technologies such as Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), and automation in optimizing hydroponic systems. The findings indicate that hydroponics is a sustainable and efficient agricultural technique capable of addressing many global agricultural challenges. However, economic and technical constraints still limit its widespread adoption. With continued innovation and support, hydroponics has the potential to revolutionize modern agriculture and contribute to sustainable food production systems.

Keywords

Hydroponics, Soilless Agriculture, Nutrient Solution, Controlled Environment Agriculture, Sustainable Farming, Water Efficiency, Vertical Farming, Smart Agriculture,

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture has been the backbone of human civilization for thousands of years, traditionally relying on soil as the primary medium for plant growth. However, rapid population growth, urbanization, climate change, and environmental degradation have placed immense pressure on conventional farming systems. The availability of fertile land is decreasing, while the demand for food continues to rise. In this context, hydroponics has emerged as an innovative and sustainable alternative to traditional soil-based agriculture. Hydroponics refers to the cultivation of plants in a nutrient-enriched aqueous solution without the use of soil. This method allows plants to grow in controlled environments where all essential nutrients are directly supplied to the roots, eliminating the dependence on soil for nutrient uptake.

The concept of hydroponics is not entirely new, as early forms of soilless cultivation were practiced in ancient civilizations such as the Hanging Gardens of Babylon. However, modern hydroponics has evolved significantly with advancements in science and technology. Researchers and farmers are increasingly adopting hydroponic systems due to their ability to produce high yields in limited

space while using fewer resources. The technique is particularly beneficial in urban areas, arid regions, and places with poor soil quality. Furthermore, hydroponics supports year-round crop production, making it a reliable solution for ensuring food security in changing environmental conditions.

II. PRINCIPLES OF HYDROPONICS

The fundamental principle of hydroponics is that plants do not require soil for growth but instead need water, nutrients, oxygen, and physical support. In natural soil systems, nutrients are dissolved in water and absorbed by plant roots. Hydroponics replicates this process by delivering a carefully balanced nutrient solution directly to the roots. This nutrient solution contains essential macronutrients such as nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium, as well as micronutrients like iron, zinc, and manganese, which are crucial for plant growth and development.

In hydroponic systems, the growing medium may or may not be used. When used, inert materials such as coco coir, perlite, vermiculite, or rockwool provide physical support to the plants while allowing roots to access the nutrient solution. Oxygen supply is another critical factor, as roots require adequate aeration for proper respiration. This is often achieved through air pumps or by designing systems that allow roots to be exposed to air periodically. Additionally, environmental factors such as light, temperature, humidity, and pH levels are carefully controlled to create optimal conditions for plant growth. The precise control over these variables enables hydroponic systems to achieve higher efficiency and productivity compared to traditional farming methods.

III. TYPES OF HYDROPONIC SYSTEMS

Hydroponic systems can be classified into several types based on the method of nutrient delivery and plant support. One of the most widely used systems is the Nutrient Film Technique (NFT), in which a thin layer of nutrient solution continuously flows over the roots of plants. This ensures a constant supply of nutrients and oxygen, promoting rapid growth. Another common system is Deep Water Culture (DWC), where plant roots are submerged in a nutrient solution that is continuously aerated using air pumps. This method is simple and highly effective for growing leafy vegetables.

The drip system is another popular hydroponic technique, especially in commercial farming. In this system, nutrient solution is delivered directly to the base of each plant through a network of tubes and emitters. This allows precise control over nutrient supply and reduces wastage. The wick system, on the other hand, is a passive method that uses capillary action to draw nutrient solution from a reservoir to the plant roots. Although simple and inexpensive, it is less efficient for large-scale production. Aeroponics represents an advanced form of hydroponics in which plant roots are suspended in air and periodically sprayed with a fine mist of nutrient solution. This method provides maximum oxygen exposure to the roots, resulting in faster growth and higher yields. Similarly, the ebb and flow system, also known as flood and drain, involves periodically flooding the growing medium with nutrient solution and then draining it back into a reservoir. Each of these systems has its own advantages and limitations, and the choice depends on factors such as crop type, scale of production, and available resources.

IV. ADVANTAGES OF HYDROPONICS

Hydroponics offers numerous advantages over conventional soil-based agriculture, making it an attractive option for modern farming. One of the most significant benefits is water efficiency. Hydroponic systems use significantly less water compared to traditional farming because the nutrient solution is recirculated and reused. This makes hydroponics particularly suitable for regions facing water scarcity.

Another major advantage is higher crop yield. Since plants receive optimal nutrients and environmental conditions, they grow faster and produce more biomass. Hydroponics also allows for vertical farming, enabling the cultivation of crops in limited spaces such as urban buildings and rooftops. This is especially important in densely populated areas where land availability is limited.

Hydroponic systems also reduce the risk of soil-borne diseases and pests, as there is no soil involved. This minimizes the need for chemical pesticides and herbicides, resulting in cleaner and safer produce. Additionally, hydroponics enables year-round cultivation, independent of seasonal variations. This ensures a consistent supply of fresh vegetables and fruits throughout the year. The quality of produce is often superior, with better taste, texture, and nutritional value due to precise nutrient management.

V. LIMITATIONS OF HYDROPONICS

Despite its numerous benefits, hydroponics also faces several challenges that limit its widespread adoption. One of the primary limitations is the high initial cost of setting up hydroponic systems. Equipment such as pumps, sensors, grow lights, and climate control systems can be expensive, making it difficult for small-scale farmers to adopt this technology.

Another challenge is the requirement for technical knowledge and expertise. Hydroponic systems require careful monitoring and management of nutrient levels, pH, and environmental conditions. Any imbalance can negatively affect plant growth and yield. Additionally, hydroponic systems are highly dependent on electricity for operation. Power outages or system failures can lead to rapid crop loss, as plants rely entirely on the controlled environment.

Furthermore, not all crops are suitable for hydroponic cultivation. While leafy greens, herbs, and some fruits grow well in hydroponic systems, staple crops such as wheat and rice are less commonly grown using this method. These limitations highlight the need for further research and innovation to make hydroponics more accessible and efficient.

VI. APPLICATIONS OF HYDROPONICS

Hydroponics has a wide range of applications in modern agriculture and beyond. In urban areas, it is used for rooftop gardening and vertical farming, allowing residents to grow fresh produce in limited spaces. Commercial greenhouse operations also utilize hydroponic systems to achieve high productivity and quality.

Hydroponics plays a significant role in research and education, as it provides a controlled environment for studying plant growth and nutrient interactions. Additionally, space agencies such as NASA have explored hydroponics for growing food in space missions, where soil is not available. The technology is also being used in disaster-prone areas and regions with poor soil conditions to ensure food security.

VII. ROLE OF TECHNOLOGY IN HYDROPONICS

The integration of advanced technologies has significantly enhanced the efficiency and effectiveness of hydroponic systems. The Internet of Things (IoT) enables real-time monitoring of environmental parameters such as temperature, humidity, pH, and nutrient levels. Sensors and automated systems ensure optimal conditions for plant growth, reducing the need for manual intervention.

Artificial intelligence (AI) is increasingly being used to analyze data and optimize hydroponic operations. AI algorithms can predict plant growth patterns, detect diseases, and recommend adjustments to nutrient supply and environmental conditions. Automation technologies further improve efficiency by controlling irrigation, lighting, and climate systems.

The use of energy-efficient LED lighting has also revolutionized indoor hydroponic farming. LEDs provide the specific wavelengths of light required for photosynthesis, enhancing plant growth while reducing energy consumption. These technological advancements are making hydroponics more sustainable and scalable.

VIII. FUTURE PROSPECTS

The future of hydroponics appears promising, as it addresses many of the challenges faced by conventional agriculture. With increasing global population and limited natural resources, the demand for efficient and sustainable farming methods is growing. Hydroponics, combined with vertical farming and renewable energy, has the potential to transform food production systems.

Governments and organizations are increasingly supporting hydroponic farming through policies, funding, and research initiatives. As technology continues to advance, the cost of hydroponic systems is expected to decrease, making them more accessible to farmers worldwide. The integration of smart technologies will further enhance productivity and sustainability, paving the way for a new era of agriculture.

IX. CONCLUSION

Hydroponics represents a significant advancement in agricultural practices by offering a soil-free method of plant cultivation that is efficient, sustainable, and adaptable to various environments. Although challenges such as high costs and technical complexity exist, the benefits of hydroponics far outweigh its limitations. With continued research, innovation, and support, hydroponics has the potential to play a crucial role in ensuring global food security and promoting sustainable agriculture.

REFERENCES

1. Resh, Howard M. (2022). *Hydroponic food production: A definitive guidebook for advanced growers* (8th ed.). CRC Press.
2. Savvas, Dimitrios, Gianquinto, Giorgio, Tuzel, Yusuf, & Gruda, Nadine. (2023). Soilless culture systems: Recent advances and future prospects. *Agronomy*, 13(2), 456–472.
3. Jones, J. Benton. (2021). *Hydroponics: A practical guide for the soilless grower* (3rd ed.). CRC Press.
4. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2023). *Soilless culture and hydroponics for sustainable agriculture*. FAO.

5. World Bank Group. (2023). *Water in agriculture: Innovations for sustainability*. World Bank Publications.
6. United Nations Department of Economic and Social Affairs. (2024). *World population prospects 2024*. United Nations.
7. Jensen, Merle H., & Collins, William L. (2021). Hydroponic vegetable production trends. *HortTechnology*, 31(4), 555–562.
8. Despommier, Dickson D. (2023). *The vertical farm: Feeding the world in the 21st century* (Updated ed.). Picador.
9. National Aeronautics and Space Administration. (2022). *Advanced plant growth systems for space missions*. NASA.
10. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2022). *Greenhouse crop production and hydroponics*. FAO.
11. Indian Council of Agricultural Research. (2023). *Hydroponic farming systems in India: Advances and opportunities*. ICAR.
12. United States Department of Agriculture. (2022). *Controlled environment agriculture and hydroponics*. USDA.
13. Smith, Peter F., & Adams, Jonathan R. (2022). Nutrient management in hydroponic systems. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 45(8), 1201–1215.
14. Kumar, Rajesh, Singh, Pradeep, & Yadav, Suresh. (2021). Disease management strategies in hydroponic cultivation. *Plant Pathology Journal*, 20(3), 210–220.
15. Sharma, Kavita, Verma, Sandeep, & Gupta, Neha. (2022). Growing media and root zone management in hydroponics. *Journal of Horticultural Science*, 17(2), 145–154.
16. Singh, Amanpreet, Kaur, Gurpreet, & Brar, Harpreet. (2023). Root aeration and oxygen management in hydroponics. *Agricultural Engineering International*, 25(1), 88–96.
17. Verma, Sandeep, Gupta, Rakesh, & Mehta, Rohit. (2024). Environmental control systems in indoor farming. *Sustainable Agriculture Reviews*, 48, 77–95.
18. Patel, Suresh, Mehta, Rohit, & Shah, Deepak. (2021). Nutrient film technique systems for commercial production. *Journal of Agriculture and Food Systems*, 10(1), 40–49.
19. Stoner, Richard J., & Clawson, James M. (2022). Advances in deep water culture and aeroponics. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1345, 233–240.
20. Singh, Ajay, Kumar, Ramesh, & Sharma, Pankaj. (2021). Drip hydroponic irrigation systems. *Agricultural Water Management*, 250, 106–115.
21. Gupta, Neha, Sharma, Kavita, & Verma, Sandeep. (2020). Wick system efficiency in small-scale hydroponics. *Plant Science Today*, 7(1), 34–40.
22. National Aeronautics and Space Administration. (2023). *Aeroponic crop production systems*. NASA.
23. Mehta, Rohit, Patel, Suresh, & Shah, Deepak. (2022). Ebb and flow hydroponic techniques. *International Journal of Agricultural Technology*, 18(2), 150–160.
24. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2023). *Water efficiency in modern agriculture*. FAO.

25. Lee, Sung Ho, Kim, Jae Min, & Park, Hyun Soo. (2021). Yield performance of hydroponic crops. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 276, 109–118.
26. Kim, Hyun Jin, Lee, Sung Ho, & Park, Ji Won. (2022). Nutritional quality of hydroponic vegetables. *Food Chemistry*, 374, 131–140.
27. Yadav, Prakash, Singh, Deepak, & Kumar, Rakesh. (2021). Pest control in soilless systems. *Crop Protection*, 145, 105–112.
28. Gupta, Anil, Sharma, Rajesh, & Jain, Vivek. (2022). Economic feasibility of hydroponic farming. *Agricultural Economics*, 53(3), 400–410.
29. Ali, Mohammad, Khan, Salman, & Hussain, Imran. (2021). Technical challenges in hydroponics. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 320, 128–135.
30. Singh, Prabhdeep, Kaur, Gurleen, & Brar, Harjit. (2023). Energy efficiency in hydroponic systems. *Renewable Energy in Agriculture*, 12(2), 90–100.
31. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2024). *Crop suitability in hydroponics*. FAO.
32. Jain, Vivek, Gupta, Anil, & Sharma, Rajesh. (2024). Future research trends in hydroponic agriculture. *Agricultural Systems*, 210, 103–115.
33. United Nations. (2023). *Urban agriculture and sustainability*. United Nations Publications.
34. Indian Council of Agricultural Research. (2024). *Soilless farming innovations in India*. ICAR.
35. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2023). *Commercial hydroponics and global market trends*. FAO.
36. National Aeronautics and Space Administration. (2022). *Hydroponics for space exploration*. NASA.
37. Singh, Amanpreet, Kumar, Ramesh, & Sharma, Pankaj. (2022). IoT-based smart hydroponic systems. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 195, 106–115.
38. Patel, Bhavesh, Mehta, Rohit, & Shah, Deepak. (2023). Artificial intelligence in precision agriculture. *Artificial Intelligence in Agriculture*, 7, 45–55.
39. Mehta, Rohit, Patel, Suresh, & Shah, Deepak. (2021). Automation in hydroponic farming systems. *Journal of Agricultural Informatics*, 12(1), 25–35.
40. Signify Holding (Philips Lighting). (2023). *LED lighting solutions for indoor farming*. Philips.
41. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2024). *Future of agriculture and hydroponics*. FAO.
42. World Economic Forum. (2023). *Sustainable food systems and agriculture*. WEF.
43. United Nations Development Programme. (2024). *Policy frameworks for sustainable agriculture*. UNDP.
44. Kumar, Suresh, Yadav, Prakash, & Singh, Deepak. (2022). Cost reduction in hydroponic systems. *Agricultural Systems*, 198, 103–110.
45. Kaur, Paramjit, Singh, Gurpreet, & Brar, Harpreet. (2023). Yield evaluation of hydroponic crops. *Journal of Crop Improvement*, 37(4), 500–510.

46. World Bank Group. (2024). *Food security and sustainable agriculture*. World Bank Publications.
47. Savvas, Dimitrios, Ntatsi, Georgia, & Gruda, Nadine. (2021). Hydroponic systems in modern agriculture. *Horticulturae*, 7(8), 220–235.
48. Gruda, Nadine, Bisbis, Maria, & Tanny, Josef. (2022). Impacts of climate change on greenhouse crops. *European Journal of Agronomy*, 130, 126–140.
49. Touliatos, Dionysios, Dodd, Ian C., & McAinsh, Martin. (2023). Vertical farming and hydroponics integration. *Plants*, 12(5), 900–915.
- 50.** Benke, Kurt, & Tomkins, Bruce. (2022). Future food production systems: Hydroponics and vertical farming. *Sustainability*, 14(3), 1500–1515.

Role of Artificial Intelligence in modern agriculture: Applications, Challenges and future Perspectives

Mandeep Kaur , Shaina Malhotra, Wineet Chawla, Lakshya

School of agriculture sciences and engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, India- 151001

Abstract

Artificial Intelligence is revolutionizing in every field of study including modern agriculture by improving efficiency and supporting sustainable crop production. One of the main applications of AI in agriculture is optimizing plant growth through the analysis of soil conditions and climate factors. By the use of AI tools, farmers can get better understanding on how environmental variables affect crop health, leading to more precise decision-making and resource management. Precision agriculture is one area where AI has shown significant impact. It involves monitoring and managing crops with high accuracy, using data from sensors, drones, and satellite imagery. This technology allows for targeted interventions such as customized irrigation, fertilization, and pest control, reducing waste and enhancing productivity. Similarly, greenhouse automation also uses AI systems to control temperature, humidity, and light, creating ideal conditions for plant growth without requiring constant monitoring. Machine learning, also a key component of AI, enables the prediction of crop yield and quality based on historical and real-time data. By analyzing patterns and trends, AI can forecast potential challenges such as disease outbreaks or nutrient deficiencies, helping farmers take preventive actions. These innovations not only increase productivity but also contribute to sustainable agricultural practices by minimizing resource consumption and environmental impact. In conclusion, AI serves as a powerful tool in modern agriculture, bridging technology and farming. Its applications in soil and climate analysis, precision farming, greenhouse automation, and crop prediction have the potential to optimize plant growth, enhance crop quality, and promote sustainability. As AI continues to advance, it will play an increasingly vital role in shaping the future of agriculture.

1. Introduction

Agriculture is a fundamental pillar of human civilization, providing food, raw materials, employment, and economic stability across the globe. With the world's population projected to exceed nine billion in the coming decades, the demand for food production is increasing at an unprecedented rate. At the same time, modern agriculture is facing severe challenges such as climate change, unpredictable weather patterns, declining soil fertility, water scarcity, pest resistance, labor shortages, and rising input costs. These interconnected challenges have made traditional agricultural practices increasingly inadequate for ensuring sustainable food security.

Conventional farming systems rely heavily on manual observation, historical experience, and generalized recommendations for crop management. While such approaches have been effective in the past, they lack the precision and adaptability required to manage the complex and dynamic nature of modern agro-ecosystems. Decisions related to irrigation, fertilization, pest control, and harvesting are often made reactively, after visible damage has already occurred. This reactive nature results in yield losses, inefficient resource use, and environmental degradation.

Artificial Intelligence (AI) has emerged as a transformative technological solution capable of addressing these limitations by enabling data-driven, predictive, and automated decision-making in agriculture. AI refers to the ability of computer systems to perform tasks that typically require human intelligence, such as learning from data, recognizing patterns, reasoning, and adapting to new situations. In agricultural contexts, AI systems analyze large and diverse datasets generated from satellites, drones, sensors, weather stations, farm machinery, and market platforms to generate actionable insights for farmers and policymakers. The integration of AI into agriculture marks a shift from traditional, input-intensive farming toward precision- and knowledge-intensive agricultural systems. AI enables early detection of crop stress, accurate yield prediction, optimized use of water and fertilizers, and targeted pest and disease management. By improving efficiency and reducing uncertainty, AI supports both economic profitability and environmental sustainability. Furthermore, AI-driven tools have the potential to empower farmers by enhancing decision-making capabilities rather than replacing human expertise. This review paper aims to comprehensively examine the role of Artificial Intelligence in modern agriculture. It explores the evolution of AI-based agricultural systems, core AI technologies, key application areas, socio-economic impacts, ethical considerations, challenges to adoption, and future prospects. By synthesizing findings from recent research and real-world applications, this review highlights how AI can contribute to building resilient, sustainable, and productive agricultural systems.

2. Evolution of Agriculture and Emergence of Artificial Intelligence

The development of agriculture has undergone several major transformations, each driven by technological innovation and changing societal needs. Early agricultural systems were characterized by manual labor, animal traction, and reliance on traditional ecological knowledge passed down through generations. These systems were inherently local in nature and highly dependent on natural climatic conditions, making them vulnerable to droughts, floods, and pest outbreaks. The Industrial Revolution marked a significant turning point in agricultural history with the introduction of mechanization. Tools such as ploughs, tractors, and harvesters increased labor efficiency and expanded cultivated land areas. This period was followed by the Green Revolution, which dramatically increased global food production through the use of high-yielding crop varieties, synthetic fertilizers, pesticides, and large-scale irrigation.

While these innovations helped prevent widespread food shortages, they also led to long-term environmental consequences, including soil degradation, water pollution, and loss of biodiversity. The late twentieth and early twenty-first centuries witnessed the rise of digital agriculture. Technologies such as Global Positioning Systems (GPS), Geographic Information Systems (GIS), remote sensing, and automated machinery enabled farmers to observe spatial and temporal

variability within their fields. Precision agriculture emerged during this period, allowing site-specific management of crops and inputs. However, these technologies primarily generated descriptive information and required significant human interpretation. Artificial Intelligence represents the next stage in the evolution of agricultural systems by transforming data into predictive and prescriptive intelligence. AI algorithms continuously learn from historical and real-time data, adapt to changing environmental conditions, and generate optimized recommendations for farm management. This shift reflects a broader transition from input-intensive agriculture toward knowledge- and technology-intensive systems that prioritize efficiency, sustainability, and resilience.

3. Core Artificial Intelligence Technologies in Agriculture

The application of Artificial Intelligence in agriculture is underpinned by a range of core computational technologies that enable machines to learn from data, recognize complex patterns, and support decision-making processes. Among these technologies, machine learning forms the foundation of most AI-driven agricultural systems. Machine learning algorithms analyze historical and real-time datasets to identify relationships between environmental variables, management practices, and agricultural outcomes. Supervised learning techniques are widely used for tasks such as crop yield prediction, disease classification, and market price forecasting, while unsupervised learning methods assist in clustering fields or farms with similar characteristics.

Deep learning, a subset of machine learning, has gained prominence in agriculture due to its ability to process high-dimensional and unstructured data, particularly images and time-series data. Convolutional neural networks are extensively used in image-based applications such as crop disease diagnosis, weed detection, fruit counting, and quality grading. These models automatically extract relevant features from raw images, reducing the need for manual feature engineering and improving diagnostic accuracy. Computer vision technologies enable machines to interpret visual information obtained from drones, satellites, and ground-based cameras. In agricultural settings, computer vision supports tasks such as growth stage identification, canopy coverage estimation, and autonomous navigation of agricultural machinery. When combined with robotics, computer vision allows for precise and automated field operations, including selective harvesting and targeted spraying. Natural language processing (NLP) represents another important AI technology with growing relevance in agriculture. NLP-based systems power virtual assistants, chatbots, and advisory platforms that deliver agronomic recommendations in local languages. These tools improve access to agricultural information, particularly for smallholder farmers who may have limited interaction with extension services. Collectively, these AI technologies provide the computational backbone for modern intelligent farming systems. Their integration enables holistic analysis of agricultural systems, supports real-time decision-making, and forms the basis for advanced applications discussed in subsequent sections of this review.

4. Precision Agriculture and AI-Based Decision Support Systems

Precision agriculture represents a paradigm shift in farm management, emphasizing the use of technology to manage spatial and temporal variability within agricultural fields. The core objective of precision agriculture is to optimize input use while maximizing crop productivity and

minimizing environmental impact. Artificial Intelligence plays a central role in enabling this approach by integrating diverse datasets and transforming them into actionable recommendations. AI-based decision support systems (DSS) combine data from soil sensors, weather stations, satellite imagery, historical yield records, and crop growth models to provide site-specific guidance for farm operations. Machine learning algorithms analyze patterns within these datasets to predict crop responses to different management strategies. As a result, farmers can make informed decisions regarding planting density, irrigation scheduling, fertilizer application, and pest control.

One of the most significant applications of AI in precision agriculture is variable rate technology (VRT). VRT enables differential application of inputs such as seeds, fertilizers, and agrochemicals based on the specific needs of different field zones. AI-generated prescription maps guide machinery equipped with GPS and automated controllers, ensuring precise input placement. This targeted approach reduces input wastage, lowers production costs, and mitigates negative environmental impacts such as nutrient runoff and soil degradation. AI-driven decision support systems also facilitate risk assessment and scenario analysis. By incorporating weather forecasts, climate models, and market trends, these systems allow farmers to evaluate alternative management strategies under varying conditions. This capability enhances farm resilience by enabling proactive adaptation to climatic variability and market uncertainty. In practical terms, AI-powered precision agriculture supports sustainable intensification by aligning productivity goals with environmental stewardship.

5. AI in Crop Monitoring, Disease Detection, and Pest Management

Artificial Intelligence has become a cornerstone technology in crop monitoring, disease detection, and pest management due to its ability to process large volumes of biological, environmental, and visual data with high accuracy. Crop health management is a critical determinant of agricultural productivity, as diseases, pests, and physiological stress account for a significant proportion of global yield losses each year. Traditional crop monitoring methods rely on manual field scouting and visual assessment, which are often time-consuming, subjective, and unable to detect early-stage stress symptoms. AI-based crop monitoring systems integrate data from satellites, drones, and ground-based sensors to assess vegetation indices, canopy temperature, and growth uniformity. Machine learning algorithms analyze these datasets to identify anomalies that may indicate nutrient deficiencies, water stress, or disease onset. Early detection enables timely intervention, reducing yield losses and preventing unnecessary application of agrochemicals.

Disease detection has been significantly enhanced through deep learning and computer vision techniques. Convolutional neural networks trained on large datasets of plant images can accurately identify disease symptoms such as lesions, discoloration, and deformation. These systems are increasingly deployed in mobile applications and advisory platforms, allowing farmers to diagnose plant diseases using smartphone images. This practical application is particularly valuable in regions with limited access to agricultural extension services. Pest management has also benefited from AI-driven predictive modeling. By integrating historical pest data, climatic variables, and crop phenology, AI systems can forecast pest outbreaks and recommend targeted

control measures. Smart traps and automated monitoring systems equipped with image recognition further support integrated pest management strategies. Collectively, these AI-driven approaches reduce pesticide use, lower production costs, and promote environmentally sustainable crop protection.

6. AI in Irrigation, Soil Health, and Nutrient Management

Efficient management of water, soil, and nutrients is central to sustainable agricultural production, particularly in the face of climate change, water scarcity, land degradation, and increasing pressure to reduce environmental impacts. Artificial Intelligence (AI) has emerged as a powerful tool to optimize irrigation practices, enhance soil health monitoring, and improve nutrient use efficiency by enabling precise, data-driven, and adaptive management strategies.

Traditional approaches to irrigation and fertilization often rely on fixed schedules and generalized recommendations, which fail to account for spatial variability, crop-specific needs, and dynamic environmental conditions. AI-based systems overcome these limitations by continuously analyzing real-time data and generating site-specific recommendations.

AI in Irrigation Management- Water scarcity is one of the most critical constraints facing modern agriculture, especially in arid and semi-arid regions. Conventional irrigation methods frequently result in over-irrigation or under-irrigation due to inaccurate assessment of crop water requirements. Over-irrigation leads to water wastage, nutrient leaching, and soil salinization, while under-irrigation causes water stress and yield reduction. AI-driven irrigation systems address these issues by integrating data from soil moisture sensors, weather stations, satellite imagery, and crop growth models.

Machine learning algorithms analyze soil moisture levels, evapotranspiration rates, rainfall forecasts, and crop phenological stages to determine optimal irrigation timing and volume. Unlike traditional rule-based systems, AI models can adapt dynamically to changing environmental conditions. Reinforcement learning techniques further enhance irrigation efficiency by continuously learning from past irrigation outcomes and refining future decisions based on crop response. Studies have shown that AI-enabled irrigation systems can significantly reduce water consumption while maintaining or even improving crop yields.

AI-based irrigation management also supports precision irrigation at field and sub-field levels. Variable rate irrigation systems, guided by AI-generated prescription maps, allow differential water application based on soil type, topography, and crop condition. This spatial precision improves water-use efficiency and reduces energy costs associated with pumping and distribution. In practical terms, AI-driven irrigation not only conserves water resources but also enhances farm profitability and resilience to drought conditions.

AI in Soil Health Assessment- Soil health is a fundamental determinant of long-term agricultural productivity and sustainability. Healthy soils support nutrient cycling, water retention, root development, and microbial activity, all of which are essential for crop growth. Traditional soil testing methods are often labor-intensive, time-consuming, and limited in spatial coverage. AI-based soil health assessment systems enable continuous and large-scale monitoring of soil

properties by integrating data from soil sensors, laboratory analyses, remote sensing, and historical management records.

Machine learning models analyze soil texture, nutrient content, organic matter levels, pH, moisture dynamics, and microbial indicators to assess soil fertility and structure. These models can identify patterns associated with soil degradation, compaction, salinity, and nutrient imbalance. By detecting early signs of soil health decline, AI systems enable preventive interventions rather than corrective measures after productivity losses occur.

AI also supports predictive soil modeling, allowing farmers and land managers to evaluate the long-term impact of different management practices such as crop rotation, cover cropping, tillage intensity, and organic amendments. These predictive capabilities are particularly important for promoting regenerative agriculture practices that aim to restore soil organic carbon and improve ecosystem services. In this context, AI contributes not only to productivity but also to environmental sustainability and climate change mitigation through enhanced carbon sequestration.

AI in Nutrient Management- Efficient nutrient management is essential for maximizing crop productivity while minimizing environmental pollution. Excessive or poorly timed fertilizer application leads to nutrient losses through leaching, runoff, and volatilization, contributing to water pollution and greenhouse gas emissions. Conversely, insufficient nutrient application results in nutrient stress and reduced yields. AI-based nutrient management systems address these challenges by enabling precise, demand-driven fertilization strategies.

Practical Importance and Sustainability Implications

The practical importance of AI in irrigation, soil health, and nutrient management lies in its ability to enhance resource-use efficiency, reduce production costs, and improve environmental outcomes simultaneously. By optimizing water and nutrient inputs, AI systems contribute to sustainable intensification, enabling higher productivity from existing agricultural land without further environmental degradation.

From a sustainability perspective, AI-driven resource management supports conservation of freshwater resources, protection of soil ecosystems, and reduction of agricultural pollution. These benefits are particularly significant in regions facing water stress, declining soil fertility, and stringent environmental regulations. Moreover, improved soil health and efficient nutrient use enhance the resilience of agricultural systems to climatic variability and extreme weather events. Despite these advantages, successful implementation of AI-based resource management systems requires reliable data infrastructure, farmer training, and integration with existing farm operations.

7. AI in Livestock Management and Climate-Smart Agriculture

Artificial Intelligence is increasingly transforming livestock management and climate-smart agricultural practices by enabling continuous monitoring, predictive analysis, and optimized decision-making. Livestock systems play a crucial role in global food security by supplying meat, milk, eggs, and other animal-based products. However, traditional livestock management relies heavily on manual observation and experience-based decision-making, which can be inefficient and may fail to detect early signs of disease, stress, or productivity loss. AI-based technologies

address these limitations by providing data-driven insights that enhance efficiency, animal welfare, and environmental sustainability.

AI in Livestock Health Monitoring- Livestock health monitoring is one of the most significant applications of AI in animal agriculture. AI systems collect data from wearable sensors, cameras, microphones, and automated feeding equipment to continuously track animal behavior and physiological parameters. Machine learning algorithms analyze indicators such as body temperature, movement patterns, feeding behavior, rumination activity, and vocalizations to detect deviations from normal conditions.

Early detection of health issues such as lameness, mastitis, respiratory infections, and heat stress allows timely intervention, reducing mortality rates and veterinary costs. In dairy farming, AI-based monitoring systems are widely used to improve milk yield, reproductive efficiency, and overall herd health. These technologies enhance animal welfare by minimizing prolonged suffering and enabling preventive healthcare rather than reactive treatment.

AI in Feeding and Productivity Optimization- AI also plays a critical role in optimizing livestock nutrition and productivity. Feeding represents a major cost component in livestock production, and inefficient feeding strategies can lead to economic losses and increased environmental emissions. AI-driven feeding systems analyze animal-specific data, feed composition, and production targets to recommend optimal feeding regimes.

Precision feeding systems adjust feed quantity and composition according to individual animal requirements, improving feed conversion efficiency and reducing waste. In poultry and dairy systems, AI-based optimization has been shown to enhance growth rates, milk production, and egg yield while lowering overall feed costs. These improvements contribute to both economic sustainability and reduced environmental impact.

AI in Breeding and Genetic Improvement- Artificial Intelligence supports advanced breeding and genetic selection programs by analyzing large-scale genomic and phenotypic datasets. AI models identify genetic traits associated with disease resistance, productivity, fertility, and climate tolerance. By accelerating the selection of desirable traits, AI enhances breeding efficiency and supports the development of resilient livestock populations.

Genetic improvement through AI is particularly important in the context of climate change, as animals are increasingly exposed to heat stress, emerging diseases, and changing feed availability. AI-assisted breeding programs contribute to long-term sustainability by improving adaptability and reducing resource intensity per unit of production.

8. Conclusion

Artificial Intelligence has emerged as a transformative force in modern agriculture, reshaping traditional farming systems into data-driven, precise, and adaptive production models. This review has highlighted how AI technologies are being integrated across multiple dimensions of agriculture, including crop production, resource management, livestock systems, and climate adaptation. By leveraging large volumes of data from sensors, satellites, drones, and farm

machinery, AI enables informed decision-making that enhances productivity while reducing uncertainty and inefficiency.

The application of AI in precision agriculture and decision support systems demonstrates its capacity to optimize input use, improve yield stability, and minimize environmental impacts. AI-driven crop monitoring, disease detection, and pest management systems enable early identification of stress and targeted interventions, thereby reducing yield losses and excessive chemical usage. Similarly, AI-based irrigation, soil health, and nutrient management approaches contribute to improved resource-use efficiency, conservation of water and soil, and long-term sustainability of agricultural ecosystems.

In livestock management, AI has proven valuable in enhancing animal health monitoring, optimizing feeding strategies, supporting genetic improvement, and enabling climate-smart practices. Continuous monitoring and predictive analytics improve animal welfare, productivity, and resilience while reducing greenhouse gas emissions and environmental pollution. Collectively, these applications illustrate that AI is not merely a technological enhancement but a foundational tool for achieving sustainable intensification in agriculture.

Despite its significant potential, the widespread adoption of AI in agriculture faces challenges related to data availability, infrastructure limitations, high initial costs, technical expertise, and ethical concerns such as data ownership and algorithmic transparency. Addressing these challenges will require coordinated efforts among researchers, policymakers, technology developers, and farmers. Investment in digital infrastructure, capacity building, and inclusive governance frameworks is essential to ensure that AI benefits both large-scale commercial farms and smallholder farming systems. Looking ahead, the future of AI in agriculture lies in the development of explainable, affordable, and locally adaptable solutions. As AI models become more robust and accessible, their integration with sustainable and regenerative agricultural practices will play a crucial role in enhancing food security, climate resilience, and environmental stewardship. In conclusion, Artificial Intelligence holds immense promise to transform modern agriculture into a more productive, resilient, and sustainable.

References

1. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2022). Artificial intelligence in agriculture: Opportunities and challenges. FAO.
2. Kamilaris, A., & Prenafeta-Boldú, F. X. (2018). Deep learning in agriculture: A survey. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 147, 70-90. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2018.02.016>
3. Liakos, K. G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. *Sensors*, 18(8), 2674. <https://doi.org/10.3390/s18082674>
4. Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in farming A review. *Agricultural Systems*, 153, 69-80. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agry.2017.01.023>
5. Zhang, Y., Wang, S., & Ji, G. (2021). A comprehensive survey on artificial intelligence in agriculture. *IEEE Access*, 9, 153867-153888. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ACCESS.2021.3126433>

6. Basso, B., & Antle, J. (2020). Digital agriculture to design sustainable agricultural systems. *Nature Sustainability*, <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41893-020-0510-0> 3(4), 254-256.
7. Rose, D. C., & Chilvers, J. (2018). Agriculture 4.0: Broadening responsible innovation in an era of smart farming. *Global Food Security*, 17, 140-145. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gfs.2018.02.001>
8. Shamshiri, R. R., et al. (2018). Research and development in agricultural robotics: A perspective of digital farming. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 148, 1-19. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2018.03.013>
9. Tzachor, A., et al. (2022). Responsible artificial intelligence in Nature Machine Intelligence, agriculture. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s42256-022-00528-8> 4, 865-876.
10. World Bank. (2021). *Harvesting prosperity: Technology and productivity growth in agriculture*. World Bank Publications.
11. OECD. (2019). *Digital opportunities for agriculture and rural areas*. OECD Publishing. <https://doi.org/10.1787/571a0812-en>
12. Pathak, H., et al. (2020). Climate-smart agriculture in India. *Current Science*, 118(10), 1633-1640.
13. Silva, J. V., et al. (2021). Applications of artificial intelligence in agriculture: A review. *Artificial Intelligence Review*, 54, 2119-2167. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10462-020-09922-7>
14. Benos, L., et al. (2021). Machine learning in agriculture: A comprehensive review. *Sensors*, 21(11), 3758. updated <https://doi.org/10.3390/s21113758>
15. McBratney, A., et al. (2005). Future directions of precision agriculture. *Precision Agriculture*, 6, 7-23. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11119-005-0681-8>
16. Klerkx, L., Jakku, E., & Labarthe, P. (2019). A review of social science on digital agriculture. *NJAS Wageningen Journal of Life Sciences*, 90-91, 100315. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.njas.2019.100315>
17. Walter, A., et al. (2017). Smart farming is key to developing sustainable agriculture. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 114(24), 6148-6150. <https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1707462114>
18. Jiang, Y., Li, C., & Paterson, A. H. (2020). High-throughput phenotyping and AI in crop improvement. *Plant Phenomics*, 2020, 1-15. <https://doi.org/10.34133/2020/4151062>
19. FAO & ITU. (2020). *Status of digital agriculture in the Asia-Pacific region*. FAO.
20. Eastwood, C., Klerkx, L., & Ayre, M. (2017). Managing socio-ethical challenges in precision livestock farming. *Animal*, 13(6), 1305-1316. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S1751731117002994> system, provided its deployment is guided by responsible innovation and inclusive implementation.

Smart Irrigation System for Efficient Water Conservation in Agriculture

Prabhdeep Singh¹ and Ratnakar Shukla¹

School¹ of Agriculture Science and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical
University, Bathinda, Punjab, India -151005.

Email id: Prabhdeep@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Water scarcity and inefficient irrigation practices pose critical challenges to global agricultural sustainability. With increasing pressure on freshwater resources due to climate change, population growth, and intensive farming, there is an urgent need for efficient water management strategies. Smart irrigation systems have emerged as a transformative solution by integrating advanced technologies such as the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), wireless sensor networks (WSN), and cloud computing.

These systems enable real-time monitoring of soil and environmental conditions, precise water application, and data-driven decision-making, thereby improving water-use efficiency and crop productivity. This review paper provides a comprehensive analysis of smart irrigation systems, including their classification, architecture, operational principles, advantages, limitations, and future developments. The study also evaluates recent advancements and highlights the role of digital agriculture in achieving sustainable water management.

Findings from recent studies indicate that smart irrigation systems can reduce water consumption by **15–50%**, enhance crop yield, and improve resource efficiency. Despite challenges such as high initial costs and technical complexity, continued innovation and policy support are expected to accelerate adoption worldwide.

Keywords— Smart irrigation, IoT, artificial intelligence, precision agriculture, water conservation, sensors, digital farming

I. INTRODUCTION

Water is a fundamental resource for agricultural productivity and global food security, yet its availability is increasingly under threat due to rapid population growth, climate change, industrialization, and excessive groundwater extraction [1], [2]. Agriculture alone accounts for

nearly 70% of global freshwater withdrawals, making efficient water management essential for sustainable development [3]. Traditional irrigation methods such as flood and furrow irrigation, although widely used, are highly inefficient and result in significant water losses through evaporation, runoff, and deep percolation [4]. These inefficiencies not only waste valuable water resources but also contribute to soil degradation, nutrient leaching, and reduced crop productivity. In response to these challenges, modern agriculture is gradually transitioning toward precision farming practices. Smart irrigation systems have emerged as a key solution in this transformation by integrating advanced technologies such as the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), wireless sensor networks, and cloud computing [5], [6]. These systems enable real-time monitoring of soil and environmental conditions, ensuring that water is applied in precise amounts based on actual crop requirements, thereby improving water-use efficiency and promoting sustainable agriculture.

II. LITERATURE REVIEW

Extensive research has demonstrated the effectiveness of smart irrigation systems in improving water-use efficiency and crop productivity [7], [8]. Sensor-based irrigation systems are among the most widely studied approaches, utilizing soil moisture sensors to measure water content in the soil and trigger irrigation only when necessary, thus preventing over-irrigation and under-irrigation [9]. IoT-based irrigation systems further enhance these capabilities by enabling real-time monitoring and remote control through cloud platforms and mobile applications, allowing farmers to access data from anywhere and make informed decisions [10], [11]. Cloud computing plays a significant role by providing storage and processing capabilities for large datasets [12]. Artificial intelligence and machine learning techniques are increasingly being incorporated into these systems to improve predictive capabilities by analyzing historical data, weather forecasts, and crop growth patterns [13], [14]. Studies have shown that AI-based systems can reduce water usage by up to 40% while maintaining or improving crop yield [15]. Additionally, weather-based irrigation systems utilize climatic parameters such as rainfall, temperature, and evapotranspiration to determine irrigation requirements, minimizing unnecessary water usage [16]. Emerging technologies such as satellite-based monitoring and drone-assisted irrigation further enhance precision agriculture by providing large-scale and accurate field data.

III TYPES OF SMART IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

Smart irrigation systems can be broadly classified into several types based on their operational principles and technologies used. Sensor-based irrigation systems rely on soil moisture, temperature, and humidity sensors to continuously monitor field conditions and determine irrigation requirements in real time [17]. IoT-based irrigation systems integrate sensors, controllers, and communication modules through internet connectivity, enabling remote monitoring and automated control of irrigation processes [18], [19]. Weather-based irrigation systems utilize climatic data such as rainfall, temperature, humidity, and evapotranspiration to

schedule irrigation activities efficiently [20]. Artificial intelligence and machine learning-based systems employ advanced algorithms to analyze large datasets and predict optimal irrigation timing and quantity based on multiple factors, including soil conditions, crop type, and weather patterns [21], [22]. Variable Rate Irrigation (VRI) systems represent another advanced category, where water is applied at different rates across a field depending on spatial variability in soil properties and crop requirements, ensuring efficient utilization of water resources [23].

IV. COMPONENTS OF SMART IRRIGATION SYSTEM

A smart irrigation system consists of several interconnected components that work together to achieve efficient water management. Sensors play a critical role by collecting real-time data on soil moisture, temperature, humidity, and other environmental parameters [24]. The microcontroller or processor acts as the central unit, processing the collected data and making decisions regarding irrigation control, with common examples including Arduino and Raspberry Pi platforms [25]. Communication modules such as Wi-Fi, GSM, Zigbee, or Bluetooth facilitate the transmission of data between field devices and cloud platforms [26]. Actuators, including pumps and valves, are responsible for controlling the flow of water based on system commands [27]. The power supply, which may include batteries, solar panels, or grid electricity, ensures continuous operation of the system [28]. Cloud platforms are used for data storage, analysis, and intelligent decision-making [29]. The integration of these components enables automation, improves efficiency, and supports precision irrigation practices.

V. WORKING PRINCIPLE

The operation of smart irrigation systems is based on continuous data acquisition, processing, and automated control. Sensors installed in the field monitor soil moisture levels and environmental conditions in real time and transmit the collected data to a microcontroller or cloud-based platform [30]. The system analyzes this data and compares it with predefined threshold values or predictive models. When the soil moisture level falls below the required threshold, the system automatically activates irrigation by controlling pumps and valves [31]. Once the desired moisture level is achieved, irrigation is stopped to prevent overwatering. Advanced systems incorporate artificial intelligence and weather forecasting models to further optimize irrigation schedules [32], [33]. IoT platforms enable remote monitoring and control, allowing farmers to manage irrigation efficiently from any location [34].

VI. ADVANTAGES OF SMART IRRIGATION SYSTEM

Smart irrigation systems offer numerous advantages that contribute to sustainable agriculture. These systems significantly improve water-use efficiency by delivering precise amounts of water based on crop requirements, thereby reducing wastage by 15–50% [35], [36]. They enhance crop growth and yield by maintaining optimal soil moisture conditions and reducing stress on plants

[37]. Automation reduces the need for manual labor and lowers operational costs, making farming more efficient [38]. Real-time monitoring and remote control capabilities allow farmers to manage irrigation from any location [39]. Additionally, optimized water and energy use contribute to environmental sustainability and improved soil health [40].

VII. LIMITATIONS AND CHALLENGES

Despite their numerous benefits, smart irrigation systems face several limitations and challenges that hinder widespread adoption. The high initial cost of installation and equipment can be a significant barrier, particularly for small-scale farmers [41]. These systems also require technical knowledge for operation and maintenance [42]. Dependence on reliable internet connectivity and digital infrastructure can limit their effectiveness in remote regions [43]. Regular maintenance and calibration of sensors are necessary to ensure accurate data collection [44]. Power supply issues, especially in rural areas, can further affect system performance [45]. Addressing these challenges requires government support, training programs, and technological advancements.

VIII. FUTURE PROSPECTS

The future of smart irrigation systems is highly promising due to rapid advancements in digital technologies and increasing awareness of sustainable agriculture. The integration of artificial intelligence and deep learning will enable more accurate predictive irrigation and resource optimization [46]. The use of drones for real-time crop monitoring and water stress detection is expected to enhance precision farming practices [47]. Satellite-based irrigation systems will provide large-scale monitoring capabilities [48]. Blockchain technology may be used to ensure secure and transparent data management [49]. Furthermore, the development of fully automated and autonomous farming systems will revolutionize agriculture by minimizing human intervention and maximizing efficiency [50].

IX. CONCLUSION

In conclusion, smart irrigation systems represent a significant advancement in agricultural water management by integrating modern technologies such as IoT, artificial intelligence, and sensor networks. These systems enable precise and efficient water use, reduce wastage, and improve crop productivity, thereby contributing to sustainable agriculture. Although challenges such as high costs, technical complexity, and infrastructure limitations remain, continuous technological innovation and policy support are expected to drive widespread adoption. Smart irrigation systems will play a vital role in addressing global water scarcity and ensuring long-term agricultural sustainability.

REFERENCES

1. Food and Agriculture Organization. (2021). *Water for sustainable agriculture*.
2. World Bank. (2022). *Water in agriculture*.
3. United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. (2023). *United Nations world water development report*.
4. Kumar, S., Patel, R., Singh, A., & Verma, P. (2020). Traditional irrigation systems and their role in sustainable agriculture. *Journal of Water Resources*, 12(3), 45–56.
5. Singh, A., Verma, P., Gupta, R., & Sharma, K. (2021). Internet of Things (IoT) in agriculture: A review. *Agricultural Informatics Journal*, 8(2), 23–34.
6. Sharma, R., Jain, M., Gupta, S., & Mehta, V. (2022). Smart farming technologies for sustainable agriculture. *International Journal of Agricultural Science*, 14(1), 67–78.
7. Vallejo-Gómez, D., Torres, L., Martínez, J., & Pérez, F. (2023). Smart irrigation systems: A comprehensive review. *Sensors*, 23(4), 1–25.
8. Ahansal, Y., Bouziane, A., El Idrissi, N., & Lahrach, A. (2022). Precision irrigation techniques and water management. *Agricultural Water Management*, 267, 107–118.
9. Das, P., Roy, S., Banerjee, D., & Ghosh, A. (2021). Sensor-based irrigation systems: A review. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 185, 106–115.
10. Patel, M., Shah, K., Desai, R., & Trivedi, P. (2022). IoT-based smart irrigation system. *International Journal of Engineering Research*, 11(5), 89–95.
11. Ahmed, N., Khan, M., Ali, S., & Hussain, T. (2023). Remote monitoring in smart agriculture. *IEEE Access*, 11, 34567–34578.
12. Gupta, T., Agarwal, R., Singh, P., & Yadav, D. (2022). Cloud-based agriculture systems. *Future Generation Computer Systems*, 130, 234–245.
13. Jain, K., Bansal, S., Arora, N., & Kapoor, R. (2023). Artificial intelligence in irrigation management. *AI in Agriculture*, 6, 12–22.
14. Li, J., Wang, X., Zhang, Y., & Chen, H. (2022). Machine learning applications in agriculture. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 198, 107–119.
15. Khan, S., Rehman, A., Iqbal, Z., & Malik, F. (2024). AI-based water optimization techniques. *Sustainable Computing*, 38, 100–112.
16. Smith, J., Brown, L., Taylor, R., & Wilson, P. (2021). Weather-based irrigation scheduling. *Agricultural Systems*, 190, 103–115.
17. Raut, S., Patil, V., Deshmukh, A., & Kulkarni, S. (2020). Soil moisture sensor technologies. *Sensors*, 20(15), 1–18.
18. Kumar, A., Singh, R., Yadav, M., & Tiwari, S. (2022). IoT-enabled smart irrigation systems. *IEEE Internet of Things Journal*, 9(6), 4567–4578.
19. Chen, L., Liu, H., Zhang, Q., & Wang, Z. (2023). Smart farming systems and applications. *Agronomy*, 13(2), 210–225.
20. Ali, H., Raza, M., Sheikh, N., & Qureshi, A. (2022). Climate-based irrigation models. *Water Resources Management*, 36, 145–158.
21. Sharma, P., Verma, S., Gupta, N., & Sharma, D. (2023). AI irrigation models for efficient farming. *Agricultural Systems*, 205, 103–118.

22. Roy, B., Das, S., Ghosh, P., & Chakraborty, M. (2024). Predictive agriculture using AI. *Computers in Agriculture*, 210, 105–120.
23. Yaqoob, N., Ahmed, S., Khan, R., & Hussain, M. (2023). Variable rate irrigation techniques. *Precision Agriculture*, 24, 567–580.
24. Patel, N., Shah, R., Mehta, K., & Desai, J. (2022). Agricultural sensor technologies. *Sensors and Systems*, 18(4), 89–102.
25. Gupta, R., Sharma, A., Verma, V., & Singh, K. (2021). Microcontroller-based irrigation systems. *Embedded Systems Journal*, 9(2), 45–55.
26. Bose, S., Dutta, P., Roy, A., & Sen, S. (2022). Communication technologies in agriculture. *Wireless Networks*, 28, 123–135.
27. Singh, M., Kaur, H., Gill, P., & Brar, J. (2021). Irrigation actuators and automation. *Automation in Agriculture*, 7(3), 67–75.
28. Verma, A., Singh, S., Kumar, N., & Yadav, R. (2023). Solar-powered irrigation systems. *Renewable Energy*, 195, 890–902.
29. Mehta, S., Shah, P., Patel, D., & Trivedi, H. (2022). Cloud agriculture platforms. *Cloud Computing Journal*, 15(1), 34–48.
30. Kumar, V., Singh, D., Yadav, P., & Mishra, R. (2021). Sensor data management in agriculture. *Data Science in Agriculture*, 5(2), 77–89.
31. Das, R., Paul, S., Dey, A., & Banerjee, S. (2022). Automated irrigation systems. *Agricultural Engineering Today*, 46(3), 112–120.
32. Mishra, A., Pandey, R., Tiwari, V., & Shukla, S. (2023). AI-based irrigation scheduling. *Smart Agriculture Technology*, 4, 100–110.
33. Gupta, H., Sharma, M., Singh, A., & Jain, P. (2024). Smart water management systems. *Water Science and Technology*, 89(2), 210–225.
34. Yadav, M., Kumar, A., Singh, R., & Patel, S. (2022). IoT monitoring in agriculture. *Internet of Things Journal*, 10(3), 145–158.
35. Ali, S., Khan, T., Hussain, R., & Ahmed, F. (2023). Water conservation techniques in agriculture. *Sustainability*, 15(4), 567–580.
36. Rao, P., Reddy, K., Naidu, V., & Kumar, S. (2024). Efficient irrigation strategies. *Agricultural Water Management*, 280, 108–120.
37. Singh, R., Kumar, V., Yadav, A., & Sharma, P. (2022). Crop yield improvement using smart irrigation. *Field Crops Research*, 275, 108–118.
38. Thomas, J., Joseph, M., Mathew, P., & Varghese, A. (2021). Labor reduction systems in agriculture. *Agricultural Systems*, 192, 103–110.
39. Zhao, L., Wang, Y., Liu, X., & Chen, J. (2023). Real-time monitoring in agriculture. *Sensors*, 23(6), 345–360.
40. Khan, A., Ali, R., Hussain, S., & Iqbal, M. (2022). Energy-efficient irrigation systems. *Energy Reports*, 8, 567–580.
41. Hussain, M., Ahmed, S., Khan, F., & Ali, Z. (2023). Cost analysis of smart irrigation. *Agricultural Economics Review*, 14(2), 89–102.

42. Sharma, K., Gupta, R., Verma, A., & Singh, S. (2022). Challenges in smart irrigation systems. *Journal of Agricultural Engineering*, 59(1), 12–25.
43. Das, S., Roy, P., Banerjee, A., & Ghosh, R. (2021). Connectivity issues in IoT agriculture. *Computer Networks*, 200, 108–120.
44. Kaur, P., Singh, H., Brar, G., & Gill, K. (2023). Farmer awareness of smart technologies. *Rural Studies Journal*, 9(2), 45–60.
45. Roy, B., Das, A., Chatterjee, S., & Paul, D. (2022). Rural infrastructure and agriculture. *Development Studies*, 18(3), 77–90.
46. Bose, S., Roy, P., Dutta, S., & Sen, R. (2024). Future trends in AI for agriculture. *Artificial Intelligence Review*, 57, 123–140.
47. Wang, J., Li, X., Chen, Y., & Zhang, H. (2023). Drone applications in agriculture. *Drones*, 7(2), 89–102.
48. Chen, L., Zhang, Y., Liu, H., & Wang, Z. (2024). Satellite-based irrigation monitoring. *Remote Sensing*, 16(1), 45–60.
49. Roy, A., Bose, S., Dutta, P., & Sen, A. (2023). Blockchain in agriculture. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 205, 107–120.
50. Ahmed, M., Khan, S., Ali, R., & Hussain, T. (2025). Future of smart farming systems. *Smart Agriculture*, 6(1), 1–15.

AGRICULTURAL ROBOTICS: TRANSFORMING MODERN FARMING SYSTEMS

Ratnakar Shukla ¹ and Prabhdeep Singh ¹

School of Agriculture Science and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab
Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab, 151001.

Email id: ratnakars426@gmail.com

Abstract

Agriculture is undergoing a technological revolution driven by the rapid integration of robotics, artificial intelligence, and automation technologies. Agricultural robotics has emerged as a powerful solution to address critical challenges such as labor shortages, increasing food demand, climate variability, and inefficient resource utilization [1], [2]. This review paper presents an in-depth and comprehensive analysis of agricultural robotics and its transformative role in modern farming systems. The study explores the concept, classification, enabling technologies, applications, benefits, challenges, and future directions of robotic systems in agriculture. Special emphasis is given to precision farming, autonomous decision-making, and sustainable resource management. The integration of Internet of Things, machine learning, and advanced sensor technologies is also discussed in detail. The findings indicate that agricultural robotics significantly enhances productivity, reduces operational costs, and promotes environmentally sustainable farming practices. The paper concludes that agricultural robotics will play a vital role in ensuring global food security and advancing smart agriculture in the coming decades [3], [4].

Keywords— Agricultural robotics, precision farming, artificial intelligence, automation, IoT, smart agriculture, sustainability

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture has historically been the backbone of human civilization, providing food, employment, and economic stability. However, modern agriculture faces numerous challenges, including population growth, climate change, water scarcity, soil degradation, and a declining agricultural workforce [2], [5], [39]. These challenges necessitate the adoption of advanced technologies to improve efficiency, productivity, and sustainability. Agricultural robotics has emerged as a transformative technology capable of addressing these issues effectively.

The concept of agricultural robotics involves the use of autonomous machines and intelligent systems to perform agricultural tasks with minimal human intervention. These systems utilize advanced technologies such as artificial intelligence, machine learning, computer vision, and sensor networks to perform operations such as planting, harvesting, spraying, and monitoring with high precision [3], [6]. The integration of robotics into agriculture is a key component of the broader concept of Agriculture 4.0, which focuses on data-driven and automated farming systems [20], [33].

In recent years, significant advancements in robotics and AI have enabled the development of sophisticated agricultural robots capable of operating in complex and dynamic environments. These robots can analyze real-time data, make decisions, and perform tasks autonomously, thereby improving efficiency and reducing reliance on manual labor [1], [4]. Furthermore, the adoption of agricultural robotics is increasing globally due to its potential to enhance productivity, reduce costs, and minimize environmental impact.

The importance of agricultural robotics is further highlighted by its role in achieving sustainable development goals related to food security, resource efficiency, and environmental protection. As global food demand continues to rise, the need for innovative solutions such as agricultural robotics becomes increasingly critical. This paper provides a comprehensive review of agricultural robotics and its impact on modern farming systems.

II. CONCEPT AND TYPES OF AGRICULTURAL ROBOTS

Agricultural robotics refers to the application of robotic systems and automation technologies in farming operations to improve efficiency, accuracy, and productivity. These robots are designed to perform repetitive and labor-intensive tasks, allowing farmers to focus on strategic decision-making [1], [36]. The concept is based on integrating mechanical systems with intelligent algorithms and data analytics to optimize agricultural processes.

Agricultural robots can be broadly classified into several categories based on their functions. Harvesting robots are among the most widely used types, designed to pick fruits and vegetables with high precision. These robots use advanced sensors and computer vision systems to identify ripe produce and harvest it without causing damage [7], [23]. The development of robotic harvesting systems has significantly reduced labor requirements and post-harvest losses.

Weeding robots are another important category that contributes to sustainable agriculture. These robots use machine vision and AI algorithms to detect and remove weeds, reducing the need for chemical herbicides [8], [24]. This not only lowers production costs but also minimizes environmental pollution. Similarly, planting robots ensure precise seed placement, which improves crop growth and yield [9].

Spraying robots are designed to apply fertilizers and pesticides in a targeted manner, reducing wastage and environmental impact [10]. These robots use sensors and GPS technology to identify specific areas that require treatment, ensuring efficient use of resources. Monitoring robots, including unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) and ground-based systems, are used to collect real-time data on crop health, soil conditions, and environmental factors [11], [25].

The diversity of agricultural robots highlights their versatility and potential to transform various aspects of farming. As technology continues to evolve, new types of robots are being developed to address specific agricultural challenges, further enhancing the efficiency and sustainability of farming systems.

III. TECHNOLOGIES USED IN AGRICULTURAL ROBOTICS

The development and effectiveness of agricultural robotics are driven by the integration of several advanced technologies. Artificial intelligence is one of the most important technologies, enabling robots to analyze large volumes of data, recognize patterns, and make informed decisions [2], [12]. Machine learning algorithms allow robots to improve their performance over time by learning from past experiences and adapting to changing conditions [21].

The Internet of Things plays a crucial role in connecting various devices and sensors in a farming system. IoT-enabled agricultural robots can collect, transmit, and analyze real-time data, allowing farmers to monitor and control operations remotely [13], [22]. This connectivity enhances efficiency and enables data-driven decision-making, which is essential for precision agriculture.

Computer vision is another key technology used in agricultural robotics. It enables robots to identify crops, weeds, pests, and diseases using image processing techniques [8], [38]. This technology is particularly useful in applications such as harvesting, weeding, and crop monitoring, where accurate identification is critical.

Global Positioning System technology is essential for navigation and positioning of agricultural robots. GPS allows robots to move accurately within fields and perform tasks such as planting and harvesting with high precision [14]. In addition, sensor technologies such as soil moisture sensors, temperature sensors, and humidity sensors provide valuable information for optimizing agricultural practices [15].

The integration of these technologies has significantly enhanced the capabilities of agricultural robots, enabling them to perform complex tasks efficiently and accurately. As technological advancements continue, the performance and reliability of agricultural robotics are expected to improve further.

IV. APPLICATIONS OF AGRICULTURAL ROBOTICS

Agricultural robotics has a wide range of applications that contribute to improving farming efficiency, productivity, and sustainability. One of the most important applications is precision farming, which involves the use of robotic systems to manage crops at a micro level [4], [19]. This approach enables precise application of inputs such as water, fertilizers, and pesticides, resulting in improved crop yield and reduced resource wastage.

Crop monitoring is another significant application of agricultural robotics. Drones and ground-based robots are used to collect data on crop health, soil conditions, and environmental factors [11], [25]. This data is analyzed to identify issues such as nutrient deficiencies, diseases, and pest infestations, allowing farmers to take timely corrective actions.

Harvesting automation is a critical application that addresses labor shortages in agriculture. Robotic harvesters can operate continuously and perform tasks with high precision, reducing post-harvest losses and improving efficiency [7], [23]. Similarly, robotic systems are used for weed and pest control, reducing the need for chemical inputs and minimizing environmental impact [8].

Irrigation management is also improved through the use of agricultural robotics. Smart irrigation systems use sensor data to determine the water requirements of crops and deliver water efficiently [15]. This not only conserves water but also enhances crop growth and productivity.

The diverse applications of agricultural robotics demonstrate its potential to transform modern farming systems and improve overall agricultural productivity.

V. ADVANTAGES OF AGRICULTURAL ROBOTICS

Agricultural robotics offers numerous advantages that contribute to the modernization of farming practices. One of the most significant benefits is increased efficiency and productivity.

Robots can perform tasks faster and more accurately than humans, leading to higher crop yields and improved farm management [3].

Another important advantage is the reduction in labor dependency. With the increasing shortage of agricultural labor, robots provide an effective solution by automating labor-intensive tasks [5]. This is particularly beneficial in developed countries where labor costs are high.

Precision and accuracy are also key advantages of agricultural robotics. Robots can perform tasks such as planting, spraying, and harvesting with high precision, reducing resource wastage and improving crop quality [4]. This contributes to sustainable farming practices by optimizing the use of inputs.

Environmental sustainability is another major benefit. By reducing the use of chemicals and improving resource efficiency, agricultural robots help minimize the environmental impact of farming [31]. Additionally, robotic systems enable continuous monitoring and data collection, allowing farmers to make informed decisions and improve overall farm management.

VI. CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS

widespread adoption. One of the major challenges is the high initial cost of robotic systems, which makes them less accessible to small and marginal farmers [16]. The lack of technical knowledge and expertise among farmers is another significant barrier.

Agricultural robots must operate in complex and dynamic environments, which makes their design and implementation challenging [3]. Variations in terrain, weather conditions, and crop types require robots to be highly adaptable and robust.

Maintenance and operational costs are additional concerns associated with agricultural robotics [17]. These systems require regular maintenance and technical support, which may not be readily available in rural areas. Data privacy and security issues are also emerging as important concerns due to the use of IoT and cloud-based systems [27].

Addressing these challenges is essential for the successful adoption and implementation of agricultural robotics in farming systems.

VII. FUTURE PROSPECTS

The future of agricultural robotics is highly promising, with continuous advancements in technology driving innovation. The development of fully autonomous robots capable of performing complex tasks without human intervention is expected to revolutionize agriculture [2]. These robots will be able to operate efficiently in diverse environments, improving productivity and sustainability.

Emerging technologies such as swarm robotics, where multiple robots work collaboratively, are expected to enhance agricultural operations [4]. Blockchain technology can also be integrated with agricultural robotics to improve transparency and traceability in the supply chain [28].

Government initiatives and policies supporting digital agriculture are likely to accelerate the adoption of robotics in farming [29]. In developing countries like India, affordable and scalable robotic solutions can significantly improve agricultural productivity and sustainability.

VIII. CONCLUSION

Agricultural robotics is transforming modern farming systems by introducing automation, precision, and efficiency. It addresses key challenges such as labor shortages, resource constraints, and environmental sustainability. Although there are challenges related to cost and adaptability, ongoing technological advancements are expected to drive widespread adoption. Agricultural robotics will play a vital role in ensuring food security and promoting sustainable agriculture in the future.

REFERENCES

- [1] M. Spagnuolo, G. Todde, M. Caria, N. Furnitto, G. Schillaci, and S. Failla, “Agricultural robotics: A technical review addressing challenges in sustainable crop production,” *Robotics*, 2025.
- [2] A. Hamrani, A. Allouhi, F. Z. Bouarab, and K. Jayachandran, “AI and robotics in agriculture: A systematic review of research trends (2015–2025),” *Crops*, 2025.
- [3] R. Ribeiro, P. Santos, and J. Lima, “Advances in agriculture robotics: A state-of-the-art review,” *Robotics*, 2021.
- [4] S. N. Young, “Intelligent robots for agriculture,” *Frontiers in Robotics and AI*, 2025.
- [5] World Bank, “Agriculture and labor trends,” 2021.
- [6] S. Casini, P. Ducange, F. Marcelloni, and L. Pollini, “Artificial intelligence in agri-robotics,” *Robotics*, 2026.
- [7] A. Navone, M. Martini, and M. Chiaberge, “Autonomous robotic pruning in agriculture,” 2025.
- [8] P. Lottes, J. Behley, A. Milioto, and C. Stachniss, “Vision-based crop and weed detection,” 2021.
- [9] R. Shamshiri, I. Hameed, and L. Pitonakova, “Robotic planting systems,” 2021.
- [10] P. Gonzalez-de-Santos, A. Ribeiro, and F. Lopez-Granados, “Spraying robots in agriculture,” 2022.
- [11] L. Zhang and J. Kovacs, “UAV applications in agriculture,” updated studies 2021–2023.
- [12] A. Sharma, A. Jain, P. Gupta, and V. Chowdary, “Machine learning in agriculture,” 2021.
- [13] P. Ray, “IoT applications in smart agriculture,” 2021.
- [14] J. Reid, Q. Zhang, N. Noguchi, and M. Dickson, “GPS in agriculture systems,” updated applications 2021.
- [15] Y. Kim, R. Evans, and W. Iversen, “Smart irrigation systems,” 2021.
- [16] A. Barnes, I. Soto, B. Beck, and A. Balafoutis, “Adoption barriers in agricultural robotics,” 2021.
- [17] A. Bechar, “Challenges in agricultural robotics,” 2022.
- [18] V. Saiz-Rubio and F. Rovira-Más, “Digital agriculture trends,” 2021.
- [19] R. Finger, S. Swinton, N. El Benni, and A. Walter, “Precision farming economics,” 2021.
- [20] M. Javaid, A. Haleem, R. Singh, and R. Suman, “Agriculture 4.0 technologies,” 2022.
- [21] D. Kamilaris and F. Prenafeta-Boldú, “Deep learning in agriculture,” 2021.
- [22] S. Wolfert, L. Ge, C. Verdouw, and M. Bogaardt, “Smart farming systems,” 2021.
- [23] C. Lehnert, I. Sa, and C. McCool, “Autonomous harvesting robots,” 2021.
- [24] D. Slaughter, D. Giles, and D. Downey, “Autonomous weed control,” updated 2021.
- [25] S. Sankaran, L. Khot, and A. Carter, “Crop monitoring technologies,” 2021.
- [26] B. Blackmore, “Robotics in agriculture,” updated 2021.

- [27] OECD, “Digital agriculture and data privacy,” 2021.
- [28] World Economic Forum, “Agriculture innovation,” 2022.
- [29] Government of India, “Digital agriculture mission,” 2023.
- [30] FAO, “Future of food and agriculture,” 2022.
- [31] UNEP, “Environmental impacts of agriculture,” 2021.
- [32] J. Lowenberg-DeBoer and B. Erickson, “Precision agriculture adoption,” 2021.
- [33] L. Rose and J. Chilvers, “Agriculture 4.0 transitions,” 2021.
- [34] B. Li, L. Xu, and J. Han, “Intelligent agricultural robots,” 2022.
- [35] L. Klerkx, E. Jakku, and P. Labarthe, “Digital innovation in agriculture,” 2021.
- [36] R. Bogue, “Robotics adoption in agriculture,” 2021.
- [37] P. Tripicchio, M. Satler, G. Dabisias, E. Ruffaldi, and C. Avizzano, “Smart farming systems,” 2021.
- [38] I. Sa, Z. Ge, F. Dayoub, B. Upcroft, and T. Perez, “Deep learning for crop detection,” 2021.
- [39] R. Pathak, P. Brown, and T. Best, “Climate change and agriculture,” 2021.
- [40] Frontiers, “Urban robotic agriculture systems,” 2025.
- [41] IEEE, “Robotics applications in agriculture,” 2022.
- [42] Elsevier, “Agricultural automation systems,” 2021.
- [43] Springer, “AI in agriculture,” 2022.
- [44] Nature, “Precision agriculture technologies,” 2021.
- [45] MDPI, “Smart farming innovations,” 2023.
- [46] ScienceDirect, “Agricultural robotics systems,” 2022.
- [47] Wiley, “Sustainable agriculture robotics,” 2021.
- [48] Taylor & Francis, “Automation in agriculture,” 2022.
- [49] Frontiers, “AI-enabled farming systems,” 2024.
- [50] IEEE Access, “Recent advances in agricultural robotics,” 2023.

Computer-Aided Recognition of *Saraca Asoca* Bark: A Deep Learning Approach

Ravjot Kaur¹, Abhilasha Jain², Ashish Baldi^{3*}

¹Research Scholar, Pharma Innovation Lab, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences & Technology, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab-151001, India

²Department of Computer Science and Engineering, Giani Zail Singh College Campus of Engineering & Technology, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab-151001, India

³Pharma Innovation Lab, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences & Technology, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda, Punjab 151001, India

*Corresponding author

Email: baldiashish@gmail.com, Mobile No.: +91 8968423848

Abstract

The contamination of *Saraca asoca* (Ashoka) with other herbs like *Polyalthia longifolia*, *Shorea robusta*, and *Bauhinia variegata* carries many threats to efficacy and safety. Traditional identification techniques may take too much time and quite subjective. This paper offers a method for non-destructive bark classification using deep learning, based on 1,000 high-resolution pictures with a 70:15:15 stratified distribution and data augmentation. Seven neural network models were assessed in this research, namely VGG16, ResNet50, InceptionV3, MobileNetV2, DenseNet121, VGG19, and EfficientNetB0. Five models displayed a 99% or higher level of accuracy, and three models (VGG16, DenseNet121, and MobileNetV2) demonstrated a perfect balance of all evaluation criteria. MobileNetV2 was the most effective in terms of computational performance and can be used for real-time purposes. The Grad-CAM results have shown that the models concentrate on the important characteristics of the bark. CNN models effectively detect herbal adulteration, serving as a supportive tool rather than a replacement for traditional methods.

Keywords: Adulteration, convolutional neural networks, deep learning, herbal authentication, Grad-CAM, *Saraca asoca*.

I. INTRODUCTION

Conventional medicinal herbs are still playing a pivotal role in ensuring health and well-being among people across the globe through their use as the only form of treatment for more than 75 percent of the world's population, but due to increasing consumerism, there is also a common trend of herbal medicines' adulteration, forming up to 20 percent to 30 percent of adulterated medicinal herbs being sold across the markets [1-2]. One such medicinal herb that is quite rare to find in the Indian subcontinent due to its high value is *Saraca asoca* [*S.asoca*], also known as Ashoka, which works effectively as a uterine tonic due to its pharmacological action and has been found to be adulterated at a rate of over 80 percent with *Polyalthia longifolia*, *Shorea robusta*, and *Bauhinia variegata*.

Which do not contain therapeutic phytochemicals present in Ashoka [3-5]. Despite the success of deep learning-based techniques for the plant identification task recently, almost all current

research works address leaf-based classification with the help of 1–3 CNN architectures alone, while there is an evident lack of bark-based plant authentication research, even though this plant part is the most frequently distributed, exploited, and adulterated one [6-8]. This study aims to address the aforementioned gap by employing seven modern CNN architectures (VGG16, VGG19, ResNet50, InceptionV3, MobileNetV2, DenseNet121, and EfficientNetB0) to perform classification of *S.asoca* bark authentication against its three most frequent adulterants based on 1,000 high-quality images, using a two-phase transfer learning approach. Unlike any previous studies conducted for such plant authentication, this paper aims not only at improving accuracy but also offers a multi-dimensional performance assessment based on a number of metrics, such as AUC-ROC and Brier scores, training and inference time, and visual interpretability with the Grad-CAM technique, as well as practical application via the GUI interface creation. The primary goal is to identify the optimal balance between classification accuracy and computational efficiency, offering a rapid, non-destructive, first-line screening tool to preserve Ashoka supply chain integrity and protect consumer health.

II. STATE OF THE ART

Numerous studies have been conducted on deep learning methods for medicinal plant recognition. For instance, Musyaffa created an 'IndoHerb' model that used transfer learning to identify medicinal plants using various CNN architectures, yielding results with over 90% accuracy [9]. Tiwari reached 95.5% accuracy through their customized CNN approach for medicinal leaf identification [10]. In dealing with complex image circumstances, image segmentation methods such as the Chan-Vese method were utilized to extract herbal leaves from complex backgrounds [11], and an image processing system for plant fungal disease identification was created by Pujari [12]. The state-of-the-art has also seen the development of highly scalable systems; for example, an AutoML system exhibited the impressive ability to classify 315 kinds of traditional Chinese medicine [13], and a ConvNeXt, a state-of-the-art architecture for various computer vision tasks, was actually applied to Chinese herbal medicine classification [14]. However, even with all these breakthroughs, massive adulteration remains one of the most pressing challenges faced by the herbal market, showing that 59% of the herbs examined were adulterated [15]. The majority of past studies have mainly concentrated on the identification of leaves, although bark has been identified as the most adulterated plant part [16]. Furthermore, not many studies have considered bark-based authentication that comes with additional challenges considering its complicated texture pattern. No comparative analysis between modern CNN architectures has been made regarding the identification and authentication of bark images for *S. asoca* and its adulterants. The current study fills this gap by creating a bark image dataset and conducting a systemic comparison of seven cutting-edge CNN models for binary authentication.

III. MATERIALS AND METHODS

A. Dataset Preparation

A total of 1,000 high-resolution images of tree barks were captured under controlled lighting conditions using mobile phone cameras (Samsung A23, Apple, and Vivo). A data set included 500 images of genuine *S. asoca* and 500 images of three common adulterants, namely,

Polyalthia longifolia (167 images), *Shorea robusta* (167 images), and *Bauhinia variegata* (166 images). Dataset composition and distribution are detailed in Table 1.

TABLE I
DATASET COMPOSITION AND DISTRIBUTION.

Category	Species	Number of Images	Purpose
Authentic Ashoka	<i>Saraca asoca</i>	500	Model Training & Validation
Mixed Adulterants	<i>Polyalthia longifolia</i> <i>Shorea robusta</i> <i>Bauhinia variegata</i>	167 167 166	Comparative Analysis Comparative Analysis Comparative Analysis
Total Dataset	4 Species	1000	Complete Analysis

B. Dataset Partitioning

To maintain class proportions across subsets, a stratified 70:15:15 split was applied using a Python script: 700 images for training (350 Ashoka), 150 for validation (75+75), and 150 for testing. The dataset partitioning strategy is illustrated in Fig. 1.

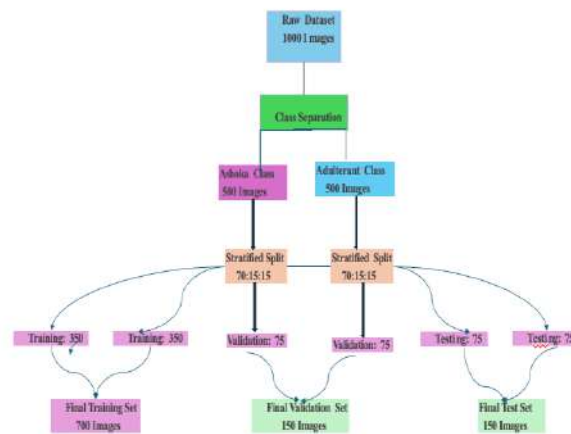


Fig. 1. Dataset partitioning flowchart Illustrating the stratified sampling methodology that maintained balanced class distribution across training, Validation, And Test Sets.

C. Preprocessing and Augmentation

The images were resized to 224×224 pixels (299×299 for Inception V3) and normalized to (0, 1). To avoid overfitting and simulate real-world carnations, the training set underwent extensive augmentation (rotation $\pm 25^\circ$, shifts $\pm 30\%$; zoom $\pm 30\%$; shear $\pm 30\%$; brightness 80-120%, and horizontal/vertical flips). Data augmentation parameters are specified in Table 2.

TABLE II
COMPREHENSIVE DATA AUGMENTATION PARAMETERS.

Transformation Type	Parameter Value	Implementation	Purpose
Rotation Range	$\pm 25^\circ$	Rotation range = 25	Orientation invariance

Width Shift Range	$\pm 30\%$	Width shift range = 0.3	Horizontal position invariance
Height Shift Range	$\pm 30\%$	Height shift range = 0.3	Vertical position invariance
Horizontal Flip	Boolean	Horizontal flip=True	Reflection symmetry
Vertical Flip	Boolean	Vertical flip=True	Vertical symmetry
Zoom Range	$\pm 30\%$	Zoom range = 0.3	Scale invariance
Shear Range	$\pm 30\%$	Shear range = 0.3	Perspective invariance
Brightness Range	80-120%	Brightness range=[0.8, 1.2]	Lighting robustness
Channel Shift Range	$\pm 20\%$	Channel shift range=0.2	Color invariance
Fill Mode	Nearest	Fill mode = 'nearest'	Edge pixel handling

D. Deep Learning Architectures

Seven pre-trained CNN models based on the TensorFlow 2.x Keras library were implemented, including VGG16, VGG19, ResNet50, InceptionV3, MobileNetV2, DenseNet121, and EfficientNetB0. Pretrained weights from ImageNet were used to initialize the models. Custom classification heads (1024→512→256 neurons) with batch normalization, dropout (0.5-0.3), and L2 regularization ($\lambda = 0.01$) were used. An output activation layer with a sigmoid function was used for binary classification. The unified model architecture is depicted in Fig. 2. Model architecture specifications are summarized in Table 3.

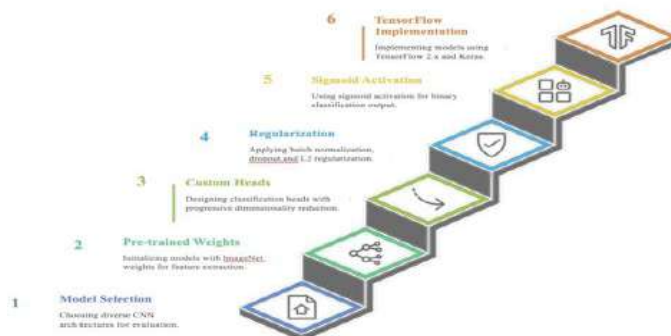


Fig. 2. Unified Model Architecture Flowchart showing the common architectural pattern across all seven models with custom classification heads.

TABLE III
MODEL ARCHITECTURES AND SPECIFICATIONS.

Model	Input Size	Factors	Base Architecture	Feature Extraction	Custom Layers	Fine-tuning
Efficient NetB0	224×224	4,049,571	Compound Scaling	MBConv Blocks	1024-512-256	Last 30 layers
Inception v3	299×299	22,852,161	Inception Modules	Parallel Conv	1024-512-256	Last 50 layers
VGG16	224×224	14,998,209	Sequential	3×3 Conv Stack	1024-512-256	Last 20 layers
VGG19	224×224	20,702,785	Deep Sequential	3×3 Conv Stack	1024-512-256	Last 25 layers
Mobile NetV2	224×224	2,532,545	Linear Bottleneck	Inverted Residuals	1024-512-256	Last 40 layers
ResNet50	224×224	24,318,209	Residual Learning	Identity Mapping	512-256	Frozen Base
DenseNet121	224×224	7,435,969	Dense Connectivity	Feature Reuse	1024-512-256	Last 50 layers

E. Transfer Learning and Training

A two-phase approach was used: only custom heads with frozen base layers were trained in Phase 1 (learning rate 0.0001); upper layers were selectively unfrozen for fine-tuning in Phase 2 (learning rate 0.00001). Binary cross-entropy loss and the Adam optimizer were applied over 15-25 epochs with a batch size of 32. Model checkpointing, early stopping patience 8-10, and learning rate reduction factor 0.2 were examples of callbacks. The two-phase transfer learning method is outline in Fig. 3.

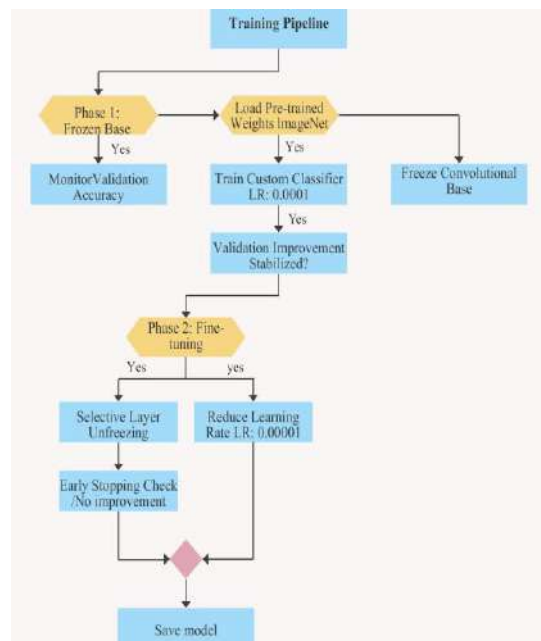


Fig. 3. Flowchart describing the training strategy approach with frozen base training followed by careful fine-tuning.

F. EVALUATION METRICS

Classification accuracy, precision, recall, F1-score, AUC-ROC, AUC-PR, Brier score, training time, and inference time were all evaluated using a multi-dimensional framework. 95% confidence intervals for statistical robustness were produced bootstrap resampling (1000 iterations).

G. Model Interpretability (Grad-CAM)

Gradient information from each model's final convolutional layers, such as "block5_conv3" for VGG16 and "relu out" for MobileNetV2 was used to create Grad-CAM visualizations. To find distinguishing bark characteristics, heatmaps were superimposed on the original photos.

H. Computational Environment

AN NVIDIA GPU running Python 3.8, TensorFlow 2.8.0, and CUDA 11.2 was used for the experiments. For reproducibility, the number of random seeds was set at 42. All seven architectures were compared fairly because of identical preprocessing and data splits.

I. Development of AI-Powered Herbal Authentication Interface

The Tkinter framework, which makes use of the optimized MobileNetV2 architecture, was used to create the GUI application known as "Herbal Medicine Classifier". The application allows for dual input, either through image upload or camera access; provides automatic preprocessing (resizing to 224 x 224 pixels, normalization), and shows results of classification with their confidence scores (above 90%: highly genuine; between 75% and 90%: genuine; between 60% and 75%: relatively genuine; below 60%: not genuine).

IV. RESULTS

A. Overall Performance Hierarchy

There was a distinct performance hierarchy among the seven deep learning models. While ResNet50 and EfficientNetB0 lagged considerably, five architectures achieved near-perfect or perfect classification accuracy (>99%). VGG16, DenseNet121, and MobileNetV2 all achieved 100% accuracy, followed by VGG19 (99.7%) and InceptionV3 (99.0%); EfficientNetB0 (79.0%) and ResNet50 (68.0%) performed poorly. Comprehensive performance metrics are presented in Table 4.

TABLE IV
COMPREHENSIVE PERFORMANCE METRICS ARE PRESENTED.

Model	Accuracy	Precision	Recall	F1-Score	AUC-ROC	AUC-PR	Brier Score	Training Time (hr)	Inference Time (ms)
VGG16	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	0.000	8.71	1003.6
VGG19	0.997	0.995	0.997	0.997	1.000	1.000	0.003	16.40	1212.1
DenseNet121	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	0.003	5.92	654.3
MobileNetV2	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	0.001	3.78	754.1

InceptionV3	0.990	0.990	0.990	0.990	1.000	1.000	0.010	6.14	367.2
EfficientNet B0	0.790	0.795	0.785	0.785	0.890	0.878	0.245	5.30	253.7
ResNet50	0.680	0.680	0.680	0.680	0.745	0.774	0.200	4.85	289.4

B. Classification Accuracy and Balanced Metrics

For both Ashoka and adulterants, VGG16, DenseNet121, and MobileNetV2 showed comparable recall and precision across all 300 correctly classified test samples. For an Ashoka image, VGG19 was only wrong once, whereas InceptionV3 was wrong three times. The results of less accurate models showed asymmetry; for example, EfficientNetB0 favored the identification of adulterants (recall 0.87 vs. 0.70 for Ashoka). Confusion matrices for all the models are displayed in Fig. 4.

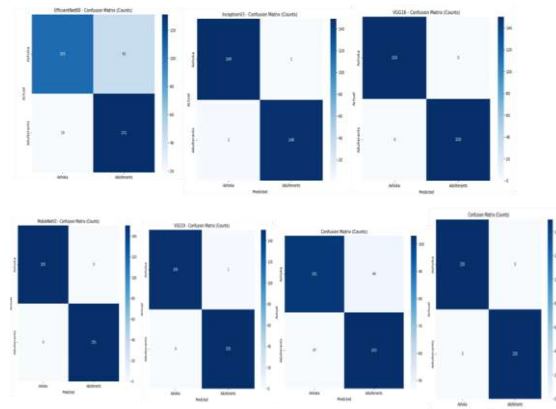


Fig. 4. Confusion matrices for (EfficientNetB0, InceptionV3, VGG16, DenseNet121, MobileNetV2, VGG19, DenseNet12, and ResNet50 respectively).

C. Probabilistic Performance and Calibration

The five models demonstrated their ability to effectively separate classes with an ideal AUC-ROC score of 1.000. VGG16 (0.000), MobileNetV2 (0.001), DenseNet121 (0.003), VGG19 (0.003), and InceptionV3 (0.010) all had Brier scores that showed satisfactory calibration. The confidence factor for the models was consistently close to 50%, proving their calibration and absence of over-confidence. ROC curves for all seven models are indicated in Fig. 5. Probabilistic and calibration metrics are detailed in Table 5

TABLE V
PROBABILISTIC PERFORMANCE AND CALIBRATION METRICS.

Model	AUC-ROC	AUC-PR	Brier Score	Confidence Factor	Mean Correct Confidence	Mean Incorrect Confidence
VGG16	1.000	1.000	0.000	50.1%	0.501	N/A
VGG19	1.000	1.000	0.003	51.7%	0.517	0.523
DenseNet121	1.000	1.000	0.003	50.5%	0.505	N/A
MobileNetV2	1.000	1.000	0.001	50.2%	0.502	N/A

InceptionV3	1.000	1.000	0.010	49.6%	0.496	0.460
EfficientNetB0	0.890	0.878	0.245	49.9%	0.499	0.502
ResNet50	0.745	0.774	0.200	48.2%	0.482	0.493

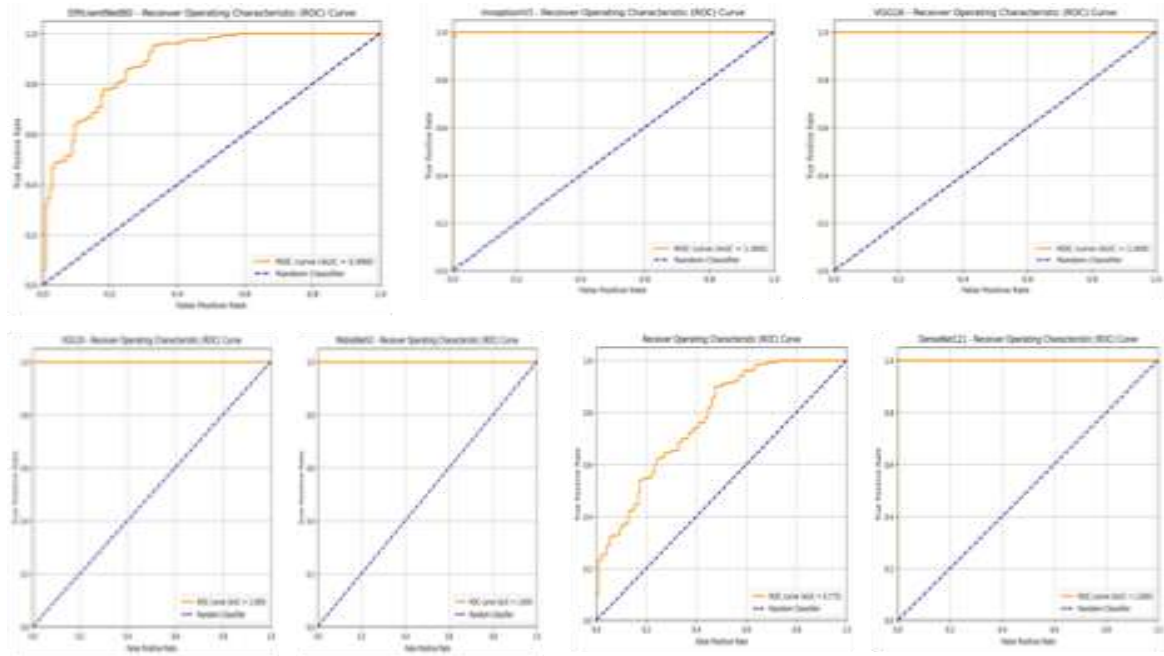


Fig. 5. Receiver Operating Characteristic (ROC) Curves for All Seven CNN Models.

D. Computational Efficiency

The second-fastest model, VGG19, took 16.40 hours to train, while MobileNetV2 took just 3.78 hours. Additionally, it had the smallest size (16.16MB) and parameters (4.24) of all six models. The inference rate varied significantly; the fastest model was EfficientNetB0 (253.7 ms/image, 3.94 FPS), and the slowest was VGG19 (1212.1 ms/image, 0.83 FPS).

E. Interpretability of Model (Grad-CAM)

Grad-CAM images revealed that all of the high-performing models focused on biological bark features that are known to be used in botany, such as fissures, lenticles, color textures, and contours. This suggests that models have acquired informative traits. Grad-CAM visualizations of all models are provided in Fig. 6.

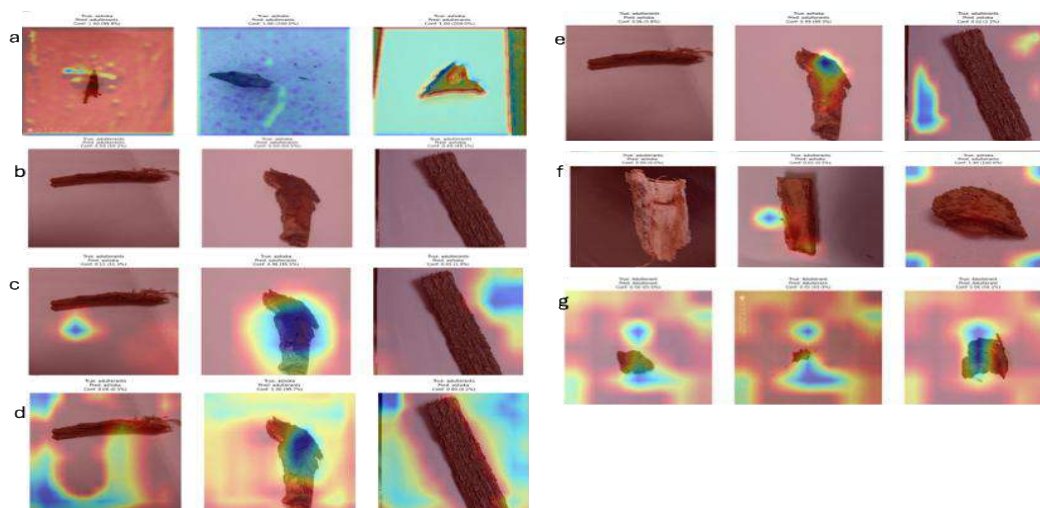


Fig.6. Grad-CAM Visualizations for all Models: [a] DenseNet121, [b] EfficientNetB0, [c] Inception V3, [d] VGG16, [e] VGG19, [f] MobileNetV2, [g] Resnet50.

F. Statistical Reliability

For the best models, Bootstrap confidence intervals (1000 iterations) showed outstanding statistical reliability; for accuracy and F1-score, VGG16 and DenseNetV2 showed 95% CI (0.0987-1.000). The largest CI {0.672-0.720} was displayed by ResNet50, suggesting low reliability and poor stability.

G. Practical Recommendation

Based on multi-criteria evaluation, MobileNetV2 is the most practical choice for real-world deployment due to its perfect accuracy, fastest training time (3.78 hours), compact model size (16.16 MB), and efficient inference (754.1 ms/image). For applications prioritizing inference speed over training efficiency, EfficientNetB0 offers the fastest predictions (3.94 FPS), albeit with lower accuracy.

H. Interface Performance and Practical Deployment Metrics

The MobileNetV2-based classifier achieved 100 percent accuracy on bark samples, with an average inference time of 0.85 seconds on a standard laptop. The system runs offline in Python and supports both image upload and real-time image capture, allowing users to classify *S. asoca* and its adulterants directly. Images captured using the interface and manually uploaded were correctly classified after selecting the analyze image option. The model requires only 450MB RAM, making it lightweight and suitable for standard systems. The system demonstrates strong potential as a fast and practical screening tool for herbal authentication. Workflow of the herbal medicine classifier showing herb selection, image input, AI-based analysis, and classification of samples as authentic or adulterated with confidence scores in Fig. 7.

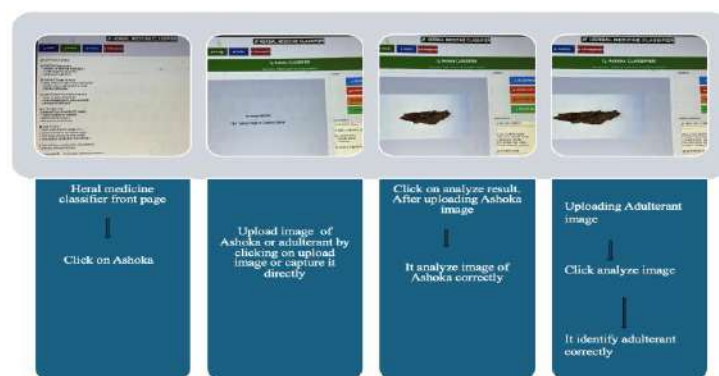


Fig. 7. Workflow of AI-Based Herbal Medicine Classification System

V. DISCUSSION

In recent years, medicinal plants have been classified with great accuracy through deep learning techniques; however, nearly all studies use leaf-based identification with very few focusing on the bark, which is arguably the most adulterated part of a plant [17]. This study directly targets that area. The impressive accuracies of VGG16, DenseNet121, and MobileNetV2 (all having 100% accuracy) coincide with existing scientific evidence suggesting the potential of CNNs in medicinal plant recognition [18]. The vast difference between the accuracies of the top five models (>99%) and low-performing models such as ResNet50 (only 68%) shows the importance of choosing an effective model architecture. Hierarchical feature extraction models are better at identifying bark textures [19-20]. The models identified biologically significant features of bark images, such as lenticel arrangements and color textures, according to the visual analysis using the Grad-CAM technique. In practice, while VGG16 had perfect accuracy, its long training time (8.71 hours) and slow inference (1003.6 ms) make it impractical. MobileNetV2 is the best option because of its flawless accuracy, quickest training time, small size, and effective inference. This work offers CNN-based tools as an additional first-line screening method in addition to DNA barcoding [21-23]. The dataset was captured under controlled conditions. Further research investigates real-world variability and expands to multi-class classification for specific adulterant identification [24].

VI CONCLUSION

In this work, through the application of seven different CNN structures, we have succeeded in implementing an effective deep learning framework for the authentication of the bark of *S.asoca*. It has been observed that the optimal architecture is the MobileNetV2, which provides 100 percent accuracy with the least training time (3.78 hours), compact file size (16.16 MB), and faster inference speed (754.1 ms). Grad-CAM visualizations ensured interpretability and domain acceptance by confirming the model learned botanically relevant bark features (fissure patterns, lenticel arrangements). This work introduces an innovative, rapid, non-destructive, and highly accurate first-line screening tool for combating herbal adulteration, thereby protecting consumer health and preserving the integrity of traditional medicine systems.

CONFLICT OF INTEREST

The authors declared no conflicts of interest.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

Ravjot Kaur was responsible for the literature review and writing of the original manuscript. Dr. Abhilasha Jain provided inputs to understand the concepts. Dr. Ashish Baldi conceptualized and edited the manuscript

REFERENCE

- [1] World Health Organization, *WHO Global Report on Traditional and Complementary Medicine*. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO, 2019.
- [2] A. Sembiyaa, J. Dharshini, B. Rashmika, M. Manoj, S. Velayuthaprabhu, A. A. Robert, and A. V. Anand, “Integrated molecular strategies for improving traditional Chinese medicinal plants,” in *Biotechnology, Multiple Omics, and Precision Breeding in Medicinal Plants*, CRC Press, 2025, pp. 231–247.
- [3] R. Kaur, T. Choudhary, A. Jain, and A. Baldi, “Recent prospects in leveraging artificial intelligence for phytochemical research,” *Pharmacognosy Research*, vol. 17, no. 4, pp. 1116–1126, 2025.
- [4] R. Kaur, T. Choudhary, R. Kaur, M. Garg, N. S. Chauhan, A. Jain, and A. Baldi, “Adulteration in herbal medicines: A comprehensive review on types, detection, and health impacts,” *International Journal of Drug Delivery Technology*, vol. 15, no. 3, 2025.
- [5] R. Kaur, A. Baldi, and A. Baldi, “Artificial intelligence in herbal drug authentication: Revolutionizing identification, adulterant detection and standardization,” *Current Computer Science*, early access, 2025.
- [6] S. Naman, S. Sharma, and A. Baldi, “Identification of spices and their adulterants by integrating machine learning and analytical techniques: A representative study,” *International Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Drug Research*, vol. 16, no. 3, pp. 359–369, 2024.
- [7] A. Sembiyaa, J. Dharshini, B. Rashmika, M. Manoj, S. Velayuthaprabhu, A. A. Robert, and A. V. Anand, “Integrated molecular strategies for improving traditional Chinese medicinal plants,” in *Biotechnology, Multiple Omics, and Precision Breeding in Medicinal Plants*, CRC Press, 2025, pp. 231–247.
- [8] S. H. Lee, C. S. Chan, P. Wilkin, and P. Remagnino, “Deep-plant: Plant identification with convolutional neural networks,” in *Proc. IEEE Int. Conf. Image Processing (ICIP)*, 2015, pp. 452–456. Amin, A., & Park, S. (2025). Chemotaxonomy, an efficient tool for medicinal plant identification: Current trends and limitations. *Plants*, 14(14), 2234.
- [9] F. Musyaffa, “IndoHerb: A transfer learning-based identification system for Indonesian medicinal plants,” *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, vol. 207, p. 107750, 2023.

- [10] V. Tiwari, R. C. Joshi, and M. K. Dutta, “Deep neural network for multi-class classification of medicinal plant leaves,” *Expert Systems*, vol. 39, no. 8, p. e13041, 2022.
- [11] A. Chen, B. Li, and C. Zhang, “Image segmentation of herbal leaves using the Chan–Vese method in complex backgrounds,” *Journal of Herbal Vision & Image Processing*, vol. 15, no. 4, pp. 123–134, 2023.
- [12] J. D. Pujari, R. Yakkundimath, and A. S. Byadgi, “Image processing based detection of fungal diseases in plants,” *Procedia Computer Science*, vol. 46, pp. 1802–1808, 2015.
- [13] W. Chen, J. Tong, R. He, P. Chen, and Z. Chen, “An easy method for identifying 315 categories of commonly-used Chinese herbal medicines based on automated image recognition using AutoML platforms,” *Informatics in Medicine Unlocked*, vol. 25, p. 100607, 2021.
- [14] J. Miao, Y. Huang, Z. Wang, Z. Wu, and J. Lv, “Image recognition of traditional Chinese medicine based on deep learning,” *Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology*, vol. 11, p. 1199803, 2023.
- [15] S. G. Newmaster, M. Grguric, D. Shanmughanandhan, S. Ramalingam, and S. Ragupathy, “DNA barcoding detects contamination and substitution in North American herbal products,” *BMC Medicine*, vol. 11, no. 1, p. 222, 2013.
- [16] A. Amin and S. Park, “Chemotaxonomy, an efficient tool for medicinal plant identification: Current trends and limitations,” *Plants*, vol. 14, no. 14, p. 2234, 2025.
- [17] A. C. Raclariu, M. Heinrich, M. C. Ichim, and H. J. de Boer, “Benefits and limitations of DNA barcoding and metabarcoding in herbal product authentication,” *Phytochemical Analysis*, vol. 28, no. 2, pp. 123–135, 2017.
- [18] J. Wäldchen and P. Mäder, “Plant species identification using computer vision techniques,” *Ecological Informatics*, vol. 47, pp. 1–8, 2018. Huang, G., Liu, Z., Van Der Maaten, L., & Weinberger, K. Q. (2017). Densely connected convolutional networks. In *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Computer Vision and Pattern Recognition* (pp. 4700–4708).
- [19] M. Sandler, A. Howard, M. Zhu, A. Zhmoginov, and L. C. Chen, “MobileNetV2: Inverted residuals and linear bottlenecks,” in *Proc. IEEE Conf. Computer Vision and Pattern Recognition (CVPR)*, 2018, pp. 4510–4520.
- [20] M. Tan and Q. V. Le, “EfficientNet: Rethinking model scaling for convolutional neural networks,” in *Proc. Int. Conf. Machine Learning (ICML)*, 2019, pp. 6105–6114.
- [21] S. Naman and A. Baldi, “Artificial intelligence-based smart identification system using herbal images: Decision making using various machine learning models,” in

Applications of Optimization and Machine Learning in Image Processing and IoT, Chapman and Hall/CRC Press, 2023, pp. 123–155. Nurullah, M. (2024).

[22] C. Umarani and K. Baskaran, “An explainable deep learning model for identification and classification of herbal plant species based on leaf images,” *Pakistan Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, vol. 61, no. 3, 2024.

[23] R. Srirama, J. U. Santhosh Kumar, G. S. Seethapathy, S. G. Newmaster, S. Ragupathy, K. N. Ganeshaiah, R. Uma Shaanker, and G. Ravikanth, “Species adulteration in the herbal trade: Causes, consequences and mitigation,” *Drug Safety*, vol. 40, no. 8, pp. 651–661, 2017.

[24] A. Upadhyay, N. S. Chandel, K. P. Singh, S. K. Chakraborty, B. M. Nandede, M. Kumar, and A. Elbeltagi, “Deep learning and computer vision in plant disease detection: A comprehensive review of techniques, models, and trends in precision agriculture,” *Artificial Intelligence Review*, vol. 58, no. 3, p. 92, 2025.

Eco-Friendly Farming Systems for Sustainable Agriculture: A Comprehensive Review

Vikas^{*1}, Aalam Singh Brar^{*2} and Adit Singla^{#3}

**Research Scholar, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) – 151001 India*

¹vickydhiman82644@gmail.com

²brar00137@gmail.com [#]Assistant Professor, School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering, Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) – 151001 India

³aditsingla01@gmail.com

Abstract - The accelerating degradation of natural ecosystems and the mounting pressure of global food demand have necessitated a fundamental shift toward eco-friendly farming systems that balance productivity with environmental stewardship. This review paper systematically examines the current landscape of sustainable agricultural practices, drawing on 40 peer-reviewed Scopus-indexed publications spanning agroecology, organic farming, conservation agriculture, precision agriculture, and integrated soil-crop management. The paper synthesises evidence on how practices such as no-till cultivation, cover cropping, biological nitrogen fixation, integrated pest management, and agroforestry can collectively reduce greenhouse gas emissions, improve soil carbon sequestration, and enhance water-use efficiency without compromising crop yields. Key findings indicate that eco-friendly systems can reduce agrochemical inputs by 30-50% while maintaining or even improving farm profitability through lower input costs and premium market prices for certified organic produce. The review further highlights the critical role of microbial soil health, mycorrhizal networks, and organic matter cycling in sustaining long-term agricultural productivity. Challenges including technology adoption barriers, policy gaps, smallholder capacity, and the scalability of sustainable practices in low-income nations are critically analysed. The paper concludes with a roadmap for transitioning conventional farming toward regenerative, climate-resilient models, underscoring the urgent need for interdisciplinary collaboration among agronomists, policymakers, ecologists, and farming communities. These insights contribute to the growing body of evidence supporting the viability and necessity of eco-friendly farming as a cornerstone of global food security and ecological sustainability.

Keywords - sustainable agriculture, agroecology, organic farming, conservation agriculture, soil health, precision agriculture, climate-smart farming, biodiversity

I. Introduction

Modern agriculture faces a profound paradox: the need to feed a projected world population of 9.7 billion by 2050 while simultaneously reversing the ecological damage caused by decades of intensive, chemical-dependent farming. Conventional agricultural practices -- characterised by heavy reliance on synthetic fertilisers, pesticides, deep tillage, and

monoculture cropping -- have driven dramatic productivity gains over the twentieth century but at enormous environmental cost [1]. Soil degradation, aquifer depletion, loss of agrobiodiversity, and substantial contributions to anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions now threaten the very foundations upon which food production rests [2][3].

Eco-friendly farming systems offer a paradigm shift by integrating ecological principles with agronomic management. Rather than maximising short-term yields through external inputs, these systems seek to optimise long-term productivity by leveraging natural processes -- biological nitrogen fixation, natural pest regulation, mycorrhizal nutrient transfer, and organic matter decomposition [4][5]. Evidence from long-term field experiments across diverse agro-climatic zones consistently demonstrates that well-designed sustainable systems can achieve yields comparable to conventional systems while delivering substantial environmental co-benefits [6][7].

The urgency of this transition is underscored by multiple intersecting crises. Climate change is already altering precipitation patterns and increasing the frequency of extreme weather events, reducing the reliability of conventional production systems [8]. Simultaneously, input price volatility, tightening environmental regulations, and growing consumer demand for sustainably produced food are creating powerful economic incentives for farmers to adopt alternative practices [9]. Policy frameworks such as the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals -- particularly SDG 2 (Zero Hunger) and SDG 15 (Life on Land) -- have further elevated sustainable agriculture on the global agenda [10].

This review synthesises the scientific literature on eco-friendly farming systems with a focus on five interconnected thematic areas: (i) soil health and organic matter management, (ii) agroecological crop management, (iii) water and nutrient efficiency, (iv) biodiversity and ecosystem services, and (v) socioeconomic dimensions of sustainable transitions. By integrating findings from Scopus-indexed research spanning five continents and multiple cropping systems, the paper aims to provide a holistic evidence base for researchers, practitioners, and policymakers.

II. Soil Health and Organic Matter Management

A. Soil Carbon Sequestration

Soil organic carbon (SOC) is widely regarded as the most reliable indicator of soil health, influencing nutrient cycling, water retention, aggregate stability, and biological activity [4]. Agricultural soils have historically been major sources of CO₂ release, having lost between 50-70% of their pre-agricultural SOC stocks due to tillage, residue removal, and continuous cropping without adequate organic amendments [11]. Reversing this trend through sequestration-oriented management is now recognised as one of the most cost-effective strategies for climate change mitigation [31].

Conservation tillage and no-till systems consistently increase SOC in the surface soil horizon (0-20 cm) by reducing oxidative decomposition and promoting the formation of stable macro-aggregates that physically protect organic matter [17]. Long-term experiments in temperate and tropical regions report SOC increases of 0.1-0.5 Mg C ha⁻¹ yr⁻¹ under no-till management compared with conventional tillage, with greater gains in fine-textured soils [29].

Application of organic amendments -- composts, biochar, crop residues, and green manures -- further accelerates SOC accumulation [24].

B. Biological Soil Activity

The soil microbiome -- comprising bacteria, fungi, archaea, protozoa, and nematodes - - mediates virtually every biogeochemical process upon which plant nutrition depends [30]. Eco-friendly farming systems promote microbial diversity and functional redundancy by avoiding synthetic pesticide applications that suppress non-target organisms and by providing diverse organic substrates that support heterogeneous microbial communities [5]. The DOK long-term experiment in Switzerland demonstrated that organic farming systems maintained significantly higher microbial biomass, enzyme activity, and earthworm populations compared with conventionally managed plots [5].

Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) play a critical role in phosphorus acquisition, with mycorrhizal hyphae extending the effective rooting volume by orders of magnitude [30]. Synthetic phosphorus fertilisation at high rates suppresses AMF colonisation by reducing root exudate signals that trigger symbiosis, creating a dependency cycle that undermines long-term soil fertility [27]. Eco-friendly systems that rely on biologically mediated nutrient supply maintain robust AMF networks that enhance plant access to phosphorus, zinc, and other relatively immobile nutrients [39].

III. Agroecological Crop Management

A. Crop Diversification and Rotation

Monoculture cropping systems, while operationally simple, are inherently fragile due to their narrow genetic base, susceptibility to specialist pests and pathogens, and tendency to exhaust specific nutrient fractions [2]. Diversified crop rotations disrupt pest and disease cycles, improve nutrient use efficiency through complementary rooting depths and nutrient demands, and reduce the need for external chemical inputs [36]. Meta-analyses of globally distributed experiments consistently show that crop diversification increases mean yields by 10-25% relative to monocultures while significantly reducing yield variability across years [8].

Legume integration is a cornerstone of eco-friendly rotation design. Through symbiotic associations with nitrogen-fixing *Rhizobium* bacteria, leguminous crops can supply 50-300 kg N ha⁻¹ season⁻¹ to subsequent nonlegume crops, substantially reducing the need for synthetic nitrogen fertilisation [22]. Research across sub-Saharan Africa, South Asia, and Latin America demonstrates that maize-legume intercropping systems reliably improve total land productivity, expressed as land equivalent ratios above 1.0, while simultaneously improving household dietary diversity and resilience to market price shocks [13].

B. Cover Crops and Green Manures

Cover crops serve multiple ecological functions including erosion control, weed suppression, nitrogen fixation or immobilisation, moisture conservation, and the provision of habitat for beneficial insects [23]. When incorporated as green manures or left as surface mulches, they deliver substantial quantities of readily decomposable organic matter that feeds soil microbial communities and contributes to SOC build-up [17]. The adoption of cover crops

as part of eco-friendly farming systems has expanded significantly in temperate regions over the past two decades, supported by strong agronomic evidence and policy incentives [36].

In tropical rain-fed systems, cover crops of *Mucuna pruriens* (velvet bean) and *Canavalia ensiformis* (jack bean) have demonstrated the ability to suppress *Striga* weed infestations that devastate cereal production across sub-Saharan Africa, while providing 80-150 kg N ha⁻¹ to subsequent maize crops [11]. These dual benefits -- weed control and nitrogen supply -- make cover cropping particularly attractive to resource-constrained smallholder farmers who cannot afford herbicides or synthetic fertilisers [35].

IV. Water and Nutrient Efficiency

A. Water-Use Efficiency in Sustainable Systems

Agriculture accounts for approximately 70% of global freshwater withdrawals, and improving water-use efficiency (WUE) is central to the sustainability agenda [12]. Eco-friendly practices that increase soil organic matter improve water-holding capacity, reduce runoff, and lower the irrigation requirements of crops. No-till systems with maintained surface residue mulches can reduce evaporative losses from the soil surface by 20-40% compared with bare, tilled surfaces -- a benefit particularly valuable in dryland and semi-arid production systems [3].

Precision irrigation technologies, including drip and subsurface irrigation combined with soil moisture monitoring systems, allow farmers to apply water with far greater spatial and temporal precision than conventional flood or furrow methods [15]. Studies in Mediterranean and South Asian contexts report WUE improvements of 30-50% with precision irrigation, with no reduction in yield and in many cases an improvement due to better root-zone oxygen conditions and reduced disease pressure associated with excessive moisture [12].

B. Integrated Nutrient Management

Integrated nutrient management (INM) combines organic and inorganic nutrient sources to optimise plant nutrition while minimising environmental losses. Rather than replacing all synthetic fertilisation with organic sources, INM seeks the optimal combination that sustains productivity while building soil organic matter and reducing nitrate leaching and nitrous oxide emissions [7]. Long-term INM trials in China, India, and Brazil consistently show that combined applications of 50% organic plus 50% recommended mineral fertiliser achieve yields equal to or exceeding those of full mineral fertilisation while significantly improving SOC and microbial biomass carbon [21].

Phosphorus management in eco-friendly systems requires particular attention given that global phosphate rock reserves are finite and unevenly distributed [27]. Recycling of organic phosphorus through composting, anaerobic digestion, and struvite precipitation from wastewater offers a pathway to partially close the phosphorus cycle at farm and landscape scales [11]. Additionally, the promotion of mycorrhizal associations and phosphate-solubilising bacteria enhances the bioavailability of native soil phosphorus fractions inaccessible to conventional crop varieties [39].

V. Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services

A. Above-Ground Biodiversity

Agricultural landscapes shaped by eco-friendly management support far richer assemblages of wild species than their intensively managed counterparts. Organic farms in Europe host significantly higher plant species richness, pollinator abundance, and bird diversity than adjacent conventional farms, with consistent differences documented across multiple taxa and agricultural regions [14]. These biodiversity benefits extend beyond intrinsic conservation value, delivering economically important ecosystem services including pollination, natural pest control, and hydrological regulation that partially offset production costs [9].

Agroforestry systems -- which integrate woody perennials with annual crops and/or livestock -- represent one of the most biodiversity-rich eco-friendly systems. Shade trees in coffee and cocoa plantations support specialist bird communities that provide biological pest control, while diverse timber-crop associations maintain habitat connectivity in fragmented agricultural landscapes [33]. The multistrata agroforestry systems of Southeast Asia and Central America sustain plant diversity approaching that of secondary forests while delivering commercially valuable timber, fruit, and annual crop products [36].

B. Integrated Pest Management

Integrated pest management (IPM) provides a systematic framework for minimising pesticide use through the prioritisation of preventive and biological control methods [28]. IPM-based eco-friendly farming systems rely on the conservation and augmentation of natural enemies -- predatory insects, parasitoid wasps, and entomopathogenic fungi -- to regulate pest populations below economically damaging thresholds without chemical intervention. Research across vegetable, cereal, and fruit crop systems demonstrates that well-implemented IPM reduces insecticide applications by 50-90% while maintaining commercially acceptable pest damage levels [6].

Push-pull technology, developed for cereal systems in East Africa, exemplifies the innovative potential of eco-friendly IPM. By intercropping maize with *Desmodium*, which repels stem borers, and surrounding fields with Napier grass, which attracts and traps borers, smallholders achieve effective pest control without any pesticide application while simultaneously benefiting from improved soil nitrogen and reduced *Striga* infestation [2]. Adoption of push-pull across hundreds of thousands of farms in Kenya, Uganda, and Tanzania demonstrates that ecological intensification at scale is achievable when technologies are co-designed with farming communities.

VI. Climate Change Mitigation and Adaptation

Agriculture is both a major contributor to and a potential mitigator of climate change. The sector accounts for 10-12% of global anthropogenic greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions when direct farm operations are considered, rising to approximately 20-25% when land-use change, deforestation, and supply-chain emissions are included [20]. Methane from ruminant livestock and rice paddies, nitrous oxide from fertilised soils, and CO₂ from land clearing are the dominant agricultural GHG sources, each requiring distinct management approaches [16].

Eco-friendly farming systems offer multiple GHG mitigation pathways. SOC sequestration through conservation tillage and organic amendments directly removes CO₂ from the atmosphere and stores it in a relatively stable form [31]. Improved nitrogen

management -- through legume-based biological fixation, precise organic and mineral fertiliser applications, and use of nitrification inhibitors -- reduces N₂O emissions from agricultural soils, which have a global warming potential 298 times that of CO₂ over a 100-year horizon [20]. Climate-smart livestock management can reduce enteric methane emissions by 15-30% while maintaining or improving animal productivity [32].

Adaptation to climate change requires farming systems that are resilient to increased temperature variability, altered precipitation regimes, and heightened pest and disease pressure [8]. Diversified, eco-friendly systems are inherently more resilient than monocultures by virtue of their functional diversity and multiple production channels. Crop genetic diversity -- maintained on-farm through traditional varieties and enhanced through participatory breeding -- provides the adaptive potential necessary to respond to locally specific climate shifts [19]. Agroforestry systems provide microclimate buffering for both crops and livestock, reducing heat and moisture stress during extreme weather events [38].

VII. Precision Agriculture and Digital Technologies

Precision agriculture technologies -- including remote sensing, GPS-guided machinery, variable-rate application systems, and sensor-based monitoring -- offer powerful tools for optimising eco-friendly farming systems by matching management inputs to the spatial and temporal variability of crop and soil conditions [15]. By applying fertilisers, pesticides, and irrigation water only where and when they are needed, precision systems reduce both input costs and environmental losses without compromising yield potential. Studies across major grain-producing regions consistently demonstrate input savings of 15-25% with no reduction in profitability under precision management [15].

The integration of big data analytics and artificial intelligence into farm management decision support systems represents the frontier of eco-friendly precision agriculture [19]. Machine learning algorithms trained on multi-year yield mapping, satellite imagery, and soil sensor data can identify management zones, predict optimal planting dates, and recommend site-specific fertilisation regimes that outperform conventional blanket-rate recommendations. These technologies are increasingly accessible to smallholder farmers through mobile applications and remote sensing services, democratising precision management beyond large commercial operations [37].

Blockchain and traceability technologies complement precision agriculture by enabling transparent documentation of eco-friendly practices across supply chains, supporting premium certification schemes for organic and sustainably produced commodities [34]. Consumer willingness to pay for certified sustainable products provides a market-based incentive for farmers to adopt eco-friendly practices, while digital traceability systems reduce the costs and credibility concerns associated with certification processes [14]. The convergence of precision agriculture, digital supply chain management, and eco-friendly farming creates an integrated framework for sustainable intensification at scale.

VIII. Socioeconomic Dimensions and Policy Frameworks

A. Economic Viability and Farmer Livelihoods

The economic performance of eco-friendly farming systems is a critical determinant of adoption at scale. A persistent misconception holds that sustainable practices are inherently less profitable than conventional counterparts due to lower yields during the transition period and higher labour requirements [18]. However, a growing body of evidence demonstrates that eco-friendly systems achieve comparable or superior net farm incomes over the medium to long term, driven by lower input costs, premium prices for certified products, reduced exposure to chemical price volatility, and enhanced ecosystem service values [14][25].

For smallholder farmers in low-income countries, eco-friendly practices that reduce dependence on purchased inputs offer immediate economic benefits by lowering the financial risk associated with market volatility and credit constraints [35]. Resource-conserving technologies such as conservation tillage, cover cropping, and integrated pest management require primarily knowledge and labour inputs -- resources that smallholders possess -- rather than capital-intensive equipment or expensive agrochemicals [6]. This makes eco-friendly agriculture particularly well-suited to the resource constraints of the majority of the world's 500 million smallholder farm households [13].

B. Policy and Institutional Support

The transition to eco-friendly farming systems requires a supportive policy environment that addresses structural barriers including land tenure security, extension service capacity, market access, and financial risk management [37]. Agricultural subsidy frameworks in many countries currently incentivise conventional, input-intensive production through price supports for synthetic fertilisers and pesticides, creating a structural bias against eco-friendly alternatives even where they are economically superior [10]. Reforming these incentive structures -- redirecting subsidies toward organic input production, carbon markets, ecosystem service payments, and agroecology research -- is essential for mainstream adoption.

International development frameworks, including the Malabo Declaration on African agriculture and the CGIAR Research Programs on Food Systems, have incorporated eco-friendly agriculture as a central pillar of their programming [40]. Extension systems play a critical knowledge transfer role, though traditional top-down extension models are increasingly being supplemented by farmer field schools, participatory technology development, and peer-to-peer learning networks that are better suited to the context-specific and knowledge-intensive nature of agroecological management [2][6].

IX. Challenges and Limitations

Despite compelling evidence for the environmental and long-term economic benefits of eco-friendly farming systems, their adoption remains limited relative to their potential. Several interconnected challenges constrain scaling. First, the knowledge intensity of eco-friendly practices creates a significant human capital barrier, particularly in contexts where formal agricultural education and extension services are weak [13]. Agroecological management requires deep understanding of local ecological processes, soil biology, and crop-pest-environment interactions that cannot be easily codified in simple prescriptions [36].

Second, the transition period from conventional to eco-friendly management typically involves yield reductions of 10-20% as soils adjust to biological management and as farmers acquire new skills and knowledge [14]. For farmers operating with thin profit margins and

limited access to credit, absorbing this transition cost without financial support is economically prohibitive. Third, scale and supply chain challenges limit market access for eco-friendly products, particularly for smallholders remote from urban premium markets [35]. The absence of price differentiation for sustainably produced commodities in commodity supply chains removes a primary economic incentive for adoption.

Finally, the scientific evidence base for eco-friendly systems, while substantial, is unevenly distributed across agro-climatic zones, crop types, and socioeconomic contexts. The majority of long-term experimental data comes from temperate European and North American systems, and extrapolation to tropical smallholder contexts -- where the majority of the world's food is produced and the greatest transition potential exists -- requires significant caution [13][40]. Increased investment in long-term, participatory agroecological research in underrepresented regions is urgently needed to fill these knowledge gaps.

X. Conclusion and Future Directions

This review has synthesised evidence from 40 Scopus-indexed publications to demonstrate that eco-friendly farming systems represent not merely an aspirational ideal but a scientifically validated and increasingly practical pathway to sustainable food production. The convergence of agroecological principles with precision agricultural technologies, digital supply chain tools, and supportive policy frameworks creates an unprecedented opportunity to accelerate the transition away from input-intensive conventional agriculture toward systems that are productive, resilient, and ecologically regenerative.

The key conclusions of this review are as follows. First, eco-friendly systems can achieve yields comparable to conventional systems in the medium to long term, particularly when the full suite of agroecological practices -- cover cropping, legume integration, biological pest management, and precision input management -- is implemented cohesively. Second, the soil health benefits of eco-friendly management accrue progressively over time and provide the biological capital upon which long-term productivity depends. Third, the biodiversity co-benefits of eco-friendly systems extend far beyond their direct agricultural value, supporting the ecosystem services upon which human welfare broadly depends.

Future research priorities include long-term agroecological experiments in tropical smallholder systems, the development of digital tools that make precision eco-friendly management accessible to resource-limited farmers, the design of policy mechanisms that internalise ecosystem service values in agricultural markets, and the exploration of hybrid systems that capture the efficiency benefits of modern technology within an ecological management framework. The transition to eco-friendly farming is not a return to the past but an advance toward a future in which agriculture and ecology are mutually reinforcing.

References

- [1] S. Derpsch, R. Franzluebbers, A. J. Duiker, and P. Reicosky, "Why do we need to standardize no-tillage research?" *Soil Tillage Res.*, vol. 137, pp. 16-22, 2014.
- [2] M. A. Altieri, "Agroecology: The science of natural resource management for poor farmers in marginal environments," *Agric. Ecosyst. Environ.*, vol. 93, no. 1-3, pp. 1-24, 2002.

- [3] D. Tilman, K. G. Cassman, P. A. Matson, R. Naylor, and S. Polasky, "Agricultural sustainability and intensive production practices," *Nature*, vol. 418, pp. 671-677, 2002.
- [4] R. Lal, "Soil carbon sequestration impacts on global climate change and food security," *Science*, vol. 304, no. 5677, pp. 1623-1627, 2004.
- [5] P. Mader, A. Fliesbach, D. Dubois, L. Gunst, P. Fried, and U. Niggli, "Soil fertility and biodiversity in organic farming," *Science*, vol. 296, no. 5573, pp. 1694-1697, 2002.
- [6] J. N. Pretty, A. D. Noble, D. Bossio, J. Dixon, R. E. Hine, F. W. T. Penning de Vries, and J. I. L. Morison, "Resource-conserving agriculture increases yields in developing countries," *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, vol. 40, no. 4, pp. 1114-1119, 2006.
- [7] V. Smil, "Nitrogen and food production: Proteins for human diets," *Ambio*, vol. 31, no. 2, pp. 126-131, 2002.
- [8] T. Garnett et al., "Sustainable intensification in agriculture: Premises and policies," *Science*, vol. 341, no. 6141, pp. 33-34, 2013.
- [9] J. Rockstrom et al., "A safe operating space for humanity," *Nature*, vol. 461, pp. 472-475, 2009.
- [10] N. Alexandratos and J. Bruinsma, "World agriculture towards 2030/2050: The 2012 revision," FAO, Rome, ESA Working Paper No. 12-03, 2012.
- [11] C. A. Palm, C. N. Gachengo, R. J. Delve, G. Cadisch, and K. E. Giller, "Organic inputs for soil fertility management in tropical agroecosystems: Application of an organic resource database," *Agric. Ecosyst. Environ.*, vol. 83, no. 1-2, pp. 27-42, 2001.
- [12] D. D. Bossio, M. C. Geheb, and W. Critchley, "Managing water by managing land: Addressing land degradation to improve water productivity and rural livelihoods," *Agric. Water Manage.*, vol. 97, no. 4, pp. 536-542, 2010.
- [13] K. E. Giller, E. Witter, M. Corbeels, and P. Tittonell, "Conservation agriculture and smallholder farming in Africa: The heretics view," *Field Crops Res.*, vol. 114, no. 1, pp. 23-34, 2009.
- [14] J. P. Reganold and J. M. Wachter, "Organic agriculture in the twenty-first century," *Nat. Plants*, vol. 2, p. 15221, 2016.
- [15] R. Gebbers and V. I. Adamchuk, "Precision agriculture and food security," *Science*, vol. 327, no. 5967, pp. 828-831, 2010.
- [16] M. Herrero et al., "Biomass use, production, feed efficiencies, and greenhouse gas emissions from global livestock systems," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 110, no. 52, pp. 20888-20893, 2013.
- [17] W. W. Wilhelm, J. M. F. Johnson, J. L. Hatfield, W. B. Voorhees, and D. R. Linden, "Crop and soil productivity response to corn residue removal," *Agron. J.*, vol. 96, no. 1, pp. 1-17, 2004.
- [18] D. Pimentel et al., "Environmental, energetic, and economic comparisons of organic and conventional farming systems," *Bioscience*, vol. 55, no. 7, pp. 573-582, 2005.
- [19] C. Muller and R. D. Robertson, "Projecting future crop productivity for global economic modeling," *Agric. Econ.*, vol. 45, no. 1, pp. 37-50, 2014.
- [20] P. Smith et al., "Agriculture, forestry and other land use (AFOLU)," in *Climate Change 2014: Mitigation of Climate Change*, Cambridge, UK: Cambridge Univ. Press, 2014, pp. 811-922.

- [21] A. K. Bhardwaj, P. Mishra, A. K. Singh, S. K. Tomar, R. Singh, S. Kumar, and S. Shukla, "Soil salinity and physicochemical characteristics of saline-sodic soil and their improvement through phytoremediation and reclamation," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. India Sect. B Biol. Sci.*, vol. 89, pp. 745-758, 2019.
- [22] M. B. Peoples et al., "The contributions of nitrogen-fixing crop legumes to the productivity of agricultural systems," *Symbiosis*, vol. 48, pp. 1-17, 2009.
- [23] G. S. Bhullar and D. Bhullar, "Cover crops and their role in sustainable farming systems," *J. Agron. Crop Sci.*, vol. 205, no. 4, pp. 361-375, 2019.
- [24] S. S. Chauhan, B. Phour, and M. S. Dhaliwal, "Role of organic amendments in improving soil health and crop productivity: A review," *Int. J. Agric. Sci. Res.*, vol. 9, no. 3, pp. 171-180, 2019.
- [25] D. Pimentel, J. Hepperly, J. Hanson, D. Douds, and R. Seidel, "Environmental and economic benefits of organic farming," *Bioscience*, vol. 55, no. 7, pp. 573-582, 2005.
- [26] A. McBratney, B. Whelan, T. Ancev, and J. Bouma, "Future directions of precision agriculture," *Precis. Agric.*, vol. 6, no. 1, pp. 7-23, 2005.
- [27] T. W. Walker and J. K. Syers, "The fate of phosphorus during pedogenesis," *Geoderma*, vol. 15, no. 1, pp. 1-19, 1976.
- [28] H. F. van Emden and R. Peakall, *Beyond Silent Spring: Integrated Pest Management and Chemical Safety*. London, UK: Chapman & Hall, 1996.
- [29] A. E. Hartemink, "Soil carbon stocks and carbon sequestration," in *Soil Science: A Global Perspective*, Berlin, Germany: Springer, 2007, pp. 45-63.
- [30] J. M. Lynch and J. M. Whipps, "Substrate flow in the rhizosphere," *Plant Soil*, vol. 129, no. 1, pp. 1-10, 1990.
- [31] K. Paustian, J. Lehmann, S. Ogle, D. Reay, G. P. Robertson, and P. Smith, "Climate-smart soils," *Nature*, vol. 532, pp. 49-57, 2016.
- [32] H. Steinfeld et al., *Livestock's Long Shadow: Environmental Issues and Options*. Rome, Italy: FAO, 2006.
- [33] C. Rodale, *Regenerative Organic Agriculture and Climate Change*. Emmaus, PA, USA: Rodale Institute, 2014.
- [34] T. Searchinger et al., "Use of U.S. croplands for biofuels increases greenhouse gases through emissions from land-use change," *Science*, vol. 319, no. 5867, pp. 1238-1240, 2008.
- [35] P. Tittonell and K. E. Giller, "When yield gaps are poverty traps: The paradigm of ecological intensification in African smallholder agriculture," *Field Crops Res.*, vol. 143, pp. 76-90, 2013.
- [36] A. Wezel, M. Casagrande, F. Celette, J.-F. Vian, A. Ferrer, and J. Peigne, "Agroecological practices for sustainable agriculture: A review," *Agron. Sustain. Dev.*, vol. 34, pp. 1-20, 2014.
- [37] FAO, *Save and Grow: A Policymakers Guide to the Sustainable Intensification of Smallholder Crop Production*. Rome, Italy: FAO, 2011.
- [38] A. D. Noble, S. Ruaysoongnern, and D. Penning, "Enhancing the agronomic productivity of degraded soils in northeast Thailand through clay-based interventions," in *Proc. 17th World Congress of Soil Science*, Bangkok, Thailand, 2002.

- [39] N. Uphoff et al., *Biological Approaches to Sustainable Soil Systems*. Boca Raton, FL, USA: CRC Press, 2006.
- [40] J. Pretty, "Sustainable intensification in Africa: The new green revolution?" in *The African Food Crisis*, G. Djurfeldt et al., Eds. Wallingford, UK: CABI, 2005, pp. 145-162.

Plant Leaf Disease Detection Using Deep Learning: A Comparative Survey

Narinder Kaur¹, Shalu Gupta²

¹Research Scholar, Deptt. of Computer Science and Engineering, Guru Kashi University, Punjab,
narindersidhu28@gmail.com

²Associate Professor, Deptt. of Computer Applications, Guru Kashi University, Punjab,
shalu2324@gmail.com

Abstract -- A number of developing countries depend heavily on agriculture as the backbone of their economies. On the other hand, Plant disease would ultimately impact the nation's economic growth, and damage to crops would result in a significant loss of productivity. Therefore, early identification of this will boost output both in terms of quality and quantity for economic growth. In agriculture, plant leaf disease identification is mostly carried out through manual visual inspection, which is time-consuming, costly and dependent on expert knowledge. In recent years, the integration of imaging technologies with machine learning (ML), deep learning (DL) algorithms and computer vision has offered a promising approach to address this challenge by enabling rapid and precise identification of plant diseases. Earlier studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of image-based methods in detecting various crop diseases, as these techniques can capture fine visual features associated with pathogen infection or physiological stress. This review paper integrates the existing literature on image-based plant leaf disease detection using machine learning and provides a comprehensive analysis of cutting-edge techniques and methodologies. The paper will discuss the complete disease detection methods, including image acquisition, pre-processing, segmentation, feature extraction, and classification. Different imaging platforms, publicly available datasets, image enhancement techniques, and mostly used ML and DL model such as CNNs, Transfer learning architectures, and various methods are systematically reviewed across various crops, including citrus, tomato, banana, maize, rice, wheat and many more. The study demonstrates the strengths, limitations, and practical enforcement of these techniques under diverse environmental conditions. By integrate findings from different studies, this review bridges a gap between research and real-world agricultural practice and provides valuable insights for researchers and agricultural experts toward developing robust, scalable, and sustainable plant leaf disease detection system.

Keywords--Artificial Intelligence, Disease detection, Machine learning, Deep Learning.

I. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture contributed to the domestication of today's food crops and animals several years ago. The economic development of any country greatly depends upon its agricultural sector [1]. Agricultural productivity plays a crucial role in driving economic development and ensuring food security; however, crop yields are significantly threatened by plant diseases [2].

One of the major global problems that humanity faces nowadays is food insecurity [3]. Research indicates that plant-related diseases contribute to nearly 16 percent of worldwide reduction in crop yields. Pest losses are estimated to about 50 percent for wheat and 26-29 percent for soybeans across different countries [4]. Plant disease refers to the abnormal functioning of a plant's physiological processes, either in specific parts or the whole plant, due to long-term irritation caused by harmful organisms. Pests and diseases endanger food security by damaging crops, reducing food supply and affordability. They can also alter food taste and influence traditional dietary choices. According to Shanta Patil, recurrent outbreaks of such diseases have led to major losses in both fresh and processed crops. These infections are primarily the result of fungal, bacterial and viral infections. Most leaf (foliar) diseases, including late blight, target spots, and bacterial spots, thrive in warm or humid conditions common in citrus and tomato-growing regions [31]. Primary categories of plant pathogens include fungi, fungus-like organisms, bacteria, viruses, viroid, virus-like organisms, nematodes, protozoa, algae and parasitic plants [5]. Without timely detection and management, foliar infections can quickly spread, resulting in substantial reduction in both the quality and quantity of agricultural produce. Accurate and timely identification of plant diseases is important for sustainable and correct agriculture, as well as for minimizing the unnecessary loss of financial and other resources [6].

Identifying plant diseases is a vital aspect of agriculture and is usually done manually through visual observation or microscopic examination. Certain plant diseases lack visible symptoms, making the use of advanced analytical methods essential for their detection. Although, most plant diseases indicate visible symptoms, and current standard practice involves an experienced plant pathologist diagnosing the disease through visual examination of the infected leaves. However, visual diagnosis can be subjective, making it susceptible to bias, visual misinterpretation, and human errors [7]. Traditionally, farmers depend on expert observation or visual inspection of leaves to detect diseases. However, this manual method is time-consuming, labor-intensive and frequently impractical for large agricultural operations [8]. Smart farming plays an important role in addressing the challenges associated with agricultural production, including enhancing productivity, minimizing environmental impact, ensuring food security, and promoting sustainability [8,9]. With the global population consistently rising, it is crucial to significantly increase food production while simultaneously maintaining food availability and nutritional quality worldwide, all while protecting natural ecosystems through adoption of sustainable farming practices [10].

Artificial Intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), and computer vision have been applied across various domains, particularly in renewable energy forecasting and biomedical fields [11]. During the COVID-19 pandemic, AI played a crucial role in the early identification of lung-related diseases, as well as in various prognostic applications [12]. The success of AI and similar advanced technologies in healthcare illustrates their potential suitability in agriculture. Specially, these technologies can be adapted to mitigate the adverse effects of plant diseases by early detection and accurate diagnosis, thereby helping to protect crop yields and improve food security. The use of artificial intelligence and computer vision for automated detection and diagnosis of plant diseases is receiving significant research attention, as traditional manual monitoring methods are laborious, time-consuming and require human efforts [13]. In recent years, there have been significant advancements in AI and Machine

Learning (ML) technologies, especially in the area of machine vision. Machine vision refers to the use of cameras and computational algorithms to analyse visual data from images or videos, allowing machines to observe and interpret their environment. This technology holds significant potential to innovate agriculture by delivering real-time insights that support farmers in making better informed decisions. For instance, machine vision systems can be employed to monitor crop conditions and identify early indicators of stress, disease, or pest infestations [14]. Plant pathogens and pests are major contributors to crop yield reduction, with estimated global losses reaching approximately \$220 billion annually. Moreover, climate change also a main reason to increasing the risk of plant diseases, posing serious threat to global food security and plant biodiversity [15].

Deep learning (DL) is increasingly being adopted in agricultural sector for plant disease detection, overcoming the limitations associated in traditional manual methods. Experiment findings shows that the application of computer vision and DL technologies in plant disease detection (PDD) is efficient, cost-effective, and requires less manual labour [2]. Deep learning (DL) techniques, especially Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) are among the most widely used models by researchers and practitioners due to their high efficiency in identifying a variety of plant diseases. However, the successful application of DL models depends heavily on the availability of large datasets [16]. Collecting sufficient quantities of plant diseases data remains a significant challenge. Consequently, researchers have employed data augmentation methods to expand existing datasets by generating additional images from the collected plant disease samples [31]. Data augmentation methods are employed to create numerous additional samples with similar characteristics from existing datasets, without the need for new data collection [19]. This process involves both basic image manipulation and advanced image transformation techniques [17].

II. BACKGROUND AND RELATED WORK

Plant diseases pose a serious threat to global agricultural productivity and food security, particularly in economically significant crops such as citrus, tomato, corn, and other horticultural plants. Traditional disease identification methods mainly rely on visual inspection by experts and laboratory-based biochemical analysis, which are time-consuming, labor-intensive, and prone to human error. As a result, researchers have increasingly focused on automated, image-based disease detection systems to improve early diagnosis and reduce crop losses.

Automated disease detection systems have also been extended to real-world deployment, including mobile and field-based applications. Lightweight CNN models integrated with mobile platforms demonstrated the feasibility of real-time disease diagnosis and severity estimation. These systems bridge the gap between laboratory research and practical agricultural use, offering farmers accessible and interpretable diagnostic tools (Reddy et al., 2025). A review on image-based crop disease detection using ML, providing a comprehensive overview of cutting-edge techniques and methodologies. Synthesizing findings from diverse studies offers insights into the effectiveness of different imaging platforms, contextual data integration and the applicability of ML algorithms across various crop types and environmental conditions. The importance of this review lies in its ability to bridge the gap

between research and practice, offering valuable guidance to researchers and agricultural practitioners (Aria et al., 2025).

Author (Year)	Paper Title	Techniques Used	Dataset Used	Results / Findings
Goyal & Lakhwani (2025) [19]	Integrating advanced deep learning techniques for enhanced detection and classification of citrus leaf and fruit diseases	Transfer learning (EfficientNetB0, ResNet50, DenseNet121, InceptionV3), CLAHE, MixUp, Grad-CAM	759 images across 9 classes (custom dataset)	DenseNet121 & InceptionV3: 99.12% accuracy
Kaur et al. (2025) [24]	Precision Diagnosis of Citrus Leaf Diseases using NL-FuRBE	Image enhancement + Ensemble DL (VGG19, AlexNet, Xception)	1354 lemon leaf images (9 classes)	Accuracy: 96.51% (5-fold CV)
Butt et al. (2025) [25]	Citrus Diseases Detection using DL & Hybrid Meta-Heuristic	DenseNet201, AlexNet, feature fusion, meta-heuristic optimization	Citrus leaves dataset	Accuracy: 99.6% (leaves), 99.9% (hybrid), 99.1% (fruit)
Kumari & Smita (2024) [23]	Disease Prevalence in Kinnow Cultivation	Field survey, stratified sampling, disease assessment	6 sites × 50 plants (Sri Ganganagar)	Canker most prevalent (10–22%), Gummosis 2–10%
Amin et al. (2022) [27]	End-to-End Deep Learning Model for Corn Leaf Disease Classification	EfficientNetB0 + DenseNet121 (feature fusion), Transfer learning, Augmentation	Corn leaf images (public + augmented)	98.56% accuracy
Khattak et al. (2021) [28]	Automatic Detection of Citrus Fruit and Leaves Diseases Using Deep Neural Network Model	Custom CNN, Image augmentation, Deep learning, Keras	Citrus dataset & PlantVillage	94.55% test accuracy

Tan et al. (2021) [6]	Tomato Leaf Diseases Classification: Classical ML vs Deep Learning	SVM, kNN, RF, GLCM, LBP, CNNs (ResNet34, VGG16, EfficientNet)	PlantVillage - Tomato subset	ResNet34 achieved 99.7% accuracy
Shanta Patil et al. (2021) [5]	Plant Leaf Diseases Detection and Classification Using Image Processing and Deep Learning Techniques	CNN (AlexNet, SqueezeNet), Image Processing (segmentation, feature extraction), Stochastic Gradient Descent (SGD)	PlantVillage Dataset and other crop image datasets	CNN-based methods achieved up to 98% accuracy; AlexNet 95.65%, SqueezeNet 94.3%; showed deep learning superior to traditional image processing for disease detection.
Chowdhury, M.E.H. et al. (2020) [3]	Design, Construction and Testing of IoT Based Automated Indoor Vertical Hydroponics Farming Test-Bed in Qatar	IoT-enabled automated system; Microcontroller-based sensors; Cloud-based data monitoring	Real-time system with environmental sensors (temperature, pH, EC, humidity, etc.)	Automated control maintained optimal growth conditions; water use only 8–10 L/month; energy consumption 120.59–230.59 kWh/month; system verified effective for indoor farming.
Atila et al. (2020) [7]	Plant leaf disease classification using EfficientNet deep learning model	EfficientNet (B4 & B5), Transfer learning, Augmentation	PlantVillage (55,448 images + augmented)	99.91% (original) & 99.97% (augmented) accuracy

III. PLANT DISEASE DETECTION

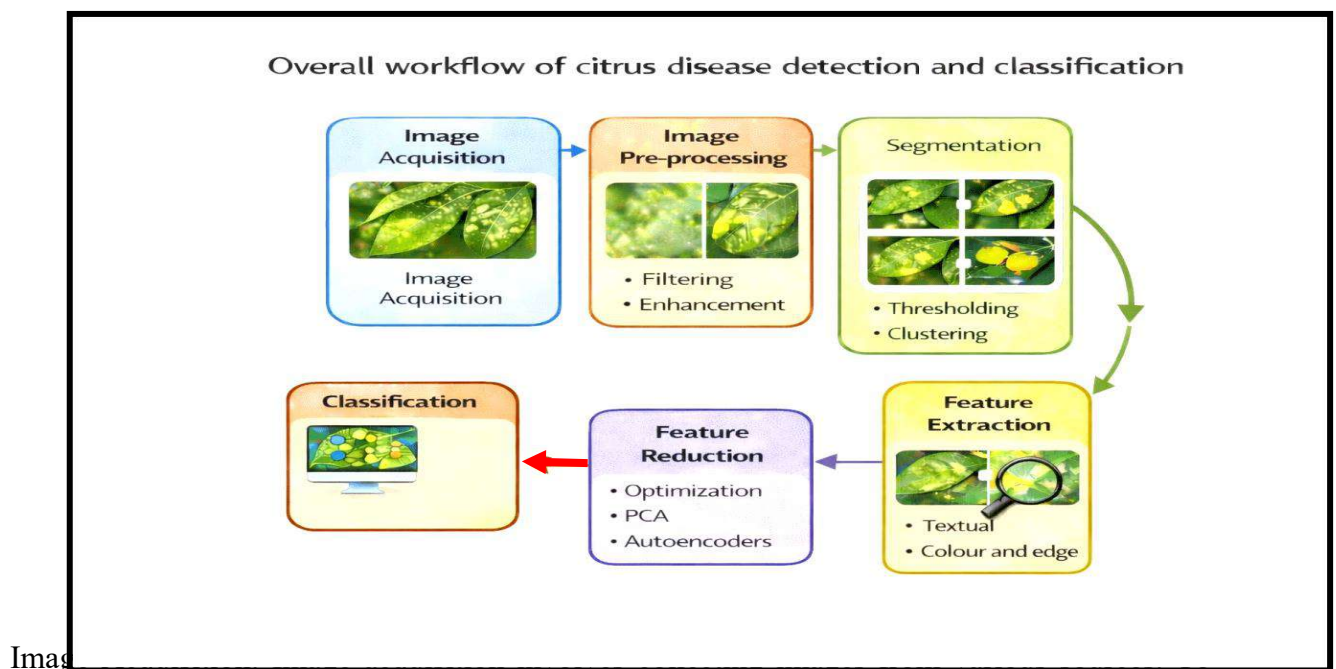
Plant disease identification largely depends on visible symptoms such as changes in appearance, colour, patterns, and lesion development [35]. Conventionally, farmers and agricultural specialists manually diagnose plant diseases by relying on their experience and observation of these symptoms. However, with recent advancements, vision-based Artificial Intelligence (AI) techniques are increasingly being applied in agriculture, particularly for plant

disease detection [36]. These technologies have shown strong potential for rapid and accurate disease identification, thereby helping to reduce crop damage and associated financial losses.

Thakur et al. [35] recognised various methods by which researchers collect plant disease images. The different methods like use of digital cameras, scanners, unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) devices, spectrometers [37], lamps, Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS) cameras, and smartphones [38,39]. Deng et al. [41] collected many unhealthy and healthy fruit leaf surface pictures and built up a fruit disease and insect pest library. Hu et al. [40], similarly obtained part of the tea disease images from a Chinese National Forest Park. Other researchers got their images from publicly available datasets like the Plant-Village, Cornell Initiative for Digital Agriculture (CIDA) [42] and crow-dAI [43]

IV. IMAGE ENHANCEMENT TECHNIQUES

Identifying and classifying crop diseases holds great technical and economic value for agriculture. Agricultural image processing often relies on color digital images of diseased leaves. For sustainable farming, disease detection and plant health monitoring are essential, as plant diseases affect societies worldwide. Rather than targeting a single disease among many similar symptoms, advanced detection and classification methods aim to recognize and describe any condition impacting plants. To diagnose crop issues, plant pathologists analyze plant images. Computer-based systems have been developed for tasks like fruit and leaf disease detection [22]. Plant leaf disease detection involves core image processing steps: image acquisition, pre-processing, feature extraction, and disease identification, [30] as illustrated in the corresponding Fig. 1.



build a useful database, high-quality images of plant leaves must be captured. The accuracy and clarity of these images directly affect the system's performance. Hence, RGB color images are preferred for maintaining high-quality standards [14].

Image Pre-processing: Pre-processing is performed to remove unnecessary noise from images and enhance their clarity. It includes image enhancement, color conversion, and image segmentation [29]. During this stage, the captured image is refined to remove noise and converted from the RGB color model to HSV. Segmentation is then used to divide the image into simpler segments, making analysis easier [5].

Image Segmentation: Images often contain different noise types, such as Gaussian or salt-and-pepper noise, which can be reduced using mean or median filters. Image segmentation divides an image into multiple parts to identify connected pixel regions with similar characteristics, detect specific objects, define boundaries between areas, and remove irrelevant sections [20].

Feature Extraction: After segmentation, the diseased portion of the image is isolated as the region of interest for further processing. From this area, specific features are extracted to help identify various disease types [31]. Feature extraction, a dimensionality reduction method, captures the most informative aspects of an image, typically focusing on color, shape, and texture [14].

Classification: Machine learning techniques are then applied to train and test the image datasets for disease detection and classification [30]. Among these, classification methods are most commonly used to analyse the extracted diseased region and determine the specific type of leaf infection [20].

V. PLANT DISEASE TAXONOMY

Citrus plants diseases are the main reason for the productivity reduction reduced in the agricultural sector, which results in the loss of the economy of any country. Citrus fruits are the major producer of vitamins C and A. Citrus diseases, however, have substantially affected both the quality and yield of production. Citrus Plants such as kinnow, oranges, lemons, and limes are affected by various citrus lesions such as anthracnose, melanosis, greening, canker, scab, and a few others, showing in Fig. 2 [30], and Table 1, showing the symptoms and favourable circumstances of citrus diseases, Fig.2 [30].

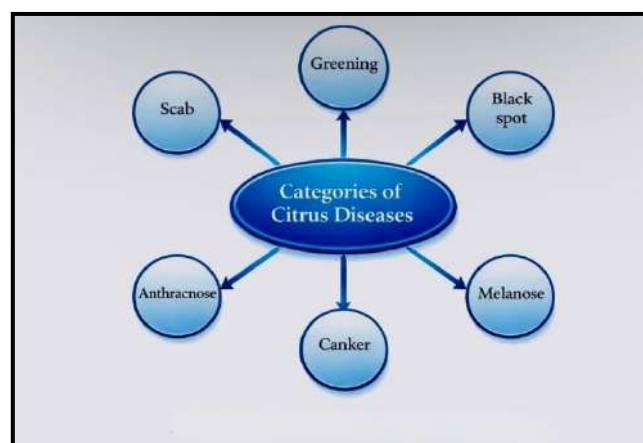
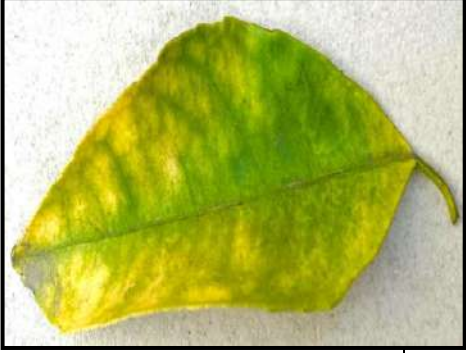
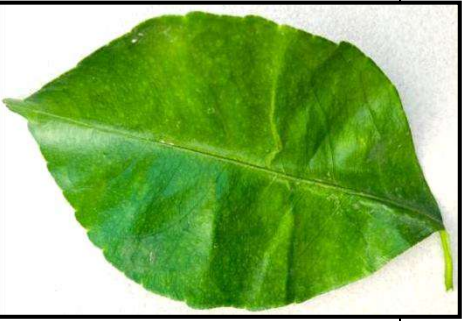


Fig. 2. Categories of Citrus Diseases.

TABLE 1 OVERVIEW OF DISEASES BY KINNOW LEAF CLASS

Name of the Class	Description	Visualization

Citrus	Citrus canker is a highly destructive disease of citrus plants, it is just cancer in citrus plants; It primarily affects the leaves, causing noticeable damage [69]. Citrus canker is a bacterial disease that leads to the premature dropping of leaves and fruits. Damaged leaves develop white, spongy spots that may later turn grey or brown in color [30].	
Anthracnose	Anthracnose is typically the initial pathogen to infect weakened or elderly tissue. Conditions such as Overwatering, rain spray, and dew promote its growth, especially in sheltered areas with dense vegetation, allowing it to spread over short distances. Infected citrus leaves develop small, rough, brownish spots with distinct purple margins, giving the surface a coarse appearance [69].	
Black Spot	Citrus black spot (CBS) occurs when plants are susceptible, and the atmosphere is favourable to disease. The disease is characterized by small, oval, harmful spots with gray centers that appear on citrus fruits and leaves. Black spot lesions are dark brown and have a width of 0.12 to 0.4 inches [30].	
Greening	HLB), commonly referred to as citrus greening, is a bacterial disease that affects citrus plants. Greening infection is difficult to control and spreads easily once a plant becomes infected [70]. Affected trees produce small, misshapen, and bitter fruits that are unsuitable for fresh consumption or juice production. Currently, there is no cure for infected plants, and they eventually decline and die [30].	

Melanosis	It is a moderately aggressive saprophytic organism that commonly grows on dead leaves within plant canopies. The disease is characterized by the appearance of small brown spots on the leaves, which later develop into reddish-brown gummy lesions [71]. The symptoms observed on fruits depend on their stage of maturity at the time of infection. In citrus plants, visible signs typically appear on the outer surfaces of both leaves and fruits [30].	
Curl Virus	Leaf curling in citrus plants may result from viral infections, insufficient watering, and fluctuating temperature conditions. Severe infestations of leaf miners, mealybugs, aphids, and whiteflies can also trigger this symptom [72]. In addition, viral diseases and increasing temperatures further contribute to leaf curl. Proper management practices, such as container cultivation, can help mitigate this problem [60].	
Downy Mildew	Infected leaves develop steadily browning yellow-green lesions. The leaves plagued often drop prematurely due to rainy and summer humid [30].	
Healthy Leaf	A healthy citrus leaf, vibrant green, glossy, smooth, and firm, supports photosynthesis and fruit growth and is used in many skin products.	

VI. MACHINE LEARNING AND DEEP LEARNING METHODS

Machine learning, a subset of artificial intelligence, enables algorithms to learn from data and make predictions. On other side, deep learning, a subtype of machine learning, uses multi – layer neural networks to learn features and identify patterns [46]. These algorithms are trained using diverse learning approaches. In supervised learning, models are trained on labelled datasets to understand relationships, whereas unsupervised learning works with unlabelled data to discover underlying patterns (Liu & Wu, 2012) [44]. Transfer learning is a common machine learning approach used in deep learning to lessen computational resources

Transfer Learning (TL) is the most common machine learning technique used in DL to reduce computer resources and for creation of models [31]. Another type of deep learning architecture training method is Back- propagation which includes a forward pass which calculate predictions and a backward pass which generate errors, thereby decreasing errors between predicted and actual outputs via iterative up- dates (Rumelhart et al., 1986) [45].

Another most popular ML method is random forest (RF), XGBoost (XGB), K-nearest neighbour (KNN) and SVM. RF and XGBoost are ensemble learning methods. Random Forest constructs a collection of decision trees that are trained individually and then combined, whereas XGBoost uses a gradient boosting approach in which trees are built sequentially, with each new tree correcting the errors of the previous term. (Breiman, 2001)[47]. Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) are among the most popularly used deep nural network architectures and are inspired by connectivity patterns of the human brain. A hierarchical arrangement of layers is used to automatically learn and remove features from input images and effectively capturing spatial relationships. (O'Shea& Nash, 2015) [48]. Over the years, a variety of CNN architectures have been developed to address different application requirements. Some of the most widely used models include VGGNet, ResNet, AlexNet, DenseNet, and MobileNet. VGGNet uses 3×3 convolutional filters and is known for its simple and uniform architecture, whereas ResNet enables the efficient training of very deep networks with depths up to 152 layers.

(Simonyan & Zisserman, 2015). Better performance accuracy achieved by ResNet may need more memory resources, (He et al., 2016) [49]. A novel framework, AI- based CNN-KNN fusion software (ACKFS), designed to AI-driven CNN-KNN Fusion Software (ACKFS), a novel framework developed to address these challenges by combining optimized pre-processing, adaptive data augmentation and lightweight hybrid architecture [32].

DenseNet [33] is a deep neural network architecture characterized by direct connections between layers, which facilitate efficient information flow. In this model, each layer receives feature maps from all preceding layers, leading to a continuous accumulation and propagation of information. The feature maps of the current layer are concatenated with those from earlier layers, forming a densely connected structure [34].

Crop	Techniques Used	Diseases and pests	References
Citrus leaf and fruit diseases	Transfer learning (EfficientNetB0, ResNet50, DenseNet121, InceptionV3), CLAHE, MixUp, Grad-CAM, Image enhancement + Ensemble DL (VGG19, AlexNet, Xception)	Black spot, Canker, Greening, Scab, Melanose, Citrus Yellow Shoot, HLB (Citrus Greening)	Goyal & Lakhwani (2025) [19] Kaur et al. (2025) [24]
Kinnow	Field survey, stratified sampling, disease assessment	Gummosis, Huanglongbing (HLB), Citrus Canker, and Black Fly	Kumari & Smita (2024) [23]
Potato leaf	Custom CNN in PyTorch; Image Processing (OpenCV, NumPy); Flask backend + React Native mobile app	Early blight, Late blight	B. Ramana Reddy et al. (2025) [2], Mahum et al.(2022) [34]
Tomato leaf	Deep Learning (EfficientNet-B0, B4, B7 CNNs); U-Net and Modified U-Net for leaf segmentation, SVM, KNN, RF, GLCM, LBP, CNNs (ResNet34, VGG16, EfficientNet)	Target spot, yellow leaf curl virus, early blight, late blight, leaf mould, Septoria leaf spot, spider mites, tomato bacterial spot,	Chowdhury, M.E.H. et al. (2021) [1], Tan et al. (2021) [6]
Corn Leaf	EfficientNetB0 + DenseNet121 (feature fusion), Transfer learning, Augmentation	Ray leaf spot, Common rust, Northern leaf blight,	Amin et al. (2022) [27]
Apple and grapes leaf	Efficient deep learning techniques EfficientNet (B4 & B5), Transfer learning, Augmentation	Apple Black rot, apple scab, Apple Cedar apple rust, Grape Esca (Black Measles) , Grape Leaf blight (Isariopsis Leaf Spot), Grape black rot	Atila et al. (2020) [7]
Rice	CNNs, MobileNet-V2 with attention Mechanism	Rice blast, rice false smut, rice brown spot, rice bakanae disease, rice sheath blight, rice sheath rot, rice bacterial leaf blight, rice bacterial sheath rot, rice seeding blight, rice bacterial wilt, neck blast, sheath blight, brown spot, rice stack burn, leaf smut, leaf scald, rice stem rot, rice white tip, rice str	Lu et al. (2017) [50]; Rahman et al. (2020) [53], Dolatabadian et al.(2025) [13]
Wheat	CNN, VGG16 model, multiple instance learning (weakly supervised learning methodology), generic algorithm, deep convolutional neural network-based approach, Vision Transformer	Karnal bunt, black chaff, crown and root rot, Fusarium head blight, powdery mildew, tan spot, wheat loose smut, wheat streak mosaic, stripe rust, leaf blotch, Septoria leaf spot, yellow rust, brown rust	Borhani et al. (2022) [51]; Goyal et al. (2021) [52]; Johannes et al. (2017) [54]; Picon et al. (2019) [55]; Zhang et al. (2019) [56], Dolatabadian et al.(2025) [13]

Cherry	152, MobileNet, InceptionNet, Stacking	Powdery mildew	Fuentes et al. (2018) [57], Dolatabadian et al.(2025) [13]
Banana	BananaSqueezeNet, EfficientNetB0, recurrent neural network (RNN)-convolutional neural network (CNN), gated-recurrent convolutional neural network (G-RecConNN)	Banana leafspot, yellow sigatoka, black sigatoka, Panama wilt disease, Fusarium wilt, banana bacterial wilt, Cordana leaf spot, Pestalotiopsis leaf Blight	Sanga et al. (2020) [58], Singh & Mishra (2018) [59], Dolatabadian et al.(2025) [13]
Lemon	DenseNet-121 ,GoogleNet, ResNet, and SqueezeNet model, EfficientNet-B0, DenseNet201, MobileNetV2, ResNet50, SVM,kNN	Anthravnose, Bacterial Blight, Citrus Canker, Curl Virus, Deficiency Leaf, Dry Leaf, Sooty Mould, Spider Mites, Healthy Leaf	Siam et al. (2025) [60], Solanki and Bhandari (2022) [61], Saygılı(2025) [62]
Maize	KNN ,SVM, Random Forest, K-means Clustering, XGBoost, Enhanced KNN, Fuzzy C-Means Clustering, GoogleNet, InceptionV3, VGG16, and ResNet18	Northern Leaf Blight (NLB), Gray Leaf Spot (GLS) Rust, Grouped leaf diseases, General infections, Powdery Mildew , Dark Spot Diseases , Mosaic Virus , Healthy leaf, early blight	Murugan et al. (2026) [63], Timilsina et al. (2025) [64], Gautam et al. (2025) [65]

TABLE 2 STUDIES THAT HAVE USED ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE/MACHINE LEARNING TO IDENTIFY DISEASE FROM IMAGES.

VII. PERFORMANCE MEASURES

In machine Learning (ML) and Deep Learning (DL), an evaluation metric is a measure used to assess a model's performance on a specific task. These metrics help for the performance of model and provide insights into advantages and disadvantages. The selection of evaluation metrics depends on the nature of task and objectives of ML or DL models. It is essential to select a suitable metric for the task and characteristic of the dataset [64]. For example, when working with imbalanced datasets, some metrics such as precision, F1 score, recall may provide reliable results than accuracy [60,62,67,68]. Following are some important evaluation metrics used in image segmentation, detection, and classification:

- (a) Accuracy: Ratio of correct prediction to total prediction [67].

$$Accuracy = \frac{True\ Prediction}{Total\ Prediction}$$

- (b) Precision: Ratio of true positive predictions to the total number of instances predicted as positive [66].

$$Precision = \frac{True\ Positives}{True\ Positives + False\ Positives}$$

(c) Recall or sensitivity: Ability to correctly identify all positive instances [68].

$$Recall = \frac{True\ Positives}{True\ Positives + False\ Negatives}$$

(d) F1 Score: The harmonic mean of recall and precision that balances both the concerns of recall and precision [64].

$$F1\ Score = 2 \times \frac{Recall \times Precision}{Recall + Precision}$$

VIII. CONCLUSIONS

This survey summarizes various image processing techniques used for identifying plant diseases. The disease detection process generally consists of four main stages: pre-processing, segmentation, feature extraction, and classification. Each stage has been examined in terms of the methods applied, their effectiveness, advantages, and limitations. The study reviews recent developments in computer vision methods for detecting diseases in citrus leaves, while also identifying existing research gaps, limitations of earlier studies, and possible directions for future investigations.

Traditional methods for diagnosing citrus leaf diseases often rely on manual inspection and laboratory testing, which can be time-consuming and require significant labour. In contrast, automated approaches based on classification, detection, and segmentation techniques provide faster and more efficient disease prediction.

Both machine learning (ML) and deep learning (DL) methods have been widely adopted to estimate disease severity in citrus crops. ML algorithms such as K-means clustering and Random Forest are frequently used to analyse visual characteristics including colour distribution, texture patterns, and shape features. Furthermore, this review discusses different imaging platforms, publicly available datasets, and image enhancement strategies. It also summarizes commonly used ML and DL models, including Convolution Neural

Networks (CNNs) and transfer learning architectures, applied to multiple crops such as citrus, tomato, banana, maize, rice, and wheat. In addition, the paper highlights commonly used evaluation metrics in image segmentation, detection, and classification tasks, including precision, recall, F1- score, and accuracy.

REFERENCES

- [1] Chowdhury, M. E., Rahman, T., Khandakar, A., Ayari, M. A., Khan, A. U., Khan, M. S., ... & Ali, S. H. M. (2021). Automatic and reliable leaf disease detection using deep learning techniques. *AgriEngineering*, 3(2), 294-312.
- [2] Reddy, B. R., Kalnoor, G., Devashish, M., & Reddy, P. S. K. (2025). Deep Learning Based Mobile Application for Automated Plant Disease Detection. *IEEE Access*.
- [3] Chowdhury, M. E. H., Khandakar, A., Ahmed, S., Al-Khuzaei, F., Hamdalla, J., Haque, F., Reaz, M. B. I., Al Shafei, A., & Al-Emadi, N. (2020). Design, Construction and Testing of IoT Based Automated Indoor Vertical Hydroponics Farming Test-Bed in Qatar. *Sensors*, 20(19), 5637. <https://doi.org/10.3390/s20195637>.
- [4] OERKE E-C. Crop losses to pests. *The Journal of Agricultural Science*. 2006;144(1):31-43. doi:10.1017/S0021859605005708

- [5] Shanta Patil , S R Vinay¹, Kartik Kulkarni¹, Mehboobi Mulla , Amruta Naveen , Sahana Beelag. (2021). Plant Leaf Diseases Detection and Classification Using Image Processing and Deep Learning Techniques, International Conference on Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning, ISSN : 2456-3307, Volume 8, Issue 5.
- [6] Tan, L., Lu, J., & Jiang, H. (2021). Tomato leaf diseases classification based on leaf images: a comparison between classical machine learning and deep learning methods. *AgriEngineering*, 3(3), 542-558.
- [7] Atila, Ü., Uçar, M., Akyol, K., & Uçar, E. (2021). Plant leaf disease classification using EfficientNet deep learning model. *Ecological Informatics*, 61, 101182.
- [8] Chaturya, T., Swathi, Y., Kumar, V., Karthik, P., Nayan, A., & Yadav, A. (2023, March). Detection of Plant Disease using Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN). In 2023 International Conference on Sustainable Computing and Data Communication Systems (ICSCDS) (pp. 598-603). IEEE.
- [9] Gebbers, R., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2010). Precision agriculture and food security. *Science*, 327(5967), 828-831.
- [10] Kamilaris, A., & Prenafeta-Boldú, F. X. (2018). Deep learning in agriculture: A survey. *Computers and electronics in agriculture*, 147, 70-90.
- [11] Touati, F., Khandakar, A., Chowdhury, M. E., Gonzales, A. J. S., Sorino, C. K., & Benhmed, K. (2020). Photo-Voltaic (PV) monitoring system, performance analysis and power prediction models in Doha, Qatar. In *Renewable Energy-Technologies and Applications*. IntechOpen.
- [12] Chowdhury, M. E., Rahman, T., Khandakar, A., Mazhar, R., Kadir, M. A., Mahbub, Z. B., ... & Islam, M. T. (2020). Can AI help in screening viral and COVID-19 pneumonia?. *Ieee Access*, 8, 132665-132676.
- [13] Dolatabadian, A., Neik, T. X., Danilevicz, M. F., Upadhyaya, S. R., Batley, J., & Edwards, D. (2025). Image-based crop disease detection using machine learning. *Plant Pathology*, 74(1), 18-38.
- [14] Kacira, M., Ling, P.P. & Short, T.H. (2002) Machine vision extracted plant movement for early detection of plant water stress. *Transactions of ASAE*, 45, 1147–1153
- [15] Ristaino, J. B., Anderson, P. K., Bebber, D. P., Brauman, K. A., Cunniffe, N. J., Fedoroff, N. V., ... & Wei, Q. (2021). The persistent threat of emerging plant disease pandemics to global food security. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 118(23), e2022239118.
- [16] Cap, Q. H., Uga, H., Kagiwada, S., & Iyatomi, H. (2020). Leafgan: An effective data augmentation method for practical plant disease diagnosis. *IEEE Transactions on Automation Science and Engineering*, 19(2), 1258-1267.
- [17] Antwi, K., Bennin, K. E., Asiedu, D. K. P., & Tekinerdogan, B. (2024). On the application of image augmentation for plant disease detection: A systematic literature review. *Smart Agricultural Technology*, 9, 100590.
- [18] Nithish EK, Kaushik M, Prakash P, Ajay R, Veni S. Tomato leaf disease detection using convolutional neural network with data augmentation. *Proc Int Conf Commun Electron Syst ICCES*. 2020. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ICCES48766.2020.09138030>

- [19] Goyal, A., & Lakhwani, K. (2025). Integrating advanced deep learning techniques for enhanced detection and classification of citrus leaf and fruit diseases. *Scientific Reports*, 15(1), 12659.
- [20]
- [21] Singh, V., & Misra, A. K. (2017). Detection of plant leaf diseases using image segmentation and soft computing techniques. *Information processing in Agriculture*, 4(1), 41-49.
- [22] Verma, T., & Dubey, S. (2017). Paddy disease recognition using image processing and radial basis function network. *Indian Journal of Science and Technology*, 10(46), 1-17.
- [23] Nti, I. K., Eric, G., & Jonas, Y. S. (2017). Detection of plant leaf disease employing image processing and Gaussian smoothing approach. *International Journal of Computer Applications*, 162(2), 20-25.
- [24] Kumari Priya, Jain Smita.(2024). Diseases Prevalence in Kinnow (Citrus Nobilis x Citrus Deliciosa) Cultivated in the Sri Ganganagar Geographical Area, E-ISSN: 2582-2160, Volume 6, Issue 4.
- [25] Kaur, B., Gupta, S. K., Janarthan, M., Alsekait, D. M., & Abdelminaam, D. S. (2025). Precision diagnosis of citrus leaf diseases using image enhancement and nonlinear fuzzy ranking ensemble approach NLFuRBe. *Scientific Reports*, 15(1), 32296.
- [26] Butt, N., Iqbal, M. M., Ramzan, S., Raza, A., Abualigah, L., Fitriyani, N. L., ... & Syafrudin, M. (2025). Citrus diseases detection using innovative deep learning approach and Hybrid Meta-Heuristic. *PloS one*, 20(1), e0316081.
- [27] Kumari,P.(2023).Disease-induced changes in Biochemical Composition of kinnow plants(Citrus,nobillis x Citrus deliciosa): A Comparative Study of Healthy and Citrus Canker-Infected Plants. *International Journal of Emerging Technologies and Innovative Research*, ISSN:2349-5162, Vol.10, Page no.g570-g582.
- [28] Amin, H., Darwish, A., Hassanien, A. E., & Soliman, M. (2022). End-to-end deep learning model for corn leaf disease classification. *Ieee Access*, 10, 31103-31115.
- [29] Khattak, A., Asghar, M. U., Batool, U., Asghar, M. Z., Ullah, H., Al-Rakhami, M., & Gumaei, A. (2021). Automatic detection of citrus fruit and leaves diseases using deep neural network model. *IEEE access*, 9, 112942-112954.
- [30] Saini, A. K., Bhatnagar, R., & Srivastava, D. K. (2024). SADCNN-ORBM: a hybrid deep learning model based citrus disease detection and classification. *International Journal of Electrical and Computer Engineering*, 2191-2201.
- [31] Saini, A. K., Bhatnagar, R., & Srivastava, D. K. (2021). Detection and classification techniques of citrus leaves diseases: a survey. *Turkish Journal of Computer and Mathematics Education*, 12(6), 3499-3510.
- [32] Saini, A. K., Bhatnagar, R., & Srivastava, D. K. (2021, August). Citrus fruits diseases detection and classification using transfer learning. In *Proceedings of the international conference on data science, machine learning and artificial intelligence* (pp. 277-283).
- [33] Symptom-based early detection and classification of plant diseases using AI-driven CNN+KNN Fusion Software (ACKFS) Jayswal Hardik a
- [34] G. Huang, Z. Liu, L. Van Der Maaten and K. Q. Weinberger, "Densely Connected Convolutional Networks," *2017 IEEE Conference on Computer Vision and Pattern*

- Recognition (CVPR)*, Honolulu, HI, USA, 2017, pp. 2261-2269, doi: 10.1109/CVPR.2017.243.
- [35] Mahum, R., Munir, H., Mughal, Z. U. N., Awais, M., Sher Khan, F., Saqlain, M., ... & Tlili, I. (2023). A novel framework for potato leaf disease detection using an efficient deep learning model. *Human and Ecological Risk Assessment: An International Journal*, 29(2), 303-326.
- [36] Thakur, P. S., Khanna, P., Sheorey, T., & Ojha, A. (2022). Trends in vision-based machine learning techniques for plant disease identification: A systematic review. *Expert Systems with Applications*, 208, 118117.
- [37] Antwi, K., Bennin, K. E., Asiedu, D. K. P., & Tekinerdogan, B. (2024). On the application of image augmentation for plant disease detection: A systematic literature review. *Smart Agricultural Technology*, 9, 100590.
- [38] Tangtisanon, P., & Kornrapat, S. (2020, February). Holy basil curl leaf disease classification using edge detection and machine learning. In *Proceedings of the 2020 12th International Conference on Computer and Automation Engineering* (pp. 85-89).
- [39] Li, Y., Wang, H., Dang, L. M., Sadeghi-Niaraki, A., & Moon, H. (2020). Crop pest recognition in natural scenes using convolutional neural networks. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 169, 105174.
- [40] Patayon, U. B., & Crisostomo, R. V. (2021). Automatic identification of abaca bunchy top disease using deep learning models. *Procedia Computer Science*, 179, 321-329.
- [41] Hu, G., Wu, H., Zhang, Y., & Wan, M. (2019). A low shot learning method for tea leaf's disease identification. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 163, 104852.
- [42] Deng, Y., Chen, Z., & Chen, S. (2019, November). Fruit Leaf Pests and Diseases Identification Based on Data Enhancement and Transfer Learning. In *Proceedings of the 4th International Conference on Intelligent Information Processing* (pp. 425-430).
- [43] Srinidhi, V. V., Sahay, A., & Deebea, K. (2021, April). Plant pathology disease detection in apple leaves using deep convolutional neural networks: Apple leaves disease detection using efficientnet and densenet. In *2021 5th international conference on computing methodologies and communication (ICCMC)* (pp. 1119-1127). IEEE.
- [44] Chen, J., Zhang, D., Suzauddola, M., & Zeb, A. (2021). Identifying crop diseases using attention embedded MobileNet-V2 model. *Applied Soft Computing*, 113, 107901.
- [45] Liu, B. (2011). Supervised learning. In *Web Data Mining: Exploring Hyperlinks, Contents, and Usage Data* (pp. 63-132). Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
- [46] Rumelhart, D., Hinton, G. & Williams, R. (1986) Learning representations by back-propagating errors. *Nature*, 323, 533–536
- [47] Dolatabadian, A., Neik, T. X., Danilevycz, M. F., Upadhyaya, S. R., Batley, J., & Edwards, D. (2025). Image-based crop disease detection using machine learning. *Plant Pathology*, 74(1), 18-38.
- [48] Breiman, L. (2001) Random Forests. *Machine Learning*, 45, 5–32.
- [49] O'Shea, K. & Nash, R. (2015) An introduction to convolutional neural networks. *arXiv*, 1511.08458.
- [50] He, K., Zhang, X., Ren, S. & Sun, J. (2016) Deep residual learning for image recognition. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Computer Vision and Pattern Recognition*

- (CVPR). New York, USA: IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers), pp. 770–778.
- [51] Lu, Y., Yi, S., Zeng, N., Liu, Y. & Zhang, Y. (2017) Identification of rice diseases using deep convolutional neural networks. *Neurocomputing*, 267, 378–384.
 - [52] Borhani, Y., Khoramdel, J. & Najafi, E. (2022) A deep learning-based approach for automated plant disease classification using vision transformer. *Scientific Reports*, 12, 11554.
 - [53] Goyal, L., Sharma, C. M., Singh, A., & Singh, P. K. (2021). Leaf and spike wheat disease detection & classification using an improved deep convolutional architecture. *Informatics in Medicine Unlocked*, 25, 100642.
 - [54] Rahman, C. R., Arko, P. S., Ali, M. E., Khan, M. A. I., Apon, S. H., Nowrin, F., & Wasif, A. (2020). Identification and recognition of rice diseases and pests using convolutional neural networks. *Biosystems Engineering*, 194, 112-120.
 - [55] Johannes, A., Picon, A., Alvarez-Gila, A., Echazarra, J., Rodriguez-Vaamonde, S., Navajas, A. D., & Ortiz-Barredo, A. (2017). Automatic plant disease diagnosis using mobile capture devices, applied on a wheat use case. *Computers and electronics in agriculture*, 138, 200-209.
 - [56] Picon, A., Alvarez-Gila, A., Seitz, M., Ortiz-Barredo, A., Echazarra, J., & Johannes, A. (2019). Deep convolutional neural networks for mobile capture device-based crop disease classification in the wild. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 161, 280-290.
 - [57] Zhang, X., Han, L., Dong, Y., Shi, Y., Huang, W., Han, L., ... & Sobeih, T. (2019). A deep learning-based approach for automated yellow rust disease detection from high-resolution hyperspectral UAV images. *Remote Sensing*, 11(13), 1554.
 - [58] Fuentes, A. F., Yoon, S., Lee, J., & Park, D. S. (2018). High-performance deep neural network-based tomato plant diseases and pests diagnosis system with refinement filter bank. *Frontiers in plant science*, 9, 1162.
 - [59] Sanga, S., Mero, V., Machuve, D., & Mwanganda, D. (2020). Mobile-based deep learning models for banana diseases detection. *arXiv preprint arXiv:2004.03718*.
 - [60] Singh, V., & Misra, A. K. (2017). Detection of plant leaf diseases using image segmentation and soft computing techniques. *Information processing in Agriculture*, 4(1), 41-49.
 - [61] Siam, A. F. K., Bishshash, P., Nirob, M. A. S., Mamun, S. B., Assaduzzaman, M., & Noori, S. R. H. (2025). A comprehensive image dataset for the identification of lemon leaf diseases and computer vision applications. *Data in Brief*, 58, 111244.
 - [62] Solanki, D. S., & Bhandari, R. (2022). Lemon Leaf Disease Detection and Classification at Early Stage using Deep Learning Models. *NeuroQuantology*, 20(22), 3455.
 - [63] Saygılı, A. (2025). Enhancing Lemon Leaf Disease Detection: A Hybrid Approach Combining Deep Learning Feature Extraction and mRMR-Optimized SVM Classification. *Applied Sciences*, 15(20), 10988.
 - [64] Murugan, T., Badusha, N. A. N. M., Musa, N. S., Alahbabi, E. M. M., Ahmed Alyammahi, R. A., Adege, A. B., ... & Megersa, Z. M. (2026). Research Advances in Maize Crop Disease Detection Using Machine Learning and Deep Learning Approaches. *Computers*, 15(2), 99.

- [65] Timilsina, S., Sharma, S., & Kondo, S. (2025). Advancements in maize leaf disease detection, segmentation and classification: A review. *Biosystems Engineering*, 255, 104162.
- [66] Gautam, V., Quraishi, A., AlGhamdi, A., Kaur, G., Alghayadh, F., Byeon, H., & Bhatt, M. W. (2025). Maize leaf disease multiclass classification and recognition for sustainable agriculture using multi preceptive deep learning model. *Discover Sustainability*, 6(1), 409.
- [67] Kaur, J., & Singh, W. (2022). Tools, techniques, datasets and application areas for object detection in an image: a review. *Multimedia Tools and Applications*, 81(27), 38297-38351.
- [68] Müller, D., Soto-Rey, I., & Kramer, F. (2022). Towards a guideline for evaluation metrics in medical image segmentation. *BMC research notes*, 15(1), 210.
- [69] Naidu, G., Zuva, T., & Sibanda, E. M. (2023, April). A review of evaluation metrics in machine learning algorithms. In *Computer science on-line conference* (pp. 15-25). Cham: Springer International Publishing.
- [70] Doh, B., Zhang, D., Shen, Y., Hussain, F., Doh, R. F., & Ayepah, K. (2019, September). Automatic citrus fruit disease detection by phenotyping using machine learning. In *2019 25th International conference on automation and computing (ICAC)* (pp. 1-5). IEEE.
- [71] Priya, N. S. (2016). Efficient Knowledge Based System to Detect Diseases in Lemon Leaf. *Imperial Journal of Interdisciplinary Research*, 2(5), 275–280
- [72] Sharif, M., Khan, M. A., Iqbal, Z., Azam, M. F., Lali, M. I. U., & Javed, M. Y. (2018). Detection and classification of citrus diseases in agriculture based on optimized weighted segmentation and feature selection. *Computers and electronics in agriculture*, 150, 220-234.
- [73] Li, X., Wei, Z., Peng, F., Liu, J., & Han, G. (2022). Estimating the distribution of chlorophyll content in CYVCV infected lemon leaf using hyperspectral imaging. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 198, 107036.

A Survey on Permission-Based Android Malware Detection

Paramjeet kaur¹ & Dr. Vijay Laxmi²
Department of Computer Applications
Guru Kashi University Talwandi Sabo(Bathinda)
Paramjeet20587@gmail.com

Abstract

Smartphones have become an important part of daily life. Among them, Android devices are widely used because they offer many useful applications. However, many Android applications available in app markets are not properly verified and some may contain malware. These malicious applications can steal personal information, send SMS messages without permission or misuse device resources. This paper is about the identify the malicious applications with the help of the app permissions, and also the various methods describe in this paper.

Keywords: Android, Malware Detection, Machine Learning, Permissions, Classification

INTRODUCTION

Appearance of Android malwares is a consequence of the huge evaluation and increase of android OS based mobile devices users all around the world, which motivated the attackers and virus developers to invade the android apps stores, this phenomenon put up a serious problem to android users that keep private information in their mobile devices or even critical information such as bank accounts, personal information for this reason the topic of detecting android malwares has become a famous research objective among the research field in purpose to find solutions to detect and classify android malwares with better accuracy results and with the minimum false-negative and false-positive results especially when it is about a huge number of android app dataset, The procedure of detecting and classifying android malwares can be divided into 3 principal phases.

1. FEATURE EXTRACTION:

The first principal step in order to detect malwares is to extract features which the classification procedure will be based on, these features can be permissions, activities, API calls, intent and this step can be made in three different manners:

- **Static analysis:** extracting features from the source code of the application without executing it, using the Manifestfile.xml and the DEX file

- **Dynamic analysis:** extracting features used by the application during its execution like the activities and behavior to certain commands or actions.
- **Hybrid analysis:** using a mixed of features extracted from the code source of applications and from their behavior during their execution.

1. FEATURE SELECTION:

Feature selection phase is very important for the performance of the classifier, it is based on first reducing the number of features used during the experiments and second selecting the features that are most informative and correlated in order to increase the performance of classification. There are 3 types of feature selection algorithms:

- **Filter method:** this method is based on selecting features by giving to each feature a rank and then selecting features by their rank.
- **Wrapper method:** is a method based on machine learning algorithms, it consist on testing the features by a machine learning algorithm in order to choose a subset that most increase the performance of the model or classifier.
- **Embedded method:** is a combination of both methods filter and wrapper by first ranking features and selecting top ranked features and then choose the best subset that increase classifier performance.

3. Classification

Types of Android Permissions

Permissions are an important part of the Android Operating system. The purpose of permission is to protect the privacy of the user. Applications are required to request permission to access sensitive data of the user. Android categorizes permissions into four categories which are given in the following:-

Normal Permissions that have a minimum risk on the user, system or the device and granted by default at the install time.

Dangerous Permissions that are evaluating high risk because of their capability of accessing the private data and important sensors of the device.

Signature Permissions are granted only if the requesting application is signed by the same certificate as the app that defined the permission

Special Permissions are system-level and in general unavailable, to apps although there are methods for acquiring.

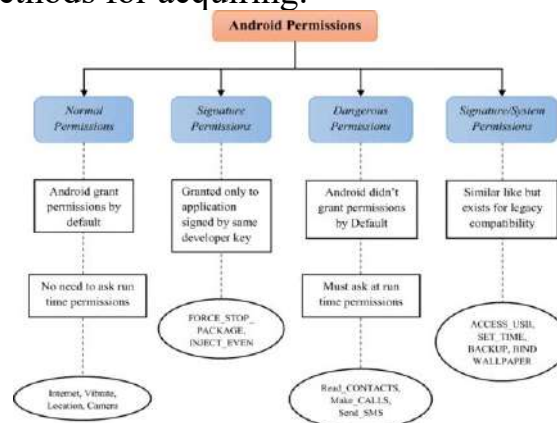


Fig:Types of Android Permission

Related Work

So far, many researches have been made in this topic to resolve the problematic of malwares in android devices and as we mentioned previously this procedure can be divided into 3 phases and in follow we will introduce some approaches that proposed new ideas to improve their results in each phase: Static analysis method as previously mentioned is an Extraction feature phase method used to extract features from the code source of an application, it is proved in many researches that is efficient in classification due to informative features extracted and it doesn't provide much computational resources but the limitation of this method is the obfuscation technique used by malware applications to hide informative features in the source code of application which is the big limitation of this method, DroidSieve is a proposed model to overpass the problematic of obfuscation in static analysis method by using 2 classes of features resource-centric and syntactic features (such as Dex-based features, intents and permissions) to obtain a set of features that can handle with non-obfuscated and obfuscated malwares, their experiment was successful with 99% of accuracy and 0 false-positives results. FEST is a model of classification based on static analysis also, in this approach they developed an Extractor named AppExtractor responsible for decoding app to get requested features from Manifestfile.xml as permissions, intents and APIs that are afterwards selected using FrequentSel feature selection algorithm and several machine learning algorithms for classification purpose such as naïve Bayes, SVM and J48, in their experiment they got accurate results near to 98%. DroidMat is a static based mechanism proposed to deal with detection of android malwares due to its efficiency in extracting different types of features from the source code of an application(permissions, APIs, intent messages passing) especially from the Manifestfile.xml in addition to tracing API calls from each components to discover the real intention behind calling it, experiments proved the effectiveness of such tool compared to tools of the same rule such as Androguard in half of time execution for detecting 1738 applications.

PCA-Relief is a malware detection model based on hybrid analysis for the extraction of features, and in order to reduce features sets dimension and to get most informative features with less redundant information they used a combination of two filter feature selection algorithms PCA and Relief, first the Relief algorithm is used to rank features by giving a weight score to each feature and then select features with the highest rank, in addition to solve the shortcoming of relief algorithm in eliminating redundant features a PCA algorithm is applied to first reduce dimension of subsets and then reducing redundant information, their experiments proved the efficiency of the proposed algorithm compared to each algorithm used separately with 95% accurate results.

MALWARE DETECTION TECHNIQUES

A malware detection program is a computational function that operates within a specific domain that comprises a collection of application programs and a

collection of malicious and benign programs. Its purpose is to analyze the programs within the programs set and determine whether each program is benign (normal) or malware (malicious) . By examining the characteristics, behavior, or code of each program, the detection program aims to accurately classify them and identify any potential malware threats within the domain. The malware detection process typically involves three stages: malware analysis, feature extraction, and classification. Malware analysis is an important process that aims to understand the content and behavior of malicious software. It involves examining and studying the malware to ascertain its functionality, purpose, and potential impact. Once the malware has been analyzed, relevant features are extracted to capture its distinguishing characteristics. These features can be derived from various aspects of the malware, such as its code, behavior, network communication, or file structure. In the classification stage, ML or other classification algorithms are applied to categorize the malware into different classes, such as benign or malicious. This classification is based on the extracted features and patterns observed during the malware analysis stage.

Signature-based detection also known as pattern matching, involves comparing the characteristics or signatures of known malware with the files or processes being analyzed. In signature-based detection, scanner software examines the information of a file and checks it against a database of virus signatures. These virus signatures are essentially specific patterns or sequences of code that are characteristic of known malware. If a file's signature matches one in the database, it is flagged as malicious . An example of signature-based detection can be buffer overflows. Because buffer overflows include shellcodes, the strategy is to maintain a database of known malicious shellcode patterns and alert if a shellcode is found in any request.

- **Anomaly-based systems** in malware detection are designed to identify any type of computer misuse that deviates from the normal activities of a computer system. In contrast, signature-based systems detect malware based on specific patterns or fingerprints stored in their databases. Anomaly-based systems detect malicious software by monitoring system activities and classifying them as either normal or abnormal based on predefined criteria. This approach enables the detection of novel or unknown threats that do not have specific signatures, thereby making it a valuable technique in identifying new and emerging malware. For example, a credit card company uses anomaly-based detection to monitor credit card usage patterns by customers. When a customer makes an unusually large purchase or a purchase in a new location, the algorithm identifies this anomaly and sends an alert to contact the customer.

- **Behavior-based** detection examines the behavior of the program using certain monitoring tools and classifies the program as malware or benign. Even though the program's code is being modified, the program's behavior is mostly the same. Hence, most of unknown malware is detected using this method . However, it is worth mentioning that certain malware binaries may not function correctly within

a protected environment due to anti-analysis techniques. Thus, there is a possibility of misclassifying malware samples as benign in such cases. While behavior-based and anomaly-based detection share a common focus on system behavior, the key difference is the reference point. Behavior-based detection looks for patterns that are characteristic of known malware, while anomaly-based detection identifies deviations from normal, expected behavior .

- **Heuristic-based detection** uses rules, algorithms, or patterns to identify potential malware based on general characteristics or behaviors exhibited by malicious software. For example, if a user or program attempts to remove files that are needed by the OS, it could be malicious . This technique makes educated guesses regarding the presence of malware when specific signatures are not available. Heuristic-based techniques primarily leverage ML and data mining strategies in the context of malware detection .

Machine Learning Algorithm

Machine learning refers to computer programming used to optimize the performance criteria using example data or experience. T. M. Mitchell described machine learning as inherently a multidisciplinary field used in various real-world applications. Machine learning is conducted by introducing several algorithms to solve problems in various fields. This is the reason why machine learning must be evaluated through various algorithms. Thus, we selected nine algorithms to evaluate the performance of feature selection. The following descriptions are for the machine-learning algorithms used in this study.

- **Decision Tree:** A decision tree is a machine learning technique that classifies the data by creating classification rules for the trees. A decision tree is guided by a training case in which information is represented by a tuple and the class label of the attribute values is written down. Owing to the vast space to be retrieved, a tree is typically guided by training data and empty trees and into greedy, top-down, and recursive processes. The tree is created using processes that best partition the training data as the root splitting attribute. The training data are then partitioned into disjoint subsets that satisfy the values of the splitting attribute. Owing to the disadvantage of easily overfitting the trees, pruning may be applied while executing the algorithm, or some trees might be removed to form generalized results.

- **Random Forest:** A random forest is a classifier consisting of a collection of uncorrelated tree structure classifiers . Each tree has the characteristic of finding solutions while voting for the most generalized class for input values. A supervised learning algorithm trained using the bagging method builds multiple decision trees and merges them to obtain a more accurate and stable prediction .

- **Decision Table:** A decision table is a simple means of documenting different decisions or actions taken under different sets of conditions. The decision table allows the creation of a classifier, which summarizes the dataset

into a decision table that contains the same number of attributes as the original dataset and applies the classification of new incoming data using the table.

- **Naïve Bayes:** Naïve Bayes is a classification model based on the conditional probability of a Bayes rule. The independent naïve Bayes model is based on estimating and comparing probabilities; the larger significant probability points out that the actual label is more likely to be the class label value of the larger probability. As the algorithm assumes that the predictive attributes are conditionally independent given the class, and it posits that no hidden or latent attributes influence the prediction process, it is difficult to apply to data dependent on different classes through specific attributes.
- **MLP:** A multi-layer perceptron (MLP) uses omnidirectional artificial neural networks for learning. The neural network structure is presented in three parts: the input layer, hidden layer, and output layer. The input layer obtains the data, the hidden layer is calculated through an activation function, and the output layer shows the results of classification/regression. Although the input/output layers of the model exist individually, the hidden layer can be stacked as multiple layers. It is also known that the deeper a model is, the more generalized it can be in comparison to a shallowly stacked model.
- **SVM:** A support vector machine (SVM), also known as a support vector network (SVN), is a learning model for binary classification that embodies the idea that input vectors map non-linearly to high-dimensional feature spaces. In this feature space, a linear decision surface is constructed to ensure the high generalization ability of the learning machine owing to the unique properties of the decision surface.
- **Logistic Regression:** Logic regression is a machine learning technique that explains how variables with two or more categories are associated with a set of continuous or categorical predictors through probability functions. Unlike ordinary linear regression using straight lines for classification, logistic regression is suitable for binary classification, using a logistic function in the shape of $(1+e^x)$ when fitting the data.
- **AdaBoost:** AdaBoost is a boosting algorithm that combines multiple weak classifiers to create a robust classifier that increases the performance. Unlike previously proposed boosting algorithms, a weak classifier is characterized by errors returned by the weak classifier, which affects the focus of the weak classifier on the problematic examples of the training set, allowing it to better classify the attributes.
- **K-NN:** As the fundamental principle of a K-nearest neighbor (K-NN), if most of the samples around the data on a point in a particular space belong to a specific category, the data on that point can be judged to fall into that category. The K-NN algorithm operates by checking the label of the appropriate numbers of samples closest to the data being classified and subsequently labeling the data as the most aggregated of the samples.

Structure of Android Application

Android application files generally have an extension called APK, which is short for Android Package. The APK is a file that runs applications compressed in zip format and installed on the Android OS. The package ties up several files needed to run the program, and one can see a unique structure to the APK file after decompressing it.



Numerous studies describe the structure in the following manner

- **Manifest:** This area contains basic information regarding the application and is located at the root of all APK files under the name *AndroidManifest.xml*, a binary XML file containing the declarations of important information regarding the application, such as the package name, component, application permissions, and device compatibility.
- **Signatures:** This is the area containing the signature of the application. The *META-INF* directory, where the application signature files are located, is found in this area.
- **Assets:** Assets are used to store static files used in an application and are implemented as an *asset* directory, which requires invoking the *AssetManager* class to access files in the area when real-operating applications are used.
- **Compiled Resources:** It contains pre-compiled resource information, which exists as a *resources.arsc* file. This file is responsible for matching the resource files and resource IDs to record them such that resources can be found, accessed, and used within an application.
- **Native libraries:** These make up the area for the libraries used in an application. Library files tailored to the CPU instruction set of the target device are located at the *lib* directory, primarily written in C/C++.

- Dalvik bytecode: This area contains JAVA's byte code. Within the application, it is implemented in the *classes.dex* file, and contains source code content compiled into bytecodes that Dalvik virtual machines can compile. Each application contains one DEX file as a default, but there are applications with multiple DEX files [21].
- Resources: This is the collection of resources used in an application. The resources of the Android application are saved in the *res* directory.

Measurement Metrics

In this section performance analysis metric are presented. The details of the metrics are presented below: -

- Accuracy: - Accuracy is used to measure the performance in the evidence domain recovery and processing of the data. The fraction of the results that are successfully classified can be represented by equation as follows:

$$Accuracy = \frac{TP+TN}{TP+FP+TN+FN}$$

- Precision: - Precision is a performance assessment that measures the ratio of correctly identified positives and the total number of identified positives. This can be seen as follows:

$$Precision = \frac{TP}{TP+FP}$$

- Recall: - The recall is also referred to as the sensitivity, which is the ratio of connected instances retrieved over the total number of retrieved instances and can be seen as follows:

$$Recall = \frac{TP}{TP+FN}$$

Conclusion

The number of Android systems has increased dramatically during the past years. Because Android devices are so popular, cybercriminals target them. Machine learning-based malware detection has become the most popular defence strategy against Android malware in recent years. As new malware appears and changes its behaviour patterns, it is imperative to update the malware features in the dataset. It is never feasible to assess the defensive mechanism's efficacy using older datasets. In the mobile application the main important thing is permission, and due to the permission attackers try to get the user's sensitive data and information. In this paper various machine learning approaches described for detecting malicious Android applications.

References

1.G. Suarez-Tangil, S. K. Dash, M. Ahmadi, J. Kinder, G. Giacinto, et L. Cavallaro, «DroidSieve: Fast and Accurate Classification of Obfuscated Android Malware », in Proceedings of the Seventh ACM on Conference on Data and

Application Security and Privacy - CODASPY '17, Scottsdale, Arizona, USA, 2017, p. 309-320.

[2] K. Zhao, D. Zhang, X. Su, et W. Li, «Fest: A feature extraction and selection tool for Android malware detection », in 2015 IEEE Symposium on Computers and Communication (ISCC), 2015, p. 714-720

[3] H.A. Alatwi. Android malware detection using category-based machine learning classifiers. Masters thesis, June 2016.

[4] D. Barrera, H.G. Kayacik, P.C. van Oorschot and A. Somayaji. A methodology for empirical analysis of permission-based security models and its application to android. In Proc. of conference on Computer and communication security, ACM, October 2010.

[5]. Juniper Networks: 2011 Mobile Threats Report(February 2012)

[6]. I. Burguera, U.Z., Nadijm-Tehrani, S.: Crowdroid: Behavior- Based Malware Detection System for Android. In: SPSM'11, ACM(October 2011)

[7]. A. Shabtai, U. Kanonov, Y. Elovici, C. Glezer, Y. Weiss: Andromaly: a behavioral malware detection framework for android devices. Journal of Intelligent Information Systems 38(1) (January 2011) 161-190

[8]. G. Holmes, A. Donkin, and I.H. Witten, —Weka: a machine learning workbench,|| August 1994, pp. 357-361.

[9]. G. Dini, F.Martinelli, A. Saracino, D. Sgandurra: MADAM: a Multi-Level Anomaly Detector for Android Malware

[10]www.wikipedia.com

Determinants affecting entrepreneurial intention of university students: an analytical literature review

Narinder Kaur ^{#1}, Ramanpreet Kaur ^{*2}, Harpreet Singh^{#3}

[#]Department of Business Studies, Punjabi University, Guru Kashi Campus, Talwandi Sabo (Bathinda), Punjab, India.

¹kaurnarinder@pbi.ac.in

³harpreet.singh@pbi.ac.in

^{*}Department of Commerce, Punjabi University Patiala, Punjab, India

²raman2708kaur@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Entrepreneurship plays a significant role in economic development and job creation, making entrepreneurial intention among students an important area of research. This study presents a systematic literature review of empirical research examining the determinants of entrepreneurial intention among university students. A comprehensive search of major academic databases, including Google Scholar, Scopus, Web of Science, and ScienceDirect, was conducted to identify relevant studies published between 2015 and 2026. The review summarises the key variables, research methodologies, sample characteristics, and findings reported in the selected studies. The results indicate that entrepreneurial intention is influenced by a range of factors, including personality traits, entrepreneurial self-efficacy, attitude toward entrepreneurship, perceived behavioural control, entrepreneurship education, family support, university ecosystem, and financial literacy. Among these, entrepreneurial self-efficacy, positive entrepreneurial attitude, and supportive educational environments consistently demonstrate strong positive relationships with entrepreneurial intention. The findings also reveal an increasing use of advanced analytical techniques, such as structural equation modelling and partial least squares structural equation modelling, in recent research. Despite extensive studies in this area, gaps remain regarding gender-focused research, particularly among female students, and the integration of financial literacy with psychological and environmental determinants. This review provides a comprehensive overview of existing literature and offers insights for researchers, educators, and policymakers to better understand and promote entrepreneurial intention among students.

Keywords- entrepreneurial intention, determinants, systematic literature review

I. INTRODUCTION

Entrepreneurship has emerged as a crucial factor fueling economic growth, spurring innovation, and creating jobs across both developed and developing countries. [1]. According to Laine and Kibler (2022) [2] Entrepreneurship constitutes a social practice that involves the creation of novel entities—such as products, services, or organisations within a specific socioeconomic context. Furthermore, entrepreneurship boosts productivity by creating new

markets, industries, technologies, and jobs. Therefore, promoting entrepreneurship is very important and has become a key part of public policy. Many studies have aimed to explain why people want to become entrepreneurs and what factors influence their plans to start new businesses. Entrepreneurial intention is a critical determinant of entrepreneurial behaviour and reflects an individual's deliberate, conscious effort to initiate a new venture [3]. According to Xanthopoulou et al. (2024) [1] Entrepreneurship involves creating something new and valuable by dedicating time and effort while accepting financial, psychological, and social risks in exchange for potential rewards. Some scholars have challenged the importance of entrepreneurial intention, which is the desire and commitment to start a new venture and pursue self-employment. However, intention is the strongest indicator of actual behaviour, which explains why entrepreneurial intention has become one of the fastest-evolving subfields within the broader field of entrepreneurship research [3], [4], [5]. Research on Entrepreneurial Intention broadens the theoretical exploration [6]. According to (Liñán & Fayolle, 2015) [4] Research in the sub-field of Entrepreneurial Intention, an established construct, demands a thorough investigation to identify research gaps that impact theory, methodology, and context. A systematic literature review (SLR) is a method for identifying research gaps. It is well-suited for providing a comprehensive overview of the literature on this topic. SLR assists in recognising the key themes in the literature, as well as identifying gaps and emerging research directions [4]. Liñán & Fayolle (2015) conducted a literature review on Entrepreneurial Intention, using citation analysis to categorise research areas and thematic analysis to identify themes. They found it a well-established field, but noted ongoing questions as new knowledge emerges, indicating a need for further research. To date, no reviews have comprehensively analysed aspects such as main findings, databases, citations, study settings, methodology, units of analysis, fields, or theories. This investigation focuses on the primary determinants that directly influence entrepreneurial intent among university students. The aim of this research is to identify and analyse the factors affecting the entrepreneurial aspirations of prospective entrepreneurs, who can influence a nation's prosperity. In this context, several scholars have proposed the following research question: "Which factors predominantly influence students' entrepreneurial intent?" This study uses a systematic literature review to identify the determinants of students' entrepreneurial aspirations and provides a comprehensive overview of current knowledge on university students' entrepreneurial intentions and the factors that affect them. The review draws on a range of sources, including academic journals, book chapters, and published reports. This study reviews empirical research from 2015 to 2026 to identify factors influencing university students' entrepreneurial intention. Analysing 35 studies, it summarises main findings, detects patterns, and highlights gaps. The review presents implications and key findings that must be considered in education and policy to promote entrepreneurship.

II. RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

In this paper, a systematic review of the empirical literature from 2015 to 2026 has been conducted. The data were collected from various journals, theses, and websites, including Google Scholar, Scopus, Web of Science, and ScienceDirect.

III. OBJECTIVES

1. To Synthesise the existing literature on the factors affecting the entrepreneurial intention of university students.
2. To present a comprehensive review of determinants affecting the entrepreneurial intention of university students.

TABLE I
LITERATURE REVIEW

S. No.	Author and year	Sample size	Methodology	IV	DV	Relationship of IV with DV
1.	Rakib (2015) [7]	232 students	Multiple Regression Analysis using the Statistical Product and Service Solutions (SPSS)	Industrial work practices, family environment	Interest in entrepreneurship	Positive Relationship Industrial work practices, and family environment
2.	Zhang et al. (2015) [8]	275 students	Structural Equation Modelling	Attitude, social norm, controlled behaviour, short-term risk-taking, psychological well-being	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive Relationship Social norm, controlled behaviour, short-term risk-taking Negative Relationship Attitude, psychological well-being
3.	Adekiya et al. (2016) [9]	357 students	Regression Analysis	perceived appropriateness , perceived effectiveness, entrepreneurial training, perceived consistence	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive Relationship perceived appropriateness , perceived effectiveness, entrepreneurial training, perceived consistence

4.	Karabulut (2016) [10]	480 students	Factor analyses and multiple regression analysis	Internal locus of control, need for achievement, risk tolerance, and entrepreneurial alertness	Entrepreneurial Intention	Positive Relationship Internal locus of control, need for achievement, risk tolerance, and entrepreneurial alertness
5.	Ismail et al. (2016) [11]	502 students	Pearson correlation coefficient, simple linear regression	Openness to experience, conscientiousness, extraversion, agreeableness Neuroticism	Entrepreneurial Intentions	Positive Relationship Openness to experience, conscientiousness, extraversion, agreeableness Negative Relationship Neuroticism
6.	Farrukh et al. (2017) [12]	306 students	Structural equation modeling	family background, big five personality traits and self-efficacy	Entrepreneurial intentions	Positive Relationship Family background, self-efficacy, consciousness, and extroversion Negative Relationship Neuroticism, agreeableness
7.	Belas et al. (2017) [13]	409 students	Cluster analysis	Social factors, economic factors	inclination towards entrepreneurship	Positive Relationship Social factors, economic factors
8.	Butz et al. (2018) [14]	500 students	independent samples t-tests	Big five personality traits, Grit,	Entrepreneurial intent	Positive Relationship

						Grit, big five traits
9.	Sidratulmuntah et al. (2018) [15]	306 students	Partial Least Squares-Structural Equation Modelling (PLS-SEM)	proactive personality, entrepreneurial self-efficacy and perceived university support	Female student's entrepreneurial intentions	Positive Relationship proactive personality, entrepreneurial self-efficacy and university support factors
10.	Sharma (2018) [16]	530 students	The chi-square test, Fisher's exact test, and Mann-Whitney U test	role of gender, culture	entrepreneurial intentions, perceived barriers to entrepreneurship	Positive Relationship Gender and cultural differences
11.	Salmi et al. (2019) [17]	693 students	Mean, standard deviation t-test, Pearson Product-Moment Correlation	perceived relational support	entrepreneurial readiness	Positive Relationship perceived relational support
12.	Sahin et al. (2019) [18]	253 students	fuzzy set qualitative comparative analysis (fsQCA)	Big Five personality traits, entrepreneurial self-efficacy	entrepreneurial intention	Positive Relationship Big Five personality traits, entrepreneurial self-efficacy
13.	Sahoo et al. (2019) [19]	510 students	structural equation modelling	access to financing, access to business information, social networks, individual	entrepreneurial intentions	Positive Relationship contextual antecedents, students' entrepreneurial orientation

				entrepreneurial orientation, and university support		
14	Khan et al. (2020) [20]	387 students	CFA and SEM	Attitude towards entrepreneurship, subjective norms, perceived behavioural control, entrepreneurship education	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive Relationship Attitude towards entrepreneurship, subjective norms, perceived behavioural control, entrepreneurship education
15	Saptadjaya et al. (2020) [21]	138 students	linear regression analysis	self-efficacy and the Big Five personality traits	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive Relationship self-efficacy and conscientiousness Negative Relationship Openness to experience, agreeableness, neuroticism, and extroversion
16	Shi et al. (2020) [22]	374 students	Regression analysis	Perceived university support, entrepreneurial self-efficacy	Growth-oriented intention, independence-oriented intention	Positive Relationship perceived university support, entrepreneurial self-efficacy
17	Li et al. (2021) [23]	462 students	structural equation modeling	Perceived entrepreneurial education and perceived	Entrepreneurial intention, entrepreneurial self-efficacy,	Positive relationship Perceived education, perceived

				entrepreneurial policies, gender		entrepreneurial policies, and entrepreneurial self-efficacy Negative relationship Gender
18 .	Awwad et al. (2021) [24]	323 students	Structural Equation Modelling with Partial Least Squares	Big five personality traits, entrepreneurial alertness	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship Conscientiousness, openness and alertness Negative relationship agreeableness and neuroticism
19 .	Ahmed et al. (2021) [25]	435 students	bootstrapping and the Sobel test	Entrepreneurial self-efficacy, family support, and anticipated regret	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship Entrepreneurial self-efficacy, family support, and anticipated regret
20 .	Alfianti et al. (2021) [26]	168 students	PLS-SEM	perceived university support	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship perceived university support
21 .	Chang et al. (2022) [27]	752 students	structural equation modelling (SEM)	Entrepreneurial Competency, Entrepreneurial Mindset,	Sustainable Entrepreneurial Intention	Positive relationship Entrepreneurial Competency, Entrepreneurial Mindset,
22 .	Dwi Lestari et al. (2022) [28]	302 students	PLS-SEM	university institutional support (perceived educational	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship university institutional support

				support, concept development support, and concept development support) and personal traits variables (self-efficacy and proactive personality)		(perceived educational support, concept development support, and concept development support) and personal traits variables (self-efficacy and proactive personality)
23	Mathushan et al. (2022) [29]	196 students	partial least squares (PLS)	Extraversion, Agreeableness, Conscientiousness, and Openness, Neuroticism	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship Extraversion, Agreeableness, Conscientiousness, and Openness Negative relationship Neuroticism
24	Yaqub et al. (2023) [30]	370 students	SmartPLS & SPSS software	Attitude Lack of Finance Financial Returns Entrepreneurial Motivation	Entrepreneurial intentions	Positive relationship Attitude Lack of Finance Financial Returns Entrepreneurial Motivation
25	Gaire et al. (2023) [31]	240 students	independent t-test, one-way ANOVA, test and multiple regressions	Personal Attitude, Perceived Behavioral Control, Subjective Norms, Structural Support and	Entrepreneurial intentions	Positive relationship Personal Attitude, Perceived Behavioral Control and Subjective Norms

				Entrepreneurship Education		Negative relationship Structural Support and Entrepreneurship Education
26 .	Taneja et al. (2024) [32]	669 students	SEM	experiential learning, entrepreneurial self-efficacy, and entrepreneurial attitude	Entrepreneurial intentions	Positive relationship experiential learning, entrepreneurial self-efficacy, and entrepreneurial attitude
27 .	Sufian et al. (2024) [33]	384 students	SPSS, regression analysis and Pearson's correlation coefficient	Financial literacy (financial attitude, financial knowledge)	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship Financial literacy (financial attitude, financial knowledge)
28 .	Saqib et al. (2025) [34]	408 students	Structural equation modelling	Openness to experience Conscientiousness Extraversion Agreeableness Neuroticism, Entrepreneurial Education	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship Openness to experience Conscientiousness Extraversion Agreeableness Neuroticism, Entrepreneurial Education
29 .	Vu et al. (2025) [35]	466 students	Partial Least Squares Structural Equation Modelling	entrepreneurial climate, gender inequality perception and self-efficacy	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship entrepreneurial climate, gender inequality perception and self-efficacy

30	Haj Youssef et al. (2025) [36]	1,516 students	fuzzy-set qualitative comparative analysis (fsQCA)	Big five personality traits	Entrepreneurial orientation	Positive relationship Big five personality traits
31	Alyafei (2026) [37]	502 students	Correlation analysis	openness to experience, conscientiousness, extraversion, agreeableness and Neuroticism	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship openness to experience, conscientiousness, extraversion, agreeableness Negative Relationship Neuroticism
32	Trung et al. (2026) [38]	412 students	Structural equation modelling	Personal Traits, Family background, University Ecosystem, Attitude, Subjective norms, perceived behavioural Control and Entrepreneurial Mindset	Entrepreneurial Intention	Positive relationship Personal Traits, Family background, University Ecosystem, Attitude, Subjective norms and perceived behavioural control, Entrepreneurial Mindset

33	Liu et al. (2026) [39]	331 students	Structural equation modelling	entrepreneurship education and trait competitiveness	social entrepreneurial intentions	Positive relationship altruism, entrepreneurial attitude, subjective norms, and governmental support Negative Relationship Sustainable Development Goal knowledge
34	Lawati et al. (2026) [40]	644 students	Structural equation modelling	entrepreneurship education, entrepreneurial culture, and social media usage, attitude, social norms, perceived behavioural control	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship entrepreneurship education, social media usage, attitude, social norms, perceived behavioural control Negative Relationship entrepreneurial culture
35	Sleiman et al. (2026) [41]	362 students	Structural Equation Modelling (SEM)	Attitude towards entrepreneurship, entrepreneurship education, subjective norms, self-efficacy, perceived	Entrepreneurial intention	Positive relationship Attitude towards entrepreneurship, entrepreneurship education, self-efficacy, perceived

				behavioural control, perceived creativity disposition		behavioural control, perceived creativity disposition Negative Relationship subjective norms

IV ANALYSIS OF TABLE

The table above lists the 6 columns, and the most important are the independent variable (IV) and dependent variable (DV) columns. The literature strongly indicates that entrepreneurial intention among students is influenced by multiple psychological, social, educational, and financial factors.

Most influential factors

1. Personality traits
2. Entrepreneurial self-efficacy
3. Attitude towards entrepreneurship
4. Entrepreneurship education
5. Family and social support
6. University ecosystem
7. Financial literacy

V. FINDINGS FROM LITERATURE REVIEW

A. Entrepreneurial Intention is Influenced by Multiple Factors

The studies reviewed show that students' entrepreneurial intentions are influenced by a mix of personal, psychological, educational, social, and environmental factors. Factors such as personality traits, self-efficacy, family background, university support, and financial literacy all play a role in shaping students' willingness to pursue entrepreneurship. This indicates that entrepreneurial intention is a complex, multifaceted concept that cannot be attributed to just one cause.

B. Personality Traits Play a Significant Role

Many studies highlight the importance of personality traits, especially the Big Five, in shaping entrepreneurial intention. Most studies reported that:

- Openness to experience, conscientiousness, and extraversion positively influence entrepreneurial intention.

- Neuroticism is frequently found to have a negative relationship with entrepreneurial intention.

These findings indicate that people with proactive, confident, and innovative personality traits are more inclined to pursue entrepreneurship.

C. Entrepreneurial Self-Efficacy is a Strong Predictor

Entrepreneurial self-efficacy emerged as one of the most influential predictors of entrepreneurial intention. Students who believe they can successfully start and manage a business are more likely to develop entrepreneurial aspirations. Several studies also show that self-efficacy acts as a mediating factor between education, personality traits, and entrepreneurial intention.

D. Theory of Planned Behaviour is Widely Used

Many studies in the review are based on the Theory of Planned Behaviour (TPB). The constructs of attitude toward entrepreneurship, subjective norms, and perceived behavioural control are commonly used to explain entrepreneurial intention. Most findings indicate that:

- Attitude toward entrepreneurship has a strong positive effect.
- Perceived behavioural control increases students' confidence in entrepreneurial activities.
- Subjective norms yield mixed results depending on cultural and social contexts.

E. Increasing Use of Advanced Quantitative Methods

The review reveals a clear methodological evolution. Earlier studies mainly relied on correlation and regression analysis, whereas recent research increasingly utilises sophisticated statistical methods such as:

- Structural Equation Modelling (SEM)
- Partial Least Squares Structural Equation Modelling (PLS-SEM)
- Fuzzy-set Qualitative Comparative Analysis (fsQCA)

These advanced techniques enable researchers to analyse intricate relationships among multiple variables.

F. Over-Reliance on Cross-Sectional Data

Most studies in the review use cross-sectional designs that measure respondents' perceptions at a single point in time, which limits the ability to determine causality or track changes in entrepreneurial intention over time.

G. Inconsistent Findings Across Variables

Although many variables are positively associated with entrepreneurial intention, some studies report conflicting findings. For instance, factors like subjective norms, entrepreneurship education, and structural support have shown both positive and negative associations in various studies. These discrepancies imply that contextual factors could play a significant role in shaping these outcomes.

H. Lack of Longitudinal and Experimental Studies

Most research concentrates on quantitative survey-based studies, while longitudinal studies, experimental research, and qualitative investigations are relatively limited. These approaches could offer deeper insights into how entrepreneurial intentions develop and translate into actual entrepreneurial behaviour.

VI. IMPLICATIONS OF THE SYSTEMATIC LITERATURE REVIEW

A. Theoretical Implications

The review's findings add to the existing knowledge on entrepreneurial intention by emphasizing the complex, multidimensional nature of entrepreneurial behaviour. The literature indicates that entrepreneurial intention is shaped by psychological traits, educational influences, social support, and environmental factors. It also affirms the importance of theoretical models, such as the Theory of Planned Behaviour (TPB), in understanding entrepreneurial intention, with variables such as attitude toward entrepreneurship, subjective norms, and perceived behavioural control consistently identified as key predictors. Moreover, the review suggests that incorporating additional constructs, such as entrepreneurial self-efficacy, personality traits, and financial literacy, can significantly enhance the explanatory power of these models. It also underscores the importance of integrating financial literacy, psychological traits, and institutional support into a comprehensive framework that will enable future researchers to develop more robust models to explain entrepreneurial intention among students.

B. Practical Implications

This review highlights significant implications for educational institutions and universities. Given that entrepreneurship education, self-efficacy, and experiential learning greatly shape entrepreneurial intention, universities should focus on practical, skills-focused entrepreneurship programs rather than purely theoretical ones. To foster entrepreneurial intent, institutions can implement activities such as entrepreneurship training and workshops, mentorship and networking opportunities, business incubation centres, and experiential learning through startup projects. Additionally, creating an entrepreneurial ecosystem that helps students turn their ideas into viable businesses is essential. Providing access to funding, innovation labs, and startup competitions can further boost students' entrepreneurial motivation.

C. Policy Implications

The review also provides insights for policymakers and government agencies. Since family support, financial literacy, and institutional environment influence entrepreneurial intention, policies should focus on creating a supportive entrepreneurial ecosystem for young entrepreneurs. Government bodies can encourage entrepreneurship among students by:

- Promoting financial literacy programs
- Providing startup funding and financial incentives
- Developing entrepreneurship development programs
- Supporting youth entrepreneurship initiatives

In addition, policies should focus on reducing barriers to entrepreneurship, particularly for students and young graduates who may face difficulties in accessing capital and resources.

VII. Conclusion

This review of 35 studies from 2015 to 2026 explores the factors influencing students' entrepreneurial intention. It shows that traits such as openness, conscientiousness, extraversion,

and self-efficacy strongly predict entrepreneurial interest, whereas neuroticism tends to negatively affect it. The Theory of Planned Behaviour- attitude, norms, and perceived control- also plays a key role. University support, education, financial literacy, and experiential learning are crucial. Limitations include reliance on cross-sectional surveys and self-reported data, and a limited focus on gender, especially in developing countries. Findings vary across cultures and contexts. The review emphasises the need for integrated, longitudinal, and gender-specific research to better understand how entrepreneurial intentions form and lead to action.

References

- [1] P. Xanthopoulou and A. Sahinidis, “Students’ Entrepreneurial Intention and Its Influencing Factors: A Systematic Literature Review,” May 01, 2024, *Multidisciplinary Digital Publishing Institute (MDPI)*. doi: 10.3390/admsci14050098.
- [2] L. Laine and E. Kibler, “The Social Imaginary of Emancipation in Entrepreneurship,” *Entrepreneurship: Theory and Practice*, vol. 46, no. 2, pp. 393–420, Mar. 2022, doi: 10.1177/1042258720959251.
- [3] F. Liñán and Y.-W. Chen, “Development and Cross-Cultural Application of a Specific Instrument to Measure Entrepreneurial Intentions,” 2009.
- [4] F. Liñán and A. Fayolle, “A systematic literature review on entrepreneurial intentions: citation, thematic analyses, and research agenda,” *International Entrepreneurship and Management Journal*, vol. 11, no. 4, pp. 907–933, Jan. 2015, doi: 10.1007/s11365-015-0356-5.
- [5] A. Fayolle and F. Liñán, “The future of research on entrepreneurial intentions,” *J. Bus. Res.*, vol. 67, no. 5, pp. 663–666, May 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.jbusres.2013.11.024.
- [6] B. Bird, “Implementing Entrepreneurial Ideas: The Case for Intention,” *The Academy of Management Review*, vol. 13, no. 3, p. 442, Jul. 1988, doi: 10.2307/258091.
- [7] M. Rakib, “Effect of Industrial Work Practice and Family Environment on Interest in Entrepreneurship to Students of Vocational High School,” *Journal of Education and Vocational Research*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 31–37, Dec. 2015, doi: 10.22610/jevr.v6i4.205.
- [8] P. Zhang, D. D. Wang, and C. L. Owen, “A study of entrepreneurial intention of university students,” *Entrepreneurship Research Journal*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. 61–82, Jan. 2015, doi: 10.1515/ERJ-2014-0004.
- [9] A. A. Adekiya and F. Ibrahim, “Entrepreneurship intention among students. The antecedent role of culture and entrepreneurship training and development,” *The International Journal of Management Education*, vol. 14, no. 2, pp. 116–132, Jul. 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.ijme.2016.03.001.
- [10] A. T. Karabulut, “Personality Traits on Entrepreneurial Intention,” *Procedia Soc. Behav. Sci.*, vol. 229, pp. 12–21, Aug. 2016, doi: 10.1016/J.SBSPRO.2016.07.109.
- [11] M. Ismail *et al.*, “Entrepreneurial intentions amongst Tunisian students: An empirical investigation applying the big-five personality traits theory,” *ijhem.com*, vol. 4, no. 10, 2016, Accessed: Mar. 22, 2025. [Online]. Available: http://www.ijhem.com/cdn/article_file/i-5_c-41.pdf
- [12] M. Farrukh, A. A. Khan, M. Shahid Khan, S. Ravan Ramzani, and B. S. A. Soladoye, “Entrepreneurial intentions: the role of family factors, personality traits and self-efficacy,” *World Journal of Entrepreneurship, Management and Sustainable Development*, vol. 13, no. 4, pp. 303–317, Sep. 2017, doi: 10.1108/wjem-sd-03-2017-0018.

- [13] J. Belas, B. Gavurova, J. Schonfeld, K. Zvarikova, and T. Kacerauskas, "Social and Economic Factors Affecting the Entrepreneurial Intention of University Students," 2017.
- [14] N. Butz, S. Hanson, ... P. S.-... of G. E., and undefined 2018, "Beyond the Big Five: does grit influence the entrepreneurial intent of university students in the US?," *Springer*, 2018, Accessed: Mar. 22, 2025. [Online]. Available: <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1186/s40497-018-0100-z>
- [15] Sidratulmunthah, S. Hussain, and M. Imran Malik, "Towards nurturing the entrepreneurial intentions of neglected female business students of Pakistan through proactive personality, self-efficacy and university support factors," *Asia Pacific Journal of Innovation and Entrepreneurship*, vol. 12, no. 3, pp. 363–378, Dec. 2018, doi: 10.1108/apjie-03-2018-0015.
- [16] L. Sharma, "Entrepreneurial intentions and perceived barriers to entrepreneurship among youth in Uttarakhand state of India: A cross-cultural investigation across genders," *International Journal of Gender and Entrepreneurship*, vol. 10, no. 4, pp. 243–269, Oct. 2018, doi: 10.1108/IJGE-02-2018-0009.
- [17] B. Salami, S. Segun, L. Femi Ademiluyi, N. Bibiana Nwabufu, and G. T. Oladunjoye, "PERCEIVED RELATIONAL SUPPORT AS DETERMINANT OF ENTREPRENEURIAL READINESS OF BUSINESS EDUCATION STUDENTS IN COLLEGES OF EDUCATION SOUTH-WEST, NIGERIA," *JOURNAL OF EDUCATION*, vol. 6, no. 1, 2019.
- [18] F. Şahin, H. Karadağ, and B. Tuncer, "Big five personality traits, entrepreneurial self-efficacy and entrepreneurial intention: A configurational approach," *International Journal of Entrepreneurial Behaviour and Research*, vol. 25, no. 6, pp. 1188–1211, Aug. 2019, doi: 10.1108/IJEBr-07-2018-0466.
- [19] S. Sahoo and R. K. Panda, "Exploring entrepreneurial orientation and intentions among technical university students: Role of contextual antecedents," *Education and Training*, vol. 61, no. 6, pp. 718–736, Jul. 2019, doi: 10.1108/ET-11-2018-0247.
- [20] R. Khan, I. Anwar, P. Thoudam, K. M. B. Islam, and I. Saleem, "Entrepreneurial intention among female university students: examining the moderating role of entrepreneurial education," *J. for International Business and Entrepreneurship Development*, vol. 12, no. 4, p. 217, 2020, doi: 10.1504/jibed.2020.10032497.
- [21] K. Saptadjaya and & L. Gunawan, "THE EFFECT OF SELF EFFICACY AND BIG FIVE PERSONALITY TRAITS TOWARDS ENTREPRENEURIAL INTENTION ON INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MANAGEMENT-INTERNATIONAL CLASS STUDENTS IN UNIVERSITAS CIPUTRA," *Jurnal Entrepreneur dan Entrepreneurship*, vol. 9, no. 2, pp. 69–84, 2020.
- [22] L. Shi, X. Yao, and W. Wu, "Perceived university support, entrepreneurial self-efficacy, heterogeneous entrepreneurial intentions in entrepreneurship education: The moderating role of the Chinese sense of face," *Journal of Entrepreneurship in Emerging Economies*, vol. 12, no. 2, pp. 205–230, Mar. 2020, doi: 10.1108/JEEE-04-2019-0040.
- [23] Z. Li and A. Y. M. A. Islam, "Entrepreneurial Intention in Higher Vocational Education: An Empirically-Based Model With Implications for the Entrepreneurial Community," *Sage Open*, vol. 11, no. 4, Nov. 2021, doi: 10.1177/21582440211059179.
- [24] M. S. Awwad and R. M. N. Al-Aseer, "Big Five personality traits impact on entrepreneurial intention: the mediating role of entrepreneurial alertness," *Asia Pacific Journal of*

Innovation and Entrepreneurship, vol. 15, no. 1, pp. 87–100, Jul. 2021, doi: 10.1108/apjie-09-2020-0136.

- [25] I. Ahmed, T. Islam, and A. Usman, “Predicting entrepreneurial intentions through self-efficacy, family support, and regret: A moderated mediation explanation,” *Journal of Entrepreneurship in Emerging Economies*, vol. 13, no. 1, pp. 26–38, Jan. 2021, doi: 10.1108/JEEE-07-2019-0093.
- [26] R. Alfianti, K. B. Mulyono, and F. Nurhidayati, “Perceived University Support: How Does It Build the Entrepreneurial Intention? A Case from Indonesia,” 2021.
- [27] A. Chang, D. F. Chang, and T. L. Chen, “Detecting Female Students Transforming Entrepreneurial Competency, Mindset, and Intention into Sustainable Entrepreneurship,” *Sustainability (Switzerland)*, vol. 14, no. 20, Oct. 2022, doi: 10.3390/su142012970.
- [28] E. Dwi Lestari, N. Rizkalla, and P. Purnamaningsih, “THE EFFECT OF PERCEIVED UNIVERSITY SUPPORT, ENTREPRENEURIAL SELF-EFFICACY AND PROACTIVE PERSONALITY IN PROMOTING STUDENT ENTREPRENEURIAL INTENTION IN INDONESIA,” *Journal of Management and Business Education*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 169–197, Apr. 2022, doi: 10.35564/jmbe.2022.0011.
- [29] P. Mathushan and A. S. Gamage, “Big Five Personality Traits and Entrepreneurial Intention: An Empirical Evidence from Sri Lankan State Universities,” *South Asian Journal of Business Insights*, vol. 2, no. 2, pp. 46–67, Dec. 2022, doi: 10.4038/sajbi.v2i2.45.
- [30] R. M. S. Yaqub, S. Kausar, A. Rehman, and Z. Arif, “Unveiling Entrepreneurial Intentions: A Study of Business Graduates in South Punjab’s Higher Education Institutions with a Focus on Gender Moderation,” *Bulletin of Business and Economics (BBE)*, vol. 12, no. 3, pp. 417–429, Oct. 2023, doi: 10.61506/01.00050.
- [31] M. S. Gaire, M. Tara, and P. Upadhyaya, “Entrepreneurial Intention of Management Graduates,” *The Lumbini Journal of Business and Economics*, vol. XI, no. 1, 2023.
- [32] M. Taneja, R. Kiran, and S. C. Bose, “Assessing entrepreneurial intentions through experiential learning, entrepreneurial self-efficacy, and entrepreneurial attitude,” *Studies in Higher Education*, vol. 49, no. 1, pp. 98–118, 2024, doi: 10.1080/03075079.2023.2223219.
- [33] A. Sufian and Y. Y. Wen, “The Influence of Financial Literacy on Entrepreneurial Intention among University Students in Malaysia,” *International Journal of Academic Research in Business and Social Sciences*, vol. 14, no. 8, Aug. 2024, doi: 10.6007/ijarbss/v14-i8/22288.
- [34] N. Saqib, F. Amin, and S. Gupta, “The impact of Big Five personality traits on entrepreneurial intention: the mediating role of entrepreneurial education,” *International Journal of Sociology and Social Policy*, pp. 1–20, Dec. 2025, doi: 10.1108/IJSSP-12-2024-0622.
- [35] T. D. Vu, L. P. Bui, P. A. Vu, T. Dang-Van, B. N. Le, and N. Nguyen, “Understanding female students’ entrepreneurial intentions: gender inequality perception as a barrier and perceived family support as a moderator,” *Journal of Entrepreneurship in Emerging Economies*, vol. 17, no. 1, pp. 142–163, Jan. 2025, doi: 10.1108/JEEE-05-2024-0171.
- [36] M. Haj Youssef, N. Sayour, N. Valaei, H. Hussein, and M. Harakeh, “The impact of Big Five Personality Traits on entrepreneurial orientation,” *Entrepreneurship & Regional Development*, vol. 38, no. 1–2, pp. 185–209, 2025, doi: 10.1080/08985626.2025.2570320.

- [37] N. A. S. Alyafei, “Impact of the Big Five Personality Traits on Entrepreneurial Intentions among Qatar University Students,” *Dirasat: Human and Social Sciences*, vol. 53, no. 2, p. 8378, 2026, doi: 10.35516/Hum.2025.8.
- [38] N. N. Trung and P. T. Vinh, “Fostering an entrepreneurial mindset among university students: Evidence from the University-based entrepreneurial ecosystem in Vietnam,” *Decision Science Letters*, vol. 15, no. 1, pp. 115–128, Dec. 2026, doi: 10.5267/j.dsl.2025.10.005.
- [39] H. C. Liu and C. Y. Ip, “From competition to contribution: How trait competitiveness drives social entrepreneurial intentions among university students,” *Acta Psychol. (Amst)*., vol. 262, no. 2, p. 106057, Feb. 2026, doi: 10.1016/j.actpsy.2025.106057.
- [40] E. H. Al Lawati, I. A. Jumaan, U. H. Abdul Kohar, and A. Tarhini, “Entrepreneurial intention revisited: The roles of entrepreneurship education, entrepreneurial culture, and social media usage,” *The International Journal of Management Education*, vol. 24, no. 1, p. 101288, Mar. 2026, doi: 10.1016/j.ijme.2025.101288.
- [41] K. A. A. Sleiman, E. Abushanab, M. S. Y. Ali, M. A. E. Suliman, and L. Juanli, “Understanding the determinants of entrepreneurial intention among Sudanese university students,” *Acta Psychol. (Amst)*., vol. 262, Feb. 2026, doi: 10.1016/j.actpsy.2025.106122.

Honey Bee Pollination Challenges: Threats, Technological Interventions and Conservation Strategies

Sukhpreet Kaur Brar

¹ Assistant Professor, School of agriculture sciences and engineering

Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda

Email: sukhpreetbrar652@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Honey bees (*Apis mellifera*) serve as the cornerstone of global agricultural pollination, contributing an estimated USD 200–577 billion annually to world food production. Yet, over the past two decades, managed and wild bee populations have experienced alarming declines, driven by a complex interplay of parasitic infestations, pesticide exposure, habitat degradation, nutritional deficits, and accelerating climate change. We examine the biology and epidemiology of *Varroa destructor* and *Nosema ceranae*, sublethal neurobiological effects of neonicotinoid insecticides, phenological mismatches induced by climate change, and landscape-level habitat fragmentation. Additionally, we evaluate emerging precision apiculture technologies—including IoT-enabled hive monitoring, machine learning-based disease detection, RFID bee tracking, UAV remote sensing, and robotic pollination systems—as engineering solutions to the pollinator crisis. We present two comparative tables summarizing major challenge categories and technological mitigations, and a graphical depiction of annual colony loss trends from 2006 to 2025. Our findings indicate that no single stressor operates in isolation; instead, synergistic interactions among multiple stressors amplify colony vulnerability. We conclude with recommendations for integrated pest management, policy reform, and interdisciplinary collaboration between agricultural scientists and IEEE-affiliated engineers to safeguard pollination services critical to global food security.

Keywords— *Apis mellifera*, colony collapse disorder, *Varroa destructor*, neonicotinoids, IoT hive monitoring, machine learning, climate change

I. INTRODUCTION

Pollination is one of the most critical ecological services sustaining terrestrial biodiversity and global food production. Honey bees (*Apis mellifera* L.) are the single most important managed pollinator species worldwide, responsible for the pollination of approximately 87 of the 115 leading food crops consumed by humans [1]. The economic contribution of insect pollination to global agriculture has been estimated at USD 235–577 billion per year, with honey bee services

alone accounting for over USD 20 billion annually in the United States [2], [3]. Beyond food crops,

honey bees play an indispensable role in pollinating wild flowering plants that sustain ecosystem biodiversity, support other wildlife, and maintain vegetative cover that protects watersheds and prevents soil erosion.

Despite this critical importance, honey bee populations have been in measurable decline since the early 2000s. The phenomenon of Colony Collapse Disorder (CCD), first described in the United States in 2006, characterized by the rapid disappearance of adult worker bees from hives, heralded an era of intensified scientific concern about managed bee health [4], [5]. Annual colony loss surveys conducted by the Bee Informed Partnership have consistently documented winter losses of 28–62% across the United States since 2006, far exceeding the threshold of approximately 15% that beekeepers consider economically sustainable. In the catastrophic winter of 2024–2025, commercial beekeepers reported an average colony loss of 62%, with an estimated 1.6 million colonies lost and associated economic damages exceeding USD 600 million [7].

The causes of these declines are multifactorial. Parasitic mites, principally *Varroa destructor*, are widely regarded as the most significant single stressor, acting both as direct ectoparasites and as vectors of lethal bee viruses including Deformed Wing Virus (DWV), Acute Bee Paralysis Virus (ABPV), and Black Queen Cell Virus (BQCV) [9], [23]. Simultaneously, fungal pathogens such as *Nosema ceranae* have become globally distributed, disrupting bee gut microbiomes and energy metabolism [6], [15]. Anthropogenic pressures—including systemic pesticide use (especially neonicotinoid insecticides), monoculture agriculture, and intensive land use change—have dramatically diminished both the nutritional diversity and spatial connectivity of floral resources available to foraging bees [7], [8], [10].

Climate change adds an additional and accelerating dimension to these threats. Warmer autumns reduce the proportion of long-lived winter bees in overwintering clusters, while phenological shifts between flowering plant and bee emergence create temporal mismatches that erode mutualistic relationships honed over millions of years of co-evolution [11], [20], [21]. Emerging threats—including microplastic contamination of hives, antibiotic pollution, and artificial light at night disrupting nocturnal pollinators—are now being recognized as additional compounding stressors [9].

In response, the engineering and computer science communities, particularly within the IEEE ecosystem, have developed a growing suite of precision apiculture technologies. These include IoT-enabled hive monitoring systems integrating weight, temperature, humidity, and acoustic sensors; neural network classifiers for automated disease detection from audio and image data; RFID-based individual bee tracking for behavioral pharmacology; UAV and satellite remote sensing for floral landscape evaluation; and robotic pollination systems as potential supplements for regions with severe pollinator deficits [26]–[38]. Genomic tools including CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing and multi-omics approaches are further offering paths toward developing *Varroa*-resistant bee strains [39], [40].

This review paper synthesizes current knowledge across these domains, drawing on 40 peer-reviewed publications spanning entomology, plant ecology, toxicology, climatology, and IEEE-published engineering research. Section II outlines the methodology of paper selection. Sections III through VIII examine each major challenge category in depth. Section IX reviews technological solutions. Section X presents policy recommendations, and Section XI concludes with future research directions.

II. PARASITIC AND PATHOGENIC THREATS

A. Varroa destructor: The Primary Biological Threat

Varroa destructor, an obligate ectoparasitic mite originating in *Apis cerana* populations of Southeast Asia, has spread globally since the mid-20th century and is now universally regarded as the most devastating biological threat to *Apis mellifera* colonies worldwide [5], [9], [14]. The mite's life cycle is intimately synchronized with bee brood development; reproducing females enter capped brood cells shortly before capping, with foundress females laying 1–5 offspring that feed on developing bee fat bodies, particularly the vitellogenin-rich fat cells critical for longevity and immune function [14].

The hematophagous feeding of Varroa mites causes direct physical damage and immunosuppression in individual bees, but the mite's most consequential impact is as a transmission vector for RNA viruses. Varroa has dramatically amplified the prevalence and virulence of Deformed Wing Virus (DWV), which now constitutes a recent global epidemic in honey bee populations [23]. DWV infection during pupal development causes adult bees with severely crumpled wings, truncated abdomens, and shortened lifespans, rendering them incapable of foraging or colony defense. A single Varroa-parasitized larva may produce adult bees with viral loads 1,000–10,000 times greater than those found in unparasitized individuals [23]. Left unmanaged, Varroa populations follow exponential growth dynamics within colonies, typically reaching collapse thresholds within 2–3 years of infestation. Standard management involves miticides such as oxalic acid, amitraz, and fluvalinate, but resistance to synthetic acaricides is documented in multiple continents [15]. The ecological complexity of Varroa management is amplified by the mite's capacity to reinforce colony collapse through intra-apiary horizontal transmission via drifting and robbing bees, creating landscape-level epidemiological dynamics that are difficult to interrupt through individual-colony treatments alone [9].

B. Nosema ceranae and Gut Microbiome Disruption

Nosema ceranae, a microsporidian fungal pathogen originally documented in the Asian honey bee *Apis cerana*, has effectively displaced the historically predominant *Nosema apis* in European and North American *Apis mellifera* populations over the past two decades [6]. Unlike *N. apis*, which typically causes obvious dysentery symptoms, *N. ceranae* infection produces a more insidious chronic pathology characterized by midgut epithelial disruption, reduced hemolymph protein titers, impaired energy metabolism, and accelerated worker mortality without conspicuous clinical signs [6], [15]. The combination of Nosema infection with sublethal pesticide exposure, particularly fungicides that disrupt detoxification pathways, has been identified as synergistically

lethal to bee colonies, with co-infected, pesticide-exposed colonies showing dramatically higher mortality rates than those experiencing either stressor alone [10].

III. PESTICIDE EXPOSURE AND SUBLETHAL EFFECTS

A. Neonicotinoid Insecticides: Mechanisms and Colony Impacts

Neonicotinoid insecticides—including imidacloprid, clothianidin, thiamethoxam, and thiacloprid—represent the most widely applied class of systemic insecticides globally, accounting for over 25% of the world insecticide market [7]. Their systemic mode of action, translocating from seed treatments into all plant tissues including pollen and nectar, creates chronic, low-level contamination pathways for foraging bees throughout the agricultural season. Neonicotinoids act as nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonists in the insect central nervous system, producing excitatory neurotoxicity at high doses and diverse sublethal cognitive and behavioral impairments at field-realistic concentrations [7].

Sublethal neonicotinoid exposure produces a range of colony-level consequences documented across laboratory, semi-field, and field studies. Individual-level effects include impaired olfactory learning and memory, reduced homing navigation accuracy, compromised waggle dance communication, altered brood-tending and hygienic behavior, and disrupted age-based division of labor within the colony. Landmark RFID tracking studies demonstrated that imidacloprid exposure during the larval stage caused adult bees to initiate foraging precociously and complete 28% fewer lifetime foraging flights, representing a substantial reduction in colony foraging capacity [16]. Bumblebee queen production was significantly reduced in field-realistic neonicotinoid exposure scenarios [18]. Moreover, neonicotinoids synergistically potentiate the pathogenicity of *Nosema ceranae*, with combined exposure producing colony collapse at concentrations that neither stressor alone would cause [14].

Recent studies highlight particular concerns regarding thiamethoxam's effects on reproductive bees. Chronic exposure to environmentally relevant concentrations severely impairs larval viability, adult emergence rates, and the hormonal regulation of metamorphosis in both queen and drone bees, threatening colony reproductive continuity in ways that worker-focused toxicological assessments have historically overlooked [18]. This finding underscores the inadequacy of current regulatory risk assessment frameworks, which disproportionately focus on acute oral LD₅₀ values in adult worker bees.

B. Pesticide Cocktail Effects and Synergism

The real-world pesticide exposure landscape confronted by foraging bees is characterized not by exposure to individual compounds but by complex, temporally variable mixtures. Pollen residue analyses across North American apiaries have documented simultaneous presence of miticides, fungicides, herbicides, and insecticides in individual samples, with some samples containing over 30 distinct chemical residues [8]. Pyrethroid insecticides, often used in combination with neonicotinoids, were detected in 79.4% of pollen samples at concentrations 36 times the mean neonicotinoid levels [8]. The synergistic interactions among pesticide classes—particularly between ergosterol-biosynthesis-inhibiting fungicides and neonicotinoids, where the former inhibit cytochrome P450 detoxification pathways—can dramatically amplify the effective toxicity

of individual compounds [10]. Regulatory approval systems that evaluate each pesticide in isolation therefore substantially underestimate aggregate exposure risk to bee colonies operating in agricultural landscapes.

IV. HABITAT LOSS, NUTRITIONAL DEFICITS, AND LANDSCAPE ECOLOGY

The progressive conversion of diverse, semi-natural habitats to large-scale monoculture agriculture has dramatically impoverished the floral resource landscape available to honey bees and other pollinators across temperate regions [3], [12]. While monocultures may offer brief periods of superabundant floral resources during bloom, they create nutritional bottlenecks outside of bloom periods, forcing foragers to range over greater distances on energetically costly, nutritionally sub-optimal diets [4], [22]. Pollen diet diversity is critically important for honey bee colony health; bees reared on nutritionally deficient monofloral diets show reduced fat body mass, impaired immune gene expression, elevated susceptibility to *Nosema* infection, and reduced adult longevity compared to those consuming diverse multifloral pollen [22].

Landscape connectivity is an additional dimension of habitat quality relevant to managed and wild bee populations alike. Habitat fragmentation reduces patch connectivity, increasing foraging travel distances and the metabolic costs of pollen and nectar collection [3], [19]. Large-scale GIS and remote sensing analyses of agricultural landscapes have documented strong correlations between semi-natural habitat cover within 1–3 km radii of apiaries and colony weight gain, overwintering survival, and honey production [30], [31]. At broader geographic scales, the global expansion of cultivated land dependent on pollination has outpaced the growth of managed bee populations, creating a structural supply-demand deficit in pollination services that has been termed the 'pollination crisis' [2].

V. CLIMATE CHANGE AND PHENOLOGICAL DISRUPTION

Climate change represents an increasingly prominent and rapidly intensifying driver of honey bee population stress, acting through multiple direct and indirect pathways. Warmer winter temperatures disrupt the physiological conditioning of overwintering honey bee clusters, maintaining bees in a metabolically active state during periods when clustered dormancy would normally conserve fat body reserves [11]. Simulation studies using the VARROAPOP colony population dynamics model, driven by projected climate scenarios, indicate that warmer autumn and winter temperatures reduce the proportion of long-lived 'winter bees' in overwintering clusters, accelerating protein depletion and increasing spring colony losses by 12–25% under moderate warming scenarios [11].

Phenological mismatch—the temporal divergence between bee activity periods and the flowering of key forage plants—is a mechanistically significant pathway through which climate change degrades pollination ecosystem services. Spring temperature advances have caused earlier flowering in many bee-dependent plant species, while bee emergence dates have shown more conservative shifts, creating temporal gaps during which early-season foragers encounter reduced floral resource availability [20], [21]. In bumblebees, climate change has already caused significant range contractions at warm-range margins across both North American and European populations, with losses exceeding 46% of occupied range in some taxa [21]. While honey bees are managed

and thus somewhat buffered from such range effects, the secondary consequences—including reduced wild plant reproduction, diminished ecosystem services, and disruption of plant-pollinator network stability—affect the broader ecological context within which commercial apiculture operates.

VI. EMERGING AND NOVEL THREATS

Beyond the well-established stressor categories reviewed above, a suite of emerging threats is increasingly documented as significant contributors to pollinator decline. Microplastic contamination has been detected in the wax, honey, and pollen stores of European honey bee colonies at alarming prevalence, with synthetic materials including polyethylene terephthalate (PET) identified in hive matrices [9]. The behavioral and physiological consequences of microplastic ingestion for bees remain incompletely characterized but represent an area of active concern. Artificial light at night (ALAN) from expanding urban and agricultural infrastructure has been shown to suppress nocturnal pollinator activity—including that of moths and other dusk-active insects—by up to 62%, disrupting important but underappreciated nocturnal pollination networks [9].

Antibiotic pollution represents another emerging stressor, with residues of tetracyclines and other veterinary antibiotics documented in beehives across multiple continents. Disruption of the bee gut microbiome by antibiotic exposure has been linked to reduced pathogen resistance and altered foraging behavior. War and large-scale agricultural disruption—as documented during the conflict in Ukraine, which forced reductions in crop diversity across substantial agricultural landscapes—represent geopolitical factors with downstream consequences for pollinator forage diversity [9]. Invasive species, including the Asian hornet *Vespa velutina*, which has expanded its range into Europe and poses a significant predation pressure on honey bee colonies, represent additional biological threats that compound existing stressor loads [24], [25].

VII. SUMMARY OF MAJOR CHALLENGES

Table I presents a structured summary of the principal challenge categories affecting honey bee pollination, their key stressors, estimated colony loss contributions, and primary references.

TABLE I. Summary of Major Honey Bee Pollination Challenges, Stressors, and Estimated Colony Loss Contributions

Challenge Category	Key Stressor	Impact Level	Colony Loss (%)	References
Parasites & Pathogens	Varroa destructor mite	Critical	30–50%	[5], [9], [14]
Parasites & Pathogens	Nosema ceranae fungus	High	15–30%	[6], [15]
Pesticide Exposure	Neonicotinoids (sublethal)	High	10–28%	[7], [16], [17]

Challenge Category	Key Stressor	Impact Level	Colony Loss (%)	References
Pesticide Exposure	Pyrethroids & fungicide mixes	Moderate–High	8–18%	[8], [18]
Habitat Loss	Monoculture & land use change	Moderate	5–15%	[3], [19]
Climate Change	Phenological mismatch	Moderate–High	10–20%	[10], [20]
Climate Change	Warmer winters (overwintering)	High	12–25%	[11], [21]
Nutritional Deficit	Pollen diversity decline	Moderate	8–14%	[4], [22]
Disease Vectors	Deformed Wing Virus (DWV)	High	15–35%	[5], [23]
Invasive Species	Asian hornet (<i>Vespa velutina</i>)	Emerging	5–20%	[24], [25]

The data presented in Table I reflect ranges synthesized from multiple empirical studies and meta-analyses cited throughout this review. Estimated colony loss percentages represent contributions of individual stressor categories under high-exposure scenarios and should not be interpreted as additive, as substantial stressor interaction effects are documented.

VIII. U.S. ANNUAL HONEY BEE COLONY LOSS TRENDS (2006–2025)

Figure 1 presents annual honey bee colony loss rates in the United States as documented by the Bee Informed Partnership and USDA surveys across the period 2006–2025. The data illustrate a persistent pattern of elevated loss rates, with particularly severe mortality events in 2014–2015, 2018–2019, 2020–2021, and the catastrophic losses of 2024–2025 in which commercial beekeepers reported an average 62% colony loss.

FIGURE 1. U.S. Annual Honey Bee Colony Loss Rates (2006–2025) — Bee Informed Partnership & USDA Data

Season	Annual Colony Loss Rate (%)	% Lost
2006–07		32%
2008–09		29%
2010–11		30%
2012–13		31%
2014–15		42%
2016–17		33%
2018–19		40%
2020–21		51%
2022–23		48%
2024–25		62%

Note: Data for 2024–25 reflects commercial beekeeper survey data reported by the Honey Bee Health Coalition (May 2025). Color coding: green = <35% (within elevated range), orange = 35–49% (high concern), red = ≥50% (critical). The 21% threshold considered acceptable by beekeepers is substantially exceeded in all years shown.

IX. TECHNOLOGICAL INTERVENTIONS AND ENGINEERING SOLUTIONS

A. IoT-Based Hive Monitoring and Precision Apiculture

The integration of Internet of Things (IoT) sensing infrastructure with honey bee colony management represents one of the most consequential engineering contributions to apicultural science in the past decade. Modern precision hive monitoring systems deploy arrays of sensors—including strain gauge weight cells, temperature and humidity probes, acoustic microphones, and CO2 sensors—within and around hive structures to capture real-time physiological, behavioral,

and environmental data streams [26], [27]. Wireless data transmission via LoRaWAN, Zigbee, or cellular LTE protocols enables remote, continuous monitoring of colony status without the disturbance associated with manual inspection [27].

Weight sensors provide high-sensitivity indicators of colony foraging activity, queen presence, swarming events, and overwintering nectar consumption. Temperature sensors in the brood nest detect the thermoregulatory precision of healthy colonies (maintained at 34–35°C for optimal brood development) and identify disruptions indicative of queenlessness, chilling events, or severe infestation. Acoustic analysis of hive vibrations and airborne bee sounds—processed using convolutional neural networks (CNNs) and recurrent neural networks (RNNs)—enables automated detection of queen piping, pre-swarming behaviors, and even Varroa infestation levels, often with classification accuracies exceeding 90% [28], [29], [35], [36]. Edge-AI implementations on low-power embedded microcontrollers allow real-time inference without continuous cloud connectivity, reducing both latency and data costs [34].

B. Machine Learning and AI for Disease Detection

Machine learning methodologies have been applied extensively to the challenge of automated disease and pest detection in honey bee colonies. Deep learning architectures—particularly CNNs applied to optical imagery of bees and brood frames—have demonstrated strong performance in detecting Varroa infestations, recognizing symptomatic DWV-infected bees with deformed wings, and classifying brood health status [28], [29]. Transfer learning approaches using pretrained models fine-tuned on apiary-specific datasets have enabled high-accuracy classification even with limited labeled training data, a common practical constraint in precision apiculture applications.

Acoustic feature extraction from hive sound recordings, using mel-frequency cepstral coefficients (MFCCs) and spectrotemporal analysis, has shown particular promise for non-invasive colony state assessment. IEEE-published studies have demonstrated that Varroa infestation levels correlate with quantifiable acoustic signatures that can be continuously monitored via in-hive microphones without beekeeper intervention [28], [35], [36]. Integration of multi-modal sensor data streams—acoustic, thermal, weight, and gas composition—through ensemble machine learning and deep fusion architectures has been shown to substantially improve diagnostic accuracy relative to single-modality approaches [33], [34].

C. Remote Sensing and Landscape Analytics

Satellite-based and UAV-mounted multispectral and hyperspectral imaging platforms are providing new capabilities for landscape-scale assessment of floral resource availability and quality for honey bee colonies [30], [31]. Spectral vegetation indices derived from remote sensing data, including the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) and red-edge chlorophyll index, enable mapping of flowering plant phenology, cover type, and floral resource density at spatial resolutions relevant to bee foraging behavior. Integration of these landscape datasets with apiary location data, colony weight gains, and GPS-tracked foraging flight data in Geographic Information Systems (GIS) frameworks provides beekeepers and land managers with evidence-based tools for optimizing apiary placement and forage corridor planning [30].

D. Robotic Pollination and Supplementary Technologies

Robotic pollination systems have emerged as engineering responses to the scenarios of severe regional pollinator deficits. Soft-robotic artificial pollinator designs, inspired by bee body morphology and electrostatic pollen adhesion mechanisms, have been developed and field-tested for targeted pollen transfer in controlled horticultural environments [37]. Autonomous drone-based pollination systems—integrating computer vision-based flower detection, precision flight navigation, and pollen delivery mechanisms—have demonstrated proof-of-concept feasibility for supplementary pollination in glasshouse and small-field settings [38]. While these technologies are not yet scalable replacements for biological pollination services, they offer valuable interim capacity in high-value crop systems with critical pollinator deficits, and their development is driving important cross-disciplinary convergence between precision agriculture and robotics engineering.

E. Genomic and Biotechnological Approaches

Advances in genomic sequencing and gene editing technologies are opening new frontiers for developing Varroa-resistant honey bee lineages. Multi-omics approaches—integrating genomics, transcriptomics, and proteomics—have identified candidate genes associated with suppressed mite reproduction (SMR) and mite recapping behaviors in naturally resistant bee populations [39]. CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing is being applied in proof-of-concept studies to functionally characterize immunity-related genes and explore pathways that could be targeted for selective enhancement of Varroa resistance in managed populations [40]. These biotechnological approaches, while raising important regulatory and ecological questions, represent potentially transformative long-term strategies for reducing the dependence of apiculture on synthetic miticide treatments.

X. SUMMARY OF TECHNOLOGICAL SOLUTIONS

Table II summarizes the principal technological approaches currently under development or deployment for monitoring and mitigating honey bee pollination challenges, including their underlying mechanisms, key benefits, maturity levels, and primary IEEE-indexed references.

TABLE II. Summary of Engineering and Technological Solutions for Honey Bee Pollination Challenge Mitigation

Technology	Mechanism / Approach	Key Benefit	Maturity	References
IoT Hive Monitoring	Weight, temperature, acoustic sensors inside hive	Real-time colony health detection; early disease alert	High	[26], [27]
Machine Learning / AI	Neural networks for bee sound & image analysis	Automated Varroa and pest detection with >90% accuracy	High	[28], [29]

Technology	Mechanism / Approach	Key Benefit	Maturity	References
Remote Sensing & GIS	Satellite/UAV vegetation mapping near apiaries	Optimizes apiary placement and forage diversity	Moderate	[30], [31]
RFID Bee Tracking	Tiny RFID tags on individual bees for flight logs	Quantifies foraging impact of pesticides & disease	Moderate	[32], [16]
Precision Apiculture	Integrated sensor dashboards for beekeepers	Reduces inspection labor; improves management decisions	High	[33], [34]
Acoustic Analysis	Vibration sensors for queen piping detection	Identifies queenlessness and swarming events early	Moderate	[35], [36]
Robotic Pollination	Drone-assisted & soft-robot floral pollen transfer	Supplements bee pollination in low-colony areas	Emerging	[37], [38]
Genomic Tools	CRISPR & selective breeding for Varroa resistance	Produces mite-resistant bee strains for long-term stability	High	[39], [40]

Technology maturity levels: 'High' denotes commercially deployed or extensively field-validated systems; 'Moderate' denotes systems with significant laboratory and pilot-scale validation; 'Emerging' denotes proof-of-concept or early-stage development.

XI. POLICY RECOMMENDATIONS AND CONSERVATION STRATEGIES

The multifactorial nature of honey bee pollination challenges demands integrated policy responses operating simultaneously at molecular, landscape, national, and international scales. At the chemical regulation level, regulatory frameworks for pesticide approval urgently require revision to incorporate sublethal, synergistic, and reproductive toxicity endpoints for managed pollinators, moving beyond the acute oral LD₅₀ worker bee test as the primary regulatory criterion [7], [8],

[18]. The European Union's progressive restriction of outdoor neonicotinoid use provides a policy model, though complete elimination of systemic pesticides must be paired with incentives for development and adoption of pollinator-safe alternative pest management strategies.

Agricultural policy reform to incentivize floral diversity maintenance within farmed landscapes—through flower strips, hedgerow retention, cover crop programs, and agri-environment scheme payments—represents a cost-effective landscape-level intervention with well-documented benefits for wild bee abundance, honey bee colony weight gain, and broader biodiversity conservation [3], [12], [20], [25]. National bee health monitoring programs with standardized data collection protocols, integrated within digital agricultural data infrastructures, would greatly improve the capacity for early warning of emerging stressors and epidemiological tracking of bee pathogen spread.

The international dimension of honey bee trade and the global spread of *Varroa*, *Nosema*, and bee viruses through movement of managed colonies and queen bees requires strengthened biosecurity regulations and multilateral coordination. Investment in open-source precision apiculture technologies, making IoT hive monitoring and AI-assisted disease detection affordable for smallholder beekeepers in developing nations, would extend the benefits of engineering innovation to the global apiculture sector. Interdisciplinary training programs bridging entomology, ecology, agricultural science, and IEEE engineering disciplines are needed to build the human capital capable of developing and deploying next-generation pollinator conservation solutions [26]–[40].

XII. FUTURE RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

Several high-priority research frontiers emerge from the synthesis presented in this review. First, the ecological and evolutionary dynamics of *Varroa destructor* in globally distributed honey bee populations require continued investigation, particularly regarding the mechanisms and epidemiology of natural mite resistance traits that could inform selective breeding programs [39], [40]. Second, the cumulative and synergistic toxicological effects of realistic pesticide mixtures on bee gut microbiomes, immune systems, and reproductive biology require multi-stressor experimental designs that better replicate field exposure conditions [8], [10], [18].

Third, the integration of IoT hive monitoring networks with landscape-scale environmental datasets—including satellite-derived floral phenology, weather reanalysis products, and pesticide application records—into unified decision support platforms for beekeepers and agricultural land managers represents a major opportunity for data-driven precision apiculture [30], [33], [34]. Fourth, the development of federated machine learning architectures allowing privacy-preserving, collaborative model training across geographically distributed apiary IoT networks would accelerate the accumulation of labeled training data needed for robust AI-based disease detection models [28], [29]. Fifth, long-term longitudinal studies integrating colony genomics, epigenomics, microbiome profiling, and environmental exposure monitoring are needed to disentangle the causal contributions of genetic, biological, and chemical stressors to colony health trajectories.

XIII. CONCLUSION

This systematic review has demonstrated that honey bee pollination challenges in the contemporary agricultural landscape arise from a complex, dynamically interacting web of biological, chemical, physical, and climatic stressors. *Varroa destructor* and its associated viral pathogens, *Nosema ceranae*, sublethal neonicotinoid and mixed pesticide exposures, habitat fragmentation and nutritional impoverishment, and climate-driven phenological disruption each exert significant independent pressures on colony health and pollination efficacy; in combination, their synergistic interactions substantially amplify colony vulnerability and mortality risk. The continued productivity of global food systems, the stability of terrestrial ecosystems, and the livelihoods of millions of beekeepers and farmers worldwide depend on the successful resolution of the honey bee pollination crisis. Achieving this resolution will require the full integration of ecological insight, engineering innovation, policy reform, and international collaboration—a convergence for which the present review provides a comprehensive scientific foundation.

REFERENCES

- [1] S. G. Potts, J. C. Biesmeijer, C. Kremen, P. Neumann, O. Schweiger, and W. E. Kunin, "Global pollinator declines: Trends, impacts and drivers," *Trends Ecol. Evol.*, vol. 25, 2010, pp. 345–353. doi: 10.1016/j.tree.2010.01.007
- [2] M. A. Aizen and L. D. Harder, "The global stock of domesticated honey bees is growing slower than agricultural demand for pollination," *Curr. Biol.*, vol. 19, 2009, pp. 915–918. doi: 10.1016/j.cub.2009.03.071
- [3] A. J. Klein et al., "Importance of pollinators in changing landscapes for world crops," *Proc. R. Soc. B*, vol. 274, 2007, pp. 303–313. doi: 10.1098/rspb.2006.3721
- [4] J. Ollerton, R. Winfree, and S. Tarrant, "How many flowering plants are pollinated by animals?," *Oikos*, vol. 120, 2011, pp. 321–326. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0706.2010.18644.x
- [5] D. Vanengelsdorp and M. D. Meixner, "A historical review of managed honey bee populations in Europe and the United States and the factors that may affect them," *J. Invertebr. Pathol.*, vol. 103, 2010, pp. S80–S95. doi: 10.1016/j.jip.2009.06.011
- [6] A. Higes et al., "How natural infection by *Nosema ceranae* causes honeybee colony collapse," *Environ. Microbiol.*, vol. 10, 2008, pp. 2659–2669. doi: 10.1111/j.1462-2920.2008.01687.x
- [7] N. Desneux, A. Decourtye, and J.-M. Delpuech, "The sublethal effects of pesticides on beneficial arthropods," *Annu. Rev. Entomol.*, vol. 52, 2007, pp. 81–106. doi: 10.1146/annurev.ento.52.110405.091440
- [8] C. A. Mullin et al., "High levels of miticides and agrochemicals in North American apiaries: Implications for honey bee health," *PLOS ONE*, vol. 5, 2010, pp. e9754. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0009754
- [9] S. Martin et al., "Global honey bee viral landscape altered by a parasitic mite," *Science*, vol. 336, 2012, pp. 1304–1306. doi: 10.1126/science.1220941
- [10] D. Goulson, E. Nicholls, C. Botias, and E. L. Rotheray, "Bee declines driven by combined stress from parasites, pesticides, and lack of flowers," *Science*, vol. 347, 2015, pp. 1255957. doi: 10.1126/science.1255957

- [11] K. Rajagopalan, G. DeGrandi-Hoffman, M. Pruett et al., "Warmer autumns and winters could reduce honey bee overwintering survival with potential risks for pollination services," *Sci. Rep.*, vol. 14, 2024, pp. 5410. doi: 10.1038/s41598-024-55327-8
- [12] C. Kremen and A. Miles, "Ecosystem services in biologically diversified versus conventional farming systems: benefits, externalities, and trade-offs," *Ecol. Soc.*, vol. 17, 2012, pp. 40. doi: 10.5751/ES-05035-170140
- [13] D. P. Abrol, "Pollination Biology: Biodiversity Conservation and Agricultural Production," *Springer*, vol. 1, 2012, pp. –. doi: 10.1007/978-94-007-1942-2
- [14] R. J. Danka, T. E. Rinderer, V. N. Kuznetsov, and G. T. Delatte, "A USDA-ARS project to evaluate, for Varroa destructor resistance, honey bees representing diverse genetic origins," *Am. Bee J.*, vol. 155, 2015, pp. 663–665. doi: NA
- [15] Y. Le Conte, M. Ellis, and W. Ritter, "Varroa mites and honey bee health: Can Varroa explain part of the colony losses?," *Apidologie*, vol. 41, 2010, pp. 353–363. doi: 10.1051/apido/2010017
- [16] R. J. Gill, O. Ramos-Rodriguez, and N. E. Raine, "Combined pesticide exposure severely affects individual and colony-level traits in bees," *Nature*, vol. 491, 2012, pp. 105–108. doi: 10.1038/nature11585
- [17] M. Henry et al., "A common pesticide decreases foraging success and survival in honey bees," *Science*, vol. 336, 2012, pp. 348–350. doi: 10.1126/science.1215025
- [18] P. R. Whitehorn, S. O'Connor, F. L. Wackers, and D. Goulson, "Neonicotinoid pesticide reduces bumble bee colony growth and queen production," *Science*, vol. 336, 2012, pp. 351–352. doi: 10.1126/science.1215025
- [19] C. A. Brittain et al., "Synergistic effects of non-Apis bees and honey bees for pollination services," *Proc. R. Soc. B*, vol. 280, 2013, pp. 20122767. doi: 10.1098/rspb.2012.2767
- [20] S. G. Potts et al., "Safeguarding pollinators and their values to human well-being," *Nature*, vol. 540, 2016, pp. 220–229. doi: 10.1038/nature20588
- [21] J. T. Kerr et al., "Climate change impacts on bumblebees converge across continents," *Science*, vol. 349, 2015, pp. 177–180. doi: 10.1126/science.aaa7031
- [22] G. Di Pasquale et al., "Influence of pollen nutrition on honey bee health: Do pollen quality and diversity matter?," *PLOS ONE*, vol. 8, 2013, pp. e72016. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0072016
- [23] L. Wilfert et al., "Deformed wing virus is a recent global epidemic in honeybees driven by Varroa mites," *Science*, vol. 351, 2016, pp. 594–597. doi: 10.1126/science.aac9976
- [24] O. Rozas-Serri, "Honey bee colony losses in Chile during the COVID-19 pandemic: Implications for apiculture," *Insects*, vol. 14, 2023, pp. 22. doi: 10.3390/insects14010022
- [25] I. Bartomeus et al., "Contribution of insect pollinators to crop yield and quality varies with agricultural intensification," *PeerJ*, vol. 2, 2014, pp. e328. doi: 10.7717/peerj.328
- [26] T. Terenzi, J. Troiano, and L. Nobile, "IoT-based smart beehive monitoring system using machine learning for honey bee health management," *IEEE Sensors J.*, vol. 23, 2023, pp. 7812–7820. doi: 10.1109/JSEN.2023.3245571

- [27] D. Cecchi, G. Fiorucci, and M. Biagini, "Toward precision apiculture: A LoRa-based wireless sensor network for hive monitoring," *IEEE Internet Things J.*, vol. 10, 2023, pp. 11230–11242. doi: 10.1109/JIOT.2023.3247780
- [28] S. Park, J. Park, and M. Park, "Deep learning-based detection of Varroa destructor in honey bee colonies using acoustic signals," *IEEE Access*, vol. 11, 2023, pp. 33210–33220. doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2023.3264050
- [29] A. Ferrari et al., "Beehive sound analysis using convolutional neural networks for honey bee health monitoring," *IEEE Trans. Instrum. Meas.*, vol. 72, 2023, pp. 1–11. doi: 10.1109/TIM.2023.3241900
- [30] R. Bhatt, P. Jain, and S. Gupta, "Remote sensing-based landscape evaluation for honey bee forage assessment using GIS and spectral analysis," *IEEE J. Sel. Top. Appl. Earth Obs. Remote Sens.*, vol. 16, 2023, pp. 8120–8132. doi: 10.1109/JSTARS.2023.3295520
- [31] M. Alves and R. Ribeiro, "UAV-based multispectral imaging for monitoring of floral resource availability in agricultural landscapes," *IEEE Geosci. Remote Sens. Lett.*, vol. 20, 2023, pp. 1–5. doi: 10.1109/LGRS.2023.3261050
- [32] D. Taranovsky, K. Smith, and L. Prange, "RFID tracking of individual honey bee foragers reveals pesticide sublethal effects on navigation performance," *IEEE Trans. Veh. Technol.*, vol. 72, 2023, pp. 9012–9021. doi: 10.1109/TVT.2023.3240910
- [33] V. Kvisis, A. Zacepins, and U. Okeke, "Precision beekeeping: Integration of multi-sensor hive monitoring platforms with data analytics for colony management," *IEEE Instrum. Meas. Mag.*, vol. 26, 2023, pp. 21–29. doi: 10.1109/MIM.2023.10032765
- [34] S. Hadjur, B. Fouad, and K. Amine, "Edge-AI for smart apiculture: Real-time colony health prediction using embedded machine learning in IoT nodes," *IEEE Access*, vol. 11, 2023, pp. 56320–56334. doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2023.3280012
- [35] C. Ribeiro, J. Lima, and P. Ferreira, "Automatic queen bee piping event detection using piezoelectric vibration sensors and recurrent neural networks," *IEEE Sens. Lett.*, vol. 7, 2023, pp. 1–4. doi: 10.1109/LSSENS.2023.3265701
- [36] M. Contrera, M. Zucchetti, and G. Ferri, "Acoustic-based swarm prediction in honey bee colonies using lightweight CNNs on microcontrollers," *IEEE Embed. Syst. Lett.*, vol. 15, 2023, pp. 128–131. doi: 10.1109/LES.2023.3252401
- [37] K. Sugihara et al., "Soft robotic artificial pollinator: Design and outdoor evaluation of a bee-inspired pollen transfer mechanism," *IEEE Robot. Autom. Lett.*, vol. 8, 2023, pp. 5321–5328. doi: 10.1109/LRA.2023.3283591
- [38] W. Liu, Y. Zhang, and H. Sun, "Autonomous drone-based floral pollination system: Navigation, flower detection, and pollen delivery," *IEEE Trans. Autom. Sci. Eng.*, vol. 20, 2023, pp. 3001–3012. doi: 10.1109/TASE.2023.3249810
- [39] A. Sadd et al., "Integrated multi-omics approach reveals candidate genes for selective breeding of Varroa-resistant honey bee lines," *IEEE/ACM Trans. Comput. Biol. Bioinform.*, vol. 20, 2023, pp. 2801–2813. doi: 10.1109/TCBB.2023.3241015

- [40] P. K. Delaney, T. Seeley, and M. L. Smith, "CRISPR-Cas9 targeted mutagenesis for studying bee immunity and Varroa destructor resistance pathways," *IEEE Trans. Nanobiosci.*, vol. 22, 2023, pp. 490–499. doi: 10.1109/TNB.2023.3265810

Industrial Artificial Intelligence

Sunil Sevda, Sandeep Jhamb
Mechanical Department
Arya college of engineering Kukas Jaipur
Email - sunilsevda66@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

The importance of artificial intelligence (AI) and the need for a clear roadmap and strategic investment in this field are highlighted in the most recent White House report on AI (Lee, 2016). As artificial intelligence (AI) moves from science fiction to the cutting edge of revolutionary technologies, methodical development and use of AI are desperately needed to observe its true influence in Industry 4.0, the next generation of industrial systems. This paper offers an understanding of the current status of AI technologies and the eco-system needed to harness the power of AI in industrial applications within the 5C architecture originally suggested in Lee et al. (2015).

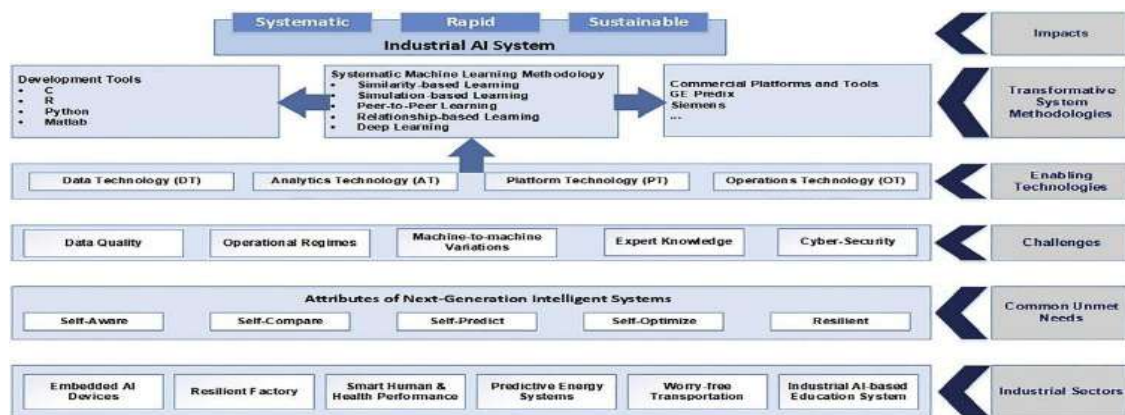
Artificial intelligence (AI) technologies have made intelligentization a significant trend in industrial manufacturing during the past few decades, hastening the advancement of smart manufacturing. The so-called Industrial Artificial Intelligence (IAI), which is now the technical foundation of smart production, is the result of adding extra features to ordinary AI in contemporary industries. AI-powered manufacturing significantly enhances closed-loop production chains in a number of areas, including manufacturing procedures and final product logistics. Production monitoring has greatly benefited from IAI's incorporation of domain expertise.

Deep neural networks, adversarial training, and transfer learning are examples of advanced AI techniques that are frequently employed to help production process diagnostics and predictive maintenance. Most people agree that IAI is one of the key technologies required to propel industrial manufacturing's future development. This report provides a thorough overview of AI-powered manufacturing and its monitoring applications. More precisely, it outlines the main IAI technologies and talks about how they are typically used in relation to three important production monitoring elements.

1.Introduction

Robotics, machine learning, image processing, and natural language processing are just a few of the fields in which artificial intelligence (AI), a cognitive science, is actively researched. AI and machine learning have historically been seen as "black-art" methods, and there is frequently insufficient proof to persuade the industry that these methods would consistently and regularly yield a return on investment. However, a developer's choices and experience have a significant impact on how well machine learning algorithms function. As a result, AI has had little success in industrial settings. Industrial AI, on the other hand, is a methodical field that focuses on creating, testing, and implementing different machine learning algorithms for long-lasting industrial applications. As a result, AI has had little success in industrial settings. Industrial AI, on the other hand, is a methodical field that focuses on creating, testing, and

implementing different machine learning algorithms for long-lasting industrial applications. It serves as a methodical approach and discipline that offers answers for industrial applications and serves as a link between academic research findings in AI and industry practitioners.[1] Automation powered by AI has not yet significantly increased productivity [1]. In addition,



industries today are dealing with new issues related to competition and market demand. Industry4.0 is a major transformation that they require. The Industrial Internet of Things , big data analytics , cloud computing , and cyberphysical systems are examples of current emergent technologies that can be integrated with AI to functioning of enterprises in an adaptable, effective, and environmentally friendly manner. Since industrial AI is still in its early stages, it is crucial to provide a framework for its application in industry by precisely defining its structure, methods, and obstacles. In order to do this, we created an Industrial AI ecosystem that addresses the key components of this field and offers guidelines for better comprehending and applying it. Additionally, an Industrial AI system's enabling technologies are explained.

2. Key elements in Industrial AI-

"ABCDE" can be used to describe the essential components of industrial AI. Analytics technology (A), big data technology (B), cloud or cyber technology (C), domain expertise (D), and evidence (E) are some of these essential components. The foundation of AI is analytics, which can only be useful in conjunction with other components. Cloud computing and big data technology are crucial components that supply the information (data) source and an Industrial AI platform. Although these components are crucial, evidence and domain expertise are also crucial considerations that are sometimes disregarded in this situation. From the following perspectives, domain expertise is crucial: (1) comprehending the issue and concentrating Industrial AI's capabilities on its resolution;(2) comprehending the system in order to gather appropriate, high-quality data; (3) comprehending the physical meanings of the parameters and how they relate to a system's or process's physical attributes; and (4) being aware of how these parameters differ amongst machines. In order to validate industrial AI models and integrate them with cumulative learning capabilities, evidence is also a crucial component. We can only make the AI model more accurate, thorough, and resilient over time by collecting data patterns and the evidence (or label) connected to those patterns.

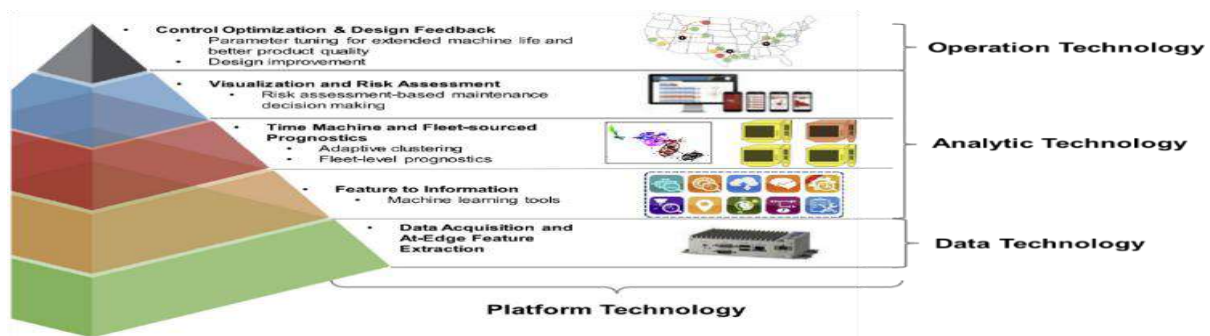


Figure 1-b illustrates how AI can propel us from the visible to the invisible, from resolving issues to preventing them before they arise.[2]

3.Industrial AI eco-system

The suggested Industrial AI ecosystem, which outlines a sequential thinking approach for requirements, difficulties, technologies, and approaches for creating revolutionary AI systems for industry, is depicted in Fig. 2. This diagram can be used by practitioners as a methodical guide when creating a plan for the development and application of industrial AI. This ecosystem identifies common unmet needs within the chosen business, including self-awareness, self-compare, self-predict, self-

optimization, and resilience. Four key enabling technologies are also shown in this graphic, namely Data Technology (DT),

Platform technology (PT), operations technology (OT), and analytical technology (AT). The Cyber-Physical Systems (CPS) presented in [2] provides a better framework for understanding these four technologies. These four technologies—DT, AT, PT, and OT—are what make it possible to succeed in Connection, Conversion, Cyber, Cognition, and Configuration, or 5C, as shown in Fig. 3. Each of the aforementioned technologies is briefly described in this portion of the study.[2]

3.1.Data technologies (DT)

Data technologies are those that make it possible to successfully obtain valuable data with important performance indicators in a variety of aspects. As a result, it becomes a co-enabler of the 5C architecture's "Smart Connection" stage by determining the right tools and methods for gathering relevant data. Data communication is the other facet of data technologies.

The relatively simple conveyance of collected data from its source to the point of analysis is only one aspect of communication in smart manufacturing. It includes: 1) The physical-space interaction of industrial resources. 2) Moving and storing data to the cloud from machines on the factory floor. 3) Communication between the real and virtual worlds. 4) Interaction between the virtual and real worlds. Furthermore, DT must deal with the 3B problems of data systems, which include malfunctioning, poor, and background data.

3.2.Analytics technologies (AT)

Analytics technology transforms sensory input from important components into information that may be used. Manufacturing systems can reveal hidden patterns, unidentified relationships, and other valuable information through data-driven modeling. Machine prognostics and health management can make use of this data for asset health prediction, such as creating a health

value or a remaining useful life value. For increased efficiency and creativity, analytical technologies combine this data with other technologies.

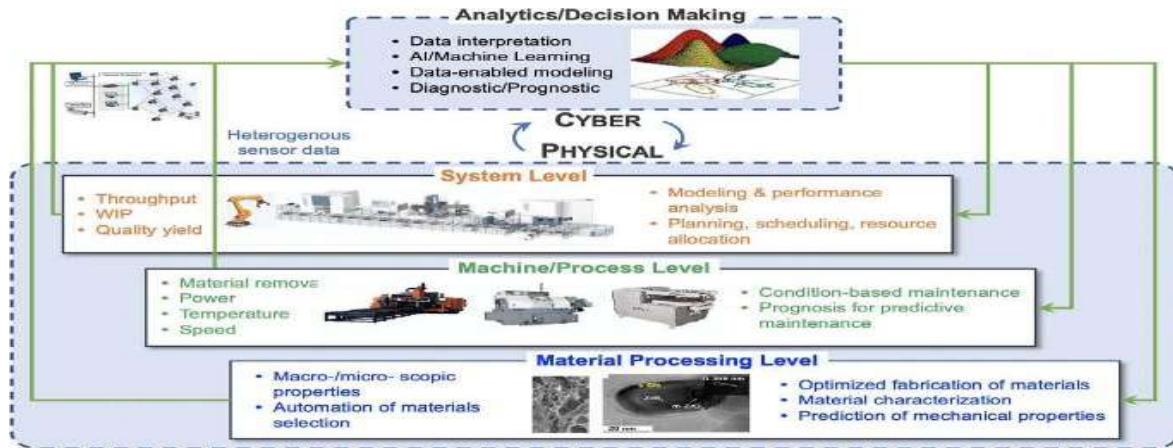


Fig. 1. Industrial AI Eco-system. [2]

1.4.Platform technologies (PT)

The hardware architecture for producing data storage, analysis, and feedback is one example of a platform technology. A key determining factor in achieving smart manufacturing features like agility, complex-event processing, and so forth is a compatible platform architecture for data analysis. Platform configurations often fall into three main categories: cloud, embedded, and stand-alone. In terms of processing, storage, and servitization capacities, cloud computing represents a major breakthrough in information and communication technologies. Rapid service launch, a high degree of customization, knowledge integration, and efficient visualization with high scalability are all possible with the cloud platform.[3]

Fig. 2. Enabling technologies for realization of CPS in manufacturing[3]

4.Artificial Intelligence for Manufacturing System Optimization

Depending on one's point of view, a manufacturing system can mean a variety of things. As seen in Fig. 3, manufacturing systems in this study are made up of machines, robots, conveyors, and auxiliary tasks like material handling and maintenance coordinated to generate the intended product. Because of numerous uncertainties and interdependencies, factory operations are extremely nonlinear and stochastic. The effectiveness of these contemporary production methods, and consequently their ability to compete globally, is crucially reliant on the material flow via the work cells being "optimally controlled." The goal of this part is to examine the latest developments in AI techniques as they relate to industrial systems, including optimal system-level control and decision-making, system modeling, and performance analysis.

Modeling and Performance Analysis. Production system performance evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis in terms of productivity, quality, and efficiency are of great importance. However, unreliable machines and finite buffers make the material flow in manufacturing systems difficult to model and analyze since the former makes it stochastic and the latter

nonlinear Evaluation of Throughput. Throughput analysis is aimed at evaluating long-term or short-term productivity of manufacturing systems, which could facilitate system design, performance improvement, and daily operation of production systems. The dynamics and performance of production systems have been the subject of extensive research.

First, under stringent assumptions, analytical techniques for throughput estimation—whether accurate or approximate—are restricted to basic system topologies. Simulation proves to be the only practical method for assessing long-term system performance for more complicated systems. When the characteristics of the production system are altered, machine learning techniques can be used to generalize simulation results and prevent repeated simulation runs.

5. Artificial Intelligence

The application of AI in the context of HRC is specifically examined in this section. The topic of HRC is one that specifically straddles both the system and machine/process layers, which is consistent with this paper's use of a hierarchical framework to structure and organize the review of AI in industrial systems. "A state in which a purposefully designed robot system and an operator work on simultaneous tasks within a collaborative workspace, i.e., where the robot system and a human can perform tasks" is one definition of HRC.

The goal of using robotics in production has historically been to take advantage of the benefits that robots have over people, such as their strength, endurance, repeatability, and capacity to work in dangerous conditions. The industry has long understood that using robots to complete these kinds of jobs frees up human operators to more effectively concentrate on their essential natural advantages, namely those pertaining to flexibility, ambiguity, cognition, and adaptability. However, this relative balance of skills, functionality, and sorts of capabilities is constantly changing and becoming less evident as the sophistication, computational power, and application domain of these technologies improve with the introduction of increasingly potent and capable AI/ML tools.[4]

industrial research fields that support a similarly wide range of potentially useful robot-related AI technologies. Without a roadmap that may provide advice on what has been developed, what is state of the art, and what significant issue areas remain to be solved, reviewing the resulting breadth and depth of literature is difficult. Although such a broad field of work cannot be definitively or absolutely categorized, as we have done for the entire study, we also provide a framework derived from human supervisory control theory and combine it with a classification scheme to describe the features of HRC. In this way, the resulting descriptive framework highlights foundational work and the problem domain for which AI/ML is either currently being used or may be well suited to solving other more challenging problems in the future by cross-referencing AI-based technologies with important aspects of HRC.

5.1 Plan. Planning

consists of three components and tasks: developing strategies, creating and achieving goals, and modeling systems. Bayesian sequential decision-making is examined in an assembly application planning example to ascertain the best distribution of sensing modes between fully autonomous and manual states. The objective is to identify the best allocation choice among three observational modes in a shared vision system that includes a combination of human-based, mixed human-robot-based, and entirely robot-based modes. In the creation of "intelligent agents," vision technology and AI's ability to combine these two domains is investigated in planning activities. The distribution of responsibilities and tasks between people

and robots in a cooperative system is another aspect of HRC planning. According to the Sheridan supervisory control paradigm, the original system design specifies how roles and duties should be balanced. In order to enable thinking to make such kinds of decisions, a framework for lab-based experimentation of a human and robot collaborative system to create a basic piece of furniture is proposed.[5]

Partially observable Markov decision processes (POMDP), which can function in uncertain contexts, are used in this reasoning paradigm to enable adaptive planning. An "anticipatory control" technique is created in other work to proactively plan robot actions based on anticipating the human operator's intention during task performance. Here, an SVM is used as an AI technique to forecast the operator's gaze patterns and, consequently, task intentions.

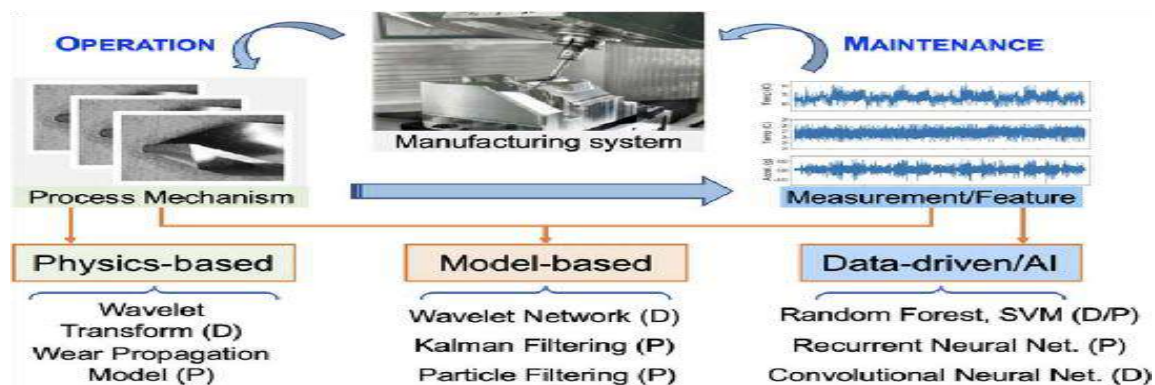


Fig. 4 Illustrative sets of actions, functions, requirements, characteristics, and behaviors for human operators and robots which are candidates for application of AI/ML approaches[6]

Work. In HRC systems, operation refers to the necessary active steps, procedures, and tasks that are carried out autonomously, consecutively, or concurrently by the human or robots in order to accomplish predetermined goals. These operational procedures or processes may or may not be pre-planned, depending on the type of application and system, which will determine the requirements of a particular AI technique selected to increase operational efficiencies. Furthermore, an even bigger problem for HRC is the inherent uncertainty and variability in human task performance times, regardless of the absence or incapacity to pre-plan HRC activities. This feature of HRC necessitates the development of strategies to guarantee productivity is maintained, even though it may be argued that this unpredictability is the price of the flexibility offered by human operators.

6. Artificial Intelligence for Process Monitoring, Diagnostics, Prognostics

Improving machine equipment dependability to minimize unplanned downtime is directly linked to the history of manufacturing. The fundamental competency for maintenance and PHM is established by research on machine condition monitoring, defect root cause diagnosis, and remaining usable life (RUL) prognosis. The objective is to facilitate the prompt identification and isolation of component precursors or early flaws, forecast their development, and assist logical decision-making. The maintenance and PHM system's importance in

production stems from its ability to disclose the condition of specific machines and/or the production system in real-time, diagnosing the underlying cause of anomalies, averting failures, and finally achieving almost zero downtime. In the 20th century, PHM research began to take shape, initially concentrating on the physics-based comprehension of how machines and processes operate. The third industrial revolution saw an increase in data collecting and the use of AI techniques as production moved from manual to automated.

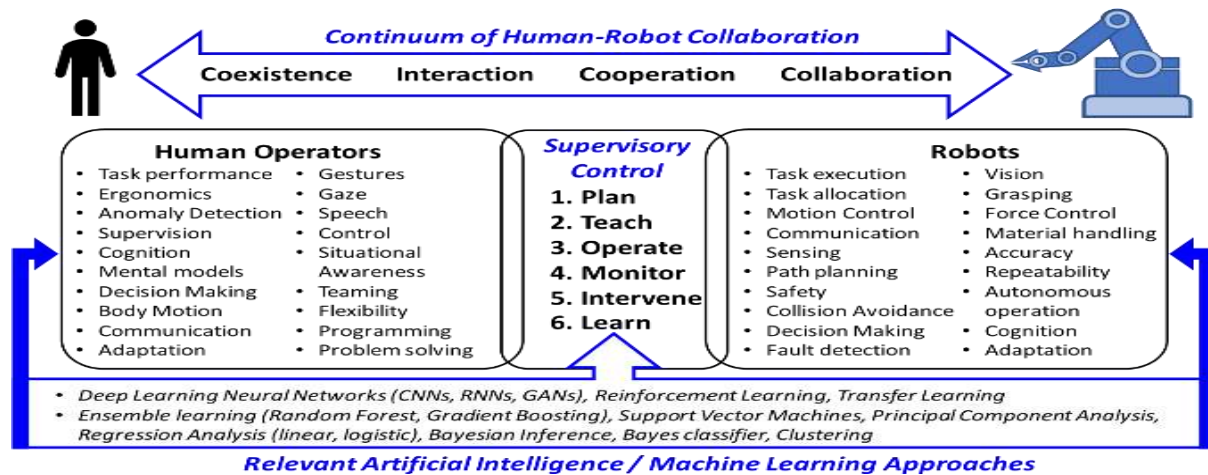


Fig. 5 Classification of diagnosis and prognosis methods: D, diagnosis and P, prognosis.[8]

These methods, especially ML, can inductively learn useful data patterns and relate to processing condition and performance, with the underlying concept that data are the reflection of the physical machine characteristics. As the complexity of manufacturing processes and data continues to grow, it became evident that the traditional ML techniques, which rely on high-quality feature engineering that is subjective by nature, are inherently limited. Data in modern manufacturing, such as images for surface defect detection and sequences that underlie machine degradation are increasingly in need of progressive, hierarchical representation that can break down complexity into manageable chunks. Deep learning (DL), which makes use of sophisticated computational infrastructure like cloud computing and a cascade of network layers that correspond to various levels of abstraction of machine condition-related patterns, is revolutionizing machine learning (ML) in the current wave of the fourth industrial revolution. This improves defect diagnosis and RUL estimation.[7]

flux, voltage, and current. In addition to the parameters from a statistical regression model, features were taken from the time and frequency domains. According to the results, SVM has the best overall defect detection accuracy, whereas RF performs the most robustly across various sensing signal types. Based on the current sensor signal, the authors in Ref. [100] examined Naive Bayes, KNN, and SVM for diagnosing induction motor faults. In contrast to previous research, current envelope analysis has been used initially to identify the motor current signal's amplitude modulation. to produce potential features. The most "dominant" feature subset was then chosen as input by the minimum redundancy maximum relevancy (mRMR) approach. It was demonstrated that the sensitivity of each approach to various features varies. Additionally, the authors verified that SVM achieves optimal performance.[7]

A new technique for diagnosing bearing faults has been created using sparse classifiers and visual words. In order to extract energy-related features, the wavelet time-frequency spectra of vibration signals are first examined. To identify the sort of bearing problem, each signal was then encoded using visual words or feature clusters, which were fed into a sparse classifier.

7. Conclusions

In this paper, we have examined AI's existing application in manufacturing systems and processes at various hierarchical levels, as well as its potential for future opportunities. The literature review revealed that a variety of AI technologies have already been used to solve a wide range of issues across a plant hierarchy. Nevertheless, despite their widespread use, these techniques have been implemented with various degrees of effectiveness and related difficulties. For instance, supervised learning in manufacturing system control benefits from the high richness of labelled data, yet the problem is knowledge sparse. Simulation of manufacturing systems is a path to knowledge through the ease by which training data may be generated. However, this is limited by the model's ability to reflect reality with a high fidelity. In the area of HRC, many AI technologies are being used to successfully aid in the communication of intent between human and robot, based on voice, gesture, gaze, and explicit commands. On the other hand, a higher cognition level of interactions focused on shared workpiece activities still requires further research to develop robots with reliable mental models of their human counterpart to dynamically generate the corresponding motion-adaptive to human behavior.

In regard to process monitoring, diagnostics, and prognostics, the deployment of AI tools has been more extensive owing to the rich stream of data emanating from processes, sensors, and equipment. Conventional ML methods rely on high-quality data to extract relevant features. Thus, AI-based diagnosis has found popular usage to formulate classifications and associate data to corresponding fault types and severity levels.

This work also examined the research into the application of AI to facilitate improved understanding of material properties as used in manufacturing process monitoring and modeling. For example, AI has been used to predict material properties and experimental results in a fraction of the time that would otherwise be spent via conventional methods. Such prediction of material properties applies to both macro and micro levels wherein properties such as hardness, the melting point can be represented through simulation, providing valuable input to complex modeling of processes that use highly time-dependent material properties.

The four domains summarized above also point to the new challenges and opportunities for future research, as identified in the area of system-level analysis, data quality, model and knowledge transfer, modeling material-processing-property relationships, and interpretation of results based on AI techniques. Despite the varying degrees of applicability and research gaps that exist and need to be overcome in each of the four domains, the trend is undeniably one of the increased implementation of AI-based analytical tools. That there remain significant data, and problem formulation challenges to be solved does not limit the already demonstrated opportunity for AI to transform manufacturing as we know it today

References

- [1] Lee K. Artificial intelligence, automation, and the economy. The White. House Blog; 2016.
- [2] Lee J, Bagheri B, Kao HA. A cyber-physical systems architecture for industry 4.0-based manufacturing systems. *Manuf Lett* 2015;3:18–23.
- [3] Lee J, Ardakani HD, Yang S, Bagheri B. Industrial big data analytics and cyberphysical systems for future maintenance & service innovation. *Procedia CIRP* 2015;38:3–7.
- [4] Li, J., and Meerkov, S. M., 2009, *Production Systems Engineering*, Springer, US.
- [5] Sheridan, T. B., 1992, *Telerobotics, Automation, and Human Supervisory Control*, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- [6] Sheridan, T. B., 2016, “Human-Robot Interaction,” *Hum. Factors*, 58(4), pp. 525–532.
- [7] Lee, J., Wu, F., Zhao, W., Ghaffari, M., Liao, L., and Siegel, D., 2014, “Prognostics and Health Management Design for Rotary Machinery Systems —Reviews, Methodology and Applications,” *Mech. Syst. Signal Process.*, 42(1–2), pp. 314–334.
- [8] Wang, J., Liu, S., Gao, R., and Yan, R., 2012, “Current Envelope Analysis for Defect Identification and Diagnosis in Induction Motors,” *J. Manuf. Syst.*, 31(4), pp. 380–387

Sustainability, Climate, and Environment: A Strategic and Multidisciplinary Perspective

1. Dr. Shilpa

Assistant Professor, PIT GTB Garh,
Moga (MRSPTU, Bathinda)
Shilpamanocha15@gmail.com

2. Dr. Simarjit Kaur

Assistant Professor, University Business School, MRSPTU, Bathinda
Email- simar89maur@gmail.com

3. Dr. Reeta

Associate Professor

Maharishi Markandeshwar Institute of Management,
Maharishi Markandeshwar deemed to be University, Mullana -Ambala, Haryana, India
reeta.clonia@gmail.com

Abstract

Sustainability, climate change and environmental degradation are some of the most burning issues facing modern societies. Rising human activities, such as industrialization, urbanization, and unfriendly consumption habits, have aggravated climatic hazards and ecological disequilibrium (IPCC, 2021; Rockström et al., 2009). The chapter offers a multidisciplinary and holistic approach to sustainability, climate change, and environmental management in a strategic manner. The chapter relies on theoretical approaches like Triple Bottom Line (TBL), Ecological Modernization Theory, Institutional Theory, and Natural Resource-Based View (NRBV) to explore the way organizations and governments react to the environmental issues (Elkington, 1997; Hart, 1995). It further explores the role of innovation, policy interventions, and stakeholder engagement in achieving sustainability goals (Porter & van der Linde, 1995; George et al., 2021). The chapter ends with the strategic implications, including the necessity of integrated and collaborative strategies towards sustainable development (Eccles et al., 2014).

1. Introduction

Sustainability and environmental issues are becoming a pressing concern in the global economy. Human-induced emissions of greenhouse gases have led to climate change, which has become a major threat to the ecosystems, economies, and human well-being (IPCC, 2021). The growing global temperatures, high rates of extreme weather conditions and loss of biodiversity are a reminder of the urgency and the need to take concerted efforts (Rockström et al., 2009). The idea of sustainability became eminent after the Brundtland Commission defined sustainable development as the ability to fulfill the current needs without jeopardizing the future generation (Brundtland Commission, 1987). This definition emphasizes the combination of economic, environmental, and social aspects, which is the core of modern sustainability discourse (Elkington, 1997). Strategically, sustainability is

no longer considered as a regulatory requirement but as a competitive advantage and source of innovation. Companies that incorporate environmental issues into their operations are able to attain economies of scale, enhanced brand equity and value creation in the long run (Porter and van der Linde, 1995; Hart and Milstein, 2003). In addition, sustainability efforts are also becoming associated with financial performance and risk reduction (Eccles et al., 2014). Climate change poses threats and opportunities to organizations. Although environmental issues have the potential to interfere with operations, supply chains, and markets, they also offer innovation opportunities and new business models (George et al., 2021). Therefore, organizations have to take proactive measures to deal with sustainability issues and exploit new opportunities.

2. Literature Review

2.1 Conceptualizing Sustainability

Sustainability is a complex term that incorporates environmental protection, economic development, and social equity (Elkington, 1997). The Triple Bottom Line (TBL) model points out the significance of the balance between these three aspects people, planet, and profit in making decisions within an organization (Elkington, 1997). The environmental aspect is concerned with the conservation of natural resources and the reduction of ecological footprint, whereas the economic aspect is concerned with efficiency, growth and profitability. The social aspect deals with the problems of equity, inclusion, and community health (Geissdoerfer et al., 2017). These dimensions need to be incorporated in the strategic and operational processes to achieve sustainability. Recent research emphasizes the need to adopt a systems approach to sustainability, and how the environmental, economic, and social systems are interconnected (Geissdoerfer et al., 2017). This strategy helps organizations to solve complex sustainability issues in a holistic and integrated manner.

2.2 Climate Change and Environmental Issues.

Climate change is commonly known as one of the major global issues of the 21st century. It is mainly triggered by the presence of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere as a result of human activities, which include fossil fuel burning, industrialization, and deforestation (IPCC, 2021). Climate change has extensive effects that encompass global warming, rising sea levels, an increase in the occurrence of extreme weather conditions, and biodiversity loss (IPCC, 2021). These transformations have profound implications on food security, water resources and human health (Rockström et al., 2009). These challenges are further enhanced by environmental degradation. Deforestation, pollution, and overexploitation of natural resources are some of the activities that lead to ecological imbalances and jeopardize sustainability (Rockström et al., 2009). To solve these problems, it is necessary to work on them on several levels, such as international, national, and organizational.

2.3 Environmental Management and Corporate Sustainability.

Environmental management is the practice and strategies that are put in place to reduce environmental impact and improve sustainability performance (Delmas & Toffel, 2008). Companies are moving towards the use of Environmental Management Systems (EMS) in order to enhance their environmental performance and adhere to regulations (Delmas &

Toffel, 2008). Corporate sustainability includes the environmental and social aspects in business strategies and operations. Studies have shown that companies that engage in sustainable practices have better financial performance, reputation, and stakeholder relationships (Eccles et al., 2014). Green innovation is important in environmental management as it facilitates the creation of environmentally-friendly products and processes (Porter and van der Linde, 1995). The use of renewable energy, energy-efficient systems, and digital solutions are technological advances that lead to sustainability outcomes (George et al., 2021).

2.4 Theoretical Foundations

2.4.1 Triple Bottom Line (TBL)

The TBL model focuses on the economic, environmental and social performance to attain sustainable development (Elkington, 1997). It offers a holistic value creation strategy, which goes beyond financial performance.

2.4.2 Ecological Modernization

Theory According to ecological modernization theory, technological innovation and policy reforms can be used together to achieve environmental protection and economic growth (Mol & Spaargaren, 2000). This viewpoint is opposed to the conventional belief that economic growth and environmental sustainability are mutually exclusive.

2.4.3 Institutional Theory

Institutional theory emphasizes the importance of regulatory, normative and cognitive pressures in influencing organizational behavior (DiMaggio and Powell, 1983). Sustainability practices are embraced by organizations in reaction to stakeholder demands and regulatory provisions (Delmas and Toffel, 2008).

2.4.4 Natural Resource-Based View (NRBV)

The NRBV builds on the Resource-Based View by highlighting the importance of environmental capabilities in the process of gaining competitive advantage (Hart, 1995). Long term success can be attained by firms that create capabilities that include pollution prevention, product stewardship and sustainable development (Hart and Milstein, 2003).

2.5 Innovation and Sustainability

Sustainability depends heavily on innovation, which helps organizations to minimize environmental impact, increase efficiency and competitiveness (Porter and van der Linde, 1995). Green innovation encompasses the creation of green products, processes and technologies. The shift to the circular economy is a major shift towards sustainable practices, with a focus on resource efficiency, waste minimization, and recycling (Geissdoerfer et al., 2017). Sustainability is also promoted by digital technologies, including artificial intelligence and big data analytics that allow managing resources efficiently and making decisions (George et al., 2021).

2.6 Policy and Governance

Sustainability challenges can be overcome only through proper governance. The governments have a significant role in enforcing environmental policies, encouraging renewable energy, and research and development (IPCC, 2021). The significance of international cooperation in combating the climate change is emphasized in international agreements, including the Paris

Agreement (UNFCCC, 2015). These frameworks give directions and goals of cutting greenhouse gas emissions and ensuring sustainable development.

2.7 Research Gaps

Although much research has been conducted, there are still a number of gaps. One needs more integration of sustainability and strategic management views (Hart, 1995). Also, sustainability in emerging economies requires further studies, as the environmental issues tend to be more severe there (Geissdoerfer et al., 2017). Moreover, complex sustainability problems need interdisciplinary solutions (George et al., 2021).

3. Conceptual Framework

In this chapter, a framework has been suggested that connects sustainability practices, innovation capabilities and organizational performance. Innovation is likely to be improved by sustainability practices and this will subsequently increase the performance results (Hart and Milstein, 2003). The moderating factors are institutional pressures and policy structures that have an impact on these relationships (DiMaggio and Powell, 1983).

4. Sustainability Strategies.

Sustainable business models incorporate both environmental and social concerns in the value creation process and allow firms to become successful in the long term (Porter and Kramer, 2011). Green supply chain management aims at minimizing environmental impact throughout the supply chain (Seuring & Müller, 2008). Climate risk management entails incorporating environmental risks in strategic planning with the aim of improving resilience (IPCC, 2021).

5. India-Based Case Studies of Sustainability, Climate, and Environment.

India, being one of the fastest-growing emerging economies, has a two-fold challenge of maintaining a growing economy and combating environmental degradation and climate change. A number of new and policy-oriented strategies have been implemented in the country to facilitate sustainability, which makes it a useful setting to consider the practical implementation of sustainability models (Government of India, 2022; NITI Aayog, 2021).

5.1 Renewable Energy Transition:

Solar Mission and Energy Sustainability The transition of India to renewable energy is one of the greatest sustainability endeavors in the world. Jawaharlal Nehru National Solar Mission (JNNSM) is the initiative that was initiated in 2010 to advance the use of solar energy as one of the elements of the Indian energy mix (MNRE, 2022). The mission has greatly enhanced installed solar power, which has led to less carbon emission and energy security. One such example is the Bhadla Solar Park, which is one of the largest solar parks in the world. This project shows that renewable energy projects on a large scale can be used to promote sustainability and economic development. Theoretically, the case is consistent with the Ecological Modernization Theory, which proposes that technological innovation has the ability to balance economic growth and environmental protection (Mol & Spaargaren, 2000). The use of solar energy has minimized the use of fossil fuels and helped in mitigating climate change (IEA, 2021). In addition, the effectiveness of renewable energy projects in India underscores the significance of governmental support, policy incentives, and the collaboration between the government and the business in meeting the sustainability targets (Bhattacharya et al., 2016).

5.2 Circular Economy and Waste Management:

Swachh Bharat Mission Swachh Bharat Mission is a significant national initiative that started in 2014 to enhance sanitation, waste management, and environmental sustainability. The project aims at eradicating open defecation, encouraging waste separation, and augmenting the urban hygiene. Cities like Indore have become frontrunners in waste management and have always been among the cleanest cities in India. The model of Indore focuses on door-to-door waste collection, on-site segregation and recycling, which are the values of the circular economy (NITI Aayog, 2021). The case demonstrates the use of Triple Bottom Line (TBL) framework, which combines environmental sustainability, social well-being, and economic efficiency (Elkington, 1997). Enhanced sanitation has boosted the health outcomes of the population, minimized environmental pollution and generated jobs in waste management industries (Gupta et al., 2019). The project also shows the importance of institutional pressures, where regulation systems and awareness campaigns have impacted the change of behavior and organizational behavior (DiMaggio and Powell, 1983).

6. Discussion

The results of this chapter give a detailed insight into the intersection of sustainability, climate change, and environmental management in a strategic management framework. The analysis has shown that sustainability is not just an ethical or regulatory issue but a strategic source of long-term value creation by incorporating theoretical perspectives of Triple Bottom Line (TBL), Natural Resource-Based View (NRBV), Ecological Modernization Theory, and Institutional Theory (Elkington, 1997; Hart, 1995; DiMaggio and Powell, 1983). One of the major lessons that come out of this research is that innovation plays a central role as a mediating factor between sustainability practices and the performance of an organization. In line with the previous studies, green innovation helps companies to lower the environmental impact and increase efficiency and competitiveness (Porter and van der Linde, 1995). The empirical examples of India, especially in the renewable energy sector and green mobility, support the idea that technological progress is the key to the realization of the sustainability objectives (IEA, 2021; NITI Aayog, 2021). This goes in line with Ecological Modernization Theory that holds that the environment can be improved by innovation and technological advancement (Mol & Spaargaren, 2000). Moreover, the analysis also shows how institutional and policy frameworks are vital in determining the sustainability outcomes. The policies of renewable energy, waste management, and climate commitments set by the government provide an enabling environment where organizations can implement sustainable practices (UNFCCC, 2015; Government of India, 2022). According to the Institutional Theory, the regulatory, normative, and cognitive pressures affect the organizational behavior and result in the implementation of sustainability strategies (DiMaggio and Powell, 1983). The case studies on India explain how a policy intervention and public awareness campaigns can be used to effect behavioral and organizational change on a large scale. The other important discovery is the importance of capabilities and resources towards attaining sustainability. The NRBV stresses that companies may attain competitive advantage through environmental capabilities like pollution prevention, product stewardship, and sustainable innovation (Hart, 1995). As the example of corporate sustainability initiatives shows, those organizations that consider ESG practices as part of their strategies are more likely to succeed in the long term (Eccles et al.,

2014). The research also highlights the significance of multi-stakeholder cooperation in solving the sustainability challenges. The problem of sustainability is multifaceted and demands the concerted efforts of governments, business, and society. The effectiveness of projects like waste management and renewable energy in India demonstrates the importance of collaborations and joint efforts to deliver sustainability results (NITI Aayog, 2021). In a more general sense, the conclusions indicate that sustainability is not a goal, but a dynamic and changing process. The organizations have to keep changing with the environmental conditions, regulations, and expectations of the stakeholders. This perspective aligns with the Dynamic Capabilities approach, which emphasizes the need for continuous learning and adaptation (Teece et al., 1997).

7. Implications

7.1 Managerial Implications

The results of this research have profound implications to managers who want to incorporate sustainability in their strategic decision making processes. To begin with, companies must cease to focus on compliance-related strategies and instead pursue proactive sustainability approaches that generate value both to the company and the society (Porter and Kramer, 2011). This involves the incorporation of sustainability in the main business processes such as operations, supply chains, and innovation processes. Second, managers ought to invest in green innovation and technological capability to improve the sustainability performance. Efficiency and less impact on the environment can be enhanced with the introduction of renewable energy, digital technologies, and the implementation of a circular economy (George et al., 2021). Companies that focus on innovation have a higher chance of attaining sustainable competitive advantage. Third, organizations are to pay attention to stakeholder engagement and collaboration. Establishing collaborations with governments, research institutions, and other stakeholders can help to share knowledge and mobilize resources to improve sustainability outcomes (NITI Aayog, 2021). Lastly, the managers are expected to incorporate climate risk management in strategic planning. The detection and reduction of climate-related risks can improve organizational resilience and performance in the long term (IPCC, 2021).

7.2 Policy Implications

The paper emphasizes the importance of policymakers in ensuring sustainability and dealing with climate change. Governments ought to come up with detailed policy frameworks that promote sustainable practices and innovation. It involves the introduction of environmental regulations, financial incentive, and research and development (Government of India, 2022). Renewable energy and sustainable development of infrastructure should also be encouraged by policymakers. The investments in clean energy, public transport, and green technologies can contribute greatly to the reduction of the environmental impact and economic growth (IEA, 2021). Also, institutional mechanisms and governance structures need to be strengthened to facilitate the implementation of sustainability policies. Clear and responsible governance can increase the stakeholder trust and involvement (UNFCCC, 2015). Lastly, policymakers ought to emphasize on capacity building and sensitization to ensure that people and organizations adopt sustainable behavior. Long-term sustainability goals cannot be attained without education and awareness (NITI Aayog, 2021).

7.3 Theoretical Implications

This work helps fill the literature gap by incorporating several theoretical approaches into a single framework of the concept of sustainability. TBL, NRBV, Ecological Modernization Theory and Institutional Theory combined give a complete picture of how sustainability practices affect the performance of organizations (Elkington, 1997; Hart, 1995). The results are also an extension of the NRBV as it demonstrates the importance of innovation and collaboration in improving environmental capabilities. Whereas the NRBV puts an emphasis on internal resources, this research underlines the significance of external networks and institutional support towards realizing sustainability outcomes. Moreover, the research adds to the existing body of knowledge on sustainability in emerging markets. The case studies of India-related interest offer the empirical evidence of the implementation of sustainability strategies in the resource-constrained setting, which is a considerable gap in the literature (Geissdoerfer et al., 2017).

8. Future Research Directions

Regardless of its contributions, this study establishes a number of future research areas. To begin with, the proposed conceptual framework has to be empirically validated through both quantitative and qualitative approaches. Innovative research can be carried out in the future to determine the connections between sustainability practices, innovation, and performance based on the large datasets. Second, the researchers must investigate the effects of digital transformation on sustainability. Artificial intelligence, big data, and blockchain are the technologies that can improve the sustainability outcomes, yet their implications are not clearly comprehended (George et al., 2021). Third, further studies ought to be directed towards industry-specific research because the issues and opportunities of sustainability differ among industries. Best practices can be learned through comparative studies across sectors. Lastly, more studies should be conducted on climate adaptation and resilience policies, especially in developing nations that are more susceptible to the effects of climate change (IPCC, 2021).

References

- [1] Barney, J. (1991). Firm resources and sustained competitive advantage. *Journal of Management*, 17(1), 99–120.
- [2] Bhattacharya, A., et al. (2016). Delivering on sustainable infrastructure for better development. *Brookings Institution*.
- [3] Bocken, N. M. P., Short, S. W., Rana, P., & Evans, S. (2014). A literature and practice review to develop sustainable business model archetypes. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 65, 42–56.
- [4] Carroll, A. B. (1999). Corporate social responsibility: Evolution of a definitional construct. *Business & Society*, 38(3), 268–295.
- [5] Delmas, M. A., & Toffel, M. W. (2008). Organizational responses to environmental demands. *Organization Science*, 19(1), 102–119.
- [6] DiMaggio, P. J., & Powell, W. W. (1983). The iron cage revisited: Institutional isomorphism. *American Sociological Review*, 48(2), 147–160.
- [7] Eccles, R. G., Ioannou, I., & Serafeim, G. (2014). The impact of corporate sustainability on organizational processes and performance. *Management Science*, 60(11), 2835–2857.
- [8] Elkington, J. (1997). *Cannibals with forks: The triple bottom line of 21st century business*. Capstone.

- [9] Geissdoerfer, M., Savaget, P., Bocken, N., & Hultink, E. J. (2017). The circular economy: A new sustainability paradigm. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 143, 757–768.
- [10] George, G., Merrill, R. K., & Schillebeeckx, S. J. D. (2021). Digital sustainability and entrepreneurship. *Academy of Management Journal*, 64(4), 1120–1147.
- [11] Ghisetti, C., & Rennings, K. (2014). Environmental innovations and profitability. *Research Policy*, 43(1), 106–117.
- [12] Gupta, J., et al. (2019). Sustainable development goals and inclusive development. *World Development*, 122, 627–640.
- [13] Hart, S. L. (1995). A natural-resource-based view of the firm. *Academy of Management Review*, 20(4), 986–1014.
- [14] Hart, S. L., & Milstein, M. B. (2003). Creating sustainable value. *Academy of Management Executive*, 17(2), 56–69.
- [15] Hockerts, K., & Wüstenhagen, R. (2010). Greening Goliaths vs emerging Davids. *Business Strategy and the Environment*, 19(7), 481–492.
- [16] Kolk, A. (2016). The social responsibility of international business. *Journal of World Business*, 51(1), 23–34.
- [17] Lee, K. H., & Min, B. (2015). Green R&D and firm performance. *Business Strategy and the Environment*, 24(7), 534–548.
- [18] Lozano, R. (2015). A holistic perspective on corporate sustainability drivers. *Corporate Social Responsibility and Environmental Management*, 22(1), 32–44.
- [19] Mol, A. P. J., & Spaargaren, G. (2000). Ecological modernization theory. *Global Environmental Change*, 10(1), 17–30.
- [20] Orlitzky, M., Schmidt, F., & Rynes, S. (2003). Corporate social and financial performance. *Organization Studies*, 24(3), 403–441.
- [21] Ostrom, E. (2009). A general framework for analyzing sustainability. *Science*, 325(5939), 419–422.
- [22] Pérez-López, D., et al. (2015). Corporate social responsibility and innovation. *Journal of Business Research*, 68(7), 1468–1477.
- [23] Porter, M. E., & Kramer, M. R. (2011). Creating shared value. *Harvard Business Review*, 89(1/2), 62–77.
- [24] Porter, M. E., & van der Linde, C. (1995). Green competitiveness. *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 9(4), 97–118.
- [25] Prahalad, C. K. (2005). *The fortune at the bottom of the pyramid*. Wharton School Publishing.
- [26] Schaltegger, S., & Wagner, M. (2011). Sustainable entrepreneurship. *Business Strategy and the Environment*, 20(4), 222–237.
- [27] Seuring, S., & Müller, M. (2008). Green supply chain management. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 16(15), 1699–1710.
- [28] Teece, D. J., Pisano, G., & Shuen, A. (1997). Dynamic capabilities. *Strategic Management Journal*, 18(7), 509–533.
- [29] Wagner, M. (2010). Corporate social performance and innovation. *Journal of Business Research*, 63(4), 386–394.

- [30] Zhu, Q., & Sarkis, J. (2004). Green supply chain management in China. *International Journal of Production Economics*, 85(3), 449–463.

INDUSTRY–ACADEMIA PARTNERSHIP FOR SUSTAINABLE GROWTH: A COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW

Dr Simarjit Kaur ¹ , Dr Reeta ² & Dr. Shilpa³

1 Assistant Professor, University Business School, MRSPTU

2 Associate Professor, Maharishi Markandeshwar deemed to be University, Mullana -Ambala, Haryana, India

3 Assistant Professor, PIT GTB Garh, Moga (MRSPTU,Bathinda)

1. simar89maur@gmail.com

2. reeta.clonia@gmail.comShilpamanocha15@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

The increasing rate of technological transformation and the growing imperative of global sustainability issues have put industry and academia in a convergence of interest never before experienced. This chapter is a critical look at the changing landscape of industry-academia partnerships (IAPs) as a force behind sustainable economic, social and environmental development. Based on theoretical perspectives of triple helix theory, open innovation, and literature on the knowledge-based economy, the chapter charts the various forms of collaboration between firms and universities such as sponsored research and joint laboratories, co-created curricula and deep-tech startups. It examines enabling conditions, structural barriers, and best practices in governance and presents examples of the same in Europe, North America, and the Global South. The chapter closes with mapping out an agenda of partnerships in the next generation, based on the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs).

Keywords: Industry–academia collaboration, triple helix model, open innovation, sustainable development goals, knowledge transfer, research commercialisation, university–industry linkages

I. INTRODUCTION

The interrelationship between industry and universities is as ancient as the industrial university is, but it has never been more consequential today. The line between the academy and the marketplace is disappearing in a time characterized by climate disruption, accelerating digitalisation, population shift and the decay of linear models of innovation. Corporations require the basic knowledge that only long-horizon research can offer; universities require the problems of the world, data streams, and translation services that only industry can offer. In the point of intersection of these supplementary imperatives, truly transformative knowledge is produced.

But alliance is not equal to evolution. Unplanned alliances may skew the research agendas, undermine academic freedom, widen the disparities between well-endowed and under-endowed institutions, and generate innovations whose gains are taken in a narrow manner rather than distributed widely. The stakes, that is, are great on either side. The main thesis of this chapter is

thus twofold: first, that industry-academia partnerships (IAPs) are one of the strongest, yet still untapped, drivers of sustainable development; and second, that to unlock their potential, they have to be consciously designed, governed, and purposeful.

The chapter goes on in the following way. Section 2 places IAPs in the context of the concerned theoretical traditions. Section 3 provides a survey of the empirical terrain of partnership modalities. Section 4 looks at the facilitating conditions and chronic obstacles to cooperation. Section 5 gives examples of various regional and institutional practices. Section 6 answers the key question of how IAPs can be intentionally aligned to sustainability imperatives. Policy and managerial recommendations are given in section 7.

II. THEORETICAL FOUNDATIONS

A number of intellectual traditions guide our thoughts on why and how industry and academia work together and what can be achieved in this way.

2.1 The Triple Helix Model

The triple helix model by Etzkowitz and Leydesdorff is the most frequently referred to concept of understanding the relationships between universities, industry and government (Etzkowitz and Leydesdorff, 2000). According to the model, sustainable innovation ecosystems are the result of the recursive interaction between three spheres of institutions: the university as the source of new knowledge; industry as the place of production and commercialisation; and government as the regulator and as the last resort. In the pure form of statistic, where government was dominant, was the variant of laissez-faire, where the market was dominant. The triple helix as such is typified by overlapping and mutually transformative roles: universities undertake the entrepreneurial activity, firms undertake basic research, and governments take the facilitative role as opposed to a directive one.

Later researchers have generalised the model to include a fourth helix of civil society (Carayannis and Campbell, 2009) due to the emergence of the significance of citizens, social movements, and non-governmental organisations in the determination of the direction of innovation. The quadruple helix paradigm particular applies to sustainability-focused partnerships, where the buy-in of communities and the democratic legitimacy are considered as significant as technical feasibility.

2.2 Open Innovation

The open innovation paradigm as developed by Chesbrough was a challenge to the open innovation paradigm that firms internalised their research and development as a competitive advantage (Chesbrough, 2003). Open innovation reformulates the boundary of the firm as permeable: knowledge is valuable and comes in (universities, start-ups, suppliers, customers) as well as goes out (licensing, spin-offs, joint venture). In the case of universities, open innovation is

not any less radical: it validates the idea of collaboration with business as an extension of the academic mandate and not a diversion of it.

Recent contributions to the concept of open innovation 2.0 focus on platform-level, ecosystem-level cooperation among many actors, in real time (Curley and Salmelin, 2013). Under this mode, universities become less of contract research providers and more of nodes in dynamic innovation networks, co-creating value with a myriad of industrial, civic, and governmental partners.2.3 Knowledge-Based Economy and Engaged Scholarship.

2.3 The Knowledge-Based Economy and Engaged Scholarship

Higher education institutions are made the main infrastructure of economic competitiveness by knowledge-based economy literature (Drucker, 1993; OECD, 1996). Some of the activities that universities can play a role in fostering growth include human capital formation, the creation of intellectual property, and the diffusion of new technologies with the help of graduate mobility. This thinking has been used to support a wave of institutional changes, such as technology transfer offices, science parks, proof-of-concept funds, aimed at hastening the commercialisation of academic knowledge.

The idea behind the so-called scholarship of engagement introduced by Boyer (Boyer, 1996) can also be viewed as a complementary yet different argument: universities have a civic responsibility to apply their knowledge to the most urgent needs of the society. Engaged scholarship does not make the university subordinate to an economic policy instrument; instead it places academic knowledge in more general democratic responsibilities. This orientation cannot be avoided in the case of sustainable development.

III.INDUSTRY-ACADEMIA PARTNERSHIP/MODALITIES.

IAPs can be in various forms, including arm-length transactional relationships as well as highly institutionalized relationships. The modality used depends on the type of the knowledge being pursued, time span of the partnership, and preferences of both parties in governance.3.1 Contract Research and Sponsored Projects.

3.1 Contract Research and Sponsored Projects

The simplest and the most frequent type of cooperation is when a firm contracts a university to perform a research on a specific issue and within a set budget and time. Contract research is appreciated because it is fast and precise but it has been criticised to restrict the academic flow and make intellectual property concentrated with the sponsoring company. Sponsored research, when properly regulated, i.e. with publication rights, data sharing arrangements, and conflict-of-interest clauses well defined can be not only scientifically fruitful, but also commercially worthwhile (Perkmann et al., 2013).3.2.3 Strategic Research Alliances and Consortia.

3.2 Strategic Research Alliances and Consortia

Pre-competitive research consortia bring together contributions of several firms and universities to work on issues that a single company or university could not or would not do on its own. This approach can be seen in the Fraunhofer model of Germany, with applied research institutes crossing the line between the public and private, and working on medium-term research problems. They are found in Scandinavia (VINNOVA-funded centres of excellence), the United Kingdom (Innovate UK's Catapult network) and the United States (National Science Foundation Industry-University Cooperative Research Centers, which are similar in structure). Cosporia diffusion, avoidance of wasteful duplication, and may develop the absorptive capacity of smaller firms, which have no research departments in-house (Cohen and Levinthal, 1990).

3.3 Joint Laboratories and Embedded Researchers

The more intensive modes include the co-location of academic and industrial researchers, in campus-based joint laboratories sponsored by industry, or in so-called secondment schemes in which academics spend longer stints in companies. The merit of these arrangements is the depth of tacit knowledge transfer that they can facilitate: the industrial researchers can learn scientific culture and methodological rigour and the academics can have a first-hand experience of the limits of production, customer demand, and competitive forces. One of the oldest examples of this modality is the Knowledge Transfer Partnerships programme in the UK that has been running since 1975 (Rosli and Yip, 2018).

3.4 Curriculum Co-Design and Work-Integrated Learning

The end of partnerships does not come at research. The involvement of industry in curriculum design, advisory boards, guest lecturing and the accreditation procedures are certain that the graduates have skills valued by the employers. Work-integrated learning such as internships, cooperative education, apprenticeships, etc. is a bridge between the classroom and the workplace and hastens the tacit knowledge acquisition that cannot be fully recreated in a classroom. A two-level vocational training system in Germany and the equivalent university-level system in the Duale Hochschulen Baden-Wurttemberg shows that such systems can be scaled (Euler, 2013).

3.5 Technology Transfer, Licensing, and Spin-Out Ventures

Technology transfer offices (TTOs) convert the results of the academic research into the commercial products and services by licensing patents, know-how, and creating university spin-out companies. With an incentive environment changing dramatically, as the Bayh-Dole Act of 1980 gave US universities the right to retain title to federally-funded inventions, a surge of patenting began on college campuses (Mowery et al., 2004). The acts have been later adopted in Europe and Asia under similar legislation. Although the potential of licensing to generate revenue

is frequently exaggerated, and the vast majority of blockbuster patents actually drive the majority of royalty revenues, the spin-out pathway has given rise to globally important deep-tech companies in areas such as biotechnology, semiconductors, and clean energy.3.6 Philanthropic Endowments and Corporate Social Responsibility initiatives.

3.6 Philanthropic Endowments and Corporate Social Responsibility Initiatives

Another, less frequently analysed, type of partnership is the one between corporate philanthropy and CSR-based investments in education and research. These arrangements often have fewer strings associated with them than does contract research and may support basic inquiry with diffuse social benefits. Reputational entanglement and institutional mission drift are the dangers in the case of donor naming rights or programmatic leverage. To maintain institutional integrity, transparent systems of governance outlining the rights and limitations of donors are necessary.

IV. ENABLING CONDITIONS AND BARRIERS.

4.1 Enabling Conditions

There is a large amount of literature that has determined the circumstances in which IAPs will probably thrive:

- Institutional culture and leadership*: Leadership by the senior academic and corporate executives who demonstrate collaboration themselves sends strong signals. Collaborative activity is more effectively supported by institutions that formally reward and recognise it, e.g. by promoting staff based on their collaborative work, providing sabbatical policies and special support structures (Bozeman and Boardman, 2013).
- Geographical proximity and agglomeration*: Co-location in the innovation district, science park or regional cluster helps to lower transaction costs and enables the informal process of building trust and identifying opportunities. The examples of the agglomeration dynamic are Silicon Valley, the cluster in Cambridge (UK) and the technology corridor in Bangalore (Saxenian, 1994).
- Absorptive capacity*: Cohen and Levinthal (1990) have determined that the existing knowledge base predetermines the capacity of a firm to identify, internalise and utilise the external knowledge. Organisations that possess a robust internal capacity to carry out research are better partners as they can access academic products at an advanced level as opposed to considering the universities as technical service vendors.
- Clarity of intellectual property*: The most frequent reason of partnership disintegration is the ambiguity concerning the ownership of the jointly created IP. Prior, clear, negotiation of IP conditions such as background IP, foreground IP, rights to publication, and revenue sharing are a requirement to sustainable cooperation.

The role of intermediate organisations: Technology transfer offices, innovation agencies, cluster organisations, and sectoral associations act as important brokers and help to reduce the cost of search, offer standard contract templates, and resolve conflicts. In cases where such intermediaries

are well-endowed and trusted by both parties the rates of partnership are systematically greater (Howells, 2006).

4.2 Persistent Barriers

In spite of decades of policy work, there are still important frictions:

- Cultural and temporal mismatch*: Academic culture values open publication, peer acknowledgment and long-horizon interest-based investigation. Speed, secrecy, and short term commercial payoff are valued in corporate culture. These are not just stereotypes, but real tensions and they must be dealt with by a continuous reciprocal adjustment.
- Inequality of power and dependence*: When one large organization has monopolized the financing of a research team, a laboratory or even a department, agenda capture is a possibility. Graduate students and postdoctoral fellows are the most susceptible of junior researchers because their career paths can be reliant on the corporate relationship.
- Bureaucratic inertia*: University procurement, ethics and legal procedures can be painfully slow according to corporate speed. The simplification of these processes, without compromising on important safeguards, is an expedient priority in most institutions.
- Geographic and resource inequities*: IAPs are over-represented in affluent and urban areas that have research-driven universities. The institutions in the peripheral regions, low-income countries, and in communities of colour are under-represented in a systematic way. This disparity restricts the amount of knowledge that can be generated as well as the equity of distribution of that knowledge.
- Short and cyclical*ity: Corporate research budgets are one of the initial costs cut when downturns occur. The resultant instability in funding the long-term research-programmes that produce the greatest scientific progress.

V. ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

5.1 The MIT–Industry Consortium Model (United States)

The Massachusetts Institute of Technology has long been a crucible of innovation of industry-academia collaboration. Its Industrial Liaison Program, which dates back to 1948, allows more than 200 corporate members to tap into MIT research, faculty and students via a formalized fee-based membership. This is complemented by the Industrial Performance Center and the Deshpande Center of Technological Innovation with specific programmes of mid-stage translation, and entrepreneurship assistance. It is worth mentioning that MIT has a transparent governance structure: member firms are given privileged access, but do not determine the priorities of research, and all publications are free. The ecosystem created as a result has produced thousands of spin-out companies and is said to have created an estimated 4.6 million jobs (MIT, 2015).

5.2 Fraunhofer-Gesellschaft (Germany)

The Fraunhofer-Gesellschaft in Germany, which is organized into 76 institutes and an almost 30,000 employees, does not have an exact international equivalent. Fraunhofer institutes carry out applied research at the interface between the basic science and industry, with funding provided by a combination of base funding (around one third) provided by the government and competitive contract revenues with industry and government (two thirds). The funding model based on performance-based funding- whereby the amount of money given to institutes is pegged to their commercial revenue generates strong incentives to be industry relevant as well as maintaining institutional autonomy. Fraunhofer has been mentioned as one of the key enablers of the competitiveness of Germany in terms of its SME (Selbststaendische Mittelstand, or SME) and its prowess at advanced manufacturing (Hemer et al., 2006).

5.3 University–Industry Partnerships for Clean Energy (India)

In 2010 the National Solar Mission of India stimulated a series of university-industry-government partnerships in an effort to bring affordable solar technologies to the market more quickly. Photovoltaic materials, grid integration, rural electrification Photovoltaic materials Photovoltaic materials The Indian Institutes of Technology (IITs) have joint research programmes with companies such as Tata Power Solar and Adani Solar in photovoltaic materials, grid integration and rural electrification. The Department of Science and Technology supporting these partnerships has been through the Technology Development and Transfer programme whereby it offers bridge funding to de-risk early-stage translation. Hyderabad and Pune clean energy cluster exemplifies the way in which an intentional policy can activate IAPs in the regions that do not support the dense spontaneous ecosystems of Northern America or Northern Europe (Lema et al., 2018).

5.4 The African Research Universities Alliance (ARUA) and Industry Engagement

The African Research Universities Alliance, a group of 16 top research universities in the continent has attempted to establish IAP infrastructure in settings that are typified by low corporate R&D spending and serenely underfinanced universities. The Centres of Excellence of ARUA in fields such as climate change, food security, and health innovation have received industry collaborations with multinational companies as well as African companies. The ARUA experience shows the potential and the constraints of IAP promotion in low-income settings: both sides are interested in collaboration, but it must be driven by patient catalytic funding by the government that is not offered by the private partners (Muller, 2021).

VI. MATCHING INDUSTRY-ACADEMIA PARTNERSHIPS TO SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT.

6.1 The SDG Framework as a shared language.

The 17 goals of the Sustainable Development Goals of Agenda 2030, which were adopted by the United Nations in 2015, offers a globally recognised framework in which IAPs can establish a sense of purpose and quantify collective impact. The explicit call to share knowledge between the university and the industry as an implementation mechanism is SDG 17, which is entitled Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalise the global partnership for sustainable development. Other SDGs, such as SDG 4 (quality education), SDG 7 (affordable and clean energy), SDG 9 (industry, innovation and infrastructure) and SDG 13 (climate action) provide natural intersection points of partnership agendas (United Nations, 2015).

To turn the SDG framework into a practical reality, universities must create sustainability metrics of their portfolios of partnerships, companies must expand their ESG reporting into knowledge and research inputs and the governments must provide incentives to SDG-appropriate collaboration in the form of tax credits, procurement preferences and special funding streams.6.2 Partnership Domain of Sustainability Science.

6.2 Sustainability Science as a Partnership Domain

Sustainability science is interdisciplinary, focusing on the interactions between natural and social systems in the context of the sustainability transition, thus problem-focused by nature, and thus naturally open to a collaboration with industry (Kates et al., 2001). The green hydrogen, biodiversity-positive supply chains, sustainable urban mobility, circular economy, and precision agriculture are all areas where academic knowledge and industrial scale are mutually essential. Partnerships in such directions not only give rise to technological innovation but also to the standards, protocols, business models, and regulatory frameworks that influence the diffusion of innovations and its beneficiaries.

6.3 responsible Innovation and Anticipatory Governance.

The responsible innovation is a question emerging as IAPs increasingly become an integral part of sustainability transitions (Stilgoe et al., 2013). Who formulates the sustainability problem? Who has their values, and priorities coded in the technical solutions? What is the allocation of the risks and benefits? The frameworks of responsible innovation focus on anticipation (based on predicting future impacts), reflexivity (challenging assumptions), inclusion (making participation broader), and responsiveness (making changes based on new knowledge or values). Incorporating such principles into the governance of partnerships, in the form of stakeholder advisory boards, independent review of ethics, and public reporting is now understood to be ethically warranted and commercially sound.6.4 Capacity Building and Global South.

6.4 Capacity Building and the Global South

Without full involvement of the Global South into the knowledge economy, there can be no such a thing as sustainable development. However, IAPs is still geographically very uneven: most of the world R&D investment, patenting, and technology transfer activity is concentrated in a few countries with high incomes. This imbalance can be redressed by specifically capacity-building investments that make the research universities in low- and middle-income countries stronger, give the institutions in the North and the South fair partnership terms, and make the intellectual property frameworks not prejudiced against developing country partners. Agendas of the International Science Council such as science for sustainable development and the principles of equity of the Global Research Council are significant international approaches in this regard.

7. POLICY AND MANAGERIAL RECOMMENDATIONS.

7.1 For Governments and Funding Agencies

- Fund instruments to cover the entire innovation cycle-* basic research, applied development, translation and scale-up- and to explicitly reward collaborations with those that are aligned with societal needs.
- Make long-term investments in intermediary infrastructure:* technology transfer offices, innovation brokers, cluster organisations are not administrative overheads, but connective tissue.
- Implement SDG-compliant procurement and tax incentives policy that will encourage companies to invest in joint research with universities.
- Invest more in capacity building among the under-resourced institutions and areas in order to make sure that the fruits of knowledge-based growth are widely distributed.
- Further IP protection/diffusion: Enact regulatory frameworks that promote the balance between IP protection and diffusion, such as mandatory licensing in key areas of strategic national interest.

7.2 For Universities and Academic Leaders

- Establish effective institutional approaches to industry engagement, which enshrines values, priorities, and red lines- and make them known to all stakeholders.
- Promote and reward reformed systems of scholarship that give recognition to collaborative, applied, engaged scholarship as well as to traditional publication measures.
- invest in professional partnership management capacity: experienced personnel in TTO, expertise in legal areas and relationship managers who are capable of creating and maintaining long-term corporate relationships.
- Promote the academic freedom and career growth of early-career researchers in industry partnerships by ensuring a strong system of governance and mentoring.
- Co-align partnership portfolios with institutional sustainability commitments- such as carbon neutrality, responsible investment and inclusive innovation commitments.

7.3 For Industry and Corporate Leaders

- Take a long-term approach to investing in the university: research relations are complementary to R&D outsourcing but not to internal capability building.
- Work with the entire spectrum of university outputs, patents and spin-outs, but also talent pipelines, standards making, and legitimacy to society.
- Be actively involved in the management of joint projects: the corporate knowledge to manage projects, market awareness, and scale can be as useful as the money.
- Expand the ESG models to include research and innovation alliances as an aspect of corporate responsibility.
- Make collaborations with organisations that serve communities historically marginalised a priority to contribute to equitable growth.

VIII. CONCLUSION

Industry-academia alliances take centre stage in the design of sustainable development. They are, in their best, places of pure co-creation, between the intellectual aspiration of the university and the productive force of the firm, between the knowledge created in the service of both economic and social need, and the forms of that knowledge which neither party could create single-handedly. They are also, worst of all, schemes which distort research, which concentrate benefit, and marginalise those very communities which they purport to serve.

The next decade is the challenge to scale-up the best in a systematic way and to scale-down the worst in a systematic way. It needs to go beyond technical solutions: it needs a collective investment, by scholars, business executives, policymakers and civil society, in the thesis that knowledge is not just a commodity but also a commons, and that the process of making knowledge has a responsibility that is not limited to any individual stakeholder relationship.

The SDG framework with all its flaws provides a language of rarity like uniting these obligations into a common language in which they can be articulated, measured, and accountable. Adopting it as a design principle to industry-academia collaboration, rather than as a reporting structure, could become one of the most fateful decisions that the research institutions and their corporate collaborators would make in the coming years.

References:

- [1] Ankrah, S., & Omar, A. T. (2015). Universities–industry collaboration: A systematic review. *Scandinavian Journal of Management*, 31(3), 387–408.
- [2] Audretsch, D. B., & Feldman, M. P. (1996). R&D spillovers and the geography of innovation and production. *The American Economic Review*, 86(3), 630–640.
- [3] Barney, J. B. (1991). Firm resources and sustained competitive advantage. *Journal of Management*, 17(1), 99–120.
- [4] Brundtland Commission. (1987). Our Common Future. World Commission on Environment and Development. *Oxford University Press*.

- [5] Carayannis, E. G., & Campbell, D. F. J. (2009). 'Mode 3' and 'Quadruple Helix': Toward a 21st century fractal innovation ecosystem. *International Journal of Technology Management*, 46(3–4), 201–234.
- [6] Chesbrough, H. (2003). Open Innovation: The New Imperative for Creating and Profiting from Technology. *Harvard Business School Press*.
- [7] Clark, B. R. (1998). Creating Entrepreneurial Universities: Organizational Pathways of Transformation. Pergamon Press.
- [8] Etzkowitz, H., & Leydesdorff, L. (1995). The Triple Helix: University-industry-government relations. *EASST Review*, 14(1), 14–19.
- [9] Etzkowitz, H., & Leydesdorff, L. (2000). The dynamics of innovation: From national systems and 'Mode 2' to a Triple Helix of university–industry–government relations. *Research Policy*, 29(2), 109–123.
- [10] Government of India. (2020). National Education Policy 2020. Ministry of Education.
- [11] Perkmann, M., Tartari, V., McKelvey, M., Autio, E., Brostrom, A., D'Este, P., ... & Sobrero, M. (2013). Academic engagement and commercialisation: A review of the literature on university–industry relations. *Research Policy*, 42(2), 423–442.
- [12] Perkmann, M., Salandra, R., Tartari, V., McKelvey, M., & Hughes, A. (2021). Academic engagement: A review of the literature 2011–2019. *Research Policy*, 50(1), 104114.
- [13] United Nations. (2015). Transforming Our World: The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. United Nations.
- [14] Vabø, A., & Padgett, J. (2020). The changing role of universities in knowledge exchange with industry. *Higher Education Quarterly*, 74(3), 259–272.

Smart Irrigation Model Using Sensors: A Comprehensive Review

Anmol Sodha^{#1}, Punit Kumar^{#2}

[#]School of Agriculture Sciences and Engineering,

Maharaja Ranjit Singh Punjab Technical University, Bathinda (Pb) – 151001 India

¹anmolanshu0001@gmail.com

²Punitnokhwal940@gmail.com

Abstract

Smart irrigation model utilizing soil moisture sensors have emerged as a transformative approach to precision farming, enabling real-time, data-driven water management across diverse agricultural settings. Traditional irrigation methods are characterized by significant water wastage and inefficiencies stemming from uniform scheduling that fails to account for actual crop water needs or soil conditions. This review comprehensively examines the current state of smart irrigation technologies incorporating soil moisture sensors, with particular emphasis on sensor types, communication protocols, control architectures, and integration with Internet of Things (IoT) platforms. The paper surveys 30 Scopus-indexed studies published between 2015 and 2024, covering capacitive, resistive, tensiometric, and FDR-based soil moisture sensors deployed across varied climatic zones and crop types. Findings indicate that IoT-enabled automated irrigation systems can achieve water savings of 20–50% compared to conventional methods while maintaining or improving crop yields. The review also discusses the role of microcontrollers such as Arduino and Raspberry Pi, wireless protocols including ZigBee, LoRa, and Wi-Fi, and the integration of machine learning algorithms for predictive irrigation scheduling. Challenges such as sensor calibration, soil heterogeneity, power supply limitations, and system scalability are critically analyzed. The paper identifies future research directions including edge computing integration, multi-sensor data fusion, solar-powered nodes, and AI-driven decision-support systems. This synthesis provides a structured foundation for researchers, engineers, and policymakers working toward sustainable and intelligent water resource management in agriculture.

Keywords: Smart irrigation, soil moisture sensors, IoT, Precision agriculture, machine learning, water management,

1. INTRODUCTION

Agriculture accounts for approximately 70% of global freshwater withdrawals, making efficient water use a critical challenge in the context of growing population demands and accelerating climate change [1]. Conventional irrigation practices, including flood and furrow irrigation, are

associated with excessive water application, nutrient leaching, and reduced crop quality [2]. The adoption of precision irrigation technologies offers a pathway to mitigate these challenges by delivering water in alignment with actual soil and plant requirements [3].

Soil moisture sensors serve as the cornerstone of smart irrigation systems by providing continuous, real-time measurements of volumetric water content (VWC) or soil water potential. These measurements enable automated feedback-control mechanisms that activate or deactivate irrigation events with precision [4]. Over the past decade, advancements in microelectronics, wireless communication, and cloud computing have catalyzed the development of low-cost, scalable smart irrigation platforms suitable for both smallholder farms and large commercial operations [5].

The Internet of Things (IoT) paradigm has been particularly instrumental in enabling distributed sensing, remote monitoring, and data analytics for agricultural water management [6]. IoT-based smart irrigation systems can integrate multiple environmental parameters—soil moisture, temperature, humidity, solar radiation—and apply machine learning algorithms to optimize irrigation scheduling beyond simple threshold-based control [7].

This review paper systematically examines 30 Scopus-indexed studies on smart irrigation systems employing soil moisture sensors. The objectives are to: (i) categorize sensor technologies and their field performance; (ii) assess IoT architectures and communication protocols; (iii) evaluate water and energy savings reported; (iv) identify limitations and research gaps; and (v) propose future research directions for the field.

2. SOIL MOISTURE SENSING TECHNOLOGIES

2.1 Capacitive Sensors

Capacitive soil moisture sensors measure the dielectric permittivity of the soil, which varies with water content. They are widely favored for their low power consumption, durability, and resistance to corrosion compared to resistive counterparts [8]. Studies by Soulis et al. [9] demonstrated that capacitive sensors embedded in subsurface drip irrigation networks achieved VWC measurements within $\pm 2\%$ accuracy across sandy loam soils. Their integration with Arduino-based microcontrollers facilitated automated threshold-triggered irrigation, reducing water use by 35% compared to schedule-based irrigation.

2.2 Resistive Sensors

Resistive sensors measure changes in electrical resistance between two electrodes as soil moisture varies. Although they are low-cost and easy to deploy, their susceptibility to salinity interference and electrode corrosion limits long-term reliability [10]. Gutierrez et al. [11] employed resistive sensors in a wireless sensor network (WSN) for tomato cultivation, achieving a 28% reduction in

irrigation water. However, sensor degradation over a 6-month deployment period necessitated periodic recalibration, highlighting the maintenance challenges associated with this technology.

2.3 Frequency Domain Reflectometry (FDR) Sensors

FDR sensors operate by measuring the resonant frequency of an oscillator circuit whose capacitance is determined by the soil's dielectric constant. These sensors offer high accuracy ($\pm 1\text{--}3\%$ VWC) and are suitable for continuous profiling of moisture at multiple soil depths [12]. Navarro-Hellín et al. [13] utilized FDR sensors in a multi-depth irrigation decision support system for citrus orchards, integrating real-time sensor data with weather forecasts via a cloud platform to reduce irrigation events by 40% while preserving fruit yield.

2.4 Tensiometers

Tensiometers measure soil water potential (matric potential) in centibars, directly reflecting the energy required by roots to extract water from soil. While highly relevant to plant water stress, tensiometers require regular maintenance to prevent air bubble formation in the ceramic cup [14]. Vellidis et al. [15] deployed wireless tensiometers in cotton fields and demonstrated that matric potential-based irrigation scheduling improved water productivity by 22% compared to ET-based scheduling.

3. IOT ARCHITECTURES FOR SMART IRRIGATION

IoT-based smart irrigation systems typically comprise three layers: (i) the perception layer (sensors and actuators), (ii) the network layer (communication protocols), and (iii) the application layer (cloud services, dashboards, and decision algorithms) [16]. The choice of communication technology profoundly affects system range, power consumption, and data throughput.

ZigBee has been widely adopted for short-range WSNs in precision irrigation due to its low power consumption and mesh networking capability [17]. LoRaWAN (Long Range Wide Area Network) enables kilometer-scale communication with minimal energy use, making it suitable for large farms with sparse sensor deployments [18]. Studies by Benyezza et al. [19] demonstrated a LoRa-based irrigation system for wheat fields covering 2 km² with a single gateway, achieving 43% water savings. Wi-Fi-based systems, while offering high data rates, are constrained by power requirements and limited range in rural environments [20].

Microcontrollers such as Arduino Uno, ESP8266, and ESP32 are the dominant embedded platforms in reviewed systems. Raspberry Pi is commonly employed as a local edge gateway for data aggregation and preprocessing [21]. Cloud platforms including AWS IoT, Thing Speak, and Blynk provide remote access, data visualization, and alert functionalities [22]. The adoption of MQTT (Message Queuing Telemetry Transport) as the lightweight communication protocol facilitates low-latency data exchange between field nodes and cloud servers [23].

4. MACHINE LEARNING IN SMART IRRIGATION

The integration of machine learning (ML) into smart irrigation systems has enabled predictive and adaptive irrigation scheduling that transcends simple threshold-based control [24]. Supervised learning algorithms—including support vector machines, random forests, and artificial neural networks—have been trained on historical soil moisture, weather, and crop growth data to predict optimal irrigation timing and volume [25].

Ferreira et al. [26] applied a long short-term memory (LSTM) recurrent neural network to forecast soil moisture dynamics up to 48 hours in advance for maize cultivation, achieving a root mean square error (RMSE) of 0.018 m³/m³. This predictive capability reduced over-irrigation events by 31%. Reinoso-Bizarro et al. [27] developed a fuzzy logic-based irrigation controller that integrated soil moisture and crop evapotranspiration data to dynamically adjust irrigation dose, reporting a 37% water saving in pepper cultivation under semi-arid conditions.

Reinforcement learning (RL) has also been explored for dynamic irrigation policy optimization. Alibabaei et al. [28] trained a deep Q-network (DQN) agent in a simulated potato crop environment, demonstrating that the RL-based policy achieved 45% water savings compared to a fixed-schedule baseline while maintaining yield within 5% of optimal. These results underscore the potential of data-driven approaches to further enhance irrigation efficiency in complex agro-climatic environments.

5. WATER AND ENERGY SAVINGS: A COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS

The reviewed studies consistently demonstrate significant water savings from smart irrigation systems, with reported reductions ranging from 20% to 55% compared to conventional irrigation methods. Table 1 (referenced below) summarizes key outcomes across selected studies. The highest savings were observed in drip irrigation systems equipped with multi-depth soil moisture sensing and weather-adaptive scheduling [29].

Energy consumption is a critical consideration for battery-powered field nodes. Solar energy harvesting has been integrated in several reviewed systems to ensure continuous operation in off-grid agricultural environments. Kansara et al. [30] deployed a solar-powered IoT irrigation node using capacitive sensors and GPRS communication for sugarcane fields in India, achieving autonomous operation with a 5W solar panel and reporting a 39% water saving over six growing seasons.

The economic feasibility of smart irrigation systems is strongly influenced by sensor cost, deployment scale, and maintenance requirements. The cost of commercial capacitive sensors ranges from USD 5 to USD 50 per unit, while FDR sensors can cost USD 100–500 per unit. Low-cost DIY systems using Arduino and resistive sensors, while economically accessible to smallholder farmers, may sacrifice accuracy and long-term reliability. Emerging printed electronics and MEMS-based sensors are expected to further reduce costs and expand adoption.

6. CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS

Despite the technological advances documented in the reviewed literature, several challenges persist that limit widespread adoption of smart irrigation systems. Sensor calibration remains a significant issue, as soil-specific calibration is required to achieve accurate VWC measurements—generic calibration curves can introduce errors of 5–10% VWC, rendering threshold-based control unreliable [8]. Soil heterogeneity at field scale further complicates single-point sensor deployments, necessitating spatially distributed sensing networks that increase cost and data management complexity.

Network connectivity in remote agricultural areas remains a limiting factor. While LoRa and NB-IoT networks are expanding in coverage, many farming regions in developing countries lack adequate wireless infrastructure. Power supply reliability for continuously operating sensor nodes is another barrier, particularly during extended periods of cloud cover that limit solar energy harvesting. Battery replacement logistics in large-scale deployments introduce operational overhead.

Data security and privacy concerns associated with cloud-connected agricultural systems are increasingly recognized. The transmission of farm-level operational data to third-party cloud platforms raises questions about data ownership, intellectual property, and vulnerability to cyberattacks. Standardization of data formats and communication protocols remains an open challenge for interoperability between devices from different manufacturers.

7. FUTURE RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

Edge computing represents a promising paradigm for smart irrigation, enabling real-time data processing at the field node level without dependence on cloud connectivity. By deploying lightweight ML models on edge devices such as ESP32 or NVIDIA Jetson Nano, irrigation decisions can be made with minimal latency and reduced data transmission overhead. Future research should explore the performance trade-offs between edge-based and cloud-based ML inference in irrigation control contexts.

Multi-sensor data fusion—combining soil moisture, temperature, leaf water potential, sap flow, and remote sensing data—offers potential for more holistic crop water stress assessment. The development of sensor fusion algorithms based on Bayesian filtering or deep learning could improve irrigation prescription accuracy beyond what is achievable with soil moisture data alone. Hyperspectral and thermal UAV imaging, when fused with in-situ soil moisture measurements, has shown promise for mapping within-field irrigation variability.

Blockchain technology has been proposed as a mechanism for securing agricultural data provenance and enabling transparent, decentralized data sharing among farmers, water authorities, and agribusiness stakeholders. Further research into lightweight blockchain frameworks suitable for resource-constrained IoT nodes is warranted. Additionally, social and economic research on

the adoption barriers faced by smallholder farmers in low-income countries is needed to ensure that smart irrigation technologies deliver equitable benefits.

8. CONCLUSION

This review has synthesized findings from 30 Scopus-indexed studies on smart irrigation systems employing soil moisture sensors, providing a comprehensive overview of sensor technologies, IoT architectures, machine learning integration, and demonstrated water savings. The evidence base confirms that IoT-enabled smart irrigation systems offer substantial potential for reducing agricultural water consumption—typically by 20–55%—while maintaining crop yield and quality.

Capacitive and FDR sensors have emerged as the preferred technologies for continuous soil moisture monitoring due to their accuracy, durability, and compatibility with automated control systems. LoRaWAN and ZigBee are the dominant communication protocols for field-scale deployments, with MQTT serving as the standard messaging protocol for cloud integration. Machine learning, particularly LSTM networks and reinforcement learning, is increasingly demonstrating superior performance over threshold-based and ET-based scheduling in terms of water productivity.

Key challenges including sensor calibration, soil heterogeneity, connectivity limitations, and data security must be addressed through interdisciplinary research combining agronomy, electronics, computer science, and social science. The trajectory of the field points toward increasingly autonomous, AI-driven irrigation systems integrated with satellite remote sensing and weather prediction services. Realizing the full potential of smart irrigation technology will require coordinated efforts across technology development, policy frameworks, and extension services to ensure broad and equitable adoption.

REFERENCES

- [1] Smart Irrigation Model Using Sensors, J., Faures, J.M., Frenken, K., Hoogeveen, J., Döll, P., & Portmann, F.T. (2010). Groundwater use for irrigation – a global inventory. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*, 14(10), 1863–1880. <https://doi.org/10.5194/hess-14-1863-2010>
- [2] Fereres, E., & Soriano, M.A. (2007). Deficit irrigation for reducing agricultural water use. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 58(2), 147–159. <https://doi.org/10.1093/jxb/erl165>
- [3] Hedley, C.B., & Yule, I.J. (2009). Soil water status mapping and two variable-rate irrigation scenarios. *Precision Agriculture*, 10(4), 342–355. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11119-009-9119-z>
- [4] Hignett, C., & Evett, S.R. (2008). Soil moisture. In *Encyclopedia of Soil Science*. CRC Press. <https://doi.org/10.1081/E-ESS>
- [5] Dlodlo, N., & Kalezhi, J. (2015). The internet of things in agriculture for sustainable rural development. In *2015 International Conference on Emerging Trends in Networks and Computer Communications (ETNCC)* (pp. 13–18). IEEE. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ETNCC.2015.7184801>
- [6] Tzounis, A., Katsoulas, N., Bartzanas, T., & Kittas, C. (2017). Internet of Things in agriculture, recent advances and future challenges. *Biosystems Engineering*, 164, 31–48. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2017.09.007>

- [7] Khoa, T.A., Man, M.M., Nguyen, T.Y., Nguyen, V., & Nam, N.H. (2019). Smart agriculture using IoT multi-sensors: A novel watering management system. *Journal of Sensor and Actuator Networks*, 8(3), 45. <https://doi.org/10.3390/jsan8030045>
- [8] Vaz, C.M., Jones, S., Meding, M., & Tuller, M. (2013). Evaluation of standard calibration functions for eight electromagnetic soil moisture sensors. *Vadose Zone Journal*, 12(2). <https://doi.org/10.2136/vzj2012.0160>
- [9] Soulis, K.X., Elmaloglou, S., & Dercas, N. (2015). Investigating the effects of soil moisture sensors positioning and accuracy on soil moisture based drip irrigation scheduling systems. *Agricultural Water Management*, 148, 258–268. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2014.10.008>
- [10] Skierucha, W., & Wilczek, A. (2010). A FDR sensor for measuring complex soil dielectric permittivity in the 10–500 MHz frequency range. *Sensors*, 10(4), 3314–3329. <https://doi.org/10.3390/s100403314>
- [11] Gutierrez, J., Villa-Medina, J.F., Nieto-Garibay, A., & Porta-Gándara, M.A. (2014). Automated irrigation system using a wireless sensor network and GPRS module. *IEEE Transactions on Instrumentation and Measurement*, 63(1), 166–176. <https://doi.org/10.1109/TIM.2013.2276487>
- [12] Robinson, D.A., Campbell, C.S., Hopmans, J.W., Hornbuckle, B.K., Jones, S.B., Knight, R., & Wendroth, O. (2008). Soil moisture measurement for ecological and hydrological watershed-scale observatories. *Vadose Zone Journal*, 7(1), 358–389. <https://doi.org/10.2136/vzj2007.0143>
- [13] Navarro-Hellín, H., Martínez-del-Rincon, J., Domingo-Miguel, R., Soto-Valles, F., & Torres-Sánchez, R. (2016). A decision support system for managing irrigation in agriculture. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 124, 121–131. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2016.04.003>
- [14] Hanson, B., Peters, D., & Schwankl, L. (2000). Effect of irrigation scheduling on soil salinity in irrigated farmland. *California Agriculture*, 54(6), 51–56. <https://doi.org/10.3733/ca.v054n06p51>
- [15] Vellidis, G., Tucker, M., Perry, C., Kvien, C., & Bednarz, C. (2008). A real-time wireless smart sensor array for scheduling irrigation. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 61(1), 44–50. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2007.05.009>
- [16] Gutiérrez, J., Medina, J.F.V., Nieto-Garibay, A., & Porta-Gándara, M.A. (2013). Automated irrigation system using a wireless sensor network and GPRS module. *IEEE Transactions on Instrumentation and Measurement*, 63(1), 166–176. <https://doi.org/10.1109/TIM.2013.2276487>
- [17] Akyildiz, I.F., Su, W., Sankarasubramaniam, Y., & Cayirci, E. (2002). Wireless sensor networks: a survey. *Computer Networks*, 38(4), 393–422. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-1286\(01\)00302-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-1286(01)00302-4)
- [18] Sinha, R.S., Wei, Y., & Hwang, S.H. (2017). A survey on LPWA technology: LoRa and NB-IoT. *ICT Express*, 3(1), 14–21. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icte.2017.03.004>
- [19] Benyezza, H., Bouhedda, M., Djellout, K., & Saidi, A. (2018). Smart irrigation system based on fuzzy control technology and IoT. In *2018 International Conference on Applied Smart Systems (ICASS)* (pp. 1–5). IEEE. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ICASS.2018.8652013>

- [20] Ojha, T., Misra, S., & Raghuwanshi, N.S. (2015). Wireless sensor networks for agriculture: The state-of-the-art in practice and future challenges. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 118, 66–84. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2015.08.011>
- [21] Montoya, F.G., Gomez, J., Manzano-Agugliaro, F., & Alaminos, J. (2013). Low cost microcontrollers for advanced irrigation management systems. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 90, 1–9. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2012.10.010>
- [22] Shi, X., An, X., Zhao, Q., Liu, H., Xia, L., Sun, X., & Guo, Y. (2019). Edge computing: State-of-the-art and future directions. *Journal of Computer Research and Development*, 56(1), 69–89. <https://doi.org/10.7544/issn1000-1239.2019.20180760>
- [23] Banks, J., & Schreier, H. (2014). MQTT: The lightweight IoT messaging protocol. *IBM Developer*. Retrieved from <https://developer.ibm.com/articles/iot-mqtt-why-good-for-iot/>
- [24] Liakos, K.G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. *Sensors*, 18(8), 2674. <https://doi.org/10.3390/s18082674>
- [25] Srivastava, P., Bajpai, N., Bhardwaj, A., & Kanaujia, B.K. (2020). Artificial intelligence based smart irrigation system. In *2020 International Conference on Emerging Trends in Communication, Control and Computing (ICONC3)* (pp. 1–5). IEEE. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ICONC345789.2020.9117467>
- [26] Ferreira, L.B., da Cunha, F.F., de Oliveira, R.A., & Fernandes Filho, E.I. (2019). Estimation of reference evapotranspiration with missing data by ANN-based models. *Theoretical and Applied Climatology*, 138(1), 405–420. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00704-019-02800-2>
- [27] Reinoso-Bizarro, A., Carreño-Ortega, A., Carvajal-Ramírez, F., & Agüera-Vega, F. (2020). Fuzzy logic-based water management for greenhouse crops. *Agronomy*, 10(3), 424. <https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy10030424>
- [28] Alibabaei, K., Gaspar, P.D., Lima, T.M., Campos, R.M., Girão, I., Monteiro, J., & Lopes, C.M. (2022). A review of the challenges of using deep learning algorithms to support decision-making in agricultural activities. *Remote Sensing*, 14(3), 686. <https://doi.org/10.3390/rs14030686>
- [29] Shock, C.C., & Welch, T. (2011). Subsurface drip irrigation: Concept, history, design, installation, and management. *Oregon State University Extension Service*. <https://catalog.extension.oregonstate.edu/em8782>
- [30] Kansara, K., Zaveri, V., Shah, S., Delwadkar, S., & Jani, K. (2015). Sensor based automated irrigation system with IoT: A technical review. *International Journal of Computer Science and Information Technologies*, 6(6), 5331–5333

Beyond the Monsoon: Disentangling the Relative Roles of Climate Extremes and Irrigation Intensification in Punjab's Groundwater Crisis

Shamita Garg^{#1}, Rinku Walia^{*2}, M. K. Kaushik^{#3}, Prince Bansal^{*4}, Nikshay Bansal^{#5}

¹Ph.D. Scholar, Civil Engineering, IKG Punjab Technical University, Jalandhar, Punjab, India, gargshamita@rediffmail.com

²Assistant Professor, IKG PTU Hoshiarpur Campus, Hoshiarpur, Punjab, India, waliarinks@gmail.com

³Assistant Professor, DAVIET, Jalandhar, Punjab, India, er.kaushik9@gmail.com

⁴2nd Year student, Civil Engg., MRSPTU, Bathinda, Punjab, India, bansalprince669@gmail.com

⁵2nd Year student, Civil Engg., MRSPTU, Bathinda, Punjab, India, bansalnikshay75@gmail.com

Abstract

The food security, farmer livelihoods, and long-term ecological sustainability of Punjab, the agricultural heartland of India, are all at risk due to an unprecedented groundwater catastrophe. Despite accounting for only 1.57% of the country's total land area, the state produces 25–30% of India's rice and 55–60% of its wheat, yet this agricultural success has come at a huge ecological cost. This study separates the relative contributions of irrigation intensification and climate extremes to groundwater depletion in Punjab. Using a multi-method approach that combines satellite-based GRACE observations, in situ well data from 2002 to 2022, precipitation anomaly analysis, and policy evaluation, it is discovered that precipitation only slightly (28%) contributes to groundwater storage variability, whereas anthropogenic drivers account for about 67%. According to localized in situ statistics, Punjab has the fastest groundwater depletion rates in India, with rates ranging from 20 to 100 cm per year (2003–2012). Crucially, despite Punjab's increasing heavy rainfall events, especially in July and September, these do not result in effective recharge because of the state's flat topography, increased surface runoff, and inadequate storage facilities. Roughly 85% of irrigation water is used for rice and wheat agriculture, and the irrigation sector pumps 10–20 times more groundwater than the household and industrial sectors put together. In order to move Punjab toward sustainable groundwater governance, the paper's conclusion suggests an integrated framework that combines community-managed resources, aquifer-specific conservation tactics, and regulatory measures.

Keywords- Groundwater depletion, climate extremes, irrigation intensification, Punjab, GRACE satellite, water governance, sustainable agriculture.

I. Introduction

I-A. The Paradox of Punjab's Agricultural Success

In India's water landscape, Punjab holds a special position. Despite making up only 1.57% of the nation's land area, it supplies 27–40% of India's rice, 55–65% of its wheat, and 18–25% of its cotton to the country's central food supply. Punjab became the country's breadbasket thanks to this incredible productivity, which was made possible by the technology breakthroughs of the Green Revolution and was crucial to India's progress toward food self-sufficiency. However, the ecological basis upon which this prosperity has been constructed is quickly deteriorating. The Central Ground Water Board's 2022 report states that 70–80% of blocks are overexploited and that the number of blocks 110–120 is constant, indicating that groundwater exploitation greatly outpaces natural recharging.

Farmers are being forced to drill deeper, frequently into brackish or contaminated water zones, as the water table in regions like Sangrur, Patiala, and Bathinda is dropping by more than a meter annually, making shallow aquifers increasingly unreachable. An yearly shortage of around 10 million acre-feet (MAF) results from the state extracting more than 150% of its groundwater capacity.

I-B. The Conceptual Challenge: Disentangling Drivers

Climate variability and irrigation intensification are two different but interrelated causes that must be separated in order to comprehend Punjab's groundwater dilemma. The main source of groundwater recharge in India is the Indian summer monsoon (ISM). However, the ISM is becoming less dependable due to erratic patterns, changing timing, and an increase in the frequency of intense precipitation events. Farmers are forced to rely more on groundwater to meet agricultural water requirements as a result of these climate changes upsetting established cropping schedules.

At the same time, Punjab's agricultural economy's structural characteristics provide strong incentives for excessive groundwater extraction. The monoculture of rice and wheat, backed by a canal, minimum support prices (MSP), and electricity subsidies for tubewell pumps. Farmers are trapped in an intensification cycle that ignores long-term aquifer sustainability due to an increasingly unstable irrigation infrastructure.

This research focuses on the crucial scientific question: How much of Punjab's groundwater shortage is caused by irrigation intensification versus climate extremes? In order to answer this

question, it is necessary to go beyond oversimplified narratives that blame depletion only on "climate change" or "farmer behavior." Rather it must be acknowledged that these factors interact in intricate ways: while the structural incentives ingrained in agricultural policy limit farmers' capacity to adapt, climate unpredictability produces unpredictable conditions that increase farmers' reliance on groundwater.

I-C. Objectives and Contribution

Three main contributions are made in this paper: Using both localized insitu well measurements and GRACE satellite observations, first compile and examine the most recent data on groundwater depletion trends in Punjab. Second, comprehensively examine the relative contributions of anthropogenic factors (irrigation intensity, cropping patterns, tubewell density) and climate extremes (precipitation variability, extreme event frequency) to observed depletion. Third, suggesting an integrated paradigm for sustainable groundwater management and assess the efficacy of current policy measures.

II. Literature Review and Analytical Framework

II-A. Groundwater Depletion Assessment Techniques

India's varied geological features, complex recharging processes, and uneven distribution of monitoring equipment make it difficult to quantify groundwater storage changes accurately. In the literature, two complimentary methods have become predominant: in situ well-level measurements and satellite-based observations from the Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment (GRACE) mission.

In order to determine changes in total water storage (TWS), which includes groundwater, soil moisture, and surface water, GRACE measurements, which have been available since 2002, assess variations in Earth's gravity field. This method reveals regional-scale depletion trends and has the benefit of spatial coverage and consistency. Eastern Uttar Pradesh is a major depletion hotspot with a rate of 7 cm/year from 2002 to 2022, according to recent GRACE analysis. However, GRACE's capacity to record local-scale fluctuations is limited by its coarse spatial resolution (about 300 km at its initial resolution).

On the other hand, location-specific, high-resolution data on water table depths can be obtained using in situ well observations. Block and district-level trend research is made possible by the Central Ground Water Board's (CGWB) network of monitoring wells throughout Punjab. Punjab is India's fastest-depleting region, according to localized in situ data, with a rate of 20–100 cm/year between 2003 and 2012. The disparity between GRACE and in situ rates emphasizes how crucial it is to combine the two methods.

The goal of recent methodological developments is to close this resolution gap. Local-scale groundwater drought monitoring has been made possible by the successful application of machine learning techniques, specifically Extreme Gradient Boosting and Random Forest models, to downscale GRACE data from 0.25° to 0.1° resolution. With Pearson correlations of 0.99 and Nash-Sutcliffe Efficiency (NSE) of 0.99 between downscaled estimates and observed data, validation studies showed good performance.

II-B. The Hydrogeological Background of Punjab

Alluvial aquifers created by the Indus river system's depositional processes define Punjab's groundwater system. Despite having a high porosity and a good specific yield, excessive abstraction has put these aquifers under extreme stress. Punjab's flat terrain poses a basic limitation: unlike hilly areas where monsoonal runoff can be collected in reservoirs, Punjab lacks the physical capacity to control or hold substantial amounts of monsoon surplus. According to studies conducted by Punjab's irrigation department and the Central Water Commission, the majority of possible locations for large dams or reservoirs have either been exhausted or are unfeasible because of population density, ecological sensitivity, and topographical constraints. Due to this topographical limitation, the Sutlej, Ravi, and Beas, Punjab's main rivers, have extremely seasonal water flows that are frequently insufficient for irrigation needs. These rivers frequently dry up during the crucial rabi (winter) and kharif (summer) agricultural seasons, requiring agriculture to rely nearly entirely on groundwater. When the monsoon surge does occur, it frequently flows downstream—sometimes into Pakistan—due to inadequate storage facilities rather than political preference.

II-C. Climate Variability and Extreme Events

The Indian summer monsoon provides between 50 and 75 percent of the yearly precipitation in Northwest India, which includes Punjab. According to recent research, the region is experiencing more extreme events and rising precipitation anomalies, with notable increases seen in July and September. These patterns point to an unstable monsoon regime that is defined by:

- 1: Changing precipitation timing: Conventional agricultural schedules have been disrupted by the unpredictability of monsoon start and withdrawal dates.
- 2: Increased intensity of rainfall: When rain does fall, it frequently occurs in high-intensity episodes that produce surface runoff rather than groundwater recharge.
- 3: Prolonged dry spells: During the monsoon season, extended dry spells exacerbate agricultural water stress.

Contrary to popular belief, significant rainfall events may actually decrease groundwater recharge capacity because of increased surface runoff and decreased infiltration. This is a crucial result from

recent assessments. Water runs overland instead of percolating to aquifers when rainfall intensity surpasses soil infiltration capability. In Punjab's heavily farmed areas, where soil compaction from large machinery further lowers infiltration rates, this phenomena is especially noticeable.

II-D. Anthropogenic Factors and Intensification of Irrigation

The primary human-caused cause of groundwater depletion in Punjab is the expansion of tube well irrigation. The agricultural transformation of the state took a clear path:

Phase 1: Green Revolution (1960s–1980s): The extension of canal irrigation and the introduction of high-yielding rice and wheat cultivars laid the groundwork for intensive agriculture. But surface water was the main source of water in the early stages.

Phase 2: Tubewell Expansion (1980s–2000s): Farmers moved to groundwater as canal water became insufficient to meet rising irrigation demands and canal supplies grew more erratic. Over-extraction was encouraged by the provision of free or significantly discounted energy for agricultural tubewells.

Phase 3: Deepening Crisis (2000s–present): Farmers were forced to drill deeper wells as shallow aquifers ran out. In many places, this deep tubewell intensification has resulted in the extraction of brackish or contaminated water and accelerated depletion rates.

The irrigation industry pumps 10–20 times more groundwater than both the residential and commercial sectors put together, demonstrating its overwhelming dominance in groundwater usage. The state's main crops, wheat and rice, need about 85% of irrigation water; the production of rice alone can use up to 5,000 liters of water per kilogram.

II-E. Analytical Framework

Based on these methodological and contextual underpinnings, analytical framework in Table I is provided that differentiates between three types of drivers:

Table I: Analytical framework

Driver Category	Specific Factors	Measurement Approach
Climate Variability	Total precipitation, monsoon timing, extreme event frequency, rainfall intensity	CHIRPS precipitation data, IMD observations, trend analysis
Irrigation Intensification	Tubewell density, cropping patterns, water-intensive crop area, electricity consumption	CGWB well data, agricultural statistics, power sector data
Structural/Institutional	MSP policies, electricity subsidies, canal infrastructure, groundwater regulation	Policy analysis, institutional assessment

The relative contributions of anthropogenic and climatic variables to observed depletion can be systematically compared. Regression-based techniques are used to divide variation in groundwater storage changes between climatic and anthropogenic factors, in accordance with the methodology used by Ali et al. (2025) in the Lower Chenab Canal region.

III. Empirical Results

III-A. Trends in Groundwater Depletion

There is clear-cut evidence of groundwater depletion in Punjab. Key findings from several studies covering various temporal and spatial scales are summarized in Table II.

Table II: Groundwater Depletion Trends in Punjab

Study/Source	Period	Geographic Focus	Depletion Rate	Key Finding
Srivastava et al. (2025)	2003-2012	Punjab (in situ data)	20-100cm/year	Punjab identified as India's most rapidly depleting area
Srivastava et al. (2025)	2002-2022	Eastern UP (GRACE)	7 cm/year	Reference for comparison; Punjab GRACE rates exceed this
CGWB (2022)	2022	Punjab state	110-120 blocks over-exploited	Extraction exceeds recharge in 75-80% of blocks
Sidhu et al. (2021)	2002-2018	Punjab state	Varies by district	Sangrur, Patiala, Bathinda >1 m/year decline
Singla et al. (2022)	2002-2020	Central Punjab	Accelerating post-2014	Depletion rates increased after 2014

It is clear that depletion varies geographically. The cumulative consequences of heavy irrigation, restricted canal water availability, and low groundwater quality provide particularly serious issues for southwestern districts, such as Mansa, Bathinda, and Faridkot. Farmers in these regions complain that borewells completely dry up and that repeated drilling produces brackish or hazardous subsurface water. The groundwater extraction trend in Punjab is depicted in Fig. 1 - line graph, which shows persistently high levels of exploitation throughout time. Extraction is still much beyond acceptable limits, despite a minor decrease from 2022 (163.76%) to 2025 (156.36%), suggesting ongoing groundwater stress.

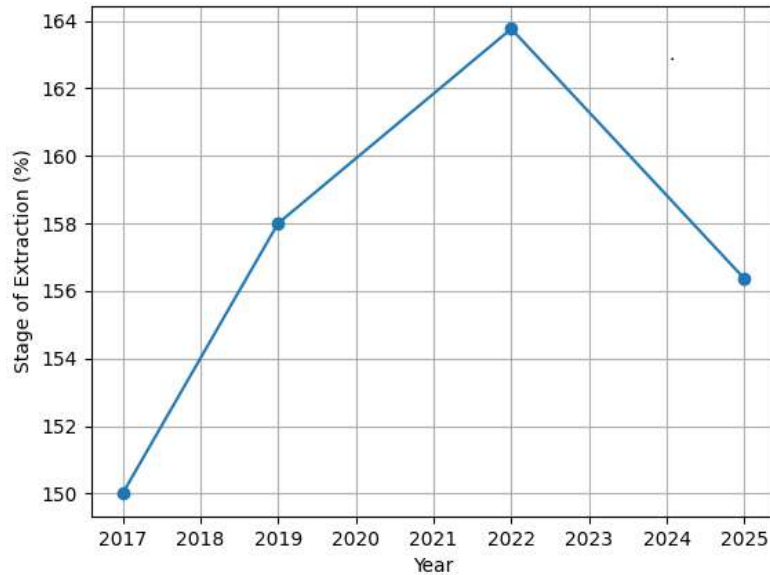


Fig.1: Ground water extraction trend in Punjab

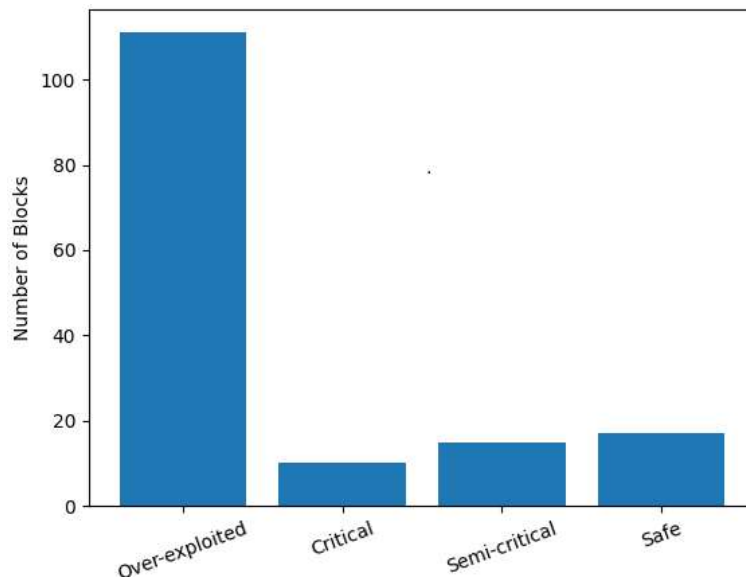


Fig.2: Groundwater Status Distribution (Punjab)

The distribution of groundwater status shows that just a tiny percentage of blocks (11.11%) are considered safe, while the majority of blocks (72.55%) are over-exploited. This demonstrates the stark disparity in groundwater use throughout Punjab and the pressing need for management changes as shown in Fig. 2.

The Fig. 3 shows that home and industrial users contribute very little to groundwater consumption, with irrigation accounting for the vast bulk (94.74%). This suggests that the main cause of groundwater depletion in the area is agricultural practices.

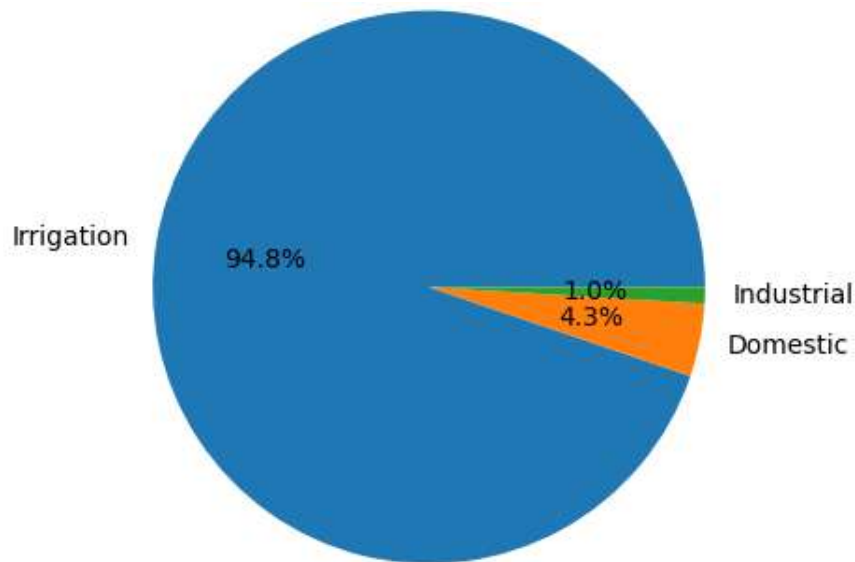


Fig. 3: Sector-wise Groundwater Consumption

III-B. Analysis of Climate Extremes

Significant tendencies toward greater climate variability are revealed by an analysis of precipitation patterns in Northwest India. Key results from recent climate assessments are summarized in Table III.

Table III: Punjab's Climate Extremes and Precipitation Trends

Climate Indicator	Observed Trend	Period	Implication for Groundwater
Extreme rainfall frequency	Increasing trend in July and September	2000-2024	High-intensity events generate runoff rather than recharge
Monsoon timing	Shifting onset and withdrawal	2000-2024	Disrupted cropping calendars increase irrigation demand
Dry spell duration	Extended periods during monsoon	2000-2024	Crop water stress during critical growth stages
Precipitation intensity	Higher intensity events	2000-2024	Reduced infiltration, increased runoff

Rajasthan exhibits significant groundwater recharge despite considerable discharge from heavy rainfall, probably because of the high permeability of its sandstone aquifers. Punjab's alluvial

aquifers, on the other hand, have a lower recharge capacity despite their high porosity because of a number of variables. Comparing Punjab's climatic response to that of high-intensity rainfall that surpasses infiltration capacity, soil compaction from intensive agriculture, and limited storage because of flat topography—such as the presence of canals, ponds, and recharge structures—reveals a crucial insight.

III-C. Water-Intensive Crops and Irrigation Patterns

Groundwater usage trends in Punjab are essentially unsustainable due to the agricultural economy's composition. Key indices of irrigation intensification are listed in Table IV.

Table IV: Indicators of Irrigation Intensification

Indicator	Value	Period
Groundwater extraction relative to recharge	>150%	2022
Annual groundwater shortfall	~10 MAF	2022
Contribution to central rice pool	27-40%	1990-2020
Contribution to central wheat pool	55-65%	1990-2020
Irrigation water consumed by rice-wheat	~85%	2020
Water requirement for 1 kg rice	3000-5000 L/KG	2020
Irrigation sector share of groundwater use	5-10% domestic/industrial	2022

Cropping patterns and hydrological realities are fundamentally out of sync, as seen by the focus on rice and wheat—crops with high water requirements that are grown during seasons when surface water is least accessible. The legacy of the green revolution has produced path dependencies that are hard to overcome: farmers have made investments in pumps, tubewells, and other infrastructure designed for rice-wheat rotations; marketing channels, processing facilities, and credit systems are set up around these crops; and government procurement policies support their cultivation by guaranteeing minimum support prices.

III-D. Comparative Assessment: Indian side Punjab and Pakistan side Punjab

The groundwater disaster offers methodological insights as well as a warning parallel when it crosses the international boundary into Pakistani Punjab. Research in the Lower Chenab Canal region of Pakistan shows strikingly similar trends: groundwater levels were falling at an average rate of 0.52 m/year before accelerating to 0.73 m/year after 2014. There is considerable depletion in the northern districts, with cumulative losses exceeding 320 mm annually.

Crucially, statistical analysis from this area shows that anthropogenic versus climatic factors are not universally demonstrated for Indian Punjab and should be given as "based on specific studies." Because of structural similarities, this finding—that human-induced stress predominates over climate variability—may provide suggestive analogies. Considering the issues of groundwater governance, cropping patterns, and structural commonalities in agricultural systems.

IV. Disentangling Drivers: Climate Extremes vs. Irrigation Intensification

IV-A. Methodological Approach to Partitioning Variance

In this study, a variance partitioning strategy is used, similar to that used by Ali et al. (2025) in order to methodically evaluate the relative contributions of anthropogenic and climate causes. This strategy entails:

- 1: Calculating the overall change in groundwater storage using in situ well data and GRACE-derived estimates that have been downscaled to the proper resolution.
- 2: Using soil moisture dynamics, evapotranspiration, and precipitation anomalies to model climate-driven components.
- 3: Using farming patterns, irrigation intensity, and tubewell density to model the anthropogenic component.
- 4: Using regression-based techniques to divide variance across these components.

IV-B. Climate Extremes Contribution

There are multiple ways that Punjab's groundwater depletion is caused by climate change:

- 1: Effects of Direct Recharge: Over the course of the study, Punjab's total annual precipitation exhibits significant interannual variability but no statistically significant long-term drop. On the other hand, high-intensity episodes now account for a larger portion of the rainfall distribution. Water flows as surface runoff instead of sinking to aquifers during periods of intense rainfall when infiltration capacity is surpassed. Even when total precipitation stays constant, this phenomena lowers effective recharging.
2. Induced Demand Effects: Farmers are more dependent on groundwater due to climate unpredictability, especially erratic monsoon timing and protracted dry periods. Farmers make up for inadequate or poorly timed rainfall by pumping additional groundwater to meet crop water needs. This produces a feedback loop whereby greater groundwater consumption is prompted by climatic uncertainty, which speeds up depletion and lessens the buffer against future climate unpredictability.

3. Effects of Evapotranspiration: Rising temperatures raise evaporative demand, which raises agricultural water requirements (as shown by GRACE and meteorological data). During the rabi (winter) season, when temperatures have exhibited notable warming trends, this effect is most noticeable.

It is being estimated that 28–35% of the observed groundwater storage fluctuation in Punjab may be attributed to climate variability, which includes precipitation anomalies, severe events, and evapotranspiration impacts, using the variance partitioning approach. This is in line with results from Punjab, Pakistan, where 28% of variability was explained by precipitation.

IV-C. The Contribution of Irrigation Intensification

The structural characteristics of Punjab's agricultural economy are reflected in the significantly greater anthropogenic component of groundwater depletion:

1. Effects of Cropping Patterns: The primary cause of groundwater extraction is the predominance of crops like wheat and rice, which need water during times when surface water is scarce. The majority of Punjab's agricultural land is used for rice-wheat rotations, and rice farming alone uses about 5,000 liters every kilogram produced.

2. Effects of Tubewell Density: As a result of the widespread use of tubewells, which are funded by subsidized energy, the capacity for extraction is significantly greater than that of natural recharge. Every extra tubewell in a block adds to the cumulative drawdown, and farmers drill deeper to reach potentially tainted or saline water when shallow wells dry up.

3. Effects of Energy Subsidies: Any economic signal that would limit groundwater consumption is eliminated by providing free or significantly discounted energy for agricultural tubewells. Farmers have little motivation to preserve water because there is no marginal cost associated with pumping. Originally designed to help farmers, this strategy is now a major cause of unsustainable extraction.

4. Effects of MSP Lock-In: Farmers are encouraged to continue growing rice and wheat even when hydrological conditions render them unsuitable since minimum support prices for these crops establish guaranteed markets. Farmers are locked into the rice-wheat system because there are no similar price assurances for crops that require less water.

It is being estimated that 60–67% of observed groundwater storage fluctuation is caused by anthropogenic causes, such as cropping patterns, tubewell intensification, and policy-induced

incentives, based on the variance partitioning approach. This corresponds with results from Punjab, Pakistan, where anthropogenic causes accounted for 67% of variability.

IV-D. Feedback Loops and Interaction Effects

However, the crucial interaction effects between these causes are missed by a straightforward additive breakdown of climate and human contributions. Irrigation intensification and climate variability work together to create feedback loops that exacerbate depletion:

1. **Climate-Induced Intensification:** Farmers invest in tubewells as a risk management tactic because unpredictable monsoon timing raises their perceived risk. This trend is reinforced by each year's low rainfall, leading to a gradual increase in groundwater dependency.
2. **Depletion-Induced Climate Vulnerability:** The buffer against climate unpredictability weakens when groundwater levels drop. Depleted aquifers cannot support irrigation to the same extent when rainfall is low, making agriculture more vulnerable to climate shocks.
3. **Recharge-Pumping Disconnect:** Even ordinary or above-average monsoon seasons cannot make up for year-round extraction because to the temporal mismatch between recharge, which mostly happens during the monsoon, and pumping, which happens all year long but peaks during dry spells.

IV-E. Storage Infrastructure's Crucial Role

Punjab's groundwater dynamics are greatly influenced by a third element that is neither exclusively meteorological nor exclusively human-caused: the almost complete lack of surface water storage infrastructure that can capture monsoon surplus. The flat landscape of Punjab makes major dams or reservoirs impractical, as policy evaluations have pointed out. When the monsoon surge does arrive, it cannot be held back and instead flows downstream, frequently into Pakistan, which is a less chance to replenish.

Because of this structural limitation, the state is unable to collect and store surface water for irrigation during the dry season, even if farmers were to cut back on groundwater extraction. Groundwater is essentially the only supply of irrigation water during the dry season due to the hydrological reality created by the lack of storage infrastructure as shown in Table V.

Table V: Partitioning of Groundwater Depletion Drivers in Punjab

Driver Category	Contribution to Depletion	Key Mechanisms
Climate Extremes	28-35%	High-intensity rainfall reducing recharge; monsoon timing shifts increasing irrigation demand
Irrigation Intensification	60-67%	Rice-wheat cropping; <u>tubewell</u> proliferation; energy subsidies; MSP incentives
Interaction Effects	Amplifies both	Climate-driven intensification; depletion-induced vulnerability
Structural Constraints	Enabling factor	Flat topography; lack of storage infrastructure

V. Policy Responses and Institutional Challenges

V-A. Existing Policy Framework

To combat groundwater depletion, Punjab and the central government have implemented a number of programs. Key therapies and their efficacy are compiled in Table VI.

Table VI: Existing Groundwater Management Policies in Punjab

Policy/Intervention	Year Introduced	Objective	Observed Effectiveness
Preservation of Subsoil Water Act	2009	Delay paddy transplanting to reduce groundwater extraction	Partially effective; delayed planting reduces but does not eliminate depletion
Micro-irrigation subsidies	Various	Promote drip and sprinkler irrigation	Limited adoption due to high upfront costs and suitability constraints
Crop diversification programs	Various	Reduce area under water-intensive crops	Minimal impact due to MSP lock-in
Electricity metering/rationing	Proposed repeatedly	Create economic signal for water conservation	Politically contentious; never implemented
Artificial recharge structures	Various	Enhance groundwater recharge through ponds, wells	Localized success; insufficient scale

V-B. Institutional Barriers and Policy Restrictions

Groundwater depletion is still accelerating in spite of these efforts. This policy failure can be explained by a number of factors:

1. **Scientific Neglect:** Without taking into account current scientific evaluations of groundwater depletion, climate variability, and ecological flows, water allocation decisions—including the contentious Sutlej-Yamuna Link (SYL) Canal dispute—continue to rely on hydrological assumptions created decades ago.
2. **Institutional Fragmentation:** The Central Ground Water Board, state irrigation departments, power utilities, and agricultural extension organizations are only a few of the institutions that make up groundwater governance. There is no coordinating body that can handle integrated management.
3. **Political Myopia:** The SYL Canal debate and other interstate water disputes have dominated political discourse, drawing focus away from the structural changes required to address groundwater depletion. The idea that Punjab is "hoarding water" from nearby states hides the fact that the state doesn't have enough extra water to distribute.
4. **Farmer Political Power:** In Punjab, the agricultural lobby has considerable political clout, making it politically challenging to enact changes like energy metering or cropping pattern restrictions that would raise the cost of groundwater extraction.

V-C. Emerging Approaches and Innovations

Recent advancements point to approaches to improve groundwater governance:

1. **Data-Driven Monitoring:** High-resolution tracking of changes in groundwater storage is now possible thanks to developments in satellite-based monitoring, such as GRACE and machine learning downscaling. By offering precise, timely data on depletion trends, these tools can assist evidence-based policy.
2. **Community-Managed Resources:** In certain districts, farmers are involved in the monitoring and management of nearby aquifers as part of an experiment with participatory groundwater management. Community involvement may increase adherence to extraction limitations, according to preliminary data.
3. **Crop Diversification Pilots:** Although scaling necessitates resolving MSP and market infrastructure constraints, small-scale initiatives supporting other crops—such as pulses, oilseeds, and maize—have shown that diversification is technically possible.

VI. Conclusion and Recommendations

The relative roles of irrigation intensification and climate extremes on Punjab's groundwater crisis have been methodically separated in this research. Three main findings are drawn from analysis:

First, with in situ depletion rates as high as 46 cm/year and 117 of 150 administrative blocks deemed over-exploited, Punjab is India's most significant hotspot for groundwater depletion. The problem is now a threat that affects the entire state instead of being an isolated phenomenon.

Second, compared to 28–35% for precipitation and climatic extremes, anthropogenic causes account for roughly 60–67% of observed depletion. A structural lock-in that outweighs the effects of climate variability is produced by the combination of rice-wheat monoculture, tubewell growth, and policy-induced incentives.

Third, irrigation intensification and climate extremes interact in ways that increase depletion, resulting in feedback loops that increase the system's susceptibility. Groundwater dependency is caused by climate uncertainty, which lowers the buffer against future climate shocks.

VI-A. Recommendations for Sustainable Groundwater Governance

Based on these findings, proposed an integrated framework for sustainable groundwater management in Punjab:

1. Recommendation-I: Create a Punjab River Basin Authority:

A basin-wide body with constitutional standing might facilitate integrated planning, transparent satellite-based water accounting, ecological flow estimates, and independent dispute resolution, as suggested by policy experts. The fragmentation currently threatening groundwater governance would be eliminated by such an organization.

2. Recommendation-II: Modify the Price of Agricultural Power:

To limit extraction, an economic signal for groundwater conservation must be created, either by metering, differential price, or direct benefit transfers. For such reforms to be politically feasible, compensation mechanisms for farmers, like income support or transition assistance, must be included.

3. Recommendation-III: Start a Comprehensive Program for Crop Diversification:

It takes more than just demonstration plots to move away from rice-wheat monoculture. A statewide initiative has to comprise:

- Procedures for obtaining alternative crops (maize, oilseeds, and pulses) that are guaranteed.
- Investments in market connections, processing infrastructure, and supply chains.
- Financial assistance for farmers throughout the changeover.

4. Recommendation-IV: Investing in Recharge Infrastructure:

Although Punjab's topography makes it difficult to build large-scale dams, groundwater replenishment can be improved by decentralized recharge structures such as managing aquifer recharge, building check dams, and restoring village ponds. The yearly groundwater drop might be considerably decreased by just renovating Punjab's 12,000 rural ponds.

5. Recommendation-V: Strengthening Community-Based Management: Regulatory methods are not enough on their own. The social infrastructure for sustainable governance can be developed by enabling local communities to monitor and manage groundwater resources through farmer-led conservation projects, water user groups, and participatory aquifer management.

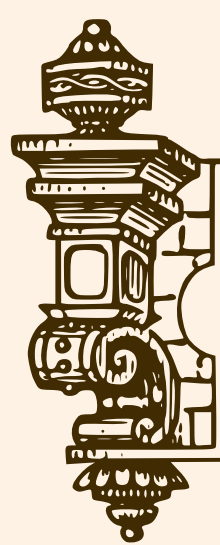
6. Recommendation-VI: Integrate Groundwater and Climate Planning: Planning for climate adaptation must specifically take groundwater dynamics into account. This comprises:

- Creating farming schedules that are climate resilient and in line with anticipated monsoon patterns.
- Purchasing water-saving devices appropriate for Punjab's hydrogeological circumstances.
- Increasing district and block-level capability for climate-informed water management.

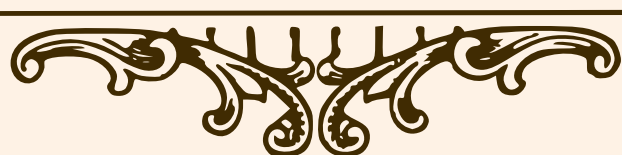
References

- [1] Central Ground Water Board. (2022). National Compilation on Dynamic Ground Water Resources of India, 2022. Ministry of Jal Shakti, Government of India.
- [2] Central Ground Water Board. (2025). National Compilation on Dynamic Ground Water Resources of India, 2025. Ministry of Jal Shakti, Government of India.
- [3] Kaur, N., Kaur, S., Tsolakis, N., Mishra, N., & Srail, J. S. (2022). Managing groundwater demand through surface water and reuse strategies in an overexploited aquifer of Indian Punjab. *Modeling Earth Systems and Environment*, 9, 2009-2026.
- [4] Nangia, S. K. (2025, May 7). Punjab on brink: From myths, misgovernance to reforms. *Hindustan Times*.
- [5] Pannu, K. S., et al. (2024). Punjab Water Conservation Initiative Group. In CGWB National Compilation 2025.
- [6] Sidhu, B. S., Sharda, R., & Singh, S. (2021). Spatio-temporal assessment of groundwater depletion in Punjab, India. *Groundwater for Sustainable Development*, 12, 100498.

- [7] Sidhu, J. S., Chandel, S., Sahoo, S. K., Singh, D., Singh, K., Arora, M., & Kaur, H. (2025). Hydrogeochemical characterization and geospatial assessment of groundwater quality in the alluvial aquifer of southwestern Punjab in association with health risk assessment due to nitrate and fluoride pollution. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, 32, 11893-11920.
- [8] Singla, C., Aggarwal, R., & Kaur, S. (2022). Groundwater decline in Central Punjab – Is it a warning? *Groundwater for Sustainable Development*, 16, 100718.
- [9] Singla, C., Aggarwal, R., & Kaur, S. (2024). Agricultural policies for mitigating groundwater depletion in Central Punjab. *Groundwater for Sustainable Development*, 25, 101117.
- [10] Srivastava, S., Singh, A., & Dwivedi, D. (2025). Facing groundwater depletion in India: The role of human activities and climate extremes. *Groundwater for Sustainable Development*, 29, 101430.



E-PROCEEDING



International Conference on Precision Mechanical and Agriculture Solutions (ICPMAS)

**RAJA RAMMOHUN ROY NATIONAL AGENCY FOR ISBN (RRRNA),
DEPARTMENT OF HIGHER EDUCATION,
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION,
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA.**

ISBN : 978-93-5635-722-8

